

**М. А. СКРЕБКОВА - ПАБАТ**

**Г. В. ФІНЧУК**

**Д. А. КОЧМАР**

# **Practical Grammar of the English Language**

**Практична граматика англійської мови**

**Навчальний посібник**

**для студентів немовних спеціальностей, вчителів**

**англійської мови**

**«Новий Світ-2000»**

**Львів**

**2021**

ББК 81.2 Англ-923  
С-45  
УДК 811.111 (075.8)

*Рекомендовано до друку радою історико-філологічного факультету Міжнародного економіко-гуманітарного університету імені академіка Степана Дем'янчука  
(протокол № 8 від 02 квітня 2018 р.)*

**Рецензенти:**

- Груба Т. Л.** доктор педагогічних наук, професор кафедри української мови та літератури (Міжнародний економіко-гуманітарний університет імені акад. С. Дем'янчука)
- Будз І. Ф.** кандидат педагогічних наук, доцент кафедри романо-германської філології (Міжнародний економіко-гуманітарний університет імені акад. С. Дем'янчука)
- Васильєв Є. М.** доктор філологічних наук, професор кафедри, завідувач кафедри теорії та історії світової літератури (Рівненський державний гуманітарний університет)
- Артеменко Л. В.** кандидат філологічних наук, професор кафедри суспільно-гуманітарних дисциплін Комунального закладу вищої освіти Рівненської обласної ради «Медична Академія»

**Practical Grammar of the English Language (Практична граматика англійської мови)** навчальний посібник для студентів вищих навчальних закладів / М. А. Скрєбкова-Пабат, Г. В. Фінчук, Д. А. Кочмар – Львів, Видавництво «Новий Світ – 2000», 2021. – 636 с.

ISBN 978-617-7519-55-2

Посібник є збірником додаткових матеріалів з англійської мови для студентів коледжів немовних спеціальностей, учнів 11 класу загальноосвітніх шкіл та спрямований на розвиток і закріплення навичок, набутих під час роботи з основним підручником та відповідно до чинної програми.

Цікавий і різноманітний матеріал, розроблений за методично обґрунтованою структурою, допоможе викладачеві подати правила та вправи у цікавій ігровій формі, що зробить роботу над вивченням мови захоплюючою та приємною.

Для викладачів, вчителів-практиків, молодих вчителів, для студентів немовних спеціальностей, студентів факультетів іноземних мов.

ISBN 978-617-7519-55-2

© Скрєбкова - Пабат М. А., Фінчук Г. В., Кочмар Д. А., 2021  
© «Новий Світ – 2000, ФОП Піча С. В., 2021

# INTRODUCTION

Практична граматика англійської мови призначений для студентів немовних спеціальностей, вчителів англійської мови загальноосвітніх шкіл і для всіх, хто цікавиться англійською мовою. Практикум покликаний допомогти школярам та студентам у розвиткові та закріпленні навичок, набутих у процесі навчання іншомовному спілкуванню, засвоєння мовного матеріалу (граматичного, лексичного, фонетичного, орфографічного).

Основною метою видання є активізація вивчення англійської мови за допомогою цікавого текстового матеріалу, автентичних та різноманітних завдань, що спонукають студентів і учнів використовувати мову як інструмент для вирішення тих чи тих проблем комунікативного характеру, а також граматичного матеріалу, психологічних тестів. Багатий лексико-граматичний матеріал допоможе вчителю підвищити мотивацію учнів під час вивчення іноземної мови.

Матеріали складаються з тематичних блоків, кожен з яких має чітку, методично виправдану структуру. Основна частина відкривається ввідним текстом, спрямованим на актуалізацію попередньо отриманих знань. Наступні частини охоплюють усі розділи мовленнєвої діяльності й дозволяють учителеві побудувати урок таким чином, щоб розвивати усі чотири аспекти іншомовної мовленнєвої комунікації – читання, аудіювання, письмо і говоріння. Застосовуючи запропонований багаторівневий підхід в оцінці діяльності учня, учитель має змогу оцінити його роботу відповідно до набутого рівня знань.

Цінною є також наявність тестових робіт після кожного тематичного блоку, в яких вдало поєднуються завдання на перевірку як лексичних і граматичних, так і комунікативних (усних і письмових) умінь учнів. Неординарні ситуації спілкування, цікавий матеріал та ігрове наповнення роблять надані матеріали ефективними мотиваційними чинниками під час вивчення іноземної мови.

Зважаючи на те, що кожен розділ теми є самостійним і самодостатнім, не пов'язаним з іншими, учитель може використовувати їх у будь-якому порядку.

Сподіваємось, що книга стане добрим помічником викладачеві, стимулюватиме розвиток пізнавальних інтересів учнів і студентів та сприятиме підвищенню мотивації до вивчення англійської мови.

# CHAPTER I

## PRACTICALS

### Practice 1

#### Grammar: The Noun

#### Number of Nouns. Possessive Case of Nouns

Іменник – частина мови, яка означає предмет. Відповідає на питання „хто? що?”. Наприклад:

Who is this? <i>Хто це?</i>	a man
Who is this?	a girl
Who is this?	a sportsman
What is this? <i>Що це?</i>	a telephone
What is this?	rain
What is this?	a strawberry
What is this?	music
What is this??	a wedding

### 1. Morphological Characteristic of Nouns

Англійські іменники можуть бути **Простими** (які не мають у своєму складі ні префіксів, ні суфіксів, ні закінчень), **Складними** (які мають у своєму складі префікси, суфікси та закінчення) і **Складеними** (які складені за допомогою декількох основ):

<i>Simple Nouns</i>	<i>Derivative Nouns</i>	<i>Compound Nouns</i>
an arm	a <u>writer</u>	school+girl= a schoolgirl
a pencil	a <u>sailor</u>	pen+knife= a penknife
snow	<u>happiness</u>	rain+bow=rainbow
a ball	a <u>building</u>	rail+way+man= a railwayman
a girl	<u>strength</u>	merry+go+round=a merry-go-round
a knife	<u>childhood</u>	forget+me+not= a forget-me-not
sun	<u>kingdom</u>	fountain+pen= a fountain-pen
a fountain	<u>friendship</u>	black+board= a blackboard
life	a <u>pianist</u>	air+plain= an airplain
a school	a <u>driver</u>	post+man= a postman

### 2. Countable and Uncountable Nouns

Злічувані іменники вживаються в однині (**the Singular**) та множині (**the Plural**): a chair *стілець* – chairs *стілці*; a girl *дівчинка* - girls *дівчата etc.*

Незлічувані іменники форми множини не мають.

Коли незлічуваний іменник в реченні виступає підметом, то дієслово-присудок має бути в однині:

**Gold costs a lot.** *Золото дорого коштує.*

**Her hair is beautiful.** *В неї чудове волосся.*

Речовинні незлічувані іменники вживаються з займенниками *some* (у стверджувальних реченнях) і *any* (у питальних та заперечних реченнях), коли



мова йде про незначну кількість речовини:

**I have bought some butter.** Я купив масло.

**Bring me some water.** Принесіть мені води.

**We have not any sugar.** У нас немає цукру.

**Have you bought any cheese.** Ви купили сир?

Іменники поділяються на **злічувані** та **незлічувані**:

<i>Countable Nouns</i> означають предмети, які можна поррахувати	<i>Uncountable Nouns</i> це назви речовин і багатьох абстрактних понять, які не можна перерахувати
<b>a chair</b> <b>a girl</b> <b>a question</b> <b>an engineer</b> <b>a table</b> <b>a man</b> <b>a textbook</b> <b>a doctor</b> <b>an apple</b> <b>etc.</b>	<b>water</b> <b>tea</b> <b>love</b> <b>music</b> <b>information</b> <b>news</b> <b>advice</b> <b>knowledge</b> <b>education</b> <b>etc.</b>

**Речовинні незлічувані іменники**, які означають різні сорти та види речовин, стають **злічуваними**:

**It is a good wine.** Це хороше (добре) вино.

**He prefers Italian wines.** Йому подобаються італійські вина.

**Незлічувані іменники** можуть бути **злічуваними** у словосполученнях:

<b>Uncountable Nouns</b>	<b>Countable Nouns</b>
<b>абстрактні поняття</b>	
<b>news</b> новина; <b>information</b> повідомлення; <b>gossip</b> плітка; <b>advice</b> порада;	<b>a piece of news</b> новина; <b>two items of information</b> два повідомлення; <b>a bit of gossip</b> плітка; <b>a few pieces of advice</b> кілька порад;
<b>речовинні іменники</b>	
<b>bread</b> хліб; <b>milk</b> молоко; <b>water</b> вода	<b>a loaf of bread</b> буханка хліба; <b>a bottle of milk</b> пляшка молока; <b>some bottles of water</b> декілька пляшок води

Прикметник **much** вживається з незлічуваними іменниками: **much money** багато грошей, **much food** багато їжі, **much time** багато часу, **much coffee** багато кофе, а прикметник **many** - зі злічуваними: **many books** багато книжок, **many shops** багато крамниць, **many people** багато людей, **many questions** багато питань.

Словосполучення **a lot of** вживається з незлічуваними іменниками: **a lot of food** багато їжі, **a lot of water** багато води або іменниками у множині: **a lot of girls** багато дівчат, **a lot of pencils** багато олівців, **a lot of pictures** багато малюнків.

**Незлічувані іменники** в деяких випадках можуть бути і **злічуваними**:

Uncountable Nouns	Countable Nouns
<b>ice</b> лід	<b>an ice</b> морозиво
<b>cooper (Cu)</b> мідь	<b>a copper</b> конійка
<b>glass</b> скло	<b>a glass</b> склянка; окуляри
<b>iron (Fe)</b> залізо	<b>an iron</b> праска
<b>tin (Sn)</b> олово	<b>a tin</b> консервна банка
<b>paper</b> папір	<b>a paper</b> контрольна робота
<b>wood</b> дерево; деревина	<b>a wood</b> ліс; гай <b>the woods</b> дерев'яні музичні інструменти
<b>cloth</b> тканина	<b>a cloth</b> скатертину

В англійській мові, як і в українській, є іменники, що вживаються тільки в **однині** або тільки в **множині**.

Так, назви речовин, а також багато іменників, що виражають абстрактні поняття, вживаються тільки в однині:

**chalk** крейда, **silver** срібло, **peace** мир, **courage** відвага.

Деякі іменники в англійській мові вживаються тільки в однині, а відповідні їм іменники в українській мові мають форми однини й множини або навіть тільки множини: **advice** порада, поради; **knowledge** знання; **information** інформація, відомості; **news** новина, новини; **progress** успіх, успіхи; **money** гроші; **luggage, baggage** (амер.) багаж.

**The news is good.** Це добра новина.

**This is my luggage.** Це мій багаж.

До іменників, які в англійській мові вживаються лише у множині, належать, як і в українській мові, назви предметів, що складаються з двох рівних або подібних частин: **spectacles (glasses)** окуляри, **trousers** штани; **scissors** ножиці, **stairs** сходи, **jeans** джинси.

Порівняємо також іменники, що вживаються у множині в англійській мові, але в однині в українській:

<i>the Plural</i>	<i>the Singular</i>
<b>clothes</b>	одяг
<b>contents</b>	зміст
<b>blinds</b>	жалюзі
<b>wages</b>	зарплата
<b>(the) police</b>	поліція
<b>cattle</b>	худоба
<b>politics</b>	політика
<b>gymnastics</b>	гімнастика
<b>athletics</b>	атлетика

Зверніть увагу на такі іменники: **blinds** жалюзі; **goods** товар, товари; **news** новина, новини;

**Blinds** (іменник) жалюзі – якщо забрати закінчення **-s** – **blind** (прикметник) сліпий. **Pull down the blinds.** (іменник) Опустіть жалюзі. **He was blind.** (прикметник) Він був сліпий.

**Goods** (іменник) *товар, товари* **good** (прикметник) *добрий, хороший*.

**They concluded an agreement on the delivery of new goods.** (іменник) *Вони уклали угоду на поставку нових товарів.*

**This is the very good** (прикметник) **book.** *Це дуже хороша книжка.*

**News** (іменник) *новина, новини* **new** (прикметник) *новий*. **No news** (іменник) **is good news.** (іменник) *Немає новин – хороша новина.* **Helen bought the new** (прикметник) **dress.** *Олена купила нову сукню.*

### 3. Number of the Noun

#### Утворення множини

Більшість іменників утворюють множину додаванням до форми однини закінчення **-(e)s**. Це закінчення вимовляється:

[s] - після глухих приголосних, крім [s], [ʃ], [tʃ]:

<b>a lamp</b>	<b>lamps</b> [læmps]
<b>a present</b>	<b>presents</b> ['prez(ə)nts]
<b>a lake</b>	<b>lakes</b> [leiks]
<b>a cup</b>	<b>cups</b> [kʌps]

[z] - після голосних і дзвінких приголосних, крім [z], [ʒ], [dʒ]:

<b>a pencil</b>	<b>pencils</b> ['penslz]
<b>an egg</b>	<b>eggs</b> [egz]
<b>a name</b>	<b>names</b> [neimz]
<b>a glass ball</b>	<b>glass balls</b> [bɔ:lz]
<b>a flower</b>	<b>flowers</b> ['flaʊəs]
<b>a sea</b>	<b>seas</b> [si:z]
<b>a candle</b>	<b>candles</b> ['kændlz]
<b>a train</b>	<b>trains</b> [treinz]

[ɪz] - після звуків [s], [z], [ʃ], [tʃ], [ʒ], [dʒ]:

<b>a place</b>	<b>places</b> ['pleisɪz]
<b>a rose</b>	<b>poses</b> ['rouzɪz]
<b>a wish</b>	<b>wishes</b> ['wiʃɪz]
<b>a bench</b>	<b>benches</b> ['bentʃɪz]
<b>a garage</b>	<b>garages</b> ['gærɑ:ʒɪz]
<b>a page</b>	<b>pages</b> ['peɪdʒɪz]

Більшість іменників має у множині закінчення **-s**. Закінчення **-es** додається, якщо:

1. іменник в однині закінчується на **-s, -ss, -sh, -ch, -tch, -x**:

<b>a bus</b>	<b>buses</b>
<b>a class</b>	<b>classes</b>
<b>a bush</b>	<b>bushes</b>
<b>a lunch</b>	<b>lunches</b>
<b>a watch</b>	<b>watches</b>
<b>a box</b>	<b>boxes</b>

2. іменник в однині закінчується на **-y** з попередньою приголосною; при цьому **y** змінюється на **i**; наприклад:

a <u>story</u>	<u>stories</u>	
a <u>company</u>	<u>companies</u>	
a <u>fly</u>	<u>flies</u>	
а л е, якщо попередня голосна буква – е, змін у слові нема:		
a <u>monkey</u>	<u>monkeys</u>	
a <u>donkey</u>	<u>donkeys</u>	

3. іменник в однині закінчується на **-o** з попередньою приголосною:

a <u>hero</u>	<u>heroes</u>
a <u>tomato</u>	<u>tomatoes</u>
а л е	
a <u>piano</u>	<u>pianos</u>
a <u>photo</u>	<u>photos</u>

### Окремі випадки утворення множини іменників

У деяких іменниках, що в однині закінчуються на **-f** або **-fe**, у множині **f** змінюється на **v** з додаванням закінчення **-(e)s**; буквосполучення **-ves** вимовляється [vz]:

a <u>wife</u>	<u>wives</u>
a <u>shelf</u>	<u>shelves</u>
a <u>wolf</u>	<u>wolves</u>
a <u>half</u>	<u>halves</u>
a <u>leaf</u>	<u>leaves</u>
a <u>calf</u>	<u>calves</u>
a <u>knife</u>	<u>knives</u>
a <u>life</u>	<u>lives</u>

Усі інші іменники на **-f, -fe** – за загальним правилом:

a <u>roof</u>	<u>roofs</u>
a <u>safe</u>	<u>safes</u>
a <u>cliff</u>	<u>cliffs</u>
a <u>kerchief</u>	<u>kerchiefs</u>
a <u>chief</u>	<u>chiefs</u>

Іменник **a wharf** причал має дві форми множини: **wharfs, wharves**.

Якщо іменник в однині закінчується на **-th** [θ] після голосного або дифтонга, то у множині кінцевий звук [θ] змінюється на [ð], після якого закінчення множини **-s** вимовляється як [z]:

a <u>path</u> [pɑ:θ]	<u>paths</u> [pɑ:ðz]
a <u>mouth</u> [mauθ]	<u>mouths</u> [mauðz]

Але якщо перед кінцевим **-th** стоїть приголосний або короткий голосний, то множина утворюється за загальним правилом:

a <u>month</u> [mʌnθ]	<u>months</u> [mʌnθs]
a <u>smith</u> [smiθ] <i>коваль</i>	<u>smiths</u> [smiθs]

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

У слові **house** будинок кінцевий звук [s] перед закінченням множини змінюється на [z]:

a house [haus]	houses [hauziz]
----------------	-----------------

Множина деяких іменників утворюється зміною кореневого голосного (без додавання закінчення):

a man [mæn] чоловік	men [men]
a woman [wʊmən] жінка	women [wɪmɪn]
a foot [fʊt] нога, фут	feet [fi:t]
a tooth [tu:θ] зуб	teeth [ti:θ]
a louse [laus] воша	lice [lais]
a mouse [maʊs] миша	mice [maɪs]
a goose [gu:s] гуска	geese [gi:s]
a child [tʃaɪld] дитина	children [ˈtʃɪldrən]
an ox ['ɒks] бик	oxen ['ɒks(ə)n]
a sheep [ʃi:p] вівця	sheep [ʃi:p]
a deer [diə] олень	deer [diə]
a buffalo ['bʌfə,ləʊ] буйвол	buffalo ['bʌfə,ləʊ]
a swine [swain] свиня	swine [swain]
a fish [fɪʃ] риба	fish [fɪʃ]
an aircraft ['eə,kra:ft] літак	aircraft ['eə,kra:ft]
a spacecraft ['speɪs,kra:ft] космічний корабель	spacecraft ['speɪs,kra:ft]
a chassis ['ʃæsi] шасі	chassis ['ʃæsi]

He saw some deer in the forest. Він побачив в лісі кілька оленів.

They caught a lot of fish. Вони зловили багато риби.

I caught two fish. Я зловив дві риби.

Але, форма **fishes** може вживатися, коли йдеться про різні види риб.

In this lake there are fishes of many varieties. У цьому озері є риба різних видів.

Іменник **people** має два значення

<b>people</b>	- люди (множина) - a lot of <u>people</u> багато <u>людей</u>
	- народ (однина) - all <u>peoples</u> of the world всі <u>народи</u> світу

Щодо утворення множини у **Compound Nouns** складених іменників

1) У складених іменниках форму множини приймає головне слово:

a custom-house митниця	custom- <u>houses</u>
a man of-war військовий корабель	men of-war
a passer-by перехожий	passers-by
a hotel-keeper власник готелю	hotel- <u>keepers</u>
a daughter-in-law невістка	daughters-in-law
a school-mate шкільний товариш	school- <u>mates</u>
a schoolboy школяр	school <u>boys</u>
a housewife домогосподарка	house <u>wives</u>

Деякі іменники латинського та грецького походження зберігають форми множини, які вони мали в цих мовах:

<b>an addendum</b> [ə'dendəm] додаток, доповнення	<b>addenda</b> [ə'dendə]
<b>an analysis</b> [ə'nælisɪs] аналіз	<b>analyses</b> [ə'nælisɪ:z]
<b>an antenna</b> [æn'tenə] антена	<b>antennae</b> [æn'teni:]
<b>a bacterium</b> [bæk'tɪ(ə)rɪəm] бактерія, мікроб	<b>bacteria</b> [bæk'tɪ(ə)rɪə]
<b>a basis</b> ['beɪsɪs] основа, підстава, базис	<b>bases</b> ['beɪsɪ:z]
<b>a bacillus</b> [bə'sɪləs] бацила, паличка	<b>bacilli</b> [bə'sɪləɪ]
<b>a cactus</b> ['kæktəs] кактус	<b>cacti</b> ['kæktai]
<b>a crisis</b> ['kraɪsɪs] криза	<b>crises</b> ['kraɪsɪ:z]
<b>a curriculum</b> [kə'rɪkjʊləm] навчальний план (у школі, університеті)	<b>a curricula</b> [kə'rɪkjʊlə]
<b>a datum</b> ['deɪtəm] дана величина	<b>data</b> ['deɪtə]
<b>an erratum</b> [ɪ'rɑ:təm] друкарська помилка	<b>errata</b> [ɪ'rɑ:tə]
<b>a formula</b> ['fɔ:mjʊlə] формула	<b>formulae</b> ['fɔ:mjʊli:]
<b>a fungus</b> ['fʌŋɡəs] гриб, грибок, пліснява	<b>fungi</b> ['fʌŋɡaɪ, 'fʌndʒaɪ, 'fʌndʒɪ]
<b>a genius</b> ['dʒɪ:niəs] геній, дух	<b>genii</b> ['dʒɪ:nɪaɪ]
<b>a medium</b> ['mi:diəm] засіб	<b>media</b> ['mi:diə]
<b>a memorandum</b> [memə'rændəm] замітка	<b>memoranda</b> [memə'rændə]
<b>a nucleus</b> ['nju:kliəs] ядро	<b>nuclei</b> ['nju:kliəɪ]
<b>a phenomenon</b> [fi'nɒmɪnən] явище, феномен	<b>phenomena</b> [fi'nɒmɪnə]
<b>a radius</b> ['reɪdiəs] радіус	<b>radii</b> ['reɪdiəɪ]
<b>a stimulus</b> ['stɪmjʊləs] стимул	<b>stimuli</b> ['stɪmjʊləɪ]
<b>a spectrum</b> ['spektrəm] спектр	<b>spectra</b> ['spektrə]
<b>a terminus</b> ['tɜ:mɪnəs] кінцева зупинка	<b>termini</b> ['tɜ:mɪnaɪ]
<b>a thesis</b> ['θɪ:sɪs] теза; дисертація	<b>theses</b> ['θɪ:sɪ:z]

2) Якщо першим словом складеного іменника є слово **man** або **woman**, то обидва слова приймають форму множини:

<b>a man-servant</b> слуга	<b>men-servants</b>
<b>a woman-doctor</b> жінка-лікар	<b>women-doctors</b>

3) Якщо складений іменник утворений з різних частин мови, то закінчення множини додається в кінці слова:

<b>a forget-me-not</b> незабудка	<b>forget-me-nots</b>
<b>a merry-go-round</b> карусель	<b>merry-go-rounds</b>

#### 4. Cases of Nouns

Що стосується відмінків, то англійська система набагато простіша. На відміну від української мови, де є шість відмінків іменника, в англійській мові їх лише два: **Загальний the Common Case** і **присвійний the Possessive Case**.

Загальний відмінок **the Common Case** не має спеціальних відмінкових закінчень. Зв'язок іменника в загальному відмінку з іншими словами виражається прийменниками, а також місцем, яке іменник займає в реченні.

Присвійний відмінок **the Possessive Case** відповідає на запитання **whose?** "чий? чия? чие? чий?".

Присвійний відмінок однини утворюється додаванням до іменника апострофа та закінчення -s:

друзі Джека	<b>Jack's friends</b>
іграшка Катрусі	<b>Kate's toy</b>



Якщо іменник у множині закінчується на **-s**, то у присвійному відмінку **МНОЖИНИ** до нього додається лише апостроф, а у вимові ніяких змін не відбувається:

<b>the meeting of pupils</b> <i>учнівські збори</i>	<b>the pupils' meeting</b>
<b>the rooms of managers</b> <i>кімнати менеджерів</i>	<b>the managers' rooms</b>

У присвійному відмінку вживаються в основному іменники, що означають **назви істот**:

<b>my friend's mother</b>	<i>мати мого друга</i>
<b>the hawk's nest</b>	<i>гніздо яструба</i>

Крім назв істот, у присвійному відмінку вживаються:

а) іменники, що означають час та відстань:

<b>last week's salary</b>	<i>зарплата за минулий тиждень</i>
<b>two year's absence</b>	<i>дворічна відсутність</i>
<b>at a mile's distance</b>	<i>на відстані в одну милю</i>

б) назви країн, міст, а також слова **country** *країна*; **town, city** *місто*; **world** *світ*; **ocean** *океан*; **river** *річка*:

<b>Kyiv's parks</b>	<i>парки Києва</i>
<b>England's foreign trade</b>	<i>зовнішня торгівля Англії</i>
<b>the river's banks</b>	<i>береги річки</i>

в) назви небесних тіл: **the sun** *сонце*; **the moon** *місяць*; **the earth** *земля*:

<b>the sun's rays</b>	<i>промені сонця</i>
<b>the Moon's surface</b>	<i>поверхня Місяця</i>

г) збірні іменники типу **government** *уряд*; **party** *партія*; **army** *армія*; **crew** *команда, екіпаж*; **family** *сім'я*; **society** *суспільство, товариство*:

<b>the government's proposals</b>	<i>пропозиції уряду</i>
<b>the society's members</b>	<i>члени товариства</i>

У присвійному відмінку вживаються також стійкі словосполучення: **a stone's throw** *незначна відстань*, **to one's heart's content** *досхочу*.

Також присвійний відмінок утворюється за допомогою прийменника **of**:

<b>my friend's father</b>	<i>або</i>	<b>the father of my friend</b>	<i>батько мого друга;</i>
<b>the teacher's book</b>		<b>the book of the teacher</b>	<i>книга викладача.</i>

## 5. Grammar Exercises

### 1. Make the words Plural

a boy; a roof; a monkey; a glass; a school-mate; a company; a lunch; a mother-in-law; a path; a payment; a forget-me-not; a man-servant; an arm; a chief; a branch; a piano; a photo; a fountainpen; a hero; a daughter-in-law; a dish; a fly; a drinking-song; a month; a child; a shelf; a tomato; news; a human; a housewife; a fish.

**2. Translate the following Nouns and denote them by the type of morphological structure (*the Simple Noun, the Derived Noun, the Compound Noun*)**

a fountainpen; friendship; an arm; a book-lover; rain; ice; school; a drinking-song; water; a way; childhood; a merry-go-round a house; a pianist; a building; a dictation; a writer; happiness; a schoolgirl; a railroad.

**3. Translate the word-combinations**

**into Ukrainian**

**into English**

<i>a piece of information; a piece of good news; a sheet of paper; a tablespoonful of sugar; a teaspoonful of salt; exotic fruits; French perfumes; two pieces of good advice</i>	<i>пляшка мінеральної води; пакет цукру; буханка білого хліба; італійські вина; три корисні поради; погана новина</i>
---	---

**4. Make the words of Latin origin Plural**

Curriculum, medium, memorandum, datum, alumnus, genus, symposium, corpus, synopsis, diagnosis, criterion, appendix, portmanteau, matrix.

**5. Choose the correct Plural form**

1. **child** (*childs, children*) 2. **delay** (*delais, delayes, delays*) 3. **watch** (*watch, watches, watchs*) 4. **gas** (*gases, gas*) 5. **eagle** (*eagls, eagle, eagles*) 6. **holiday** (*holidays, holidayes, holidayis*) 7. **wife** (*wifs, wives, wifes*) 8. **currency** (*currencys, currencies*) 9. **chief** (*chieves, chiefs, chiefes*) 10. **kiss** (*kisses, kiss*) 11. **secretary-elect** (*secretarys-elect, secretaries-elect, secretaries-elects*) 12. **studio** (*studios, studioes*) 13. **basis** (*basis, bases, basises*) 14. **vice-president** (*vice-presidents, vices-presidents, vice-presidentes*) 15. **son-in-law** (*sons-in-low, son-in-laws, sons-in-laws*) 16. **toothbrush** (*teethbrushes, teethbrush, toothbrushes*) 17. **radio** (*radios, radio, radioes*) 18. **mainframe** (*mainsframe, mainframs, mainframes*)

**Practice 2**

**Text: “Makaton”**

**Read the text “Makaton”**

Did you use Makaton when you were a child? Many people did. Today over 100,000 people, children and adults use it in more than forty countries! So, what is Makaton? And which country speaks it?

In fact, it isn't a normal language. There isn't a country where people speak Makaton because it's an invented language. But it is very useful to a lot of people. In 1970 three researchers at the Royal College for Deaf People invented the language for people who had problems communicating. It was for people who could not hear, people who had learning problems, people who had problem communicating, and especially, for young children who were slow learning to speak.

Makaton uses movements of the hand and body, and expression on the face together with the spoken words to communicate. It's possible to communicate more than 7.000 ideas! When the speaker starts to use spoken language (like a young child)



he uses Makaton and words and stops using Makaton completely. For other people with bigger problems, Makaton helps them “talk” to other people. For example, it can help them take part in games, read and tell stories, and show how they are feeling.

Margaret Walker, Katherine Johnstone and Tony Comforth created the language and their wonderful idea helps a lot of people today. The name of the language is the first letters of their names.

### Vocabulary

**adult** ['ædelt] дорослий, повнолітній; зріла людина

**researcher** [risɜ:ʃə] дослідник

**deaf** [def] глухий; глухуватий

**communicate** повідомляти, підтримувати зв'язок, спілкуватися

### 1. Answer the following questions

1. What are the names of researchers of Makaton?
2. Who invented Makaton?
3. What does Makaton mean?
4. How many people use Makaton?
5. What people were Makaton invented for?
6. Where is the country where people speak Makaton?
7. When was this language invented?
8. How many researchers invented this language?
9. Why Makaton is the name of this language?

### 2. Find in the text

*рухи рук і тіла -*

*які не чують -*

*може допомогти їм -*

*перші літери їхніх -*

*взяти участь у іграх -*

*вираз обличчя -*

*сьогодні більше ніж -*

*як вони почувуються -*

*вигадана (штучна) мова -*

*починає розмовляти -*

*особливо для маленьких дітей -*

*багато людей -*

*для глухих людей -*

### 3. Read the text again and write true or false

1. Makaton is a normal language.
2. In 1950 three researchers invented the Makaton language.
3. Today over 100,000 people, children and adults use it.
4. Makaton can help deaf people take part in games, read and tell stories, and show how they are feeling.
5. The researchers at Oxford and Cambridge invented this language.

6. A lot of people, children and adults use Makaton in more than ten countries.
7. Three researchers invented the language for deaf people.
8. Makaton is an invented language.
9. Makaton was invented for people who could not speak.
10. Makaton uses movements of the hand and body, and expression on the face/
11. The name of the language is the fourth letters of their names.

**4. Put in Plural form the following nouns. For example: a box – some boxes**

1. a person – many \_\_\_\_;
2. a banana – four \_\_\_\_;
3. a deer – some \_\_\_\_;
4. a watch – three \_\_\_\_;
5. a cup – fifteen \_\_\_\_;
6. a knife – ten \_\_\_\_;
7. a sheep – a hundred \_\_\_\_;
8. a chair – some \_\_\_\_;
9. a tooth – thirty-two \_\_\_\_;
10. a family – some \_\_\_\_;
11. a foot – two \_\_\_\_;
12. a fountain-pen – eleven \_\_\_\_;
13. a photo – some \_\_\_\_;
14. an ox – several \_\_\_\_;
15. a wish – many \_\_\_\_

**5. Complete the sentences with the affirmative and negative imperative form of the verbs in the box. For example: Don't attack snakes of other animals.**

*swim, use, forget, make, wear, look*

1. \_\_\_\_ in the river. There are crocodiles.
2. \_\_\_\_ sunscreen every day in summer.
3. \_\_\_\_ your torch in the day. You need it to see at night.
4. \_\_\_\_ at the compass and find north.
5. \_\_\_\_ dinner on the stove. 6. \_\_\_\_ waterproof clothes. It's going to rain.

**6. Reread the text “Makaton” and do the test**

1. There isn't a country where people speak Makaton because it's an \_\_\_\_.  
a) invented language    b) fictitious language    c) new language
2. Makaton uses movements of the hand and body, and expression on the face together with the \_\_\_\_ to communicate.  
a) millions of words    b) spoken words    c) invented words
3. Today over \_\_\_\_ people, children and adults use Makaton.  
a) 2 million    b) 100,000    c) 1,500,000
4. In \_\_\_\_ researchers at the Royal College for Deaf People invented the language for people.  
a) at the beginning of 15<sup>th</sup> century    b) 1907    c) 1970
5. Children and adults use Makaton in more than \_\_\_\_ countries!  
a) fifty    b) sixty    c) forty
6. The name of the language is the \_\_\_\_ of their names.  
a) first letters    b) four or three letters    c) three surnames
7. \_\_\_\_ at the Royal College for Deaf People invented the language for people who had problems communicating.  
a) two researchers    b) four scientists    c) three researchers
8. For other people with bigger problems, Makaton \_\_\_\_ “talk” to other people.  
a) helps them    b) allow to do    c) think that
9. Makaton was for people who could not \_\_\_\_, people who had learning

problems, people who had problem communicating.

- a) see    b) speak    c) hear

10. Makaton uses movements of the hand and body, and \_\_\_\_\_ together with the spoken words to communicate.

- a) movements of the face    b) expression on the face    c) communication

### Practice 3 Grammar: The Article

Артикль це особливе службове слово, яке вживається тільки з іменником. В українській мові такої частини мови немає.

Сучасна англійська мова має три артикли: **неозначений Indefinite Article a (an)**, **означений Definite Article the** і **нульовий**, або **значуща відсутність артикля**.

**Неозначений артикль** бере початок від староанглійського числівника **ān (one один)**. Ось чому він вживається лише перед злічуваними іменниками в однині. Вживання **неозначеного артикля** показує, що об'єкт є представником якогось класу.

**Означений артикль** розвинувся з староанглійського вказівного займенника **se (той)** і вживається в однині і в множині. Вживання **означеного артикля** показує, що мається на увазі якийсь конкретний об'єкт.

**a book - an interesting English book** – цікава англійська книга (невідомо яка);

**the book - the interesting English book** – цікава англійська книга (саме ця книга).

Article		
<i>Indefinite Article</i> <i>Неозначений Артикль a</i> <i>(або an)</i>	<i>Definite Article</i> <i>Означений Артикль</i> <i>the</i>	<i>нульовий артикль</i> <i>або</i> <i>значуща відсутність артикля</i>
<b>a book</b> - якась одна книга, про яку йде мова вперше; <b>an apple</b> - якесь яблуко, з багатьох інших;	<b>the book</b> - визначена, певна книга, про яку щось відомо	Термін “нульовий” артикль підкреслює, що будь-який артикль у цьому випадку буде помилкою

Називаючи предмет вперше, перед ним вживається незначений артикль **a (an)**. називаючи цей самий предмет вдруге, ставиться означений артикль **the**:

**This is a book. The book is interesting.** Це книга. Вона цікава.

Деякі словосполучення потрібно запам'ятати:

1)

to <b>the</b> cinema	at <b>the</b> cinema
to <b>the</b> theatre	at <b>the</b> theatre
to <b>the</b> shop	at <b>the</b> shop
to <b>the</b> market	at <b>the</b> market
to <b>the</b> country	<b>the</b> rest of <b>the</b>

2)

to go for <u>a</u> walk after <u>a</u> while <u>a</u> great deal	in <u>a</u> day in <u>a</u> week in <u>a</u> month in <u>a</u> year
--	--

3)

it's high time to take aim to take care of it was morning it was daytime it was night by mistake at dinner (breakfast, supper) from time to time	at sunrise at sunset from place to place to go on strike to be on strike by day at first sight by heart	in town to town for life to go to school to go to college to go to work at night to take part to declare war
--	--	--

### 1. Usage of Articles

Indefinite Article	Definite Article	нульовий артикль
<p>1) після слова <i>such</i>: <i>Such a good book.</i></p> <p>2) перед числівниками <i>hundred, thousand, million</i> якщо мається на увазі <i>одна сотня, одна тисяча</i> тощо: <i>a (one) hundred</i>; а також: <i>a dozen</i> дюжина; <i>a score</i> двадцять;</p> <p>3) перед іменниками, які означають одиниці виміру: <i>a (one) glass of wine</i>; <i>a cup of tea</i>;</p> <p>4) у значенні числівника <i>one</i> з іменниками, які позначають час, відстань, вагу: <i>an (one) hour</i>; <i>half a kilo</i> півкіло; <i>40 km an hour</i> 40 км на год.; <i>five times a week</i> п'ять разів на тиждень;</p> <p>5) у сталих виразах: <i>as a rule</i> як правило; <i>to be in a hurry</i> поспішати; <i>to catch a cold</i> застудитися; <i>a lot of</i> багато, безліч; <i>a bit</i> трошки; <i>to ask a question</i> ставити запитання; <i>to be a child</i> бути дитиною; <i>a little</i> трошки; <i>to make a noise</i> галасувати; <i>a number of</i> цілий ряд/певна кількість; <i>to be in a position</i> бути у змозі; <i>it's a pity</i> шкода; <i>as a result of</i> в результаті (чогось);</p> <p>6) у сполученні і дієсловами <i>to have, to take, to give</i>: <i>to have a headache</i> мати</p>	<p>1) коли ціла родина називається на прізвище: <i>The Joneses live in California.</i></p> <p>2) перед назвами річок, каналів, морів, океанів: <i>the Dnipro</i>; <i>the Black Sea</i>; <i>the Pasific Ocean</i>;</p> <p>3) перед назвами країн і штатів, які включають слова <i>union</i> союз, <i>republic</i> республіка, <i>kingdom</i> королівство, <i>state</i> штат, <i>emirates</i> емірати: <i>the USA</i>; <i>the Republic of Ireland</i>; <i>the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Nothern Ireland</i>;</p> <p>4) <i>the next</i> (у значенні: наступний)</p> <p><i>the last</i> (у значенні: останній);</p> <p>5) <i>the best</i> найкращий найвищий ступінь порівняння прикметника;</p> <p>6) перед назвами наукових винаходів: <i>the TV set</i>; <i>the radio</i>; але <i>to watch TV</i> дивитися телевізор;</p> <p>7) місцезнаходження: <i>in the middle of</i> посередині; <i>in the street</i> на вулиці; <i>near the</i> біля;</p> <p>8) <i>in the morning</i> зранку; <i>in the afternoon</i> вдень; <i>in the evening</i> ввечері; але <i>at night</i>;</p> <p>9) <i>the same</i> (той самий);</p> <p>10) перед назвами музичних</p>	<p>1) перед власними назвами: <i>Ivanova</i>; <i>Helen</i>;</p> <p>2) перед назвами міст, сіл, вулиць, парків, аеропортів, вокзалів, університетів і т.ін.: <i>Kyiv</i>; <i>Trafalgar Square</i>; <i>Coronation Street</i>; <i>Cambridge University</i>; <i>London Zoo</i>; <i>Westminster Abbey</i>; <i>Gatwick Airport</i>;</p> <p>3) назви країн: <i>Ukraine</i>; <i>France</i></p> <p>4) перед незлічуваними іменниками: <i>ice</i>; <i>water</i>; <i>sand</i>; <i>air</i>; <i>tea</i>; <i>coffee</i>;</p> <p>5) перед абстрактними поняттями: <i>television</i>; <i>music</i>; <i>life</i>; <i>examinations</i>; <i>love</i>; <i>friendship</i>;</p> <p>6) перед деякими сталими виразами та словосполученнями: <i>at school</i> в школі; <i>at home</i> вдома; <i>in time</i> вчасно; <i>by bus</i> автобусом; <i>from beginning to end</i> від початку до кінця; <i>from right to left</i> справа наліво; <i>from north to south</i> з півночі на південь; <i>to go to sea</i> вийти в море; <i>in front</i> попереду; <i>from face to face</i> віч на віч; <i>after breakfast</i> після сніданку; <i>for lunch</i> на ланч; <i>before dinner</i> перед обідом; <i>at breakfast</i> за сніданком;</p> <p>7) у таких виразах: <i>have dinner/supper/breakfast</i>; <i>cook lunch</i>; <i>make tea</i>; <i>prepare supper</i>;</p> <p>8) перед назвами днів тижня, місяців та пори року: <i>Sunday</i>;</p>

<p>головний біль; <b>to have a talk</b> розмовляти; <b>to have a good time</b> чудово провести час; <b>to have a mind</b> намагатися; <b>to have a look</b> поглянути;</p> <p>7) якщо іменник означає назву професії однієї особи: <b>a doctor; an engineer;</b></p> <p>8) після звороту <b>there is (there was, there will be):</b> <b>There is an interesting book on the table.</b> На столі – цікава книжка.</p> <p>9) у конструкціях <b>I have a ...; He has a ...; I see a ...; This is a ...; That is a ...; It is a ...; I am a ...; He is a ...; She is a ...: I have a dog.</b> В мене є собака. <b>She is a student.</b> Вона – студентка.</p>	<p>інструментів: <b>the piano; the guitar; the trumpet;</b></p> <p>11) перед назвами унікальних предметів та явищ, що існують в однині: <b>the Moon; the sun; the sky; the world; the earth; the Bible; the North Pole;</b></p> <p>12) у сталих виразах: <b>to speak the truth</b> говорити правду; <b>on the one hand</b> з одного боку; <b>to read in the original</b> читати в оригіналі; <b>the day before yesterday</b> позавчора; <b>the day after tomorrow</b> післязавтра; <b>in the country</b> в селі (за містом); <b>on the whole</b> в цілому;</p> <p>13) перед іменниками, що означають державні служби: <b>the police the army; the fire brigade</b></p> <p>14) у виразі <b>What is the time now?</b> у значенні: <i>Яка зараз година?</i></p> <p>15) перед назвами сторін світу: <b>the West, the South, the East, the North;</b></p> <p>16) перед назвами театрів, музеїв, готелів, ресторанів: <b>the Hilton Hotel; the Dresden Gallery; the National Theatre.</b></p> <p>17) перед назвами більшості англійських та американських газет та журналів: <b>the Washington Post; the Daily Telegraph; the Guardian; the Independent; the Daily Worker; the Timber Trade; the Times; the Daily Sport</b></p> <p>18) перед назвами суден: <b>the “Titanic”; the “Admiral Nakhimov”;</b></p> <p>19) перед іменником у значенні народ: <b>the people;</b></p> <p>20) перед назвами країн, що мають форму множини: <b>the Netherlands</b> Нідерланди (Голандія);</p> <p>21) перед назвою міста Гаага: <b>the Hague.</b></p>	<p><b>Monday; Tuesday; November; December; Spring; Winter;</b></p> <p>9) якщо перед іменником стоять такі прикметники: <b>many/much: much snow;</b></p> <p>10) перед назвами ігор: <b>tennis; golf; boxing;</b></p> <p>11) перед назвами деяких хвороб: <b>measles кір; mumps свинка;</b></p> <p>12) перед назвами мов: <b>English; Russian; Italian;</b></p> <p>13) <b>next</b> у значенні: <i>майбутній</i>, <b>last</b> у значенні: <i>минулий</i>.</p> <p>14) перед назвами озер, водоспадів: <b>lake Ontario, lake Baikal, Niagara waterfall;</b></p> <p>15) перед назвами планет: <b>Mars, Venus, Saturn;</b></p> <p>16) перед назвами журналів: <b>Cosmopolitan, Natalie;</b></p> <p>17) якщо перед іменником стоїть присвійний, вказівний, питальний, або неозначений займенник: <b>my brother; his book; this bag; this book; whose bag; every year; some days; no books;</b></p> <p>18) перед назвами свят: <b>Easter; New Year; Christmas;</b></p> <p>19) перед назвами кольорів у значенні іменників: <b>I like red. He prefers black.</b></p> <p>20) перед назвами континентів: <b>Africa, Europe, Australia.</b></p>
---	--	--



## 2. Usage of the Indefinite Article

Коли іменник вживається у загальному значенні, і те, що говориться про одного представника класу, можна сказати про всіх представників цього класу. У такому випадку неозначений артикль має значення «кожний»:

*A ball is round.*

*A new-born puppy is blind.*

*A picture is usually hung on the wall.*

*A detective story helps to while away the time.*

З іменниками *sun, moon, sky* якщо перед ними стоїть означення:

*A **bright sun** seemed to indicate late morning.*

*A **full moon** rode between the elm trees and there was silence as of the grave.*

З іменником в однині, якщо йому передує описове значення:

*She was **a pretty woman** of forty.*

*Then **a sweet young lady** entered, leading **a meek-looking little** foxterrier.*

З іменниками, що означають речовини, якщо перед ними стоїть означення, яке описує різні види або якості:

*A **good juice** is naturally preferred to beer after dinner.*

*He likes **a good red wine**.*

*Then she began explaining how **a good medicine** could be made of the root of that plant.*

З абстрактним іменником, якщо він має описове означення, що виражає різновидність якості, стану, почуття тощо:

*How clever you are, Mr. Hopper. You have **a wit cleverness**.*

*I am very fond of Helen, there is **a great charm** about the girl.*

*Then she gave **a crisp, ironic, almost cheerful laugh**...*

З іменниками *period, population, distance, height, salary* тощо, якщо за ними іде конструкція *of* + числівник + іменник:

*London has **a population of about 11 million people**.*

*Simpson was out of the city for **a period of ten days**.*

*Suddenly I saw him at **a distance of 10 metres**.*

З власним іменником (ім'я, прізвище) в однині, щоб показати, що ця особа є одним з членів саме цієї родини:

*Sam smiled and said "Why, you are quite **a Monte Kristo**."*

*Is there **a Henry** in the world who could be insensible to such a declaration.*

З назвами днів і місяців, якщо їм передує описове означення:

*A **cold May** is the usual thing in this town.*

*I saw her on **a hot Saturday**.*

З назвами днів, коли мається на увазі один з багатьох понеділів – п'ятниць тощо:

*Robinson Crusoe found his servant on a **Friday**.*

*I knew it was not a public day; the public came on a **Tuesday**.*

З іменником – прикладкою, що означає твір мистецтва чи особу, які не є добре відомими у світі:

*Pericles, a **comedy** by Shakespeare, is not widely read.*

*Nikitin, a **Russian poet**, wrote poems about nature.*

З іменником, якому передуює одна з конструкцій *so* + прикметник, *too* + прикметник, *as* + прикметник:

*This is **too short** a string.*

*It was **as black** a house inside as outside.*

*It was **as lovely** a morning as one could desire.*

В реченнях після слів *quite*, *such*, *what* (*what* в окличних реченнях):

*She is **quite** a child.*

***What** a good friend he is!*

***Such** an intricate piece of machinery!*

перед і після слова *rather*:

*It is a **rather** puzzling question.*

*He told us **rather** a long story.*

З іменниками *day*, *night*, *morning*, *evening*, *afternoon* та іменниками, які позначають пори року, якщо їм передуює описове означення:

*I spend a **sleepless** night.*

*It was a **foggy** evening in November.*

*A **fine September** afternoon was dying fast.*

*It was a **cold** spring.*

*He met her in a **rainy cold** autumn.*

З іменниками *breakfast*, *dinner*, *supper*, *lunch*, якщо їм передуює описове означення:

*After a **hearty** breakfast the four gentlemen went to park.*

*I saw to it that he had a **good** dinner.*

### 3. Pronunciation

Перед іменниками, які починаються на приголосні букви: *d*; *f*; *s*; ... артикль *the* вимовляється [ðə].

Перед іменниками, які починаються на голосні букви: *a*; *e*; *i*; ... артикль *the* вимовляється [ði:].

#### 4. Usage of the Definite Article

Щодо вживання означеного артикля:

Коли власне ім'я супроводжується постійним означенням:

***Petro the Great; Elizabeth the Second***

Означений артикль вживається іменником, якщо поруч з ним знаходиться обмежувальне означення або обмежувальне підрядне означальне речення, що вказує, про який предмет йде мова і має значення “той самий, саме той, цей”:

*I hated the idea of going to that house.*

*This is the house that Jack built.*

*The man of whom I speak is a pantomime actor.*

*His uncle had the orchestra of his own.*

*Show me the woolen jacket which is on the left.*

З іменниками в однині, коли він є представником якогось певного класу з однаковими родовими характеристиками:

***The tragedy and the comedy** first appeared in Greece.*

***The lion** is the king of the desert.*

З іменником, якому передуює конструкція **some of, many of, none of, most of**:

***Most of the members** of his expedition were young men.*

***Some of the boys** missed the lessons yesterday.*

***None of the friends** knew the truth.*

З іменниками, які оформлені займенниками **same** і прикметниками **wrong** (не той), **right** (той), **very** (саме той, той самий), **only** (єдиний):

*I do wish we had not opened the door of **the wrong room.***

*Yesterday I bought **the same book** as you did.*

*Mr. Burton is **the very person** I wanted.*

*he was **the only son** of a late professor of chemistry.*

З незалежними прикметниками і дієприкметниками (з такими, що виступають у ролі іменників):

***The rich don't understand the poor.***

***The old can't help the young.***

З абстрактним іменником, якщо він має обмежувальне означення або уточнюється ситуацією:

***The weather** was beautiful; it wasn't raining.*

*Last night I heard “Carmen” and enjoyed **the music.***

***The approach** to the gateway was deep and muddy.*

З іменником, який показує професію, якщо далі слідує ім'я або прізвище особи, яка має цю професію:

***The painter Gainsborough** has left many fine pictures.*

***The teacher Fox** left school in spring.*

***The engineer Brown** improved that old machine.*



З іменами осіб, які означені прикметниками або дієприкметниками (крім *old, young, poor, dear, little, honest, lazy*):

*The astonished George could not say a word.*

*The clever Amelia knew everything.*

*This was the famous Frank Sinatra whom he had read about.*

Назви озер вживаються з означеним артиклем, якщо перед власною назвою не стоїть слово *lake*:

*The Ontario is the lake.*

*Lake Ontario is situated in the USA and Canada.*

З назвами гірських масивів:

*The Crimean Mountains stood in all their beauty.*

*She saw the Himalayas for the first time in her life.*

З назвами пустель:

*I would like to see the Sahara one day.*

*We saw the Gobi on TV last week.*

З назвами островів і архіпелагів:

*The UK lies on the British Isles.*

*Last year my friend visited the Canaries.*

Зі словами *taiga, tundra, steppe, prairie*:

*We always wanted to see the prairie.*

*The most of our region is occupied by the steppe.*

*The taiga covers two-thirds of this territory.*

З назвами кораблів, готелів, газет, журналів:

*I am going to Folkstone today, and shall stay at the "Metropole".*

*"The Times" is his favourite newspaper.*

З назвами пам'яток, музеїв, галерей, бібліотек, кіно (театрів):

*The famous Whispering Gallery is situated in St. Paul's Cathedral.*

*The White Tower was built in 1078 by William the Conqueror.*

*All of Englishmen know that The British Museum is in the West End.*

*We often go to see new films to the "Babylon".*

З назвами днів і місяців, якщо вони мають обмежувальне значення:

*The May of 1945 will always rest on our memories.*

*The June of 2017 was the happiest day in her life.*

*She came on the Friday when Davis was born.*

З іменниками, перед якими стоїть власна назва у загальному відмінку:

*I often go to the Pushkin Theatre.*

*The sets of furniture were imitations of one of the Louis period.*

*The Pulkovo observatory is over one hundred years old.*

У таких сталих словосполученнях:

<b>it is out of the question</b>	про це не може бути й мови
He said his going on an excursion was <b>out of the question</b> .	
<b>on the whole</b>	загалом
She was a happy person <b>on the whole</b> .	
<b>in the original</b>	в оригіналі
I read Italian books <b>in the original</b> .	
<b>to keep the house</b>	сидіти вдома
He has a cold and will have <b>to keep the house</b> for a couple of days.	
<b>the other day</b>	днями (відноситься до минулого)
I met him <b>the other day</b> .	
He promised to take me there <b>the other day</b> .	
<b>on the one hand ... on the other hand</b>	з одного боку ... з іншого боку
<b>On the one hand</b> he is always ready to help you, <b>on the other hand</b> he is very lazy.	
<b>to tell (speak) the truth</b>	говорити правду
He always <b>speaks the truth</b> .	
<b>To tell the truth</b> I dislike him.	
<b>to keep the bed</b>	залишатися в ліжку
He was ill and <b>kept the bed</b> last week.	
If you are not well go home and <b>keep the bed</b> for a couple of days.	
<b>by the way</b>	між іншим
<b>By the way</b> he saw her last Wednesday.	
<b>on the right (left)</b>	справа (зліва)
The village was <b>on the right</b> and the river was <b>on the left</b> .	
<b>to be on the safe side</b>	для певності
I am almost sure of the pronunciation of this name, but <b>to be on the safe side</b> let us consult the pronouncing dictionary.	
<b>To be on the safe side</b> we decided to go there at once.	
<b>to run the risk</b>	ризикувати
Having eaten much ice-cream she <b>ran the risk</b> to catch a cold.	

З іменником-прикладкою, якщо йде мова про добре відому особу чи твір:  
*Hamlet, the immortal tragedy by Shakespeare, was written in the 17<sup>th</sup> century.*  
*Lina Kostenko, the talented Ukrainian poetess, lives abroad.*

Абстрактні іменники вживаються без артикля: **Fear** is a negative emotion.  
 What is the secret of true **happiness**?

але, артикль ставиться перед абстрактними іменниками (**hate; happiness; fear; music; luck and etc.**), якщо після них стоїть пояснююче слово:

*This film is about **the fear of spiders**.*

*I can't describe **the happiness I felt**.*

Слова **school, college, university, institute, church, hospital, court, prison** та ін. не потребують артикля, якщо вони означають ЗАКЛАД: John was sent to **prison**.

але: His mother went to **the prison** to visit him last week. He has been in **hospital for a week**. але: There was a bomb scare at **the hospital** this morning.

Назви країн, вулиць, будинків, гір, озер, парків, островів не потребують артикля: **Turkey; Times Square; Mount Fuji**

але, якщо назва у множині: **the Alps; the Netherlands**

Назви днів тижня, місяців, свят не потребують артикля: **on Monday, in September**

але, on **the Saturday** of the wedding; **The Easter** that we spent in Paris.

Слова **dinner, lunch, supper, breakfast** не потребують артикля:

**Supper** is at 8. але, **The dinner** he served was awful.

Артикль **the** обов'язково ставиться після слів **half, double, twice, all, both**:

**half the time**;

**twice the distance**;

**double the price**;

**all the time**;

**both the boys / both boys**

Слово **most** вживається без артикля: **most people**

але, **Most of the apples** were rotten.

Артикль **the** обов'язково ставиться перед назвами кінотеатрів: **the Odeon, the Ukraina**;

готелів: **the Hilton, the Myr**;

театрів: **the Rex**;

музеїв: **the Prado, the Hermitage**;

газет: **the Times**;

кораблів: **the Queen Mary**;

приморських курортів та ін. (**countryside, seaside**):

**We go to the beach every Sunday.**

Артикль **the** обов'язково ставиться перед назвами груп островів: **the Bahamas**,

назвами пустель: **the Gobi desert**

та у назвах, що містять **of**: **the Tower of London**

Артикль **the** обов'язково ставиться перед словами **Queen, President** якщо після цих слів немає імені:

**the Queen, the President**

але, якщо після цих слів іде ім'я:

**Queen Elizabeth, President Kennedy**

Слова **home, father, mother and etc.** вживаються без артикля:

**Father isn't at home.**

Можна подати безліч правил щодо того, який саме артикль слід вживати у тому чи іншому випадку, стільки ж буде і винятків.

Наприклад,

Перед незлічуваними та абстрактними поняттями, як **weather** *погода*, **music** *музика*; **food** *їжа* і т.д. артикля нема, але

I like nice <u>weather</u> .		<u>The weather</u> is very nice today. Сьогодні хороша <i>погода</i> . (мається на увазі – „погода сьогодні”)
I like <u>music</u> .	<u>але</u>	I like <u>the music</u> of this film. Мені подобається <i>музика</i> з цього кінофільма. (мається на увазі – „саме ця музика”)

Перед назвами шкільних дисциплін також не ставиться артикль, але:

I don't like <u>History</u> because it's boring subject.	<u>але</u>	He is interested in <u>the History</u> of his country. Він цікавиться <i>історією</i> своєї країни („історія його країни”).
--	------------	---

Отже, узагальнимо основні характеристики артиклів, які допоможуть у нескладних ситуаціях.

<b><u>A (AN)</u></b> <b><u>неозначений:</u></b>	<b><u>THE</u></b> <b><u>означений:</u></b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- ставить в ряд із йому подібними;</li> <li>- якийсь один, деякий, будь-який;</li> <li style="padding-left: 20px;">- вперше згаданий;</li> <li>- один із групи подібних.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- конкретизує;</li> <li>- відомий, ось цей;</li> <li>- не вперше згаданий;</li> <li>- єдиний у своєму роді.</li> </ul>

Хотілося б мати чіткі правила, де і який артикль ставити, але їх, на жаль, немає.

Можна ще раз підкреслити, що артикль ставиться перед іменником для того, щоб конкретизувати його значення. Якщо цю функцію виконують інші показники іменника, то артикль стає непотрібним.

## NOTA BENE

Last week I was in *Paris*.

That was *a Paris* I had never seen before.

Not *the Paris* that I used to know when I was young.

## 5. Grammar Exercises

### 1. Insert the proper word with the corresponding article

*middle, sky, breakfast, time, dinner, guitar, radio, TV set, police, end, army, piano, lunch, same, sun, television*

1. Can you tell me \_\_\_ please?
2. We had \_\_\_ at the restaurant.
3. \_\_\_ is a star. It gives us light & warmth.
4. Did you see the film on \_\_\_ last night?
5. I was hungry this morning, because I didn't have \_\_\_.

6. \_\_\_ stopped me because I was driving too fast.
7. Can you play \_\_\_?
8. What did you have for \_\_\_? Just a salad.
9. When I am working at home I like listening to \_\_\_.
10. \_\_\_ is very clear tonight. You can see all the stars.
11. My house is at \_\_\_ of this street.
12. The table is in \_\_\_ of the room.
13. My brother is in \_\_\_ now.
14. Tom can play \_\_\_.
15. I like watching \_\_\_\_.
16. We live in \_\_\_ street.

**2. Insert the proper word with the corresponding article a /an or the**

*bicycle, cigarette, play, difficult language, kitchen, nice day, next train, roof*

1. Can you ride \_\_\_?
2. What's the man doing on \_\_\_ of that house? Is he repairing something?
3. We went to the theatre last night but \_\_\_ was not very good.
4. Do you think English is \_\_\_ for people to learn?
5. Would you like \_\_\_? No, thanks. I don't smoke.
6. Where is Jack? He is in \_\_\_. He is cooking something.
7. Excuse me, what time is \_\_\_ to London?
8. It is \_\_\_ today. Let's go out.

**3. Put the corresponding article**

Cup, sand, tea, apple, toothpaste, credit card, money, hague, hat, soap, Christmas, toothbrush, lot of, classical music, coffee, first, car, honey, chocolate, glass of milk, same, USA, radio, hundred, Dnipro, two, best, bit, Baikal, moon, piano, dinner, cup of, love, Netherlands, same, football, October, child, Mathematics, Spain, army, million, children, Italian, Friday, engineer, Niagara Falls.

**4. Fill in: *a, an* or *the***

Last night I went to \_\_\_ Indonesian restaurant. I had \_\_\_ very nice meal with *a* good friend, Helen. \_\_\_ waiter was Chinese. \_\_\_ food was great. We drank \_\_\_ bottle of Coke. When we asked for \_\_\_ bill we didn't have enough money, so we had to do \_\_\_ washing-up. It is not \_\_\_ good way to end \_\_\_ evening.

**5. Fill in: *a, an* or *the***

I arrived at \_\_\_ airport just in time to see \_\_\_ aeroplane take off. There is nothing unusual about this, except that I was supposed to be on that plane! When I went to \_\_\_ desk to ask when \_\_\_ next available flight was, I heard \_\_\_ awful noise. I turned to see \_\_\_ car crashing through \_\_\_ front windows with \_\_\_ police car just behind it. I ran towards \_\_\_ departure gate \_\_\_ policeman stopped me to see if I was \_\_\_ armed robber they were chasing. I told him I was not \_\_\_ armed robber but \_\_\_ businessman who had missed his plane. He let me go and I was able to catch \_\_\_ last flight to my destination.

**6. Fill in: *the* where necessary**

1. Is \_\_\_ Lisbon \_\_\_ capital of \_\_\_ Portugal?
2. Is \_\_\_ Malta in \_\_\_ Mediterranean?
3. Is \_\_\_ Paris in \_\_\_ United Kingdom or in \_\_\_ France?
4. Where is \_\_\_ Sahara Desert?
5. What is \_\_\_ biggest island in \_\_\_ Greece?
6. What is \_\_\_ capital of \_\_\_ Italy?
7. Is \_\_\_ Indian Ocean bigger than \_\_\_ Arctic Ocean?
8. Is \_\_\_ Everest \_\_\_ highest mountain in \_\_\_ world?
9. Where are \_\_\_ Malta and \_\_\_ Corsica?
10. Where are \_\_\_ Mississippi River and \_\_\_ Thames?

**Practice 4  
Revision  
Test 1**

**Word Quiz**

**adult** ['ædelt] дорослий, повнолітній; зріла людина

**researcher** [risz:ʃə] дослідник

**deaf** [def] глухий; глухуватий

**communicate** повідомляти, підтримувати зв'язок, спілкуватися

**1. Choose the proper verb**

1. The pieces of advice he gave me (is, are) good.
2. His jeans (look, looks) fine.
3. Money (is, are) better than everything else.
4. Your eye-glasses (is, are) on the desk.
5. Bad news (fly, flies) fast.
6. Her hair (is, are) too long.
7. His clothes (is, are) scattered all over the room.

**2. Add the following word-combinations by the corresponding nouns. For example: *a cup of coffee***

***chocolate; coffee; cake; tea; tinned fish; wood; salmon; soup; toast; water; cigarettes; orange juice; cola; matches; milk; chalk; biscuits; tuna; wine; beer; jam***

a cup of \_\_\_; a can of \_\_\_; a piece of \_\_\_; a packet of \_\_\_; a box of \_\_\_; a glass of \_\_\_; a bottle of \_\_\_; a carton of \_\_\_; a bar of \_\_\_; a bowl of \_\_\_; a jar of \_\_\_.

**3. Fill in: *a, an* or *the* where necessary**

1. Is \_\_\_ tomato \_\_\_ fruit or \_\_\_ vegetable?
2. Is \_\_\_ apple \_\_\_ red or \_\_\_ blue?
3. What is \_\_\_ capital of \_\_\_ France?
4. When we visited \_\_\_ London we stayed at \_\_\_ Hilton Hotel.



5. Does \_\_\_ river Seine run through \_\_\_ Paris or \_\_\_ Madrid?
6. Is \_\_\_ Indian Ocean larger than \_\_\_ Mediterranean Sea?
7. Is \_\_\_ New York in \_\_\_ USA or in \_\_\_ Canada?
8. Is \_\_\_ elephant bigger than \_\_\_ alligator?
9. Does \_\_\_ Amazon run through \_\_\_ Africa or \_\_\_ South America?

**4. Find the sentences where it is necessary to use *the*:**

1. ... Manila is ... capital of ... Philippines.
2. ... Andes is a mountain range of ... South America.
3. ... China is ... most populated country in ... world.
4. A tunnel has been built beneath ... English Channel.
5. ... longest river in ... world is ... Nile.
6. Many people have climbed ... Everest.
7. ... Sicily is an Italian island.
8. ... capital of ... Italy is ... Rome.
9. ... Panama Canal joins ... Atlantic and Pacific Oceans.
10. ... North Sea is between ... Britain and ... Norway.
11. Do you know where ... Rocky Mountains are?
12. ... Trafalgar Square is in ... London.
13. ... Severn Bridge is in ... Wales.
14. ... Australia is in ... southern hemisphere.
15. I learn to play ... cello when I was at ... school.
16. She spent ... morning working in ... library.
17. I plan to study ... French at ... university ... next year.
18. ... Smiths have just bought a holiday home near ... Lake Geneva.
19. I usually go to ... work by ... bus.

**5. Fill in: *a, an* or *the* where necessary**

Last year \_\_\_ Smiths went on holiday to London with their friends \_\_\_ Browns. They visited \_\_\_ Hyde Park and went on \_\_\_ boat trip on \_\_\_ Thames. \_\_\_ Mr. Brown visited \_\_\_ Buckingham Palace hoping to see \_\_\_ Queen. Unfortunately, \_\_\_ Queen Elizabeth II wasn't at \_\_\_ home at \_\_\_ time.

**6. Choose the best word to fit into each of the following sentences:**

1. The men sharpened their \_\_\_ before throwing them at the targets.  
a) knife; b) knives; c) knives
2. Please eat the rest of your \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) pease; b) peas; c) peies
3. I'd like you to stop leaving your \_\_\_ on the floor.  
a) socks; b) sockses; c) sox
4. We saw a lot of \_\_\_ at the park.  
a) deers; b) deeries; c) deer
5. This recipe calls for a lot of \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) tomatos; b) tomatoes; c) tomaties

## Practice 5

### Text: “British National Flowers”

#### Read the text “Britain's National Flowers”

The **national** flower of England is the **rose**. The flower has been adopted as **England's** emblem since the **time** of the **Wars** of the Roses - **civil** wars (1455 - 1485) between the royal house of Lancaster (whose emblem **was** a **red** rose) and the royal house of York (whose emblem was a white rose). The Yorkist regime ended with the defeat of King Richard III by the **future** Henry VII at Bosworth on 22 August 1485, and the **two roses** were united into the Tudor rose (a red rose with a white centre) by Henry VII when **he married** Elizabeth of York.

The national flower of Northern Ireland is the shamrock, a **three-leaved** plant similar to clover which is said to have been used by St Patrick **to illustrate** the doctrine of the **Holy** Trinity.

The Scottish national flower is the thistle, a prickly-leaved purple flower which was **first** used in the 15<sup>th</sup> century as a *symbol* of defense.

The **three** flowers - rose, thistle and shamrock - are often displayed beneath the **shield** on the **Royal** Coat of Arms.

The national flower of Wales is usually considered to be the daffodil, which is traditionally worn on St David's Day. However, the humble leek is also considered **to be** a **traditional** emblem of Wales, possibly because **its colours**, white over **green**, echo the ancient Welsh standard.

#### Vocabulary

*shamrock* ['ʃæmrək] 1) квасениця; трилисник; 2) трилисник; конюшина

*clover* ['kləʊvə] конюшина

*doctrine* ['dɒktrɪn] 1) доктрина, теорія, учення; 2) догма, догмат

*Holy Trinity* Свята Трійця

*thistle* ['θɪs(ə)l] будяк; чортополох

*shield* [ʃi:ld] щит; захист

*daffodil* ['dæfədɪl] нарцис жовтий

*humble* [hʌmb(ə)l] скромний

*leek* [li:k] 1) цибуля-порей; 2) зображення цибулі-порей (емблема Уельсу)

#### 1. Write out the underlined words from the text in to the table

<u>The Noun</u>	<u>The Verb</u>	<u>The Numeral</u>	<u>The Adjective</u>	<u>Tense form</u>
<u>The Pronoun</u>				

#### 2. Find in the text

королівський будинок -

зазвичай вважається -

рослина з трьома пелюстками -

біле над зеленим -

також вважається традиційною емблемою -



прийнята як англійська емблема -  
теорія Святої Трійці -  
рослина схожа на конюшину -  
традиційно одягається на -  
чия емблема була -  
ймовірно тому, що її кольори -  
символ захисту -

### 3. Answer the questions

1. What is the national flower of Wales?
2. Describe the daffodil.
3. What is the national flower of Northern Ireland? Describe it.
4. What is the Scottish national flower? Describe it.
5. Who has been used the national flower of Northern Ireland?
6. What has St Patrick been used to illustrate?
7. What does the Tudor rose look like?
8. The Scottish national flower was first used in the 15<sup>th</sup> century as a symbol of ... .
9. Where do we can see the three flowers (rose, thistle and shamrock)?
10. Why the humble leek is also considered to be a traditional emblem of Wales?
11. What is the national flower of England?

### 4. Read the text again and tell what statements are *true* or *false*

1. A thistle was first used in the 15<sup>th</sup> century as a symbol of defense.
2. The four flowers - rose, thistle, humble leek and shamrock - are often displayed beneath the shield on the Royal Coat of Arms.
3. St Patrick used a five-leaved plant to illustrate the doctrine of the Holy Trinity.
4. The national flower of Wales is usually considered to be the daffodil.
5. The shamrock is traditionally worn on St David's Day.
6. The humble leek is also considered to be a traditional emblem of England.
7. The Scottish national flower is the thistle.
8. The national flower of Northern Ireland is the shamrock.
9. The national flower of England is the rose.
10. The flower rose has been adopted as England's emblem since the time of the Wars of the Roses - civil wars between the royal house of Lancaster and the royal house of York.
11. The Yorkist regime ended with the defeat of King Richard III by the future Henry VII at Bosworth on 22 August 1485.
12. A thistle looks like a prickly-leaved purple flower.
13. The humble leek is also considered to be a traditional emblem of England.

### Rule

*Also* comes after the verb **be** and before other verbs:

He is *also* in the Portuguese national team.

He *also* won the Club World Cup.

**5. Choose the correct word**

1. They lost against Liverpool. The *lost also* / *also lost* against Arsenal.
2. He is good at singing. He *is lost also* / *also is* good at dancing.
3. We visited London. We *also went* / *went also* to Oxford.
4. His old video game was boring. It is *also was* / *was also* very easy.

**6. Reread the text “Britain's National Flowers” and do the text**

1. The national flower of \_\_\_\_\_ is the shamrock.  
a) England    b) Scotland    c) Northern Ireland
2. The Yorkist regime ended with the \_\_\_\_\_ by the future Henry VII at Bosworth on 22 August 1485.  
a) victory of King Richard III    b) defeat of King Richard III    c) defeat of Queen
3. The shamrock is a \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) three-leaved plant similar to clover    b) two-leaved plant similar to daffodil  
c) nice plant similar to thistle
4. The rose has been adopted as England's emblem since the time of the Wars of the Roses - \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) revolutions    b) civil wars    c) conflicts
5. The shamrock has been used by St Patrick to illustrate the \_\_\_\_\_ of the Holy Trinity.  
a) document    b) doctrine    c) law
6. The Scottish national flower is the thistle, a prickly-leaved purple flower which was first used in the \_\_\_\_\_ as a symbol of defense.  
a) 16<sup>th</sup> century    b) 20<sup>th</sup> century    c) 15<sup>th</sup> century
7. The three flowers - rose, thistle and shamrock - are often displayed \_\_\_\_\_ on the Royal Coat of Arms.  
a) over the shield    b) beneath the shield    c) in the centre of the shield
8. The humble leek is considered to be a traditional emblem of \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) Ireland    b) Wales    c) England
9. The Wars of the Roses are the wars between the \_\_\_\_\_ of Lancaster and the \_\_\_\_\_ of York.  
a) royal house ... royal house    b) king's house ... king's house    c) king's house ... royal house
10. The Tudor rose is a \_\_\_\_\_ established by Henry VII.  
a) white rose with a red centre    b) red rose with a black centre    c) red rose with a white centre

**7. Match each start of a sentence 1-4 with its conclusions A-D**

1. I hope that you	A – <i>to hear from you</i>
2. It was great	B – <i>me all your news</i>
3. Write and tell	C – <i>visit the UK one day</i>
4. I really hope to	D – <i>are well and happy</i>

## Practice 6 Grammar: The Numeral

Англійська частина мови – **числівник the Numeral** особливо не відрізняється від українського числівника.

Вони також поділяються на **кількісні Cardinal Numerals** та **порядкові Ordinal Numerals**.

### 1. Cardinal Numerals

**Кількісні числівники** означають кількість предметів та відповідають на питання **how many скільки?** Наприклад: **one один, two два, ten десять, eleven одинадцять.**

Кількісні числівники - Cardinal Numerals 1 – 20	
1 – one	11 – <b>eleven</b>
2 – two	12 – <b>twelve</b>
3 – three	13 – <b>thirteen</b>
4 – four	14 – <b>fourteen</b>
5 – five	15 – <b>fifteen</b>
6 – six	16 – <b>sixteen</b>
7 – seven	17 – <b>seventeen</b>
8 – eight	18 – <b>eighteen</b>
9 – nine	19 – <b>nineteen</b>
10 – ten	20 – <b>twenty</b>

Кількісні числівники - Cardinal Numerals 21 - ...	
21 – <b>twenty-one</b>	101 – one hundred and one
22 – <b>twenty-two</b>	121 – one hundred and twenty-one
30 – <b>thirty</b>	200 – two hundred
40 – <b>forty</b>	1000 – one thousand
50 – <b>fifty</b>	1021 – one thousand <u>and</u> twenty-one
60 – <b>sixty</b>	3624 – three thousand six hundred <u>and</u> twenty-four
70 – <b>seventy</b>	1225375 – one million two hundred <u>and</u> twenty-five thousand three hundred <u>and</u> seventy-five
80 – <b>eighty</b>	
90 – <b>ninety</b>	
100 – one hundred	

Як бачимо з таблички, числівники з 11 до 19 утворюються за допомогою суфікса **-teen**, крім **одинадцять eleven, дванадцять twelve**, а від 20 до 90 – за допомогою суфікса **-ty**. Зверніть увагу на написання числівника 40 – **forty**, але 14 - **fourteen**.

Кількісні числівники, на відміну від української мови, вживаються для позначення номерів розділів, сторінок, частин книг, параграфів:

*перша частина* **part one**;

*десятий параграф* **paragraph ten**;

*одинадцята сторінка* **page eleven**.

Зверніть увагу, що іменники у таких випадках вживаються без артикля.

Також кількісними числівниками позначають номери будинків, кімнат,

автобусів, тролейбусів, трамваїв, розмірів одягу та взуття:

**The meeting will take place in classroom 15.** Збори відбудуться у пятнадцятій аудиторії (аудиторії №15).

**I live in apartment 10 (ten).** Я живу у квартирі №10.

**You need bus 11.** Вам потрібен автобус №11.

**My brother wears size forty-one shoes.** Мій брат носить 41 розмір взуття.

Числівники в арифметичних діях:

$2 + 2 = 4$	<b>two plus two is four</b> або <b>two and two is four</b>
$5 - 2 = 3$	<b>five minus two is three</b> або <b>two from five is three</b> або <b>five less two is three</b>
$2 \times 2 = 4$	<b>two times two is four</b>
$10 : 2 = 5$	<b>ten divided by two is five</b>

У спортивних іграх також використовують кількісні числівники:

- у тенісі	20 – 30 40 – 0 44 - 44	<b>twenty thirty</b> або <b>twenty games to thirty</b> <b>forty love</b> <b>deuce</b> [dju:s] (нічия)
- у футболі, хокеї	5 – 0 4 – 6 4 – 4	<b>five-nil</b> [nil] <b>four (goals to) six</b> <b>four all</b> (нічия) або <b>a draw</b> [drɔ:]
- у баскетболі	46 – 98 44 - 44	<b>forty-six, ninety-eight</b> <b>a tie</b> (нічия) або <b>forty-four – forty-four</b>

Звернемо увагу, що спортивна термінологія різними термінами визначає однакові поняття:

нічия – **all (a draw)** - футбол, хокей; **deuce** - теніс; **a tie** – баскетбол;

0 (нуль) - **nil** - футбол, хокей; **love** – теніс.

## 2. Ordinal Numerals

**Порядкові числівники Ordinal Numerals** означають порядок предметів та відповідають на питання **which** який? Наприклад: **first** перший, **second** другий, **tenth** десятий, **twentieth** двадцятий.

Порядкові числівники – Ordinal Numerals		
1 <sup>st</sup> – <b>first</b>	11 <sup>th</sup> – <b>eleventh</b>	21 <sup>st</sup> – <b>twenty-first</b>
2 <sup>nd</sup> – <b>second</b>	12 <sup>th</sup> – <b>twelfth</b>	22 <sup>nd</sup> – <b>twenty-second</b>
3 <sup>rd</sup> – <b>third</b>	13 <sup>th</sup> – <b>thirteenth</b>	30 <sup>th</sup> – <b>thirtieth</b>
4 <sup>th</sup> – <b>fourth</b>	14 <sup>th</sup> – <b>fourteenth</b>	40 <sup>th</sup> – <b>fortieth</b>
5 <sup>th</sup> – <b>fifth</b>	15 <sup>th</sup> – <b>fifteenth</b>	50 <sup>th</sup> – <b>fiftieth</b>
6 <sup>th</sup> – <b>sixth</b>	16 <sup>th</sup> – <b>sixteenth</b>	100 – <b>one hundredth</b>
7 <sup>th</sup> – <b>seventh</b>	17 <sup>th</sup> – <b>seventeenth</b>	101 <sup>st</sup> – <b>one hundred and first</b>
8 <sup>th</sup> – <b>eighth</b>	18 <sup>th</sup> – <b>eighteenth</b>	121 <sup>st</sup> – <b>one hundred and twenty-first</b>
9 <sup>th</sup> – <b>ninth</b>	19 <sup>th</sup> – <b>nineteenth</b>	1000 <sup>th</sup> – <b>one thousandth</b>
10 <sup>th</sup> – <b>tenth</b>	20 <sup>th</sup> – <b>twentieth</b>	1024 <sup>th</sup> – <b>one thousand and twenty-fourth</b>

Іменник, що визначається порядковим числівником, вживається з означеним артиклем the.

**the first book** перша книга;

**the second place** *друге місце;*

**the one hundred and twenty-fourth student** *сто двадцять четвертий студент.*

It is **the fifth part** of the textbook. *Це п'ята глава цього підручника.*

Артикль зберігається навіть у випадку відсутності іменника:

**Your second mark was better than the first.** *Твоя друга оцінка краща за першу.*

Числівники **hundred** *сто*, **thousand** *тисяча*, **million** *мільйон* не приймають закінчення –s якщо перед ними стоїть числівник:

**two hundred pupils** *2 сотні учнів;*

**three thousand years** *3 тисячі років;*

**two million two hundred forty-three thousand five hundred and sixty-seven** *2.243.567.*

Однак, іноді слова **hundred**, **million**, **thousand** приймають закінчення -s (у такому випадку ще додається **прийменник of**):

1) коли вони виражають неозначену кількість сотень, тисяч, мільйонів:

**hundreds of people** *сотні людей;*

**thousands of years** *тисячі років;*

**millions of birds** *мільйони птахів*

**millions of books** *мільйони книжок*

2) коли вони вживаються зі словом **some** декілька:

**some hundreds of stamps** *декілька сотень поштових марок*

**some thousands of letters** *декілька тисяч листів*

Зверніть увагу на такі слова:

**a dozen** *дюжина;*

**a gross** *12 дюжин (грос);*

**a score** *2 десятка;*

**a team** *упряжка коней.*

Слова **gross** та **team** потребують **прийменника of**, наприклад:

**5 gross of pencils** *720 штук олівців;*

**a few gross of pens** *багато ручок;*

**several team of horses** *декілька упряжок коней.*

А слова **dozen** та **score** не потребують **of**:

**5 score years** *100 років;*

**6 dozen eggs** *6 дюжин яєць,*

**a few score years** *декілька двадцятиліть;*

**several dozen eggs** *декілька дюжин яєць.*

Що ж стосується порядкових числівників, то і там все дуже просто. Порядкові числівники, крім перших трьох (1-й, 2-й, 3-й), які утворюються не за

правилами (**first** *перший*, **second** *другий*, **third** *третій*), утворюються від відповідних кількісних числівників за допомогою суфікса **-th**:

**four – the fourth** *четвертий*

**fifteen – the fifteenth** *п'ятнадцятий*

При цьому в числівниках **five** і **twelve -ve** змінюється на **f**:

**five – the fifth** *п'ятий*

**twelve – the twelfth** *дванадцятий*

До числівника **eight** *вісім* додається тільки буква **h**:

**eight – the eighth** [*'eitθ*] *восьмий*

У числівнику **nine** перед суфіксом **-th** буква **e** опускається:

**nine – the ninth** *дев'ятий*

У складених порядкових числівниках, як і в українській мові, форму порядкового числівника має лише останнє слово:

**the one hundred and twenty-first** *121-й - сто двадцять перший*;

**the two thousand one hundred and forty-seventh** *2147-й - дві тисячі сто сорок сьомий*.

### 3. Fractional Numerals

У простих дробових числівників чисельник виражається **кількісним числівником the Numerator**, а знаменник – **порядковим числівником the Denominator**:

**1/3 – a (one) third**;

**1/5 – a (one) fifth**;

Дробові числівники  $\frac{1}{2}$  і  $\frac{1}{4}$  читаються:

$\frac{1}{2}$  - **a (або one) half** *половина*;

$\frac{1}{4}$  - **a (one) quarter** *чверть*.

Якщо чисельник більше одиниці, знаменник приймає закінчення **-s**:

$\frac{2}{3}$  - **two thirds**;

**3/5 – three fifths**.

При читанні змішаних чисел між цілою і дробовою частиною вживається сполучник **and**:

**1  $\frac{1}{2}$  one and a half (або one and one half)**;

**3  $\frac{7}{8}$  three and seven eighths**;

**2  $\frac{5}{8}$  two and five eighths**;

**1  $\frac{1}{8}$  one and one eighth**.

В англійських текстах десяткові дроби відділяються від цілих чисел не комою, а крапкою, яка читається **point** [*point*]. Кожна цифра цілої і дробової частини десяткового дроби читається окремо. Нуль читається **nought** [*nɔ:t*] (а в Америці – **zero** [*'zi(ə)rəʊ*]):

**0.5 nought (zero) point five**;

**1.25 one point twenty-five**;

**2.38 two point thirty-eight**;

**3.14 three point fourteen**.



#### 4. Time Expressions

Українському слову *час* відповідають англійське слово **time**. Ось розповсюджений вираз, до якого нелегко дібрати відповідний в українській мові:

**on the hour** *рівно о певній годині* (тобто в 12.00, 11.00 і т.д.);

**on the half hour** *12.30, 16.30:*

**The bus departs every hour on the hour.** *Автобус відбуває щогодини.*

Слово *доба* не має відповідного в англійській мові. Можна сказати **day and night** або **24 hours**:

**I didn't eat all day and all night.** *Я не їв цілу добу.*

**The trip takes fourty-eight hours.** *Подорож триває дві доби.*

Однак ідіома *ціла доба* перекладається як **round the clock**:

**Some stores in New York work round the clock.** *Деякі крамниці в Нью-Йорку працюють цілодобово.*

#### 5. What Time is it?

Якщо ми хочемо дізнатися, котра година, ми питаємо: **What is the time?** або **What time is it now?** Інколи питання може виглядати так:

**Do you have time?** – *Чи є у Вас годинник?* або *Чи маєте Ви час?*

**Do you have time to talk?** - *Чи Ви маєте час для розмови?*

Складові частини годинника представлені іншими значеннями відомих слів: *циферблат* **clock-face; hour-plate;**

*годинникова стрілка* **hand (hour hand, minute hand).**

Напрямок руху по колу:

**clockwise** *за годинниковою стрілкою;*

**counterclockwise** - *проти годинникової стрілки:*

**To open the door turn the key clockwise.** *Щоб відчинити двері, поверніть ключ за годинниковою стрілкою.*

Як правило, американці та англійці вживають тільки 12-годинне позначення часу та скорочення:

- **a.m. (am; AM; A.M.** – походить від латинської - **ante meridiem** - перед полуднем, тобто від 00.00 – до 12.00 дня);

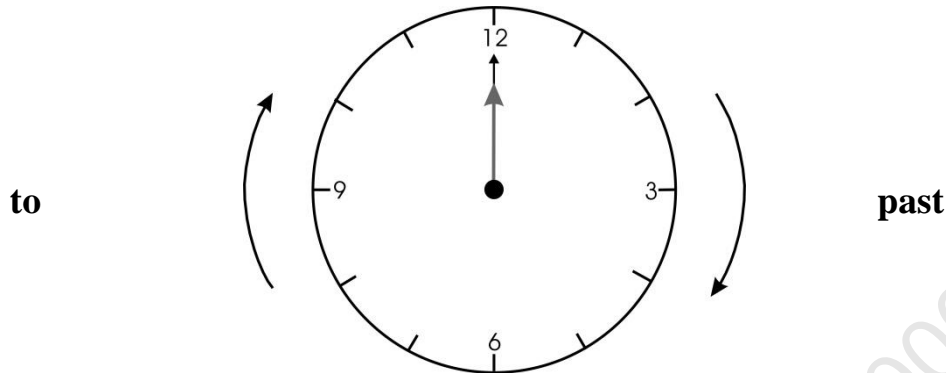
- **p.m. (pm; PM; P.M.** - походить від латинської - **post meridiem** - після полудня, тобто з 12.00 – до 24.00).

**He is going to catch the 6 p.m. train to Albany.** *Він збирається встигнути на поїзд до Албані, який відправляється о 18.00.*

Зверніть увагу, що в цьому випадку слово **o'clock** не потрібне.

Англійська відповідь на питання **What time is it?** *Котра година?* зовсім не відрізняється від української.

Розглянемо малюнок:



Циферблат годинника поділяється на дві частини: перша частина – з часу ночі до дванадцятої години дня (**a.m.**), друга частина – з часу дня до дванадцятої години ночі (**p.m.**).

Стосовно відповіді на питання **What time is it?** *Котра година?*

Показ хвилинної стрілки з 12.00 до 6.00 вимагає прийменника **past** після:

**12.10** – **ten minutes past twelve AM** 10 хвилин після 12;

**11.15** – **fifteen minutes (a quarter) past eleven AM** 15 хвилин (чверть) після 11;

**10.23** – **twenty three minutes past ten AM** 23 хвилини після 10;

**6.25** – **twenty five minutes past six AM** 25 хвилин після 6;

**10.09** – **nine minutes past ten AM** 9 хвилин після 10;

Показ хвилинної стрілки з 6.00 до 12.00 - прийменника **to** до:

**12.38** – **twenty two minutes to one AM** 22 хвилини до часу або **thirty eight minutes past twelve AM** 38 хвилин після 12;

**19.40** – **twenty minutes to eight PM** 20 хвилин до 8;

**23.45** – **fifteen minutes (a quarter) to twelve PM** 15 хвилин (чверть) до 12;

**20.50** – **ten minutes to nine PM** 10 хвилин до 9;

**22.58** – **two minutes to eleven PM** 2 хвилини до 11;

**What time is it?** *Котра година?* **It's ten minutes to five.** За десять хвилин п'ята.

**It's ten minutes past five.** Десять хвилин на шосту.

30 хвилин (половина) позначається таким чином:

1.30 – it is **half past** one pm;

8.30 – it is **half past** eight am;

4.30 - it is **half past** four am;

7.30 - it is **half past** seven pm.

Якщо на годиннику 12.00 – зазвичай кажуть:



**It's twelve o'clock.** або **It's twelve o'clock sharp.**

## 6. Dates in English

### General dates:

Ми пишемо: **17 June 2019** or **17<sup>th</sup> June 1987**

Ми говоримо: **“June the seventeenth, twenty nineteen”** and **“The seventeenth of June, nineteen eighty-seven”**

### General years:

1072 - **ten seventy-two**

1907 - **nineteen seven (nineteen 0 seven)**

1900 - **nineteen hundred**

1905 - **nineteen hundred and five** or **nineteen hundred 0 five**

1910 - **nineteen ten**

1945 - **nineteen forty-five**

1996 - **nineteen ninety-six**

2000 – **two thousand**

2003 - **two thousand and three**

2010 - **two thousand ten**

2019 - **two thousand nineteen**

Числа місяця позначаються порядковими числівниками

10 грудня – **the 10<sup>th</sup> of December;**

1 січня – **the 1<sup>st</sup> of January;**

17 травня 1982 – **the 17<sup>th</sup> of May, nineteen eighty-two;**

25.09.99 – **the 25<sup>th</sup> of September, nineteen ninety-nine.**

### Decades (десятиліття):

... the (1960s) '60s – **the (nineteen) sixties**

... (2000s) '00s – **the thousands** or **the noughties** ['nɔ:tɪz]:

### Centuries:

... 1900s – **the nineteen hundreds**

... the 4<sup>th</sup> century – **the fourth century**

... the 20<sup>th</sup> century – **the twentieth century**

**BC** – before Christ

**AC** – Anno Domini (рік від різдва Христового)

### **ON / IN / AT**

Необхідно звернути увагу, що при позначенні різних інтервалів часу вживаються різні прийменники.

**ON** – *days and dates*

Ми пишемо: **He was born on 2<sup>nd</sup> March 1961.**

Ми говоримо: **“He was born on the 2<sup>nd</sup> of March nineteen sixty.**

on Sunday у неділю

**IN** – months, seasons, years, decades, centuries

My birthday is in January not in September.

His birthday is in winter and her is in summer.

She was born in 1985 and grew up in the nineteenth.

in winter *взимку*;

in 1989 у 1989 році;

in the 70's у 70-ті роки;

in the 19<sup>th</sup> century у 19 столітті.

**AT** – hours, minutes, seconds

at 3 o'clock sharp – 15.00

at half past nine pm – 20.30

at a quarter past two pm – 14.15

at twenty minutes past six am – 06.20

Кількісними числівниками позначаються телефонні номери: кожна цифра номеру називається окремо:

12-35-21 **one two three five two one**

24-72-12 **two four seven two one two**

Цифра 0 читається [ou]:

70-30-40 **seven oh three oh four oh**

Якщо дві цифри номеру однакові, вживається слово **double** *подвійний*: 77-31-448 **double seven three one double four eight**; 884-788-88 **double eight four seven double eight double eight**.

Але якщо середні дві цифри однакові, слово **double** не вживається: 74-41-212 **seven four four six**.

Номери 1000 або 5000 читаються: **one thousand; five thousand**.

## 7. Grammar Exercises

### 1. Write the English Cardinal Numerals

3, 4, 7, 8, 12, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 22, 28, 39, 40, 88, 107, 349, 1.236, 4789, 6.334.857, 23.578.721

### 2. Translate the following sentences into English

1. Прочитайте тільки п'яту частину.
2. Ваше завдання у четвертому параграфі.
3. Будь ласка, відкрийте підручник на двісті двадцять сьомій сторінці.
4. Батьківські збори проводитимуться у сто першій аудиторії.
5. Її двоюрідна сестра живе у тому ж самому будинку, у квартирі №45.
6. Вам потрібна маршрутка №64.
7. Її батько носить 42 розмір взуття.

### 3. Write the English Ordinal Numerals

друга книга, четвертий день, восьмий місяць, чотирнадцятий тиждень, двадцятий будинок, двадцять другий викладач, шістдесяте будівництво, сотий олівець, сто сорок сьомий студент, три тисячі сто сімдесят восьма квартира

### 4. Write the following words-combinations into English

*4 сотні смартфонів; 2 тисячі будинків; 7 сотень лікарів; 8 тисяч років; 9 мільйонів людей; 18 сотень тварин; сотні людей; тисячі років; мільйони птахів; декілька сотень квартир; декілька тисяч вчителів; багато плакатів*

### 5. Write what is the time?

7.05; 8.07; 9.10; 10.15; 11.20; 12.26; 13.30; 14.35; 15.38, 16.40; 17.45; 18.50; 19.55; 20.58; 21.00; 22.25; 23.55; 24.00; 0.04; 1.12; 2.16; 3.24; 4.32; 5.41; 6.00; 11.30.

### 6. Write the following dates in English

1045; 2019; 1004; 1861; 1987; 2003; 1961, 2007; 1947; 2000; 1917; 1957; 2011; 1900; 21 травня; 24 грудня; 13 квітня; 1 березня 1986 року; Різдво Христове – в січні.; Моя двоюрідна сестра народилася взимку.; Цей письменник жив у 19 столітті.; о 5 ранку; о 7.30; 068-016-21-27; 050-227-38-65; 036-244-55-57; 080-155-55-66

## Practice 7

### Text: “Chinese Horoscope”

#### Read the text “Chinese Horoscope”

Traditional Chinese astrology is different. It is based on your year of birth. There are twelve signs, too, but they are named after animals. The Chinese New Year falls on a different date each year, but it begins somewhere between mid-January and mid-February.

The twelve-year cycle begins with the year of the Rat, which this century first fell in 1900, so it is easy to calculate Chinese years. The legend is that the order was decided thousands of years ago by Buddha, who called all the animals to a New Year meeting.

Only twelve came, and the years were named after the twelve animals in the order in which they arrived. First was the aggressive Rat, second was the hard-working Ox. Then came the smiling Tiger, followed by the cautious Rabbit. The showy Dragon came next, then the wise Snake. The gifted Horse was next, followed by the gentle Goat, then the merry Monkey and the proud Rooster. Last were the faithful Dog and the honest Pig.

People born in specific years are supposed to have characteristics of the year's animal. This should not be taken too seriously. The animals are symbols, and the Chinese idea of each animal's character is often different from a traditional Western view. The interesting thing about the cycle of Chinese years is that they relate to the

cycles of change in the Sun, which is known to affect the Earth's weather, and may also relate to earthquakes and electrical changes in the atmosphere.

Can you tell what animal you are?

**Vocabulary**

**Buddha** ['budə] Будда

**New Year falls** Новий рік припадає

**calculate** розрахувати

**meeting** збори, нарада, засідання; мітинг; конференція, з'їзд; зустріч; дуель

**named after** названі на честь

**Rat** щур

**hard-working** працьовитий; старанний;

**Ox** ['ɒks] бик; віл, бик, буйвіл, бізон

**cautious** ['kɔːʃəs] обережний, обачний; завбачливий

**showy** ['ʃəʊi] ефектний, яскравий, помітний; кричущий, позбавлений смаку; блискучий, разючий, показний

**wise** [,waɪz] мудрий, премудрий; розумний

**gifted** ['giftɪd] обдарований; талановитий; здібний

**gentle** ['dʒentl] добрий; лагідний; ніжний; тихий, спокійний; легкий, слабкий; слухняний; знатний, шляхетний; благородний, вихований, чемний

**Goat** [gəʊt] цап; коза; козел

**merry** веселий

**proud** [praʊd] гордий, гордовитий, зарозумілий; пихатий; самовдоволений

**Rooster** ['ruːstə] півень; задирака, забіяка

**faithful** ['feɪf(ə)l] вірний, відданий; правдивий, який заслуговує на довіру; достовірний; точний, сумлінний

**honest** ['ɒnɪst] чесний; правдивий; прямий, щирий; відвертий; вірний

**relate** стосуватися, мати стосунок

**earthquake** ['zːθ, kweɪk] землетрус

**Post-reading task**

**1. Write out the underlined words from the text in to the table**

<u>The Noun</u>	<u>The Verb</u>	<u>The Numeral</u>	<u>The Adjective</u>	<u>Tense form</u>
<u>The Pronoun</u>				

**2. Find in the text**

базується на дате народження –

названі на честь тварин -

десь між -

легко разрахувати -

який назвав -

у порядку, в якому вони з'явилися -

не слід сприймати занадто серйозно -

впливати на погоду планети Земля -

### 3. Answer the questions

What animals were the years named after?

What year begins the twelve-year cycle?

How can you calculate Chinese years?

Who called the animals to a New Year meeting?

What is traditional Chinese astrology based on?

When does the Chinese New Year begin?

How many signs in the Chinese astrology?

### 4. Read the text again and determine what statements are *true* and *false*

1. Traditional Chinese astrology is same as Western.
2. The century first fell in 1700, so it is easy to calculate Chinese years.
3. There are twelve signs in traditional Chinese astrology, and they are named after famous people.
4. Traditional Chinese astrology is based on your year of birth.
5. Last were the merry Monkey and the proud Rooster,
6. The twelve-year cycle begins with the year of the Ox.
7. The legend is that the order was decided thousands of years ago by Jesus, who called all the animals to an Easter party.
8. The Chinese New Year begins somewhere between mid-December and mid-January.
9. The showy Dragon came before the cautious Rabbit.
10. The Chinese New Year falls on a different date each year.

### 5. Match questions 1-8 with answers a-h

1. What was Paris like?
2. I want to be a teacher.
3. When did Europeans first visit America?
4. How was the match?
5. Was the weather good?
6. Who was Picasso?
7. Where you on your own?
8. Were there a lot of people?

a) *No, I was with Jenny.*

b) *A Spanish artist.*

c) *Yes, there were.*

d) *It was cool. There were a lot of shops.*

e) *Really& I think it's a stressful job.*

- f) *Terrible. We lost.*  
g) *in the 15<sup>th</sup> century.*  
h) *No, it rained all day.*

**6. Reread the text “Chinese Horoscope” and do the test**

1. The twelve-year cycle begins with the year of the Rat, which this century first fell in \_\_\_\_, so it is easy to calculate Chinese years.  
a) 1800    b) 1900    c) 1700
2. Last were the faithful \_\_\_\_ and the \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) Dragon ... cautious Rabbit    b) Dog ... honest Pig    c) Snake ... faithful Pig
3. The years were named after the \_\_\_\_\_ in the order in which they arrived.  
a) twelve animals    b) twenty animals    c) eleven animals
4. The second was the \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) hard-working Horse    b) hard-working rat    c) hard-working Ox
5. The Chinese New Year falls on a different date each year, but it begins somewhere between \_\_\_\_ and mid-February.  
a) beginning of January    b) end of January    c) mid-January
6. The interesting thing about the cycle of Chinese years is that they relate to the cycles of \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) change in the Sun    b) change in atmosphere    c) change in the Moon
7. People born in specific years are supposed to have \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) reason of the year's animal    b) characteristics of the pets    c) characteristics of the year's animal
8. The cycle of Chinese years is known to affect the \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) Earth's weather    b) Sun's weather    c) Moon's weather
9. First was the \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) showy Dog    b) aggressive Rat    c) wise Snake
10. The showy Dragon came next \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) aggressive Rat    b) wise Snake    c) cautious Rabbit

**Practice 8**

**Revision**

**Test 2**

**Word Quiz**

*shamrock* ['ʃæmrək] 1) квасениця; трилисник; 2) трилисник; конюшина

*clover* ['kləʊvə] конюшина

*doctrine* ['dɒktrɪn] 1) доктрина, теорія, учення; 2) догма, догмат

*Holy Trinity* Свята Трійця

*thistle* ['θɪs(ə)l] будяк; чортополох

*shield* [ʃi:ld] щит; захист

*daffodil* ['dæfədɪl] нарцис жовтий

*humble* [hʌmb(ə)l] скромний

*leek* [li:k] 1) цибуля-порей; 2) зображення цибулі-порей (емблема Уельсу)

*Buddha* ['budə] Будда



**New Year falls** Новий рік припадає

**calculate** розрахувати

**meeting** збори, нарада, засідання; мітинг; конференція, з'їзд; зустріч; дуель

**named after** названі на честь

**Rat** щур

**hard-working** працьовитий; старанний;

**Ox** ['ɒks] бик; віл, бик, буйвіл, бізон

**cautious** ['kɔːʃəs] обережний, обачний; завбачливий

**showy** ['ʃəʊi] ефектний, яскравий, помітний; кричущий, позбавлений смаку; блискучий, різючий, показний

**wise** [,waɪz] мудрий, премудрий; розумний

**gifted** ['ɡɪftɪd] обдарований; талановитий; здібний

**gentle** ['dʒentl] добрий; лагідний; ніжний; тихий, спокійний; легкий, слабкий; слухняний; знатний, шляхетний; благородний, вихований, чемний

**Goat** [ɡəʊt] цап; коза; козел

**merry** веселий

**proud** [praʊd] гордий, гордовитий, зарозумілий; пихатий; самовдоволений

**Rooster** ['ruːstə] півень; задирака, забіяка

**faithful** ['feɪf(ə)l] вірний, відданий; правдивий, який заслуговує на довіру; достовірний; точний, сумлінний

**honest** ['ɒnɪst] чесний; правдивий; прямий, щирий; відвертий; вірний

**relate** стосуватися, мати стосунок

**earthquake** ['ɜːθ, kweɪk] землетрус

### 1. Write the English Cardinal Numerals

8, 12, 13, 15, 17, 22, 39, 40, 349, 4.789, 53.878.929

### 2. Translate the following sentences and word-combinations into English

1. Прочитайте тільки п'яте питання.
2. Відкрийте книжку на сто сорок п'ятій сторінці.
3. Студентські збори проводитимуться у сто двадцять першій аудиторії.
4. Її двоюрідна сестра живе у цьому будинку, у квартирі №76.
5. Вам потрібний тролейбус №3.
6. сьома книга, п'ятий день, восьмий місяць, чотирнадцятий тиждень, двадцятий будинок, двадцять другий викладач, сто сорок сьомий студент, три тисячі сто сімдесят восьма квартира

### 3. Write what is the time?

7.05; 8.07; 9.10; 10.15; 11.20; 12.26; 13.30; 15.38, 16.40; 17.45; 18.50; 19.55; 20.58; 21.00; 22.25; 23.55; 24.00; 1.12; 2.16

### 4. Put a / an or the in the sentences if necessary

1. She lives not far from antiques shop.
2. People say that British are reserved.
3. I am not sure, but I think I would like to be architect when I grow up.

4. Don't forget your sun cream. Sun is very strong today.
5. Leisure time is increasing for most people in Europe.
6. We stayed at very nice hotel in Barcelona.
7. That was one of best books I have read for ages.
8. Shall we sit in garden for a while?

### 5. Fill in: *a, an or the* where necessary

1. \_\_\_ gun is used by soldiers.
2. \_\_\_ giant panda mostly lives in \_\_\_ bamboo forests high in \_\_\_ mountains.
3. \_\_\_ Yangtze River is 6,380 km long. It is \_\_\_ third-longest river in \_\_\_ world.
4. Do you remember about \_\_\_ story I told you before?
5. \_\_\_ China covers \_\_\_ area of almost six million square kilometers and is \_\_\_ most populous on \_\_\_ Earth, having more than one billion people.
6. \_\_\_ Chinese mainly speak Mandarin but there are over 150 other languages spoken in \_\_\_ country.
7. I've got three Chinese silk dresses: \_\_\_ red one and two black ones. I think I'll wear \_\_\_ red one for my party.
8. Xiaolu Guo is \_\_\_ famous Chinese novelist and film-maker. In 2009 she made \_\_\_ film called "She, \_\_\_ Chinese". \_\_\_ film won the top prize at \_\_\_ International Film Festival.
9. \_\_\_ umbrella was invented around 450 AD to protect \_\_\_ from \_\_\_ sun and \_\_\_ rain.
10. Zong Zi is \_\_\_ dish made of \_\_\_ rice and bamboo leaves is traditionally eaten during \_\_\_ Dragon Festival.

## Practice 9

### Grammar: The Adjective. Degrees of Comparison

#### 1. Morphological Characteristic of Adjectives

**Adjective** прикметник - частина мови, яка відповідає на питання "який? яка? яке? які?".

Наприклад: **red** червоний, **good** хороший, **interesting** цікавий, **Ukrainian** український.

Англійські прикметники не змінюються ні за родами, ні за числами, ні за відмінками:

**a clever student** розумний студент,

**clever students** розумні студенти,

**a young girl** молода дівчина,

**young girls** молоді дівчата,

**young people** молоді люди,

**with a young man** з молодим чоловіком.

Прикметники в англійській мові змінюються тільки за ступенями порівняння: **long** довгий, **longer** довший, **the longest** найдовший.

За морфологічною структурою розрізняють три види прикметників:

<b>Simple Adjectives</b> (прості прикметники, які у своєму складі не мають префіксів, суфіксів, закінчень)	<b>Derivative Adjectives</b> (прикметники, утворені за допомогою префіксів, суфіксів, закінчень)	<b>Compound Adjectives</b> (прикметники, утворені за допомогою декількох основ)
<b>nice</b> красивий <b>tall</b> високий <b>small</b> маленький	<b>wonderful</b> чудовий <b>lucky</b> удачливий <b>unhappy</b> нещасливий <b>dangerous</b> небезпечний <b>careless</b> безтурботний <b>troublesome</b> що завдає клопоту <b>wooden</b> дерев'яний <b>foolish</b> дурний <b>comfortable</b> зручний	<b>well-known</b> добре-відомий <b>long-legged</b> довгоногий <b>good-looking</b> гарний <b>five-seat (car)</b> п'ятимісна (машина) <b>three-wheel (bicycle)</b> трьохколісний (велосипед) <b>five-year-old (girl)</b> п'ятирічна (дівчинка) <b>100-page (book)</b> книжка на 100 сторінок <b>absent-minded</b> неуважний

## 2. Degrees of Comparison

Прикметники утворюють два ступені порівняння: вищий **the Comparative Degree** та найвищий **the Superlative Degree**.

Щоправда, існують і такі прикметники, які не мають ступенів порівняння (**empty** порожній, **dead** мертвий), однак їх не так вже і багато.

Прості або односкладові прикметники утворюють вищий ступінь порівняння **the Comparative Degree** за допомогою додавання суфікса **-er**:  
**tall + er = taller**; **small + er = smaller**; **cold + er = colder**.

Найвищий ступінь порівняння **the Superlative Degree** утворюється за допомогою суфікса **-est**:

**tall + est = the tallest**; **small + est = the smallest**; **cold + est = the coldest**.

SIMPLE ADJECTIVES		
Основний ступінь <i>the Positive Degree</i>	Вищий ступінь <i>the Comparative Degree</i>	Найвищий ступінь <i>the Superlative Degree</i>
<b>sharp</b> гострий	<b>sharper</b> гостріший	<b>the sharpest</b> найгостріший
<b>cold</b> холодний	<b>colder</b> холодніший	<b>the coldest</b> найхолодніший
<b>short</b> короткий	<b>shorter</b> коротіший	<b>the shortest</b> найкоротіший

A man lives **longer** than a dog. Людина живе *довше*, ніж собака.

David is **taller** than his father was at this age. Девід *вищий*, ніж був його батько у цьому віці.

This is **the shortest** way to London. Це *найкоротіший* шлях до Лондону.

Так само утворюються ступені порівняння **двоскладових** прикметників, які закінчуються на **-y, -er, -ow, ly, -le** та ряд інших **двоскладових** прикметників:

<i>the Positive Degree</i>	<i>the Comparative Degree</i>	<i>the Superlative Degree</i>
<b>clever</b> розумний	<b>cleverer</b> розумніший	<b>the cleverest</b> найрозумніший
<b>able</b> здатний	<b>abler</b> більш здатний	<b>the ablest</b> найбільш здатний
<b>simple</b> простий	<b>simpler</b> простіший	<b>the simplest</b> найпростіший

Розглянемо двоскладові прикметники, які закінчуються на **-ful; -ous; -re**, та двоскладові прикметники, у яких наголос падає на перший склад. Такі прикметники утворюють ступені порівняння за допомогою слів **more** та **most**:

DERIVATIVE ADECTIVES		
<i>the Positive Degree</i>	<i>the Comparative Degree</i>	<i>the Superlative Degree</i>
<b>stupid</b> [ˈstju:pid] дурний	<b>more stupid</b> дурніший	<b>the most stupid</b> найдурніший
<b>decent</b> [ˈdi:snt] порядний, стриманий	<b>more decent</b> порядніший, стриманіший	<b>the most decent</b> найбільш порядний, найбільш стриманий
<b>careful</b> обережний	<b>more careful</b> обережніший	<b>the most careful</b> найбільш обережний
<b>famous</b> відомий	<b>more famous</b> більш відомий	<b>the most famous</b> найбільш відомий

Багато двоскладових прикметників: **polite** ввічливий, **handsome** гарний, **common** загальний, **cruel** жорстокий, **friendly** дружній, **happy** щасливий, **narrow** вузький, **pleasant** приємний, **quiet** спокійний, **sincere** щирий, **true** вірний та інші утворюють ступені порівняння двома способами.

<i>the Positive Degree</i>	<i>the Comparative Degree</i>	<i>the Superlative Degree</i>
<b>polite</b> ввічливий	<b>politer</b> / <b>more polite</b> більш ввічливий	<b>the politest</b> / <b>the most polite</b> найбільш ввічливий
<b>handsome</b> гарний	<b>handsomer</b> / <b>more handsome</b> гарніший	<b>the handsomest</b> / <b>the most handsome</b> найгарніший

Зверніть увагу на **орфографію**:

1. Якщо прикметник закінчується на голосний німий **-e**, при додаванні суфіксів **-er** та **-est** буква **e** не пишеться:

<b>large</b> великий	<b>larg-er</b> більший	<b>the larg-est</b> найбільший
<b>brave</b> хоробрий	<b>brav-er</b> хоробріший	<b>the brav-est</b> найхоробріший

2. Якщо прикметник закінчується на приголосний, який стоїть після голосного, то у вищому та найвищому ступені кінцевий приголосний звук **ПОДВОЮЄТЬСЯ**:

<b>big</b> великий	<b>bigger</b> більший	<b>the biggest</b> найбільший
<b>hot</b> гарячий	<b>hotter</b> гарячіший	<b>the hottest</b> найбільш гарячий
<b>thin</b> тонкий	<b>thinner</b> тонкіший	<b>the thinnest</b> найбільш тонкий
<b>wet</b> мокрий	<b>wetter</b> мокріший	<b>the wettest</b> найбільш мокрий

3. Якщо прикметник закінчується на **y** з попереднім приголосним, то у вищому та найвищому ступені буква **y** завжди змінюється на **i**:

<b>busy</b> зайнятий	<b>busier</b> більш зайнятий	<b>the busiest</b> найбільш зайнятий
<b>easy</b> легкий	<b>easier</b> легіший	<b>the easiest</b> найлегіший
<b>dirty</b> брудний	<b>dirtier</b> брудніший	<b>the dirtiest</b> найбрудніший

Але якщо перед буквою **y** стоїть голосний, то буква **y** лишається без змін:

<b>gay</b> веселий	<b>gay-er</b> веселіший	<b>the gay-est</b> найвеселіший
--------------------	-------------------------	---------------------------------

Більшість двоскладових прикметників, а також прикметники, що

складаються з *трьох* або *більш* складів, утворюють вищий ступінь за допомогою слова **more**, а найвищий ступінь - за допомогою слова **most**. Ці слова ставляться перед прикметником у формі *основного ступеня*:

<i>the Positive Degree</i>	<i>the Comparative Degree</i>	<i>the Superlative Degree</i>
<b>active</b> <i>активний</i>	<b>more active</b> <i>активніший</i>	<b>the most active</b> <i>найбільш активний</i>
<b>famous</b> <i>відомий</i>	<b>more famous</b> <i>відоміший</i>	<b>the most famous</b> <i>найбільш відомий</i>
<b>difficult</b> <i>складний</i>	<b>more difficult</b> <i>складніший</i>	<b>the most difficult</b> <i>найскладніший</i>

**This newspaper is more interesting.** *Ця газета – цікавіша.*

**Chinese is more difficult than English.** *Китайська мова складніша ніж англійська.*

Зверніть увагу, що іменник, який визначається прикметником у найвищому ступені, завжди вживається з означеним артиклем **the**:

**This is the shortest way to the station.** *Це - найкоротший шлях на станцію.*

**This is the most interesting story in the book.** *Це - найцікавіше оповідання в цій книзі.*

**She is the most beautiful girl in our class.** *Вона – найгарніша дівчина в нашому класі.*

Слово **most** має додаткове значення: перед іменниками воно означає **більшість, більша частина**. Зверніть увагу на два варіанти його вживання:

**most children - most of the children** - у першому випадку маються на увазі – діти взагалі; а в другому - конкретні діти, які є поблизу вас.

**Most drivers break the speed limit.** *Більшість водіїв перевищують швидкість.*

**Most of the drivers in our group are over 50.** *Більшість водіїв у нашій групі старше 50 років.*

**It rained for most of the day.** *Більшу частину дня падав дощ.*

**She sits and eats most of the time.** *Більшу частину часу вона сидить і їсть.*

**Most of us know him.** *Більшість з нас його знає.*

Наведемо ще два сталих вирази: **at (the) most** *найбільше*:

**I can pay \$200 at the most.** *Я можу заплатити найбільше 200 доларів.*

**For the most part** *в більшості, в основному;*

**I agree with your plan for the most part.** *В основному я погоджуюсь з вашим планом.*

Ще одне зауваження - два прикметники в порівняльному ступені з означеним артиклем показують пропорційну зміну **чим ... тим ...**:

**The sooner the better.** *Чим швидше, тим краще.*

**The more you have, the more you want.** *Чим більше маєш, тим більше хочеш.*

**The better I get to know him, the less I like him.** *Чим більш я його пізнаю, тим менш він мені подобається.*

Особлива конструкція описує схожість за будь-якою ознакою: **as ... as ...** - **такий самий, як ...** :



The car is **as big as** its owner. *Машина така ж велика, як її господар.*  
 It's not **as cold as** yesterday. *Зараз не так холодно як вчора.*  
 His hand was **as cold as** ice. *Його рука була холодна як лід.*  
 I ate **as much as** I could. *Я з'їв стільки, скільки зміг.*

Деякі прикметники утворюють ступені порівняння від іншого кореня:

<i>the Positive Degree</i>	<i>the Comparative Degree</i>	<i>the Superlative Degree</i>
<b>good</b> <i>хороший</i>	<b>better</b> <i>кращий</i>	<b>the best</b> <i>найкращий</i>
<b>bad</b> <i>поганий</i>	<b>worse</b> <i>гірший</i>	<b>the worst</b> <i>найгірший</i>
<b>little</b> <i>маленький</i>	<b>less</b> <i>менший</i>	<b>the least</b> <i>найменший</i>
<b>old</b> <i>старий, старіший</i>	<b>older</b> <i>старіший, старіший</i> <b>elder</b> <i>старіший, старіший</i>	<b>the oldest</b> <i>найстаріший, найстаріший</i> <b>the eldest</b> <i>найстаріший, найстаріший</i>
Прикметник <b>far</b> має дві форми вищого та найвищого ступеню:		
<b>far</b> <i>далекий</i>	<b>farther, further</b> <i>більш далекий</i>	<b>the farthest, the furthest</b> <i>найбільш далекий</i>

Слова **farther, farthest** та **further, furthest** вживаються паралельно для визначення відстані:

**I found him in the farthest (furthest) corner of the garden.** *Я знайшов його у самому далекому куточку саду.*

Слово **further** також вживається у значенні *подальший, додатковий*:

**I have got further information on this problem.** *Я отримав подальшу (додаткову) інформацію з цього питання.*

Після прикметника у вищому ступені порівняння вживається сполучник **than**, який відповідає українському **ніж**:

**Better an egg today than a hen tomorrow.** Дослівний переклад: *Краще яйце сьогодні, ніж курка завтра.* Близько до українського прислів'я: *Краще синиця у руці, ніж журавель в небі.*

**Two heads are better than one.** *Одна голова – добре, а дві - краще.*

Прикметник у вищому ступені може бути посилений вживанням перед ним словами **much** або **far** із значенням *набагато, значно*:

**She looks much better now.** *Вона зараз виглядає набагато краще.*

**He understands much more than you think.** *Він розуміє набагато більше, ніж ви думаєте.*

**This book is far better than that one.** *Ця книга значно краща, ніж та.*

### 3. Substantivized Adjectives

Субстантивованими прикметниками називають прикметники, що набувають характеристики іменника. Вони поділяються на групи:

1) вказують на певний клас:

**The old receive pensions.** *Люди похилого віку отримують пенсію.*

**The young like modern music.** *Молодим подобається сучасна музика.*

2) вказують на абстрактні поняття (зверніть увагу на присудок – вживається у однині):



**The past was better than the present.** *Минуле було кращим ніж сучасне.*

3) вказують на національність (зверніть увагу на присудок – вживається у множині) ***the English*** англійці, ***the British*** британці, ***the Spanish*** іспанці:

**The Germans are great lovers of beer.** *Німці дуже люблять пиво.*

#### 4. Grammar Exercises

1. Translate the following adjectives and denote them by the type of morphological structure (*the Simple Adjective, the Derived Adjective, the Compound Adjective*)

Hopeless, tall, wet, overcrowded, illegal, little, hairless, reddish, big, interesting, unhappy, yellowish, cold-hearted, childish, short, 346-page; dangerous, careful, childlike, absent-minded, good-looking, impatient, tiny, snow-white, three-wheel, irregular, five-year-old.

2. Write the degrees of comparison of the following adjectives

short; comfortable; thin; bad; wet; illegal; black; impatient; three-year-old; good; enormous; yellowish; clever; simple; little; amazing; far; stupid; incredible; polite; dead

3. Translate the following adjectives into Ukrainian

Red-faced, typical, long-faced, unexact, unkind, long-nosed, unplanned, stone-hearted, warm-hearted, ungrammatical, cold-blooded, unwritten, full-blooded, unscientific, uncultured, thin-skinned, unreal, thick-skinned, dark-skinned, long-eared, ice-cooled, global.

4. Translate the following sentences using the substantivised adjectives into English

1. *Всі італійці в захваті від піци.*
2. *Люди похилого віку не розуміють молодих.*
3. *В Сполучених Штатах багато молодих вивчають китайську мову.*
4. *Німці глибоко поважають свої національні традиції.*
5. *Він думав, що майбутнє буде кращим ніж минуле.*
6. *Іспанці поважають іноземців.*
7. *Деякі люди похилого віку все ще працюють.*
8. *Моя бабуся вважає, що минуле було кращим ніж сучасне.*
9. *Молодим подобаються сучасні гаджети.*

5. Complete the sentences with the adjectives in the box. Use the comparative form

*dangerous, long, expensive, tall, clean, unfriendly, pretty, noisy*

1. The Empire State Building is \_\_\_ than the Eiffel Tower.
2. The River Nile is \_\_\_ than the River Thames.
3. Is your town \_\_\_ than New York? No, it's really safe.
4. That plane ticket to Rome is 1000 Euros! It's \_\_\_ than the train.

5. This park is beautiful. It's \_\_\_\_ than the ugly park near my home.
6. The air in my town is \_\_\_\_ than the air in this city.
7. London is \_\_\_\_ than my village. My village is quite!
8. The people in your town are \_\_\_\_ than the people in my town.

**6. Match the verbs in the box with words 1-8**

*chat have be work share be*

1. \_\_\_\_ homesick;
2. \_\_\_\_ a room;
3. \_\_\_\_ a break;
4. \_\_\_\_ with friends;
5. \_\_\_\_ busy;
6. \_\_\_\_ abroad.

**7. Complete the sentences with the affirmative or negative forms of the verbs in the box in exercise 6**

1. Olena's parents \_\_\_\_ abroad. – NO -
2. I \_\_\_\_ a room with my best friend. – YES -
3. We \_\_\_\_ homesick. – NO -
4. Billy \_\_\_\_ busy at the moment. - YES -
5. My friends \_\_\_\_ a break before homework. – YES -
6. His brother \_\_\_\_ with his friends all day. – NO -

**Practice 10**

**Text: "Canada"**

**Country and language report: Canada**

Canada is a large country in North America. It has got a border with the United States in the South. The Atlantic Ocean is to the east of Canada and the Pacific Ocean is to the west. The capital of Canada is Ottawa and the currency is the Canadian dollar.

The official languages of Canada are English and French. Most Canadians speak English but French is the main language in Quebec area. All students study English and French in schools, but people also study Spanish, German and Mandarin.

The population of Canada is 31 million and a lot of people from other countries live and work there. In big cities like Vancouver and Toronto over thirty percent of the population come from outside Canada. In particular, there are a lot of people from the Europe, Asia and the USA, but there are also people from Africa and South America.

**Vocabulary**

*has got a border with* *межує з*

*currency* [kʌrənsɪ] *валюта*

*official language* *офіційна мова*

**Mandarine** ['mændəri:n] *китайська мова*

**population** [pɒpju'leɪʃ(ə)n] *населення*

**outside** *із зовнішньої сторони (чого-небудь), зовні; на вулиці; поза приміщенням*

### 1. Answer the questions

1. What nationality and language are in the country?
2. What is the population of Canada?
3. What language do people study in Canadian schools?
4. What is the capital city?
5. Which other parts of the world do a lot of people in Canada come from?
6. What is the currency of Canada?
7. What size of Canada?
8. What additional languages do people study in Canada?

### 2. Read the text again and tell what statements are true and false

1. The capital of Canada is Toronto.
2. The official language of Canada are English and French.
3. The population of Canada is 31 million.
4. The currency of Canada is Euro.
5. Canada is a small country in North America.
6. Most Canadians speak English but French is the main language in Vancouver area.
7. In big cities like Vancouver and Toronto over thirty percent of the population come from outside Canada.
8. Canada has got a border with the United States in the east.
9. The Atlantic Ocean is to the south of Canada and the Pasific Ocean is to the east.
10. All students study English and French in schools, but people also study Italian, Japanise and Portugal.

### 3. Find in the text

*багато людей з інших країн -*

*Канада межує із США -*

*люди також вивчають -*

*є великою країною -*

*Тихий океан на заході -*

*більше 30 відсотків -*

*є основною мовою -*

### 4. Project 1. “Country and Language Report” (any country). Use the plan

1. Where is this country?
2. What other countries has it got borders with?
3. What is the capital city and currency?
4. What are the official languages?

5. What languages do people study at school?
6. What is the population of this country?
7. Do many people of other nationalities live in this country?
8. Where are they from?

**5. Project 1. “Country and Language Report” (any country). Use the plan**

1. Where is this country?
2. What other countries has it got borders with?
3. What is the capital city and currency

**6. Complete the conversation with the words in the box**

<i>record</i>	<i>athletics</i>	<i>race</i>	<i>dark</i>	<i>tall</i>
<i>team</i>	<i>score</i>	<i>competitions</i>	<i>play</i>	

**A.** Who is that \_\_\_\_ boy with the \_\_\_\_ hair?

**B.** That is Tim. He is a very good athlete. He takes part in a lot of \_\_\_\_ . He won the 100 metres \_\_\_\_ last week. He broke the school \_\_\_\_ .

**A.** What about you? Are you into \_\_\_\_ ?

**B.** No, I am not. But I \_\_\_\_ football. I play for the school \_\_\_\_ . We were second in the championships last year.

**A.** Second? That is not bad. Did you \_\_\_\_ any goals?

**B.** No, I did not. I am a goal keeper.

**7. Reread the text “Canada” and do the test**

1. Most Canadians speak English but French is the main language in \_\_\_\_ .  
a) Northern regions      b) Quebec area      c) Toronto area
2. The Pacific Ocean is to the \_\_\_\_ of Canada.  
a) west      b) east      c) south
3. The \_\_\_\_ of Canada is 31 million.  
a) people      b) population      c) currency
4. The Atlantic Ocean is to the \_\_\_\_ of Canada.  
a) west      b) east      c) south
5. All students study English and French in schools, but people also study Spanish, German and \_\_\_\_ .  
a) Chinese      b) Mandarine      c) Japanese
6. The currency of Canada is the \_\_\_\_ .  
a) Canadian dollar      b) Canadian euro      c) American dollar
7. Canada has got a border with the United States in the \_\_\_\_ .  
a) North      b) East      c) South
8. Vancouver and Toronto are \_\_\_\_ .  
a) small cities      b) big towns      c) big cities
9. The capital of Canada is \_\_\_\_ .  
a) Sydney      b) Toronto      c) Ottawa
10. Most Canadians speak \_\_\_\_ .  
a) French      b) American      c) English

## Practice 11

### Grammar: The Verb

Дієслово – це повнозначна, самостійна частина мови, яка означає дію (**to build** *будувати*; **to run** *бігати*; **to stand** *стояти*), стан (**to be** *бути, існувати*; **to sleep** *спати*), відчуття (**to feel** *відчувати*; **to smell** *нюхати*), процеси мислення (**to consider** *розглядати*; **to think** *думати*).

Всі англійські дієслова, за виключенням модальних, мають 4 форми.

**1-а форма дієслова** – основна або інфінітив без частки **to**. Вживається для утворення часових форм групи **Simple** та наказового способу **Imperatives**.

**2-а форма дієслова** – форма минулого часу. Вживається для утворення минулого неозначеного часу **Past Indefinite Tense**.

**3-я форма дієслова** – форма дієприкметника минулого часу. Вживається для утворення часових форм групи **Perfect** та пасивного стану **Passive Voice**.

**4-а форма дієслова** – більш розповсюджена назва - форма **-ing**. Вживається для утворення часових форм групи **Continuous**.

В англійській мові всі дієслова поділяються на **правильні Regular Verbs** та **неправильні Irregular Verbs** за способом утворення 2-ї і 3-ї форми.

#### 1. Regular Verbs

Утворення минулого часу правильних дієслів: до дієслів у всіх особах додається закінчення **-ed**: (**to work + ed = worked, to ask + ed = asked etc.**).

Infinitive	Past Simple II форма	Past Participle III форма
to work <i>працювати</i>	worked	worked
to supply <i>постачати</i>	supplied	supplied
to apply <i>просити</i>	applied	applied
to stay <i>залишатися</i>	stayed	stayed
to play <i>грати</i>	played	played
to finish <i>закінчувати</i>	finished	finished
to open <i>відкривати</i>	opened	opened
to clean <i>прибирати</i>	cleaned	cleaned
to stop <i>припиняти</i>	stopped	stopped
to drop <i>кратати</i>	dropped	dropped

#### 2. Irregular Verbs

Утворення минулого часу неправильних дієслів.

Їх кількість відносно невелика, але ці дієслова найчастіше вживаються в англійській мові. Деякі з них ви вчили в школі, пригадайте:

Infinitive	Past Simple II форма	Past Participle III форма
to awake <i>прокидатись</i>	awoke	awoken
to be <i>бути</i>	was, were	been
to beat <i>бити</i>	beat	beaten
to become <i>ставати (ким/чим)</i>	became	become
to begin <i>починати</i>	began	begun
to bind <i>в'язати, зв'язувати</i>	bound	bound

*Practical Grammar of the English Language*

to bite <i>кусати</i>	bit	bitten
to blow <i>дути, продувати, цвісти</i>	blew	blown
to break <i>ламати</i>	broke	broken
to breed <i>вирощувати</i>	bred	bred
to bring <i>приносити</i>	brought	brought
to build <i>будувати</i>	built	built
to buy <i>купувати</i>	bought	bought
to choose <i>вибирати</i>	chose	chosen
to come <i>приходити</i>	came	come
to cut <i>різати</i>	cut	cut
to deal <i>мати справу, поводитися</i>	dealt	dealt
to dig <i>копати</i>	dug	dug
to do <i>робити</i>	did	done
to draw <i>малювати, тягнути</i>	drew	drawn
to dream <i>мріяти, уявляти</i>	dreamt	dreamt
to drink <i>пити</i>	drank	drunk
to drive <i>їхати, знати</i>	drove	driven
to eat <i>їсти</i>	ate	eaten
to fall <i>падати</i>	fell	fallen
to feed <i>годувати</i>	fed	fed
to feel <i>відчувати</i>	felt	felt
to fight <i>боротися</i>	fought	fought
to find <i>знаходити</i>	found	found
to fly <i>літати</i>	flew	flown
to forget <i>забувати</i>	forgot	forgotten
to forbid <i>забороняти</i>	forbade	forbidden
to forgive <i>прощати</i>	forgave	forgiven
to freeze <i>замерзати, заморозжувати</i>	froze	frozen
to get <i>одержувати</i>	got	got
to give <i>давати</i>	gave	given
to go <i>йти</i>	went	gone
to grow <i>рости</i>	grew	grown
to have <i>мати</i>	had	had
to hear <i>чути</i>	heard	heard
to hide <i>ховатися</i>	hid	hidden
to hold <i>тримати</i>	held	held
to keep <i>берегти</i>	kept	kept
to know <i>знати</i>	knew	known
to lay <i>(по)класти</i>	laid	laid
to lead <i>вести</i>	led	led
to learn <i>вчити</i>	learnt	learnt
to leave <i>поїхати, (за)лишити</i>	left	left
to lend <i>позичати</i>	lent	lent
to lie <i>лежати</i>	lay	lain
to lose <i>губити</i>	lost	lost
to make <i>робити</i>	made	made
to meet <i>зустрічати</i>	met	met
to mean <i>значити, мати на увазі</i>	meant	meant
to mistake <i>неправильно розуміти</i>	mistook	mistaken
to pay <i>платити</i>	paid	paid



to put <i>класти</i>	put	put
to read [ri:d] <i>читати</i>	read [red]	read [red]
to ride <i>їхати (верхи)</i>	rode	ridden
to ring <i>дзвонити</i>	rang	rung
to run <i>бігати</i>	ran	run
to say <i>казати</i>	said	said
to see <i>бачити</i>	saw	seen
to sell <i>продавати</i>	sold	sold
to send <i>посилати</i>	sent	sent
to sing <i>співати</i>	sang	sung
to sit <i>сідати</i>	sat	sat
to sleep <i>спати</i>	slept	slept
to speak <i>говорити</i>	spoke	spoken
to spend <i>витрачати (гроші), проводити (час)</i>	spent	spent
to stand <i>стояти</i>	stood	stood
to steal <i>красти</i>	stole	stolen
to sweep <i>підмітати</i>	swept	swept
to swim <i>плавати</i>	swam	swum
to take <i>брати</i>	took	taken
to teach <i>вчити, навчати</i>	taught	taught
to tell <i>розповідати</i>	told	told
to think <i>думати</i>	thought	thought
to throw <i>кидати</i>	threw	thrown
to understand <i>розуміти</i>	understood	understood
to wear <i>носити</i>	wore	worn
to write <i>писати</i>	wrote	written

### 3. Auxiliary Verbs

Деякі дієслова в англійській мові, крім свого змістового навантаження, мають ще й функції **допоміжних дієслів *Auxiliary Verbs***, тобто вживаються для утворення часових форм та пасивного стану.

Ці дієслова ***to be, to have, to do, shall (should), will (would)***.

#### Дієслово *to be*

1) у теперішньому часі, на відміну від інших дієслів, має окремі форми для 1-ї, 2-ї, 3-ї особи однини та множини:

Дієслово <i>to be</i>		
<i>am</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>are</i>
<i>I</i>	<i>he, she, it</i>	<i>you, we, they</i>

2) у минулому часі має також різні форми для однини та множини:

Дієслово <i>to be</i>	
<i>was</i>	<i>were</i>
<i>I, he, she, it</i>	<i>you, we, they</i>

Дієслово ***to be*** допомагає утворювати часові форми ***Continuous***:

### The Present Continuous Tense

I **am** waiting for you. *Я чекаю на тебе.*

He **is** writing the letter now. *Він пише листа зараз.*

They **are** sitting at the meeting. *Вони сидять на зборах.*

### The Past Continuous Tense

She **was** reading the text at 5 o'clock. *Вона читала текст о 5 години.*

We **were** swimming in the river at 11 o'clock. *Ми плавали у річці об 11 години.*

### The Future Continuous Tense

I shall **be** writing it at 3 o'clock. *Я писатиму це о 3 години.*

Часові форми групи **Perfect Continuous:**

### The Past Perfect Continuous Tense

We had **been** writing it since 5 yesterday. *Ми писали це вчора з 5 години.*

### The Present Perfect Continuous Tense

We have **been** writing it for 2 hours. *Ми пишемо це вже 2 години.*

### The Future Perfect Continuous Tense

By the end of this month he shall have **been** writing it for 5 weeks. *До кінця цього місяця він писатиме це вже 5 тижнів.*

### Дієслово to have

Допомагає утворювати часові форми групи **Perfect**. Також у теперішньому часі має окремі форми для 1-ї, 2-ї, та 3-ї особи однини та множини:

Дієслово <i>to have</i>	
<i>have</i>	<i>has</i>
<i>I, you, we, they</i>	<i>he, she, it</i>

### The Present Perfect Tense

I **have** seen a new film. *Я подивився новий фільм.*

We **have** finished our work. *Ми закінчили нашу роботу.*

He **has** bought a new house. *Він купив новий будинок.*

### The Future Perfect Tense

I shall **have** translated it by 6 o'clock. *Я перекладу це до 6-ї години.*

У минулому часі - форму **had** для всіх осіб:

### The Past Perfect Tense

I **had** seen this film by 5 o'clock. *Я подивився цей фільм до 5-ї години.*

We **had** finished his work. *Ми закінчили його роботу.*

Часові форми групи **Perfect Continuous:**

### The Past Perfect Continuous Tense

We **had** been writing it since 5 yesterday. *Ми писали це вчора з 5 години.*

### The Present Perfect Continuous Tense

We **have** been writing it for 2 hours. *Ми пишемо це вже 2 години.*

### The Future Perfect Continuous Tense

By the end of this month he shall **have** been writing it for 5 weeks. *До кінця цього місяця він писатиме це вже 5 тижнів.*

Також дієслово **to have** мати вживається у конструкціях з деякими іменниками і тоді втрачає своє основне значення, наприклад:

<b>to have breakfast</b> <i>снідати;</i>	<b>to have a swim</b> <i>плавати;</i>
<b>to have dinner</b> <i>обідати;</i>	<b>to have a walk</b> <i>гуляти;</i>
<b>to have supper</b> <i>вечеряти;</i>	<b>to have a good time</b> <i>розважатися;</i>
<b>to have a meal</b> <i>їсти;</i>	<b>to have a talk</b> <i>поговорити;</i>
<b>to have a drink</b> <i>пити;</i>	<b>to have a quarrel</b> <i>сваритися;</i>
<b>to have a cup of tea</b> <i>пити чай;</i>	<b>to have a fight</b> <i>битися;</i>
<b>to have a wash</b> <i>вмиватися;</i>	<b>to have a look</b> <i>подивитись;</i>
<b>to have a sleep</b> <i>спати;</i>	<b>to have a try</b> <i>спробувати.</i>
<b>to have a rest</b> <i>відпочивати;</i>	<b>to have a go</b> <i>спробувати.</i>

### Дієслово **to do**

Утворює заперечну та питальну форми **Present Indefinite** та **Past Indefinite**.

#### 1) Present Indefinite:

Дієслово <b>to do</b> у Present Indefinite	
<b>do</b>	<b>does</b>
<b>I, you, we, they</b>	<b>he, she, it</b>

### The Present Indefinite Tense

I **don't** know about it. *Я не знаю про це.*

**Do** you speak English? *Чи розмовляєш ти англійською?*

He **doesn't** work there. *Він тут не працює.*

**Does** she go to the theatre? *Чи ходить вона у театр?*

2) в **Past Indefinite** – форму **did** для всіх осіб:

I **did** not go to the theatre. *Я не ходив у театр.*

She **did** not write a letter. *Вона не писала листа.*

**Did** you see him yesterday? *Чи бачив ти його вчора?*

They **didn't** speak to me about it. *Вони не розмовляли зі мною про це.*

### Дієслова **shall (should), will (would)**

Ці дієслова називаються недостатніми, тому що вживаються тільки у двох формах: у теперішньому часі – **shall, will** та минулому – **should, would**:

### The Future Indefinite Tense

I **shall** be busy on Monday. Я буду зайнятий у понеділок.

He **will** do it tomorrow. Він зробить це завтра.

### The Future Indefinite-in-the-Past Tense

I said that I **should** be busy on Monday. Я сказав, що буду зайнятий у понеділок.

He said that he **would** do it. Він сказав, що зробить це.

## 4. Usage if the Verbs DO, MAKE

Дієслово **DO** - робити, здійснювати дію; робитися, здійснюватися, відбуватися, діятися; чинити, робити, поводитися; займатися (чим-небудь); працювати; обслуговувати вживається в широкому сенсі для визначення будь-якої діяльності:

**do a crossword** – розгадувати кросворд;

**do the ironing** – прасувати щось;

**do the laundry** – прати;

**do the washing** – мити щось;

**do the washing up** – вмиватися.

**Do** часто використовується, коли говорять про будь-яку роботу:

**do your work** – виконувати роботу;

**do homework** – робити домашнє завдання;

**do housework** – робити хатню роботу;

**do your job** – виконувати свої обов'язки.

Також дієслово **Do** використовується, необхідно описати будь-яку дію, але не називаючи самої дії. Це дієслово часто використовується із словами **something, nothing, anything, everything**.

Наприклад:

**I'm not doing anything today.** – Сьогодні я нічого не роблю.

**He does everything for his mother.** – Він все робить для своєї матері.

**She's doing nothing.** - Вона нічим не займається.

Дієслово **MAKE** - робити; виготовляти, виробляти; виконувати; складати, створювати, творити; здійснювати вживається для позначення будь-якої конкретної дії, коли що-небудь створюється, будується та ін.:

**make a dress** – шити сукню;

**make food** – приготувати їжу;

**make a cup of tea / coffee** – зробити (приготувати) чашку чаю / кави

**Make** часто використовується, коли мова йде про приготування їжі:

**make a meal (breakfast / lunch / dinner)** – приготувати їжу (сніданок / обід / вечерю)

1) **made of + material**

**This box is made of wood.**

**Most pens are made of plastic.**

2) **made with + ingredients**

**This dias is made with garlic and oil.**

**That lotion is made with aloe vera.**

3) **made by + method**

**The noodles are made by hand.**

**The picture was made by lazer.**

В більшості випадків поєднання дієслів **do** і **make** з іменниками слід просто запам'ятати:

**Do (did, done):**

**do homework** – робити уроки / домашнє завдання;

**do work about the house** – робити хатню роботу;

**do one's bed** – застилати ліжко;

**do an exercise** – робити вправи;

**do morning exercises** – робити ранкову зарядку;

**do translation** – робити переклад;

**do one's best** – робити все, що в твоїх силах;

**do harm** – шкодити; заподіювати шкоду;

**do business** – займатися бізнесом;

**do the dishes** – мити посуд;

**do a favour** – робити комусь послугу;

**do good** – ніти на користь; принести користь;

**do your best** – робити все можливе;

**do your hair** – розчісувати волосся.

**Make (made, made):** **make a mistake** – зробити помилку;

**make a speech** – виголошувати промову;

**make coffee** – варити каву;

**make tea** – заварювати чай;

**make oneself at home** – влаштуватися як вдома;

**make a fuss** – здіймати галас;

**make a mess** – влаштовувати безлад;

**make arrangements** – домовитися; влаштувати щось-небудь;

**make believe (to pretend)** – прикидатися; творяться, робити вигляд;

**make a choice** – робити вибір;

**make a comment** – зробити зауваження; коментувати;

**make a decision** – прийняти рішення;

**make an effort** – докласти зусиль;

**make an enquiry** – зробити запит;

**make an excuse** – вибачатися;

**make a fool of yourself** – виставити себе дурнем;

**make a fortune** – збагатіти;

*make friends* – подружитися;

*make a fuss* – здіймати галас;

*make a journey* – здійснити подорож;

*make a mess* – влаштувати безлад;

*make money* – заробляти гроші;

*make a move* – зробити хід;

*make a noise* – галасувати;

*make a phone call* – зателефонувати;

*make a plan* – скласти план;

*make a point* – висловити власну думку;

*make a profit* – отримувати прибуток;

*make a present* – робити подарунок;

*make a promise* – пообіцяти;

*make a remark* – зробити зауваження;

*make a sound* – вимовити звук;

*make a speech* – прочитати промову;

*make a suggestion* – зробити пропозицію;

*make a difference* – відрізнятися; мати різницю;

*make amends* – вносити поправки (в договір, в контракт, та ін.); також може означати “компенсувати комусь що-небудь”, “вибачатися перед кимось”.

## 5. Grammar Exercises

### 1. Change the verbs in Past Indefinite

1. We \_\_\_\_ (to finish) the tasks before the ring.
2. They \_\_\_\_ (to sleep) bad last night.
3. Peter \_\_\_\_ (to open) the textbook and \_\_\_\_ (to do) homework.
4. He and his friends \_\_\_\_ (to apply) college successfully.
5. It \_\_\_\_ (to be) a small kitty but it \_\_\_\_ (to grow) a fat cat.
6. We \_\_\_\_ (to break) all the toys.
7. My sister \_\_\_\_ (to forget) her key yesterday.
8. His dad \_\_\_\_ (to dream) to become a programmer.

2. Translate the following sentences into English using the grammatical construction *to have* + *Noun*. For example: Ми завжди вечеряємо о 7 годині. We always have supper at 7 pm.

1. Давай відпочинемо.
2. Вони вмилися, поснідали і пішли поплавати.
3. Він дуже втомлений, він хоче пити і їсти.
4. Ми спробували виконати це завдання.
5. Його батьки завжди сваряться.
6. В мого брата є 3 коти. Вони постійно б'ються.
7. Давайте присядемо і поговоримо.
8. Її сестра пішла в парк погуляти.
9. Вони запросили мене випити чаю.



10. Мої діти не хочуть спати самі.

**3. Write down three forms of the following verbs**

Make, cut, play, conclude, break, run, speak, get, know, come, forget, put, buy, build, do, go, tell, understand, find, clean, live, repair, accept, act, add, cost, set, assist, shut, connect, direct, lend, distribute, draw, spell, deal, impress, inform, feel, keep, lay, lose, manage, pay, sell, occupy, operate, have, hold, drink, fly, grow, prefer, produce, show, catch, restrict, fall, forgive, satisfy, stand, take, stick, suit, vary.

**4. Write affirmative or negative sentences with *have got / has got***

1. She / a book about animals. \_\_\_\_ .
2. I / DVD player. \_\_\_\_ .
3. He / a white rat / no. \_\_\_\_ .
4. You / no / hip hop CSs. \_\_\_\_ .
5. Nelly / a red dress. \_\_\_\_ .
6. We / no / a blue pen. \_\_\_\_ .

**5. Choose the correct responses to the sentences**

1. Did you have a good weekend?  
a) Fine, thanks. b) Why not? c) Not really.
2. I went to a basketball match.  
a) Oh dear. b) Was it good? c) Tim is best tennis player.
3. I think this is the correct answer.  
a) Yes, you are right. b) Yes, I don't agree. c) It looks like.
4. What do you do on Saturday?  
a) I play tennis. b) I am going to the cinema. c) I watched TV.
5. I think the party is good.  
a) I don't think so. b) I don't read. c) OK.

**6. Match expressions 1-8 with responses a-h**

1. This is Tim.
2. What part of Britain are you from?
3. I am really into music. What about you?
4. Are you into skateboarding?
5. See you later then.
6. How are things?
7. I hate rats. What about you?
8. Good to meet you.

- a) *Not bad.*
- b) *Me too, especially hip hop.*
- c) *I like them, but I prefer cats.*
- d) *And you.*
- e) *I am from London.*

- f) *Yes, but I am not very good.*
- g) *Hello, Tim.*
- h) *Yeah. See you later.*

## Practice 12

### Revision

### Test 3

#### Word Quiz

**has got a border with** *межує з*

**currency** [kʌrənsi] *валюта*

**official language** *офіційна мова*

**Mandarine** ['mændəri:n] *китайська мова*

**population** [pɒpjʊ'leɪʃ(ə)n] *населення*

**outside** *із зовнішньої сторони (чого-небудь), зовні; на вулиці; поза приміщенням*

#### 1. Fill in the Definite Article where necessary

1) ... Peters are a very interesting family. Mr. Peters has sailed around 2) ... world on his yacht 3) ... “Bella”. Mrs. Peters has traveled around 4) ... India and seen many exciting things. Their son, John, works for a newspaper and he has interviewed many famous people including 5) ... Pope and 6) ... Princess Anne. Sally, their daughter, is very ambitious. She is training to be a lawyer. One day she hopes to be 7) ... most successful lawyer in 8) ... country. As a family, they spend very little time together. They only see each other for a short time in 9) ... mornings before they all go their separate ways. At the moment Mrs. Peters is writing a book about 10) ... famous buildings. She is doing research on 11) ... Westminster Abbey and 12) ... St. Paul’s Cathedral. She hopes to publish 13) ... book by the end of 14) ... year. Mr. Peters is getting ready for a trip around 15) ... Europe. This time however he has decided to go by 16) ... bus and not by 17) ... boat. John is preparing for a trip to 18) ... USA where he will be meeting 19) ... President. Sally, of course, doesn’t have much spare time as her studies take up most of 20) ... day.

#### 2. Translate into English

1. *Слон живе довше, ніж кіт.*
2. *Хмарочос Бурж Халіфа вищий, ніж Ейфелева вежа.*
3. *Це найкоротший шлях до Києва.*
4. *Олег розумніший ніж Дмитро.*
5. *Ганна – найрозумніша студентка в нашому коледжі.*
6. *Наш новий менеджер дурніший ніж минулий.*
7. *Мій найстаріший син найтурботливіший.*
8. *Цей хлопець більш ввічливий ніж інші хлопці.*
9. *Собака Ольги спокійніший ніж собаки Олени.*
10. *Річка Міссісіпі довша ніж Дніпро.*

11. Ріка Ніл – найдовша в світі.
12. Дикі тварини більш небезпечні ніж домашні.
13. Це завдання - найважливіше.
14. Це найкоротший шлях до Лондону.

### 3. Defence of the Project 1 “Country and Language Report”

4. Which of the materials from the box below can you use to describe what each of the following words is made of?

*glass, leather, metal, paper, plastic, porcelain, rubber, wood, gunpowder, bronze, cotton, denim, gold, iron, lycra, silk, silver, wool, marble*

1) a ring, a car, a mirror, jeans, a shirt, a cup, a bomb, a computer, a table, a sweater, a monument, ear rings, pants, a window, a book, a scarf, gloves, a toy, a medal, a nail

2) My ring is made of \_\_\_\_\_.

### 5. Choose the correct options

1. Giraffes have got very long *necks / lips*.
2. Ben has no hair at all – he is *short / bald*.
3. How much is this *pair / couple* of jeans?
4. You should wear a comfortable *tracksuit / suit* to do sports.
5. Jessika has got dark hair. She’s blond now because she is wearing *make-up / a wig*.
6. Anton is tall and very good- *watching / looking*.
7. He’s got short, *round / curly* brown hair.
8. Well, it doesn’t *size / fit* you well. It’s too big.

### 6. Insert the article if it is necessary

- 1) ... Mediterranean Sea is laying between ... Africa and ... Europe.
- 2) ... Danube flows through ... Vienna, ... Budapest and ... Belgrade.
- 3) ... Peru is in ... South America.
- 4) ... Alps are in ... Europe.
- 5) ... Hague is the city in ... Netherlands.
- 6) ... Pacific Ocean is between ... America and ... Asia.
- 7) ... Panama Channel joins ... Atlantic and Pacific Ocean.

## Practice 13

### Text: “A Funny Story”

#### Read the text “A Funny Story”

Some gentlemen were sitting in a little restaurant in the country. They had their dogs with them which were lying quietly under the table. The gentlemen talked about their dogs, what was good and what was bad about them.

After some time the door opened, and an old lady came in with a dog. She sat

down at the next table, ordered something to eat and listened to the gentlemen's conversation. When the gentlemen noticed this, they started to tell each other in loud voices how clever their dogs were.

One of them said, "You won't believe how intelligent my dog is. When I want some eggs, I can send him to the supermarket, and he'll get them. And he will only take fresh eggs. Isn't that clever?"

"That's nothing", said another one, "When I want cigarettes and send my dog to the supermarket, he'll only take the cigarettes I like best."

"Have you ever seen dogs as clever as ours?" one of the men asked the old lady.

"Oh yes, I have", she answered. "Just have a look at my dog here. He is the manager of the supermarket where your dogs go shopping."

### Vocabulary

**quietly** ['kwaɪətlɪ] *тихо; безшумно; мирно, спокійно*

**conversation** [kɒnvə'seɪʃ(ə)n] *розмова, бесіда*

**you won't believe** *ви не повірите*

**intelligent** [ɪn'telɪdʒ(ə)nt] *розумний; кмітливий*

**that's nothing** *це ще нічого!*

### 1. Answer the questions

1. What were the gentlemen's dogs doing in a little restaurant in the country?
2. What lady came to a restaurant?
3. Did the lady have a dog?
4. Where were gentlemen sitting?
5. How many gentlemen were sitting in a little restaurant in the country?
6. What did the men ask the old lady?
7. What did the gentlemen talk about?
8. What did the old lady do in a restaurant?
9. What did the old lady answer?
10. What is the old lady's dog?

### 2. Write down in to the table the Parts of Speech

<u>the Noun</u>	<u>the Verb</u>	<u>the Adjective</u>	<u>the Pronoun</u>

### 3. Find in the text:

*наскільки розумний мій собака -*

*запитали стареньку жінку -*

*в маленькому ресторанчику за містом -*

*що я люблю найбільше -*

*увійшла старенька жінка -*

*замовила щось поїсти -*

*собаки купляють продукти -*

*почали голосно розказувати один одному*

*- які спокійно лежали -*

*ви не повірите -  
він купляє тільки свіжі яйця -  
це ще нічого! -*

**4. Read the text again and determine what statements are *true* and *false***

1. "Have you ever seen dogs as stupid as ours?" one of the men asked the young lady.
2. One of gentlemen said, "You won't believe how intelligent my dog is!"
3. Many gentlemen were sitting in a big restaurant in the little country.
4. The old lady answered, "Just have a look at my dog here. He is the manager of the supermarket where your dogs go shopping."
5. The gentlemen said, "When we want some eggs, I can send him to the supermarket, and he'll get them."
6. The men had their horses with them.
7. After some time the window opened, and an old lady came in with a cat.
8. The dogs were lying quietly under the table.
9. The young lady stood at the table near the window and cried.
10. When the gentlemen noticed that the old lady listened them, they started to tell each other in loud voices how clever their dogs were.
11. One of the men said, "When I want bread, butter and milk I send my dog to the supermarket."
12. The gentlemen talked about their dogs, what was good and what was bad about them.

**5. Complete the sentences with the verbs in the box**

<i>invaded</i>	<i>named</i>	<i>invented</i>	<i>crossed</i>
<i>changed</i>	<i>discovered</i>	<i>established</i>	<i>travelled</i>

1. Graham Bell \_\_\_ the telephone.
2. Thomas Mapother IV \_\_\_ his name to Tom Cruise.
3. The Romans \_\_\_ France in 58 BC.
4. Americans first \_\_\_ gold in the USA in 1799.
5. Marco Polo \_\_\_ to China in the 13<sup>th</sup> century.
6. Columbus \_\_\_ the Atlantic Ocean in 1492.
7. They \_\_\_ their baby after a pop star.
8. Spanish people first \_\_\_ the city of Los Angeles.

**6. Reread the text "A Funny Story" and do the test**

1. One gentleman said that when he wants cigarettes and send his dog to the supermarket, he'll only take the cigarettes he \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) likes best    b) prefer    c) think about
2. After some time the door opened, and an \_\_\_\_\_ came in with a dog.  
a) young lady    b) old man    c) old lady
3. The gentlemen \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) discussed about their lives    b) talked about their dogs    c) talked about

cigarettes

4. The old lady sat down at the next table, \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) reserves something to eat      b) ordered something to drink      c) ordered something to eat
5. Some gentlemen were sitting in a little \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) café in the country      b) restaurant in the country      c) restaurant in town
6. When the gentlemen noticed that the old lady \_\_\_\_, they started to tell each other in loud voices.  
a) ate her dinner      b) listened to them      c) spoke to them
7. The old lady listened to the gentlemen's \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) communication      b) conversation      c) participation
8. One of gentlemen said that he has \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) a clever dog      b) a brave dog      c) an intelligent dog
9. The old lady answered that her dog works as \_\_\_\_\_ of the supermarket.  
a) the shop assistant      b) the director      c) the manager
10. The men asked an old lady if has she \_\_\_\_ dogs as clever as theirs.  
a) ever heard      b) ever seen      c) ever been

## Practice 14

### Grammar: Word Order

З точки зору порядку слів українська мова дуже гнучка. Немає значення, що буде стояти на першому місці - підмет чи присудок, або зовсім нічого: “Зима”, “Це зима”, “Ранок”, “Світає”.

В англійській мові **ПОРЯДОК СЛІВ** чітко встановлений, і змінювати його не можна. На першому місці завжди стоїть підмет, на другому – допоміжне дієслово або присудок, на третьому – додаток, і в кінці речення - обставина часу.

**He reads a newspaper every evening.** Він читає газету щовечора. **He** (хто? - він – підмет) **reads** (що робить? - читає – присудок) **a newspaper** (що? - газету – додаток) **every evening** (коли? - щовечора – обставина часу). І ніколи не може бути: **He reads every evening a newspaper.** – НЕПРАВИЛЬНО.

**They go to school every day.** Вони ходять до школи щодня. **They** (хто? - вони – підмет) **go** (що роблять? - ходять – присудок) **to school** (куди? - до школи – додаток) **every day** (коли? як часто? щодня – обставина часу). Додаток повинен стояти перед обставиною часу, а не після: **They go every day to school.** – НЕПРАВИЛЬНО.

### 1. The Principal Parts of the Sentence

Головними членами речення є підмет *the Subject* і присудок *the Predicate*. Підмет найчастіше виражається іменником або особовим займенником. Присудок виражається особовою формою дієслова у будь-якому часі, стані, способі; модальним дієсловом у сполученні з інфінітивом і т.п.

**They tried to do it.** Вони намагалися це зробити. **They** (хто? - вони – підмет)



**tried to do** (що роблять? – намагалися зробити – присудок).

**She is writing the letter.** Вона пише листа. **She** (хто? - вона – підмет) **is writing** (що робить? – пише – присудок).

**I shall read this book.** Я прочитаю цю книжку. **I** (хто? - я – підмет) **shall read** (що зроблю? – прочитаю – присудок).

Для кращого запам'ятовування складемо просту схему:

**Стверджувальна форма:**

1	2	3	4
Підмет	Допоміжне дієслово (деякі часові форми обходяться без нього)	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
<b>The Present Indefinite Tense</b>			
The boy	-	swims	in the river every day
<b>The Present Continuous Tense</b>			
The boy	is	swimming	in the river now
<b>The Present Perfect Tense</b>			
The boy	has	swum	in the river.

**Заперечна форма:**

1	2	3	4
Підмет	Допоміжне дієслово	Заперечна частка	Присудок
<b>The Present Indefinite Tense</b>			
The boy	does	not	swim
<b>The Present Continuous Tense</b>			
The boy	is	not	swimming
<b>The Present Perfect Tense</b>			
The boy	has	not	swum

**2. Types of Interrogative Sentences**

**Загальне питання:**

Загальне питання передбачає відповідь „так” або „ні”.

У питальних реченнях порядок слів змінюється. На першому місці – допоміжне дієслово, на другому – підмет, на третьому – присудок:

1	2	3	4
Допоміжне дієслово	Підмет	Присудок	Другорядні члени
<b>The Present Indefinite Tense</b>			
Does	the boy	swim	in the river?
<b>The Present Continuous Tense</b>			
Is	the boy	swimming	in the river?
<b>The Present Perfect Tense</b>			
Has	the boy	swum	in the river?

**Спеціальне питання:**

Спеціальні питання починаються з питальних слів:

<b>Who?</b>	<i>Хто?</i>	<b>Where?</b>	<i>Де? Куди?</i>
<b>Whom?</b>	<i>Кому?</i>		
<b>Whose?</b>	<i>Чий?</i>	<b>Which?</b>	<i>Який? Котрий?</i>
<b>What for?</b>	<i>Навіщо? Для чого?</i>	<b>What?</b>	<i>Що? Хто?</i>
<b>What kind?</b>	<i>Який?</i>	<b>How?</b>	<i>Як? Яким чином?</i>
<b>When?</b>	<i>Коли?</i>	<b>How old?</b>	<i>Скільки років?</i>
<b>What time?</b>	<i>О котрій годині?</i>	<b>How tall?</b>	<i>Якого зросту?</i>
<b>Why?</b>	<i>Чому? Навіщо?</i>	<b>How much?</b>	<i>Скільки? (незліч.)</i>
<b>How far?</b>	<i>Де? (про відстань)</i>	<b>How many?</b>	<i>Скільки? (зліч.)</i>
<b>How long?</b>	<i>Скільки? (про час)</i>	<b>Where from?</b>	<i>Звідки?</i>

У спеціальних питаннях на першому місці стоїть питальне слово, на другому - допоміжне дієслово, на третьому – підмет, на четвертому – присудок:

1	2	3	4
Питальне слово	Допоміжне дієслово	Підмет	Присудок
<b>The Present Indefinite Tense</b>			
What	does	the boy	do?
<b>The Present Continuous Tense</b>			
Where	are	they	swimming?
<b>The Present Perfect Tense</b>			
When	has	the boy	swum?

**Питання до підмета:**

У такому реченні на першому місці стоїть питальне слово **Who? Хто? What? Що?**, яке є підметом, на другому - допоміжне дієслово, на третьому – присудок:

1	2	3
Питальне слово	Допоміжне дієслово	Присудок
Who	has	swum?

**Розділове питання:**

Розділові питання перекладаються українською мовою: *Чи не так? Чи правда?* Зверніть увагу на порядок слів у такому реченні:

1	2	3	4	5	6
Підмет	Допоміжне дієслово	Присудок	Другорядні члени	Допоміжне дієслово у заперечній формі	Підмет (займенник)
Helen		knows	languages,	doesn't	she?
John	has	travelled	a lot,	hasn't	he?

**Your friend speaks Spanish, doesn't he?** *Твій друг розмовляє іспанською, чи не так?*

**Caroline bought a house, doesn't she?** *Кароліна купила будинок, чи правда?*

**3. The Secondary Parts of the Sentence**

Другорядні члени речення також мають своє місце в реченні:

**а. додаток** (відповідає на питання „що?“, „кому?“, „кого?“ і т.п.; виражений

іменником або займенником);

**в. обставина місця** (відповідає на питання „де?“, „куди?“, „звідки?“ і т.п.; виражена іменником або займенником);

**с. обставина часу** (відповідає на питання „коли?“; виражена іменником, прислівником або словосполученням);

**д. обставина способу дії** (відповідає на питання „як?“; виражена прислівником або словосполученням);

Підмет	Присудок	Додаток	Обставина місця	Обставина часу	Обставина способу дії
We	are meeting	him	at the airport	at 7 o'clock.	
I	have bought	a house	in the country	recently.	
John	drives	his car	-	-	very fast.

Слова в ролі **обставини часу**: **always** завжди, **usually** звичайно, **often** часто, **багато разів**, **sometimes** коли-небудь, **seldom** рідко, **rarely** рідко, не часто, **never** ніколи, **ever** коли-небудь, **будь-коли**, **also** теж, також, **just** саме, якраз, **still** усе ж таки, дотепер, все ще, як і раніше, **already** вже, **both** обидва, обидві, і той і інший, **all** весь, уся, усі, усе завжди стоять разом з присудком у середині речення:

**My brother never speaks to him.** Мій брат ніколи з ним не розмовляє.

**I sometimes eat too much.** Я іноді дуже багато їм.

**They often have supper in restaurants.** Вони часто вечеряють в ресторані.

**She sometimes feel sad.** Вона іноколи буває сумна.

#### 4. The Attribute

Всі означення *Attributes* (відповідають на питання „який?“, „яка“, „яке?“, „які?“; виражені прикметниками) стоять перед словом, яке вони означають.

**He is an intelligent and talented person.** Він дуже розумна та талановита людина.

**Look at that big white house!** Подивіться на цей великий білий будинок!

Якщо означень декілька і всі вони визначають одне слово, вони стоять у такому порядку:

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Кількість Quantity	Якість Quality	Розмір Size	Форма Shape	Вік Age; Температура Temperature	Колір Colour	Візерунок Pattern	Походження Origin	Матеріал Material
a/an	good	little	round	old	light	plain	Chinese	wooden
one	bad	big	square	modern	red	flowered	French	plastic
some	special	long	oval	new	white	striped	Swiss	silk
five	cheap	tiny	thin	1999	blue	plaid	Greek	cotton
a few	pretty	small	wide	warm	black	checked	German	leather
a lot of	ugly	fat	short	cold	dark	polka-dot	American	metal

She bought a beautiful long black French-made dress. Вона купила красиву довгу чорну шовкову французьку сукню.

He is selling two expensive medium-sized old red bricks houses. Він продає два дорогі, середнього розміру будинки з червоної цегли.

### 5. Слова, що вказують на часову форму

Present Simple	Present Continuous	Past Simple	Present Perfect
<i>always</i> - завжди	<i>now</i> - зараз	<i>yesterday</i> - вчора	<i>just</i> - тільки що, щойно
<i>often</i> - часто	<i>at the moment</i> – зараз, на даний час	<i>a week / two weeks / three years etc. ago</i> – один тиждень / два тижні / три роки тому	<i>already</i> - уже; уже, раніше
<i>never</i> - ніколи	<i>this week</i> - на цьому тижні	<i>a long time ago</i> – багато років тому	<i>yet</i> - 1) до цього часу; досі; (все) ще; на той час, до того часу 2) вже (тепер); досі; (у питальних, заперечних реченнях) 3) до цього часу, будь-коли 4) коли-небудь, (коли-небудь) ще
<i>sometimes</i> - інколи	<i>currently</i> – тепер, зараз; нині	<i>some time ago</i> – деякий час тому	<i>before</i> - раніше, колись
<i>every day / week / month / year</i> – кожного дня / тижня / місяця / року		<i>last week / year / month etc.</i> – минулого тижня / року / місяця	<i>ever</i> - абиколи; коли-небудь
<i>every weekend</i> – кожні вихідні		<i>last weekend</i> – минулих вихідних	<i>never</i> - ніколи
<i>every morning / night</i> – кожного ранку / ночі		<i>about 10 minutes ago</i> – біля 10 хвилин тому	
<i>all the time</i> – весь час		<i>in 2009</i> – у 2009 році	
<i>from time to time</i> – час від часу			
<i>usually</i> - зазвичай			

### 6. Grammar Exercises

#### 1. Make up the sentences paying attention to the Word Order

1. football / don't like / very much / I –
2. Tom / the letter / every day / writes –
3. every day / do / the same thing / we –
4. I / this picture / don't like / very much –
5. in her bag / the money / puts / the woman –
6. a lot of housework / did / I / yesterday –

7. we / at the concert / some friends / met –
8. you / the same clothes / wear / every day –
9. she / every day / ten cigarettes / smokes –
10. my plan / last day / I / explained -

**2. Make up the sentences using the attribute Word Order**

1. table / have bought / French / a / wooden / beautiful / brown / round / big / old / Peter and Jane –
2. white / loaves of bread / fresh / several thousands / one can buy / in this shop / usually –
3. striped / green / a lot of / , / Chinese / black / modern / , / long / and / flowered / cotton / carpets / expensive / polka-dot / and / red / square / and / my friend / round / sold –
4. wonderful / cat / ! / new / what / black / little –
5. look at / American / special / ancient / books / some / thin -

**3. Order the words to make sentences**

1. is / Bristol / exciting / city / very / a.
2. west / of / it's / the / England / in. 3. population / got / of / a / 500.000 / it's.
4. favourite / place / my / art gallery / is / the.
5. are / great / there / shops / some.
6. football / it's / two / teams / got.
7. like / I / Bristol / it's / because / place / friendly / a.
8. kilometres / about / it's / 190 / London / from.

**4. Complete questions 1-6 with the words in the box. Then match the questions with answers a-f**

<i>When</i>	<i>Who</i>	<i>What</i>
<i>How many</i>	<i>Where</i>	<i>How</i>

1. ___ is your mother from?	a) In June.
2. ___ old is your cat?	b) Sally Heines.
3. ___ is Steve's birthday?	c) Tennis.
4. ___ is your favourite sport?	d) Thirty.
5. ___ is your best friend?	e) Florida.
6. ___ DVDs have we got?	f) Six months old.

**5. Order the words to make sentences**

1. is / a / very / Paris / city / beautiful
2. really / there / some / interesting / are / shops
3. exciting / I / place / like
4. safe / are / streets / very / the
5. quiet / is / library / the / building / very / this / in
6. is / big / Manchester / city / a
7. the / has / town / a / park / got / big

6. Complete the sentences with the words in the box

<i>can't</i>	<i>especially</i>	<i>fan</i>
<i>good</i>	<i>mad</i>	<i>prefer</i>

1. I am not \_\_\_\_\_ about books.
2. My brother is an Arsenal \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. I like art, but I am not very \_\_\_\_\_ at it.
4. We are really into music, \_\_\_\_\_ hip hop and pop.
5. I like chatting on the Internet, but I \_\_\_\_\_ meeting friends.
6. I have got a rat, but my mother \_\_\_\_\_ stand it.

**Practice 15**  
**Final Test**

**Word Quiz**

*adult* ['ædelt] дорослий, повнолітній; зріла людина

*researcher* [risɜ:ʃə] дослідник

*deaf* [def] глухий; глухуватий

*communicate* повідомляти, підтримувати зв'язок, спілкуватися

*shamrock* ['ʃæmrək] 1) квасениця; трилисник; 2) трилисник; конюшина

*clover* ['kləʊvə] конюшина

*doctrine* ['dɒktrɪn] 1) доктрина, теорія, учення; 2) догма, догмат

*Holy Trinity* Свята Трійця

*thistle* ['θɪs(ə)l] будяк; чортополох

*shield* [ʃi:ld] щит; захист

*daffodil* ['dæfədɪl] нарцис жовтий

*humble* [hʌmb(ə)l] скромний

*leek* [li:k] 1) цибуля-порей; 2) зображення цибулі-порей (емблема Уельсу)

*Buddha* ['budə] Будда

*New Year falls* Новий рік припадає

*calculate* розрахувати

*meeting* збори, нарада, засідання; мітинг; конференція, з'їзд; зустріч; дуель

*named after* названі на честь

*Rat* щур

*hard-working* працьовитий; старанний;

*Ox* ['ɒks] бик; віл, бик, буйвіл, бізон

*cautious* ['kɔ:ʃəs] обережний, обачний; завбачливий

*showy* [ʃəʊi] ефектний, яскравий, помітний; кричущий, позбавлений смаку;

блискучий, разючий, показний

*wise* [,waɪz] мудрий, премудрий; розумний

*gifted* ['giftɪd] обдарований; талановитий; здібний

*gentle* ['dʒentl] добрий; лагідний; ніжний; тихий, спокійний; легкий, слабкий;

слухняний; знатний, шляхетний; благородний, вихований, чемний

*Goat* [gəʊt] цап; коза; козел



*merry* веселий

*proud* [praʊd] гордий, гордовитий, зарозумілий; пихатий; самовдоволенний

*Rooster* ['ru:stə] півень; задирака, забіяка

*faithful* ['feɪf(ə)l] вірний, відданий; правдивий, який заслуговує на довіру; достовірний; точний, сумлінний

*honest* ['ɒnɪst] чесний; правдивий; прямий, щирий; відвертий; вірний

*relate* стосуватися, мати стосунок

*earthquake* ['z:θ,kweɪk] землетрус

*has got a border with* межує з

*currency* [k\_ʌrənsɪ] валюта

*official language* офіційна мова

*Mandarin* ['mændəri:n] китайська мова

*population* [pɒpjʊ'leɪʃ(ə)n] населення

*outside* із зовнішньої сторони (чого-небудь), зовні; на вулиці; поза приміщенням

*quietly* ['kwaɪətlɪ] тихо; безшумно; мирно,

спокійно *conversation* [kɒnvə'seɪʃ(ə)n] розмова, бесіда

*you won't believe* ви не повірите

*intelligent* [ɪn'telɪdʒ(ə)nt] розумний; кмітливий

*that's nothing* це ще нічого!

### 1. Write the following dates in English

1045; 2019; 1004; 1861; 1987; 2003; 1961, 2000; 1900; 21 травня; 24 грудня; 13 квітня; 1 березня 1986 року; Різдво Христове – в січні.; Моя двоюрідна сестра народилася взимку.; Цей письменник жив у 19 столітті.; о 5 ранку; 068-016-21-27; 036-244-55-57; 080-155-55-66

### 2. Write the Plural form of the underlined nouns:

1. The boy had a baseball in his hand.
2. My horse prefers to wear an English saddle.
3. That cat never seems to tire of jumping in and out of the box.
4. You stole my idea and didn't give me any credit.
5. Your mom is going to be upset about that broken lamp.
6. It's not difficult to grow a tree as long as you give it plenty of water.
7. I can't believe you let your dog stick its head out the window while you drive.

### 3. Transform each of the following words into plurals:

day - ; tax - ; taxi - ; lady - ; mountain - ; office - ; company - ; mother-in-law - ; friend - ; photo - ; fountain-pen - ; railroadman - ; story - ; schoolgirl - ; shelf - ; forget-me-not - .

### 4. Choose the correct plural for each of the words:

1. **choice** (a) choises; (b) choices; (c) choiceies)

2. **box** (a) boxs; b) boxies; c) boxes)
3. **thief** (a) thiefies; b) thieves; c) thieves)
4. **army** (a) armys; b) armies; c) army)
5. **owl** (a) owls; b) owlies; c) owelds)

### 5. Translate into English

1. *Слон живе довше, ніж кіт.*
2. *Хмарочос Бурж Халіфа вищий, ніж Ейфелева вежа.*
3. *Це найкоротший шлях до Києва.*
4. *Олег розумніший ніж Дмитро.*
5. *Ганна – найрозумніша студентка в нашому коледжі.*
6. *Наш новий менеджер дурніший ніж минулий.*
7. *Мій найстаріший син найтурботливіший.*
8. *Цей хлопець більш ввічливий ніж інші хлопці.*
9. *Собака Ольги спокійніший ніж собаки Олени.*
10. *Річка Міссісіпі довша ніж Дніпро.*
11. *Ріка Ніл – найдовша в світі.*
12. *Дикі тварини більш небезпечні ніж домашні.*
13. *Це завдання - найважливіше.*
14. *Це найкоротший шлях до Лондону.*

### Practice 16

#### Text: “Animals”

#### Read the text “Red list animals: The Orca”

The animals in this photo are orcas or “killer whales”. In fact, an orca is not a whale, but a type of dolphin. They are swimming in a group near the shore. May be they are hunting seals.

Orcas live in all of the world’s oceans. They hunt and play in groups. They are aggressive. Orcas usually eat fish, squid, seals and turtles. Females have one baby (it is called a calf), every two or three years.

Orcas are in the “red list” because they are in danger of becoming extinct. Some of orcas are in danger because there is pollution in the sea. They also die in fishing nets. I think that is important to protect these animals.

#### Vocabulary

**orca** ['ɔ:kə] касатка

**whale** [weɪl] кит

**shore** [ʃɔ:] берег; узбережжя

**may be** можливо, ймовірно

**hunt** seal полювати на тюленів

**squid** [skwɪd] кальмар

**turtle** ['tɜ:tl] черепаха

**female** ['fi:meɪl] самка

**calf** [kɑf] дитинча (оленя, слона, кита, тюленя та ін.)

**cub** [kʌb] дитинча (звіра)

*are in danger* знаходяться у небезпеці

*becoming extinct* вимирати

*pollution* [pə'lu:ʃ(ə)n] забруднення; забруднення навколишнього середовища

*protect* [prə'tekt] захищати, охороняти, запобігати

### 1. Answer the questions

1. What are the animals in this photo?
2. Do the orcas hunt in groups?
3. Where do orcas live?
4. How often do females have calves?
5. Why orcas are in danger?
6. Why they are becoming extinct?
7. What do orcas eat?
8. What character have orcas?
9. Why are these animals in the “red list”?

### 2. Find the second part of the following sentences

1. Females have one baby, \_\_\_\_\_ .
2. Orcas live in \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. I think that is important \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. An orca is not a whale, \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. They hunt and play \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. They are swimming \_\_\_\_\_ .
7. Orcas are in the “red list” \_\_\_\_\_ .
8. Orcas usually eat \_\_\_\_\_ .
9. Some of orcas are in danger \_\_\_\_\_ .
10. May be they are \_\_\_\_\_ .

- a) *because they are in danger of becoming extinct.*
- b) *but a type of dolphin.*
- c) *hunting seals.*
- d) *because there is pollution in the sea.*
- e) *to protect these animals.*
- f) *fish, squid, seals and turtles.*
- g) *every two or three years.*
- h) *in a group near the shore.*
- i) *all of the world’s oceans.*
- j) *in groups.*

### 3. Read the text again and determine what statements are *true* and *false*

1. Orcas are in the “red list” because they are in danger of becoming extinct.
2. In fact, an orca is not a dolphin, but a type of whale.
3. The orka hunts and plays alone.
4. I think that is important to attack these animals.
5. Orcas usually eat dolphins and polar bears.

6. Some of orcas are in danger because there is pollution in the sea.
7. Orcas live only in Arctic.
8. Orcas usually hunt polar bears and penguins.
9. They also live in the zoo.
10. Orcas are aggressive.
11. Females of orcas have two babies, every four or six years.

**4. Write an article about Polar Bear. Use the plan. Look at the text about Orcas as the model**

**Paragraph 1:** Introduction

**Paragraph 2:** Life and habitat

**Paragraph 3:** Problems

**Notes: The Polar Bear**

- a) females: two babies / cubs / every four or five years
- b) red list: climate / change; ice / melt; pollution
- c) habitat: the Arctic / on ice and snow
- d) food: seals, fish, birds, small animals
- e) behaviour: aggressive; hunt animals; can swim; attack other animals

**Insects:** worm, caterpillar, spider, ant, lady-bird, bug, mosquito, fly, butterfly

**Reptiles:** snake, frog, lizard, chameleon, viper (asp), python (boa), crocodile, tortoise

**Mammals:** elephant, giraffe, lion, tiger, cheetah, monkey, bear, fox, hare, wolf, shark, whale, dolphin, seal, rhino, sea cow, fur seal (walrus), hippo (river horse), beaver

**Birds:** parrot, sparrow, falcon, eagle, owl

**Fish:** salmon, herring, pike, carp, crucian

**Key phrases:**

It looks like a ...

It sounds like a ...

Does it live in this country / Africa / forest / river / mountains / oceans / seas /? -  
Yes, it does. No, it doesn't.

Does it domestic / wild animal?

Does it eat meat / vegetables / fruits?

Does it fly?

Does it swim?

Does it climb trees?

Does it attack human / animals?

Does it hunt fish / animals / human / birds?

Has it more than four legs? - Yes, it has. No, it hasn't.

Has it fur / feather / skin / wings?

Has it sharp teeth / claws?

Has it a beak / gills?

ведмідь		крокодил	
барлога	<i>hole</i>	річка	<i>river</i>
малина	<i>raspberry</i>	хвіст	<i>tail</i>
мед	<i>honey</i>	шкіра	<i>skin</i>
лапа	<i>paw</i>	паща	<i>mouth</i>
хутро	<i>fur</i>		
зуби	<i>teeth</i>		
гострий	<i>sharp</i>		
кіготь	<i>claw</i>		
ліс	<i>forest</i>		
голодний	<i>hungry</i>		
злий	<i>angry</i>		
агресивний	<i>aggressive</i>		
лев		лисиця	
грива	<i>mane</i>	хитрий	<i>sly</i>
		наглий	<i>sudden, unexpected</i>
акула		страус	
море	<i>sea</i>	пустеля	<i>desert</i>
океан	<i>ocean</i>	пісок	<i>sand</i>
плавник	<i>fin</i>	пір'я	<i>feathers</i>
зябра	<i>gill</i>	комахи	<i>insects</i>
		висиджувати	<i>hatch</i>
білка		орел / яструб /	
дупло	<i>hollow</i>	скеля	<i>rock, scar;</i> (велика, окрема) <i>crag;</i>
горіхи	<i>nuts</i>	гніздо	(стрімка) <i>cliff</i>
гриби	<i>mushrooms</i>		<i>nest</i>
пухнастий	<i>fluffy</i>		

## 5. Project 2. Write about any animals of the world. Look at the text about Orcas as the model

**Paragraph 1:** Introduction

**Paragraph 2:** Life and habitat

**Paragraph 3:** Problems

## 6. Compare the sentences with names of animals

- \_\_\_\_\_ hunt at night. They eat small animals.
- \_\_\_\_\_ hide in trees. They have not got legs.
- \_\_\_\_\_ catch fish. They sleep in winter.
- \_\_\_\_\_ don't feed their young. They can change colour when they want to hide.
- \_\_\_\_\_ hunt smaller fish. They sometimes attack human.
- \_\_\_\_\_ build houses. They catch animals and put them in zoos.
- \_\_\_\_\_ protect their babies from sharks. They sing to each other.

**7. Check the meanings of the verbs and choose the correct**

1. The blackbird is *feeding* / *eating* its chicks.
2. The beaver is *digging* / *building* a dam.
3. The chameleon is *catching* / *helping* an insect with its tongue.
4. The fish is *fighting* / *protecting* the other fish.
5. The bear is *hunting* / *hiding* the salmon.
6. The falcon is *playing* / *chasing* a group of smaller birds.

**8. Choose the correct words**

1. Humans *kill* / *die* seals for their fur.
2. Crocodiles *feed* / *eat* meat.
3. Falcons *build* / *hide* in trees.
4. Rabbits *climb* / *dig* holes in the ground.
5. Female elephants *attack* / *protect* their babies.
6. Bears *catch* / *fight* fish in rivers.
7. Whales don't *fly* / *swim*.
8. Some snakes can *climb* / *chase* trees.

**Practice 17**

**Grammar: The Present Indefinite Tense**

**Неозначені часи Indefinite (Simple) Tenses** вживаються для вираження дії, що відбувається в теперішньому, минулому чи майбутньому часі, але не вказують на її характер, тривалість, завершеність чи передування іншій дії або певному моменту в минулому чи майбутньому. Дієслова в неозначеному часі можуть перекладатися на українську мову дієсловами доконаного чи недоконаного виду.

**The Present Indefinite Tense** теперішній неозначений час - одна з часових форм дієслова, що вживається для вираження дії, яка відбувається у теперішньому часі.

**1. The Present Indefinite Tense** вживається для вираження постійної дії або дії, яка повторюється стосовно **теперішнього часу**:

**I wash the stairs every second day.** Я мию сходи через день.

**She goes to school every day.** Вони ходять в школу щодня.

**2. The Present Indefinite Tense** вживається для вираження дії, яка характеризує підмет постійно або протягом **теперішнього періоду часу**:

**He speaks both French and English fluently.** Він вільно розмовляє як французькою, так і англійською мовами.

**She dances very badly.** Вона танцює дуже погано.

**3. The Present Indefinite Tense** вживається для вираження дії або стану, які **не обмежені часовими рамками** і відбуваються незалежно від волі людини:

**Sugar dissolves in the water.** Цукор розчиняється у воді.



**4. The Present Indefinite Tense** вживається для вираження дії, яка відбувається в момент мовлення:

а) з дієсловами, що не вживаються у формі **Continuous: to see бачити, to know знати, to hear чути, to feel відчувати, to like подобатись, to hate ненавидіти, to love любити, to understand розуміти:**

**I see anything.** Я все бачу.

**All cats like milk.** Всі коти люблять молоко.

**I do not (don't) know.** Я не знаю.

б) якщо той, хто говорить, лише констатує факт, а не передає дію, як процес, що триває:

**He wants you to be manager.** Він хоче, щоб ви стали менеджером.

**Present Indefinite Tense** часто вживається з такими обставинами часу: **every day щодня, every week щотижня, every month щомісяця, every year щороку; on Sundays по неділях, on Mondays по понеділках; in the evening ввечері, in the morning зранку, in the afternoon по обіді, in spring навесні; always завжди, never ніколи, seldom рідко, rarely рідко, не часто, винятково; frequently, often часто, неодноразово, usually звичайно, sometimes інколи.** Ці прислівники мають своє місце в реченні: завжди стоять перед присудком, але після допоміжного дієслова.

**We go to school every day.** Ми ходимо в школу щодня.

**They often play golf.** Вони часто грають в гольф.

**He is never late.** Він ніколи не запізнюється.

Розглянемо **Present Indefinite Tense** детальніше. Для початку складемо таблицю порядку слів.

### 1. Word Order of Simple Tences

**Стверджувальна форма:**

**Я (ти, ми, вони) плаваю в річці щодня.**

**Він (вона, воно) плаває в річці щодня.**

1	2	3	4
Підмет	Допоміжне дієслово (деякі часові форми обходяться без нього)	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
I, you, we, they	-	swim	in the river every day.
He, she, it	-	swims	in the river every day.

До дієслова у **III особі однини (he він, she вона, it воно)** додається закінчення **-s**:

**to swim плавати + -s = swims;**

**to work працювати + -s = works;**

**to do робити + -s = does;**

**to go ходити + -s = goes;**

**to read читати + -s = reads;**

**to play грати + -s = plays etc.**

**I, II особа однини та множини: I я, you ти, ви, we ми, you ви, та III особа множини: they вони** не потребують дієслова з закінченням **-s**:  
**swim, work, do, go, read, play etc.**

## 2. The Auxiliary Verb of Simple Tences

Заперечна та питальна форми вимагають допоміжних дієслів. Існує група дієслів (*to do, to be etc.*), які є допоміжними, тобто, тільки допомагають утворювати часові форми, але не перекладаються. У **теперішньому неозначеному часі the Present Indefinite Tense** допоміжним дієсловом є **to do**, яке має дві форми:

<i>to do</i>	
<i>do</i>	<i>do + -(e)s=does</i>
I, you, we, they	he, she, it

Допоміжне дієслово **does** у питальній та заперечній формах „бере на себе обов’язок” основного дієслова (присудка) **III особи однини (he він, she вона, it воно)** закінчення **-s**:

**He does not go to the theatre.** Він не ходить у театр.

**Does she go to the theatre?** Чи ходить вона у театр?

Знов потрібно скласти табличку, так як кожне слово в англійському реченні має своє місце в реченні.

### Заперечна форма:

**Я (ти, ми, вони) не плаваю в річці щодня.**

**Він (вона, воно) не плаває в річці щодня.**

1	2	3	4	5
Підмет	Допоміж не дієслово	Заперечн а частка <b>NOT</b>	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
I, you, we, they	do	not	swim	in the river every day.
He, she, it	does	not	swim (якщо є допоміжне дієслово <b>does</b> - у цьому випадку закінчення <b>-s</b> немає)	in the river every day.

### Питальна форма:

**Чи ти плаваєш щодня?**

**Чи плаває цей хлопець щодня?**

1	2	3	4
Допоміжне дієслово	Підмет	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
Do	you	swim	in the river every day?
Does	the boy	swim	in the river every day?

*Де ти плаваєш щодня?*

*Де плаває цей хлопець щодня?*

1	2	3	4	5
Питальне слово	Допоміжне дієслово	Підмет	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
Where	do	you	swim	every day?
Where	does	the boy	swim	every day?

Питальне слово – **WHO?** – ХТО (III особа однини – відповідно дієслово – присудок із закінченням -s (*speaks, goes, swims, reads, sits etc.*)):

*Хто плаває щодня?*

1	2	3
Питальне слово ХТО? <b>WHO?</b>	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
Who	swims	in the river every day?

### Present Simple

1. Констатація факту: *The cat likes sausages.*
2. Дії та звички, що повторюються: *The cat eats sausages every day.*
3. Закони природи, загальновідомі факти: *Water freezes 0°C.*
4. Розклад (про події в майбутньому): *It is 5 pm now and the train arrives at 7 pm.*
5. Аналіз, спортивний коментар: *Brad Pitt acts brilliantly in this movie.*

### Слова-сигнали

*every day / week / month / year*

*usually, often, always, rarely, never, sometimes, at night, on Mondays*

### 3. Grammar Exercises

#### 1. Put the verbs into the Present Indefinite

1. General Director \_\_\_\_ (conclude) agreements every day.
2. He \_\_\_\_ (not; like) black coffee.
3. I \_\_\_\_ (sign) contracts every day.
4. She \_\_\_\_ (read) detectives every evening.
5. \_\_\_\_ you (go) for a walk every day?

#### 2. Insert the verbs: *to boil, to close, to cost, to go, to have, to like, to meet, to open, to smoke, to teach, to wash* in proper tense

1. Steve \_\_\_\_ ten cigarettes a day.
2. We usually \_\_\_\_ dinner at 7 o'clock.
3. I \_\_\_\_ films. I often \_\_\_\_ to the cinema.
4. Water \_\_\_\_ at 100 degrees Celsius.
5. In Britain the banks \_\_\_\_ at 9.30 in the morning and \_\_\_\_ at 18.30 in the evening.
6. Shoes are expensive. They \_\_\_\_ a lot of money.
7. Tina \_\_\_\_ mathematics to young teacher.

- Your job is very interesting. You \_\_\_ many people.
- Emma \_\_\_ his hair twice a week.

**3. Give the correct form of the Simple Present in each verb**

- My uncle \_\_\_ in a factory. (work)
- The children \_\_\_ a lot of sweets. (eat)
- I always \_\_\_ out on Sundays. (go)
- She never \_\_\_ up very early. (get)
- The concert \_\_\_ at 7 every Friday. (start)
- Joan and Sue \_\_\_ glasses. (wear)

**4. Make the following sentences negative**

- The waiters do their work well.
- The dog sleeps all day in the house.
- He knows the correct answer.
- The students have new textbooks.
- She tries to play tennis well.
- I go to bed very early.

**5. Make the following sentences interrogative**

- His sons go to the local school.
- They fish in the lake.
- Elephants never forget.
- The river freezes in winter.
- She realises the danger.
- We sometimes miss the bus.

**6. Match the verbs in the box with words 1-8**

<i>watch</i> <i>have</i> <i>do</i> <i>go</i> <i>start</i> <i>work</i> <i>speak</i> <i>cook</i>
--

- \_\_\_ lunch
- \_\_\_ Spanish
- \_\_\_ TV
- \_\_\_ to bed
- \_\_\_ in a factory
- \_\_\_ dinner
- \_\_\_ school
- \_\_\_ my homework

**Practice 18**

**Text: "The Broken Vase"**

**Read the text: "The Broken Vase"**

There was once a young man who was in love with a beautiful girl. The girl's

parents were rich, but the young man was very poor. When the girl's birthday was coming the young man wanted to make her a present. He wanted to buy something beautiful for her, but he had no idea what to buy. Beautiful things cost a lot of money and he had very little. He went into a shop where there were many beautiful things, but they were all too dear. Then he saw a beautiful vase. The vase was so beautiful that he could not take his eyes off it. "That would be a good present for the girl I love", he thought.

The owner of the shop saw this.

"Why are you so interested in that vase?" he asked. "Do you want to buy it?"

"No, I can't", said the young man and told him everything.

The owner of the shop thought a moment and then said: "I can help you. Do you see the broken vase in the corner there? I shall order my servant to pack the pieces and take it to the girl you love. When he enters the room he will drop it."

On the girl's birthday everything happened as had been planned. The servant brought the vase and as he entered the room he dropped it. But when the vase was unpacked, the guests saw that each piece had been packed separately.

### Vocabulary

*was in love with* закоханий

*poor* [pʊə] бідний, незможний

*dear* [diə] дорогий, який дорого коштує

*vase* [va:z] ваза

*owner* ['əʊnə] власник

*order* ['ɔ:də] наказувати; розпоряджатися

*servant* ['sɜ:v(ə)nt] слуга

*enter* ['entə] входити

*drop* [drɒp] падати, випадати; вивалюватися; упускати

*unpacked* [ʌn'pækt] розпакована

*separately* ['sep(ə)ritli] окремо

### 1. Answer the questions

1. What did the young man want to make for his beloved?
2. Had he some ideas what to buy?
3. Where did he see many beautiful things?
4. What did the young man want to buy for a present?
5. What did he see in the shop?
6. What did the young man think when he saw a beautiful vase?
7. What did the owner ask the young man?
8. What advice did the owner of the shop give to the young man?
9. What did the guests see when the vase was unpacked?
10. What do you think about it?

### 2. Read the again and determine what statements are *true* and *false*

1. There was once an old man who was in love with a beautiful girl.
2. The girl's parents were poor, but the young man was very rich.
3. The young man wanted to make a present.
4. He wanted to buy something beautiful for her, and he had some ideas what to

buy.

5. He went into a shop where there were many beautiful things, but they were all too dear.

6. The young man saw a beautiful comb in the shop.

7. The owner of the shop thought a moment and then said: "I can help you."

8. On the girl's birthday everything happened as had been planned.

9. The owner of the shop ordered his servant to pack the pieces and take it to the girl's house.

10. The servant brought the vase and as he entered the room he unpacked it.

### 3. Find in the text

*коштують дорого -*

*подумав хвилину -*

*розказав йому все -*

*він увійде в кімнату -*

*він не міг відвести очі від неї -*

*хочете купити її -*

*упакувати всі уламки -*

*як було сплановано -*

*там в кутку -*

*зробити їй подарунок -*

*багато гарних речей -*

*в нього було дуже мало грошей -*

### 4. Choose the correct options

1. Giraffes have got very long *necks* / *lips*.

2. Ben has no hair at all – he is *short* / *bald*.

3. How much is this *pair* / *couple* of jeans?

4. You should wear a comfortable *tracksuit* / *suit* to do sports.

5. Jessika has got dark hair. She's blond now because she is wearing *make-up* / *a wig*.

6. Anton is tall and very good- *watching* / *looking*.

7. He's hot short, *round* / *curly* brown hair.

8. Well, it doesn't *size* / *fit* you well. It's too big.

### 5. Give the correct form of the Simple Present in each verb

1. My uncle \_\_\_ in a factory. (work)

2. The children \_\_\_ a lot of sweets. (eat)

3. I always \_\_\_ out on Sundays. (go)

4. She never \_\_\_ up very early. (get)

5. The concert \_\_\_ at 7 every Friday. (start)

6. Joan and Sue \_\_\_ glasses. (wear)

### 6. Make the following sentences interrogative

1. Their daughters play tennis on Saturdays.



2. They buy milk at the local shop.
3. My friends pick up mushrooms every autumn.
4. Fish lives in water.
5. Crocodiles attack people.
6. Monkeys climb trees.
7. She studies at university.
8. She sometimes misses her dinner.

**7. Reread the text “The Broken Vase” and do the test**

1. The owner of the shop thought a moment and then said: “I can \_\_\_\_.”  
a) ask you      b) offer you      c) help you
2. A young man thought that the \_\_\_\_ would be a good present for his girl.  
a) beautiful comb      b) beautiful vase      c) beautiful dress
3. The owner of the shop proposed to the young man \_\_\_\_ .  
a) a broken vase      b) to break a vase      c) to buy a broken vase
4. Beautiful things cost a lot of money and a young man had \_\_\_\_ .  
a) a lot of      b) much      c) very little
5. The owner of the shop asked \_\_\_\_ why did he so interested in that vase.  
a) a young man      b) a young woman      c) a shop assistant
6. The owner of the shop asked his servant to \_\_\_\_ of the broken vase.  
a) pack the vase      b) wrap the present      c) pack the pieces
7. The young man wanted to buy something beautiful \_\_\_\_ for his girl.  
a) a vase      b) glasses      c) present
8. The owner of the shop understood that the young man wanted \_\_\_\_ .  
a) to steal a vase      b) to break a vase      c) to buy a vase
9. There was once a young man who \_\_\_\_ with a beautiful girl.  
a) was in love      b) was angry      c) was hungry
10. The owner of the shop asked his servant \_\_\_\_ to the girl’s house.  
a) pass the broken vase      b) take the packed present with the broken vase  
c) bring the present

**8. Make the following sentences negative**

1. The waiters do their work well.
2. The dog sleeps all day in the house.
3. He knows the correct answer.
4. The students have new textbooks.
5. She tries to play tennis well.
6. I go to bed very early.

**Practice 19**  
**Revision**  
**Test 4**

**Word Quiz**

*orca* ['ɔ:kə] *касатка*

*whale* [weil] *кит*

*shore* [ʃɔ:] берег; узбережжя  
*may be* можливо, ймовірно  
*hunt seal* полювати на тюленів  
*squid* [skwid] кальмар  
*turtle* [ˈtɜtl] черепаха  
*female* [ˈfi:meil] самка  
*calf* [kaf] дитинча (оленя, слона, кита, тюленя та ін.)  
*cub* [kʌb] дитинча (звіра)  
*are in danger* знаходяться у небезпеці  
*becoming extinct* вимирати  
*pollution* [pəˈlu:ʃ(ə)n] забруднення; забруднення навколишнього середовища  
*protect* [prəˈtekt] захищати, охороняти, запобігати  
*climb trees* лазати по деревах  
*attack human* нападати на людей  
*hunt fish* полювати на рибу  
*fur* [fɜ:] хутро; шерсть; шкура; шкурка  
*feather* [ˈfeðə] пір'я  
*skin* шкіра  
*wing* [wiŋ] крило  
*claw* [klɔ:] пазур, кіготь  
*paw* [pɔ:] лапа  
*beak* [bi:k] дзьоб  
*gill* [gil] зябра  
*was in love with* закоханий  
*poor* [pʊə] бідний, незаможний  
*dear* [diə] дорогий, який дорого коштує  
*vase* [va:z] ваза  
*owner* [ˈəʊnə] власник  
*order* [ˈɔ:də] наказувати; розпоряджатися  
*servant* [ˈsɜ:v(ə)nt] слуга  
*enter* [ˈentə] входити  
*drop* [drɒp] падати, випадати; вивалюватися; упускати  
*unpacked* [ʌnˈpækt] розпакована  
*separately* [ˈsep(ə)ritli] окремо

**1. Translate the following word-combinations into English:**

риба, кальмари та черепахи; кити, дельфіни, тюлені та полярні ведмеді; населення, країна, столиця та валюта; ця країна межує з 5 країнами; дитинча акули та дитинча полярного ведмеда; самки лисиці; полярні ведмеді знаходяться у небезпеці; касатки починають вимирати; охороняти навколишнє середовище; полюють на маленьких тварин, інколи нападати на людей; розумний і спокійний; китайська мова не є офіційною мовою країни; лазати по деревах

**2. Write the animals for each group:**

**Mammals:** \_\_\_\_; **Fish:** \_\_\_\_; **Insects:** \_\_\_\_; **Birds:** \_\_\_\_; **Reptiles:** \_\_\_\_

**3. Defence of the Project 2 “Animals”**

**4. Make up sentences using the following words according to a model**

*not accept, correct, cancel, close, update, sell*

**Model:** My car is broken. I *am going to repair* it.

1. We don't need this bank account any more.
2. I've found two mistakes in this report.
3. We don't like their offer.
4. My credit card is damaged.
5. Her figures are out of date.
6. He cannot run a company.

**5. Complete the sentences with the words from the box. There are three extra words**

*boss; earn; e-mail; experience; fit; opinion;  
pay; responsible; travel; voluntary; work*

1. Can you send me an \_\_\_\_ with Jenny's address?
2. My job is boring: I ask people their \_\_\_\_ and write down their answers.
3. I never \_\_\_\_ long hours – I usually go home at three o'clock.
4. Matt works for a \_\_\_\_ company – he can help you find a cheap tour.
5. Sally wants to gain some \_\_\_\_ by working this summer as a doctor.
6. Working as a lecturer I \_\_\_\_ about 3 hundred dollars per week.
7. He doesn't get paid – its \_\_\_\_ work.
8. In my job, I am \_\_\_\_ for looking after three little children.

**6. Fill in: a, an or the**

At \_\_\_\_ weekend, Alex and Amanda went to \_\_\_\_ theatre. They saw \_\_\_\_ great play called \_\_\_\_ “I Would Die For You”. \_\_\_\_ play was \_\_\_\_ romantic story about lives of \_\_\_\_ couple in love. After going to \_\_\_\_ theatre, Alex and Amanda went to \_\_\_\_ restaurant. They both ate \_\_\_\_ very large meal. Amanda had \_\_\_\_ huge bowl of \_\_\_\_ spaghetti and Alex had \_\_\_\_ enormous plate of various kinds of \_\_\_\_ meat. \_\_\_\_ spaghetti and \_\_\_\_ meat were followed by \_\_\_\_ chocolate cake. After leaving \_\_\_\_ restaurant, Alex and Amanda got \_\_\_\_ taxi home. On \_\_\_\_ way home they saw \_\_\_\_ nasty car accident. \_\_\_\_ yellow car had run straight into \_\_\_\_ black van. \_\_\_\_ yellow car was badly damaged. \_\_\_\_ taxi driver had to take Alex and Amanda home by another \_\_\_\_ route.

## Practice 20

### Grammar: The Past Indefinite Tense

**The Past Indefinite Tense** минулий неозначений час – часова форма дієслова, яка виражає дію, що відбувалася в минулому. **Past Indefinite Tense** вживається для вираження одноразової або постійної дії в минулому. Час, у якому відбувалася дія, вже пройшов і з теперішнім не пов'язаний.

**Past Indefinite** правильних дієслів утворюється додаванням до інфінітива без частки **to** закінчення **-ed**:

**to play** *грати* + **-ed** = **played**;

**to work** *працювати* + **-ed** = **worked**;

**to stop** *припиняти* + **-ed** = **stopped**.

**Past Indefinite (II форма)** неправильних дієслів утворюється за таблицею неправильних дієслів:

**to write** *писати* – **wrote**;

**to bring** *приносити* – **brought**;

**to go** *ходити* - **went**.

**The Past Indefinite Tense** часто уточнюється обставинами часу: **yesterday** *учора*, **last week** *минулого тижня*, **last year** *торік*, **last summer** *минулого літа*, **half an hour ago** *півгодини тому*, etc.

**They saw him yesterday.** Вони бачили його вчора.

**We did it last year.** Ми зробили це торік.

#### 1. Word Order of Past Simple

Тепер розглянемо будову **минулого неозначеного часу the Past Indefinite Tense**. Знов складемо таблицю:

##### Стверджувальна форма:

**Я (ти, ви, ми, вони, він, вона, воно) грали у дворі торік.**

**Я (ти, ви, ми, вони, він, вона, воно) плавали в річці торік.**

1	2	3	4
Підмет	Допоміжне дієслово (деякі часові форми обходяться без нього)	Присудо к	Другорядні члени речення
I, you, we, they, he, she, it	-	played	in the yard last summer.
I, you, we, they, he, she, it	-	swam	in the river last year.

#### 2. The Auxiliary Verb of Past Simple

Заперечна та питальна форми також вимагають допоміжних дієслів. У **минулому неозначеному часі the Past Indefinite Tense** допоміжним дієсловом також є **to do** – в цій часовій формі - **did** для всіх осіб без виключення. У заперечній та питальній формах завдяки допоміжному дієслову **did** у **минулому неозначеному часі Past Indefinite Tense** основне дієслово -

присудок лишається у формі інфінітива без частки **to**:

**I did not write a letter yesterday.** *Я не написав листа вчора.*

**Did they sign the agreement last Monday?** *Чи підписали вони угоду минулого понеділка?*

**Заперечна форма:**

***Я (ти, ви, ми, вони, він, вона, воно) не плавали в річці минулого дня.***

1	2	3	4	5
Підмет	Допоміж не дієслово	Заперечна частка <b>NOT</b>	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
I, you, we, they, he, she, it	did	not	swim	in the river last day.

**Питальна форма:**

***Чи плавав ти вчора?***

***Чи плавав вчора цей хлопець?***

1	2	3	4
Допоміжне дієслово	Підмет	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
Did	you	swim	in the river last day?
Did	the boy	swim	in the river last day?

***Де ти плавав вчора?***

***Де плавав цей хлопець вчора?***

1	2	3	4	5
Питальне слово	Допоміжне дієслово	Підмет	Присудо к	Другорядні члени речення
Where	did	you	swim	last day?
Where	did	the boy	swim	last day?

***Хто плавав вчора?***

1	2	3
Питальне слово ХТО? WHO?	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
Who	swam	in the river last day?

### 3. Regular & Irregular Verbs

Regular Verbs			Irregular Verbs		
Infinitive	Past Simple	Past Participle	Infinitive	Past Simple	Past Participle
to apply	applied	applied	to be	was, were	been
to ask	asked	asked	to begin <i>починати</i>	began	begun
to believe	believed	believed	to break <i>ламати</i>	broke	broken
to clean	cleaned	cleaned	to bring <i>приносити</i>	brought	brought
to close	closed	closed	to build	built	built
to drop	dropped	dropped	to buy	bought	bought

*Practical Grammar of the English Language*

to finish	<u>finished</u>	<u>finished</u>	to come	came	come
to stay	<u>stayed</u>	<u>stayed</u>	to cut	cut	cut
to stop	<u>stopped</u>	<u>stopped</u>	to do	did	done
to open	<u>opened</u>	<u>opened</u>	to dream	dreamt	dreamt
to order	<u>ordered</u>	<u>ordered</u>	to drink	drank	drunk
to play	<u>played</u>	<u>played</u>	to eat	ate	eaten
to work	<u>worked</u>	<u>worked</u>	to fight	fought	fought
			to find	found	found
			to fly	flew	flown
			to forget	forgot	forgotten
			to get	got	got
			to give	gave	given
			to go	went	gone
			to have	had	had
			to hold	held	held
			to keep	kept	kept
			to know	knew	known
			to lay	laid	laid
			to learn	learnt	learnt
			to lose	lost	lost
			to make	made	made
			to meet	met	met
			to mistake	mistook	mistaken
			to pay	paid	paid
			to put	put	put
			to read [ri:d]	read [red]	read [red]
			to say	said	said
			to see	saw	seen
			to sell	sold	sold
			to send	sent	sent
			to sing	sang	sung
			to sit	sat	sat
			to sleep	slept	slept
			to speak	spoke	spoken
			to spend	spent	spent
			to stand	stood	stood



## Practical Grammar of the English Language

			to sweep	swept	swept
			to swim	swam	swum
			to take	took	taken
			to teach	taught	taught
			to tell	told	told
			to think	thought	thought
			to understand	understood	understood
			to wear	wore	worn
			to write	wrote	written

### Past Simple

- Дії в минулому, що відбулися одна за одною: *Helen put on a dress, did her hair and left.*
- Минулі звички: *Peter used to drink coffee every morning.*
- Подія в минулому, що сталася в точний момент часу: *Janet drank coffee an hour ago.*
- Дії відбулися в минулому, точний час не вказаний: *Shakespeare wrote many plays.*

### Слова-сигнали

*yesterday, last week / day / month / year, ago, then, just now, when, in 2019 etc.*

## 4. Grammar Exercises

### 1. Make up special questions to the following sentences

- Last year I decided to go to England.
- I arrived in London last year.
- I went to my hotel by bus last Saturday.
- I wrote some letters yesterday.
- He did his homework last Sunday.
- They spoke English with their friends last night.

### 2. Insert the verbs: *to clean, to die, to enjoy, to finish, to happen, to live, to open, to play, to rain, to smoke, to start, to stay, to want* in Past Simple

- I \_\_\_ my teeth 3 times yesterday.
- He \_\_\_ 20 cigarettes yesterday evening.
- The concert last night \_\_\_ at 7.30 and \_\_\_ at 10 o'clock.
- The accident \_\_\_ last Sunday afternoon.
- When I was a child I \_\_\_ to be a doctor.
- Mozart \_\_\_ from 1756 to 1791.
- We \_\_\_ our holiday last year.
- Today the weather is nice, but yesterday it \_\_\_.
- It was hot in the room so I \_\_\_ the window.
- The weather was good yesterday afternoon so we \_\_\_ tennis.
- William Shakespeare \_\_\_ in 1616.
- We \_\_\_ at a very good hotel last weekend.

**3. Make the following sentences into the *Simple Past***

1. It starts to rain.
2. People like our house.
3. She drinks coffee last morning.
4. I play chess with my father last evening.
5. My brother sits with his best friend.
6. The boy stops a taxi in the street.

**4. Make the following negative using the *Simple Past***

1. It starts to rain.
2. People like our house.
3. She drinks coffee last morning.
4. I play chess with my father last evening.
5. My brother sits with his best friend.
6. The boy stops a taxi in the street.

**5. Make up general questions using the *Simple Past***

1. We watched the interesting DVD in the cinema.
2. My friends liked chatting on the Internet.
3. She drank many cups of coffee last day.
4. I play football last Sundays.
5. My sister met her first teacher last week.
6. The women were in the café and drank green tea with lemon yesterday.
7. They discussed the problem at the last meeting.

**Last Coffee at the Corner Café**

**Notes:** Agent Koji went for breakfast at the Corner Café at 8.00 yesterday morning. At 9.1- he died after drinking a coffee with poison in it. Detective Lambert talked to the waitress, Larna Scott.

**6. Complete the questions and answers in the dialogue. Use the the question words in the box and the past tense of the verbs in brackets**

<i>How</i>	<i>What</i>	<i>What time</i>	<i>Who</i>	<i>Where</i>
------------	-------------	------------------	------------	--------------

- A. 1. \_\_\_ did Koji come into the café?
- B. He 2 \_\_\_ into the café at 8.00. (*come*)
- A. 3. \_\_\_ did he sit?
- B. He 4 \_\_\_ near the door. (*sit*)
- A. 5. \_\_\_ did he talk to?
- B. He 6 \_\_\_ to a man with a beard. (*talk*)
- A. 7. \_\_\_ did Koji drink?
- B. He 8 \_\_\_ coffee. (*drink*)
- A. 9. \_\_\_ did he die?
- B. He 10 \_\_\_ after drinking the coffee. (*die*)

**7. Make affirmative and negative sentences. Use the prompts and your own ideas. For example: I / buy / game – No – *I didn't buy a game. I bought a CD.***

1. I / have / a sandwich for lunch. – No - \_\_\_\_\_
2. I / meet / my friends in town. – No - \_\_\_\_\_
3. We / go / to a café. – No - \_\_\_\_\_
4. I / read / a book in bed. – No - \_\_\_\_\_
5. We / eat / at home on Friday. – No - \_\_\_\_\_
6. I / write / a letter to a friend. – No - \_\_\_\_\_

## Practice 21

### Text: “Jim and Della”

#### Read the text “Jim & Della”

Jim and Della were young people, husband and wife. They lived in a small room in an old house in one of the dirty streets of New York.

They worked from early morning till late at night, but they got very little money for their work. And still they had two things, which were very dear to them – Jim's gold watch and Della's beautiful hair.

Christmas was coming and Della wanted to give Jim a nice present but she had no money. She really did not know what to do. She sat on the sofa and began to cry. Suddenly an idea came to her. She got up and stood in front of the mirror and look at her beautiful long hair. Then she left the house and in a few minutes she was already at the hairdresser's shop.

“Will you buy my hair?” she asked. The hairdresser looked at her hair and said, “Yes, I will, it is fine hair. I can give you twenty dollars for it.” Della was very happy. She took the money and went to buy a present for her husband. In one of the shops she saw a very beautiful watch chain. “I'll buy it. Jim will be very glad”, she said to herself. “He needs a chain for his watch”.

So Della bought a gold watch-chain as a Christmas present for Jim. When she got home, Jim was already waiting for her. He looked at her smiling little wife and understood everything.

“Why did you do it?” he asked.

“Dear Jim, my hair will grow and I wanted to give you a present. “Here it is”, and she put the watch-chain into his hand.

The beautiful chain, Della's present, was of no use to him. He had sold his gold watch to buy a Christmas present for his wife. He took a packet out of his pocket and gave it to Della. She opened it and saw two beautiful combs that she had seen in a shop window and had wanted for so long.

#### Vocabulary

**husband** [hʌzbənd] чоловік

**wife** [waɪf] дружина

**dirty** ['dɜːti] брудний, нечистий; забруднений

**suddenly** ['sɛd(ə)nli] раптово, раптом, зненацька, непередбачено

**watch chain** ланцюжок для годинника

**grow** [grəʊ] (**grew**; **grown**) *рости, збільшуватися; підсилюватися; виростати*

**comb** [kəʊm] *гребінь, гребінка; гребінець*

### 1. Answer the questions

1. How much money did the couple have?
2. What holiday was coming?
3. What city did Jim and Della live in?
4. How did they work?
5. What dear things for them have Jim and Della?
6. Where did Jim and Della live?
7. What did Della want to give Jim?
8. How old were Jim and Della?
9. Why did Della cry?
10. What did Della buy?
11. Why were Della's and Jim's presents no use to them?

### 2. Find in the text

*це – гарне волосся -  
працювали зранку до ночі -  
вийняв пакет із своєї кишені -  
вже була у перукарні -  
дійсно не знала, що робити -  
вже чекав на неї -  
вона сказала сама собі -  
на одній з брудних вулиць -  
стояла навпроти дзеркала -  
в одному з магазинів -  
був непотрібний йому -*

### 3. Read the text again and tell what statements are *true* and *false*

1. They had two things, which were very dear to them – Jim's gold ring and Della's beautiful stature.
2. Jim and Della were good friends.
3. Della stood in front of the mirror and looked at her image.
4. He took a packet out of his pocket and gave it to Della.
5. Easter was coming and Della wanted to give Jim a nice present but she had no money.
6. They lived in a small room in an old house in one of the clean streets of Los Angeles.
7. In one of the shops Della saw a very beautiful watch chain.
8. Jim and Della were not old people.
9. The beautiful chain, Della's present, was very useful to him.
10. She opened a packet and saw two beautiful rings that she had seen in a shop window and had wanted for so long.

11. Then she left the house and in a half an hour she was already at the hairdresser's shop.

12. The young people were sister and brother.

13. Della was very happy because she earned a lot of money.

**4. Find in the text and write the endings for the following sentences**

1. Christmas was coming and Della ...

2. The beautiful chain, Della's ...

5. She took the money ...

6. Then she left the house and ...

7. He had sold his gold watch ...

8. He took a packet out ...

9. So Della bought a gold watch-chain ...

10. They worked from early ...

11. She opened it and saw two ...

12. Dear Jim, my hair will grow ...

a) ... *morning till late at night, but they got very little money for their work.*

b) ... *and I wanted to give you a present.*

c) ... *in a few minutes she was already at the hairdresser's shop.*

d) ... *of his pocket and gave it to Della.*

e) ... *wanted to give Jim a nice present but she had no money.*

f) ... *beautiful combs that she had seen in a shop window and had wanted for so long.*

g) ... *as a Christmas present for Jim.*

h) ... *and went to buy a present for her husband.*

i) ... *to buy a Christmas present for his wife.*

j) ... *present, was of no use to him.*

k) ... *an old house in one of the dirty streets of New York.*

l) ... *front of the mirror and look at her beautiful long hair.*

**5. Supply the Past Simple of the verbs in brackets**

1. When William \_\_\_ 18 years old he \_\_\_ his village and \_\_\_ to London. (be; leave; go)

2. We \_\_\_ work at 9 o'clock last Monday. (begin)

3. He \_\_\_ his car into a car park and it \_\_\_ him \$1 for the day. (put; cost)

4. The next day he \_\_\_ up early and \_\_\_ in by tube but he \_\_\_ that it was Sunday. (get; go; forget)

5. When he \_\_\_ to the bank, he \_\_\_ that it was closed. (get; see)

6. William \_\_\_ his car, \_\_\_ his things and \_\_\_ back home to Wales. (sell; take; go)

**6. Complete the text with the correct past simple form of the verbs in the boxes**

<i>not like</i>	<i>win</i>	<i>play</i>	<i>not listen</i>	<i>know</i>	<i>not win</i>	<i>become</i>
<i>take</i>	<i>be</i>	<i>start</i>	<i>make</i>	<i>not lose</i>	<i>beat</i>	<i>travel</i>

When Johnatan Wendel was thirteen, he often went to arcades and he 1 \_\_\_\_ games against older teenagers. he was very good and he often 2 \_\_\_\_ . His parents 3 \_\_\_\_ about this, but they 4 \_\_\_\_ it. Luckily, Johnatan 5 \_\_\_\_ to them.

When he was eighteen, he 6 \_\_\_\_ part in his first professional competition. He 7 \_\_\_\_ but he 8 \_\_\_\_ the third. In his next competition he 9 \_\_\_\_ champion of the game Quake 3.

After that he 10 \_\_\_\_ around the world and he 11 \_\_\_\_ very often. He 12 \_\_\_\_ all the best players. He 13 \_\_\_\_ his company Fatality, Inc. and 14 \_\_\_\_ a lot of money selling things for computers.

### 7. Reread the text “Jim & Della” and do the test

- Christmas was coming and Della \_\_\_\_ Jim a nice present but she had no money.  
a) helped      b) wanted to give      c) asked about
- The beautiful \_\_\_\_, Della’s present, was of no use to him.  
a) earrings      b) ring      c) watch chain
- Jim took a packet out of his \_\_\_\_ and gave it to Della.  
a) pocket      b) bag      c) case
- Della sat on the \_\_\_\_ and began to cry.  
a) bed      b) chair      c) sofa
- Jim and Della lived in a small room in an old house in one of the \_\_\_\_ of New York.  
a) narrow streets      b) dirty streets      c) long street
- Della stood in front of the mirror and look at her beautiful \_\_\_\_.  
a) long hair      b) slim figure      c) complexion
- They worked from early morning \_\_\_\_ at night, but they got very little money for their work.  
a) so long      b) to late      c) till late
- Della left the house and in a few minutes she was already at the \_\_\_\_.  
a) dairy      b) newsagent’s      c) hairdresser’s shop
- And still they had two things, which were very dear to them – Jim’s \_\_\_\_ and Della’s beautiful hair.  
a) gold watch      b) gold ring      c) gold chain
- When Della got home, Jim was already \_\_\_\_ for her.  
a) waiting      b) looking      c) hearing

## Practice 22

### Grammar: The Future Indefinite Tense

**The Future Indefinite Tense** майбутній неозначений час – часова форма дієслова, що виражає дію, яка **відбудеться** або **відбудуватиметься** у **майбутньому**.

#### 1. Word Order of Future Simple

**The Future Indefinite Tense** утворюється за допомогою допоміжних дієслів



**shall i will** та інфінітива основного дієслова без частки **to**.

**We shall write the letter.** Ми напишемо листа.

**They will read this book.** Вони прочитають цю книгу.

**The Future Indefinite Tense** також вимагає певних обставин часу: **tomorrow** завтра, **next week** наступного тижня, **next year** наступного року, **next summer** наступного літа.

**They will see him tomorrow.** Вони побачать його завтра.

**We will go there next year.** Ми поїдемо туди на наступного року.

Допоміжне дієслово **shall** вживається в **I особі** однини та множини (**I я, we ми**), **will** – у **II та III особах** однини та множини (**you ти, ви, he він, she вона, it воно, they вони**):

<b>I</b>	<b>shall sign it.</b>	<i>Я підпишу це.</i>
<b>We</b>	<b>shall read it.</b>	<i>Ми прочитаємо це.</i>
<b>You</b>	<b>will work.</b>	<i>Ви попрацюєте.</i>
<b>You</b>	<b>will go.</b>	<i>Ти підеши.</i>
<b>He</b>	<b>will write it.</b>	<i>Він напише це.</i>
<b>She</b>	<b>will tell.</b>	<i>Вона розкаже.</i>
<b>It</b>	<b>will work.</b>	<i>Воно попрацює.</i>
<b>They</b>	<b>will sit.</b>	<i>Вони посидять.</i>

Нагадаємо, що допоміжні дієслова не перекладаються, а тільки виконують свою пряму функцію: **допомагають** утворити часову форму. Сучасна англійська мова не застосовує допоміжне дієслово **shall**, його функцію виконує допоміжне дієслово **will**. Тож і ми не будемо ускладнювати:

**I will go to the theatre tonight.** Я піду у театр сьогодні ввечері.

**We will sign the agreement tomorrow.** Ми підпишемо цю угоду завтра.

**He will read the book.** Він прочитає книгу.

Розглянемо майбутній неозначений час **the Future Indefinite Tense**. Для кращого розуміння знову складаємо таблицю:

**Стверджувальна форма:**

**Я (ти, ви, ми, вони, він, вона, воно) гратимусь у дворі наступного літа.**

**Я (ти, ви, ми, вони, він, вона, воно) плаватиму в річці наступного року.**

1	2	3	4
<b>Підмет</b>	<b>Допоміжне дієслово</b>	<b>Присудо к</b>	<b>Другорядні члени речення</b>
I, you, we, they, he, she, it	will	play	in the yard next summer.
I, you, we, they, he, she, it	will	swim	in the river next year.

Заперечна та питальна форма утворюються за аналогією з вищезгаданими часовими формами.

**Заперечна форма:**

**Я (ти, ви, ми, вони, він, вона, воно) не плаватиму в річці завтра.**

1	2	3	4	5
Підмет	Допоміж не дієслово	Заперечна частка <i>NOT</i>	Присудо к	Другорядні члени речення
I, you, we, they, he, she, it	will	not	swim	in the river tomorrow.

**Питальна форма:**

**Чи плаватимеш ти завтра?**

**Чи плаватиме завтра цей хлопець?**

1	2	3	4
Допоміжне дієслово	Підмет	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
Will	you	swim	in the river tomorrow?
Will	the boy	swim	in the river tomorrow?

**Де ти плаватимеш завтра?**

**Де плаватиме цей хлопець завтра?**

1	2	3	4	5
Питальне слово	Допоміжне дієслово	Підмет	Присудо к	Другорядні члени речення
Where	will	you	swim	tomorrow?
Where	will	the boy	swim	tomorrow?

**Хто завтра плаватиме?**

1	2	3	4
Питальне слово ХТО? WHO?	Допоміжн е слово	Прис удок	Другорядні члени речення
Who	will	swim	in the river tomorrow?

## 2. Майбутній час з конструкцією *be going to*

В англійській мові існує конструкція для вираження дії у майбутньому.

I	<i>am</i>	going to	do something
you, we, they	<i>are</i>		
he, she, it	<i>is</i>		

Конструкція **be going to + основне дієслово** означає:

1) **намір**

**I am going to watch this film on Sunday.** Я збираюсь подивитися цей фільм у неділю.

**I am going to play football after the lessons.** Я збираюсь пограти у футбол після уроків.

**Helen is going to buy new dress.** Олена збирається купити нову сукню.

**Bogdan is not going to do this exercise.** Богдан не збирається робити цю вправу.

What are you going to wear to the party? Що ти збираєшся вдягнути на вечірку?

2) передбачення

It is going to rain. Має бути дощ.

We are going to read it. Ми прочитаємо це.

3) сплановані дії

They are going to sell their house. Вони продають (думують продавати) свій будинок.

We are going to visit a lot of museums and galleries. Ми відвідаємо (згідно програми) багато музеїв та галерей.

*Future Simple*

1. Рішення, що приймаються в момент говоріння: *Since it is getting dark, he will turn on the light.*

2. Сподівання, мрії, страхи та ін.: *I am afraid she will fail her exam.*

3. Дії та передбачення, що не можуть стати реальністю в майбутньому: *His father thinks he will buy a car.*

4. Події поза нашим контролем: *I shall be 50 next year.*

5. Речі, в яких ми не впевнені або ще не вирішили, що будемо робити: *Maybe she will call me tomorrow.*

*Слова-сигнали*

*tomorrow, tonight, next week / day / month / year / morning / Monday, the day after tomorrow, in a week / month etc.*

**3. Grammar Exercises**

**1. Translate the sentences using the *Future Indefinite Tense*. Make up negative and interrogative forms**

1. Він закаже кімнату в готелі.
2. Ми будемо вечеряти о 7 годині.
3. Вони припаркують машини.
4. Він спізниться на поїзд.
5. Ми задекларуємо всі подарунки.

**2. Write sentences with *will* and *won't* and the verbs in brackets**

1. We \_\_\_\_ warm clothes. (*take*)
2. I \_\_\_\_ my mobil phone. (*not use*).
3. It \_\_\_\_ cold in the Antarctic. (*be*)
4. I think she \_\_\_\_ me tonight. (*phone*)
5. You \_\_\_\_ lost because you have got a map. (*not get*)
6. I hope we \_\_\_\_ penguins. (*see*)
7. It \_\_\_\_ tomorrow, so you need waterproof clothes. (*rain*)

**3. Insert the verbs: to close, to cost, to go, to have, to meet, to open, to smoke, to teach, to wash in proper tense**

1. Steve \_\_\_ ten cigarettes tomorrow.
2. We \_\_\_ dinner at 7 o'clock next Tuesday.
3. Next Sunday we \_\_\_ to the cinema.
4. Tomorrow this bank \_\_\_ at 9.30 am and \_\_\_ at 18.30 pm.
5. These shoes are expensive. They \_\_\_ a lot of money.
6. Peter \_\_\_ arts to young teachers next year.
7. Your job is very interesting. You \_\_\_ many people.
8. Peter \_\_\_ his hair next month.

**4. Insert the verbs: to clean, to die, to enjoy, to finish, to happen, to live, to open, to play, to rain, to smoke, to start, to stay in proper time**

1. I \_\_\_ my teeth 3 times yesterday.
2. He \_\_\_ 20 cigarettes yesterday evening.
3. Today's concert \_\_\_ at 7.30 and \_\_\_ at 10 o'clock.
4. The accident \_\_\_ last Sunday afternoon.
5. Mozart \_\_\_ from 1756 to 1791.
6. We \_\_\_ our holiday next year. We \_\_\_ at a very good hotel.
7. Today the weather is nice, but yesterday it \_\_\_.
8. It is hot in the room so I \_\_\_ the window.
9. The weather will be good next day so we \_\_\_ tennis.
10. William Shakespeare \_\_\_ in 1616.

**5. Write questions and answers about the future using the verbs in the box**

<i>be change melt kill study become</i>
<i>live</i>

1. the weather / cold tonight – NO - \_\_\_\_\_ .
2. the weather / in the future – YES - \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. polar bears / extinct – YES - \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. people / in the Arctic – NO - \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. scientists / the weather – YES - \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. all the Arctic ice / in the next 10 years – NO - \_\_\_\_\_ .
7. people / all the mosquitoes – NO - \_\_\_\_\_ .

**Practice 23**

**Revision**

**Test 5**

**Word Quiz**

*husband* [hʌzbənd] чоловік

*wife* [waif] дружина

*dirty* ['dɜ:ti] брудний, нечистий; забруднений

*suddenly* ['sed(ə)nli] раптово, раптом, зненацька, непередбачено

**watch chain** ланцюжок для годинника

**grow** [grəʊ] (**grew**; **grown**) *рости, збільшуватися; підсилюватися; виростати*

**comb** [kəʊm] *гребінь, гребінка; гребінець*

### 1. Translate into English

*неймовірний, розкішний гребінець; величезний брудний будинок; дорогий, скляний хмарочос; крихітний ланцюжок для годинника; бідний слуга, власник магазину та дорога (коштовна) ваза; дивна пустеля; швидкі сучасні ліфти; величезна башта із сходами; дерева біля хмарочосу; перший поверх*

### 2. Choose the correct words

1. Columbus *discovered* / *invented* America.
2. My grandmother changed her *surname* / *first name* when she married.
3. We went to London two weeks *before* / *ago*.
4. Tom is a *chef* / *mechanic* and he works in a restaurant.
5. William I was *king* / *queen* of England 1.000 years ago.
6. Being a firefighter is a *boring* / *dangerous* job.
7. Victoria was a popular first name in the 19<sup>th</sup> *century* / *ago*.
8. Jaguar is a famous *brand name* / *nickname* for a car.

### 3. Make the following sentences negative

1. The waiters do their work well.
2. The dog sleeps all day in the house.
3. He knows the correct answer.
4. The students have new textbooks.
5. She tries to play tennis well.
6. I go to bed very early.

### 4. Insert the verbs in brackets in Past Simple:

1. Last year I \_\_\_ (decide) to go to England.
2. When I left Kiev it \_\_\_ (rain), but when I \_\_\_ (arrive) in London it \_\_\_ (clear up).
3. I \_\_\_ (go) to my hotel by bus last Saturday.
4. I \_\_\_ (write) some letters yesterday.
5. He \_\_\_ (do) his homework last Sunday.
6. As soon as I \_\_\_ (fill in) I \_\_\_ (see) a friend of mine from Ukraine.

### 5. Complete the text “Christopher Columbus” with affirmative and negative forms of the verbs in brackets

Columbus \_\_\_ (*want*) to find a new way to India. In 1492, he \_\_\_ (*travel*) across the Atlantic Ocean. He \_\_\_ (*arrive*) in San Salvador in the Bahamas two months later. He \_\_\_ (*visit*) a lot of islands and he \_\_\_ (*name*) them the Indies. He \_\_\_ (*call*) the native people Indians. It was a very beautiful place, but he \_\_\_ (*not discover*) any gold there. Columbus \_\_\_ (*not stay*) a long time and he \_\_\_ (*arrive*) back in Spain in March 1493. The King and Queen of Spain were not happy because he \_\_\_

(not discover) any gold or a new way to India. Columbus \_\_\_ (not visit) North America, but he was the first European to explore Central America.

**6. Fill in: a, an or the where necessary**

**John:** Do you want to come to \_\_\_ theatre with me tonight?

**Ann:** Sorry, I can't. I'm going to \_\_\_ restaurant with my cousin from \_\_\_ America.

**John:** What part of \_\_\_ USA does he come from?

**Ann:** He lives in \_\_\_ Colorado, near \_\_\_ Rocky Mountains. He is quite *a* famous man in \_\_\_ America. He plays \_\_\_ guitar in \_\_\_ rock band. In fact he's giving a concert at \_\_\_ Odeon in \_\_\_ Regent Street tomorrow evening.

**Practice 24**

**Text: "City in the Sky"**

**Read the text "City in the Sky"**

Dubai, in the United Arab Emirates, is different from other cities. It is a city of glass skyscrapers in the desert. One of these is the incredible Burj Khalifa skyscraper. It is 828 metres high and has got more than 160 floors. There are 200 floors in it. You can see it from about 100 kilometres away! The temperature in the desert is sometimes 50°C, but it is cool inside this modern building.

This amazing skyscraper is large enough for 25000 people. It has got a luxury hotel, offices, restaurants, swimming pools, libraries, a gym and 900 expensive flats. From the visitor's area on the 124<sup>th</sup> floor, the cars in the streets below are tiny. The tower has got 57 very fast lifts, but there are also lots of stairs if you have got lots of energy!

In the Burj Khalifa area there are parks and a large lake. There is a big shopping centre next to the tower.

This enormous building has over 1200 luxury shops. The city of Dubai is a fantastic place, but only if you are a very rich and you like shopping.

**Vocabulary**

*glass* [glas] *скло*

*skyscraper* ['skai,skreipə] *хмарочос, висотний будинок*

*desert* ['dezət] *пустеля*

*incredible* [in'kredəb(ə)l] *неправдоподібний; неймовірний; нечуваний*

*floor* [flɔ:] *поверх*

*modern* ['mɒdn] *сучасний; новий; новітній, передовий*

*building* ['bɪldɪŋ] *будинок, будівля, споруда; будівництво, спорудження*

*amazing* [ə'meɪzɪŋ] *дивний, рязучий*

*luxury* [lʌkʃəri] *розкішний*

*expensive* [ɪk'spensɪv] *дорогий, який дорого коштує*

*tiny* ['taɪni] *дуже маленький, крихітний (часто *tiny little*)*

*tower* ['taʊə] *башта*



*fast* [fast] швидкий

*stairs* [steəz] сходи

*next to* поряд, наступний

*enormous* [i'nɔ:məs] величезний, грандіозний

**1. Read the text again and write true or false**

1. The Burj Khalifa skyscraper is 100 km away from Dubai.
2. The skyscraper has some luxury hotels.
3. Dubai is a city of glass skyscrapers.
4. The Burj Khalifa skyscraper has offices, restaurants, swimming pools and libraries.
5. The Burj Khalifa skyscraper has got only 130 floors.
6. The skyscraper is built from plastic.
7. Dubai is situated in the USA.
8. This amazing skyscraper is large enough for 29000 people.
9. The skyscraper is a very old building.
10. There is a place for visitors on the 126<sup>th</sup> floor.
11. The Burj Khalifa skyscraper is 828 metres high.
12. The lifts in the tower are slow.
13. Dubai is a city of glass skyscrapers in the desert.
14. The skyscraper has 1200 shops.
15. There are 800 flats in the skyscraper.
16. Dubai is a city of skyscrapers in the desert.

**2. Write the Plural form for the following words**

city, glass, skyscraper, floor, desert, building, person, hotel, office, restaurant, swimming pool, library, gym, flat, visitor, area, car, street, tower, lift, stair, park, lake, centre, shop, place.

**3. Find in the text**

*на вулиці виглядають крихітними -*  
*якщо ви – багата людина -*  
*прохолодно усередині -*  
*розкішний готель -*  
*багато сходів -*  
*хмарочосів у пустелі -*  
*торговий центр розташований поблизу -*  
*неймовірний хмарочос -*  
*дорогих квартир -*  
*велике озеро -*  
*величезна будівля -*  
*башта мас -*

**4. Answer the questions**

1. Describe the location of the Burj Khalifa skyscraper.

2. How many flats are in the Burj Khalifa?
3. Where is the city of Dubai is situated?
4. What kind of material is the Burj Khalifa built?
5. How many lifts are in the Burj Khalifa?
6. Where is the big shopping centre situated?
7. Why the city of Dubai is different from other cities?
8. Why is the Burj Khalifa is incredible?
9. How many floors are in the Burj Khalifa?
10. What is the height of the glass skyscraper?
11. What country has the incredible Burj Khalifa skyscraper?
12. On what floor is the visitor's area?
13. What are in the Burj Khalifa area?
14. What temperature is in the desert sometimes?
15. How many people can be in the Burj Khalifa skyscraper?

**5. Write affirmative and negative sentences using the past simple**

1. I / visit / Trafalgar Square.
2. Columbus / not discover / North America.
3. we / move / to Brighton last year.
4. my mom / not change / her name / when she got married.
5. They / stay / in London last Saturday evening.
6. John Logie Baird / invent / the TV.
7. My dad / stop / smoking / last month.
8. My birthday present / not arrive / in the post last morning.

**6. Write affirmative and interrogative sentences using the present simple**

1. They \_\_\_\_ (fight) with fire every day.
2. Tony \_\_\_\_ (meet) his friends every Friday.
3. My sister \_\_\_\_ (go) to the cinema on Sundays.
4. We \_\_\_\_ (move) every seven years.
5. Tony \_\_\_\_ (play) football very well.
6. Paul \_\_\_\_ (like) black coffee.
7. My dog is very lazy he \_\_\_\_ (sleep) all the day.

**7. Reread the text "City in the Sky" and do the test**

1. This amazing skyscraper is large enough for \_\_\_\_\_ people.  
a) 18000    b) 22000    c) 25000
2. This enormous building has over \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) 1800 luxury shops    b) 1200 luxury shops    c) 2500 luxury shops
3. Dubai is a city of glass skyscrapers in the \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) desert    b) forest    c) ocean
4. The Burj Khalifa skyscraper is \_\_\_\_\_ and has got more than 160 floors.  
a) 1828 metres high    b) 828 metres high    c) 628 metres high

5. The temperature in the desert is sometimes 50<sup>0</sup>C, but it is \_\_\_\_ Burj Khalifa building.  
a) cold inside    b) cool inside    c) hot inside
6. This amazing skyscraper has got a luxury hotel, \_\_\_\_\_, restaurants, swimming pools, libraries, a gym and 900 expensive flats.  
a) offices    b) rooms    c) halls
7. One can see the Burj Khalifa skyscraper from about \_\_\_\_\_ away.  
a) 1000 kilometres    b) 100 kilometres    c) 10 kilometres
8. The Burj Khalifa skyscraper has got \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) 157 very fast lifts    b) 37 very fast lifts    c) 57 very fast lifts
9. In the Burj Khalifa area there are parks and a large \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) ocean    b) lake    c) river
10. The city of Dubai is a \_\_\_\_\_, but only if you are a very rich and you like shopping.  
a) fantastic place    b) great place    c) expensive place

## Practice 25

### Grammar: The Present Continuous Tense

На відміну від часів групи **Indefinite**, які вживаються для вираження дії стосовно теперішнього, минулого або майбутнього часу, часи групи **Continuous** виражають дію як процес, тобто дію, що відбувається (триває) в момент мовлення або в теперішній період часу **Present Continuous**, тривала в якійсь момент чи період часу в минулому **Past Continuous**, триватиме в певний момент чи період часу в майбутньому **Future Continuous**.

Часи групи **Continuous** утворюються з відповідних часів групи **Indefinite** допоміжного дієслова **to be** та дієприкметника теперішнього часу **Present Participle** основного дієслова.

#### 1. Word Order of Continuous Tenses

**The Present Continuous Tense** теперішній тривалий час утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова **to be** та основного дієслова у якості присудка **Present Participle** тобто до інфінітива без частки **to** додається закінчення **-ing**:

**to read читати + -ing = reading;**

**to work працювати + -ing = working.**

Занотуємо, що допоміжне дієслово **to be** змінюється за особами:

ОСОБА	to be
I	<i>am</i>
you, we, they	<i>are</i>
he, she, it	<i>is</i>

А дієслово із закінченням **-ing** ні за яких обставин вже не змінюється.

**Стверджувальна форма:**

*Я плаваю в річці зараз.*

*Ти (ми, вони) плаваєш в річці зараз.*

**Хлопчик плаває в річці зараз.**

1	2	3	4
Підмет	Допоміжне дієслово	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
I	am	sw <u>im</u> ming	in the river now
You, we, they	are	sw <u>im</u> ming	in the river now
The boy	is	sw <u>im</u> ming	in the river at the moment

Зверніть увагу, що додавання закінчення **-ing** призводить до змін в основі дієслів. Дивись таблицю **Spelling**.

**Заперечна форма:**

*Я не плаваю в річці зараз.*

*Ти (ми, вони) не плаваєш в річці зараз.*

*Хлопчик не плаває в річці зараз.*

1	2	3	4	5
Підмет	Допоміжне дієслово	Заперечна частка <b>NOT</b>	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
I	am	not	swimming	in the river now
You, we, they	are	not	swimming	in the river now
The boy	is	not	swimming	in the river now

**Питальна форма:**

*Чи ти плаваєш в річці зараз?*

*Чи плаває в річці цей хлопчик зараз?*

1	2	3	4
Допоміжне дієслово	Підмет	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
Are	you	swimming	in the river now?
Is	the boy	swimming	in the river now?

*Де ти плаваєш зараз?*

*Де зараз плаває цей хлопчик?*

1	2	3	4	5
Питальне слово	Допоміжне дієслово	Підмет	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
Where	are	you	swimming	now?
Where	is	the boy	swimming	now?

Питальне слово – **WHO?** – ХТО (III особа однини – відповідно допоміжне дієслово - *is*). Питання перекладається: *Хто зараз плаває в річці?*

1	2	3	4
Питальне слово ХТО? <b>WHO?</b>	Допоміжне дієслово	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
Who	is	swimming	in the river now?

**Present Continuous**

1. Тимчасовий стан: *Peter is staying at my place tonight.*

2. Дії, що відбуваються в момент розмови: *Mary is eating her dinner.*
3. Дії, що дратують, дії, що відбуваються постійно: *Helen is always signing the documents just before we need to go!*
4. Плани на найближче майбутнє: *Mr Thornton is making a contract tonight.*
5. Зміни або розвиток ситуації: *Brad is running faster than before.*

### Слова-сигнали

*now, at the moment, at present, in the photo, nowadays, today, tonight, always, still etc.*

## 2. Grammar Exercises

### 1. Put the verbs into the *Present Continuous Tense*

1. General Director (to conclude) the agreement now.
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ not (to speak) to him at the moment.
3. She (to sign) the present contract now.
4. You (to watch) an interesting film at the moment.
5. They (to clean) the room now.

### 2. Put the verbs into the *Present Indefinite* or the *Present Continuous Tense*

1. Who is that lady who ... (to stand) in the doorway?
2. You ... (not / to recognise) her? It ... (to be) Helen, my aunt.
3. My grandfather ... (not / to work). He is a pensioner.
4. You ... (not / to see) the kettle ... (to boil)?
5. I ... (to think) that the weather ... (to improve).
6. Mary ... (to come) this evening?
7. She always ... (to come) on time.
8. "Where is Michael?" "He ... (to have) a smoke."
9. We usually ... (to have) our lunch at 2 p.m.
10. You ... (to try) to learn the poem by heart?
11. She ... (to speak) three languages.
12. I can ... (to see) somebody who ... (to go) along the street.
13. He ... (to look) like my cousin.

### 3. Make up general questions to the following sentences

1. Last year I decided to go to England.
2. I arrived in London last year.
3. I went to my hotel by bus last Saturday.
4. I wrote some letters yesterday.
5. He did his homework last Sunday.
6. I saw a friend of mine from Ukraine.

### 4. Translate the following sentences taking into account the construction *be going to + Infinitive*

1. Я збираюсь подивитися цей фільм у неділю.
2. Я збираюсь пограти у футбол після уроків.

3. Олена збирається купити нову сукню.
4. Богдан не збирається робити цю вправу.
5. Що ти збираєшся вдягнути на вечірку?
6. Має бути дощ.
7. Ми читаємо це.
8. Вони продають свій будинок.
9. Ми відвідаємо багато музеїв та галерей.

**5 Complete the sentences. Use the present simple and present continuous forms of the verbs**

1. He usually \_\_\_\_\_ (*go to school*) by car, but today he \_\_\_\_\_ (*walk*).
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*listen*) to rap music at the moment, however I \_\_\_\_\_ (*prefer*) heavy metal.
3. They \_\_\_\_\_ (*not usually go*) to the cinema, but now they \_\_\_\_\_ (*watch*) DVD.
4. Their children \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to bed late every day but they \_\_\_\_\_ (*sleep*) now.
5. He \_\_\_\_\_ (*always play*) football after school, but he \_\_\_\_\_ (*play*) tennis at the moment.
6. She \_\_\_\_\_ (*eat*) a steak for dinner now, but she \_\_\_\_\_ (*like*) fish.

**6 Write questions and create answers. Use the present continuous. For example: *where / Ron and Emy / stand* – *Where are Ron and Emy standing? They are standing on the balcony of the theatre.***

1. *what / Emma / watch*
2. *the seals / sit / where*
3. *what / the seals / do / in the sea*
4. *the seal / attack / the shark / where*
5. *who / count / the seals /*
6. *when / speak about animals / they*

**Practice 26**

**Text: “American Government”**

**Read the text “American Government”**

The United States, unlike most other countries of Europe and Asia has no “government” but only an “administration” or to be more precise, a “president’s administration”.

The latter in its turn has no ministries and consequently no “ministers” but departments and secretaries performing the functions of ministries and ministers.

Traditionally established in the USA are the following thirteen departments: Agricultural Department, Commerce Department, Defence Department, Educational Department, Energy Department, Health and Human Services Department, Housing and Urban Development Department, Interior Department, Justice Department, Treasury Department, and Veterans Affairs Department. Each of these government institutions is headed by an appointed leader, as announced by the presidential secretary. The only exception is the Justice Department which is headed not by a



secretary but by the Attorney General.

Almost all Secretaries have their Assistant Secretaries performing the functions of deputy ministers in other European governments. Exceptions from the list include only four departments which have Deputy Secretaries instead. These are Commerce Department, Housing and Urban Development Department, Educational Department and Treasury Department.

Still other departments in the US administration government have Under Secretaries performing the duties of assistant secretaries which correspond to the government positions occupied by deputy ministers in other countries. To these departments belong the Commerce Department and Veterans Affairs Department.

Secretary of the Interior Department, contrary to all others, has an Inspector General for the first assistant. But certainly the most peculiar are the duties of the Interior Department which include building roads, and overseeing the national park system, and not keeping law and order and fighting criminals, which the ministries of the interior are responsible for in other countries. These functions are performed in the USA by the FBI (Federal Bureau of Investigation).

### Vocabulary

**government** ['gʌvənt(ə)nt] уряд; форма правління; управління, керівництво

**be more precise** бути точнішими

**latter** ['lætə] останній (з двох названих)

**ministry (ministries)** міністерство

**consequently** ['kɒnsɪkwəntli] отже, в результаті

**minister** міністр

**department** [dɪpɑ:(r)tment] департамент; управління; служба; міністерство, відомство

**Secretary** ['sekrət(ə)ri] 1) секретар; секретарка; 2) керівник організації, установи; 3) міністр

**presidential secretary** державний секретар

**perform** [pə'fɔ:m] виконувати, здійснювати; робити

**following** ['fɒləʊɪŋ] наступний; нижчезгаданий, нижченаведений

**Commerce** торгівля, комерція

**Urban** ['z:b(ə)n] міський

**Interior** [in'ti(ə)riə] внутрішність; внутрішні справи

**Justice** [dʒʌstɪs] правосуддя, юстиція

**Treasury** ['trezəri] скарбниця; казна

**Affair** [ə'feə] справа

**institution** [ɪnstɪ'tju:ʃ(ə)n] встановлення, заснування, введення; товариство; організація; навчальний заклад; (дитяча, лікувальна, благодійна) установа; інститут

**appointed** [ə'pɔɪntɪd] призначений

**announce** [ə'naʊns] повідомляти, сповіщати; анонсувати; заявляти

**exception** [ɪk'sepʃ(ə)n] виключення, виняток

**Attorney General** міністр юстиції

**deputy** ['depju:ti] заступник, помічник

**instead** [ɪn'sted] замість

*Under Secretary* заступник міністра

*assistant secretary* заступник секретаря

*correspond* [kɔːriˈspɒnd] відповідати, дорівнювати; бути аналогічним

*occupy* [ˈɒkjʊpaɪ] займати посаду

*belong* [bɪˈlɒŋ] (to) належати, бути власністю; бути частиною

*peculiar* [piˈkjuːliə] специфічний, особливий, своєрідний

*include* [inˈkluːd] містити, включати, охоплювати, включати до складу

*overseeing* нагляд, контроль; здійснення нагляду (контролю)

*keeping law and order* дотримання законодавства та порядку

*responsible* [riˈspɒnsəb(ə)l] відповідальний; який несе відповідальність

*Federal Bureau of Investigation* Федеральне Бюро Розслідувань (ФБР)

### 1. Answer the questions

1. What department has a leader, who named Attorney General?
2. What functions has Interior department?
3. What departments have Deputy Secretaries?
4. What difference in government of the USA and countries of Europe and Asia.
5. How many departments are in government of the USA?
6. Who is headed the USA departments?
7. What are the functions of the FBI?

### 2. Find in the text

наступні 13 департаментів -

очолюється призначеним -

який проголошується державним секретарем -

і як результат немає -

єдине виключення -

виконують обов'язки заступників секретарів -

міністерство фінансів -

функції заступників міністрів -

міністерство торгівлі -

за що міністерства внутрішніх справ відповідають в інших країнах -

### 3. Read the text again and determine true or false

1. The functions of the Interior department are performed in the USA by the FBI.
2. Each of the USA government institutions is headed by an appointed minister.
3. Secretary of the Interior Department has an Inspector General for the first assistant.
4. The Interior Department is responsible for keeping law and order and fighting criminals;
5. The Justice Department has some exceptions.
6. The USA, unlike most other countries of Europe and Asia has no “government” but only an “administration”.
7. The Interior Department is responsible for building roads, and overseeing the national park system.

8. Traditionally established in the USA are fourteen departments.
9. Other departments in the US administration government have Under Secretaries performing the duties of assistant secretaries.
10. American government has no ministries and no “ministers”.

**4. Write affirmative and negative sentences using the correct form of *be going to***

For example: *I (not hunt animals / take photo) – I am not going to hunt animals. I am going to take photos.*

1. *Emma (not take a tent / sleep outside) – \_\_\_\_\_*
2. *the students (not study / explore the rainforest) – \_\_\_\_\_*
3. *he (not travel by boat / fly) – \_\_\_\_\_*
4. *we (not not ask someone / look at the map) – \_\_\_\_\_*
5. *you (not catch the frogs / count them) – \_\_\_\_\_*
6. *they (not have any hot water / wash in the river) – \_\_\_\_\_*

**5. Reread the text “American Government”**

1. Almost all Secretaries have their \_\_\_\_ performing the functions of deputy ministers in other European governments.
  - a) positions of ministers
  - b) Assistant Secretaries
  - c) Assistant Ministers
2. Keeping law and order and fighting criminals are performed in the USA by the.
  - a) FBR
  - b) FBT
  - c) FBI
3. The United States, unlike most other countries of Europe and Asia has no “government” but only an \_\_\_\_ or to be more precise, a “president’s administration”.
  - a) “administration”
  - b) “office”
  - c) “governing body”
4. Certainly the most peculiar are the duties of the \_\_\_\_ which include building roads, and overseeing the national park system.
  - a) FBI
  - b) Interior department
  - c) Commerce department
5. The latter in its turn has no \_\_\_\_ and consequently no “ministers” but departments and secretaries performing the functions of ministries and ministers.
  - a) ministries
  - b) department
  - c) governing office
6. The Commerce Department and Veterans Affairs Department in the US administration government have Under Secretaries performing the duties of assistant secretaries which correspond to the government \_\_\_\_ occupied by deputy ministers in other countries.
  - a) posts
  - b) positions
  - c) professions
7. The following departments: Commerce Department, Housing and Urban Development Department, \_\_\_\_ and Treasury Department have Deputy Secretaries instead.
  - a) FBI
  - b) Educational Department
  - c) Interior Department
8. Traditionally established in the USA are the \_\_\_\_.
  - a) fourteen departments
  - b) fifteen departments
  - c) thirteen departments
9. Exceptions from the list include only \_\_\_\_ which have Deputy Secretaries instead.
  - a) four administration
  - b) four offices
  - c) four departments

10. Secretary of the Interior Department, contrary to all others, has an \_\_\_ for the first assistant.

- a) General Inspector                      b) Inspector General                      c) Director General

**6. Complete the dialogue with the phrases in the box**

*It sounds like    I'm reading    every day    it looks like    a good time  
Maybe it is    What are you doing*

**Paul:** 1 \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment?

**Anna:** 2 \_\_\_\_\_ an e-mail from Emma. She is in Australia.

**Paul:** Is she having 3 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**Anna:** Yes, she says it is fantastic. She goes swimming 4 \_\_\_\_\_ .

**Paul:** Listen! What's that?

**Anna:** 5 \_\_\_\_\_ a mosquito.

**Paul:** Well, it is not a mosquito.

**Anna:** Look. It is yellow and black. 6 \_\_\_\_\_ a wasp.

**Paul:** I am not sure it is.

**Anna:** 7 \_\_\_\_\_ a bee.

**Paul:** That's OK, then.

**Practice 27**

**Revision**

**Test 6**

**Word Quiz**

**glass** [glas] *скло*

**skyscraper** ['skai,skreipə] *хмарочос, висотний будинок*

**desert** ['dezət] *пустеля*

**incredible** [in'kredəb(ə)l] *неправдоподібний; неймовірний; нечуваний*

**floor** [flɔ:] *поверх*

**modern** ['mɒdn] *сучасний; новий; новітній, передовий*

**building** ['bɪldɪŋ] *будинок, будівля, споруда; будівництво, спорудження*

**amazing** [ə'meɪzɪŋ] *дивний, разючий*

**luxury** [lʌkʃəri] *розкішний*

**expensive** [ɪk'spensɪv] *дорогий, який дорого коштує*

**tiny** ['taɪni] *дуже маленький, крихітний (часто tiny little)*

**tower** ['taʊə] *башта*

**fast** [fast] *швидкий*

**stairs** [steəz] *сходи*

**next to** *поряд, наступний*

**enormous** [ɪ'nɔ:məs] *величезний, грандіозний*

**government** ['gʌvənt(ə)nt] *уряд; форма правління; управління, керівництво*

**be more precise** *бути точнішими*

**latter** ['lætə] *останній (з двох названих)*

**ministry (ministries)** міністерство

**consequently** ['kɒnsɪkwəntli] отже, в результаті

**minister** міністр

**department** [dɪpɑː(r)tment] департамент; управління; служба; міністерство, відомство

**Secretary** ['sekɪrət(ə)ri] 1) секретар; секретарка; 2) керівник організації, установи; 3) міністр

**presidential secretary** державний секретар

**perform** [pə'fɔ:m] виконувати, здійснювати; робити

**following** ['fɒləʊɪŋ] наступний; нижчезгаданий, нижченаведений

**Commerce** торгівля, комерція

**Urban** ['z:b(ə)n] міський

**Interior** [ɪn'ti(ə)riə] внутрішність; внутрішні справи

**Justice** [dʒʌstɪs] правосуддя, юстиція

**Treasury** ['treʒəri] скарбниця; казна

**Affair** [ə'feə] справа

**institution** [ɪnstɪ'tju:ʃ(ə)n] встановлення, заснування, введення; товариство; організація; навчальний заклад; дитяча, лікувальна, благодійна установа; інститут

**appointed** [ə'pɔɪntɪd] призначений

**announce** [ə'naʊns] 1) повідомляти, сповіщати; анонсувати; заявляти

**exception** [ɪk'sepʃ(ə)n] виключення, виняток

**Attorney General** міністр юстиції

**deputy** ['depju:ti] заступник, помічник

**instead** [ɪn'sted] замість

**Under Secretary** заступник міністра

**assistant secretary** заступник секретаря

**correspond** [kɔːri'spɒnd] відповідати, дорівнювати; бути аналогічним

**occupy** ['ɒkjʊpaɪ] займати посаду

**belong** [bɪ'lɒŋ] (to) належати, бути власністю; бути частиною

**peculiar** [pi'kju:liə] специфічний, особливий, своєрідний

**include** [ɪn'klu:d] містити, включати, охоплювати, включати до складу

**overseeing** нагляд, контроль; здійснення нагляду (контролю)

**keeping law and order** дотримання законодавства та порядку

**responsible** [ri'spɒnsəb(ə)l] відповідальний; який несе відповідальність

**Federal Bureau of Investigation** Федеральне Бюро Розслідувань (ФБР)

### 1. Translate the following phrases into English

державний секретар департаменту торгівлі; державна установа; міністр юстиції як виняток; тушковане м'ясо, відбивна котлета, кукурудзяні пластівці та відкритий пиріг з фруктами; міністр департаменту Фінансів; заступник міністра замість заступника міністра в інших країнах; заварювати та настоювати чай; виконувати функції Федерального Бюро Розслідувань (ФБР); відповідальний за дотримання законодавства та порядку, а не за нагляд за національною системою парків



**2. Put the verbs into the Present Continuous Tense**

1. General Director (to conclude) the agreement now.
2. We \_\_\_\_ not (to speak) to him at the moment.
3. She (to sign) the present contract now.
4. You (to watch) an interesting film at the moment.
5. They (to clean) the room now.

**3. Put the verbs into the Present Indefinite or the Present Continuous Tense**

1. Who is that lady who ... (to stand) in the doorway?
2. You ... (not / to recognise) her? It ... (to be) Helen, my aunt.
3. My grandfather ... (not / to work). He is a pensioner.
4. You ... (not / to see) the kettle ... (to boil)?
5. I ... (to think) that the weather ... (to improve).
6. Mary ... (to come) this evening?
7. She always ... (to come) on time.
8. "Where is Michael?" "He ... (to have) a smoke."
9. We usually ... (to have) our lunch at 2 p.m.
10. You ... (to try) to learn the poem by heart?
11. She ... (to speak) three languages.
12. I can ... (to see) somebody who ... (to go) along the street.
13. He ... (to look) like my cousin.
14. Your sister ... (to go) to the exhibition next Saturday?
15. I ... (to remember) well the things I ... (to like).

**4. Order the words to make questions with will. Then write short answers.**

**For example:** *be / the weather / tomorrow / will / cold – NO – Will the weather be cold tomorrow? No, it won't.*

1. *the scientists / will / new species / find – YES – \_\_\_\_*
2. *see / monkeys / you / in the jungle / will – YES – \_\_\_\_*
3. *arrive / we / early / will – YES – \_\_\_\_*
4. *need / waterproof clothes / you / will – NO – \_\_\_\_*
5. *win / will / the match / they – NO – \_\_\_\_*

**5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the box**

<i>country</i>	<i>language</i>	<i>nationality</i>	<i>person</i>	<i>city</i>	<i>class</i>	<i>population</i>
----------------	-----------------	--------------------	---------------	-------------	--------------	-------------------

1. There are about 500 million \_\_\_\_ in the European Union.
2. Seattle and Los Angeles are \_\_\_\_ in the west of the USA.
3. There are 27 \_\_\_\_ in the European Union.
4. There are people of 179 different \_\_\_\_ living in London.
5. In Canada, there are two official \_\_\_\_ .
6. There are \_\_\_\_ in French and Spanish in my school.
7. The \_\_\_\_ of London is more than 7.5 million.

**6. Match the verbs in the box with words 1-8**

<i>watch</i>	<i>have</i>	<i>do</i>	<i>go</i>	<i>start</i>	<i>work</i>	<i>speak</i>	<i>cook</i>
--------------	-------------	-----------	-----------	--------------	-------------	--------------	-------------



1. \_\_\_\_ lunch;
2. \_\_\_\_ Spanish;
3. \_\_\_\_ TV;
4. \_\_\_\_ to bed;
5. \_\_\_\_ in a factory;
6. \_\_\_\_ dinner;
7. \_\_\_\_ school;
8. \_\_\_\_ my homework.

**7. Complete the sentences with the affirmative or negative forms of the verbs in the box in exercise 14**

1. Colette \_\_\_\_ DVDs after dinner. – NO -
2. I \_\_\_\_ to bed at about 11 pm. – YES -
3. We \_\_\_\_ lunch at our canteen. – NO -
4. Billy \_\_\_\_ his homework before dinner. - YES -
5. My parents \_\_\_\_ Polish fluently. – YES -
6. His brother \_\_\_\_ in an office. – NO -
7. Emma and I \_\_\_\_ school at 9 am. – NO -
8. Dad \_\_\_\_ dinner at the weekend. – YES -

**Practice 28**

**Grammar: The Past Continuous Tense**

**1. Word Order of Past Continuous**

**The Past Continuous Tense** утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова **to be** в **Past Indefinite** минулий неозначений час та дієприкметника теперішнього часу **Present Participle** основного дієслова (до інфінітива без частки **to** додається закінчення **-ing**):

**to tell** розповідати + **-ing** = **telling**;

**to visit** відвідувати + **-ing** = **visiting**.

Особа	Допоміжне дієслово <i>to be</i>	Основне дієслово Present Participle
I, he, she, it	<i>was</i>	looking
You, we, they	<i>were</i>	working

**Стверджувальна форма:**

**Я (він, вона, воно) плавав в річці об 11 годині.**

**Ти (ми, вони) плавав в річці об 11 годині.**

1	2	3	4
Підмет	Допоміжне дієслово	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
I, he, she, it	was	swimming	in the river at 11 o'clock.
You, we, they	were	swimming	in the river at 11 o'clock.

**Заперечна форма:**

*Я (він, вона, воно) не плавав в річці об 11 години.*

*Ти (ми, вони) не плавав в річці об 11 години.*

1	2	3	4	5
Підмет	Допоміжне дієслово	Заперечна частка <i>NOT</i>	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
I, he, she, it	was	not	swimming	in the river at 11 o'clock.
You, we, they	were	not	swimming	in the river at 11 o'clock.

**Питальна форма:**

*Чи ти плавав в річці об 11 години?*

*Чи плавав цей хлопець в річці об 11 години?*

1	2	3	4
Допоміжне дієслово	Підмет	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
Were	you	swimming	in the river at 11 o'clock?
Was	the boy	swimming	in the river at 11 o'clock?

*Де ти плавав об 11 години?*

*Де плавав цей хлопець об 11 години?*

1	2	3	4	5
Питальне слово	Допоміжне дієслово	Підмет	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
Where	were	you	swimming	at 11 o'clock?
Where	was	the boy	swimming	at 11 o'clock?

Питальне слово – **WHO?** – ХТО (III особа однини – відповідно допоміжне дієслово - *was*). Питання перекладається:

*Хто плавав в річці об 11 години?*

1	2	3	4
Питальне слово ХТО? <b>WHO?</b>	Допоміжне дієслово	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
Who	was	swimming	in the river at 11 o'clock?

- Yesterday at 7 I was looking for you. *Вчора я шукав тебе в 7 годин.*
- Where were you then? *Де ти був?*
- At 7 I was working in the laboratory. *В 7 годин я працював в лабораторії.*
- And where were you in the evening? *А де ти був ввечері?*
- When you called on me I was reading the magazine in the library. *Коли ти заходив до мене, я читав журнал у бібліотеці.*

## 2. Usage of Past Continuous

1. The Past Continuous Tense вживається для вираження дії, що відбувалась, тривала в певний момент у минулому. На час дії звичайно вказують такі обставинні слова типу **at 2 o'clock** в 2 години, **at midnight** о півночі, **at that moment** на даний час (момент), **at 5 o'clock** в 5 годин або

підрядні речення з дієсловом присудком у **Past Indefinite**:

*At 9 o'clock PM we were sitting in the room listening to the radio. В 9 годин вечора ми сиділи у кімнаті та слухали радіо.*

**2. The Past Continuous Tense** вживається для вираження дії, що тривала протягом якогось періоду часу в минулому:

*In the spring of the year 1999 they were visiting their relatives. Навесні 1999 року вони гостювали у своїх родичів.*

### 3. Дієслова, що не вживаються в формі Continuous

Дієслово у формі **Continuous** виражає дію, як процес, що триває в момент мовлення або в певний період теперішнього часу. Дієслова, які не виражають дію як процес, як правило, в формі **Continuous** не вживаються.

До них належать:

а) дієслова, що виражають відношення між предметами: **to be** *бути*; **to have** *мати*; **to possess, to own** *володіти*; **to consist** *складатися*; **to contain, to hold** *вміщувати*; **to belong** *належати*; **to depend** *залежати*; **to resemble** *бути схожим* та ін.;

б) дієслова, що виражають відчуття: **to see** *бачити*; **to hear** *чути*; **to smell** *відчувати запах, нюхати*;

в) дієслова, що виражають бажання, почуття, волевиявлення: **to want** *хотіти*; **to wish, to desire** *бажати*; **to love** *любити*; **to like** *подобатися*; **to hate** *ненавидіти*; **to refuse** *відмовлятися*; **to agree** *погоджуватись*; **to prefer** *віддавати перевагу*;

г) дієслова, що виражають розумову діяльність: **to know** *знати*; **to believe** *вірити*; **to suppose** *припускати*; **to recognize** *впізнавати*; **to remember** *пам'ятати, пригадувати*; **to understand** *розуміти*.

Сучасна англійська мова, особливо усна, допускає вживання цих дієслів у формі **Continuous**:

**I am waiting to see you.** *Я хочу бачити вас.*

**He is just being sentimental.** *Він зараз занадто сентиментальний.*

**What are you thinking about?** *Про що ви думаєте?*

### *Past Continuous*

1. Дія тривала впродовж вказаного моменту минулого: **Jack was watching TV at 3 pm yesterday.**

2. Дія відбувалася в минулому і була перервана іншою дією: **While Emma was watching TV her brother called.**

3. Дві та більше дії в минулому, що відбувалися одночасно: **Jane was listening to music and her dog was chewing her shoes.**

*when, while, as etc.*

#### 4. Grammar Exercises

##### 1. Put the verbs into the correct form

1. Yesterday at 7 we \_\_\_\_ (to read).
2. At 11 am he \_\_\_\_ (to work) with his fellow workers.
3. At 12 o'clock PM we \_\_\_\_ (to sit) in the room listening to the radio.
4. When you called on me I \_\_\_\_ (to write) the report at home.
5. In the spring of the year 2019 they \_\_\_\_ (to pass) their exams.
6. Last year at 9 we \_\_\_\_ (to play) tennis.
7. At 2 pm she and her boyfriend \_\_\_\_ (to sing) in the karaoke club.
8. At 5 pm we \_\_\_\_ (to watch) DVD.
9. When they read the newspaper we \_\_\_\_ (to cook) dinner in the kitchen.
10. In the summer of the year 1982 he \_\_\_\_ (to study) at school.

##### 2. Write the negative form of the sentences from the Exercise 1

##### 3. Write the interrogative form of the sentences from the Exercise 1

##### 4. Complete each sentences so that it means the same as the first sentence.

Use the comparative form of the adjectives in brackets. For example: London is bigger than Paris. (*small*) **Paris is smaller than London.**

1. The library is older than the cinema. (*modern*) \_\_\_\_\_ .
2. The bus station is nearer than the train station. (*far*) \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. These houses are more expensive than those flats. (*cheap*) \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. Geneva is quieter than New York. (*noisy*) \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. The sports centre is cleaner than the shopping centre. (*dirty*) \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. The swimming pool is safer than the ocean. (*dangerous*) \_\_\_\_\_ .

##### 5. Write questions using *be going to*. Then match the questions with the answers *a-h*

1. What equipment / Lucy / take - \_\_\_\_\_
2. be hot / there - \_\_\_\_\_
3. you / take photos - \_\_\_\_\_
4. what / you / do there - \_\_\_\_\_
5. what / they / see - \_\_\_\_\_
6. what / Tim / wear - \_\_\_\_\_
7. they / go by train - \_\_\_\_\_
8. they / to travel - \_\_\_\_\_

a) *Yes, I am.*

b) *Waterproof clothes.*

c) *A map and a camera.*

d) *Yes, it is.*

e) *I'm going to take photos of animals.*

- f) *No, they are not.*
- g) *In a canoe.*
- h) *Polar bears.*

**6. Write questions for these answers with the words in brackets**

1. I have Spanish classes *twice a week*. (How often)
2. Tony lives in *London*. (Where)
3. Tom and Jim have lunch at *12.30*. (What time)
4. I usually get up at *7 a.m.* (When)
5. I sit next to *Peter* in class. (Who)
6. She reads *comics*. (What)
7. I practise dancing *three times a week*. (How often)

**Practice 29**

**Text: “English Food”**

**Read the text “English Food”**

English cooking is heavy, substantial and plain. The ideal English breakfast consists of cereals, either porridge, or cornflakes, with milk and sugar, followed by bacon and eggs, or sausages and tomatoes, toasts and marmalade, and finally of course a cup of tea or coffee. For a change they can have a boiled egg, cold ham or fish.

Tea is part of the prose of British life, as necessary as potatoes or bread. It must be made “just like mother makes it”, one teaspoonful of tea for each person and one “for the pot”. Boiling water is added and the tea is allowed to stand, brew or draw. It is drunk with or without sugar but almost always with milk.

The midday meal is called lunch. This meal consists on weekdays, for example, of stew, fried fish, chops, liver or sausages, and some kind of vegetables, usually carrots, cabbage, peas, and potatoes.

Meat is rather expensive in Britain and the working class tends to buy the cheaper cuts and imported rather than home-produced meat. Rice and macaroni are seldom served.

Vegetables such as carrots, peas, and then cabbage are cooked for long periods in lots of water, then strained and served. The sweet, sometimes called dessert may consist of fruit and the famous steamed or boiled pudding. Another favourite sweet is rice pudding.

There are many varieties of pie. Fruit baked in a covering of pastry with a “lid” is called a pie, without a lid it is called a tart. These pies or tarts are eaten hot or cold, often with custard.

Sunday dinner is a special occasion, a weekend joint of beef or lamb being bought and eaten hot with vegetables. After this there will probably follow a large, heavy pudding with custard, a cup of tea or coffee completes the meal.

Five o'clock tea is a peculiar meal. It is a snack of thin bread and butter and cups of tea with small cakes.

Dinner for them follows at seven o'clock and supper some time after nine. For the working class household, however, tea is a fairly substantial meal, often consisting of boiled ham and salad or a boiled egg, bread and butter and jam, and tea. On weekdays some families eat a hot meal in the evening that is at teatime. Supper is usually a snack of bread and cheese and cocoa.

### Vocabulary

**substantial** [səb'stæŋ(ə)l] *поживний*

**plain** [pleɪn] *досконалий, простий, незмішаний*

**cereals** *вироби з дробленого зерна (кукурудзяні пластівці); вівсянка, вівсяна каша*

**teaspoonful** [ti:spu:nfʊl] *чайна ложка (чогось)*

**pot** [pɒt] *горщик; казанок; (висока) каструля*

**brew** [bru:] *заварювати (чай)*

**draw** *настоювати (чай, трави)*

**stew** [stju:] *тушковане м'ясо, тушонка; мішанина, каша, усяка суміш*

**chop** [ʧɒp] *відбивна котлета*

**liver** ['lɪvə] *печінка; лівер*

**cut** *відрізаний шматок; вирізка*

**strained** *злити воду (бульон)*

**steamed** *приготований на парі*

**pie** *закритий пиріг*

**pastry** ['peɪstri] *борошняні кондитерські вироби; здобне тісто*

**lid** [lɪd] *кришка*

**tart** *відкритий пиріг (із фруктами, ягодами або варенням)*

**custard** ['kʌstəd] *рідкий заварний крем*

**occasion** [ə'keɪz(ə)n] *(важлива) подія*

**beef** [bi:f] *яловичина, м'ясо*

**lamb** [læm] *ягня, баранчик*

**peculiar** [pi'kju:liə] *специфічний, особливий, своєрідний*

### 1. Answer the questions

1. What does the ideal English breakfast consists of?
2. How do English drink tea?
3. Do all English eat meat?
4. How do English brew tea?
5. What kind of vegetables do English eat?
6. What is the difference between the terms “pie” and “tart”?
7. What is Five o'clock tea?
8. What does the midday meal consists of?
9. Describe English cooking?
10. Why Five o'clock tea is a peculiar meal?

### 2. Read the statements and tell what are true and false

1. For a change they can have a stewed eggs, cold crisp or chops.



2. The ideal English breakfast consists of cereals, either porridge, or cornflakes, with milk and sugar.
3. Boiling water is added and the tea is allowed to stand, brew or draw.
4. It is drunk with sugar but almost always without milk.
5. The midday meal is called supper.
6. The sweet, sometimes called dessert may consist of fruit and the famous steamed or boiled pudding.
7. Rice and macaroni are always served.
8. Another favourite sweet is rice pudding.
9. Fruit pies baked in a covering of pastry with a “lid”;
10. Five o'clock tea is a snack of thin bread and butter and cups of tea with small cakes.
11. Supper is usually a snack of bread and cheese and cocoa.
12. Dinner for them follows at seven o'clock and supper some time after eleven.

### 3. Find in the text

*гарачу страву на вечерю -*  
*подаються рідко -*  
*додається кипляча вода -*  
*зварене яйце -*  
*пудинг із заварним кремом -*  
*чайна ложка чаю -*  
*з або без цукру -*  
*їдять гарячим або холодним -*  
*дешеві відрізані шматки -*  
*рисовий пудинг -*

### 4. Project 3 “National (Ukrainian, Italian, Chinese, French, Spanish and etc.) Food”

#### Active Vocabulary

*slice* [slais] *різати скибками, скибочками або тонкими шарами*  
*peel* [pi:l] *знімати шкірочку, кірку, шкурку; чистити фрукти, овочі*  
*whisk* [wisk] *збивати (білки)*  
*boil* [bɔɪl] *кип'ятити; варити*  
*fry* [fraɪ] *смажити; смажитися*  
*grill* [grɪl] *смажити на рашпері; запікати*  
*bake* [beɪk] *пекти, випікати; запікати; пектися, запікатися*  
*pour* [pɔ:] *лити; наливати; розливати*  
*scramble* ['skræmb(ə)l] *збовтувати*  
*simmer* ['sɪmə] *кипіти на повільному вогні; кип'ятити на повільному вогні*  
*spread* [sprɛd] *мазати, намазувати*  
*taste* [teɪst] *пробувати, покуштувати*  
*add* [æd] *додавати*  
*blend* [blend] *змішувати; виготовляти суміш*  
*delicious* [dɪ'liʃəs] *дуже смачний; дуже приємний*  
*roast* [rəʊst] *смажити, пекти; запікати; смажитися, пектися; запікатися*

**chop** [tʃɒp] кришити; нарізати, шаткувати; перекручувати через м'ясорубку  
**steam** [sti:m] готувати, варити на пару

**5. Choose the correct word in italics**

1. Sushi is a Japanese dish made with *raw* / *rare* fish.
2. *Beat* / *Stir* the mixture slowly every five minutes.
3. Ugh! This soup is much too *savoury* / *salty*.
4. First, you *slice* / *chop* the onion into cubes.
5. I don't eat many cakes and biscuits. I find them too *sweet* / *sour*.
6. Fill a large saucepan with water and *bake* / *boil* the pasta for ten minutes.
7. Macaroni cheese is my favourite *dish* / *plate*.
8. The *cook* / *cooker* has broken. I need to buy a new one.
9. In Britain at Christmas, it's traditional to *bake* / *roast* a turkey in the oven.
10. Oh no! I have put chicken in the soup and Diane is a *vegetarian* / *vegetable*.

**6. Reread the text "English Food" and do the test**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ is rather expensive in Britain and the working class tends to buy the cheaper cuts and imported rather than home-produced meat.  
a) Salt   b) Fish   c) Meat
2. The midday meal consists on weekdays, for example, of stew, \_\_\_\_\_, chops, liver or sausages, and some kind of vegetables, usually carrots, cabbage, peas, and potatoes.  
a) fried fish   b) boiled potato   c) grilled vegetables
3. Tea is part of the prose of British life, as necessary as \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) salt or sugar   b) potatoes or bread   c) milk or bread
4. Supper is usually a snack of \_\_\_\_\_ and cocoa.  
a) bread and milk   b) milk and cottage cheese   c) bread and cheese
5. The ideal English breakfast consists of cereals, either porridge, or cornflakes, with milk and sugar, followed by bacon and eggs, or sausages and tomatoes, toasts and marmalade, and finally of course \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) a cup of tea or coffee   b) a glass of cool milk   c) a cup of green tea with milk
6. English cooking is heavy, substantial and \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) simple   b) plain   c) good
7. Tea must be made "just like mother makes it", \_\_\_\_\_ and one "for the pot".  
a) two teaspoonful of tea for each person   b) one teaspoonful of tea for each person   c) 1/5 teaspoonful of tea for each person
8. Vegetables such as carrots, peas, and then \_\_\_\_\_ are cooked for long periods in lots of water, then strained and served.  
a) eggplants   b) cabbage   c) potato
9. Dinner for them follows at seven o'clock and supper some time after \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) nine   b) ten   c) eight
10. The pies or tarts are eaten hot or cold, often with \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) milk   b) fizzy drinks   c) custard

Practice 30

Grammar: The Future Continuous Tense

**The Future Continuous Tense** утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова **to be** у **Future Indefinite** майбутній неозначений час та дієприкметника теперішнього часу **Present Participle** основного дієслова (до інфінітива без частки **to** додається закінчення **-ing**):

Особа	Допоміжне дієслово <b>to be</b>	Основне дієслово <b>Present Participle</b>
I, we	<i>shall be</i>	looking
he, she, it, you, they	<i>will be</i>	working

**1. Usage of Future Continuous**

**The Future Continuous Tense** вживається для вираження тривалої дії, що відбуватиметься в якійсь момент або період часу у майбутньому:

**We shall be playing all morning.** *Ми будемо гратися весь ранок.*

У сучасній англійській мові **the Future Continuous Tense** часто вживається у тому ж самому значенні, що й **Future Indefinite**, тобто виражає майбутню дію:

**I shall be asking thousands of questions.** *Я буду ставити тисячі запитань.*

**2. Word Order of Future Continuous**

**Стверджувальна форма:**

*Я (ми) буду плавати в річці завтра.*

*Ти (він, вона, воно, вони) будеш плавати в річці завтра.*

1	2	3	4
Підмет	Допоміжне дієслово	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
I, we	shall be	swimming	in the river tomorrow.
You, he, she, it, they	will be	swimming	in the river tomorrow.

**Заперечна форма:**

*Я (ми) не буду плавати в річці завтра.*

*Ти (він, вона, воно, вони) не будеш плавати в річці завтра.*

1	2	3	4	5	6
Підмет	Перше допоміжне дієслово	Заперечна частка <b>NOT</b>	Друге допоміжне дієслово	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
I, we	shall	not	be	swimming	in the river.
You, he, she, it, they	will	not	be	swimming	in the river.

**Питальна форма:**

*Чи ти будеш плавати в річці завтра?*

*Чи ми будемо плавати в річці завтра?*

1	2	3	4	5
Перше допоміжне дієслово	Підмет	Друге допоміжне дієслово	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
Will	you	be	swimming	in the river?
Shall	we	be	swimming	in the river?

*Де ти будеш плавати?*

*Де ми будемо плавати?*

1	2	3	4	5
Питальне слово	Перше допоміжне дієслово	Підмет	Друге допоміжне дієслово	Присудок
Where	will	you	be	swimming?
Where	shall	we	be	swimming?

Питальне слово – **WHO?** – ХТО (III особа однини – відповідно допоміжне дієслово – *will be*).

*Хто буде плавати в річці?*

1	2	3	4
Питальне слово ХТО? WHO?	Допоміжне дієслово	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
Who	will be	swimming	in the river?

**Future Continuous**

1. Дії, що будуть відбуватися в майбутньому в точний момент часу: *He will be sunbathing in Hawaii next week.*

2. Дії, що відбуваються постійно: *He will see Jane tomorrow in the office, they work in the same place.*

3. Ввічливі питання про те, які плани в людей і чи зможуть вони чимось допомогти: *Will you be going to the store? Can you buy me some apples?*

**Слова-сигнали**

*all day long, this time tomorrow, from 3 pm till 7 pm*

**3. Grammar Exercises**

**1. Put the verbs into the Future Continuous Tense**

1. I \_\_\_ (still / to work) at 6 o'clock.

2. He can't come at two o'clock tomorrow because he \_\_\_ (to give) a lesson at that time.

3. When I come back, they \_\_\_\_ (to have) supper.
4. I \_\_\_\_ (to work) when he returns.
5. If you come after 11 o'clock, I \_\_\_\_ (to sleep).
6. He \_\_\_\_ (to prepare) for his exams in May.
7. She \_\_\_\_ (to write) a play during the summer.
8. In June they \_\_\_\_ (to go) to the Black Sea.

**2. Write negative form of the sentences of the ex.1**

**3. Write interrogative form of the sentences of the ex.1**

**4. Put the verbs into the *Future Continuous Tense***

1. Next Saturday at 7.00 am Mary \_\_\_\_ (visit) Brighton with her friends.
2. Queen Elisabeth \_\_\_\_ (receive) an American delegation next day.
3. Meet me at 2 pm. I \_\_\_\_ (look for) you.
4. We \_\_\_\_ (play) all morning.
5. You \_\_\_\_ (not come back) here any more.
6. During our last exam I \_\_\_\_ (ask) thousands of questions.
7. He \_\_\_\_ (go) to school soon.
8. During her next visit my sister \_\_\_\_ (see) sightseeing in London.

**5. Read this short article about british and American families. Choose the best phrase from A-K to fill in gaps 1-10, to complete the text. There is one phrase that you won't need to use**

When British and American people use the word “*family*” 1 \_\_\_\_ the mother, father and their children. In a general social context the family is usually 2 \_\_\_\_ mean this nuclear family.

Society in Britain and the US 3 \_\_\_\_ nuclear family living in the same house and 4 \_\_\_\_ each other lives. Fifty years ago, the typical family was a husband and a wife, and two or three children. The father spent all day at work and 5 \_\_\_\_ decisions about how the money he earned was spent. The mother stayed at home to manage the house and look after the children. Children were 6 \_\_\_\_ their parents.

Many modern families live rather differently, and because of this some people think that the family unit is dying and society 7 \_\_\_\_ . Many couples still get married, but others live together without 8 \_\_\_\_ . A few years ago, people living together usually got married when 9 \_\_\_\_ a family, but this happens less now. Another trend is 10 \_\_\_\_ married later in life and to have fewer children, so the size of the average family is shrinking.

A – taken to	G – made most of the
B – closely involved in	H – which normally consists of
C – getting married	I – they wanted to start
D – they often mean only	J – expected to obey
E – is being weakened	K – is traditionally based on
F – for people to get	

**6. Complete the sentences with the present continuous or the present simple**

1. a) We \_\_\_\_ (*watch*) TV every day.  
b) We \_\_\_\_ (*watch*) a good documentary now.
2. a) I \_\_\_\_ (*swim*) in the sea every day.  
b) Oh, no! That shark \_\_\_\_ (*swim*) towards us.
3. a) He \_\_\_\_ (*eat*) in a restaurant at the moment.  
b) He usually \_\_\_\_ (*eat*) at home.
4. a) Humans sometimes \_\_\_\_ (*hunt*) animals for sport.  
b) Look! Those men \_\_\_\_ (*hunt*) baby seals.

**Practice 31**  
**Revision**  
**Test 7**

**Word Quiz**

**substantial** [səb'stænj(ə)] *поживний*

**plain** [pleɪn] *досконалий, простий, незмішаний*

**cereals** *вироби з дробленого зерна (кукурудзяні пластівці); вівсянка, вівсяна каша*

**teaspoonful** [ti:spu:nfʊl] *чайна ложка (чогось)*

**pot** [pɒt] *горщик; казанок; (висока) каструля*

**brew** [bru:] *заварювати (чай)*

**draw** *настоювати (чай, трави)*

**stew** [stju:] *тушковане м'ясо, тушонка; мішанина, каша, усяка суміш*

**chop** [tʃɒp] *відбивна котлета*

**liver** ['lɪvə] *печінка; лівер*

**cut** *відрізаний шматок; вирізка*

**strained** *злити воду (бульон)*

**steamed** *приготований на парі*

**pie** *закритий пиріг*

**pastry** ['peɪstri] *борошняні кондитерські вироби; здобне тісто*

**lid** [lɪd] *кришка*

**tart** *відкритий пиріг (із фруктами, ягодами або варенням)*

**custard** ['kʌstəd] *рідкий заварний крем*

**occasion** [ə'keɪz(ə)n] *(важлива) подія*

**beef** [bi:f] *яловичина, м'ясо*

**lamb** [læm] *ягня, баранчик*

**peculiar** [pi'kju:liə] *специфічний, особливий, своєрідний*

**1. Put the verbs into the Future Continuous Tense**

1. We \_\_\_\_ (still / to work) at 9 o'clock.
2. Her cousin can't come at two o'clock tomorrow because he \_\_\_\_ (to give) a lesson at that time.
3. When I come back, they \_\_\_\_ (to have) supper.



4. I \_\_\_ (to work) when he returns.
5. If you come after 11 o'clock, I \_\_\_ (to sleep).
6. He \_\_\_ (to prepare) for his exams in May.
7. She \_\_\_ (to write) a play during the summer.
8. In June they \_\_\_ (to go) to the Black Sea.

## 2. Write the negative form

1. They will be going to the cinema next Sunday.
2. His son will be teaching English, French and Spanish next year.
3. Their relatives will be telling about last accident tomorrow.
4. I will be working next week.
5. They will be sleeping at 3 am.
6. He will be preparing for his exams in March and April.
7. She will be reading this book next evening.
8. In August their friends will be going to Italy.

## 3. Write the interrogative form

1. They will be going to the cinema next Sunday.
2. His son will be teaching English, French and Spanish next year.
3. Their relatives will be telling about last accident tomorrow.
4. I will be working next week.
5. They will be sleeping at 3 am.
6. He will be preparing for his exams in March and April.
7. She will be reading this book next evening.
8. In August their friends will be going to Italy.

## 4. Put the verbs into the *Past Continuous Tense*. Then write negative and interrogative forms

1. Yesterday at 5 pm he \_\_\_ (to watch) new film in the cinema.
2. Last week at 11 am she \_\_\_ (to meet) her friend.
3. Yesterday at 10 PM we \_\_\_ (to speak) with our relatives.
4. When you called on me I \_\_\_ (to listen) to music.
5. Last winter they \_\_\_ (to celebrate) his birthday in the restaurant.
6. At 9 she \_\_\_ (to play) the guitar.
7. Last month at 11 pm she \_\_\_ (to sleep) at home.
8. At 7 pm they \_\_\_ (to go) to the theatre.
9. When they read the newspaper he \_\_\_ (to sing) in the kitchen.
10. Last autumn he \_\_\_ (to learn) Spanish and French at school.

## 5. Fill in the correct preposition, then explain the phrases

1. Ann has been **absent** \_\_\_\_\_ work for two weeks.
2. It has taken Mark a long time to become **accustomed** \_\_\_\_\_ the Australian climate.
3. They **accused** him \_\_\_\_\_ stealing the car.
4. We need to **agree** \_\_\_\_\_ a time to meet.

5. He **apologized** \_\_\_\_\_ Mary \_\_\_\_\_ being late last night.
6. Emma has **applied** \_\_\_\_\_ Leeds University \_\_\_\_\_ a place on the History course.
7. Some people don't **approve** \_\_\_\_\_ the council's plan to build a new shopping centre in town.
8. The old man was **begging** \_\_\_\_\_ food.
9. Do you believe \_\_\_\_\_ magic?
10. Rob has been **busy** \_\_\_\_\_ the redecorating all week.

## Practice 32 Defence of Projects 1, 2, 3

## Practice 33 Revision Word Quiz

- adult* ['ædelt] дорослий, повнолітній; зріла людина  
*researcher* [riːsɜːtʃə] дослідник  
*deaf* [def] глухий; глухуватий  
*communicate* повідомляти, підтримувати зв'язок, спілкуватися  
*shamrock* ['ʃæmrək] трилисник; конюшина  
*clover* ['kləʊvə] конюшина  
*doctrine* ['dɒktrɪn] 1) доктрина, теорія, учення; 2) догма, догмат  
*Holy Trinity* Свята Трійця  
*thistle* ['θɪs(ə)l] будяк; чортополох  
*shield* [ʃiːld] щит; захист  
*daffodil* ['dæfədɪl] нарцис жовтий  
*humble* [hʌmb(ə)l] скромний  
*leek* [liːk] 1) цибуля-порей; 2) зображення цибулі-порей (емблема Уельсу)  
*calculate* розрахувати  
*meeting* збори, нарада, засідання; мітинг; конференція, з'їзд; зустріч; дуель  
*named after* названі на честь  
*Rat* щур  
*hard-working* працьовитий; старанний;  
*Ox* ['ɒks] бик; віл, бик, буйвіл, бізон  
*cautious* ['kɔːʃəs] обережний, обачний; завбачливий  
*showy* ['ʃəʊi] ефектний, яскравий, помітний; кричущий, позбавлений смаку; блискучий, разючий, показний  
*wise* [,waɪz] мудрий, премудрий; розумний  
*gifted* ['gɪftɪd] обдарований; талановитий; здібний  
*gentle* ['dʒentl] добрий; лагідний; ніжний; тихий, спокійний; легкий, слабкий; слухняний; знатний, шляхетний; благородний, вихований, чемний  
*Goat* [gəʊt] цап; коза; козел  
*merry* веселий

**proud** [praʊd] гордий, гордовитий, зарозумілий; пихатий; самовдоволений

**Rooster** ['ru:stə] півень; задирака, забіяка

**faithful** ['feɪəf(ə)l] вірний, відданий; правдивий, який заслуговує на довіру; достовірний; точний, сумлінний

**honest** ['ɒnɪst] чесний; правдивий; прямий, щирий; відвертий; вірний

**relate** стосуватися, мати стосунок

**earthquake** ['ɜ:θ, kweɪk] землетрус

**has got a border with** межує з

**currency** [kʌrənsi] валюта

**official language** офіційна мова

**Mandarine** ['mændəri:n] китайська мова

**population** [pɒpjʊ'leɪʃ(ə)n] населення

**outside** із зовнішньої сторони (чого-небудь), зовні; на вулиці; поза приміщенням

**quietly** ['kwaɪətlɪ] тихо; безшумно; мирно, спокійно

**conversation** [kɒnvə'seɪʃ(ə)n] розмова, бесіда

**you won't believe** ви не повірите

**intelligent** [ɪn'telɪdʒ(ə)nt] розумний; кмітливий

**that's nothing** це ще нічого!

**orca** ['ɔ:kə] касатка

**whale** [weɪl] кит

**shore** [ʃɔ:] берег; узбережжя

**may be** можливо, ймовірно

**hunt seal** полювати на тюленів

**squid** [skwɪd] кальмар

**turtle** ['tɜ:tl] черепаха

**female** ['fi:meɪl] самка

**calf** [kɑf] дитинча (оленя, слона, кита, тюленя та ін.)

**cub** [kʌb] дитинча (звіра)

**are in danger** знаходяться у небезпеці

**becoming extinct** вимирати

**pollution** [pɒ'lju:ʃ(ə)n] забруднення; забруднення навколишнього середовища

**protect** [prə'tekt] захищати, охороняти, запобігати

**climb trees** лазати по деревах

**attack human** нападати на людей

**hunt fish** полювати на рибу

**fur** [fɜ:] хутро; шерсть; шкура; шкурка

**feather** ['feðə] пір'я

**skin** шкіра

**wing** [wɪŋ] крило

**claw** [klɔ:] пазур, кіготь

**paw** [pɔ:] лапа

**beak** [bi:k] дзьоб

**gill** [gɪl] зябра

**was in love with** закоханий

**poor** [pʊə] бідний, незаможний

**dear** [diə] дорогий, який дорого коштує

**vase** [va:z] ваза

**owner** ['əʊnə] власник

**order** ['ɔ:də] наказувати; розпоряджатися

**servant** ['sɜ:v(ə)nt] слуга

**enter** ['entə] входити

**drop** [drɒp] падати, випадати; вивалюватися; упускати

**unpacked** [ʌn'pækt] розпакована

**separately** ['sep(ə)ritli] окремо

**husband** [hʌzbənd] чоловік

**wife** [waif] дружина

**dirty** ['dɜ:ti] брудний, нечистий; забруднений

**suddenly** ['sed(ə)nli] раптово, раптом, зненацька, непередбачено

**watch chain** ланцюжок для годинника

**grow** [grəʊ] (**grew; grown**) рости, збільшуватися; підсилюватися; виростати

**comb** [kəʊm] гребінь, гребінка; гребінець

**glass** [glas] скло

**skyscraper** ['skaɪ,skreɪpə] хмарочос, висотний будинок

**desert** ['dezət] пустеля

**incredible** [in'kredəb(ə)l] неправдоподібний; неймовірний; нечуваний

**floor** [flɔ:] поверх

**modern** ['mɒdn] сучасний; новий; новітній, передовий

**building** ['bɪldɪŋ] будинок, будівля, споруда; будівництво, спорудження

**amazing** [ə'meɪzɪŋ] дивний, разючий

**luxury** [lʌkʃəri] розкішний

**expensive** [ɪk'spensɪv] дорогий, який дорого коштує

**tiny** ['taɪni] дуже маленький, крихітний (часто **tiny little**)

**tower** ['taʊə] вежа

**fast** [fast] швидкий

**stairs** [steəz] сходи

**next to** поряд, наступний

**enormous** [ɪ'nɔ:məs] величезний, грандіозний

**government** ['gʌvəm(ə)nt] уряд; форма правління; управління, керівництво

**be more precise** бути точнішими

**latter** ['lætə] останній (з двох названих)

**ministry (ministries)** міністерство

**consequently** ['kɒnsɪkwəntli] отже, в результаті

**minister** міністр

**department** [dɪpɑ:(r)tment] департамент; управління; служба; міністерство, відомство

**Secretary** ['sekrət(ə)ri] 1) секретар; секретарка; 2) керівник організації, установи; 3) міністр

**presidential secretary** державний секретар

**perform** [pə'fɔ:m] виконувати, здійснювати; робити

**following** ['fɒləʊɪŋ] наступний; нижчезгаданий, нижченаведений

**Commerce** торгівля, комерція

**Urban** ['z:b(ə)n] міський

**Interior** [in'ti(ə)riə] внутрішність; внутрішні справи

**Justice** [dʒʌstɪs] правосуддя, юстиція

**Treasury** ['treʒəri] скарбниця; казна

**Affair** [ə'feə] справа

**institution** [insti'tju:ʃ(ə)n] встановлення, заснування, введення; товариство; організація; навчальний заклад; дитяча, лікувальна, благодійна установа; інститут

**appointed** [ə'pɔɪntɪd] призначений

**announce** [ə'naʊns] 1) повідомляти, сповіщати; анонсувати; заявляти

**exception** [ik'sepʃ(ə)n] виключення, виняток

**Attorney General** міністр юстиції

**deputy** ['depjuti] заступник, помічник

**instead** [in'sted] замість

**Under Secretary** заступник міністра

**assistant secretary** заступник секретаря

**correspond** [kɔri'spɒnd] відповідати, дорівнювати; бути аналогічним

**occupy** ['ɔkjʊpaɪ] займати посаду

**belong** [bi'lɒŋ] (to) належати, бути власністю; бути частиною

**peculiar** [pi'kju:liə] специфічний, особливий, своєрідний

**include** [in'klu:d] містити, включати, охоплювати, включати до складу

**overseeing** нагляд, контроль; здійснення нагляду (контролю)

**keeping law and order** дотримання законодавства та порядку

**responsible** [ri'spɒnsəb(ə)l] відповідальний; який несе відповідальність

**Federal Bureau of Investigation** Федеральне Бюро Розслідувань (ФБР)

**substantial** [səb'stænsj(ə)l] поживний

**plain** [pleɪn] досконалий, простий, незмішаний

**cereals** вироби з дробленого зерна (кукурудзяні пластівці); вівсянка, вівсяна каша

**teaspoonful** [ti:spu:nfʊl] чайна ложка (чогось)

**pot** [pɒt] горщик; казанок; (висока) каструля

**brew** [bru:] заварювати (чай)

**draw** настоювати (чай, трави)

**stew** [stju:] тушковане м'ясо, тушонка; мішанина, каша, усяка суміш

**chop** [tʃɒp] відбивна котлета

**liver** ['lɪvə] печінка; лівер

**cut** відрізаний шматок; вирізка

**strained** злити воду (бульон)

**steamed** приготований на парі

**pie** закритий пиріг

**pastry** ['peɪstri] борошняні кондитерські вироби; здобне тісто

**lid** [lɪd] кришка



*tart* відкритий пиріг (із фруктами, ягодами або варенням)

*custard* ['kʌstəd] рідкий заварний крем

*occasion* [ə'keɪz(ə)n] (важлива) подія

*beef* [bi:f] яловичина, м'ясо

*lamb* [læm] ягня, баранчик

*peculiar* [pi'kju:liə] специфічний, особливий, своєрідний

## Practice 34

### Final Test

Утворення множини іменника

Присвійний відмінок іменника

Назвіть прості, складні та складені іменники

Назвіть злічувані та незлічувані іменники

Виключення у утворенні множини іменника

Артикль в англійській мові

Вживання означеного артикля

Вживання неозначеного артикля

Які числівники ви знаєте?

Як утворюються порядкові числівники?

Назвіть прості, складні та складені прикметники

Утворення ступенів порівняння прикметників

Правильні та неправильні дієслова

Порядок слів в англійському реченні

Утворення Present Indefinite Tense

Утворення Past Indefinite Tense

Утворення Future Indefinite Tense

Допоміжне дієслово групи Indefinite Tense

Утворення Present Continuous Tense

Утворення Past Continuous Tense

Утворення Future Continuous Tense

Допоміжне дієслово групи Continuous Tense

## Practice 35

**Text: “About My Family and Myself. Hobbies in Our Family”**

### About my Family and Myself

*mother, father, parents, children, daughter, son, brother, sister, husband, wife, twins, grandfather, grandmother, grandchildren, granddaughter, grandson*

*mother-in-law, father-in-law, daughter-in-law, son-in-law, brother-in-law, sister-in-law*

*aunt, uncle, nephew, niece, cousin*

*stepfather, stepmother, stepchildren, relative, half-sister, half-brother, stepdaughter, stepson*



**Read the text “Meet the Family”**

**Donald Hewitt.** Donald is a very rich man now though he was born into a poor family. Nobody knows how he got into big money but now he has got a computer factory in Cambridge and big accounts in Swiss banks. He is quiet, self-confident and doesn't like to talk much. He's been married to Rosemary for thirty years. They have got three children, two sons and a daughter. Donald has a house in Cambridge and a villa in Spain. He is fond of golf and spends all his free time on golf courses with his business partners. Donald is very strong-willed person and his only weak spot is his love to his grandchildren.

**Vocabulary**

*accounts* рахунки

*quiet* ['kwaɪət] спокійний

*self-confident* самовпевнений

*strong-willed* рішучий, вольовий

*weak spot* слабе місце (у людини)

**Rosemary Hewitt.** Rosemary is Donald's second wife. His first wife died at childbirth 36 years ago. So Rosemary is a stepmother for Charles, Donald's eldest son. Rosemary is a writer of romantic novels, and she is very rich too, because practically all her books become bestsellers as soon as they are published. Most of her time Rosemary lives in Cambridge with her husband and their three dogs, but she also has a house in London where she stays when she discusses her books with her editor. Donald and Rosemary spend summers in their villa in Spain, far from rainy England. When she is not writing, Rosemary enjoys taking care of the beautiful flowers that grow in her garden.

**Vocabulary**

*publish* публікувати

*editor* ['editə] редактор

*take care* піклуватися

**Charles and Amanda Hewitt.** Charles is Donald's favourite son. For a long time Charles was an only child in the family and he was spoilt by his grandparents (both Donald's and his late wife's) and his nurse who took care of Charles till Donald married Rosemary. Charles grew up to be selfish, arrogant and extremely ambitious. He became a good businessman but not a nice person. He is married to Amanda who used to be a famous model. Amanda is very beautiful; she won the Beauty Contest “Miss Europe 2012”. Charles was one of the sponsors of the contest. He met Amanda there and married her a month later. It isn't a love match. Charles needs a beautiful wife and hostess. Amanda needs a husband who can buy her the things she likes. They have two children: Lucy, who is seven and David who has just turned six. Neither Charles nor Amanda are affectionate people. Charles collects cars and spends more time with them than with his wife and children. Amanda is in love with her face and body and her hobby is shopping and visiting beautician salons and health clubs. She hardly ever thinks about her husband and children.

**Vocabulary**

*only* єдиний

*spoilt* [spɔɪlt] розпещений

*late* покійний

*nurse* [nɜ:s] 1) нянька; 2) годувальниця; 3) медична сестра

*selfish* ['selfɪʃ] егоїстичний, корисливий, себелюбний

*arrogant* ['ærəɡənt] зарозумілий, гордовитий, пихатий; самовпевнений

*extremely* [ɪk'stri:mli] у край; надзвичайно; найвищою мірою

*ambitious* [æm'biʃəs] честолюбний, амбітний

*used to be* колись була

*Contest* конкурс

*love match* шлюб по любові

*hostess*. ['həʊstɪs] господиня

*neither ... nor* жоден з двох

*affectionate* [ə'fækʃ(ə)nɪt] люблячий, ніжний, лагідний

**Andrea and Joseph Williams.** Andrea is Donald's and Rosemary's daughter. She is her mother's favourite child. In her childhood Andrea was fond of animals. She used to bring home stray dogs and cats, birds with broken wings, collected bugs and butterflies. Her favourite subject at school was biology and after graduating from her college Andrea became a scientist. Her special field is microbiology and she works in her laboratory for long hours. She is married to Joseph who loves his wife more than anything else in the world. Donald and Rosemary's son-in-law is a children's doctor. Andrea and Joseph don't have children of their own yet, so they like to spend time with their niece and nephew. They often take them out into the country where Andrea teaches the kids to love and respect nature and Joseph teaches them to fish and to make a camp fire.

**Vocabulary**

*used to bring* зазвичай приносила

*stray dogs and cats* бродячі собаки і коти

*graduate* ['grædʒʊeɪt] закінчити вищий навчальний заклад

**Robin Hewitt.** Robin is Andrea's brother. He is 25 and he is a rock singer, though not famous. His parents are not happy about the lifestyle Robin has chosen. Robin didn't like his school and finishing it he got involved in a company of teenagers who took drugs and stole from shops. Though Robin had never known what lack of pocket money was, he liked what his friends called "adventurer" and ended up in a police station after his friends and he tried to rob a local bank. He didn't go to prison because he was not 14 at that time but he never learnt to work hard and his parents are very much upset that he doesn't want to study and get a good profession.

**Vocabulary**

*finish* ['fɪnɪʃ] закінчувати школу

*involve* [ɪn'vɒlv] залучати, втягувати, улутувати

*adventurer* авантюрист; шукач пригод

*rob* [rɒb] грабувати, обкрадати

**prison** ['priz(ə)n] в'язниця

**upset** [ʌp'set] засмучений

**“Skeleton in the cupboard”**. Donald has a dark secret. In his youth he did something dishonest about which he is sure nobody knows. Two days ago he got a letter in which somebody reminded him about the debt that can be paid only by the life of one of his grandchildren.

**1. Answer the questions**

1. Describe Donald Hewitt.
2. Who is Rosemary's husband?
3. What weak spot has Donald?
4. Why Charles was spoilt?
5. What kind of man is Charles?
6. How Donald Hewitt has got into big money?
7. How many children have Charles and Amanda?
8. What is Amanda's hobby?
9. How old is Charles?
10. What is Donald Hewitt?
11. What is Rosemary?
12. What was Andrea's favourite subject at school?
13. Who is Joseph Williams?
14. Where do Donald and Rosemary spend summers?
15. When do Andrea and Joseph take their niece and nephew?
16. What is Joseph Williams?
17. Why are Robin's parents not happy?
18. How much pocket money has Robin?
19. When and why did Donald's first wife die?
20. What is Rosemary's hobby?

**2. Decide which of these statements are *true* and which are *false*:**

1. Donald Hewitt inherited a big sum of money from his rich parents.
2. Donald's grandchildren are “the apple of his eyes”.
3. Rosemary has two stepchildren.
4. She is a very successful novelist.
5. Rosemary's only hobby is her work.
6. Amanda married Charles for his money.
7. Charles's mother died and there was nobody to take care of him when he was growing up.
8. Lucy and David are neglected by their parents.
9. Robin stole from shops because his parents limited him in his pocket money.
10. Andrea and Joseph enjoy outdoor activities with their niece and nephew.

**3. Find in the text**

*її навіть важко подумати -*

великі рахунки -  
яка колись була -  
захоплюється -  
більш за все в світі -  
любов до його онуків -  
під час пологів -  
її спеціальність -  
брак кишенькових грошей -  
де вона зупиняється -  
своїх дітей -  
подалі від -  
був розпеченим -  
вживали наркотики -  
дуже засмучені -  
закінчення коледжу -  
він був втягнутий -

**4. Fill in the gaps in the following sentences the right words from the box.**

**One word is odd:**

*nurse, wife, sister-in-law, grandparents, son-in-law, halfsister, daughter, halfbrother, brother-in-law, son, stepmother, nephew, parents, husband, niece*

1. Lucy is Andrea and Joseph's little \_\_\_\_.
2. Donald and Rosemary's \_\_\_\_ is an affectionate husband.
3. Charles's \_\_\_\_ Robin wasn't fond of school in his childhood.
4. Andrea's \_\_\_\_ David is fond of fishing.
5. Charles doesn't show much respect to his \_\_\_\_ Rosemary.
6. Being spoiled by his \_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_, Charles grew up to be a very selfish man.
7. Robin is secretly in love with his \_\_\_\_ Amanda.
8. Donald and Rosemary's \_\_\_\_ is a children's doctor.
9. Donald's \_\_\_\_ is a successful novelist.
10. Andrea is a \_\_\_\_ of Charles.
11. Andrea is a favourite \_\_\_\_ of Rosemary.
12. Donald and Rosemary are the \_\_\_\_ of three children.
13. Donald is a \_\_\_\_ of Rosemary.

**5. Reread the text "Meet the Family" and do the test**

1. Donald has a house in Cambridge and a villa in \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) Italy   b) Spain   c) France
2. Most of her time Rosemary lives in Cambridge with her husband and their \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) little children   b) three dogs and a cat   c) three dogs
3. Charles and Amanda don't love each other.  
a) Yes   b) No

4. Andrea used to bring home stray dogs and cats, birds with broken wings, collected \_\_\_\_\_.
- a) birds and hamsters    b) bugs and butterflies    c) insects and flowers
5. Donald is very \_\_\_\_\_ and his only weak spot is his love to his grandchildren.
- a) self-confident person    b) arrogant person    c) strong-willed person
6. Rosemary is a writer of \_\_\_\_\_.
- a) romantic novels    b) fantastic novels    c) screen plays
7. Charles and Amanda have \_\_\_\_\_.
- a) three children    b) two children    c) a daughter
8. Andrea teaches the kids to love and \_\_\_\_\_.
- a) to make a camp fire    b) respect nature    c) to fish
9. Robin didn't like his school and finishing it he got involved in \_\_\_\_\_ who took drugs and stole from shops.
- a) a criminal group    b) a company of criminals    c) a company of teenagers
10. Donald's first wife died at childbirth \_\_\_\_\_.
- a) 26 years ago    b) 36 years ago    c) 33 years ago

6. Match the things in A with the actions in B. Write the sentences using present continuous

A	B
1. Two dogs	( <i>attack</i> ) a mosquito
2. A parrot	( <i>make</i> ) a cake
3. A man	( <i>practise</i> ) the piano
4. A whale	( <i>speak</i> ) English
5. Children	( <i>sing</i> ) to its partner
6. A girl	( <i>have</i> ) a meal
7. A lion	( <i>run</i> ) in the park

7. Complete the text with words in the box

*habitat    live    swim    climate    extinct    pollution    hunt*

Polar bears are becoming 1 \_\_\_\_\_. Why? Human 2 \_\_\_\_\_ is changing the 3 \_\_\_\_\_. Polar bears 4 \_\_\_\_\_ on the ice in the Arctic. But the ice is melting and their 5 \_\_\_\_\_ is getting smaller. Every year it gets more difficult for the bears to 6 \_\_\_\_\_ seals. Polar bears can 7 \_\_\_\_\_ but they can't live in the sea.

### Practice 36

#### Grammar: The Pronoun

Англійська назва цієї частини мови **the Pronoun** немов би показує її призначення – **замінити іменник**.

За значеннями і граматичними особливостями займенники в англійській мові поділяються на кілька груп:

- особові – **personal pronouns**
- присвійні – **possessive pronouns**

- зворотні – **reflexive pronouns**
- взаємні - **reciprocal pronouns**
- вказівні - **demonstrative pronouns**
- питальні – **interrogative pronouns**
- неозначені – **indefinite pronouns**
- заперечні – **negative pronouns**
- кількісні - **quantitative pronouns**

### 1. Personal Pronouns

Найважливіша група займенників – особові займенники **Personal Pronouns**: **I** я; **you** ви, ти; **we** ми; **they** вони; **he** він; **she** вона; **it** воно (вона, він) мають два відмінки: називний **the Nominative Case** і об’єктний **the Object Case**:

the Nominative Case	the Object Case
<b>I</b> я	<b>me</b> мене, мені
<b>you</b> ви, ти	<b>you</b> вас, вам, тебе, тобі
<b>we</b> ми	<b>us</b> нас, нам
<b>they</b> вони	<b>them</b> їх, їм
<b>he</b> він	<b>him</b> його, йому
<b>she</b> вона	<b>her</b> її, їй
<b>it</b> воно (вона, він)	<b>it</b> його, їй

Займенник **it** заміняє іменники – назви неістот, тварин, рослин, а також іменник **baby** немовля. Іноді назви тварин замінюються займенниками **he** або **she** (у казках, назви свійських тварин).

Українською мовою особовий займенник **it** перекладається словами *він, вона, воно* залежно від роду відповідного іменника в українській мові:

**Take this book. It is good.** Візьми цю книжку. Вона хороша.

### 2. Possessive Pronouns

В англійській мові присвійні займенники **my, mine** мій, моє, моя, мої; **your, yours** ваш, ваша, ваше, ваші, твій, твоя, твоє, твої; **our, ours** наш, наша, наше, наші; **their, theirs** їхній, їхня, їхнє, їхні; **his** його; **her, hers** її; **its** його, її мають дві форми: залежну **Conjoint Form** і незалежну **Absolute Form**:

Conjoint Form	Absolute Form	Українські відповідники
<b>my</b>	<b>mine</b>	мій, моє, моя, мої
<b>your</b>	<b>yours</b>	ваш, ваша, ваше, ваші твій, твоя, твоє, твої
<b>our</b>	<b>ours</b>	наш, наша, наше, наші
<b>their</b>	<b>theirs</b>	їхній, їхня, їхнє, їхні
<b>his</b>	<b>his</b>	його (чоловічий рід)
<b>her</b>	<b>hers</b>	її
<b>its</b>	-	його, її



Присвійні займенники в залежній формі вживаються перед іменниками у ролі означення: **my dog** *мій собака*; **his car** *його машина*; **its windows** *його вікна* (наприклад, будинку); **our bags** *наши сумки*; **your telephone** *твій (ваши) телефон*; **their picture** *їхня картина*.

Присвійні займенники в незалежній формі не вживаються перед іменниками; вони **заміняють їх і виконують функції** підмета, іменної частини присудка або додатка:

Where are all <b>our</b> toys? – <b>Mine</b> are here.	Де всі <u>наші</u> іграшки? – <u>Мої</u> тут.
I have eaten all <b>my</b> sandwiches, can I have one of <b>yours</b> ?	Я вже з'їв всі <u>мої</u> бутерброди, чи можна мені з'їсти один з <u>твоїх</u> ?
Susan wants to know if you have seen a file of <b>hers</b> .	Сюзан хоче знати, чи не бачив ти <u>її</u> файл.
This is <b>my</b> room and that is <b>yours</b> .	Це <u>моя</u> кімната а то – <u>твоя</u> .
Whose book is it? It's <b>mine</b> .	Чия це книга? <u>Моя</u> .
I don't think <b>your</b> car is better than <b>mine</b> .	Я не думаю, що <u>ваша</u> машина краща за <u>мою</u> .
<b>Their</b> house is big and <b>ours</b> is small.	<u>Їхній</u> будинок великий, а <u>наш</u> - маленький.
<b>Your</b> luggage is here and where is <b>hers</b> ?	<u>Ваш</u> багаж тут, а де <u>її</u> ?
This pen is <b>yours</b> , and not <b>mine</b> .	Ця ручка <u>ваша</u> , а не <u>моя</u> .

В англійській мові нема такого присвійного займенника, що відповідав би українському *свій* і стосувався будь-якої особи. Український присвійний займенник *свій* англійською мовою перекладається різними присвійними займенниками залежно від особи, якої він стосується:

Я користуюсь своїм принтером. **I use my printer.**

Вони користуються своїм фотоапаратом. **They use their camera.**

Вона користується своїм комп'ютером. **She use her computer.**

**May I borrow your pen?** Чи можу я позичити вашу ручку? **I've lost mine.** Я загубив свою.

**Mary sold her house.** Мері продала свій будинок.

Слово *свій* в українській мові вживається, коли підмет описує того, кому належить об'єкт. Отже, в англійській мові є два однакові способи показати, кому належить об'єкт:

<b>This is our car.</b> Це <u>наша</u> машина.	<b>This car is ours.</b> Ця машина <u>наша</u> .
--	--

І тільки в одному випадку є зворот, який має перевагу: коли мова іде про дружбу:

**a friend of mine** *мій друг* звучить вагомніше, ніж **my friend** *мій друг*:

**He is an old friend of mine.** Він – мій старий друг.

### 3. Reflexive Pronouns

Зворотні займенники утворюються додаванням закінчення **-self** в однині і **-selves** у множині до присвійних займенників **my**, **your**, **our**, особових

займенників у об'єктному відмінку **him, her, it, them**, та неозначеного займенника **one**: **myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves, oneself**:

**She often speaks to herself.** Вона часто розмовляє сама з собою.

**This fact speaks for itself.** Цей факт говорить сам про себе.

Наголос у зворотних займенниках падає на **-self, -selves**.

Деякі дієслова із зворотними займенниками перекладаються українською мовою дієсловами із зворотною часткою **-ся (-сь)**:

**I dressed myself.** Я одяглася.

**I cut myself.** Я порізався.

**He washes himself in cold water.** Він вмивається холодною водою.

Зворотні займенники вживаються також, як підсилювальні слова і відповідають українським *сам, особисто, власною персоною*:

**I saw it myself.** - Я сам це бачив.

**We spoke to the President himself.** Ми говорили із самим президентом.

**The house itself is very old, but you don't feel that.** Сам будинок дуже старий, але ви цього не відчуєте.

Деякі вирази потрібно запам'ятати:

**We really enjoyed ourselves.** Ми чудово провели час.

**Please make yourself at home.** Будь ласка, почувайтеся, як вдома.

**I did it all by myself.** Я все це зробив сам.

**I'm all by myself in this house.** Крім мене, у цьому домі нікого немає.

#### 4. Reciprocal Pronouns

В англійській мові є два взаємних займенники: **each other** і **one another**, що мають однакове значення – *один одного, один одному*. Взаємні займенники мають два відмінки: загальний **the Common Case** – *each other, one another* і присвійний **the Possessive Case** - *each other's, one another's*.

**We loved each other very much.** Ми дуже любили один одного.

**They greeted one another.** Вони привітали один одного.

**They looked at each other.** Вони дивились один на одного.

**We said "Good by" to each other.** Ми сказали „До побачення” один одному.

#### 5. Demonstrative Pronouns

До вказівних займенників належать: **this** цей, **that** той, **such** такий, **the same** той самий. Займенники **this** і **that** мають форму множини: **these** ці і **those** ті.

**Give me that document.** Дай мені той документ.

**He knows these documents.** Він знає ті документи.

**This is the same document.** Це той самий документ.

**It was such a pleasant party!** То була така приємна вечірка!

#### 6. Interrogative Pronouns

Англійські питальні займенники: **who** хто, **what** що, **which** який, **whose** чий.

Питальний займенник **who** має два відмінки: **називний (the Nominative**

Case) - **who** *хто* і об'єктний (the Objective Case) – **whom** *кого, кому*.

**Who** is your friend? *Хто твій товариш?*

**Whom** did you see in the house? *Кого ти бачив в будинку?*

**What** are you doing? *Що ти робиш?*

**What** book do you read? *Яку книжку ти читаєш?*

**Which** month is the warmest? *Який місяць найтепліший?*

Окремо розглянемо групу питальних складених займенників, які передають емоції: здивування, дратування, сумління тощо:

<b>Whatever</b>	<b>Whatever</b> are you talking about?!	<i>Про що ж ти говориш?!</i>
<b>Whoever</b>	<b>Whoever</b> has told you so?!	<i>Хто ж тобі таке сказав?!</i>
<b>Whichever</b>	<b>Whichever</b> shall I choose?!	<i>Що ж мені вибрати?!</i>
<b>Whenever</b>	<b>Whenever</b> shall I look for?!	<i>Де ж мені ще шукати?!</i>

## 7. Indefinite Pronouns

До неозначених займенників належать: **some** *дехто, який-небудь, якийсь, кілька, деякі*; **any** *який-небудь, які-небудь, скільки-небудь*; **one** (дивись розділ **Зворотні займенники**); а також складні займенники **somebody, someone** *хтось, хто-небудь*; **something** *щось*; **anybody, anyone** *хто-небудь*; **anything** *що-небудь*.

У більшості випадків займенники **some, somebody, someone, something** вживаються у стверджувальних та, іноді, в питальних реченнях:

**Somebody** is knocking on the door. *Хтось стукає в двері.*

There are **some** books on the table. *На столі кілька книжок.*

Will you have **some** more tea? *Вам ще налити чаю?*

Give me **some** book to read. *Дайте мені почитати яку-небудь книжку.*

He will listen to **someone**. *Він вислухає кого-небудь.*

Займенники **any, anybody, anyone, anything** вживаються

а) у загальних питаннях і заперечних реченнях:

Are there **anybody** in the room? *Хтось є в кімнаті?*

He does not speak **anything**. *Він нічого не сказав.*

б) у стверджувальних реченнях, де неозначені займенники мають значення: **any** *будь-який*, **anybody, anyone** - *будь-хто*, **anything** *будь-що*:

You can buy stamps at **any** post-office. *Марки можна придбати у будь-якому поштовому відділенні.*

## 8. The Indefinite Pronoun ONE

Неозначений займенник **one** не стосується конкретної особи, він вживається щодо людей взагалі і має значення *якийсь, хтось, будь-хто, кожний* тощо:

**One** should learn to count. *Кожному слід навчитися рахувати.*

**One** must go in for sports. *Спортотом рекомендується займатися кожному.*

Займенник **one** вживається в загальному і присвійному відмінках.

У загальному відмінку **one** виконує функцію підмета або додатка:

**One** never knows what he can do. *Ніколи не знаєш, що він зробить.*

**One** should be careful when crossing the street. *Слід бути обережним, коли переходиш вулицю.*

**One** often hears about such things. *Про це часто можна почути.*

**One** can buy cheese at the dairy counter. *Сир можна купити в молочному відділі.*

**One** can buy here apples, lemons and grapes. *Тут можна купити яблук, лимонів та винограду.*

У присвійному відмінку **one's** виконує роль **означення**:

**One must always keep one's word.** *Треба завжди дотримувати свого слова.*

**to do one's duty** *виконувати свій обов'язок*

**One** у сполученні з іменниками, що вказують на час, виражає невизначений час:

**One day he will do it.** *Колись він зробить це.*

Також займенник **one** вживається замість раніш вжитих в реченні злічуваних іменників:

**I have not got a dictionary. I must buy one (a dictionary).** *В мене немає словника. Я маю його купити.*

**This is a black pencil and that is a red one (a pencil).** *Це чорний олівець, а то – червоний.*

**One (ones)** у сталих словосполученнях:

**it's all one to me** *для мене це не має значення;*

**one after the other** *один за одним; поступово; не всі разом;*

**one by one** *поодиноці;*

**the little ones** *діти;*

**the pretty ones** *гарненькі дівчата.*

## 9. Negative Pronouns

До заперечних займенників належать: **no ні; nobody, no one ніхто; nothing ніщо, нічого; none ніхто, жоден, ніщо; neither жоден:**

**I saw nobody there.** *Я нікого там не бачив.*

**She knows nothing.** *Вона нічого не знає.*

**I have no brother.** (або **I have not a brother.**) *В мене немає брата. Зверніть увагу, що артикль не ставиться, якщо стоїть неозначений займенник **no**.*

**No dictionary could help you.** *Ніякий словник не зміг допомогти йому.*

**Neither of us mentioned him.** *Жоден з нас не згадував його.*

Також характерно вживання парних займенників: **either ... or або ... або, neither ... nor ні ... ні.**

**I know neither him, nor his friends.** *Я не знаю ні його, ні його друзів.*

## 10. Quantative Pronouns

Кількісні займенники: **many, much багато, few, little мало, a few, a little кілька, трохи:**

**There were many students in the classroom.** *В аудиторії було багато студентів.*

**She has few books.** *В неї мало книжок.*

**I have very little time.** *У мене дуже мало часу.*

Слова **many багато** та **few мало** вживаються зі злічуваними іменниками:

**many students** *багато студентів;*

**few people** *мало людей;*

**few apples** *мало яблук.*

Слова **much** *багато* та **little** *мало* вживаються із незлічуваними іменниками:

**much time** *багато часу;*

**much information** *багато інформації;*

**little money** *мало грошей.*

Займенники **many** та **much** особливо у стверджувальних реченнях можна замінити на **a lot of**:

**We have a lot of books.** *У нас багато книжок.*

**They spend a lot of time.** *Вони витрачають багато часу.*

Наявність неозначеного артикля перед **few** і **little** змінює їх значення. Артикль підкреслює наявність певної, хоч і невеликої, кількості. Порівняємо речення:

<b>We have little sugar.</b> <i>У нас мало цукру.</i>	<b>We have a little sugar.</b> <i>У нас є трохи цукру.</i>
<b>I have few books.</b> <i>У мене мало книжок.</i>	<b>I have a few books.</b> <i>У мене є кілька книжок.</i>

**Few** і **little**, вжиті без артикля, означають *мала, недостатня кількість, погано, недостатньо* в негативному розумінні:

**She had little rest during Sunday and looked tired.** *Вона погано (недостатньо) відпочила у неділю і виглядала втомленою.*

Але, якщо до цих слів додається неозначений артикль, вони набувають позитивного змісту:

**I have few pencils.** *В мене мало (недостатньо) олівців.*

**I have a few pencils.** *В мене є кілька олівців.*

**We have little time to do this exercise.** *У нас мало часу, щоб зробити цю справу.*

**We have a little time to do this exercise.** *У нас є трохи часу, щоб зробити цю справу.*

## 11. Grammar Exercises

### 1. Translate into English

1. Це наш будинок.
2. Він не думає, що ваші квіти кращі за мої.
3. Вони користуються своєю машиною.
4. Де всі наші речі? – Мої тут.
5. Ваш підручник тут, а де її?
6. Їхні діти великі, а наші - маленькі.
7. Це двері ваші, а не мої.
8. Вони користуються своїм ноутбуком.
9. Чия це машина? Моя.
10. Чи можу я позичити ваш одяг? Я загубив свій.
11. Ми продали свій будинок.
12. Це моя сумка, а то – твоя.
13. Ми вже з'їли всі наші фрукти, чи можна нам з'їсти твої?
14. Вона користується своїми речами.
15. Ця лялька наша.



16. Андрій питає, чи ти не бачив його сайт.

## 2. Translate into English

1. Це була та сама вечірка.
2. Ромео і Джульєтта дуже кохали один одного.
3. Дайте нам, будь ласка, ті документи.
4. Він часто розмовляє сам з собою.
5. Ці факти говорять самі про себе.
6. Він одягнувся.
7. Том і Хелен привітали один одного.
8. Я порізався.
9. Вона вмивається холодною водою зранку.
10. Вона сама це бачила.
11. Ми сказали „Привіт” один одному.
12. Вони говорили із самим президентом нашої компанії.
13. Сама будівля дуже стара, але там можна жити.
14. Я і Ігор дивились один на одного.
15. Вона знає всі ті речі.

## 3. Translate into English

1. Він нікого там не бачив.
2. Я не знаю ні її, ні її батьків.
3. Газети можна придбати у будь-якому поштовому відділенні.
4. Хтось стоїть біля дверей.
5. На полицях кілька книжок.
6. Вам ще налити вина?
7. Жоден менеджер не зміг допомогти йому.
8. Дайте нам почитати який-небудь журнал.
9. Ми розкажемо кому-небудь.
10. Хтось є вдома?
11. Масло, сметану і сир можна купити в молочному відділі.
12. Ми нічого не сказали.
13. Слід бути обережним, коли переходиш вулицю.
14. Тут можна купити баклажанів, кабачків та картоплі.
15. Вони нічого не знають.

## 4. Translate into English

1. У мене є кілька книжок.
2. В нас мало яблук.
3. У нього дуже мало часу.
4. У Андрія багато книжок.
5. Ми витрачаємо багато часу.
6. В Олени мало цукру.
7. У нас є трохи молока.
8. В класі було багато студентів.



9. В бібліотеці мало книжок.
10. В мене є кілька зошитів.
11. В мене недостатньо олівців.
12. У нас мало часу, щоб зробити це завдання.
13. У нас є трохи часу, щоб зробити це завдання.

### 5. Insert *few, a few, little or a little*

1. There isn't much to see in this place, so ... tourists come here.
2. My aunt knows French ..., so she agreed to help me with the translation.
3. This is not the first time. It has happened ... times before.
4. We are short of water because there has been very ... rain recently.
5. The village is very small. There are ... houses there.

### 6. Translate into English

Багато зошитів, багато молока, багато води, багато днів, багато газет, багато крейди, багато снігу, багато кімнат, багато років, багато картин, багато музики, багато хлопчиків, багато роботи.

Мало будинків, мало вікон, мало паперу, мало іграшок, мало світла, мало ковбаси, мало соку, мало друзів, мало солі, мало дерев, мало палаців, мало дітей, мало кави.

## Practice 37

### Text: "Jobs and Professions"

#### Vocabulary

<i>an engineer</i>	<i>a book-keeper</i>	<i>an electrician</i>	<i>a fireman</i>
<i>an accountant</i>	<i>a sales representative</i>	<i>a surgeon</i>	<i>a lawyer</i>
<i>a dentist</i>	<i>a mechanic</i>	<i>a psychologist</i>	<i>a barber</i>
<i>a shop assistant</i>	<i>a policeman</i>	<i>a waiter / waitress</i>	<i>a miner</i>
<i>a manager</i>	<i>a teacher</i>	<i>a solicitor</i>	<i>a estate agent</i>
<i>a traffic warden</i>	<i>an architect</i>	<i>a secretary</i>	<i>a controller</i>
<i>a businessman</i>	<i>a clerk</i>	<i>a nurse</i>	<i>a vet</i>
<i>a geologist</i>	<i>a journalist</i>	<i>a gardener</i>	<i>a pop singer</i>
<i>a bank manager</i>	<i>a tourist-guide</i>	<i>a computer operator</i>	<i>a interpreter</i>
<i>a film star</i>	<i>a bookseller</i>	<i>a bus driver</i>	<i>a cook</i>
<i>a bodyguard</i>	<i>a cashier</i>	<i>a plumber</i>	<i>a painter</i>
<i>a sportsman</i>	<i>a hummerman</i>	<i>a carpenter</i>	<i>a hunter</i>
<i>a wood-cutter</i>	<i>a builder</i>	<i>a economist</i>	<i>a director</i>
<i>a head of department</i>	<i>a white-collar</i>	<i>a labourer</i>	<i>an editor</i>

### Read the text "Choosing Your Way in Life"

**Mary Glass** is 39 years old and she is a doctor. She choose the medical profession because she wanted to help people and at the same time to make good money. When Mary was younger her wish was to become a teacher or a nurse but she soon realized that there was not much money in either of those professions. Mary's parents were rather old-fashioned people and thought that a woman's place is at home. So they wanted their daughter to become a secretary, marry a respectable young man, have several children and stay at home working about the house and

bringing up the kids. When Mary applied to a medical college her parents refused to give her any financial support and she had to work as a waitress in a restaurant to earn money for her college fees. She specialized as an optician, made a good career in the hospital she works, got married, had two children and is very much satisfied both with her family life and her business career.

**Vocabulary**

**realized** = **understand** усвідомлювати

**either** будь-який

**respectable** [ri'spektəb(ə)l] поважний; респектабельний

**bring up** виховувати

**apply to a college** поступити в коледж

**refuse** відмовляти

**give financial support** надавати фінансову підтримку

**waitress** офіціантка

**earn money (make money)** заробляти гроші

**fee** оплата за навчання

**be satisfied** бути задоволеним

**Billy Blackthorn** left school when he was sixteen. He didn't study well and had no qualification. He just wanted to earn some money and got himself a job in a factory. He didn't mind being a blue-collar worker, all he wanted was enough money to take his girl friend out on a Saturday night. But soon he and his fellow-workers were replaced by robots who could do their job and Bill was sacked. He was out of work for eighteen months and understood how terrible it was to be unemployed. The days seemed so long and the dole that he got was enough only for the cheapest food and second-hand clothes. Bill finally got a job as an unskilled labourer, working for a builder. He is 25 now and thinks that it is not to start attending night classes and get some extra training so that he can't earn more money as a skilled worker.

**Vocabulary**

**mind** думати

**blue-collar** "синій комірць", технічний працівник, робітник на виробництві

**fellow-worker** співробітник

**sack** звільняти

**be unemployed** бути безробітним

**dole** [dəʊl] допомога по безробіттю

**unskilled** некваліфікований

**labourer** ['leib(ə)rə] (некваліфікований) робітник; чорнороб

**attend** [ə'tend] відвідувати

**extra** ['ekstrə] додатковий

**training** виховання; навчання; підготовка; освіта

**John Rushton** is a businessman. He is 50 years old and he has been working for the same company for twenty-seven years. He thinks that he has a very successful career. He started working for the company as a poorly paid clerk and was one of

those nine-to-five white-collar office workers who spend all day with a pencil in one hand and a telephone in the other. He hated it and asked to be transferred to sales where he became one of the company's sales representatives. John traveled all over the country selling the company's products and eventually became the most successful salesperson on the staff. In ten years he was promoted to manager of the sales department. He has got a good salary and benefits. He might retire in another ten years and then his pension will allow him to live comfortably in his country house enjoying his hobbies that he has no time for now while he still works.

**Vocabulary**

**successful career** успішна кар'єра

**poorly paid** низкооплачуваний

**clerk** [kla:k] конторський службовець, клерк

**white-collar** службовець

**transfer** переведення (по службі)

**sales** купівля-продаж; розпродаж; збут

**sales representative** торговий представник

**promote** просувати; підвищувати в чині або званні

**salary** ['sæləri] платня, оклад; заробітна плата службовця

**benefit** ['benɪfɪt] перевага, привілей; премія

**retire** звільнити у відставку; переводити на пенсію

**Joan Evans:** This month I am leaving school to face the real world. My main ambition is to live and work abroad. I hope to go to college and do a tourism course. When I am in college, I will learn at least two foreign languages. I think that by the time I am 30 I'll be married and have a baby. I don't want to be rich and famous, but I do want to enjoy life.

**Steve Taylor:** My greatest wish is to be a manager for Rolls Royce. I will go to work Rolls Royce as an apprentice, and after 4 or 6 years I will be an engineer. I am not very ambitious but I'd like to become a manager in Rolls Royce. I'll get married in my mid-twentieth because I want to have children and my mother says that you need to be young to cope with them.

**Vocabulary**

**apprentice** [ə'prentɪs] учень, підмайстер; новачок

**engineer** [endʒi'niə] інженер; конструктор

**cope** [kəʊp] (**with**) упоратися (з труднощами)

**1. Answer the questions**

1. Did Mary Glass satisfied both with her family life and her business career?
2. Why did Mary Glass choose the medical profession?
3. Where did Mary have to work to earn money for her college fees?
4. How old is Mary Glass?
5. What was Mary Glass?
6. When Billy Blackthorn left school?
7. Why did he have no qualification?

8. How old is Billy Blackthorn now?
9. What is John Rushton?
19. What did John Rushton ask?
20. What salesperson did John Rushton become?
21. Does John Rushton have a hobby?
22. When is Joan Evans leaving school?
23. What is ambition of Joan Evans?
24. What is the greatest wish of Steve Taylor?
25. What does Steve's mother say?

## 2. Find in the text

*дуже задоволена -*

*була змушена працювати -*

*вона незабаром зрозуміла -*

*досить старомодні люди -*

*зробила хорошу кар'єру -*

*заробляти трохи грошей -*

*які могли виконувати їхню роботу -*

*почати відвідувати -*

*як кваліфікований робітник -*

*низкооплачуваний службовець -*

*він не має часу -*

*жити і працювати за кордоном -*

## 3. Read the following statements of the text and decide if they are *true* or *false*

1. Mary's parents didn't want their daughter to become a doctor because there was not much money in this profession.
2. Mary financially supported herself through the college by working as a secretary.
3. Mary's job is to test people's eyes.
4. To be a blue-collar worker means to work with a pencil in one hand and a telephone in the other.
5. Bill was rather ambitious about his career when he finished school.
6. Automatization of the factory was the reason of Bill's unemployment.
7. Bill enjoyed his free time when he was out of work.
8. John didn't get much money when he started his career.
9. John's promotion followed his successful work as a sales representative.
10. John hopes that he will be able to find time for hobbies when he becomes a pensioner.
11. Both John and Steve are ambitious young people.
12. Both John and Steve want to work and live abroad.

## 4. Underline the word that does not belong to each group

1.	close	end	transfer	finish
2.	check	confirm	go over	organize
3.	receiver	assistance	help	aid
4.	hint	sign	signal	trip
5.	grateful	inefficient	rude	unprofessional

**5. Project 4 “My Future Profession”**

**6. Insert the corresponding pronouns**

1. \_\_\_ is reading a book. (Sam)
2. \_\_\_ is green. (The tree)
3. \_\_\_ are on the wall. (The pictures)
4. \_\_\_ are running. (The elephants)
5. \_\_\_ are watching TV. (Helen, Kate and John)
6. \_\_\_ is in the garden. (A flower)
7. \_\_\_ is riding a bike. (Ron)
8. \_\_\_ are dirty. (Ann’s dresses)
9. \_\_\_ has a brother. (Helen)

**7. Read the descriptions and guess the jobs**

1. She works in a hospital. She is a \_\_\_\_\_ .
2. He works in a garage. It’s a hard job. He is a \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. She works in an office. It’s a well-paid job. She is a \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. She works in a café. It’s a tiring job. She is a \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. He works in a school. It’s a stressful job. He is a \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. He works in many places. It’s a dangerous job. He is a \_\_\_\_\_ .

**8. Reread the text “Choosing Your Way in Life” and do the test**

1. John Rushton is a businessman and he is \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) 45 years old      b) 55 years old      c) 50 years old
2. Mary Glass specialized as an \_\_\_\_, made a good career in the hospital.  
a) optician      b) therapist      c) surgeon
3. Billy Blackthorn left school when he was \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) eighteen      b) seventeen      c) sixteen
4. John Rushton has a very \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) talented specialist      b) successful career      c) professional job
5. Joan Evans’ main ambition is to live and work \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) in his native country      b) in the USA      c) abroad
6. Mary Glass is \_\_\_\_\_ and she is a doctor.  
a) 49 years old      b) 29 years old      c) 39 years old
7. Steve Taylor will go to work Rolls Royce as an \_\_\_\_, and after 4 or 6 years he will be an engineer.  
a) apprentice      b) master      c) student
8. Billy Blackthorn finally got a job as an unskilled \_\_\_\_, working for a builder.  
a) worker      b) labourer      c) waiter
9. When Mary Glass applied to a medical college her parents \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) proposed to give her financial support      b) refused to buy her clothes      c) refused to give her any financial support
10. Joan Evans thinks that by the time he is \_\_\_\_ he’ll be married and have a baby.  
a) 25      b) 30      c) 35

## Practice 38

### Revision

### Test 8

#### 1. Translate the following words into Ukrainian

*aunt, uncle, nephew, niece, cousin*

*mother-in-law, father-in-law, daughter-in-law, son-in-law, brother-in-law, sister-in-law*

*stepfather, stepmother, stepchildren, relative, half-sister, half-brother, stepdaughter, stepson*

*mother, father, parents, children, daughter, son, brother, sister, husband, wife, twins, grandfather, grandmother, grandchildren*

#### 2. Translate the following word-combinations into English:

*нянька / медична сестра, низькооплачуваний клерк, службовець, учень, інженер, робітник на виробництві та торговий представник; надзвичайно егоїстична, пихата та амбітна людина; Цей редактор – спокійний, самовпевнений та вольовий; закінчити школу та вищий навчальний заклад; люблячі батьки надають фінансову підтримку; постуити в коледж та заробляти гроші на навчання; некваліфікований безробітний чорнороб отримує допомогу по безробіттю; хороша заробітна плата, успішна кар'єра та премія; зазвичай приносила бродячих собак і котів; додаткове навчання*

#### 3. Translate into English

*багато дівчат; багато чаю; багато лимонів; багато м'яса; багато кімнат; багато вчителів; багато роботи; багато повітря; багато машин; багато птахів; багато кави; багато олівців*

*мало дерев; мало трави; мало дітей; мало іграшок; мало світла; мало парт; мало ковбаси; мало соку; мало книг; мало квітів; мало солі; мало друзів*

#### 4. Insert the correct pronouns

1. My name is Sue. \_\_\_ am English. And this is my family.

2. My mum's name is Angie. \_\_\_ is from Germany.

3. Bob is my dad. \_\_\_ is a manager.

4. On the left you can see Simon. \_\_\_ is my cousin.

5. \_\_\_ are twins.

6. He lives in Canterbury. \_\_\_ is not far from London.

7. Our dog is a girl. \_\_\_ is two years old.

8. My grandparents live in the village and \_\_\_ often come and see us.

9. What can \_\_\_ tell me about your family?

#### 5. Write sentences using the correct form of the present continuous

1. he / catch fish for dinner

2. we / study the climate



3. those crocodiles / not sleep
4. I / watch a TV programme about polar bears
5. they / not do their homework
6. she / write a book about whales
7. you / not listen to me

## Practice 39

### Grammar: The Preposition

#### 1. Usage of Prepositions

Чітких правил, які визначають, де і які треба вживати прийменники, немає. Є тільки прийняті норми (**usage**).

Прийменники **in, on, at** використовуються для опису місцезнаходження.

**IN** - у тривимірному сприйманні (об'єм):

**The pencil is in the box.** Олівець у коробці.

**My children are playing in the garden.** Мої діти граються в саду.

**The table is in the middle of the room.** Стіл - посередині кімнати.

**Mother cooks dinner in the kitchen.** Мати готує обід в кухні.

**ON** - у двовимірному сприйманні (площина):

**The books are on the table.** Книжки на столі.

**The number is on the door.** Номер на дверях.

**A dirt is on your shirt.** Бруд на вашій сорочці.

**He lives on the second floor.** Він живе на другому поверсі.

**ON** - в одновимірному сприйманні (лінія):

**A town on the Mississippi River.** Місто на річці Міссісіпі.

**His village is on the border.** Його село на кордоні.

**AT** – місцезнаходження:

**He is standing at the door.** Він стоїть біля дверей.

**He is sitting at my desk.** Він сидить за моїм столом.

**The car is at the crossroads.** Машина стоїть на перехресті.

Зверніть увагу: дуже важливо, як сприймається це місце, “що всередині”:

**We meet at the theatre.** Зустрічаємось у театрі. (місце зустрічі)

**There are 200 seats in the theatre.** У театрі 200 місць.

Прийменники перед географічними назвами:

**IN** перед назвами континентів: **in Europe**; перед назвами країн: **in Cuba**;  
перед назвами штатів: **in Florida**; перед назвами міст: **in Paris**.

**ON** - перед назвами вулиць: **on Broadway**, **on Naberezhna Street**, **on Soborna Street**.

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

**АТ** - перед номерами будинків, адресами, місцезнаходженням:

<b>He lives at 45 Ozerna Street.</b>	<i>Він живе у будинку №45 на вулиці Озерній.</i>
<b>Please, write me at my new address.</b>	<i>Будь ласка, пишіть мені за моєю новою адресою.</i>
<b>You can see the timetable at the station (at the airport).</b>	<i>Ви можете побачити розклад на вокзалі (в аеропорту).</i>
<b>They spent their holiday at the seaside.</b>	<i>Вони провели відпустку на морі.</i>
<b>Snow is at the top of the mountain.</b>	<i>Сніг на вершині гори.</i>
<b>We shall meet at Bob's house.</b>	<i>Ми зустрінемося у Боба вдома.</i>
<b>at the table</b>	<i>біля столу</i>
<b>at the door</b>	<i>біля дверей:</i>
<b>Why is that woman standing at the door?</b>	<i>Чому та жінка стоїть біля дверей?</i>
<b>at the traffic lights</b>	<i>біля світлотора:</i>
<b>Turn left at the traffic lights.</b>	<i>Повертайте наліво біля світлотора.</i>
<b>at the bus stop</b>	<i>біля автобусної зупинки;</i>
<b>at the top (of the page)</b>	<i>у верхній частині (сторінки):</i>
<b>Please, write your surname at the top of the page.</b>	<i>Будь ласка, напишіть своє прізвище у верхній частині сторінки.</i>
<b>at the dentist</b>	<i>у зубного лікаря;</i>
<b>at my sister's (house)</b>	<i>в будинку моєї сестри;</i>
<b>at a concert</b>	<i>на концерті;</i>
<b>at a party</b>	<i>на вечірці;</i>
<b>at the age of ...</b>	<i>у віці ...:</i>
<b>He left school at 16 (at the age of 16).</b>	<i>Він закінчив школу у 16 років (у віці 16 років).</i>
<b>at 90 kilometres an hour</b>	<i>90 кілометрів на годину;</i>
<b>at 100 degrees</b>	<i>при температурі 100 градусів:</i>
<b>Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.</b>	<i>Вода кипить при температурі 100 градусів за Цельсієм.</i>

### 2. Usage of Prepositions of Time

Прийменники часу. Різні інтервали часу вимагають різних прийменників.

hours AT	days ON	months, seasons, years, decades, centuries IN
<b>at 6 o'clock</b> <i>о 6-ій год.;</i> <b>at 7.30</b> <i>о 7.30</i> <b>at midnight</b> <i>опівночі</i>	<b>on Tuesday</b> <i>у вівторок;</i> <b>on November 1<sup>st</sup></b> <i>1-го листопада;</i> <b>on 25 April</b> <i>25 квітня;</i> <b>on New Year's Day</b> <i>на Новий Рік</i>	<b>in May</b> <i>у травні;</i> <b>in summer</b> <i>влітку;</i> <b>in 1976</b> <i>у 1976 році;</i> <b>in the 60s</b> <i>у 60-ті роки;</i> <b>in the 20<sup>th</sup> century</b> <i>у XX столітті.</i>

AT	IN	ON
He gets up <b>at</b> four o'clock.	They live <b>in</b> France.	She lives <b>on</b> an island.
Sh is <b>at</b> the library.	I like to travel <b>in</b> summer.	Let's get <b>on</b> the bus.
They laughed <b>at</b> my joke.	He was born <b>in</b> 2015.	What's <b>on</b> television?
Who is <b>at</b> the door?	What do you do <b>in</b> the evening?	Where will you go <b>on</b> holiday?
I'm good <b>at</b> singing.	The Nile is the longest river <b>in</b> the world.	Do you live <b>on</b> the block?

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

What happens <b>at</b> the end of the movie?	He was <b>in</b> a car accident.	I get up early <b>on</b> weekdays.
Are they <b>at</b> school now?	Can we do it <b>in</b> time?	The picture is <b>on</b> the wall.
Look <b>at</b> that.	We plan to move <b>in</b> a year from now.	I'm <b>on</b> the phone.
They smiled <b>at</b> me.	I get up late <b>in</b> the morning.	Am I late or <b>on</b> time?
I'm bad <b>at</b> math.	Do you believe <b>in</b> ghosts?	We agreed <b>on</b> it.
I often stay up late <b>at</b> night.	I will be there <b>in</b> a few minutes.	Put it <b>on</b> the table, please.

Коли іде мова про час, український прийменник “через” перекладається як **in**:

**In two hours you must be at home.** *Через 2 години ти маєш бути вдома.*

Такі фрази, як “*наступного року*”, “*наступного тижня*” в англійській мові як і в українській (на відміну від російської) взагалі не потребують прийменника:

**next year** *наступного року*: **I'll see him next year.** *Я побачу його наступного року.*

**last year** *торік*: **We did it last year.** *Ми зробили це торік.*

**this morning** *цього ранку*;

**every day** *кожного дня*;

**next week** *наступного тижня*.

Не вживається прийменник і в такому звороті:

**two times a day** *двічі на день*;

**three times a year** *тричі на рік*: **I go to school five times a week.** *Я ходжу до школи 5 разів на тиждень.*

Запам'ятайте такі сталі словосполучення з прийменниками часу:

<b>at present</b>	<i>зараз/в даний час;</i>
<b>at lunch time</b>	<i>під час обіду</i>
<b>at the same time</b>	<i>в той самий час</i>
<b>at the weekend</b> <b>Are you going away <u>at the weekend</u>?</b>	<i>на вихідних:</i> <i>Чи поїдеш ти кудись <u>на вихідні</u>?</i>
<b>at night</b>	<i>вночі;</i>
<b>at Christmas (Easter)</b> <b>In Germany children get presents <u>at Easter</u>.</b>	<i>на Різдво (Великдень):</i> <i>В Німеччині діти отримують подарунки <u>на Великдень</u>.</i>
<b>at the end of ...</b> <b>I am going on holiday <u>at the end of October</u>.</b>	<i>в кінці ...:</i> <i>Я збираюсь у відпустку <u>в кінці жовтня</u>.</i>
<b>at the moment</b> <b>Are you busy <u>at the moment</u>?</b>	<i>зараз:</i> <i>Чи не зайнятий ти <u>зараз</u>?</i>
<b>in the past</b>	<i>в минулому;</i>
<b>in an hour</b>	<i>через годину</i>
<b>in the future</b>	<i>у майбутньому;</i>
<b>in the morning (afternoon, evening)</b> <b>I always feel good <u>in the morning</u>.</b>	<i>вранці (вдень, ввечері):</i> <i>Я завжди <u>вранці</u> добре себе почуваю..</i>

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

by 10 o'clock	до 10 години
while you are sleeping	поки ти спиш
for an hour	впродовж години
during another hour	впродовж наступної години
during the lesson	впродовж заняття
before 10 o'clock	до 10 години
after 10 o'clock	після 10 години
since 10 o'clock	з 10 години
from 10 till 11 AM	від 10 до 11 ранку

Але, жодне правило не обходиться без винятків:

**on Monday morning**

вранці у понеділок

I met her **on Monday morning.**

Я зустрів її у понеділок вранці.

### 3. Usage of Other Prepositions

Деякі вирази потрібно просто вивчити напам'ять:

<b>on holiday</b> Helen is not at work because she is <b>on holiday</b> .	у відпустці: Олена зараз не на роботі, тому що вона у відпустці.
<b>on television</b> They watched the news <b>on television</b> .	по телебаченню: Вони подивились новини по телебаченню.
<b>on the radio</b> We listened to the news <b>on the radio</b> .	по радіо: Ми почули новини по радіо.
<b>on the telephone</b>	по телефону;
<b>on fire</b> The room is <b>on fire!</b>	в огні (горить): Кімната <u>горить!</u>
<b>on (in) time</b> The train was <b>on time</b> .	вчасно: Потяг прийшов за розкладом.
<b>a reason for</b>	причина чого-небудь
<b>a need for</b>	потреба у чомусь
<b>an invitation to</b>	запрошення на
<b>a reaction to</b>	реакція на
<b>a solution to</b>	рішення чогось
<b>a relationship with</b>	стосунки з
<b>contact with</b>	контакт з
<b>by accident</b>	випадково
<b>by chance</b>	завдяки щасливому випадку
<b>by mistake</b>	помилково
<b>on a diet</b>	на дієті
<b>on business</b>	по справах
<b>an increase / a decrease in</b>	збільшення / зменшення чогось
<b>in (my) opinion</b>	на мою думку
<b>a cause in an accident</b>	причина інциденту

Деякі випадки також слід запам'ятати:

<b>in a room</b> в кімнаті	<b>in my coffee</b> у моїй каві
<b>in a shop</b> в магазині	<b>in bed</b> у ліжку
<b>in a town</b> в місті	<b>in a street</b> на вулиці
<b>in the city centre</b> у центрі міста	<b>in the sky</b> в небі

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

<b>in the sea</b> <i>в морі:</i> <b>I like swimming <u>in the sea</u>.</b> <i>Мені подобається плавати <u>в морі</u>.</i>	<b>in a car</b> <i>у машині</i> ( <b>але</b> зверніть увагу: <b>on a bus</b> <i>у автобусі;</i> <b>on a train</b> <i>у поїзді;</i> <b>on a plane</b> <i>у літаку);</i>
<b>in a newspaper (magazine)</b> <i>в газеті (в журналі)</i>	<b>in a photograph</b> <i>у фотографі</i>
<b>in a book</b> <i>в книжці</i>	<b>in a picture</b> <i>на малюнку</i>
<b>in the world</b> <i>в світі;</i>	

<b>to be <u>at</u> school</b> <i>навчатися в школі</i>	<b>to be <u>in</u> hospital</b> <i>лікуватися</i>
<b>to be <u>at</u> college</b> <i>навчатися в коледжі</i>	<b>to be <u>in</u> bed</b> <i>спати/відпочивати</i>
<b>to be <u>at</u> work</b> <i>бути на роботі</i>	<b>to be <u>in</u> prison</b> <i>відбувати покарання</i>
<b>to be <u>at</u> home</b> <i>бути вдома;</i>	

<b>About</b> – цей прийменник вживається:	
1) із дієсловами: <b>to talk</b> <i>розмовляти;</i> <b>to speak</b> <i>говорити;</i> <b>to think</b> <i>думати;</i> <b>to hear</b> <i>чути;</i> <b>to know</b> <i>знати;</i>	<b>Some people talk about their work all the time.</b> <i>Деякі люди весь час розмовляють про свою роботу.</i> <b>I do not know much about cars.</b> <i>Я не знаю багато про машини.</i>
2) з іменниками: <b>a book</b> <i>книга;</i> <b>a question</b> <i>питання;</i> <b>a programme</b> <i>програма;</i>	<b>Did you see the programme about animals.</b> <i>Чи дивився ти програму про тварин?</i>

А тепер розглянемо декілька прийменників, близьких за значенням, але різних за правилами вживання:

<b>During</b> <i>під час, впродовж</i>	<b>I met some interesting people <u>during my holidays</u>.</b>	<i>Я зустрів цікавих людей під час своєї відпустки.</i>
<b>For</b> <i>впродовж деякого часу</i>	<b>She has been ill <u>for half a year</u>.</b>	<i>Вона хворіла впродовж півроку.</i>
<b>Above</b> <i>вище (чогось або когось)</i>	<b>This town lies a hundred feet <u>above sea-level</u>.</b>	<i>Це місто розташоване на 100 метрів вище рівня моря.</i>
<b>Over</b> <i>над</i>	<b>Many planes can be seen <u>over the capital</u>.</b>	<i>Багато літаків можна побачити над столицею.</i>

<b>Below</b> <i>нижче (чогось, когось)</i>	<b>Temperature has dropped <u>below zero</u>.</b>	<i>Температура впала нижче нуля.</i>
<b>Under</b> <i>під чимось</i>	<b>The dog is lying <u>under the table</u>.</b>	<i>Собака під столом.</i>

<b>Except</b> <i>за винятком, крім</i>	<b>All of them joined us <u>except John</u>.</b>	<i>Всі вони за винятком (крім) Джона приєдналися до нас.</i>
<b>Besides</b> <i>крім (того)</i>	<b><u>Besides friends</u> of mine there were lots of other people.</b>	<i>Крім моїх друзів там було багато інших людей.</i>

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

<b>Between</b> (двома)	<i>між</i>	<b>The car was parked <u>between two</u> very expensive ones.</b>	Ця машина припаркована <u>між двома</u> дуже дорогими машинами.
<b>Among</b> (багатьох)	<i>серед</i>	<b>I could not find her <u>among all those</u> people.</b>	Я не міг знайти її <u>серед усіх</u> тих людей.

<b>As як</b>	<b><u>As a doctor</u> I know what I am talking about.</b>	<i>Як лікар, я знаю що говорю.</i>
<b>Like схожий</b>	<b>He walked <u>like a drunken man</u>.</b>	<i>Він йшов як п'яна людина (схожий на п'яного).</i>
<b>Till доки, до певного часу</b>	<b>He waited <u>till sunset</u>.</b>	<i>Він чекав до заходу сонця.</i>
<b>As far as до певного місця</b>	<b>He travelled with me <u>as far as</u> Kyiv.</b>	<i>Він їхав зі мною до Києва.</i>

<b>In в, на</b>	<b>She stayed <u>in the hotel</u> all evening.</b>	<i>Вона була в готелі весь вечір. (де?)</i>
<b>Into в</b>	<b>I am going <u>into the room</u>.</b>	<i>Я іду в кімнату. (куди?)</i>
<b>Against проти, очікуванні</b>	<b>They were <u>against it</u>.</b>	<i>Вони були проти цього.</i>
	<b>We grew more and more excited <u>against this event</u>.</b>	<i>Ми все більше хвилювалися в очікуванні цієї події.</i>
<b>Towards у напрямку</b>	<b>She is walking <u>towards me</u>.</b>	<i>Вона йшла у напрямку до мене.</i>
<b>By до певного часу</b>	<b>I shall do it <u>by Thursday</u>.</b>	<i>Я зроблю це до четверга.</i>

### 4. Grammar Exercises

#### 1. Insert the proper preposition *at / on / in*

1. Where were you \_\_\_ 28 February?
2. I got up \_\_\_ 7 o'clock this morning.
3. My sister got married \_\_\_ May.
4. We often go to the beach \_\_\_ summer.
5. George is not here \_\_\_ the moment.
6. I will send you the money \_\_\_ the end of this month.
7. \_\_\_ autumn, the leaves fall from the trees.
8. The company started \_\_\_ 1969.
9. I often go away \_\_\_ the weekend.
10. I like looking \_\_\_ the stars \_\_\_ the sky \_\_\_ night.

#### 2. Insert the proper preposition *about, after, against, before, between, from, into, like, over, same*

February comes \_\_\_ January. March is \_\_\_ April. August comes \_\_\_ July and \_\_\_ September. We fight \_\_\_ war. Both the English and Americans speak the \_\_\_ language. Birds fly \_\_\_ our heads. I would like to tell you \_\_\_ this book. He divided the apple \_\_\_ two boys. I live in the \_\_\_ street.

#### 3. Insert the proper preposition

1. He used to live here ... 1994 ... 1997.



2. I'm sorry, he's off. Please call him back ... an hour.
3. My birthday is ... March 26.
4. Let's meet ... the beginning of the lesson.
5. Bye, see you ... Monday!
6. The lesson begins ... half past eight.
7. We haven't seen him ... last year.
8. I hope to meet you ... Easter.
9. He graduated from school ... the age of 16.
10. She takes English classes ... Wednesday nights.
11. I won't see you ... the time you come home.

#### 4. Insert the proper preposition

1. None of us has got an invitation ... the party.
2. We have some need ... spare parts to our computers.
3. Tom has no reasons ... leaving school.
4. Ann is ... a diet now, and she is losing weight very quickly.
5. I was surprised at their reaction ... what I said.
6. Ann took my umbrella ... mistake.
7. Who knows the solution ... this problem?
8. I'm sorry, but my father is out ... business.
9. We arrived just ... time for the second half of the game.
10. Do you have a good relationship ... your teachers?
11. I'm going to watch a new film ... television.
12. We had some sandwiches and tea ... lunch.
13. ... my opinion, the weather isn't fine at all.

#### 5. Insert the corresponding pronouns

1. I am a pupil. This is \_\_\_ bag.
2. You are a pupil. This is \_\_\_ bag.
3. He is an engineer. That is \_\_\_ office.
4. She is a teacher. I am \_\_\_ pupil.
5. It is my kitten. This is \_\_\_ basket.
6. - Is this \_\_\_ book? - No, it isn't. My book is in my bag.
7. That isn't Ann's sister. \_\_\_ sister is at home.
8. The dog has got a ball. \_\_\_ ball is little.
9. - Is that your school? - No, it isn't \_\_\_ school is there.

### Practice 40

#### Text: "My Working Day and My Day Off"

##### 1. Fill in the gaps with the words given in the box

*11 pm; local bus; one day; on his homework; sixth form student; finished with;  
a glass of orange juice and an egg; suburb near Manchester;  
in the school canteen; 8.30 am; team-mates; 7.15 am*

Peter Dryden lives in a \_\_\_ (1). He is a \_\_\_ (2). Every morning he gets up at \_\_\_ (3). He has \_\_\_ (4) for breakfast and lives the house at \_\_\_ (5). He goes to his public school by a school bus. He usually has four lessons before lunch. He doesn't take a packed lunch from home and prefers to eat \_\_\_ (6). He has 3 more classes after lunch and then plays football with his \_\_\_ (7). Peter is promising football player and he dreams that \_\_\_ (8) he will be invited to play for "Manchester United". After his training he takes a \_\_\_ (9) home and has dinner at about 7 o'clock. Peter doesn't spend much time \_\_\_ (10) and it is usually ready by 9 o'clock. His usual evening \_\_\_ (11) watching TV or listening to the CDs of his favourite pop-groups. He goes to bed at \_\_\_ (12).

**2. Read the text again and find 5 facts about Peter Dryden's routine that are the same or different for you. Explain the difference**

**Model 1:** Both Peter and I wake up at 7.15.

**Model 2:** Peter gets up at 7.15 but I get up at 7.40 because my classes begin at 8 o'clock.

**3. Fill in each gap with the necessary preposition from the box**

1. <i>past; at</i> <sup>x3</sup> ; <i>in; on</i> <sup>x2</sup> ; <i>up</i> <sup>x4</sup> ; <i>to</i> ;
2. <i>out; of; on; to</i>
3. <i>by</i> <sup>x2</sup> ; <i>to; from</i>
4. <i>on; in; at; for; out</i>
5. <i>in</i> <sup>x3</sup> ; <i>at; up</i>

1. What time do you usually wake \_\_\_ ? I usually get \_\_\_ \_\_\_ seven \_\_\_ weekdays. My sister usually gets \_\_\_ \_\_\_ a quarter \_\_\_ 8 \_\_\_ Sundays. We always get \_\_\_ \_\_\_ half \_\_\_ eleven \_\_\_ summer.

2. When the alarm clock rang I jumped \_\_\_ \_\_\_ bed, switched \_\_\_ the radio and started doing my morning exercises listening \_\_\_ music.

3. She doesn't live very far \_\_\_ her school. She goes \_\_\_ school \_\_\_ foot. But if she is short of time she goes \_\_\_ bus 34.

4. He prefers to go \_\_\_ a walk \_\_\_ the morning when the air is fresh. He never goes \_\_\_ \_\_\_ weekday evenings and always has dinner \_\_\_ home.

5. I got \_\_\_ early \_\_\_ the morning and felt sleepy \_\_\_ the daytime but when my friends left me \_\_\_ the evening I felt so excited that I couldn't fall asleep \_\_\_ night.

**4. Answer the questions**

1. What was your most / least favourite subject at school? Why?

2. Which do you think are the three most important subjects to study at university? Why?

3. Are there any subjects you wish you should harder? Why?

4. What additional subject do you think necessary to study now? Why?

**5. Prepare to tell a short personal anecdote on "My School Days" including plenty of extra, personal details**

**6. Complete the dialogue answers in these sentences**

**Maria:** Hello, Bill! 1 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**Bill:** Not bad, thanks. 2 \_\_\_\_\_. He is my cousin. He is from Australia.

**Maria:** Hi, Sam! 3 \_\_\_\_\_ .

**Bill:** And you. Hey, that is a cool camera. 4 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**Maria:** Yes, but I am not very good at it. 5 \_\_\_\_\_ are you from?

**Bill:** I am from Sydney.

**Maria:** That's interesting. 6 \_\_\_\_\_ .

**Bill:** Yeah. Good bye!

**7. Look at the information in the table and write questions and short answers using *have got / has got***

	<i>Jasmine</i>	<i>Jack and Emma</i>
a dog	no	yes
a new teacher	yes	no
two parrots	yes	yes
fashion clothes	yes	no
fantastic books	no	yes
a laptop	yes	no
a new mobile	no	yes

For example:

*Has Jasmine got a dog? No, she hasn't / hasn't got.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_

**Practice 41  
Grammar: The Postposition**

Англійське речення (найчастіше питальне) може закінчуватися прийменником; це дивує тих, хто щойно починає вивчати англійську мову.

**Where are you from?** *Звідки ви?*

**What is it for?** *Навіщо це?*

**What is all that noise about?** *Що цей шум означає?*

Подібні приклади незвичні і тому заслуговують на особливу увагу. Деякі англійські прийменники є складеними:

*where from* *звідки*; **Where are you going and where from?** *Куди ви ідете і звідки?*

*what for* *навіщо*; **I need this book. - What for?** *Мені потрібна ця книга. – Навіщо?*

**He is from Ukraine.** *Він – з України.*

**What country is he from?** *З якої він країни?*

**This is for him.** *Це - для нього.*

**Whom is it for?** *Для кого це?*

**She is looking at the wall.** Вона дивиться на стіну.

**What is she looking at?** На що вона дивиться?

В українській мові прийменник з легкістю переходить на початок фрази, а в англійській він, навпаки, намагається залишитися на місці.

**We are talking about music.** Ми говоримо про музику.

**What are we talking about?** Про що ми говоримо?

**He opened the bottle with a knife.** Він відкрив пляшку ножем (за допомогою ножа).

**What did he open the bottle with?** Чим він відкрив пляшку?

Отже, одна з причин цього явища – “небажання” англійського прийменника міняти своє місце в реченні при переході від ствердження до запитання.

В англійській мові існує група прийменників, які вживаються з дієсловами. В деяких підручниках їх називають “**prepositional verbs**” „дієслова з прийменниками”. Дієслова завдяки закріпленню за ними прийменникам мають багато значень. Наприклад, в залежності від прийменника-„післяслівника” дієслово **to give** *давати* має значення:

**to give away** *віддавати; зраджувати;*

**to give back** *повертати;*

**to give in** *поступатися;*

**to give under** *не витримувати;*

**to give out** *видавати; випускати;*

**to give up** *відмовитись.*

## 1. Usage of Postpositions

Практична порада: якщо ви побачите в англійському тексті прийменник, який стоїть після дієслова, ніколи не перекладайте на українську мову навіть добре знайоме дієслово його основним значенням. Прийменник-супутник неодмінно вплинув на значення дієслова: посилив, послабив або зовсім його змінив. Якщо ці словосполучення перекладати окремо, а не у комбінації, буде відсутній зміст. Запам'ятати всі такі ідіоми неможливо, але деякі з них вживаються досить часто і запам'ятовуються автоматично, мимовільно (якщо ж таке словосполучення зустрічається в тексті, потрібно дивитися в словнику комбінацію дієслово + прийменник). Наприклад:

<b>be afraid <u>of</u></b> <i>боятися (чогось), лякатися</i>	<b>What are you <i>afraid of</i>?</b> Чого ви боїтесь? <b>She was <i>afraid of</i> a dog.</b> Вона налякана собакою.
<b>apply <u>for</u></b> <i>подавати заяву (на)</i>	<b>What position did you <i>apply for</i>?</b> На яку посаду ви подали заяву?
<b>angry <u>about</u> smth</b>	<i>сердитись на щось</i>
<b>annoyed <u>about</u> smth</b>	<i>ображатися на щось</i>
<b>ask <u>for</u></b> <i>просити, напрошуватися (на)</i>	<b>What help are you <i>asking for</i>?</b> Якої допомоги ви просите? <b>He is <i>asking for</i> trouble.</b> Він напрошується на неприємності.
<b>laugh <u>at</u></b> <i>сміятися (з)</i>	<b>What is he <i>laughing at</i>?</b> З чого він сміється? <b>They <i>laugh at</i> you.</b> Вони сміються з вас.

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

<b>listen to</b> слухати (щось, когось)	<b>What music are you listening to?</b> Яку музику ви слухаєте?
<b>nervous about</b>	нервувати з приводу
<b>excited about</b>	хвилюватися про
<b>worried about</b>	непокоїтися з приводу
<b>upset about</b>	засмучуватися від
<b>happy about</b>	відчувати радість від
<b>be proud of</b> пишатися (кимось, чимось)	<b>What are you so proud of?</b> Чим ви так пишаєтесь?
<b>scared of</b>	панікувати
<b>kind of</b>	люб'язно з боку
<b>wait for</b> очікувати (на чогось, на когось)	<b>What are you waiting for?</b> Чого ви чекаєте? <b>Whom are you waiting for?</b> На кого ви чекаєте?
<b>aware of</b>	усвідомлювати
<b>surprised at</b>	дивуватися
<b>shocked at</b>	бути шокованим
<b>good at / bad at</b> встигати з / не встигати з	<b>He is bad at mathematics.</b> Він не встигає з математики.
<b>hopeless at</b>	безнадійно відставати у
<b>annoyed with smb</b>	ображатися на когось
<b>pleased with / satisfied with</b>	бути задоволеним
<b>disappointed with</b>	розчаруватися у
<b>keen on</b>	захоплюватися
<b>similar to</b>	бути схожим
<b>kind to</b> робити ласку	<b>It's so kind to you to help me.</b> Дуже люб'язно з твого боку допомогти мені.
<b>polite to</b> бути ввічливим з	<b>He is very polite to people.</b> Він дуже ввічливий з іншими людьми.
<b>rude to</b>	бути грубим з
<b>famous for</b>	бути відомим завдяки чомусь
<b>responsible for</b>	бути відповідальним за

Деякі з них можуть об'єднуватися більше ніж з одним прийменником, набуваючи при цьому різних значень:

<b>be made of</b> бути зробленим (з чого)	<b>This dress is made of cotton.</b> Воно зроблене з бавовни.
<b>be made in</b> бути виготовленим (в, у)	<b>It is made in Italy.</b> Воно виготовлено в Італії.
<b>care about</b> хвилюватися	<b>I don't care about your problems - I've got enough of my own.</b> Мене не хвилюють твої проблеми – у мене досить своїх власних.
<b>care for</b> турбуватися, піклуватися;	<b>Those people care for and about senior citizens.</b> Ті люди опікуються старшими людьми і турбуються про них.
<b>take care of</b> доглядати, опікуватися;	<b>Who will take care of you?</b> Хто опікуватиметься вами?
<b>think of, to think about</b> думати (про)	<b>What are you thinking of?</b> Про що ви тепер думаєте?
<b>dream of, to dream about</b> мріяти (про)	<b>What do you dream about?</b> Про що ви мрієте?
<b>look at</b> дивитися (на)	<b>I look at you.</b> Я дивлюсь на вас.
<b>look after</b> дивитися, доглядати (за)	<b>I can look after your children while you are at work.</b> Я можу доглянути ваших дітей, поки ви на роботі.
<b>look for</b> шукати	<b>What are you looking for?</b> Що ви шукаєте?
<b>look forward to</b>	чекати з нетерпінням



## Practical Grammar of the English Language

<b>look <u>up</u></b> підводити (очі); шукати (в довіднику і т. ін.); (розм.) полінуватися	<b>If you don't understand the word look it up in a dictionary.</b> Якщо не знаєте слова, подивіться його переклад в словнику.
<b>look <u>about</u></b> озиратися навколо; насторожитися, підшукувати	<b>We can see him standing and looking about.</b> Ми бачили як він стояв і озирався навколо.
<b>look <u>as</u></b> виглядати як	<b>Now she looks as a princess.</b> Зараз вона виглядає як принцеса.
<b>look <u>back</u></b> озиратися	<b>Never don't look back!</b> Ніколи не озирайся!
<b>look <u>down</u></b> дивитися донизу	<b>Look down and pick up it!</b> Подивись донизу і підними це!
<b>look <u>for</u></b> шукати	<b>I did not know that he looks for me.</b> Я не знав, що він мене шукає.
<b>look <u>for help</u></b> розраховувати на допомогу	<b>He hopes and looks for our help.</b> Він сподівається і розраховує на нашу допомогу.
<b>look <u>like</u></b> бути схожим	<b>Her daughter looks like her mother.</b> Її донька схожа на свою матір.
<b>look <u>on</u></b> розглядати	<b>Open the textbook and carefully look on the picture.</b> Відкрийте підручник і уважно розгляньте малюнок.
<b>look <u>out</u></b> виглядати	<b>Don't look out the window.</b> Не виглядай із вікна.
<b>look <u>over</u></b> проглядати	<b>My sister is a teacher. She often looks over the pupil's copybooks.</b> Моя сестра вчителька. Вона часто проглядає учнівські зошити.
<b>look <u>upon</u></b> розглядати	<b>My elder brother likes look upon old magazines.</b> Мій старший брат любить розглядати старі журнали.
<b>look <u>throw</u></b> проглядати	<b>His friend always buys newspapers but he doesn't read them, he only looks throw the headings.</b> Його друг завжди купляє газети, але він їх не читає, а тільки проглядає заголовки.
<b>look <u>up to</u></b> захоплюватися кимось	<b>My small daughter looks up to this actor.</b> Моя маленька донька захоплюється цим актором.
<b>look <u>into</u></b> вивчати, досліджувати	<b>These students look into the problem of teenagers.</b> Ці студенти досліджують проблему тінейджерів.
<b>look <u>at</u></b> подивитися на	<b>Look at me, please.</b> Подивіться на мене, будь ласка.
<b>remind <u>about</u></b> нагадувати (про)	<b>He reminded me about the appointment.</b> Він нагадав мені про домовлену зустріч.
<b>remind <u>of</u></b> нагадувати (когось)	<b>He reminds me of my uncle.</b> Він нагадує мені мого дядька.
<b>fill <u>in</u></b> заповнювати (анкету)	<b>Please, fill in an application form.</b> Будь ласка, заповніть анкету (заяву).
<b>put <u>out</u></b> загасити (вогонь, цигарку і т.д.)	<b>Please, put out the sigarette.</b> Будь ласка, загасіть цигарку.
<b>cross <u>out</u></b> викреслити (слово, помилку)	<b>I wrote the wrong name at the form, so I crossed it out.</b> Коли я помилився у написанні імені в анкеті, я викреслив його.
<b>give <u>up</u></b> здаватися; відмовлятися від; втрачати надію; кидати (звичку)	<b>Do you smoke? - No, I gave it up two years ago.</b> Ви палите? Ні, я кинув два роки тому.



## Practical Grammar of the English Language

(наприклад, кидати палити)	
<b>be run <u>out of</u></b> закінчитися, вичерпатися	<b>We have run out of sugar.</b> У нас закінчився цукор.
<b>knock <u>over</u></b> розбити (чашку, склянку, скло)	<b>I knocked over a glass.</b> Я розбила склянку.
<b>be <u>about to</u></b> збиратися щось зробити у найближчий час	<b>He is about to read the letter.</b> Він збирається прочитати листа.
<b>keep <u>up with</u></b> триматися на рівних, не пасти задніх	<b>Wait, I don't keep up with you.</b> Почекайте, я не встигаю за вами.
<b>jump <u>at</u></b> використовувати (можливість, шанс)	<b>I jumped at the opportunity to make her acquaintance.</b> Я скористався можливістю познайомитися з нею.
<b>hint <u>at</u></b> натякати (на щось), нагадувати (про)	<b>They hinted at the thing that had been promised to them.</b> Вони нагадали про речі, які їм пообіцяли. <b>What are you hinting at?</b> На що ви натякаєте?
<b>happen <u>to</u></b> ставатися (з)	<b>A horrible thing happened to her.</b> З нею сталася страшна річ.
<b>translate <u>into</u></b> перекладати (на)	<b>He translated the story from Ukrainian into English.</b> Він переклав оповідання з української мови на англійську.
<b>kiss <u>on</u></b> поцілувати (в)	<b>She kissed the baby on the forehead.</b> Вона поцілувала дитину в лоба.
<b>die <u>of</u></b> померти (від)	<b>The soldier died of severe burns.</b> Солдат помер від важких опіків. <b>He died of heart attack.</b> Він помер від інфаркту.
<b>suffer <u>from</u></b> страждати (чимось)	<b>She is suffering from headaches.</b> Вона страждає на головний біль.
<b>be sick <u>with</u></b> хворіти (чимось)	<b>She is sick with diabetes.</b> Вона хворіє на діабет.
Розглянемо спрямованість дії на об'єкт. Прийменник " <b>at</b> ":	
<b>to aim <u>at</u></b> цілитися (в); <b>to shoot <u>at</u></b> стріляти (в)	<b>The terrorist aimed at the policeman but didn't shoot at him.</b> Терорист прицілювся в полісмена, але не вистрілив у нього.
<b>to get angry <u>at</u></b> розсердитися (на)	<b>My teacher got angry at me when I cut the lesson.</b> Моя вчителька розсердилася на мене, коли я зірвав заняття.
<b>be mad <u>at</u></b> розсердитися (на)	<b>Do you know why she is mad at me?</b> Чи не знаєте ви, чому вона сердита на мене?
<b>point <u>at</u></b> спрямовувати (на), вказувати (на)	<b>Don't point at people – it's rude.</b> Не показуй (пальцем) на людей – це нечемно.
<b>smile <u>at</u></b> усміхатися (до)	<b>She smiled at the baby.</b> Вона всміхнулася дитині.
<b>throw <u>at</u></b> кидати (в)	<b>He threw a stone at her.</b> Він кинув в неї камінь.
<b>throw <u>to</u></b> кидати (комусь)	<b>He threw the ball to her.</b> Він кинув їй м'яча.
<b>shout <u>at</u></b> кричати (на)	<b>Stop shouting at me!</b> Перестаньте кричати на мене!
<b>shout <u>to</u></b> кричати (до когось, комусь)	<b>He shouted to us that we should call the police.</b> Він крикнув нам, що ми повинні викликати поліцію.
<b>belong <u>to</u></b> належати (комусь)	<b>This house belongs to my brother.</b> Цей будинок належить моєму брату.

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

<b>belong <u>in</u></b> перекладається зворотом “йому місце (в)”	<b>This box <i>belongs in</i> the basement.</b> Ця коробка має стояти в підвалі. <b>This guy <i>belongs in</i> jail.</b> Цьому чоловікові місце у в'язниці.
<b>borrow <u>from</u></b> позичати	<b>I'll have to <i>borrow 5 dollars from</i> you.</b> Мені доведеться позичити у вас п'ять доларів. <b>She <i>borrowed the car from</i> me.</b> Вона позичила мою машину.
<b>invite <u>to</u></b> запрошувати (на)	<b>She <i>invited us to</i> the party.</b> Вона запросила нас на вечірку.
<b>complain <u>about</u></b> жалітися (на), нарікати (на)	<b>She <i>always complains about</i> her health.</b> Вона завжди скаржиться на своє здоров'я.
<b>depend <u>on</u></b> залежати (від) Інколи це дієслово винятково вживається без прийменника	<b>Now <i>everything depends on</i> you.</b> Тепер все залежить від вас. <b>Will you go with us? - It <i>depends</i>.</b> Чи поїдете ви з нами? - Важко сказати. (або: Це залежить від обставин.).

В англійській мові прийменник може закінчувати не тільки питальне, але й стверджувальне речення:

<b>This is the house that I <u>told</u> you <u>about</u>.</b>	Це той будинок, <u>про</u> який я вам <u>говорив</u> .
<b>I know what I'm <u>talking</u> <u>about</u>.</b>	Я знаю, <u>про що</u> <u>говорю</u> .
<b>I know the woman whom you were <u>talking</u> <u>to</u>.</b>	Я знаю жінку з якою ви <u>розмовляли</u> .
<b>I like the restaurant which we normally <u>go</u> <u>to</u>.</b>	Мені подобається ресторан, <u>куди</u> ми зазвичай <u>ходимо</u> .
<b>He found the letter that he was <u>looking</u> <u>for</u>.</b>	Він знайшов лист, який <u>шукав</u> .

Дієслова **talk (to; with)**, **speak (to; with)** вживаються з двома прийменниками, різниці практично немає. Американський варіант англійської мови надає перевагу прийменнику “to”, однак, не плутайте його з часткою, яка стоїть перед дієсловом (інфінітивом):

<b>Whom do you want <u>to talk</u> <u>to</u>?</b>	З ким ви хочете <u>поговорити</u> ?
<b>It was nice <u>talking</u> <u>to</u> you.</b>	Приємно було <u>поговорити</u> з вами.
<b>Could I <u>speak</u> <u>to</u> the manager, please?</b>	Чи можу я <u>поговорити</u> з менеджером?

Прийменник **by** тісно пов'язаний з групою іменників. Наприклад: їхати на чомусь:

- to go by train** їхати на поїзді;
- to go by taxi** їхати на таксі;
- to go by bus** їхати на автобусі.

У відповідних зворотах української та англійської мов вживаються різні прийменники. Наведемо кілька прикладів “яскравої” невідповідності:

- in the East (South, etc.)** на сході (півдні і т.д.);
- in the rain** під дощем;

**to be in the money** бути при грошах;  
**in the tree** на дереві;  
**in the picture** на картині;  
**in the fresh air** на свіжому повітрі;  
**for this reason** з цієї причини.

Ці звороти потрібно запам'ятати:

**an excellent mark on the exam** н'ятірка з екзамену;  
**exception to the rules** виняток із правил;  
**to learn by heart** вивчити напам'ять;  
**play on words** гра слів;  
**a program on the radio** передача по радіо;  
**on TV** по телебаченню;  
**plans for the evening** плани на вечір;  
**I did it on principle.** Я зробив це з принципу.  
**I did it on purpose.** Я зробив це навмисне.

Особливо важким є вживання прийменника **at**:

<b><u>at</u> any cost</b>	будь-якою ціною: <b>You must do it <u>at</u> any cost.</b> Ти повинен це зробити - кров з носу.
<b><u>at</u> high speed</b>	на великій швидкості;
<b><u>at</u> my expense</b>	за мій рахунок;
<b><u>at</u> a right angle</b>	під прямим кутом;
<b><u>at</u> your own risk</b>	на твій ризик;
<b><u>at</u> his request</b>	на його прохання.

Розглянемо еквівалентність значень деяких слів: чому перемогу можна тільки здобути, а поразку зазнати; чому роль можна грати, відігравати, значення мати, а висновки і компліменти робити? Чому англійське слово **to pay**, що означає платити, сполучається з такими непоєднуваними, з погляду нашої мови, словами як **attention** увага, **visit** візит, відвідування, **compliments** комплімент, поздоровлення? Чому такі сполучення як **висока трава**, **міцний чай**, **сильний дощ** по-англійськи звучать, як „довга трава” **long grass**, **сильний чай** **strong tea**, „важкий дощ” **heavy rain**?

Переклад слів за допомогою словника, що містить еквіваленти значень слів, інколи заплутує, провокуючи на вживання іноземних слів у звичних контекстах іноземної мови, а ці контексти рідко збігаються.

Наприклад, поширене слово **книжка** і його еквівалент. В англо-українських словниках це слово входить до складу багатьох сталих сполучень. Лише в одному з них воно перекладається словом **книжка**:

**a book on / about birds** книжка про життя птахів;  
**a reference book** довідник;  
**a cheque book** чекова книжка;  
**a ration book** картки;

**to do book** вести рахунки;

**our order books are full** ми більше не приймаємо замовлень;

**to be in smb's good (bad) book** бути на гарному (поганому) рахунку;

**I can read her like a book** я бачу її наскрізь;

**we must go by the book** треба діяти за правилами.

Отже, кожне слово в кожній мові має своє, властиве тільки їй, коло сполучуваності. Іншими словами, воно сполучається з одними словами і не сполучається з іншими.

Деякі звороти дієслів з прийменниками, як наприклад: **get along** жити; **make up** зробити – навіть змінюють значення дієслова, тому їх називають дієслівними ідіомами або „післяслівниками” (в англійській мові на відміну від української прийменник може стояти і в кінці речення). Ці дієслівні ідіоми ми розглянемо пізніше.

Деякі з таких дієслів вживаються з цілою групою однотипних об'єктів:

**to play tennis (basketball, etc.)** грати в теніс (баскетбол і т.д.);

**to play cards** грати в карти;

**to play guitar (violin, etc.)** грати на гітарі (скрипці і т.д.);

**to hit in (some part of the body)** бити по (якійсь частині тіла):

**The goalie hit the forward in the leg.** Воратар вдарив нападаючого по нозі.

**to read cards** гадати на картах.

## 2. Stable Word-Combinations

Третя група слів – стійкі словосполучення, які не допускають заміни слів:

<b>be interested in</b> цікавитись	<b>They are interested in the computer equipment.</b> Їх цікавить комп'ютерне обладнання.
<b>be different from</b> відрізнятися	<b>It is very different from the sample.</b> Це дуже відрізняється від зразка.
<b>be sorry about</b> вибачатися	<b>I am sorry about the mistakes.</b> Вибачте мене за помилки.
<b>be married to (to get married)</b> бути одруженим	<b>She was married to John.</b> Вона одружилась з Джоном.
<b>wait for</b> чекати	<b>He waited me for an hour.</b> Він чекав на мене годину.
<b>look out</b> бути обережним	<b>Look out in the street!</b> Будь обережним на вулиці!
<b>hold on</b> залишатись на зв'язку (не вішати телефонну трубку)	<b>Please, hold on a moment.</b> Зачекайте хвилину, не кладіть трубку.
<b>carry on</b> продовжувати	<b>Carry on working.</b> Продовжуйте працювати.
<b>wake up</b> прокидатися	<b>I wake up at seven o'clock.</b> Я прокидаюсь о сьомій ранку.
<b>grow up</b> вирости	<b>What does your son want to do when he grows up?</b> Ким хоче бути твій син, коли виросте?
<b>get up</b> вставати з ліжка	<b>He got up in the evening.</b> Він встав з ліжка ввечері.
<b>speak up</b> говорити голосніше	<b>I can not hear you. Can you speak up?</b> Я тебе не чую. Чи не міг би ти говорити голосніше?
<b>wash up</b> мити посуд	<b>Please, wash up after dinner.</b> Будь ласка, помий посуд після обіду.

### 3. Grammar Exercises

#### 1. Translate sentences using the prepositions and the postpositions

1. I knocked over a vase.
2. I want those papers. Don't throw them away.
3. Please, put out the cigarette.
4. We have run out of sugar.
5. They set out for the mountains at dawn.
6. He is always boasting of his money.
7. They complaint of lack of information.
8. I jumped at the opportunity to make her acquaintance.
9. She quickly glanced at her watch.
10. I'll ask him to see to the tickets.
11. The house teems with mice.
12. Do you smoke? No, I gave it up two years ago.

#### 2. Translate the following English sentences into Ukrainian and Ukrainian sentences into English

1. I prefer to go by train.
2. He likes to be in the money.
3. It is exception to the rules.
4. Have you plans for the evening?
5. I did it at his request.
6. Він дивиться на дітей.
7. Ми сміємось з тебе.
8. Він грає в теніс.
9. Я повинен це зробити не дивлячись ні на що (кров із носу).
10. Він душа товариства.

#### 3. Insert the proper preposition

1. Bill isn't very good ... physics, but he is excellent ... languages.
2. Mary isn't interested ... football at all. But she is keen ... dancing.
3. Their children have always been polite ... us.
4. It's so kind ... you to give us a lift.
5. Jim's parents are often upset ... his marks.
6. Despite they are brothers; they are quite different ... each other.
7. Your handwriting is similar ... mine.
8. Our city is famous ... its historical sights.
9. She has been happily married ... John for two years.
10. I am not pleased ... my progress in Chemistry.
11. Our son has entered the university. We've proud ... him.
12. Last week our tutor wasn't satisfied ... our class.
13. It's silly ... him to be from school so often.

#### 4. Choose the correct answers in these sentences

1. Hi! I am a student \_\_\_\_\_ Seaford School.



- a) for b) at c) about d) into
2. I am really \_\_\_\_ pop music.  
a) about b) for c) into d) to
3. He likes sport and he is good \_\_\_\_ hockey.  
a) for b) at c) about d) into
4. What \_\_\_\_ you?  
a) about b) for c) into d) to
5. Send a photo \_\_\_\_ you have got one.  
a) for b) at c) about d) if
6. Bye \_\_\_\_ now!  
a) about b) for c) into d) to

**5. Write questions and short answers. Use the present continuous. For example: you / write an e-mail – YES – Are you writing an e-mail? Yes, I am.**

1. the / climate change – YES
2. tigers / become extinct – YES
3. you / talk to Billy – NO
4. that female bear / protect its baby – YES
5. we / learn new vocabulary – YES
6. your friends / run in the park now – NO
7. Jack / look for his book – NO
8. her parents / play tennis at the moment – YES

## Practice 42

### Revision

### Test 9

#### 1. Translate into English

1. Мої діти граються в саду.
2. Він живе на другому поверсі.
3. Місто на річці Міссісіпі.
4. Він стоїть біля дверей.
5. Зустрічаємось у театрі.
6. Ви можете побачити розклад на вокзалі.
7. В Німеччині діти отримують подарунки на Великдень.
8. Я завжди вранці добре себе почуваю.
9. Олена зараз не на роботі, тому що вона у відпустці.
10. Деякі люди весь час розмовляють про свою роботу.

**2. Insert the proper postposition and translate into Ukrainian: forx3, through, like, ofx2, to, as, at,**

1. What music are you listening \_\_\_\_ ?
2. She was afraid \_\_\_\_ a dog.
3. What are you waiting \_\_\_\_ ?



4. He is *bad* \_\_\_ mathematics.
5. This dress is *made* \_\_\_ cotton.
6. Those people *care* \_\_\_ senior citizens.
7. I did not know that he *looks* \_\_\_ me.
8. Now she *looks* \_\_\_ a princess.
9. Her daughter *looks* \_\_\_ her mother.
10. My sister is a teacher. She often *looks* \_\_\_ the pupil's copybooks.

**3. Insert the proper postposition and translate into Ukrainian: *up, out, from, over, to, at, into***

1. Please, *put* \_\_\_ the cigarette.
2. I *gave* \_\_\_ smoking two years ago.
3. I *knocked* \_\_\_ a glass.
4. She is *suffering* \_\_\_ headaches.
5. He *threw* a stone \_\_\_ her.
6. A horrible thing *happened* \_\_\_ her.
7. He *translated* \_\_\_ English this story.
8. She *smiled* \_\_\_ the baby.
9. This house *belongs* \_\_\_ my brother.
10. She *invited* us \_\_\_ the party.

**4. Complete the sentences below with the words from the box. Three of the words cannot be used**

*muscular    vivid    scruffy    confused    bald    skeptical*  
*relieved    curious    clean-shaved    vague    nostalgic*

1. We were all very \_\_\_\_\_ when she arrived home safely at midnight.
2. What's happened to your beard? I have never seen you \_\_\_\_\_ before.
3. I have got really \_\_\_\_\_ memories of my childhood. I can remember every detail.
4. Monica is a very \_\_\_\_\_ person. She never believes anything people tell her.
5. Jim has become quite \_\_\_\_\_ in his arms and legs since he started going to the gym.
6. Looking through my old photo albums has made me feel really \_\_\_\_\_ .
7. You can't go to the interview in those \_\_\_\_\_ clothes. You need to look smart.
8. My father said I should go to university, but my brother told me it was a waste of time, so I was quite \_\_\_\_\_ about what to do.

**5. Choose the correct variant**

1.	a)	She come home early.
	b)	She not comes home early.
	c)	She don't come home early.
	d)	She doesn't come home early.
2	a)	You often play basketball?
	b)	Do you often play basketball?
	c)	Is you often play basketball?
	d)	Are you often play basketball?

3.	a)	How much does cost it for the return ticket?
	b)	How much for the return ticket does it cost?
	c)	How much does it cost for the return ticket?
	d)	How does much it cost for the return ticket?
4.	a)	We always go abroad for our holidays.
	b)	Always we go abroad for our holidays.
	c)	We go always abroad for our holidays.
	d)	We go abroad always for our holidays.
5.	a)	We enjoy the theatre, but we don't go very often there.
	b)	We enjoy the theatre, but we don't very often go there.
	c)	We enjoy the theatre, but very often we don't go there.
	d)	We enjoy the theatre, but we don't go there very often.
6.	a)	The next train leaves in the morning at two fifteen.
	b)	The next train leaves at two fifteen in the morning.
	c)	The next train at two fifteen in the morning leaves.
	d)	At two fifteen in the morning the next train leaves.

### Practice 43

#### Text "City and Country Life"

##### Read the text "City and Country Life"

*Chris Duncan is a 35-year-old doctor who lives in London, but spends most weekends in the summers at a cottage in the village of Ireton Wood. He says:*

"For me the life in the country is wonderful – all this fresh air and singing of the birds! If I could afford it, I'd give up my practice in London and come to live here all the year round. I am tired of the city with its pollution and traffic and the people rushing about from place to place without the time to think and look around. Every time I wake up in the cottage and look out and see the flowers and the grass and the magnificent line of trees on the hill over there, I feel it's good to be alive. Whereas in London it's depressing. Standing in queues, waiting for the buses and then being stuck in the underground like sardines. There are so many people that you can't breathe. And everyone is in such a rush!

What I like most about the country is that everyone knows everyone else, and they are friendly. In the city if you live in a block of flats, like me you can be there for years and never even get to know your neighbours. There are some in my block I have never seen. There is a lot more crime and violence in the city than in the country. Of course, the life in London is exciting but people don't go out every night there, because they can't afford it."

##### Vocabulary

**afford** [ə'fɔ:d] *мати можливість, могли (зробити що-небудь); дозволити собі*

**give up** відмовитися (від роботи, пропозиції); кинути (звичку); залишити  
**pollution** [pə'lu:ʃ(ə)n] забруднення; забруднення навколишнього середовища  
**traffic** ['træfik] рух, повідомлення; транспорт  
**rush** [rʌʃ] кидатися, прямувати, направлятися; нестися; мчати щодуху  
**magnificent** [mæg'nifis(ə)nt] чудовий; пишній; величний  
**queue** [kju:] черга  
**block of flats** багатоквартирний будинок  
**violence** ['vaɪələns] насильство, примус  
**exciting** [ik'saitɪŋ] збуджуючий, хвилюючий; захоплюючий

*Alan Sumner, aged 22, is the son of Ireton Wood farmer. He has a different view on the city and country life.*

“For my Dad and me, the country isn’t a matter of looking out of the window at the trees. It’s a bit different if you had to get up at five in the morning, with snow on the ground, to milk the cows. And all the time you have to watch the weather! And your neighbours! Some of them are not worth knowing at all. Take the Cartwrights, for instance. Old Jack Cartwright won’t even tell you the time without expecting you to pay him something, and as far for his wife, well, she sits there with her nose pressed to the window all day spying on everyone... You will tell me that there are gossips in the city too. Maybe, but not like Mrs. Cartwright. If you say “Hello” to a girl in this village it will get around to everyone in about to hours thanks to her, and the next thing you know someone will come up and ask you when you are going to get married! That’s the trouble with the country. Always the same faces and you can’t get away from them. I would like to live in the city and meet some interesting people. All right, I admit we have got less crime. It is a quite life. But there is nothing to do here. We have not cinemas, theatres, museums, exhibitions, cafés, restaurants, supermarkets, big shopping centres and etc. I am sure, you would soon get fed up with Ireton Wood if you had to live here all the year round.”

### Vocabulary

**worth** [wɜ:θ] вартий, що заслуговує (чого-н.); що має значення  
**for instance** наприклад  
**gossip** ['gɒsɪp] балаканина, розмови; плітка; чутки; вигадки  
**maybe** ['meɪbi] може бути; можливо  
**trouble** [trʌb(ə)l] неприємність, біда, горе; напасті  
**same** той самий, цей же  
**admit** [əd'mɪt] визнавати, допускати  
**exhibition** [eksɪ'biʃ(ə)n] виставка; експонат(и)

*Samuel Oaks, is a 43-year-old farmer whose ancestors lived in the country all their lives.*

“The thing I like most about living on the farm is the change of seasons. Spring, summer, autumn and winter – you can see them all come and go, and each one is completely different. In the city you can’t tell the difference – you can buy summer flowers in winter and eat the same vegetables all the year round. Here in the country you only eat things at certain times of the year – for example, strawberries in June

and turnips in winter. You live with the season. Also we make most of our food. We make butter and cheese; we grow our own vegetables and bake our own bread. We never eat frozen or tinned food. Everything is fresh – so it must be better for you. City people may think we miss a lot of good things about modern life, but in my opinion they miss real life.”

### Vocabulary

**ancestor** ['ænsəstə, 'ænsɛstə] *предок, прабадько*

**completely** [kəm'pli:tli] *зовсім, повністю, цілком*

**strawberry** ['strɔ:b(ə)ri] *суниця, полуниця*

**turnip** ['tɜ:nɪp] *турнепс, ріпа*

**bake** [beɪk] *пекти, випікати; запікати*

**frozen food** *заморожені продукти*

**tinned food** *консервовані продукти*

**fresh** [freʃ] *свіжий, натуральний; неконсервований*

**miss** [mɪs] *пропустити; пройти мимо; не помітити*

*Samuel's daughter Alex, is 15 and she doesn't agree with his father.*

“I hate living on the farm. I have to travel 15 miles to school every day in any weather. If I want to go out at weekends, I have to go 20 miles to the nearest town, but the last bus is really early. I would prefer to live in the city with good shops and places to go. I never do anything here but work helping my parents about the farm. I can't wait to leave home and get a job in town. I will never be a farmer's wife!”

*John Williams is 28 and he lives in Hampstead, about 5 km from the centre of London.*

“Life is fast here and there is always something to do – cinemas, theatres, restaurants. Shopping is fantastic – you can buy anything you want in London, shops are often open late in the evening and on Sundays. I like the pubs – many have music in the evening. The street markets are great and I like London's parks too. Lots of people in London don't have gardens so it's good to get out for a walk. There are bad things about London, too, of course. There are too many people; you have to queue for everything – in the banks, supermarkets, post offices. And it's true that London is dirty – people just throw things in the street and I hate that. It's also very noisy and there is too much traffic. But I still prefer London to any other place I know.”

*Sheila Brooks is 25, she is a young school teacher and lives in a small village called Henfield with a population about 500 people.*

“I love it because it's quite and life is slow and easy. You never have to queue in shops or banks. The village is clean – the people look after it and don't throw their rubbish in the streets. The air is clean too because there is not much heavy traffic. It's much more friendly here than in a city. Everyone knows everyone and if someone has a problem there are always people who can help. There are not many things that I don't like about Henfield. One thing is that there isn't much to do in the evenings – we have not got any cinemas or theatres. The other problem is that people gossip –

you know, in small places people always talk about each other and everyone knows that everyone is doing. But I still prefer village life to life in a big city.”

**Vocabulary**

**rubbish** [rʌbɪʃ] *сміття, мотлох*

*Trudie Pollock, a London psychiatrist speaks about one more city problem.*

“I see many people with the same problem – they are lonely. They don’t usually say they are lonely – instead they say they have problems with their jobs, their home life, they say they can’t sleep or work well or that they are unhappy. But when I speak to them I find it is often because they don’t know enough people to spend time with or they find it difficult to meet people. There are thousands of people like this in London – students away from their families for the first time, young people who moved to London to work, mothers with young children, old people living alone. These people don’t need hospitals or drugs, they need other people. I help them to think how they can meet other people and make friends. Others can learn something new – a new language, yoga, cooking – go to evening classes and meet people there. Young mothers can join “mother and baby” clubs and there are social clubs for old people. There are lots of ways to meet people in London, and my job is often just giving them information and advice.”

**Vocabulary**

**psychiatrist** [sai'kaiətrɪst] *психіатр*

**lonely** ['ləʊnli] *самотний*

**instead** [ɪn'sted] *замість*

**enough** [ɪ'nʌf] *достатня кількість*

**alone** [ə'ləʊn] *один, самотний; на самоті*

**evening classes** *вечірні курси*

**advice** [əd'vaɪs] *порада; консультація (юриста, лікаря)*

**1. Answer the questions**

1. What main problem is in London?
2. Why does the young doctor want to give up his practice in London?
3. What is Sheila Brooks?
4. Why is the life in London depressing?
5. Why does Alan Sumner want to live in the city?
6. What is Jack Cartwright?
7. What does Samuel Oaks think about the life in the village?
8. What does a London psychiatrist say about London’s people?
9. What do the city people miss according to Samuel Oaks’s opinion ?
10. What is Chris Duncan?
11. What can you say about Samuel’s daughter Alex?
12. Why does John Williams like to live in Hampstead?
13. How does Samuel Oaks live in the country?
14. What things does not Sheila Brooks like about Henfield?
15. What opinion has Chris Duncan about the life in the country?



## 2. Find in the text

викидають сміття на вулицю -  
найближче місто -  
купити літні квіти -  
тобі потрібно стояти в черзі -  
потрібно прокинутися о 5 ранку -  
їм потрібно спілкування з іншими людьми -  
спокійне життя -  
я не можу дочекатися -  
місто з його забрудненням і дорожнім рухом -  
спостерігаючи за кожним -  
вони самотні -  
велична лінія дерев -  
не варто знати -  
очікування автобусів -  
вуличні ринки -  
знати своїх сусідів -  
плітки людей -  
проблема села -  
ріпу взимку -

## 3. Read the following sentences and tell what are *true* and *false*

1. Samuel Oaks and his family make butter and cheese; they grow their own vegetables and bake their own bread.
2. Samuel's daughter Alex says that she will never be a farmer's wife.
3. There are some neighbours in the block of Chris Duncan he has never seen.
4. A 43-year-old farmer Samuel Oaks thinks that he can see change of seasons, how they all come and go, and each one is completely different.
5. Alan Sumner is the brother of Ireton Wood farmer.
6. John Williams is 48 and he lives in Henfield.
7. When Trudie Pollock speaks to people with problems he finds that these people don't know enough people to spend time with.
8. Sheila Brooks says that she loves life in the country because it's quite, slow and easy.
9. Old Jack Cartwright won't even tell you the time without expecting you to pay him something.
10. Standing in queues, waiting for the buses and then being stuck in the underground like salmon.
11. Chris Duncan spends some weekends in the winters at the hotel in the village of Ireton Wood.

## 4. Find all Pronouns in the text and determine their group



**5. Fill in the table writing out all arguments (Pros and Cons) Chris, Alan, John, Sheila, Samuel, Alex and Trudie use for and against country and city life. Add your arguments. Some arguments are given as examples**

Pros of the country life	Cons of the country life	Pros of the city life	Cons of the city life
fresh air	hard work	less gossip	crowds of people

**6. Write the questions and short answers about you in the past simple. For example: *have a big breakfast – Did you have a big breakfast? No, I did not.***

1. *meet a friend last night -*
2. *go to town on Saturday -*
3. *make a pizza last night -*
4. *write an e-mail yesterday -*
5. *have coffee at breakfast -*
6. *see a film on TV -*
7. *bake a tart last month -*
8. *play tennis on Sunday -*

**7. Reread the text “City and Country Life” and do the test**

1. Trudie Pollock, a London psychiatrist speaks that he sees many people with the same problem – they are \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) merry      b) unfriendly      c) lonely
2. Alan Sumner thinks that you would soon \_\_\_\_ with Ireton Wood if you had to live here all the year round.  
a) get tired      b) get fed up      c) get upset
3. Chris Duncan is a \_\_\_\_\_ who lives in London.  
a) 34-year-old doctor      b) 39-year-old engineer      c) 35-year-old doctor
4. Samuel Oaks is a \_\_\_\_\_ whose ancestors lived in the country all their lives.  
a) 43-year-old farmer      b) 39-year-old engineer      c) 35-year-old doctor
5. Alex hates \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) living in town      b) living in a village      c) living on the farm
6. Samuel Oaks says that they never eat \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) simple and taste food      b) exotic fruits      c) frozen or tinned food
7. John Williams lives in Hampstead, about \_\_\_\_\_ from the centre of London.  
a) 15 km      b) 50 km      c) 5 km
8. Sheila Brooks, a young school teacher \_\_\_\_\_ living in a small village.  
a) hates      b) speaks      c) likes
9. Chris Duncan supposes that London it’s \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) exciting      b) depressing      c) incredible
10. Samuel’s daughter Alex can’t wait \_\_\_\_\_ and get a job in town.  
a) to stay at home on the farm      b) to leave home      c) to live in town

## Practice 44 Grammar: Modal Verbs

В англійській мові є група дієслів **can, could, may, must, ought to, have to, be able to, should, will, would, need, dare**, які називаються модальними. Ці дієслова не мають усіх основних форм, властивим іншим дієсловам, і тому вони ще називаються недостатніми (**Defective Verbs**):

1) модальні дієслова не мають **форми інфінітиву, 3 особи однини, майбутнього часу**, а деякі – **форми минулого часу**;

2) модальні дієслова не вживаються самостійно, а лише в сполученні з інфінітивом іншого дієслова. Після модальних дієслів не вживається частка **to**, за виключенням **have to** та **ought to**:

**I can speak English.** *Я можу розмовляти англійською.*

**She must do it.** *Вона повинна зробити це.*

3) питальні та заперечні речення модальні дієслова утворюють самостійно, без допомоги допоміжних дієслів:

**May I come in?** *Чи можна мені увійти?*

**What can you see in the picture?** *Що ти бачиш на малюнку? (можеш бачити)*

Модальні дієслова не виражають дію або стан, а лише **можливість, необхідність, бажаність, імовірність, сумнів, дозвіл, заборону, здатність виконання дії**, позначеної інфінітивом.

### 1. Modal Verb CAN

CAN		
1) фізична або розумова здатність, вміння:	<b>I <u>can</u> speak English.</b>	<i>Я розмовляю (<u>вмію</u> розмовляти) англійською.</i>
	<b>He <u>can't</u> swim.</b>	<i>Він <u>не вміє</u> плавати.</i>
2) можливість:	<b>I <u>can't</u> call him.</b>	<i>Я <u>не можу</u> йому зателефонувати. (не працює телефон)</i>
3) можливість у майбутньому:	<b>I <u>can</u> do it tomorrow.</b>	<i>Я зроблю (<u>зможу</u> зробити) це завтра.</i>
4) прохання, пропозиція:	<b><u>Can</u> I help you?</b>	<i>Чим я <u>можу</u> Вам допомогти?</i>
5) дозвіл, пропозиція:	<b>You <u>can</u> take it.</b>	<i>Ви <u>можете</u> це взяти.</i>
6) заборона:	<b>You <u>can't</u> take it.</b>	<i>Це брати <u>не можна</u>.</i>

Заперечна форма вказує на неймовірність дії:

**He can't tell lies.** *Він нездатний говорити неправду.*

**He can't have told.** *Не може бути (неймовірно), щоб він це сказав.*

## 2. Modal Verb **COULD**

COULD		
1) здатність у минулому:	She <b>could</b> play the piano, when she was little.	Вона <u>вміла</u> грати на піаніно, коли була маленькою.
2) можливість у майбутньому:	We <b>could</b> take a taxi.	Ми <u>могли би</u> взяти таксі.
3) ввічливе прохання:	<b>Could</b> you help me?	Чи не <u>могли би</u> Ви мені допомогти?
4) імовірність у теперішньому або майбутньому:	He <b>could</b> be in the pool now.	Він, <u>можливо</u> , зараз у басейні.

Дієслова *can/could* у заперечній формі *can't/couldn't* вживаються у сталих словосполученнях:

*can't/couldn't help (doing)* не можу утриматись від; не можу не робити (чогось);

*can't/couldn't do smth* нічого іншого не залишається, як зробити (щось);

*She can't help crying.* Вона не може не плакати.

*He couldn't help laughing.* Він не може утриматись від сміху.

*I can't but ask him about it.* Нічого іншого не залишається, як запитати його про це.

*They couldn't but refuse him.* Нічого іншого не залишається, як відмовити йому.

## 3. Modal Verb **BE ABLE TO**

BE ABLE TO		
1) здатність, можливість у минулому:	They <b>were not able to</b> answer all the questions.	Вони не змогли відповісти на всі запитання.
2) здатність, можливість у майбутньому:	We <b>will not be able to</b> come.	Ми не зможемо прийти.

## 4. Modal Verb **MAY**

MAY		
1) можливість, імовірність у теперішньому або минулому:	He <b>may</b> be at home now.	Він <u>може</u> бути вдома зараз.
2) ввічливе прохання, пропозиція:	<b>May</b> I help you?	Чи я <u>можу</u> Вам допомогти?
3) дозвіл:	You <b>may</b> take it.	Ви <u>можете</u> взяти це.

## 5. Modal Verb **MIGHT**

MIGHT		
можливість, імовірність у теперішньому або майбутньому:	The bag <b>might</b> be hers.	Ця сумка, <u>можливо</u> її.
	It <b>might</b> snow tonight.	Сьогодні ввечері, <u>можливо</u> піде сніг.

### 6. Modal Verb **MUST**

MUST		
1) необхідність, обов'язок:	I <b>must</b> apologize.	Я <u>повинен</u> вибачитися.
2) імовірність, впевненість:	You <b>must</b> have a lot of friends.	У вас, <u>мабуть</u> , ( <u>напевно</u> ) чимало друзів.

### 7. Modal Verb **HAD TO**

HAD TO		
необхідність у минулому:	He <b>had to</b> return to home.	Він <u>повинен був</u> повернутися додому.

### 8. Modal Verb **HAVE TO**

HAVE TO		
1) необхідність у теперішньому або майбутньому у силу обставин:	I <b>have to</b> work tomorrow. He <b>has to</b> be careful.	Я <u>повинен</u> працювати завтра. Він <u>повинен</u> бути обережним.
2) відсутність необхідності:	You don't <b>have to</b> hurry.	Вам <u>не потрібно</u> поспішати.

### 9. Modal Verbs **SHOULD** and **OUGHT TO**

SHOULD та OUGHT TO			
необхідність порада:	як	You <b>should</b> see a doctor.	Вам <u>слід</u> звернутися до лікаря.
		You <b>should</b> take it.	Вам <u>слід</u> це взяти.
		You <b>ought to</b> call home.	Вам <u>слід</u> зателефонувати додому.
		She <b>ought to</b> be careful.	Їй <u>слід</u> бути обережною.

### 10. Modal Verb **BE TO + Infinitive**

BE TO + Infinitive		
необхідність здійснити дію згідно попередньої домовленості / плану:	He <b>is to come</b> here tomorrow.	Він <u>повинен прийти</u> завтра сюди.
	The goods <b>are to be delivered</b> next week.	Товари <u>повинні бути доставлені</u> наступного тижня.

### WAS, WERE TO + Indefinite Infinitive

дія, яка повинна була здійснитися в минулому:	I <b>was to sent</b> him a letter, but I forgot.	Я <u>повинен був</u> надіслати йому листа, але забув.
	The goods <b>were to be delivered</b> last week.	Товари <u>повинні були бути доставлені</u> минулого тижня.

### WAS, WERE TO + Perfect Infinitive

дія, яка повинна була би здійснитися в минулому, але не здійснилася:	The contract <b>was to have been signed</b> last week.	Контракт <u>повинен був підписаний</u> минулого тижня. (але не підписаний)
		Товари <u>повинні були бути доставлені</u> минулого тижня.

### BE TO + Infinitive in Passive Voice

виражає можливість:	також	Such books <b>are to be found</b> in all libraries.	Такі книги <u>можна знайти</u> в усіх бібліотеках.
---------------------	-------	---	--

11. Modal Verb DARE

DARE		
вживається у якості модального дієслова із значенням <i>боятися</i> або <i>мати сміливість</i> <i>щось зробити</i> :	I hardly <b>dare tell</b> him what happened.	<i>Навряд чи я зможу розказати йому, що сталося.</i>

Розглянемо декілька найбільш уживаних у повсякденній мові модальних дієслів.

<b>can</b>	You <b>can</b> use the printer.	Ти <b>вмієш</b> користуватися принтером.	<b>фізична здатність</b>
<b>may</b>	You <b>may</b> use the printer.	Тобі <b>дозволено</b> користуватися принтером.	<b>дозвіл</b>

Обидва модальні дієслова **can**, **may** можна перекладати однаково – *можеш*. Але є невелика різниця:

<b>Can</b> фізична здатність людини	<b>May</b> дозвіл на щось
<b>I can speak Spanish.</b> Я <i>вмію</i> розмовляти іспанською мовою.	<b>May I take your pen?</b> Чи <i>можна</i> мені взяти твою ручку?
<b>I can not speak German.</b> Я не <i>вмію</i> розмовляти німецькою мовою.	<b>May I go out?</b> Чи <i>можна</i> мені вийти?
<b>I can see.</b> Я <i>можу</i> бачити.	<b>May I come in?</b> Чи <i>можна</i> мені увійти?

Наведемо простий приклад: уявіть собі ситуацію: Бабуся напекла велику миску пиріжків.

Онука питає у бабусі: “**May I eat all these cakes?** Чи *можна* мені з’їсти всі пиріжки (чи *дозволено* мені)?” Бабуся відповідає: “**Yes, you may if you can.** Так, ти *можеш*, якщо *зможеш*.” (іншими словами „Я тобі *дозволю*, якщо ти *зможеш* з’їсти все.”).

<b>must</b>	You <b>must</b> use the printer.	Ти <b>повинен</b> користуватися принтером.	<b>наказ</b>
<b>should</b>	You <b>should</b> use the printer.	Тобі <b>слід</b> користуватися принтером.	<b>порада</b>

Модальні дієслова **must** та **should** також можна перекласти однаково – *повинен*. Але:

<b>Must</b> <i>повинен як наказ</i>	<b>Should</b> <i>повинен як порада, слід</i>
<b>You must do it.</b> Ти <i>повинен</i> зробити це.	<b>You should do it.</b> Тобі <i>слід</i> зробити це.
<b>It must be Mr. Smith.</b> Це <i>має</i> бути містер Сміт.	<b>You should be more attentive.</b> Вам <i>слід</i> бути уважнішим.

## 12. Constructions with Modal Verbs

USED TO + Infinitive <i>колись, звичайно</i>	
<b>I <u>used to think</u> that all people were good.</b>	<i>Колись я вважав, що всі люди хороші.</i>
<b>She <u>used to return</u> by the last train.</b>	<i>Вона <u>завичай</u> поверталася останнім потягом.</i>
TO BE USED TO + дієслово з <i>-ing</i> -закінченням <i>звикнути:</i>	
<b>I <u>am not used to returning</u> so late.</b>	<i>Я не <u>звик</u> повертатися так пізно.</i>
<b>She <u>is used to getting up</u> early.</b>	<i>Вона <u>звикла</u> рано вставати.</i>

## 13. Grammar Exercises

### 1. Translate into English

1. Він не вмів грати на гітарі.
2. Я можу розмовляти іспанською мовою.
3. Вона вміла грати в теніс, коли була в літньому таборі.
4. Це робити не можна.
5. Він зможе це зробити в суботу.
6. Вона може це взяти.
7. Не може бути, щоб він це зробив.
8. Її сестра не змогла написати правильні відповіді.
9. Він, можливо, зараз у бібліотеці.
10. Вона повинна прочитати 30 текстів.
11. Ми не можемо з ними поговорити.
12. Чи можна мені випити це?
13. Що ти бачиш на мапі?
14. Ймовірно, це її речі.
15. Вам слід звернутися до викладача.
16. Вони не можуть розмовляти польською мовою.

### 2. Translate into English

1. Ти не повинен цього робити.
2. Чи вміють вони друкувати?
3. Покажіть ваші права.
4. Тобі не слід палити.
5. Вони зазвичай робили це зранку.
6. Чи ти вмієш читати англійською мовою?
7. Вони не звикли читати великі тексти.
8. Не можна спізнюватися на заняття.
9. Колись ми думали, що він – лікар.

### 3. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences

1. T-shirt / has / to / Mark / a / wear / school / to / blue \_\_\_\_\_
2. day / have / make / boss / coffee / for / my / to / every / I \_\_\_\_\_
3. do / be / have / eighteen / a / you / to / buy / car / to? \_\_\_\_\_
4. they / 10 / not / to / get / do / home / before / have / o'clock \_\_\_\_\_
5. she / every / to / does / exercise / have / day? \_\_\_\_\_



**4. Choose the correct words**

1. *This / These* are my cousins, Joshua and Emily.
2. Is your food good? Yes, *this / these* pizza is fantastic!
3. *That / Those* DVDs are very expensive.
4. *This / These* girl is in my English class.
5. Hey, *this / these* shoes are cool!
6. Happy Birthday! *This / These* present is for you.

**5. Write questions in the past simple. Then match the questions with answers**

**a-f. For example:** *he / meet / his friends / last weekend* – ***Did he meet his friends last weekend?***

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>where / they / go / last night</i> –     | a) <i>No, he didn't.</i>               |
| 2. <i>when / she / buy / a computer</i> –      | b) <i>Yes, we did.</i>                 |
| 3. <i>what / you / have / for dinner</i> –     | c) <i>On Saturday.</i>                 |
| 4. <i>they / win / the match / last week</i>   | d) <i>Pizza.</i>                       |
| 5. <i>you / go / home / early / last night</i> | e) <i>No, they did not. They lost.</i> |
|  | f) <i>To the cinema.</i>               |

**Practice 45**

**Text: “The Place I Live in”**

**Vocabulary**

<b>village</b> село; селище	<b>multi-storeyed house</b> багатоповерховий будинок	<b>suburb</b> ['seɪz:b] пригород, передмістя, окраїна	<b>shopping centre</b> торговий центр
<b>country</b> країна	<b>province</b> ['prɒvɪns] провінція; периферія	<b>outskirts</b> передмістя	<b>peaceful atmosphere</b> мирна (спокійна) атмосфера
<b>settlement</b> поселення, селище	<b>traffic lights</b> світлофори	<b>housing estate</b> мікрорайон, жилий район	<b>well-kept park</b> парк, що утримується у порядку
<b>region</b> область	<b>bench</b> лава	<b>industrial area</b> промисловий район	<b>kitchen garden</b> город
<b>district</b> округ, район	<b>street lamp</b> вуличний ліхтар	<b>the City</b> фінансовий центр Лондона	<b>meadow</b> ['medəʊ] луг, лучка
<b>town</b> місто; містечко	<b>hedge</b> [hedʒ] (жива) огорожа, живопліт	<b>the country</b> село, сільська місцевість	<b>fence</b> огорожа
<b>city</b> місто; велике місто	<b>heavy traffic</b> великий транспортний рух	<b>industrial estate</b> індустріальний район	<b>block of flats</b> багатоквартирний будинок
<b>capital</b> столиця	<b>bush</b> [bʊʃ] кущ; чагарник	<b>picture galleries</b> мистецька галерея	<b>noisy crowd</b> шумний натовп
<b>metropolis</b> дуже велике місто	<b>underground crossing</b> підземний перехід	<b>unpolluted environment</b> незабруднене середовище	<b>bedroom district</b> спальний район

Practical Grammar of the English Language

<i>state</i> держава плавальний басейн	<i>traffic jam</i> дорожня пробка	<i>convenient bus service</i> зручне автобусне обслуговування	<i>vegetable garden</i> огоро́д
<i>field</i> поле	<i>pure water</i> чиста вода	<i>museum</i> музей	<i>rush hour</i> година пік, години пік
<i>orchard</i> ['ɔ:ʃəd] фруктовий сад	<i>hospital</i> лікарня	<i>theatre</i> театр	<i>avenue</i> ['ævinju:] авеню, проспект, широка вулиця
<i>swimming pool</i> плавальний басейн	<i>well</i> колодязь	<i>car park</i> парковка	<i>square</i> площа, майдан, сквер

**1. Project 5. “The Place I Live in” (city, town, suburb, outskirts, village, street). Use the following questions:**

1. What city / town / suburb / outskirts / village / street do you live in?
2. How long have you lived in this city / town / suburb / outskirts / village / street?
3. Is it in the centre of the city / town / suburb / outskirts / village / street?
4. Is your city / town / suburb / outskirts / village / street quiet or busy?
5. Is there heavy traffic during the day?
6. Are there any shops, shopping and entertaining centres, factories, plants, museums, art galleries, hospitals, swimming pools, offices in your city / town / suburb / outskirts / village / street?
7. Are there lakes, rivers, parks in your city / town / suburb / outskirts / village / street?
8. What monuments are in your city / town / suburb / outskirts / village / street?
9. Do you know about any famous people who live of lived in your city / town / suburb / outskirts / village / street?
10. What is your opinion about your city / town / suburb / outskirts / village / street?

**2. Complete the sentences with the words in the box**

<i>shopping centre</i>	<i>hospital</i>	<i>art gallery</i>	<i>café</i>
<i>bus station</i>	<i>river</i>	<i>car park</i>	<i>swimming pool</i>
<i>supermarket</i>	<i>offices</i>		

1. My friend Suzan has got a very bad leg. She is in \_\_\_\_ .
2. My sister’s dog likes swimming. It is in the \_\_\_\_ .
3. There are many \_\_\_\_ in this building.
4. We have not got any butter, meat, milk and bread. Let’s go to the \_\_\_\_ .
5. Their mother is interested in painting. We bought ticket in to the \_\_\_\_ for her.
6. The fantastic \_\_\_\_ is the near the \_\_\_\_.
7. You can go to any place from our town by bus. The big \_\_\_\_ is in town.
8. There are not any cars in the \_\_\_\_ .
9. Zlata Plaza is a very big \_\_\_\_ .

**3. Complete the sentences about your town / village. Use the words from the box**

*library restaurant train station monument university institution school church  
shopping centre hospital art gallery café bus station river lake park  
square trees flower beds underground crossing  
car park swimming pool supermarket offices block of flats building*

1. My town has got \_\_\_\_\_. 2. My house is near \_\_\_\_\_. 3. My school is next to \_\_\_\_\_. 4. There is \_\_\_\_\_ in my town / village. 5. There is not \_\_\_\_\_ in my town / village. 6. There are not any \_\_\_\_\_ here. 7. There are some \_\_\_\_\_. 8. My brother likes to read so he often goes to the \_\_\_\_\_. 9. I am mad about tasty cakes. I like to \_\_\_\_\_. 10. There are many \_\_\_\_\_ in my town / village.

**4. Write questions and answers using *Is there / Are there***

For example: café / yes – *Is there a café in your town? Yes, there is.*

library / three – *How many libraries are there in your town? There are three libraries in my town.*

1. school / twenty-eight;
2. restaurant / yes;
3. supermarket / yes;
4. swimming pool / no;
5. block of flats / no;
6. shops / yes;
7. art gallery / no;
8. car park / no;
9. park / yes;

**5. Look at the words in brackets. Then complete the text with the words in the box**

*tiny fantastic fast incredible  
enormous amazing luxury*

Ruth has got a 1 \_\_\_\_\_ (very good) job. She has got an 2 \_\_\_\_\_ (very big) office in the centre of London. Her office is bigger than my flat! It is in an 3 \_\_\_\_\_ (very beautiful and big) building.

Ruth has got 4 \_\_\_\_\_ (very expensive and beautiful) flat near the park and a new car – it is really 5 \_\_\_\_\_ (very quick)! It is an 6 \_\_\_\_\_ (very surprising) car. I love it! She has got 7 \_\_\_\_\_ (very small) dog – its name is Benji.

**6. Fill in: *a, an* or *the* where necessary**

\_\_\_\_\_ Australia is \_\_\_\_\_ interesting country. \_\_\_\_\_ Australians are very friendly, happy people. Some of \_\_\_\_\_ strangest animals in \_\_\_\_\_ world live there. In \_\_\_\_\_ Great Victoria Desert you can find \_\_\_\_\_ kangaroos and \_\_\_\_\_ koala bears. \_\_\_\_\_ most famous city in Australia is \_\_\_\_\_ Sydney.

**Practice 46**  
**Revision**  
**Test 10**

**1. Fill in each gap with the necessary preposition from the box**

*at*<sup>x11</sup>; *during*; *in*<sup>x6</sup>; *among*; *about*; *on*<sup>x8</sup>;  
*under*; *between*; *from ... till*; *by*<sup>x2</sup>

1. The pen is \_\_\_ the box.
2. Peter doesn't spend much time \_\_\_ his homework.
3. Every morning Peter gets up \_\_\_ 7.15 am.
4. The books are \_\_\_ the table.
5. Their friends are playing \_\_\_ the park.
6. His village is \_\_\_ the border.
7. The number is \_\_\_ the door.
8. The table is \_\_\_ the middle of the room.
9. Alex is usually ready \_\_\_ 9 o'clock.
10. A town is \_\_\_ the Dnipro.
11. Mother cooks dinner \_\_\_ the kitchen.
12. A dirt is \_\_\_ your shirt.
13. He goes to his public school \_\_\_ a school bus.
14. Please, write your surname \_\_\_ the top of the page.
15. He lives \_\_\_ the second floor.
16. The car was parked \_\_\_ two very expensive ones.
17. Some people talk \_\_\_ their work all the time.
18. I am going on holiday \_\_\_ the end of October.
19. I met some interesting people \_\_\_ my holidays.
20. He is standing \_\_\_ the door.
21. The car is \_\_\_ the crossroads.
22. We meet \_\_\_ the theatre.
23. There are 200 seats \_\_\_ the theatre.
24. You can see the timetable \_\_\_ the station.
25. He lives \_\_\_ 45 Ozerna Street.
26. He left school \_\_\_ the age of 16.
27. The dog is lying \_\_\_ the table.
28. We will be tomorrow \_\_\_ 10 \_\_\_ 11 AM.
29. Are you going away \_\_\_ the weekend?
30. I could not find her \_\_\_ all those people.
31. In Germany children get presents \_\_\_ Easter.
32. I always feel good \_\_\_ the morning.

**2. Translate into English**

1. *Я не люблю черги.*
2. *величні дерева, гарна полуниця, натуральне молоко*

3. заморожені продукти замість консервованих продуктів
4. багатоквартирні будинки, багатоповерхові будинки, торговий центр та підземний перехід
5. великий транспортний рух, дорожні пробки та світлофори
6. незабруднене середовище, спокійна атмосфера, поля, луки, фруктові сади та городи
7. театр, музей, зручне автобусне обслуговування, парковка, мистецька галерея, проспект, плавальний басейн, години пік та шумний наповн
8. огорожа, живопис, колодязь, чиста вода

### 3. Translate into English. Use Modal Verbs

1. Я вмію розмовляти італійською та іспанською.
2. Ми повинні зробити це.
3. Можна мені сказати?
4. Що ти можеш бачити на малюнку?
5. Моя сестра не вміє плавати.
6. Вона вміла грати на піаніно, коли була маленька.
7. Вони повинні сказати це.
8. Тобі слід користуватися мобільним телефоном.

### 4. Translate into English. Pay attention to the constructions with Modal Verbs

1. Колись ми думали, що вони лікарі.
2. Його племінниця зазвичай поверталася останнім автобусом.
3. Він не зник наполегливо вчитися.
4. Вони звикли пити каву зранку.

### 5. Write general questions in the past simple. Then write the answers. For example: *drink a coffee for breakfast* – *Did you drink coffee for breakfast? Yes, I did.*

1. *read a book in bed.* -
2. *buy clothes last weekend.* –
3. *come to university on the bus this morning.* –
4. *go to bed early yesterday.* -
5. *have a lot of homework last year.* -
6. *eat chocolate yesterday.* –
7. *use a computer last Sunday.* –
8. *phone a friend yesterday.* -

## Practice 47

### Grammar: The Adverb

**The Adverb** прислівник є частиною мови, яка характеризує дію, стан, якість і відповідає на запитання „*як? як часто? як довго? скільки часу? коли?*”.

#### 1. Morphological Characteristic of Adverbs

За своєю структурою прислівники діляться на **прості Simple Adverbs**, що складаються з одного кореня; **похідні Derivative Adverbs**, що мають у своєму складі суфікси або префікси; **складні Compound Adverbs**, що складаються з

двох, трьох коренів; складені **Composite Adverbs**, що складаються з кількох слів:

Simple Adverbs	Derivative Adverbs	Compound Adverbs	Composite Adverbs
<b>well</b> добре, гаразд;	<b>slowly</b> повільно;	<b>anyhow</b> як-небудь, щоб не було, у всякому разі;	<b>at once</b> добре, гаразд; відразу, негайно
<b>hard</b> сильно, наполегливо;	<b>forward</b> уперед, далі;	<b>sometimes</b> іноді, інколи;	<b>at last</b> нарешті;
<b>much</b> багато, значно;	<b>headlong</b> стрімголов, необачно, наосліп;	<b>nowhere</b> ніде, нікуди;	

**Похідні, складні та складені прислівники** утворюються від інших частин мови (здебільшого від прикметників та іменників) за допомогою суфіксів **-ly, -ward, -long**:

1. Прислівники, що збігаються значенням з тими іменниками або прикметниками, від яких вони утворені:

the Noun	the Adverb
<b>day</b> день	<b>daily</b> щоденно, щодня
<b>part</b> частина	<b>partly</b> частково

the Adjective	the Adverb
<b>quick</b> швидкий	<b>quickly</b> швидко
<b>slow</b> повільний	<b>slowly</b> повільно
<b>easy</b> легкий	<b>easily</b> легко

2. Прислівники, що не збігаються значенням з прикметниками, від яких вони утворені:

the Adjective	the Adverb
<b>short</b> короткий	<b>shortly</b> нещодавно
<b>deep</b> глибокий	<b>deeply</b> дуже
<b>bare</b> 1) голий; 2) незначний; 3) неприкрашений	<b>barely</b> 1) ледве; 2) відверто
<b>hard</b> твердий	<b>hardly</b> ледве, навряд чи, насилу
<b>fair</b> 1) справедливий; 2) непоганий; 3) сприятливий; 4) ясний; 5) гарний	<b>fairly</b> 1) досить, певною мірою; 2) справедливо
<b>just</b> 1) справедливий; 2) заслужений; 3) вірний	<b>justly</b> законно
<b>near</b> близький	<b>nearly</b> майже, приблизно
<b>scarce</b> [skɛəʃ] недостатній	<b>scarcely</b> ледве-ледве, навряд
<b>late</b> пізній, колишній	<b>lately</b> нещодавно, за останній час

**I live quite near.** Я живу зовсім близько.

**I have nearly forgotten about it.** Я ледве не забула про це.

**She works hard.** Вона наполегливо працює.

**She hardly works.** Вона мало (ледве) працює.

**They came late.** Вони прийшли пізно.

**The children have lately become restless.** Останнім часом діти стали неспокійні.

3. Багато прислівників а англійській мові своєю формою цілком збігаються з іншими частинами мови і можуть бути визначені як прислівники лише залежно



від їх ролі в реченні. Прислівники, що збігаються формою з прикметниками:

the Adverb	the Adjective	the Adverb
<b>fast</b>	<i>швидкий</i>	<i>швидко</i>
<b>long</b>	<i>довгий</i>	<i>довго</i>
<b>loud</b>	<i>голосний</i>	<i>голосно</i>
<b>late</b>	<i>пізній</i>	<i>пізно</i>
<b>wide</b>	<i>широкий</i>	<i>широко</i>
<b>hard</b>	<i>твердий</i>	<i>уперто, тяжко</i>
<b>early</b>	<i>ранній</i>	<i>рано</i>

the Adjective	the Adverb
<b>They took a <u>fast</u> train.</b> Вони сіли на <i>швидкий</i> потяг. („який?“)	<b>He rode <u>fast</u>.</b> Він їхав <i>швидко</i> . („як?“)
<b>That was a <u>long</u> day.</b> То був <i>довгий</i> день. („який?“)	<b>She waited <u>long</u>.</b> Вона <i>довго</i> чекала. („як довго? скільки часу?“)

Порівнюємо прикметник та прислівник:

the Adjective	the Adverb	the Note
<b>Sue is very <u>quiet</u>.</b> Сью дуже <i>швидко</i> . („яка?“)	<b>Sue speaks very <u>quietly</u>.</b> Сью дуже <i>швидко</i> розмовляє. („як?“)	не може бути: „ <b>speaks very <u>quiet</u></b> “
<b>Be <u>careful</u>!</b> Будь обережним! („яким?“)	<b>Listen <u>carefully</u>!</b> Слухай <i>уважно!</i> („як?“)	не може бути: „ <b>listen <u>careful</u></b> “

4. Деякі слова мають різне значення в залежності від того, якою частиною мови вони є:

the Adjective	the Adverb
<b>only</b> єдиний	<b>only</b> тільки, виключно
<b>pretty</b> гарненький	<b>pretty</b> досить, цілком
<b>well</b> здоровий	<b>well</b> добре, гаразд

Але потрібно зауважити, що в англійській мові є деякі прикметники, що закінчуються на суфікс **-ly**, які не слід вважати за прислівники, наприклад:

**lovely** милий, приємний;

**manly** мужній;

**friendly** дружній: **He speaks in a friendly way.** Він розмовляє *дружнім* тоном.

В англійській мові, особливо з дієсловами **to taste** пробувати на смак, мати смак (присмак); **to feel** почувати, відчувати, сприймати на дотик; **to sound** звучати; **to look** дивитися; **to smell** пахнути, відчувати запах іноді вживаються прикметники, які ми можемо перекласти як прислівники:

<b>That sounds <u>good</u>.</b>	Звучить <i>непогано</i> .
<b>The flowers smell <u>wonderful</u>.</b>	Квіти пахнуть <i>чудово</i> .

## 2. Groups of Adverbs

За значенням прислівники в англійській мові поділяються на 5 основних груп:

1. Прислівники часу **Adverbs of Time: today** сьогодні, **yesterday** вчора, **now**

тепер, **soon** незабаром, **early** рано, **late** пізно, **then** тоді, **before** до того як та ін.

2. Прислівники місця **Adverbs of Place**: **here** тут, **there** там, **where** де, **near** поблизу, **above** зверху та ін.

3. Прислівники повторюваності й частотності **Adverbs of Repetition and Frequency**: **often** часто, **never** ніколи, **sometimes** іноді, **ever** будь-коли, **usually** звичайно та ін.

4. Прислівники ступеня **Adverbs of Degree**: **very** дуже, **quite** зовсім, **little** мало, **too** занадто, **much** багато та ін.

5. Прислівники способу дії **Adverbs of Manner**: **quickly** швидко, **well** добре, **badly** погано, **slowly** повільно, **easily** легко та ін.

### 3. Degrees of Comparison of Adverbs

В сучасній англійській мові прислівники є морфологічно незмінними словами. Єдиною формальною зміною, що збереглася у невеликій групі прислівників, головним чином, у прислівників, які визначають характер дії **Adverbs of Manner** є зміна при порівнянні.

Односкладові прислівники, які часто збігаються формами з прикметниками, у вищому ступені мають суфікс **-er**, у найвищому ступені - суфікс **-est**:

<b>late</b> пізно	<b>later</b>	<b>latest</b>
<b>fast</b> швидко	<b>faster</b>	<b>fastest</b>

**We can't wait any longer.** Ми не могли чекати довше.

**Of all the singers I have heard she sang loudest.** Серед всіх співаків, яких я чув, вона співала найголосніше.

Більшість прислівників, що закінчуються на **-ly** утворюють ступені порівняння за допомогою слів **more** у вищому ступені і **most** у найвищому ступені:

<b>slowly</b> повільно	<b>more slowly</b>	<b>most slowly</b>
<b>quietly</b> спокійно, тихо	<b>more quietly</b>	<b>most quietly</b>
<b>carefully</b> обережно	<b>more carefully</b>	<b>most carefully</b>

**She did it more carefully.** Вона зробила це ще обережніше.

**Could you speak more loudly, please.** Чи не могли би ви говорити голосніше.

**You can find it most easily by turning right.** Тобі набагато легше буде знайти це, якщо ти повернеш праворуч.

Порівняння робиться також за допомогою слів **less** та **least**:

**slowly** повільно – **less slowly** повільніше – **least slowly** дуже повільно

Зверніть увагу на зауваження - не плутайте словосполучення: **at least** – в усякому разі, принаймні; **at last** – нарешті:

**It's hard but at least you can try.** Це важко, але принаймні, ви можете спробувати.

**At last you did it.** *Нарешті ви зробили це.*

**Least of all he worries about you.** *Мені за все він турбується про тебе.*

Кілька прислівників, що збігаються в своєму значенні з відповідними прикметниками, утворюють ступені порівняння від різних основ:

<b>good</b> <i>добре</i>	<b>better</b>	<b>best</b>
<b>bad</b> <i>погано</i>	<b>worse</b>	<b>worst</b>
<b>little</b> <i>мало</i>	<b>less</b>	<b>least</b>
<b>much</b> <i>багато</i>	<b>more</b>	<b>most</b>
<b>far</b> <i>далеко</i>	<b>farther, further</b>	<b>farthest, furthest</b>

Now you do it **better** than you did it last year. *Зараз ти робиш це краще, ніж робив це торік.*

I love music **more** and **more**. *Музика подобається мені більше і більше.*

#### 4. Grammar Exercises

##### 1. Insert the necessary adverb

*carefully, clearly, easily, well, carefully, quickly, hard, badly*

- I'm doing to say something very important, so please listen to me \_\_\_.
- I need you help. Come \_\_\_!
- I met him but I don't know him very \_\_\_.
- They work \_\_\_. At the end of the day they were always tired.
- I am tired this morning. I slept \_\_\_ last night.
- You are much better tennis player than me. When we play you always win \_\_\_.
- Think \_\_\_ before you answer the question.
- Our teacher is not very good. He does not explain things very \_\_\_.

2. Divide the following adverbs in to the necessary group: *here, often, today, there, never, very, too, badly, yesterday, fortunately, where, sometimes, usually, quite, quickly, now, ever, little, near, above, soon, much, well, early, slowly, late, approximately, then, before, easily*

Adverbs of Time	Adverbs of Place	Adverbs of Repetition and Frequency	Adverbs of Degree	Adverbs of Manner

3. Write the degrees of comparison of the following adverbs: *late, carefully, fast, long, quietly, loud, slowly, easy*

4. Complete the pairs of with the correct adjectives and adverbs.

For example: *quiet / quietly*

- Could everyone be *quiet* during the exam?
- You are speaking too *quietly*. I can't hear you.

1. *bad / badly*

- a) I fell and hurt myself quite \_\_\_\_\_.
- b) The pollution is very \_\_\_\_ in this part of town.

2. *careful / carefully*

- a) Don't worry. He is a very \_\_\_\_\_ driver.
- b) You really need to do your homework more \_\_\_\_ .

3. *perfect / perfectly*

- a) Your pronunciation is absolutely \_\_\_\_\_ .
- b) He speaks English almost \_\_\_\_\_ now.

4. *good / well*

- a) How \_\_\_\_\_ can you play the guitar?
- b) She is a very \_\_\_\_\_ tennis player now.

**5. Identify the tenses in bold, then match them to their use**

- 1. The Earth **revolves** round the Sun.
- 2. The train **leaves** at 5:30.
- 3. John **is looking for** a new house.
- 4. She can't play. She **has broken** her leg.
- 5. He **is** always **biting** his nails.
- 6. I **have been trying** to call you for an hour.
- 7. He **is flying** to Madrid tomorrow.
- 8. It **is getting** colder and colder.

*a) action which started in the past and continues up to the present with emphasis on duration*

*b) law of nature*

*c) expressing irritation*

*d) action happening around the time of speaking*

*e) result / consequence of a past activity in the present*

*f) fixed arrangement in the future*

*g) timetable*

*h) gradual development*

**Practice 48**

**Text: "Niagara Falls"**

**Read the text "Niagara Falls"**

Niagara Falls is the best known natural wonder in the USA. It is visited by the greater number of people from America and abroad than any other place on the continent.

Niagara Falls is situated between New York and Chicago. Niagara is an Indian word which means “roaring waters”. Indeed the roar of the falling water can be heard at a distance of 25 kilometres.

A mass of water is falling over a cliff 90 feet high (27 meters) with a terrible noise. Niagara has very great power. It can move big rocks and throw them into the waters.

There were some people who wanted to become famous by swimming across the most dangerous part of the Niagara River.

Niagara Falls is beautiful and all the time is changing. Many great writers tried to describe it. Charles Dickens wrote of Niagara: “The first effect of Niagara Falls was peace. Nothing of gloom.”

Abraham Lincoln, the great President of the United States, said of Niagara: “It calls up the past.

When Columbus first saw this continent Niagara was roaring here. Niagara is as strong today as ten thousands years ago.”

The Niagara River gives electric power too. More than a million horse power is produced now at Niagara for local use and is sent to cities and towns in New York State and to Canada.

### **Vocabulary**

*roaring* [rɔ:riŋ] шумний, бурхливий; гучний, голосний

*gloom* [glu:m] морок, темрява, нітьм, темне, неосвітлене.

### **1. Answer the questions**

1. What does the Niagara River give?
2. What does the word Niagara mean?
3. What great writers tried to describe Niagara Falls?
4. How many people visit Niagara Falls?
5. Why did some people want to swim across the most dangerous part of the Niagara River?
6. What did Abraham Lincoln say of Niagara?
7. Where is Niagara Falls situated?
8. What height of Niagara Falls?

### **2. Find in the text**

*сьогодні як десять тисяч років тому -*

*для місцевих потреб -*

*із жахливим шумом -*

*кілька людей -*

*рухати велике каміння -*

*чудо природи -*

*розташована між -*

*найбільш небезпечна частина -*

*намагалися описати -*

*кличе в минуле -*

*кидати їх у воду -*

**3. Read the text again and determine what statements are *true* and *false***

1. There was one man who wanted to become famous by swimming across the most dangerous part of the Niagara River.
2. The Niagara River gives electric power.
3. More than three million horse power is produced now at Niagara for local use.
4. Niagara Falls is Los Angeles and Toronto.
5. Abraham Lincoln, the great President of Great Britain, said of Niagara: "It calls up the present.
6. Many great painters tried to describe it.
7. Niagara Falls is the best known natural wonder in the Canada.
8. Niagara is a Mexican word which means "roaring waters".
9. Conan Doyle wrote of Niagara: "The first effect of Niagara Falls was peace. Nothing of gloom."
10. The roar of the falling water can be heard at a distance of 225 kilometres.
11. Niagara Falls is beautiful and all the time is changing.
12. It is visited by the greater number of people only from Brasilia than any other place on the continent.

**4. Complete the sentences with the words in the box**

*chatting sport watching interested photography meeting rats cycling music*

1. Jack is into \_\_\_\_\_, especially football.
2. I like \_\_\_\_\_ on the Internet with my friends.
3. Jessika likes \_\_\_\_\_. She has got a new bike.
4. My father is mad about \_\_\_\_\_ but I can't stand them.
5. His brother has got a camera. He is mad about \_\_\_\_\_.
6. We hate \_\_\_\_\_ TV. It is boring.
7. I like \_\_\_\_\_ my friends in the café.
8. She is \_\_\_\_\_ in \_\_\_\_\_ and she really hates hip hop.

**5. Paraphrase the following sentences using the modal verb *CAN***

<b>A</b>	1. You have the right to use dictionaries.
	2. He has the right to receive a passport.
	3. They have the right to live in this flat.
	4. She has the right to stay away from these lessons.
	5. He has the right to take a month's holiday in summer.
	6. We have the right to sell our house.
<b>B</b>	1. Will you allow me to attend your lectures?
	2. Will you allow me to take my seat?
	3. Will you allow me to join you?
	4. Will you allow me to take your dictionary?
	5. Will you allow me to stay here?
<b>C</b>	1. You haven't the right to travel by train without a ticket.
	2. He hasn't the right to occupy this house.
	3. She hasn't the right to enter the cinema hall during the show.
	4. We haven't the right to hunt hares now.
	5. Children haven't the right to go to an evening show.



**6. Reread the text “Niagara Falls” and do the test**

1. There were some people who wanted to become famous by \_\_\_\_\_ the most dangerous part of the Niagara River.  
a) swimming across      b) flying across      c) going across
2. Niagara Falls is the best known natural \_\_\_\_\_ in the USA.  
a) enormous      b) wonder      c) magnificent
3. Niagara Falls is situated between \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) Los Angeles .... New York      b) New York ... Chicago      c) Mexico ... Canada
4. It is visited by the greater number of people from America and abroad than any other place on the \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) continent      b) land      c) oceans
5. Abraham \_\_\_\_\_, the great President of the United States, said of Niagara: “It calls up the past.”  
a) Washington      b) Belmont      c) Lincoln
6. Indeed the roar of the falling water can be heard at a distance of \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) 25 km      b) 27 km      c) 29 km
7. The great writer \_\_\_\_\_ wrote of Niagara: “The first effect of Niagara Falls was peace. Nothing of gloom.”  
a) Robert Birns      b) Charles Dickens      c) William Shakespeare
8. Niagara can move big \_\_\_\_\_ and throw them into the waters.  
a) stonnes      b) trees      c) rocks
9. Niagara is as strong today as \_\_\_\_\_ years ago.”  
a) ten thousands      b) twenty thousands      c) thirty
10. More than a million \_\_\_\_\_ is produced now at Niagara for local use and is sent to cities and towns in New York State and to Canada.  
a) electric power      b) horse power      c) energy power

**Practice 49**

**Final Test**

**Word Quiz**

*mother, father, parents, children, daughter, son, brother, sister, husband, wife, twins, grandfather, grandmother, grandchildren, granddaughter, grandson*  
*mother-in-law, father-in-law, daughter-in-law, son-in-law, brother-in-law, sister-in-law*  
*aunt, uncle, nephew, niece, cousin*  
*stepfather, stepmother, stepchildren, relative, half-sister, half-brother, stepdaughter, stepson*

*accounts* рахунки

*quiet* ['kwaɪət] спокійний

*self-confident* самовпевнений

*strong-willed* рішучий, вольовий

**weak spot** слабе місце (у людини)

**publish** публікувати

**editor** ['editə] редактор

**take care** піклуватися

**only** єдиний

**spoilt** [spɔɪlt] розпещений

**late** покійний

**nurse** [nɜ:s] 1) нянька; 2) годувальниця; 3) медична сестра

**selfish** ['selfɪʃ] егоїстичний, корисливий, себелюбний

**arrogant** ['ærəgənt] зарозумілий, гордовитий, пихатий; самовпевнений

**extremely** [ɪk'stri:mli] у край; надзвичайно; найвищою мірою

**ambitious** [æm'biʃəs] честолюбний, амбітний

**used to be** колись була

**Contest** конкурс

**love match** шлюб по любові

**hostess**. [həʊstɪs] господиня

**neither ... nor** жоден з двох

**affectionate** [ə'fækʃ(ə)nɪt] люблячий, ніжний, лагідний

**used to bring** зазвичай приносила

**stray dogs and cats** бродячі собаки і коти

**graduate** ['grædʒʊeɪt] закінчити вищий навчальний заклад

**finish** ['fɪnɪʃ] закінчувати школу

**involve** [ɪn'vɒlv] залучати, втягувати, уплутувати

**adventurer** авантюрист; шукач пригод

**rob** [rɒb] грабувати, обкрадати

**prison** ['prɪz(ə)n] в'язниця

**upset** [ʌp'set] засмучений

**realized** = **understand** усвідомлювати

**either** будь-який

**respectable** [rɪ'spektəb(ə)l] поважний; респектабельний

**bring up** виховувати

**apply to a college** поступити в коледж

**refuse** відмовляти

**give financial support** надавати фінансову підтримку

**waitress** офіціантка

**earn money (make money)** заробляти гроші

**fee** оплата за навчання

**be satisfied** бути задоволеним

**mind** думати

**blue-collar** “синій комірць”, технічний працівник, робітник на виробництві

**fellow-worker** співробітник

**sack** звільняти

**be unemployed** бути безробітним

**dole** [dɔʊl] допомога по безробіттю

**unskilled** некваліфікований

**labourer** ['leib(ə)rə] (некваліфікований) робітник; чорнороб  
**attend** [ə'tend] відвідувати  
**extra** ['ekstrə] додатковий  
**training** виховання; навчання; підготовка; освіта  
**successful career** успішна кар'єра  
**poorly paid** низкооплачуваний  
**clerk** [kla:k] конторський службовець, клерк  
**white-collar** службовець  
**transfer** переведення (по службі)  
**sales** купівля-продаж; розпродаж; збут  
**sales representative** торговий представник  
**promote** просувати; підвищувати в чині або званні  
**salary** ['sæləri] платня, оклад; заробітна плата службовця  
**benefit** ['benɪfɪt] перевага, привілей; премія  
**retire** звільняти у відставку; переводити на пенсію  
**apprentice** [ə'prentɪs] учень, підмайстер; новачок  
**engineer** [endʒi'niə] інженер; конструктор  
**cope** [kəʊp] (**with**) упоратися (з труднощами)  
**afford** [ə'fɔ:d] мати можливість, могли (зробити що-небудь); дозволити собі  
**give up** відмовитися (від роботи, пропозиції); кинути (звичку); залишити  
**pollution** [pə'lu:ʃ(ə)n] забруднення; забруднення навколишнього середовища  
**traffic** ['træfɪk] рух, повідомлення; транспорт  
**rush** [rʌʃ] кидатися, прямувати, направлятися; нестися; мчати щодоуху  
**magnificent** [mæg'nɪfɪs(ə)nt] чудовий; пишний; величний  
**queue** [kju:] черга  
**block of flats** багатоквартирний будинок  
**violence** ['vaɪələns] насильство, примус  
**exciting** [ɪk'saɪtɪŋ] збуджуючий, хвилюючий; захоплюючий  
**worth** [wɜ:θ] вартий, що заслуговує (чого-н.); що має значення  
**for instance** наприклад  
**gossip** ['gɒsɪp] балаканина, розмови; плітка; чутки; вигадки  
**maybe** ['meɪbi] може бути; можливо  
**trouble** [trʌb(ə)l] неприємність, біда, горе; напасті  
**same** той самий, цей же  
**admit** [əd'mɪt] визнавати, допускати  
**exhibition** [eksɪ'bɪʃ(ə)n] виставка; експонат(и)  
**ancestor** ['ænsəstə,'ænsɛstə] предок, прабатько  
**completely** [kəm'pli:tli] зовсім, повністю, цілком  
**strawberry** ['strɔ:b(ə)ri] суниця, полуниця  
**turnip** ['tɜ:nɪp] турнепс, ріпа  
**bake** [beɪk] пекти, випікати; запікати  
**frozen food** заморожені продукти  
**tinned food** консервовані продукти  
**fresh** [freʃ] свіжий, натуральний; неконсервований

*miss* [mis] пропустити; пройти мимо; не помітити  
*rubbish* [rʌbɪʃ] сміття, мотлох  
*psychiatrist* [saɪ'kaɪətrɪst] психіатр  
*lonely* ['ləʊnli] самотній  
*instead* [ɪn'sted] замість  
*enough* [ɪ'nʌf] достатня кількість  
*alone* [ə'ləʊn] один, самотній; на самоті  
*evening classes* вечірні курси  
*advice* [əd'vaɪs] порада; консультація (юриста, лікаря)  
*village* ['vɪlɪdʒ] село; селище  
*multi-storeyed house* багатопверховий будинок  
*suburb* ['sebz:b] пригород, передмістя, окраїна  
*shopping centre* торговий центр  
*country* країна  
*province* ['prɒvɪns] провінція; периферія  
*outskirts* передмістя  
*peaceful atmosphere* мирна (спокійна) атмосфера  
*settlement* поселення, селище  
*traffic lights* світлофори  
*housing estate* мікрорайон, жилий район  
*well-kept park* парк, що утримується у порядку  
*region* область  
*bench* лава  
*industrial area* промисловий район  
*kitchen garden* город  
*district* округ, район  
*street lamp* вуличний ліхтар  
*the City* фінансовий центр Лондона  
*meadow* ['medəʊ] луг, лучка  
*town* місто; містечко  
*hedge* [hedʒ] (жива) огорожа, живопліт  
*the country* село, сільська місцевість  
*fence* огорожа  
*city* місто; велике місто  
*heavy traffic* великий транспортний рух  
*industrial estate* індустріальний район  
*block of flats* багатоквартирний будинок  
*capital* столиця  
*bush* [bʊʃ] кущ; чагарник  
*picture galleries* мистецька галерея  
*noisy crowd* шумний натовп  
*metropolis* дуже велике місто  
*underground crossing* підземний перехід  
*unpolluted environment* незабруднене середовище  
*bedroom district* спальний район

*state* держава

*traffic jam* дорожня пробка

*convenient bus service* зручне автобусне обслуговування

*vegetable garden* огорода

*field* поле

*pure water* чиста вода

*museum* музей

*rush hour* година пік, години пік

*orchard* ['ɔ:ʃəd] фруктовий сад

*hospital* лікарня

*theatre* театр

*avenue* ['ævɪnju:] авеню, проспект, широка вулиця

*swimming pool* плавальний басейн

*well* колодязь

*car park* парковка

*square* площа, майдан, сквер

## Practice 50

### Grammar: The Present Perfect Tense

#### 1. Часи групи Perfect

Перфектні (доконані) часи виражають дію, що відбулася до певного моменту чи періоду в теперішньому часі **Present Perfect**, минулому **Past Perfect**, майбутньому **Future Perfect** стосовно минулого **Future-in-the-Past**.

Перфектні часи звичайно виражають наявність якогось результату дії, пов'язаної з наступними подіями.

Перфектні часи утворюються з відповідних неозначених часів допоміжного дієслова **to have** та дієприкметника минулого часу **Past Participle** основного дієслова.

#### 2. Word Order of Perfect Tenses

**The Present Perfect Tense** теперішній перфектний час утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова **to have** у **Present Indefinite** та дієприкметника минулого часу **Past Participle** (III форма, дивись таблицю неправильних дієслів) основного дієслова.

Дієслова у **Present Perfect** зазвичай вказують на те, що дія здійснилася до моменту мовлення.

**I have brought a book for you. Here it is.** Я приніс тобі книгу. Ось вона.

**They have broken the old house and built the new one.** Вони зруйнували старий будинок та побудували новий.

**We had finished our work before he came.** Ми закінчили роботу, перш ніж він прийшов.

**By 5 o'clock we had done all tasks.** До 5 години ми зробили всі завдання.



**Past Participle** правильних дієслів утворюється додаванням до інфінітива закінчення **-ed**:

**to stay** *залишатися* + **-ed** = **stayed**;

**to work** *працювати* + **-ed** = **worked**;

**to conclude** *укладати* + **-ed** = **concluded**, тобто за формою **Past Participle** не відрізняється від **Past Indefinite**.

**Past Participle** неправильних дієслів треба запам'ятати:

**to write** *писати* **written**;

**to do** *робити* **done**;

**to speak** *розмовляти* **spoken**.

Допоміжне дієслово **to have** змінюється за особами:

ОСОБА	to have
I, you, we, they	<i>have</i>
he, she, it	<i>has</i>

**I have locked the door.** *Я замкнув двері (двері зараз замкнені).*

**He has told me about him.** *Він розповів мені про нього.*

**Стверджувальна форма:**

*Я (ти, ви, ми, вони) прожив 40 років у цьому місті.*

*Хлопчик прожив 40 років у цьому місті.*

1	2	3	4
Підмет	Допоміжне дієслово	Присудок III форма	Другорядні члени речення
I, you, we, they	have	lived	40 years in this town.
The boy	has	lived	40 years in this town.

**Заперечна форма:**

*Я (ти, ви, ми, вони) не прожив 40 років у цьому місті.*

*Хлопчик не прожив 40 років у цьому місті.*

1	2	3	4	5
Підмет	Допоміжне дієслово	Заперечна частка <i>NOT</i>	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
I you, we, they	have	not	lived	40 years in this town.
The boy	has	not	lived	40 years in this town.

**Питальна форма:**

*Чи ти прожив 40 років у цьому місті?*

*Чи хлопчик прожив 40 років у цьому місті?*

1	2	3	4
Допоміжне дієслово	Підмет	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
Have	you	lived	40 years in this town?
Has	the boy	lived	40 years in this town?



*Де ти прожив 40 років?*

*Де хлопчик прожив 40 років?*

1	2	3	4	5
Питальне слово	Допоміжне дієслово	Підмет	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
Where	have	you	lived	40 years?
Where	has	the boy	lived	40 years?

Питальне слово – **WHO?** – **ХТО** – III особа однини, відповідно допоміжне дієслово – **has**:

*Хто прожив 40 років в цьому місті?*

1	2	3	4
Питальне слово ХТО? <b>WHO?</b>	Допоміжне дієслово	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
Who	has	lived	40 years in this town?

### 3. Usage of Present Perfect Tense

**Present Perfect** вживається у реченнях з обставинами часу:

а) що означають період часу, який почався в минулому і триває до моменту мовлення: **up to now**, **up to the present** до цього часу; **lately** нещодавно, за останній час; **recently** останнім часом; **so far** до цього часу; **since** відтоді; **not yet** ще не:

*You have not shown me your room yet. Ви ще не показали мені своєї кімнати.*

*She has known Jack ever since she was a child. Вона знає Джека з того часу, як була дитиною.*

б) що означають період часу, який ще не закінчився: **today** сьогодні; **this week** цього тижня; **this month** цього місяця; **this year** цього року; **this morning** сьогодні вранці:

*I have not see him this year. Я не бачив його цього року.*

в) **Present Perfect** вживається у реченнях з прислівниками неозначеного часу і частотності: **ever** коли-небудь; **never** ніколи; **often** часто; **seldom** рідко; **already** вже; **just** щойно:

*Have you ever thought about it? Ви коли-небудь думали про це?*

#### *Present Perfect*

1. Дія нещодавно завершилася в минулому, є результат: *Jane has bought a new scarf.*

2. Дія відбулася в минулому, результат впливає на теперішній час: *Tom has got a loan.*

3. Особистий досвід, зміни, що відбулися: *Jane has lost 15 kilos.*

#### *Слова-сигнали*

*just, never, ever, already, yet, how long, so far, recently, today, this week / month / year etc.*

#### 4. Grammar Exercises

##### 1. Choose the correct form of the auxiliary verb

1. He \_\_\_ (have / has) seen this film.
2. I \_\_\_ (have / has) read many books.
3. She \_\_\_ (have / has) not met him.
4. They \_\_\_ (have / has) sung two songs.
5. We \_\_\_ (have / has) translated the text.
6. Peter \_\_\_ (have / has) finished school.
7. \_\_\_ (Have / has) his friends finished school too?
8. The teacher \_\_\_ (have / has) not given us any home task.

##### 2. Put the verbs into the *Present Perfect*

1. It's the first time he \_\_\_ (not / make) any mistakes.
2. My parents \_\_\_ (be) to many countries.
3. They \_\_\_ (go) to Italy twice.
4. Tom \_\_\_ (not / receive) any letters up to now.
5. Jane is the prettiest girl I \_\_\_ (ever / see).
6. Sheila \_\_\_ (buy) a lot of things in the supermarket.
7. \_\_\_ you \_\_\_ (hear) anything from him?
8. How many times \_\_\_ you \_\_\_ (be) in love?
9. It \_\_\_ (not / rain) for ages.

##### 3. Translate the following sentences into English:

1. I \_\_\_ (to bring) a book for you. Here it is.
2. They \_\_\_ (to break) the old house and built the new one.
3. We \_\_\_ (to finish) our work before he came.
4. By 5 o'clock we \_\_\_ (to do) all tasks.
5. I \_\_\_ (to lock) the door.
6. He \_\_\_ (to tell) me about him.
7. You \_\_\_ (not / show / yet) me your room.
8. She \_\_\_ (know) Jack ever since she was a child.
9. I \_\_\_ (not / see) him this year.
10. \_\_\_ you (ever / think) about it?

##### 4. Fill in the gaps with the right forms of the verbs in brackets to complete the following English sentences in Present Perfect Tense

1. He \_\_\_ (to close) the door.
2. He \_\_\_ (to do) it since we left him.
3. I \_\_\_ (to give) him my last penny.
4. This order \_\_\_ (to lead) to many misunderstandings.
5. He \_\_\_ (to write) his name on my book.
6. She \_\_\_ (to sell) a new umbrella.
7. He \_\_\_ (to look) my exercise over and over.
8. I \_\_\_ (to buy) those books very cheaply.
9. He \_\_\_ (to work) for two months.

10. She \_\_\_ (to find) a new job.
11. He \_\_\_ (to speak) very well.
12. The children \_\_\_ (to eat) the whole pudding.
13. You \_\_\_ (to read) many detective stories.
14. Our team \_\_\_ (to win) the first prize.
15. My little daughter \_\_\_ (cut) her finger with a knife.

**5. Complete the mini-dialogues with one word in each gap: *have, ambitious, unsociable, calm, in, humour, kind, creative***

1.	A:	Can I help you with those bags?
	B:	Thank you. You are very _____. (kind)
2.	A:	Do you and your sister have a lot _____ common?
	B:	No, we are very different.
3.	A:	Are you very _____, Katy?
	B:	Yes, I really want to be the director of the company!
4.	A:	Simon is a very _____ person.
	B:	Yes, he never gets nervous or stressed.
5.	A:	I always _____ fun when I meet my friends.
	B:	What do you usually do together?
6.	A:	What do you think of Andrea?
	B:	She's got a really great sense of _____.
7.	A:	Kim loves painting, drawing and writing stories.
	B:	Yes, she is very _____ person.
8.	A:	David is such an _____ man!
	B:	He never likes going out or meeting people.

**6. Fill in the correct colour(s). Then explain the phrases formed with the words in bold**

1. Sophie goes to the cinema **once in a moon**. She doesn't like it much.
2. Jack fell down the stairs and he **is and** \_\_\_\_\_ all over.
3. Angela definitely has \_\_\_\_\_ **fingers** – everything in her garden grows really well.
4. He **is a bit** \_\_\_\_\_ - he hasn't got much experience in this kind of work.
5. They knew that if she found out the truth it would hurt her feelings so they told her a **little** \_\_\_\_\_ **lie**.
6. She doesn't want to say anything until she has seen the facts **in** \_\_\_\_\_ **and** \_\_\_\_\_.

## Practice 51

### Text: "Big Ben"

#### Read the text "Big Ben"

Big Ben is one of London's best-known landmarks, and looks most spectacular at night when the clock faces are illuminated. You even know when parliament is in session, because a light shines above the clock face. The four dials of the clock are 23 feet square, the minute hand is 14 feet long and the figures are 2 feet high. Minutely regulated with a stack of coins placed on the huge pendulum, Big Ben is an excellent

timekeeper, which has rarely stopped. The name Big Ben actually refers not to the clock-tower itself, but to the thirteen ton bell hung within.

The bell was named after the first commissioner of works, Sir Benjamin Hall. This bell came originally from the old Palace of Westminster, it was given to the Dean of St Paul's by William III.

Before returning to Westminster to hang in its present home, it was refashioned in Whitechapel in 1858. The BBC first broadcast the chimes on the 31<sup>st</sup> December 1923 - there is a microphone in the turret connected to Broadcasting House. During the Second World War in 1941, an incendiary bomb destroyed the Commons chamber of the Houses of Parliament, but the clock tower remained intact and Big Ben continued to keep time and strike away the hours, its unique sound was broadcast to the nation and around the world, a welcome reassurance of hope to all who heard it.

There are even cells within the clock tower where Members of Parliament can be imprisoned for a breach of parliamentary privilege, though this is rare; the last recorded case was in 1880. The tower is not open to the general public, but those with a "special interest" may arrange a visit to the top of the Clock Tower.

### Vocabulary

**spectacular** [spek'tækjʊlə] ефектний, захоплюючий; вражаючий

**pendulum** ['pendjʊləm] маятник; маятниковий важіль

**timekeeper** ['taɪm,ki:pə] годинник, хронометр

**Whitechapel** ['waɪt,tʃæp(ə)l] Уайт-чепел (бідний район Лондона)

**chime** [tʃaɪm] вибивати мелодію (на дзвонах, курантах); дзвонити, дзвеніти; бити, відбивати (про годинник)

**turret** [tʌrɪt] башточка

**incendiary** [ɪn'sendɪəri] запалювальний

**intact** [ɪn'tækt] неущкоджений, непошкоджений, цілий

**reassurance** [ri:ə'sʊ(ə)rəns] заспокоювання, підбадьорення; розрада

**breach** [brɪ:tʃ] розрив (відносин); порушення (закону, зобов'язання)

### 1. Answer the questions

1. How many are dials of the clock?
2. In what year was the last recorded case?
3. What length is of the minute hand?
4. What size are the figures of the dials?
5. What kind of timekeeper is Big Ben?
6. What is the weight of the Big Ben bell?
7. In what year and where Big Ben was refashioned?
8. What is Big Ben for London?
9. Why is this clock tower named Big Ben?
10. How does Big Ben look like at night?

### 2. Find in the text

був названий на честь -

чотири циферблати -

на величезний пам'ятник -  
надією, що кожен почує -  
запалююча бомба -  
часова башта залишилась неушкодженою -  
із старого Вестмінстерського палацу -  
могли бути ув'язненими за порушення -  
чудовий годинник -  
добре відомий архітектурний пам'ятник -

**3. Read the text again and determine if the following statements are true or false**

1. During the Second World War in 1941, an incendiary bomb destroyed the Commons chamber of the Houses of Parliament and the the clock tower too.
2. This bell came originally from the modern Palace of Westminster, it was given to the Dean of St Peter's by William III.
3. You even know when parliament is in session, because a light shines above the clock face.
4. Minutely regulated with a stack of coins placed on the huge pendulum, Big Ben is an excellent timekeeper, which has frequently stopped.
5. There are even cells within the clock tower where Members of Parliament can not be imprisoned for a breach of parliamentary privilege.
6. Before returning to Westminster to hang in it's present home, it was refashioned in Whitechapel in 1456.
7. The bell was named after the second commissioner of works, Sir Benjamin Hall.
8. The BBC first broadcast the chimes on the 31<sup>st</sup> December 1923.
9. The six dials of the clock are 23 feet square, the minute hand is 14 feet long and the figures are 2 feet high.
10. Big Ben is one of London's best-known landmarks, and looks most spectacular in the morning.
11. The name Big Ben actually refers not to the clock-tower itself, but to the fifteen ton bell hung within.

**4. Choose the correct emotion from the box for each person**

*confused, suspicious, uneasy, curious, annoyed, excited, uninterested, sceptical, optimistic, shocked, relieved*

1. She's very \_\_\_\_ that the police have dropped all the charges against her.
2. Our children are getting very \_\_\_\_\_ about our trip to Disneyworld next month. They keep asking when we're going.
3. Most of the people interviewed said they felt \_\_\_\_ about the idea of living near a nuclear power station.
4. Sam's \_\_\_\_ about selling his flat quickly. He's had lots of people come to see it since it went up for sale last week.

5. My sister's \_\_\_\_ with me because I borrowed her favourite jacket without asking her.
6. When I was learning to ski she gave me so many different pieces of advice that I just ended up totally \_\_\_\_\_ .
7. Environmental groups are \_\_\_\_ that the government is serious about tackling the problem of global warming.
8. I'm very \_\_\_\_ to know why Sarah got the job of marketing director. She's only been in the company a few months.
9. I'm afraid I'm fairly \_\_\_\_ in politics and politicians. They all seem to say the same things these days.
10. The fact that he didn't want to answer the police officer's questions made them \_\_\_\_\_ .
11. Julie's mother was quite \_\_\_\_ when they told her they were going to get married in June. They have only been together two months.

**5. Reread the text "Big Ben" and do the test**

1. Before returning to Westminster to hang in its present home, it was refashioned in Whitechapel in \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) 1768    b) 1858    c) 1828
2. An incendiary bomb destroyed the Commons chamber of the Houses of Parliament, but the \_\_\_\_\_ remained intact.  
a) high tower    b) watch tower    c) clock tower
3. The BBC first broadcast the \_\_\_\_\_ on the 31<sup>st</sup> December 1923.  
a) chimes    b) music    c) Christmas music
4. Big Ben is one of London's best-known landmarks, and looks most spectacular at night when the \_\_\_\_\_ are illuminated.  
a) clock    b) clock sides    c) clock faces
5. There are even cells within the clock tower where Members of Parliament can be imprisoned for a breach of \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) criminal responsibility    b) parliamentary etiquette    c) parliamentary privilege
6. Big Ben is an excellent \_\_\_\_\_, which has rarely stopped.  
a) timerecorder    b) timekeeper    c) timer
7. The name Big Ben actually refers not to the clock-tower itself, but to the \_\_\_\_\_ hung within.  
a) fourteen ton bell    b) thirteen ton bell    c) fifteen ton bell
8. This bell came originally from the old Palace of Westminster, it was given to the Dean of St Paul's by \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) William III    b) Richard IV    c) Andreas III
9. Before returning to \_\_\_\_\_ to hang in its present home, it was refashioned in Whitechapel in 1858.  
a) London    b) Lancaster    c) Westminster
10. Big Ben's unique sound was broadcast to the nation and around the \_\_\_\_\_, a welcome reassurance of hope to all who heard it.  
a) Britain    b) London    c) world



## Practice 52

### Grammar: The Past Perfect Tense

#### 1. Word Order of Past Perfect Tense

The Past Perfect Tense минулий перфектний час утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова **to have** у **Past Indefinite** та дієприкметника минулого часу **Past Participle** основного дієслова. Дієслова в **Past Perfect** не змінюються за особами й числами:

**I (he, she, it, we, you, they) had locked the door.** *Я (він, вона, воно, ми, ти, ви, вони) замкнув двері (двері вже замкнені).*

The Past Perfect Tense вживається для вираження дії, що відбулася раніше іншої минулої дії, позначеної дієсловом у **Past Indefinite**:

**I told you I had met her.** *Я казав тобі, що зустрів її (зустрів її раніше, ніж говорив про це).*

**The sun had set.** *Сонце вже зайшло.*

The Past Perfect Tense також вживається для вираження минулої дії, що вже закінчилася до певного моменту в минулому. Цей момент позначається такими словосполученнями: **by two o'clock до другої години; by that time до того часу; by the 1<sup>st</sup> of September до першого вересня** тощо:

**I had read the book by that time.** *Я прочитав книгу до того часу.*

#### Стверджувальна форма:

*Я (ти, ви, ми, вони, він, вона, воно) прочитали цю книжку до 9 години.*

1	2	3	4
Підмет	Допоміжне дієслово	Присудок III форма	Другорядні члени речення
I, you, we, they, he she, it	had	read	the book by 9 o'clock.

#### Заперечна форма:

*Я (ти, ви, ми, вони, він, вона, воно) не прочитали цю книжку до 9 години.*

1	2	3	4	5
Підмет	Допоміжне дієслово	Заперечна частка NOT	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
I, you, we, they, he she, it	had	not	read	the book by 9 o'clock.

#### Питальна форма:

*Чи прочитаєш ти цю книжку до 9 години?*

1	2	3	4
Допоміжне дієслово	Підмет	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
Had	you	read	the book by 9 o'clock?

**Де ти прочитав цю книжку до 9 години?**

1	2	3	4	5
Питальне слово	Допоміжне дієслово	Підмет	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
Where	had	you	read	the book by 9 o'clock?

**Хто прочитав цю книжку до 9 години?**

1	2	3	4
Питальне слово ХТО? WHO?	Допоміжне дієслово	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
Who	had	read	the book by 9 o'clock?

**Past Perfect**

- Дія в минулому відбулася до іншої дії або вказаного моменту часу: **Julia had left by the time Tom came over.**
- Дія повністю завершилася в минулому і має вплив на теперішній час: **Tom was sad because he had failed his exam.**
- Еквівалент минулого часу для **Present Perfect**: **Janet couldn't find her keys, she had lost them.**

**Слова-сигнали**

*for, since, already, by, after, just, yet, before, by the time etc.*

**2. Grammar Exercises**

**1. Put the verbs into the Present Perfect, Past Perfect or Past Indefinite**

- Columbus \_\_\_ (discover) America in 1494.
- Columbus \_\_\_ (not / know) that he (discover) America.
- My Friend just \_\_\_ (phone) me from New York.
- My mother just \_\_\_ (come) home when I \_\_\_ (phone) her. She \_\_\_ (be) at work.
- I \_\_\_ (feel) tired, so I \_\_\_ (go) straight to bed.

**2. Put the verbs into the Past Perfect**

- We \_\_\_ (to translate) this article by five o'clock.
- By the end of the year he \_\_\_ (to learn) to speak Spanish.
- They \_\_\_ (to do) their work by six o'clock.
- We \_\_\_ (to spend) his money by last Tuesday.
- My friend just \_\_\_ (to phone) me from Los Angeles.
- My mother just \_\_\_ (to finish) to write her thesis by 11 o'clock.
- She \_\_\_ (to buy) 3 houses by that time.
- We \_\_\_ (to sell) all the things by Sunday.

**3. Write the negative form**

- We had translated this article by five o'clock.

2. By the end of the year he had learnt to speak Spanish.
3. They had done their work by six o'clock.
4. We had spent his money by last Tuesday.
5. My friend just had phoned me from Los Angeles.
6. My mother just had finished to write her thesis by 11 o'clock.
7. She had bought 3 houses by that time.
8. We had sold all the things by Sunday.

**4. Write the interrogative form**

1. We had translated this article by five o'clock.
2. By the end of the year he had learnt to speak Spanish.
3. They had done their work by six o'clock.
4. We had spent his money by last Tuesday.
5. My friend just had phoned me from Los Angeles.
6. My mother just had finished to write her thesis by 11 o'clock.
7. She had bought 3 houses by that time.
8. We had sold all the things by Sunday.

**5. Choose the options (A, B or C) which has the closest meaning to the underlined word or words**

1.	Jason is tall and <u>slim</u> .	a) fit
		b) thin
		c) ugly
2.	My sister <u>is very busy</u> .	a) is very energetic
		b) hasn't got much free time
		c) has got a great sense of humour
3.	I am <u>confident</u> and I like meeting people.	a) not shy
		b) not stupid
		c) not relaxed
4.	<u>These jeans are great</u> .	a) These jeans are big.
		b) I'm looking for jeans.
		c) These jeans are what I'm looking for.
5.	<u>Matt isn't the tallest person in the class</u> .	a) Matt is very short.
		b) Some students are taller than Matt.
		c) Matt is taller than all other students.
6.	Patrick is a very <u>talented</u> footballer.	a) Patrick likes football a lot.
		b) Patrick is very good at football.
		c) Patrick plays a lot of football.
7.	Donna always wears <u>outrageous</u> clothes.	a) fashionable
		b) comfortable
		c) crazy

**Practice 53**  
**Revision**  
**Test 11**

**Word Quiz**

*spectacular* [spek'tækjʊlə] ефектний, захоплюючий; вражаючий

*pendulum* ['pendjʊləm] маятник; маятниковий важіль

*timekeeper* ['taɪm,ki:pə] годинник, хронометр

*Whitechapel* ['waɪt,tʃæp(ə)l] Уайт-чепел (бідний район Лондона)

*chime* [tʃaɪm] вибивати мелодію (на дзвонах, курантах); дзвонити, дзвеніти; бити, відбивати (про годинник)

*turret* [tʌrɪt] башточка

*incendiary* [ɪn'sendɪəri] запалювальний

*intact* [ɪn'tækt] неушкоджений, непошкоджений, цілий

*reassurance* [ri:ə'sʊ(ə)rəns] заспокоювання, підбадьорення; розрада

*breach* [bri:tʃ] розрив (відносин); порушення (закону, зобов'язання)

**1. Answer the questions**

1. How many dials of the Big Ben clock?
2. What is Big Ben for London?
3. Why is this clock tower named Big Ben?

**2. Translate into English these word-combinations**

маятник та хронометр; неушкоджена башточка; порушення своїх обов'язків; вражаюча башта; чудовий годинник

**3. Translate into English (use Present Perfect)**

1. Я зламав свою ручку.
2. Він вже виїхав з Чернівців.
3. Вона закінчила свою роботу.
4. Племінник із племінницею пішли додому.
5. Ми вже прочитали це завдання.
6. Вони написали 4 підручника.
7. Мій друг пройшов 121 000 кроків під час своєї подорожі.
8. Він ніколи не читав цю книгу.

**4. Write negative form for the following sentences**

1. Sorry, but I have spent all your money.
2. His girlfriend has called to her friends.
3. She has told about that accident.
4. Your parents have received all correspondence.
5. We and our relatives have arrived to the airport.
6. They have seen this DVD.
7. My friend has spoken with his father many hours.
8. He and his stepsister have lost last game.

**5. Write interrogative form for the following sentences**

1. Sorry, but I have spent all your money.
2. His girlfriend has called to her friends.
3. She has told about that accident.
4. Your parents have received all correspondence.
5. We and our relatives have arrived to the airport.
6. They have seen this DVD.
7. My friend has spoken with his father many hours.

**6. Put the verbs into the *Past Perfect***

1. We \_\_\_\_ (to translate) this article by five o'clock.
2. By the end of the year he \_\_\_\_ (to learn) to speak Spanish.
3. They \_\_\_\_ (to do) their work by six o'clock.
4. We \_\_\_\_ (to spend) his money by last Tuesday.
5. My friend just \_\_\_\_ (to phone) me from Los Angeles.
6. My mother just \_\_\_\_ (to finish) to write her thesis by 11 o'clock.
7. She \_\_\_\_ (to buy) 3 houses by that time.
8. We \_\_\_\_ (to sell) all the things by Sunday.

**Practice 54**

**Text: "Statue of Liberty"**

**Read the text "Statue of Liberty"**

Located on a 12 acre island, the Statue of Liberty Enlightening the World was a gift of friendship from the people of France to the people of the United States and is a universal symbol of freedom and democracy. The Statue of Liberty was dedicated on October 28, 1886, designated as a National Monument in 1924 and restored for the centennial on July 4, 1986.

A "time pass" reservation system has been implemented by the National Park Service for visitors who plan on entering the monument. Secondary screening on Liberty Island is required for those entering the monument.

Time passes are available at no cost from the ferry company with the purchase of a ferry ticket. Advance tickets can be ordered (at least 48 hours) by calling the ferry company.

A limited number of time passes are available from the ferry company each day on a first-come, first-served basis. Time passes are not needed to visit the grounds of Liberty Island or the Ellis Island immigration museum.

Ellis Island is part of the Statue of Liberty National Monument. It was added to the National Park System in May of 1965 and through extensive restoration, its main building opened over a quarter century later on September 10, 1990 as a national museum of immigration. Ellis Island is federal property partly within the territorial jurisdiction of the both the States of New York and New Jersey.

American Family Immigration History Centre (AFIHC) at Ellis Island. Official site for Statue of Liberty and Ellis Island Foundation containing manifests of 25

million immigrants, passengers, and crew members who entered New York Harbour between 1892 and 1924.

The only way to get to Liberty Island is by using the Statue of Liberty - Ellis Island Ferry system. Private vessels are not allowed to dock at Liberty and Ellis Islands.

### Vocabulary

**restored** [ri'stɔ:d] *відновлений; який відновився; реставрований*

**centennial** [sen'teniəl] *столітній*

**purchase of a ferry ticket** *купівля білета на пором*

### 1. Answer the questions

1. How can you order advance tickets?
2. When was the Statue of Liberty designated?
3. What number of time passes are available from the ferry company?
4. What anniversary was Statue of Liberty dedicated?
5. Whose federal property is Ellis Island?
6. When was Ellis Island added to the National Park System?
7. Who presented the the Statue of Liberty to the people of the United States?
8. When was the Statue of Liberty restored?
9. What symbol is the Statue of Liberty?
10. What do visitors plan to do in the monument?
11. Why the private vessels are not allowed to dock at Liberty and Ellis Islands?
12. Where is the Statue of Liberty located?

### 2. Find in the text

*обмежена кількість часу -*

*та членів екіпажу -*

*система була здійснена -*

*федеральна власність частково -*

*купівля білету на пором -*

*був доданий до Системи Національних парків -*

*була присвячена -*

*була подарунком на знак дружби -*

*хто планує увійти у статую -*

*відвідати землі острову Свободи -*

### 3. Read the text again and find what statements are *true* and *false*

1. Ellis Island was added to the National Mountain System in May of 1965.
2. A limited number of time passes are available from the ferry company only on weekend on a first-come, first-served basis.
3. Secondary screening on Liberty Island is required for those entering the monument.
4. The only way to get to Liberty Island is by using the Statue of Liberty - Ellis Island Airplain system.
5. 25 million immigrants, passengers, and crew members entered New York Harbour between 1892 and 1924.



6. A “time pass” reservation system has been implemented by the National Park Service for visitors who plan on entering the monument.

7. Ellis Island is federal property partly within the territorial jurisdiction of the both the States of New York and Los Angeles.

8. The Statue of Liberty Enlightening the World Located is situated on a 212 acre island.

Official site for Statue of Liberty and Ellis Island Foundation containing manifests of 125 million immigrants, passengers, and crew members.

10. Private vessels are invited to dock at Liberty and Ellis Islands.

11. The Statue of Liberty was dedicated on April 28, 1886, designated as a National Monument in 1944.

12. The Statue of Liberty Enlightening the World was a gift of friendship from the Spanish people and it is a universal symbol of freedom and democracy.

13. The Statue of Liberty was restored for the centennial on July 4, 1986.

**4. Match the underlined adjectives (1-8) with their correct definitions (a-h)**

1. I really like silk. It feels so smooth.

2. I can't wear wool. It's too itchy for my skin.

3. For the interview I wore a suit and my new shiny leather shoes.

4. I've got some new winter boots with furry inside.

5. Wear something stretchy for the gym class so you can move easily.

6. Be careful on the icy path. It's very slippery.

7. It was a very uncomfortable journey because the road is was so rough.

8. The bed is too soft for me. I need a mattress that supports by back more.

a) has an even surface;

b) has an uneven surface;

c) feels / looks like fur;

d) feels uncomfortable to wear because it irritates your skin;

e) isn't hard or firm, but is easy to press;

f) is slightly elastic;

g) has a bright surface;

h) is wet or difficult to hold / walk on

**5. Reread the text “Statue of Liberty” and do the test**

1. Time passes are not needed to visit the grounds of Liberty Island or the \_\_\_ immigration museum.

a) Statue town      b) Ellis island      c) Monument Island

2. The Statue of Liberty was dedicated on October 28, 1886, designated as a National Monument in \_\_\_.

a) 1924      b) 1014      c) 1956

3. A “time pass” reservation system has been implemented by the \_\_\_ for visitors who plan on entering the monument.

a) Urban Development Department      b) National Park Service      c) Interiory Department

4. Located on a 12 acre island, the Statue of Liberty Enlightening the World was a gift of friendship from the people of \_\_\_ to the people of the United States.  
a) France    b) Germany    c) England
5. Ellis Island was added to the National Park System in May of \_\_\_\_.  
a) 1965    b) 1954    c) 1943
6. Ellis Island is federal property partly within the territorial jurisdiction of the both the States of New York and \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) Los Angeles    b) New Jersey    c) Washington
7. Time passes are available at \_\_\_\_ from the ferry company with the purchase of a ferry ticket.  
a) expensive    b) cheap    c) no cost
8. Official site for Statue of Liberty and Ellis Island Foundation containing manifests of \_\_\_\_ million immigrants, passengers, and crew members.  
a) 25    b) 29    c) 26
9. The only \_\_\_\_ to get to Liberty Island is by using the Statue of Liberty - Ellis Island Ferry system.  
a) road    b) way    c) path
10. Private \_\_\_\_ are not allowed to dock at Liberty and Ellis Islands.  
a) cars    b) vessels    c) plains

**6. Complete the sentences with the names of jobs. The first letter is given**

1. My sister is a shop a\_\_\_ in a shoe shop.
2. George is a f\_\_\_ - he grows a lot of vegetables.
3. My dad is a Maths t\_\_\_ and he works at a secondary school.
4. A m\_\_\_ can repair your car when there is a problem.
5. My aunt is a n\_\_\_ at the local hospital. She looks after sick people.
6. An a\_\_\_ designs lots of different buildings.
7. This man can do difficult operations and he works day and night at his hospital. He is a s\_\_\_\_\_.
8. You call a p\_\_\_ if you have a broken pipe.

**Practice 55**

**Grammar: The Future Perfect Tense**

**1. Word Order of Future Perfect Tense**

**The Future Perfect Tense** майбутній перфектний час утворюється з допоміжного дієслова **to have** у **Future Indefinite** та дієприкметника минулого часу **Past Participle** основного дієслова.

Допоміжне дієслово **to have** змінюється за особами:

ОСОБА	Допоміжне дієслово
I, you, we, they	<i>shall have</i>
he, she, it	<i>will have</i>

**You will have forgotten me by that time.** *До того часу ви мене забудете.*

**I shall have read the story by the time you come back.** *Я прочитаю оповідання до того часу як ти повернешся.*

**Стверджувальна форма:**

*Я (ти, ви, ми, вони) прочитаю цю книжку завтра до 9 години.*

*Він (вона, воно) прочитає цю книжку завтра до 9 години.*

1	2	3	4
Підмет	Допоміжне дієслово	Присудок III форма	Другорядні члени речення
I, you, we, they	shall have	read	the book by 9 o'clock tomorrow.
He, she, it	will have	read	the book by 9 o'clock tomorrow.

**Заперечна форма:**

*Я (ти, ви, ми, вони) не прочитаю цю книжку завтра до 9 години.*

*Він (вона, воно) не прочитає цю книжку завтра до 9 години.*

1	2	3	4	5	6
Підмет	Перше допоміжне дієслово	Заперечна частка NOT	Друге допоміжне дієслово	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
I, you, we, they	shall	not	have	read	the book by 9 o'clock tomorrow.
He, she, it	will	not	have	read	the book by 9 o'clock tomorrow.

**Питальна форма:**

*Чи прочитаєш ти цю книжку до 9 години?*

1	2	3	4	5
Перше допоміжне дієслово	Підмет	Друге допоміжне дієслово	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
Shall	you	have	read	the book by 9 o'clock?

*Де ти прочитаєш цю книжку до 9 години?*

1	2	3	4	5	6
Питальне слово	Перше допоміжне дієслово	Підмет	Друге допоміжне дієслово	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
Where	shall	you	have	read	the book by 9 o'clock?

*Хто прочитає цю книжку до 9 години?*

1	2	3	4
Питальне слово ХТО? WHO?	Допоміжне дієслово	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
Who	will have	read	the book by 9 o'clock?

**Future Perfect**

Дії, що будуть завершені до певного моменту часу: *Max will have returned from Paris by the end of May.*

**Слова-сигнали**

*before, by, when, by the time*

**2. Grammar Exercises**

**1. Put the verbs into the *Future Perfect*, *Future Indefinite* or *Future Continuous***

1. This time tomorrow we \_\_\_\_ (to sit) in the train on our way home.
2. Mr. Dickson \_\_\_\_ (to be) happy to answer your questions.
3. By the time we get to the airport, Tom's plane \_\_\_\_ (already, to arrive).
4. I hope it \_\_\_\_ (to stop) raining by tomorrow morning.
5. \_\_\_\_ (to use) your computer tomorrow afternoon?
6. Before our vacations ends, we \_\_\_\_ (to spend) all our money.
7. He \_\_\_\_ (to get) in touch with you the day after tomorrow.
8. Next Saturday Tom \_\_\_\_ (to read) the newspaper as usually.
9. When we get to school the lesson \_\_\_\_ (to begin).
10. Don't worry! By the time you come back, we \_\_\_\_ (to take) care of everything.
11. I am sure you \_\_\_\_ (to do) well on the test.
12. When Professor Brown retires next month, he \_\_\_\_ (to teach) for 20 years.
13. At midnight tomorrow I \_\_\_\_ (to sleep).
14. Next weekend I \_\_\_\_ (to visit) my relatives in the country.
15. I \_\_\_\_ (to go) to bed after I finish my work.

**2. Put the verbs into the *Future Perfect***

1. We \_\_\_\_ (to translate) the article by 5 o'clock.
2. That plant \_\_\_\_ (to water) this evening.
3. They \_\_\_\_ (to send) it when your telegram arrives.
4. The train \_\_\_\_ (to leave) by the time we get to the station.
5. I \_\_\_\_ (to finish) this work if you come at seven o'clock.
6. We \_\_\_\_ (to spend) all money by the end of the month.
7. He \_\_\_\_ (to copy) all documents by the next morning.
8. They \_\_\_\_ (to take) all exams by the first of July.
9. We \_\_\_\_ (to go) to the cinema by the end of the year.

**3. Write the negative form**

1. We shall have copied the article by 11 o'clock.
2. These flowers will have watered by this morning.
3. Their friends will have sent it when your letter arrives.
4. The plain will have left by the time we get to the airport.
5. We shall have finished this task if you come at seven o'clock.
6. We shall have spent all money by the end of the month.
7. He will have translated all documents by the next morning.
8. They will have taken all exams by the first of July.
9. We shall have watched this DVD by the end of the year.

**4. Write the interrogative form**

1. We shall have copied the article by 11 o'clock.
2. These flowers will have watered by this morning.
3. Their friends will have sent it when your letter arrives.
4. The plain will have left by the time we get to the airport.
5. We shall have finished this task if you come at seven o'clock.
6. We shall have spent all money by the end of the month.
7. He will have translated all documents by the next morning.
8. They will have taken all exams by the first of July.
9. We shall have watched this DVD by the end of the year.

**5. Complete the sentences with the words from the box. There are three extra words**

*boss; earn; e-mail; experience; fit; opinion; pay;  
responsible; travel; voluntary; work*

1. Can you send me an \_\_\_ with Jenny's address?
2. My job is boring: I ask people their \_\_\_ and write down their answers.
3. I never \_\_\_ long hours – I usually go home at three o'clock.
4. Matt works for a \_\_\_ company – he can help you find a cheap tour.
5. Sally wants to gain some \_\_\_ by working this summer as a doctor.
6. Working as a lecturer I \_\_\_ about 3 hundred dollars per week.
7. He doesn't get paid – its \_\_\_ work.
8. In my job, I am \_\_\_ for looking after three little children.

**Practice 56**

**Text "The London Eye"**

**Read the text "The London Eye"**

The London Eye - the Giant Observation Wheel, became operational in January 2000. Standing proud in London's Jubilee Gardens, on the South Bank of the River Thames the British Airways' London Eye, is a focal point of the Nation's celebration of the New Century.

The Wheel is the largest of its kind ever to be built, at a height of 135m (450 feet) and 1600 tonnes; it is a new landmark for London, to mark the new Millennium.

People of all ages from around the country are making special journeys to see this new and exciting giant Wheel and to participate in the excitement of being transported high above London. Visitors to London from abroad, are delighted by this new and novel way of seeing the city from a birds eye view.

As the Wheel is set in motion, you will feel a keen sense of anticipation. The higher it soars, the more celebratory the experience becomes, as you enjoy the breathtaking views from the heart of the city.

Well-known landmarks and buildings of central London are spread out in a great panorama before you; it is fun to see how many you can identify.

Some to look out for are; The Imperial War Museum; The Globe Theatre; The Oval Cricket Ground; The Tate Gallery; Westminster Abbey; The Houses of Parliament and Big Ben; The Tower of London; St Paul's Cathedral; The National Portrait Gallery; Buckingham Palace; The British Museum; The Telecommunications Tower.

Some to look out for are; The Imperial War Museum; The Globe Theatre; The Oval Cricket Ground; The Tate Gallery; Westminster Abbey; The Houses of Parliament and Big Ben; The Tower of London; St Paul's Cathedral; The National Portrait Gallery; Buckingham Palace; The British Museum; The Telecommunications Tower.

The architects of the London Eye are husband and wife team, Julia Barfield and David Marks, winners of the competition for ideas to mark the Millennium; their design was considered to be the most imaginative project conceived.

David and Julia wanted to present not just a monument, but something celebratory, that people could participate in and enjoy. David researched and developed the idea for a giant observation wheel and Julia found the ideal site by drawing a circle round London and finding the dead centre, Jubilee Gardens on the South Bank.

An observation wheel was built for Chicago's Worlds Columbian Exposition in 1893, it became known as the Ferris wheel, after the designer whose name has been synonymous with these wheels ever since. Observation or Ferris wheels, have been included at many of the great expositions throughout the world, and are considered to be traditional structures at great occasions of celebration. David and Julia thought of the wheel as representing the turning of the century.

Three years of work went into the project, planning permission had to be granted, feasibility studies undertaken, financial consultations and all the groundwork needed to get the giant Wheel designed and built. David and Julia hoped to have two and a half years to construct the Wheel, but by the time the finances were in place they were left with only fourteen months. In recognition of their work, the imaginative design and the pleasure it will give to millions of people, the couple have the prize, awarded the MBE.

### **Vocabulary**

*focal* центральний

*delight* [dɪ'laɪt] приносити насолоду; тішити; захоплюватися, бути у захваті, насолоджуватися

*anticipation* [æntɪsɪ'peɪʃ(ə)n] очікування, передбачення, передчуття

*soar* [sɔ:] злітати; набирати висоту; підніматися

*conceive* [kən'si:v] 1) осягати, розуміти; 2) відчувати; 3) задумувати, замишляти; 4) гадати, думати; 5) представляти, уявляти

*feasibility* [fi:zə'bɪlɪtɪ] 1) здійсненність; 2) придатність; 3) можливість, імовірність

*groundwork* ['graʊndwɜ:k] основа; фундамент

*in recognition of* на знак подяки

*MBE (Member of the Order of the British Empire)* Кавалер Ордену Британської імперії



**1. Answer the questions**

1. Who were the architects of the London Eye?
2. Why are the people of all ages making special journeys to see this new and exciting giant Wheel?
3. What are well-known landmarks and buildings of central London spread out in a great panorama before you?
4. How many years did David and Julia hope to have to construct the Wheel?
5. What did Julia Barfield and David Marks want to mark?
7. Where is the London Eye situated?
8. What did David and Julia want to present?
9. What is the height of the Wheel?
10. What landmarks can you identify?

**2. Find in the text**

святкування нацією нового  
століття -  
дослідив і розробив -  
знаходиться в русі -  
є найбільшим серед споруд такого  
типу -  
колесо огляду -

ти можеш впізнати -  
особливу поїздку для того, щоб  
побачити -  
чим вище воно піднімається -  
з висоти пташиного польоту -  
переможці конкурсу -

**3. Read the following statements and determine what are *true* and *false***

1. Well-known landmarks and buildings of eastern London are spread out in a great panorama before you.
2. David and Julia wanted to present not just a monument, but something celebratory.
3. Five years of work went into the project, planning permission had to be granted, feasibility studies undertaken, financial consultations and all the groundwork needed to get the giant Wheel designed and built.
4. Visitors to London from abroad, are delighted by this new and novel way of seeing the village from a birds eye view.
5. The London Eye - the Giant Exhibition Wheel.
6. David and Julia hoped to have three years to construct the Wheel.
7. The Wheel is the largest of its kind ever to be built, at a height of 135m.
8. Julia researched and developed the idea for a giant observation wheel and found the ideal site by drawing a circle round London.
9. Only young people and children are making special journeys to see this new and exciting giant Wheel.
10. The Wheel is a new landmark for London, to mark the Revolution.

**4. Complete the sentences with *by* or *on***

1. A return ticket \_\_\_ the train is \$15.20.
2. Paris is two hours from here \_\_\_ plane.
3. It's about ten minutes to the supermarket \_\_\_ bus.

4. How much is the single ticket \_\_\_\_ the coach?
5. The National park is an hour from here \_\_\_\_ foot.
6. It's more dangerous \_\_\_\_ foot than \_\_\_\_ car.
7. Mary is \_\_\_\_ the plane now. 8. I really hate travelling \_\_\_\_ train.

### 5. Reread the text "The London Eye" and do the test

1. Visitors to London from abroad, are delighted by this new and novel way of seeing the city from a \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a) magnificent height
  - b) height
  - c) birds eye view
2. The Wheel is the largest of its kind ever to be built, at a height of 135m (450 feet) and \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a) 1600 tonnes
  - b) 1200 tonnes
  - c) 2600 tonnes
3. The London Eye - the Giant Observation Wheel, became operational in \_\_\_\_\_ 2000.
  - a) September
  - b) December
  - c) January
4. The higher the Wheel soars, the more celebratory the experience becomes, as you enjoy the \_\_\_\_ from the heart of the city.
  - a) exciting views
  - b) breathtaking views
  - c) enormous views
5. Well-known landmarks and buildings of \_\_\_\_ are spread out in a great panorama before you.
  - a) central London
  - b) northern London
  - c) eastern London
6. Some to look out for are: The Imperial War Museum; The Globe Theatre; The Oval Cricket Ground; The Tate Gallery; \_\_\_\_\_ and others.
  - a) main street of London
  - b) Westminster Abbey
  - c) main square of London
7. The architects of the London Eye are \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a) husband and wife team
  - b) brother and sister team
  - c) father and daughter team
8. David and Julia wanted to present not just a monument, but something celebratory, that people could \_\_\_\_ and enjoy.
  - a) observe around
  - b) participate in
  - c) fly over
9. David and Julia hoped to have \_\_\_\_\_ to construct the Wheel.
  - a) three and a half years
  - b) one and a half years
  - c) two and a half years
10. An observation wheel was built for Chicago's Worlds Columbian Exposition in \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a) 1893
  - b) 1927
  - c) 1954

## Practice 57

### Revision

### Test 12

#### Word Quiz

*restored* [ri'stɔ:d] відновлений; який відновився; реставрований

*centennial* [sen'teniəl] столітній

*purchase of a ferry ticket* купівля білета

**focal** центральний

**delight** [dɪ'laɪt] приносити насолоду; тішити; захоплюватися, бути у захваті, насолоджуватися

**anticipation** [æntɪsɪ'peɪʃ(ə)n] очікування, передбачення, передчуття

**soar** [sɔː] злітати; набирати висоту; підніматися

**conceive** [kən'siːv] 1) осягати, розуміти; 2) відчувати; 3) задумувати, замишляти; 4) гадати, думати; 5) представляти, уявляти

**feasibility** [fiːzə'bɪlɪti] 1) здійсненність; 2) придатність; 3) можливість, імовірність

**groundwork** ['graʊndwɜːk] основа; фундамент

**in recognition of** на знак подяки

**MBE** (*Member of the Order of the British Empire*) Кавалер Ордену Британської імперії

### 1. Answer the questions

1. Who presented the Statue of Liberty to the people of the United States?
2. Where is the Statue of Liberty located?
3. What symbol is the Statue of Liberty?

### 2. Put the verbs into the *Future Perfect*

1. They \_\_\_ (to translate) this text by 22 pm.
2. This work \_\_\_ (to do) by this evening.
3. They \_\_\_ (to receive) it when you depart.
4. The plain \_\_\_ (to leave) by the time they get to the airport.
5. I \_\_\_ (to finish) to copy this text if you allow me.
6. We \_\_\_ (to spend) all money by the end of the week.
7. He \_\_\_ (to write) all exercises by the evening.
8. They \_\_\_ (to pass) their exams by the May.
9. We \_\_\_ (to go) to the theatre by the end of the month.

### 3. Write the negative and interrogative forms

1. We shall have gone to the cinema by the end of the year.
2. That plant will have watered by this evening.
3. They will have sent it when your telegram arrives.
4. The train will have left by the time we get to the station.
5. I shall have finished this work if you come at seven o'clock.
6. We shall have spent all money by the end of the month.
7. He will have copied all documents by the next morning.
8. They will have taken all exams by the first of July.
9. We shall have translated the article by 5 o'clock.

### 4. Read the answers and complete the questions with an interrogative pronoun

1. \_\_\_ is your father from? - *He is from Portugal.*
2. \_\_\_ is the English exam? - *It is on Thursday.*

3. \_\_\_\_ are you? – *I am twenty.*
4. \_\_\_\_ brothers have you got? – *I have got three brothers.*
5. \_\_\_\_ is your favourite DVD? – *My favourite DVD is Titanic.*
6. \_\_\_\_ is your best friend? – *My best friend is Michael.*

**5. Complete the sentences with the comparative or superlative form of the adjectives in brackets**

1. I think that my sister is \_\_\_\_ than I am. (talented)
2. What's the \_\_\_\_ thing to do now? (important)
3. I am a \_\_\_\_ student than my best friend. (good)
4. The changing room on the second floor is \_\_\_\_ than this one. (big)
5. I am sure Eve is the \_\_\_\_ girl in my class. (pretty)
6. My uncle is probably the \_\_\_\_ driver in the world! (bad)
7. I think that Maths is \_\_\_\_ than English. (difficult)

**Practice 58**

**Culture of Professional Communication**

**Read the following texts**

**A Book of Etiquette** - In the early 1900s, Emily Post wrote a book of etiquette. The book consisted of the “*shoulds*” and “*should nots*” of living in “high society”. For example, young women were told to always wear white gloves when they went to a dance. This was so that they would never touch a man’s hand. Men were told to always walk on the street side of the sidewalk when they walked with a woman. This was so that the woman would not get dirty from the carriages driving by on the street. The rules of etiquette has certainly changed since the early 1900s.

**Formal Party** - All formal parties are subdivided into day-time parties and evening parties with sitting at the table and without sitting.

Formal party with sitting at the table one can shortly defines by the term “*banquet*” and without sitting - “*fourchette*”.

According to the purpose of the party and its solemnity receptions are: day-time parties – a glass of champagne, a glass of wine, breakfast; evening parties – dinner, fourchette, supper, cocktail, banquet-tea or coffee.

**Attributes of Such Parties**

If the party is of high level in the invitation card one should indicate the form of clothes: a dinner-jacket or a tail-coat (a frock for a man, an evening dress (a frock) or as variant – a cocktail dress – for a woman. Englishmen sometimes write: “Undress” – you may come to the formal party in daily clothes.

To official parties it is better to come in a frock. Jewelry – in moderate amount. For the day-time parties it is better to put on bijouterie or silver adornment. To breakfast or cocktail you can come in a small little felt or silk hat and you may not to take it off during a party.

You should take off gloves right away on your coming. For day-time parties silk or kid-gloves are more suitable and for evening parties you can put on lacy or other

gloves. Pay attention to this rule: the shorter are the sleeves of a dress so longer must be gloves.

**Etiquette in Business** - Social behaviour and manners are important factors in communication. The etiquette for communicating is more effective (sometimes) when conducting international business.

- Never give a gift of liquor in Arab countries.
- In Arab countries never turn down food or drink; it's an insult to refuse hospitality. But don't be too quick to accept either, a ritual refusal ("I don't want to put you to any trouble".) is expected before you finally accept.
- In Pakistan remember the Moslems pray 5 times a day, so don't be surprised when, in the midst of negotiations, your partners excuse themselves and conduct prayers.
- In Africa and in India, people may distrust you and avoid doing business with you if you get strictly to business. Africans need plenty of time to get to know their future partners and are suspicious of those who are in a hurry.

You will see how important it is to know other cultures, use their experience in your own country.

### Vocabulary

*glove* [glʌv] рукавичка

*sidewalk* ['saɪdwɔ:k] тротуар

*carriage* ['kærɪdʒ] екіпаж; карета

*formal party* офіційний прийом

*banquet* ['bæŋkwɪt] банкет

*solemnity* [sə'lemnɪti] урочистість

*reception* прийом (гостей, офіційних представників)

*dinner-jacket* смокінг

*tail-coat* фрак

*frock* [frɒk] вечірній чоловічій костюм / вечірня жіноча сукня

*adornments* [ə'dɔ:nmənt] прикраса

*felt* фетр

*kid-gloves* лайкові рукавички

*lacy* [leɪsi] мереживний; схожий на мереживо

*turn down* відмовлятися

*insult* [ɪn'sʌlt] ображати

*refuse* [rɪ'fju:z] відмовлятися

*hospitality* [hɒspɪ'tælɪti] гостинність, привітність

*accept* [ək'sept] приймати; погоджуватися; визнавати, допускати, схвалити

*pray* [preɪ] молитися

*negotiations* [ni,gəʊʃi'eɪʃ(ə)ns] переговори

*avoid* [ə'vɔɪd] уникати, цуратися, ухилятися

*plenty* ['plenti] велика кількість, достаток; статок

*suspicious* [sə'spiʃəs] підозріливий, недовірливий

*experience* [ɪk'spi(ə)riəns] (життєвий) досвід

**1. Answer the questions**

1. What does a frock mean?
2. What formal parties do you know?
3. When was a book of etiquette written?
4. What did a book of etiquette consist of?
5. Why were young women told to always wear white gloves?
6. Why are social behaviour and manners important factors in communication?
7. What do Moslems do 5 times a day?
8. Why do people distrust you and avoid doing business with you in Africa and in India?

**2. Find in the text**

*відмовлятися від їжи та напоїв –  
зверніть увагу на це правило -  
коли гості сидять за столом -  
срібні прикраси -  
тобі слід зняти рукавички -  
можуть не довіряти вам -  
стороні тротуару -  
в середині переговорів -  
вечірня сукня -  
щоб жінка не забруднилася -  
келих вина -  
ніколи не торкнутися руки чоловіка -*

**3. Read the text again and tell what statements are *true* and *false***

1. Frenchmen sometimes write: “Undress” – you may come to the formal party in daily clothes.
2. Never give a gift of food in Arab countries.
3. This was so that the woman would get dirty from the carriages driving by on the street.
4. For day-time parties silk or kid-gloves are more suitable.
5. Pay attention to this rule: the shorter are the sleeves of a dress so longer must be gloves.
6. For the day-time parties it is better to put on gold or platinum adornment.
7. During breakfast or cocktail parties you should take off your hat.
8. All formal parties are subdivided into morning parties, day-time parties and evening parties.
9. Young women were told to always wear black and white gloves when they went to a dance.
10. To official parties it is better to come in daily clothes.
11. In Pakistan remember the Moslems pray 5 times a day.
12. To breakfast or cocktail you can come in a big leather hat.
13. For evening parties you can put on white gloves.
14. Social behaviour and manners are not important factors in communication.



15. In Arab countries never turn down food or drink.

### Additional Vocabulary

*apply for a visa* - запросити візу

*be liable to duty* - підлягає оподаткуванню

*bill* – рахунок

*come to an agreement* - прийти до згоди

*conclude (make) an agreement (strike a deal)* - укласти угоду

*customs fee* - митні збори

*declare* - задекларувати

*duty free* - не підлягає оподаткуванню

*embassy* - посольство

*get through the customs* - пройти митний догляд

*luggage / baggage* - багаж

*make an appointment with smb* - призначити ділову зустріч з кимось

*open-date ticket* - білет з відкритою датою

*pay cash* - платити готівкою

*pay customs fee* – заплатити митні збори

*representative* представник; уповноважений

*return ticket, round ticket* (амер. *two-way ticket*) - зворотний квиток

*single ticket* (амер. *one-way ticket*) - квиток в одну сторону

### 4. Translate into English

1. Ці подарунки не підлягають оподаткуванню.
2. Ви повинні запросити візу в посольстві 5 місяців тому.
3. Директори 5, 19 та 27 шкіл не дійшли згоди.
4. Їхній менеджер не вміє укладати угоди.
5. Вам потрібно задекларувати свої речі.
6. На 11 годину ранку в мене призначена зустріч з одним із вчителів.
7. Дайте, будь ласка, рахунок.
8. Ми повинні заплатити митні збори та пройти митний догляд.

### Special Vocabulary

адміністратор - *administrator; (business) manager*

банківський касир - *bank teller*

бухгалтер - *accounting officer; accountant; bookkeeper*

віце-президент із збуту - *vice-president*

віце-президент з питань маркетингу - *vice-president*

викладач з ... - *lecturer of ...*

вчитель математики — *mathematics teacher*

вчитель музики — *music teacher* (брит. *master*)

вчитель танців — *dancing-master*

вихователь (в дитсадочку)(педагог) - *teacher, master; educator*

вчитель - *teacher, master*

головний бухгалтер - *controller*

директор (керівник) **director, manager**  
директор (школи) - **principal head, principal, headmaster, headmistress**  
завідуючий відділом (кафедри) – **head of department**  
завідуючий відділом кадрів – **director of personnel of department**  
касир **cashier**  
керівник - **executive**  
менеджер – **manager**  
наставник – **tutor, instructor, teacher; monitor, coach**  
президент - **president**  
представник (компанії) – **representative of a (company)**  
програміст - **(computer) programmer, developer of programs**  
програміст web-сторінок - **websmith**  
репетитор – **coach, tutor**  
системний адміністратор (мережі) - **system administrator**  
управляючий (управитель) - **manager, director**  
шкільний вчитель - **schoolmaster**

**5. Read the visit cards and answer the following questions**

1. Whose card is this?
2. What is he?
3. What company is he from?
4. What city is he from?
5. What is his telephone number?
6. What is the address of his company?

**Then make up own visit cards:**

1)

<b>CONTINENTAL EQUIPMENT</b>	
<b>John G. Smith</b> <b>Financial Director</b>	
<b>9 North Road, Brighton, BN1, 5JF, England</b> <b>Phone: (0273) 543359 Fax: (0273) 559364</b>	

2)

<b>LESIA UKRAINKA EASTERN EUROPEAN NATIONAL</b> <b>UNIVERSITY</b> <b>INSTITUTE OF FOREIGN PHILOLOGY</b>	
<b>Dr. Semenovych Olena</b> <b>Associate Professor, Dean</b>	
<b>Naberezhna Street, 46</b> <b>Volyn region, Lutsk</b> <b>43021, Ukraine</b>	<b>Phone: +38 (0332) 24-84-47</b> <b>mob.: +38 (096) 111-26-65</b> <b>nunka65@hotmail.com</b>

3)

<b>COMPUTER ACADEMY "KROK"</b>	
<b>Borodianskyi Yevhen System Administrator</b>	
<b>Konovaltsia Street, 59 Kharkiv, 52500, Ukraine</b>	<b>Phone: +38 (0561) 35-34-77 mob.: +38 (068) 015-75-44 yevhen.b@ukr.net</b>

**6. Find the American equivalent**

*subway, cab, apartment, corporation, downtown, highway,  
attorney, baggage, soccer, railroad, round-trip ticket, salesman, ticket-  
office, one-way ticket, fall, gas, schedule*

Return ticket, shop assistant, company, autumn, petrol, city centre, underground, time-table, luggage, taxi, football, railway, motorway, lawyer, flat, single ticket, booking office.

**7. Try to determine the meaning of these statements concerning the attitudes by nonverbal means such as gestures, eye movements, or posture and impressions from how people look, dress, speak**

<i>a) shaking hands, touching, etc</i>	<i>d) smiling, blinking, browning, looking someone straight in the eye, looking down, etc.</i>
<i>b) crossing your arms, sitting up straight, etc.</i>	<i>e) sighs, нодух, yawns зівок, knocking loudly or softly at the door, clicking a ballpoint pen, etc.</i>
<i>c) hair, make up, suit, tie, etc.</i>	<i>f) sounding cool, friendly дружній, familiar фамільярний, serious, etc.</i>
<i>g) politics, business, sport, family, etc.</i>	

1. Your expression ....
2. The noises you make ...
3. Body contact ...
4. Body language ...
5. Your clothes and appearance ...
6. What you talk about ...
7. Your tone of voice ...

**8. In Russia they sit down at cocktail parties. In China the most important guest is seated facing the door. In Japan a tip is not expected; in France it is an insult not to leave one. How culturally aware are you at the table? Try the quiz below**

1. In *Greece/Finland* people frequently stop for lunch at 11.30 in the morning.
2. In *Switzerland/Brazil* it's common to be up to two hours late for a party.
3. In *Portugal/the USA* a business lunch can last up to three and half hours.
4. In *Japan/Ukraine* the soup is often eaten at the end of the meal.
5. In *France/Britain* cheese is normally served after the dessert.

6. In *American/German* restaurants you may be asked if you want a bag for the food you can't eat.
7. In *Arab/Asian* countries you must wait for your host to serve you the main meat dish.
8. In *Mexico/Belgium* you should keep both hands on the dinner table where they can be seen.
9. At a *Turkish/Chinese* dinner table it is extremely impolite to say how hungry you are.
10. The *Japanese/British* sometimes need to be offered more food three times before they will accept.
11. *American/Latin* executives like to be invited to your home for dinner.
12. In *Belgium/Spain* at 11 o'clock dinner is quite normal.
13. In *Asian/Arab* countries food is usually eaten with just three fingers of the right hand.
14. In *African/Asian* countries it is the host who decides when the guests should leave.

**9. Check your knowledge of the etiquette, in order not to be confused. Read the following rules and fill in the gaps. Use the word combinations in the box below. Example: *Elbows are not put* on the table while eating.**

1) ... <i>with a fork and a knife.</i>	10) ... <i>on the table while eating.</i>
2) ... <i>with a special knife.</i>	11) ... <i>beneath the table.</i>
3) ... <i>on knees while eating.</i>	12) ... <i>from the cup.</i>
4) ... <i>by hands.</i>	13) ... <i>slowly and carefully.</i>
5) ... <i>in tall wine glasses.</i>	14) ... <i>before hot meals.</i>
6) ... <i>after eating a chicken.</i>	15) ... <i>across the table.</i>
7) ... <i>on the table before meals.</i>	16) ... <i>after everything is eaten.</i>
8) ... <i>after a hot meal, salads and drinks.</i>	17) ... <i>at first and then poured.</i>
9) ... <i>to a red wine.</i>	18) ... <i>by hands.</i>

Cheese is served ...;  
 hands are washed ...;  
 fruits are taken ...;  
 bread is never passed ...;  
 food is chewed ...;  
 dishes are not passed ...;  
 meat is eaten ...;  
 napkin is laid ...;  
 fish is cut ...;

wine is probed ...;  
 elbows are not put ...;  
 conversations are held ...;  
 champagne is served ...;  
 dessert is given ...;  
 a fork and a knife are put ...;  
 tea is not squelched ...;  
 legs are not crossed ...;  
 salad is eaten ....

**10. Do the quiz "Around the World Trip"**

1. <i>China</i>	You are invited to a person's house. Which of the following may cause offence?	a) Blowing you nose. b) Refusing an offer of food. c) Not taking your shoes off before entering the house.
2. <i>Saudi Arabia</i>	You want to hire a car to tour the country. Is this allowed?	a) Yes, but you must take a test first. b) Yes, but only if you are not a woman. c) No, tourists have to travel by camel.
3. <i>Finland</i>	You are planning to relax in a Finnish sauna. What should you wear?	a) Nothing. b) A towelling robe. c) A bath hat.

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

<b>4. Cyprus</b>	On a village tour, a local resident offers you a <i>glyco</i> . What should you do with it?	a) Eat it: it is a dessert. b) Ride it: it is a bicycle. c) Wear it: it is a national dress.
<b>5. Morocco</b>	You would like to visit a mosque (a national Muslim church). Will you be allowed to go inside?	a) Yes, but you are to remove your shoes. b) Yes. c) You may enter only if you're a Muslim.
<b>6. Sweden</b>	You go out for a meal. How many glasses of a wine can you drink before driving back home?	a) Any amount: there are no drink-driving laws. b) Two. c) None.
<b>7. Spain</b>	You want to taste the local cuisine. How late can you eat out?	a) Restaurants close at 9 p.m., so you have to finish your meal by this time. b) Spanish restaurants stay open all night. c) You can eat very late, because Spaniards often eat after 11 p.m.
<b>8. USA</b>	You are peacefully drinking a can of beer in Central Park. But suddenly you are approached by the police. Why?	a) You are not allowed to drink alcohol in Central Park. b) You should use a glass or a straw. c) It is forbidden to drink alcohol in Central Park unless the bottle or can is covered.
<b>9. Singapore</b>	You suggest a piece of chewing gum to your tour guide, but he looks shocked. Why?	a) Chewing gum is forbidden by law. b) Tour guides are forbidden to accept gifts. c) Chewing gum is given to animals.
<b>10. Japan</b>	Staying in a Japanese hotel you decide to relax in traditional, shared bath. What mustn't you do in a bath tub?	a) Stay too long. b) Talk to other people there. c) You shouldn't wash yourself.

### Practice 59 Grammar: Passive Voice

#### 1. Word Order of Active Voice

Ми розглядали англійські дієслова у **активному стані the Active Voice**.  
Порядок слів у активному стані:

1	2	3
Підмет	Присудок	Додаток
I Я	wrote написав	the letter. листа.
She Вона	paints малює	the pictures. картини.

#### 2. Word Order of Passive Voice

**Пасивний стан the Passive Voice** вживається для того, щоб описати дію, не називаючи діючу особу. У центрі уваги – особа або предмет, над яким відбувається дія:

**She is always invited to parties. Її завжди запрошують на вечірки.**

Якщо розглянути з граматичної точки зору тексти, наукові статті, анотації, резюме, то можна побачити, що більшість речень складена у **пасивному стані**. Спробуємо зрозуміти яким чином утворюється **пасивний стан**.

Усі часові форми пасивного стану в англійській мові утворюються з відповідних часів допоміжного дієслова та дієприкметника минулого часу основного дієслова.

Як завжди, для кращого розуміння складаємо таблицю:

Часові форми	Допоміжне дієслово	Присудок – дієприкметник минулого часу <i>Past Participle</i> основного дієслова
<i>the Present Indefinite Tense</i>	am, is, are	worked <u>gone</u>
<i>the Past Indefinite Tense</i>	was, were	played <u>known</u>
<i>the Future Indefinite Tense</i>	shall be will be	stopped <u>written</u>
<i>the Present Continuous Tense</i>	am being is being are being	finished <u>spoken</u>
<i>the Past Continuous Tense</i>	was being were being	started <u>blown</u>
<i>the Present Perfect Tense</i>	have been has been	visited <u>chosen</u>
<i>the Past Perfect Tense</i>	had been	celebrated <u>drunk</u>
<i>the Future Perfect Tense</i>	shall have been will have been	washed <u>eaten</u>

У пасивному стані існує тільки дві часових групи **Continuous: Present Continuous** и **Past Continuous**; форма **Future Continuous** - відсутня. Також у пасивному стані відсутні часові групи **Perfect Continuous**.

А тепер розглянемо утворення пасивного стану дивлячись на таблицю.

ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
<i>the Present Indefinite Tense</i>	
You always <b>inform</b> me in time. <i>Ти завжди інформуєш мене вчасно.</i>	I <b>am</b> always <b>informed</b> by you in time. <i>Я завжди проінформований тобою вчасно.</i>
He <b>concludes</b> the agreements every day. <i>Він укладає угоди кожен день.</i>	The agreements <b>are concluded</b> by him every day. <i>Угоди укладаються ним кожен день.</i>
<i>the Past Indefinite Tense</i>	
He <b>informed</b> me in time. <i>Він проінформував мене вчасно.</i>	I <b>was</b> <b>informed</b> by him in time. <i>Я був проінформований ним вчасно.</i>
They <b>concluded</b> the agreements yesterday. <i>Вони уклали угоди вчора.</i>	The agreements <b>were concluded</b> by them yesterday. <i>Ці угоди були укладені ними вчора.</i>
<i>the Future Indefinite Tense</i>	



## Practical Grammar of the English Language

They <b><u>will conclude</u></b> the agreement tomorrow. Вони <b>укладуть</b> угоду завтра.	The agreement <b><u>will be concluded</u></b> by them tomorrow. Угода <b>буде укладена</b> ними завтра.
<b><i>the Present Continuous Tense</i></b>	
They <b><u>are concluding</u></b> the agreement now. Вони <b>зараз укладають</b> угоду.	The agreement <b><u>is being concluded</u></b> by them now. Угода <b>зараз укладається</b> ними.
<b><i>the Past Continuous Tense</i></b>	
They <b><u>were concluding</u></b> the agreement at 4 o'clock. Вони <b>укладали</b> угоду о 4 години.	The agreement <b><u>was being concluded</u></b> by them at 4 o'clock. Угода <b>укладалася</b> ними о 4 години.
<b><i>the Present Perfect Tense</i></b>	
They <b><u>have just concluded</u></b> the agreement. Вони <b>щойно уклали</b> угоду.	The agreement <b><u>has been just concluded</u></b> by them. Угода <b>щойно укладена</b> ними.
<b><i>the Past Perfect Tense</i></b>	
They <b><u>had concluded</u></b> the agreement by 3 o'clock. Вони <b>уклали</b> угоду до 3 години.	The agreement <b><u>had been concluded</u></b> by them by 3 o'clock. Угода <b>укладена</b> ними до 3 години.
<b><i>the Future Perfect Tense</i></b>	
They <b><u>will have concluded</u></b> the agreement by that time. Вони <b>укладуть</b> угоду до того часу.	The agreement <b><u>will have been concluded</u></b> by them by that time. Угода <b>буде укладена</b> ними до того часу.

Зверніть увагу, що пасивний стан вимагає певних прийменників: **by, with, in**. Наприклад:

**Country music is played with guitars.** Музика в стилі „кантрі” грається (виконується) на гітарах.

**Actor was met with a storm of applause.** Актора зустріли аплодисментами.

**The post-card was sent by mail.** Листівка послана поштою.

**These souvenirs were made by hand.** Ці сувеніри були зроблені руками (власноруч).

**Her picture was drawn in pencil.** Її картина намальована олівцем.

**We were woken up by the noise.** Ми прокинулися від галасу.

**Заперечна форма пасивного стану утворюється таким чином:**

1	2	3	4	5
Підмет	Допоміжне дієслово	Заперечна частка <i>not</i>	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
I	am	not	invited	to the party.
The radio	was	not	invented	by Popov in 1895.

Якщо допоміжне дієслово складається з кількох слів (**shall be, have been**), на перше місце ставиться перше допоміжне дієслово:

1	2	3	4	5	6
Підмет	Перше допоміжне дієслово	Заперечна частка <i>not</i>	Друге допоміжне дієслово	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
I	shall	not	be	invited	to the party.
I	have	not	been	invited	to the party.

При утворенні **питальної форми** порядок слів змінюється:

1	2	3	4
Допоміжне дієслово	Підмет	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
Am	he	invited	to the party?
Was	the radio	invented	by Popov in 1895?

Якщо допоміжне дієслово складається з кількох слів (**shall be, have been**), на перше місце ставиться перше допоміжне дієслово:

1	2	3	4	5
Перше допоміжне дієслово	Підмет	Друге допоміжне дієслово	Присудок	Другорядні члени речення
Shall	he	be	invited	to the party?
Have	I	been	invited	to the party?

### 3. Grammar Exercises

#### 1. Translate the following sentences into English. Put the verbs into the **Passive Voice**

1. Деревя оточили будинок.
2. Банк зберігає ваші гроші.
3. Мої друзі користуються комп'ютером.
4. Я запам'ятовую популярну музику.
5. Поет пише віршований текст пісні.
6. Цей вірш був написаний Тарасом Шевченко.
7. Всі статті перекладені моїм другом.
8. Мост побудований у 1956 році.
9. Яблучний пиріг спечений мамою.
10. Ця книга написана поетом.
11. Небо вкрито хмарами.
12. Неправильний номер був даний мені моїми друзями.
13. Помилка зроблена секретарем.
14. Права водія вимагаються поліцейським.

#### 2. Add the sentences with the verbs in the required voice: *to build, to damage, to find, to invent, to make, to pay, to show, to speak, to make, to steal*

1. Paper \_\_\_ from wood.
2. There was a fire at the hotel last week. Two rooms \_\_\_\_.
3. Many different languages \_\_\_ in India.
4. These houses are very old. They \_\_\_ about 5 years ago.
5. Many American programmes \_\_\_ on British television.

6. "Is this a very old film?" "Yes, it \_\_\_ in 1949.
7. My car \_\_\_ last week. The next day it \_\_\_ by the police.
8. The transistor \_\_\_ in 1948.
9. She has a very good job. She \_\_\_ \$300 a month.

**3. Add the sentences with the verbs in the required voice**

1. In our country psychology \_\_\_ in universities. (to teach)
2. The ball \_\_\_ in the river yesterday. (to find)
3. Twenty-six cars \_\_\_ from the city centre since October. (to steal)
4. Where \_\_\_ the next Olympics \_\_\_\_ ? (to hold)
5. Alcoholic drinks \_\_\_\_ to children under 16. (not to sell)
6. The hole in my roof \_\_\_ next Friday. (to repair)
7. Mary \_\_\_ about the accident yet. (not to tell)

**4. Change the Active Voice sentences into the Passive Voice ones**

1. They must prepare the food tonight.
2. Someone attacked Sam on Saturday night.
3. The maid makes beds every morning.
4. He will write the letter next week.
5. Gary had finished the project.
6. Catherine is baking the birthday cake.
7. The police were watching the burglars.
8. You should complete your homework tonight.
9. They teach three languages at that school.
10. Mrs. Jefferson was tidying the kitchen.

**5. Translate the following sentences with the help of the Future Perfect Passive**

1. Домашню роботу буде закінчено до 6 години вечора. / *finished / this / six / will have been / homework / by / pm*
2. Який з цих магазинів буде зачинено до кінця місяця? / *closed / of / these / end / month? / which / the / of / shops / will have been / by / the*
3. Листи не будуть прочитані до твого повернення. / *your / won't have been / the / read / return / letters / by*
4. Наша пральна машина буде полагоджена до завтра. / *tomorrow / our / by / washing / repaired / will has/have been / machine*
5. Я впевнений, що до 20 червня останній іспит буде складений студентами. / *passed / last / that / the / I / exam / the / June / am / students / sure / by / of / will have been / by twentieth / the*

**6. Choose a suitable phrase to accompany the passive constructions**

<i>by the Sales manager</i>	<i>in pencil</i>	<i>by famous writer</i>	<i>with clouds</i>
<i>with a storm of applause</i>	<i>by air mail</i>	<i>by hand</i>	<i>by the Ex-President</i>

1. This book was written \_\_\_\_.
2. The weather's gloomy. The sky is covered \_\_\_\_.
3. Ukrainian souvenir boxes are made \_\_\_\_.

4. The actors were met \_\_\_\_.
5. Her pictures are done \_\_\_\_.
6. Bohdan was greeted \_\_\_\_.
7. The Christmas cards were sent \_\_\_\_.
8. The agreement has been signed \_\_\_\_.

**7. Make up the passive constructions**

e.g. <i>You delayed me</i>	<i>I was delayed by you.</i>
1. You assured me that everything was all right.	<i>I was ____.</i>
2. You gave me the wrong number.	<i>The wrong number ____.</i>
3. You made a mistake.	<i>A mistake ____.</i>
4. You have caused me a lot of troubles.	<i>I have ____.</i>
5. We have turned down your invitation.	<i>Your invitation ____.</i>
6. We have received no payment.	<i>No payment ____.</i>
7. We sent cheques regularly on Mondays.	<i>Cheques ____.</i>

**Practice 60  
Job Hunting**

**Read the text “Job Interview”**

When you go for a job interview, make sure you arrive on time. An employer will form a poor first impression if you show up late. If you realise you may be delayed, call ahead and explain the problem.

During the interview the employer will try to find out what kind of person you are, what experience you have, and how you can fit into the job situation.

After you have got an appointment, review the information that you wrote on the application form and resume. Be prepared to explain your skills and abilities specifically. Bring a resume to the interview. The resume is a printed sheet that tells about your education and work experience. It serves as a written record for the employer.

Go to the interview alone; don't take your friends or children with you. Plan to arrive about ten minutes before the appointment time. Wear the proper clothes. Do not appear in outfits that are too fancy. You should have a neat, clean appearance to make a good impression.

During the interview be honest and modest about yourself.

Pay attention as the interviewer talks; answer all the questions clearly and intelligently. Try not to seem bored, even if you realise that the job doesn't interest.

Here are some of the questions that employers try to answer when they are interviewing future employees:

- What is this person really like?
- Does this person have the skills to do the job I have available?
- Will this person fit the team I have now?
- How quickly can this person learn?
- Will this person be willing to work hard?

Finally, be prepared to ask your own questions about the job, know the type of work and benefits you want from the position. Write down these questions before you go to the interview. An employer will be interested if you ask intelligent questions

about the work you may be doing.

At the close of the interview, express your thanks and be sure that the interviewer knows how to contact you if he or she wants to hire you.

The Resume Format

- Objective
- Summary
- Experience
- Education
- References

The chronological resume format is the most popular format used by persons, especially those who write their own resume.

### Vocabulary

*job interview* співбесіда

*impression* [im'preʃ(ə)n] враження; уявлення

*delay* [di'lei] затримка

*ahead* [ə'hed] заздалегідь

*fit* [fit] придатний; підходящий; відповідний; належний, гідний

*review* [ri'vju:] розгляд; огляд; перегляд

*application form* бланк заяви

*resume* [re(i)zjumei] 1) резюме; зведення; конспект; підсумки, висновки; 2) коротка автобіографія (представляється кандидатом на посаду)

*employer* [im'plɔiə] наймач, роботодавець; хазяїн; хазяйка; агент по найму

*outfits* одяг, повний комплект одягу

*fancy* ['fænsi] вигадливий, химерний, фантастичний

*modest* ['mɒdist] скромний; стриманий; соромливий

*bore* [bɔ:] набридати

*employee* [emplɔi'i:] робітник; службовець; той, хто працює по найму

*skill* [skil] майстерність, вправність; досвід; спритність, уміння; кваліфікація, професія; талант, дар, здібності

*available* [ə'veiləb(ə)l] придатний, корисний; наявний, доступний

*benefit* ['benɪfɪt] перевага, привілей; користь, благо; вигода

*position (post)* посада

*hire* наймати на роботу

*applicant* - претендент

*bonus* - премія

*enterprise* - підприємство; завод, фабрика; фірма, компанія

*fire* - звільняти, виганяти з роботи

*hold the position* - займати посаду

*obligation (syn. duty)* – обов'язок

*opening position (vacancy)* - вакансія

*position (post)* - посада

*personnel office* – відділ кадрів

*red-tape* - канцелярська робота

*reference* – 1) посилання; 2) рекомендація, відгук

*responsibility* – 1) відповідальність; 2) обов'язок

*salary* – зарплата службовців

*staff* – штат (працівників); персонал

*upgrading* - підвищення кваліфікації

*wages* – зарплата робітників

*work under pressure* - працювати під тиском

### 1. Answer the questions

1. What impression will an employer form if you show up late?
2. What kinds of documents have you got for the interview?
3. What things do you pay attention during the interview?
4. Why do you wear the proper clothes?
5. What time do you plan to arrive?
6. What kinds of questions do you ask during the interview?
7. What does the resume mean?
8. What actions are necessary at the close of the interview?
9. Why will the interviewer want to hire you?

### 2. Find in the text

*що ти написав у бланку заяви -  
приблизно на 10 хвилин раніше -  
погане перше враження -  
намагатися дізнатися, яка ви  
людина -  
вид роботи і її переваги -  
друкований аркуш паперу -*

*який досвід у вас є -  
навіть, якщо ви зрозуміли. що -  
Чи здатна ця людина виконувати цю  
роботу -  
під час співбесіди з майбутніми  
працівниками -*

### 3. Reread the text “Job Interview” and do the test

1. After you have got an appointment, review the information that you wrote on the \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) applying form and resume    b) application form and resume    c) application form and resume
2. The resume is a \_\_\_\_\_ that tells about your education and work experience.  
a) typed sheet    b) printed sheet    c) printed resume
3. During the interview the employer will try to find out what kind of person you are, what \_\_\_\_\_ you have, and how you can fit into the job situation.  
a) experience    b) skills and abilities    c) gifted person
4. Pay attention as the interviewer talks; answer all the questions \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) correctly and clearly    b) clearly and intelligently    c) brightly and correctly
5. You should have a neat, clean appearance to make a good \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) expression    b) impression    c) look
6. When you go for a job interview, make sure you arrive \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) at time    b) about time    c) on time
7. Finally, be prepared to ask your own questions about the job, know the type of work and \_\_\_\_\_ you want from the position.  
a) advantages    b) salary    c) benefits
8. Go to the interview alone; don't take your friends or \_\_\_\_\_ with you.  
a) parents    b) relatives    c) children



9. An employer will be interested if you ask \_\_\_\_ questions about the work you may be doing.

a) intelligent    b) correct    c) right

10. At the close of the interview, express your thanks and be sure that the interviewer knows how to \_\_\_\_ you if he or she wants to hire you.

a) ask    b) contact    c) propose

#### 4. Translate into English

1. Познайомтесь, це наші завідувачі кафедр.
2. Вона не є претендентом на посаду керівника.
3. Він завжди комплектує кадри нашого підприємства.
4. Наш інститут має вакансії викладача історії та викладача зарубіжної літератури.
5. Я хотів би поговорити з системним адміністратором.
6. Керівник приймає на роботу та звільняє.
7. Їй не подобається працювати під тиском.
8. Він не виносить канцелярської роботи.
9. Цей робітник має великий досвід.
10. Ви знайдете всю інформацію у відділі кадрів.

#### Vocabulary for Making up a Resume

<i>вакансія</i>	<i>vacancy</i>
<i>вік</i>	<i>age</i>
<i>гонорар</i>	<i>fee</i>
<i>здібності</i>	<i>abilities</i>
<i>дата народження</i>	<i>date of birth</i>
<i>посада</i>	<i>position</i>
<i>досягнення, успіхи</i>	<i>accomplishments</i>
<i>зайнятість</i>	<i>employment</i>
<i>якості (освіта + досвід роботи)</i>	<i>job qualification</i>
<i>кваліфікований</i>	<i>qualified</i>
<i>особисті дані</i>	<i>personal information</i>
<i>місце народження</i>	<i>place of birth</i>
<i>призначити зустріч</i>	<i>to make an agreement</i>
<i>знайти місце роботи</i>	<i>to find a position</i>
<i>подати заяву</i>	<i>to apply</i>
<i>обов'язки</i>	<i>responsibilities, duties</i>
<i>закінчив з червоним дипломом (відзнакою)</i>	<i>graduated with high honors</i>
<i>досвідчений</i>	<i>experienced</i>

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

<i>відмінити зустріч</i>	<i>to cancel an agreement</i>
<i>поступити на роботу в компанію</i>	<i>to join the company</i>
<i>претендувати</i>	<i>to claim</i>
<i>покликання</i>	<i>calling</i>
<i>робота</i>	<i>job</i>
<i>робота на повний робочий день</i>	<i>full-time employment</i>
<i>робота за сумісництвом</i>	<i>part-time employment</i>
<i>працювати в якості</i>	<i>to work in the capacity of</i>
<i>сімейний стан</i>	<i>marital status</i>
<i>одружений</i>	<i>married</i>
<i>холостий</i>	<i>single</i>
<i>розведений</i>	<i>divorced</i>
<i>вдівець</i>	<i>widower</i>
<i>сильні сторони, талант</i>	<i>personal strengths</i>
<i>страховка</i>	<i>insurance</i>
<i>вміння</i>	<i>skills</i>
<i>прізвище, ім'я, по-батькові</i>	<i>full name</i>
<i>кар'єра</i>	<i>career</i>
<i>мета</i>	<i>goal, objective</i>

### Cliché and Expressions for Job Interview

<i>Я дізнався з вашого оголошення</i>	<i>I see from your advertisement in...</i>
<i>Я дізнався від ділових партнерів...</i>	<i>I have learned from business associates...</i>
<i>Я хотів би отримати цю посаду.</i>	<i>I'd like to apply for this post.</i>
<i>Будь ласка, надішліть більш детальну інформацію щодо цієї посади разом із формою заяви про влаштування на роботу.</i>	<i>Please send me further details of the post together with the application.</i>
<i>Як ви можете побачити з автобіографії, що додається...</i>	<i>As you will see from the enclosed CV (curriculum vitae)...</i>
<i>В мене досить великий досвід роботи у цій сфері.</i>	<i>I have considerable experience in this type of work.</i>
<i>Я вважаю, що відповідаю вимогам для цієї посади.</i>	<i>I feel I can meet the requirements of this post.</i>
<i>Крім того, я брав участь у деяких конференціях стосовно цієї теми.</i>	<i>I have also attended several conferences on this subject.</i>
<i>Я вільно володію французькою та німецькою мовами.</i>	<i>I speak fluent French and German.</i>
<i>на даний час я працюю в експортній фірмі.</i>	<i>I am currently working for an export firm.</i>
<i>Я шукаю подібне місце роботи.</i>	<i>I am looking for a similar post.</i>
<i>Зараз я хочу змінити роботу.</i>	<i>Now I wish to change my job.</i>
<i>В 2008 році я був звільнений за скороченням штату.</i>	<i>I was made redundant in 2008.</i>
<i>Моя спеціальність...</i>	<i>I have qualifications in...</i>
<i>В мене диплом за спеціальністю...</i>	<i>I have a diploma in...</i>
<i>В мене вчений ступінь...</i>	<i>I have a degree in...</i>
<i>Я друкую із швидкістю ... знаків за хвилину.</i>	<i>My typing speed is... per minute.</i>
<i>В мене є досвід роботи з комп'ютером.</i>	<i>I can operate the computer.</i>
<i>Я народився у ...</i>	<i>I was born in...</i>
<i>Я вчився в університеті в ... де вивчав основну спеціальність ... та другу спеціальність ...</i>	<i>I went to University in... where I studied... as my major and ... as my minor.</i>
<i>В 2007 році мене призначили на посаду керівника відділу.</i>	<i>I was promoted to department manager in 2007.</i>
<i>Я здав державні іспити із відзнакою.</i>	<i>I passed the State exam with distinction.</i>

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

<i>Потім я працював ... років у фірмі ...</i>	<i>Then I worked for... years for a firm...</i>
<i>Я провів ... років за кордоном.</i>	<i>I spent... years abroad.</i>
<i>Я хочу працювати в більш крупній організації з міжнародними зв'язками.</i>	<i>I wish to work for a larger organization with international links.</i>
<i>В мене спеціальність секретаря із знанням іноземної мови.</i>	<i>I was trained as a bilingual secretary.</i>
<i>З цього часу я не працюю.</i>	<i>I have been unemployed since then.</i>
<i>Якщо ви захочете запросити мене на співбесіду, я можу прийти в будь-який час.</i>	<i>Should you wish to invite me for an interview, I can come to be interviewed at any time.</i>
<i>Дозвольте перенести зустріч пізніше.</i>	<i>Could I come to interview at a later date?</i>
<i>Я буду готовий зустрітися з 14 червня.</i>	<i>I shall be available from the 14th June onwards.</i>
<i>Я додаю копії відгуків двох моїх попередніх роботодавців і копії моїх дипломів.</i>	<i>I enclose copies of references from my last two employers, and copies of my diplomas.</i>
<i>Прізвища двох поручителів вказані нижче.</i>	<i>The names of two references are given below.</i>
<i>Я із задоволенням надам вам будь-які відомості, які зможуть знадобитися.</i>	<i>I would be pleased to provide you with any further information you may require.</i>
<i>Додаю конверт із зворотною адресою.</i>	<i>I enclose a stamped addressed envelope.</i>
<i>Я додаю моє резюме, де ви знайдете повну інформацію щодо моєї кваліфікації і досвіду роботи.</i>	<i>I enclose a CV, which gives full details of my qualification and work experience.</i>

**5. If you decide to apply for a job in the western countries, you will probably need to form four documents: an Application Form, a Letter of Interest (or Covering Letter), a Resume and a Thank-You Letter. This is a way how to do it**

### **a) an Application Form**

<b>Personal</b>			
<b>Name</b>	<i>Volodymyr Tkachenko</i>		
<b>Address</b>	<i>Kharkiv, Soborna Str. 6, apt. 28</i>	<b>Phone No.</b>	<i>(041) 567-18-11 (home)</i>
<b>Do you have a valid driver's licence</b>		<b>yes</b>	<b>no</b>
<b>Marital status</b>	<i>married</i>	<b>single</b>	<b>of dependents</b>
		<i>a son and a daughter</i>	
<b>Education</b>			
<b>Name of School</b>	<b>Year graduated</b>		<b>Course taken or Degree</b>
<i>Kyiv University</i>	<i>1987</i>		<i>M.Sc. in Economics</i>
<b>Languages</b>			
<b>Ukrainian</b>	<i>excellent</i>	<b>good</b>	<b>fair</b>
<b>English</b>	<i>excellent</i>	<b>good</b>	<b>fair</b>
<b>German</b>	<i>excellent</i>	<b>good</b>	<b>fair</b>
<b>Experience (give present or last position first)</b>			
<b>Company</b>		<b>Address</b>	
<i>Plc Wood Production Company, the Department of International Trade</i>		<i>Mukachevo, Naberezhna Str. 12</i>	
<b>Types of business</b>		<b>Employed (month and year)</b>	
<i>Preparing projects, search of new partners</i>		<i>from September, 1, 2003 – to present</i>	
<b>Position(s) held</b>		<b>Supervisor's name</b>	
<i>Vice-president of Production</i>		<i>Petrenko Oleksandr</i>	

*Practical Grammar of the English Language*

<i>Why did you leave</i>					
<i>I have moved to Kharkiv</i>					
<i>Company</i>			<i>Address</i>		
<i>Plc Marketing Company, the Department of Marketing</i>			<i>Mukachevo, Polybotka Str. 45</i>		
<i>Types of business</i>			<i>Employed (month and year)</i>		
<i>Developing new products, investigating marketing</i>			<i>from October, 10, 1995 – to September, 1, 2003</i>		
<i>Position(s) held</i>			<i>Supervisor's name</i>		
<i>Senior Manager</i>			<i>Chumakivskyi Andrii</i>		
<i>Why did you leave</i>					
<i>Upgrading</i>					
<i>Company</i>			<i>Address</i>		
<i>Plc Marketing Company, the Department of Marketing</i>			<i>Mukachevo, Polybotka Str. 45</i>		
<i>Types of business</i>			<i>Employed (month and year)</i>		
<i>Sale of production</i>			<i>from April, 2, 1989 – to September, 8, 1995</i>		
<i>Position(s) held</i>			<i>Supervisor's name</i>		
<i>Manager</i>			<i>Chumakivskyi Andrii</i>		
<i>Why did you leave</i>					
<i>Upgrading</i>					
<i>Company</i>			<i>Address</i>		
<i>Plc Marketing Company, the Department of Marketing</i>			<i>Mukachevo, Polybotka Str. 45</i>		
<i>Types of business</i>			<i>Employed (month and year)</i>		
<i>Mastering new skills and abilities</i>			<i>from November, 1, 1985 – to April, 1, 1989</i>		
<i>Position(s) held</i>			<i>Supervisor's name</i>		
<i>Sales representative</i>			<i>Chumakivskyi Andrii</i>		
<i>Why did you leave</i>					
<i>Upgrading</i>					
<i>Personal references</i>					
<i>Name</i>	<i>Petrenko Oleksandr</i>	<i>Address</i>	<i>Kharkiv, Soborna Str. 56, Apt. 45</i>	<i>Phone No.</i>	<i>(046) 445-22-36</i>

**b) a letter of interest (or Covering Letter)**

Dear sir or madam,

I graduated from Kyiv State University in 1987. I worked at Mukachevo Plc Wood Production Company last year. I was the Vice-president of production of the Department of International Trade. My responsibilities were preparing projects and search of new partners.

I am interested in working in the TST Company as an Executive. Working in companies I gained experiences sales and developing new products, preparing projects, search of new partners. In your Company I could execute as an Administrator.

If you are interested in cooperation please inform me at the above address.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Sincerely yours,

\_\_\_\_\_  
Tkachenko Volodymyr

**c) a resume**

<p style="text-align: center;"><b><i>Volodymyr Tkachenko</i></b> <b><i>Soborna Str. 6, apt. 28</i></b> <b><i>Kharkiv, 45976</i></b> <b><i>Tel: (041) 567-18-11 (home)</i></b> <b><i>Mobile phone: 8-050-345-54-324</i></b></p>	
<b>Objective</b>	A position as an Executive of the TST Company
<b>Summary</b>	20 years of experience in all routine work in economic field. Perfect knowledge of Ukrainian, Russian, English, German languages and knowledge of computer
<b>Education</b>	Kyiv State University (1987).
<b>Experience</b>	Plc Wood Production Company, the Department of International Trade. Preparing projects, search of new partners (Fall 2003 – present). Plc Marketing Company, the Department of Marketing. Developing new products, investigating marketing (Fall 1995-2003). Plc Marketing Company, the Department of Marketing. Sale of production (Spring 1989–1995). Plc Marketing Company, the Department of Marketing. Mastering new skills and abilities (Fall 1985-1989).
<b>Personal</b>	Arrived in Ukraine May, 1980. Ukrainian subject. Married, two children
<b>References</b>	Available upon request

**d) a Thank-You Letter**

<p style="text-align: center;"><b><i>Mrs. Tetiana Golovichenko</i></b> <b><i>Director of Personnel</i></b> <b><i>TST Company</i></b> <b><i>186, Ozerna Str.</i></b> <b><i>Kharkiv, 45000</i></b></p> <p>Dear Mrs. Golovichenko, Thank you for your time and attention during my interview with you last week. I appreciated the opportunity to discuss my qualifications and aspirations with you. I hope that all questions were answered to your satisfaction; however, I would be happy to supply any further information you may need. I am very interested in the growth potential of the position we discuss, and I hope you will consider me as a serious candidate. I am looking forward to hearing from you soon. Sincerely yours,</p> <hr/> <p>Volodymyr Tkachenko Soborna Str. 6, apt. 28 Kharkiv, 45976 Tel: (041) 567-18-11 (home) Mobile phone: 8-050-345-54-324</p>
--

## 6. Sample of Letter of Recommendation

Dear Mrs. Woodson:

Peter Barns was a student in three of my travel courses since the 1996 semester. He was always an outstanding student.

Mr. Barns demonstrated his thorough grasp of the subject matter in his class performance as well as in written work. His assignments were always executed with punctuality. Moreover, he was an enthusiastic participant in class discussions and helped make the courses rewarding experiences for everyone.

Therefore, I can recommend Mr. Barns, without hesitation, for the position of assistant in your travel agency.

Yours truly,

**7. Project 6: Read the patterns of documents in exercises 5 and 6 and try to write own documents of the same kind**

## Practice 61

### Revision

### Test 13

#### Word Quiz

**glove** [glʌv] рукавичка

**sidewalk** ['saɪdwɔ:k] тротуар

**carriage** ['kærɪdʒ] екіпаж; карета

**formal party** офіційний прийом

**banquet** ['bæŋkwɪt] банкет

**solemnity** [sə'lemnɪti] урочистість

**reception** прийом (гостей, офіційних представників)

**dinner-jacket** смокінг

**tail-coat** фрак

**frock** [frɒk] вечірній чоловічій костюм / вечірня жіноча сукня

**adornment** [ə'dɔ:nmənt] прикраса

**felt** фетр

**kid-gloves** лайкові рукавички

**lacy** [leɪsi] мереживний; схожий на мереживо

**turn down** відмовлятися

**insult** [ɪn'sʌlt] ображати

**refuse** [rɪ'fju:z] відмовлятися

**hospitality** [hɒspi'tælɪti] гостинність, привітність

**accept** [ək'sept] приймати; погоджуватися;

допускати, схвалити

**pray** [preɪ] молитися

**negotiations** [ni,gəʊʃi'eɪʃ(ə)ns]

переговори

**avoid** [ə'vɔɪd] уникати, утратися, ухилятися

**plenty** ['plenti] велика кількість, достаток; статок

**suspicious** [sə'spiʃəs] підозріливий, недовірливий

**experience** [ɪk'spi(ə)riəns] (життєвий) досвід

**apply for a visa** - запросити візу

**be liable to duty** - підлягає оподаткуванню

**bill** - рахунок

**come to an agreement** - прийти до згоди

**conclude (make) an agreement (strike a deal)** - укладати угоду

**customs fee** - митні збори

**declare** - задекларувати

**duty free** - не підлягає оподаткуванню

**embassy** - посольство

**get through the customs** - пройти митний догляд

**luggage / baggage** - багаж



<b>make an appointment with smb</b> - призначити ділову зустріч з кимось	<b>modest</b> ['mɒdɪst] скромний; стриманий; соромливий
<b>open-date ticket</b> - білет з відкритою датою	<b>bore</b> [bɔ:] набридати
<b>pay cash</b> - платити готівкою	<b>employee</b> [em'plɔɪ'i:] робітник; службовець; той, хто працює по найму
<b>pay customs fee</b> – заплатити митні збори	<b>skill</b> [skɪl] майстерність, вправність; досвід; спритність, уміння; кваліфікація, професія; талант, дар, здібності
<b>representative</b> представник; уповноважений	<b>available</b> [ə'veɪləb(ə)l] придатний, корисний; наявний, доступний
<b>return ticket, round ticket</b> (амер. <b>two-way ticket</b> ) - зворотний квиток	<b>benefit</b> ['benɪfɪt] перевага, привілей; користь, благо; вигода
<b>single ticket</b> (амер. <b>one-way ticket</b> ) - квиток в одну сторону	<b>position (post)</b> посада
<b>job interview</b> співбесіда	<b>hire</b> наймати на роботу
<b>impression</b> [ɪm'preʃ(ə)n] враження; уявлення	<b>applicant</b> - претендент
<b>delay</b> [dɪ'leɪ] затримка	<b>bonus</b> - премія
<b>ahead</b> [ə'hed] заздалегідь	<b>enterprise</b> - підприємство; завод, фабрика; фірма, компанія
<b>fit</b> [fɪt] придатний; підходящий; відповідний; належний, гідний	<b>fire</b> - звільняти, виганяти з роботи
<b>review</b> [rɪ'vju:] розгляд; огляд; перегляд	<b>hold the position</b> - займати посаду
<b>application form</b> бланк заяви	<b>obligation (syn. duty)</b> – обов'язок
<b>resume I</b> [rɪ'zju:m] 1) одержувати, брати назад; знову знаходити; 2) відновлювати, продовжувати (роботу, розповідь); 3) підбивати підсумок, резюмувати; II [re(i)zju:meɪ] 1) резюме; зведення; конспект; підсумки, висновки; 2) коротка автобіографія (представляється кандидатом на посаду)	<b>opening position (vacancy)</b> - вакансія
<b>employer</b> [ɪm'plɔɪə] наймач, роботодавець; хазяїн; хазяйка; агент по найму	<b>position (post)</b> - посада
<b>outfits</b> одяг, повний комплект одягу	<b>personnel office</b> – відділ кадрів
<b>fancy</b> ['fænsɪ] вигадливий, химерний, фантастичний	<b>red-tape</b> - канцелярська робота
	<b>reference</b> – 1) посилання; 2) рекомендація, відгук
	<b>responsibility</b> – 1) відповідальність; 2) обов'язок
	<b>salary</b> – зарплата службовців
	<b>staff</b> – штат (працівників); персонал
	<b>upgrading</b> - підвищення кваліфікації
	<b>wages</b> – зарплата робітників
	<b>work under pressure</b> - працювати під тиском

### 1. Answer the questions

1. What does a frock mean?
2. What formal parties do you know?
3. Why were young women told to always wear white gloves?
4. What do Moslems do 5 times a day?

## 2. Translate into English

1. Я – представник компанії Мері Кей.
2. Ці речі підлягають оподаткуванню.
3. Мені потрібний зворотний квиток.
4. Це наш багаж.
5. Вам потрібно заплатити готівкою.
6. Його домашнє завдання завжди виконано ним вчасно.
7. Ці вірші пишуться нею кожен день.
8. Її твір був написаний 3 роки тому.
9. Цей портрет був написаний відомим художником.
10. Резюме зараз читається роботодавцем.
11. Він – хороший робітник.
12. Вона займає посаду менеджера.
13. В нього гарна зарплатня та премії.
14. Роботодавець приймає на роботу нових вчителів.
15. Які ваші обов'язки?
16. Заповніть, будь ласка, бланк заяви та покажіть ваше резюме.

## 3. Translate the following sentences

1. Сьюзан хоче знати, чи не бачив ти її файл.
2. Хтось стукає в двері.
3. Ваш багаж тут, а де її?
4. Він нічого не сказав.
5. Вони користуються своїм фотоапаратом.
6. Вона часто розмовляє сама з собою.
7. Вона нічого не знає.
8. Я порізався.
9. Ми зустрінемося у Боба вдома.
10. Він закінчив школу у віці 16 років.
11. Чи поїдеш ти кудись на вихідні?
12. В Німеччині діти отримують подарунки на Великдень.
13. Я ходжу до школи 5 разів на тиждень.
14. Він – з України.

## 4. Circle the correct tense

1. I'm afraid I can't make it tonight. I \_\_\_\_\_ the estate agent at 7 o'clock.  
a) see   b) am seeing   c) have seen   d) have been seeing
2. The film \_\_\_\_\_ at 7:30.  
a) has been starting   b) has started   c) is starting   d) starts
3. He \_\_\_\_\_ to find a cleaning woman for a month now.  
a) has been trying   b) tries   c) is trying   d) has tried
4. Look! You \_\_\_\_\_ coffee all over my desk!  
a) have been spilling   b) have spilt   c) were spilling   d) spill
5. He \_\_\_\_\_ the property section of the newspaper every day, but he still hasn't found anything.  
a) has been reading   b) is reading   c) have read   d) read

## 5. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct present tense

1. She *is moving* house next week.

2. Carl and Mary are looking for a new house. The landlord \_\_\_\_ (evict) them from their flat.
3. \_\_\_\_ (you/wait) a long time?
4. They \_\_\_\_ (convert) the old mill into a beautiful new home at the moment.
5. Water \_\_\_\_ (freeze) at 0°C.
6. Her flight \_\_\_\_ (arrive) tonight at 7 pm.
7. \_\_\_\_ (you/sign) the contract for the house next week?
8. The Earth \_\_\_\_ (become) warmer and warmer.
9. The bus \_\_\_\_ (come) every ten minutes.
10. Jack and Maggie \_\_\_\_ (still/search) for the perfect house.
11. Bob can't move house now because he \_\_\_\_ (sign) a two-year contract.

## Practice 62 On a Business Trip

### Read the text "Going Abroad"

In order to go to a foreign country you will need a visa. An application form can be obtained at the embassy. Instructions for filling it in are given with each form. You will need a form for each person.

Once you have completed the form, you bring or send it to the country embassy together with your passport, a passport-sized photograph and an official invitation to visit the country.

**Customs Formalities** - Before boarding the plane, you are requested to present a valid passport together with a customs declaration ensuring that you are not violating any of your country's law. That's why it is important to know the existing regulations concerning the export of goods and currency. Upon arrival in a foreign country, you will have your passport inspected by the immigration service. Occasionally you may have your luggage checked by a custom officer. This is done to prevent importation of goods which for various reasons are undesirable to the country's authorities.

Bringing things illegally from one country to another is called smuggling. The smuggling or unlawful importation of the goods which are restricted as well as failure to declare such items is a violation of law and results in fines or other penalties.

The importation of some items is limited for different reasons. For example, to prevent the entry of dangerous agricultural pests, plants, soil, plant products, meats, alive animals or animal products are not allowed.

You also must declare the total value of all gifts and commercial items and if their value exceeds the determined sum, you will pay duty.

### Vocabulary

**fill in** заповнювати (анкету); вписувати

**boarding** ['bɔ:diŋ] посадка

**request** [ri'kwest] просити; пропонувати, рекомендувати

**valid** ['vælid] дійсний, що має силу

**customs declaration** митна декларація

**violate** ['vaɪəleɪt] порушувати

*existing regulations* діючі правила; діюче законодавство  
*immigration service* іміграційна служба  
*occasionally* [ə'keɪz(ə)nəli] зрідка, час від часу, іноді  
*custom officer* митник  
*authorities* влада, право розпорядження, адміністрація; власті, органи влади  
*illegally* незаконно, незаконним шляхом  
*smuggling* контрабанда; незаконне ввезення або вивезення  
*failure* невиконання, недогляд  
*fine* [faɪn] штраф; пеня  
*penalty* покарання, стягнення  
*agricultural pests* сільськогосподарські шкідники, шкідливі комахи, паразити  
*commercial* торговельний, торговий  
*duty* мито, акциз, податок  
*car / carriage* (Am.) - вагон  
*I can't help any* - нічим не можу допомогти  
*chambermaid, maid* – покоївка  
*reservation* – резервування номеру  
*reserved seats car* – плацкартний вагон  
*rush hours* – години пік  
*see somebody off* – проводити когось  
*suite* [swi:t] – номер люкс  
*the hotel is full* – вільних місць немає  
*travel light* – мандрувати без речей  
*vacant room* – вільний номер  
*vacate the room* – звільнити номер

### 1. Translate into English. Use the Active Vocabulary

1. У нашому готелі немає вільних місць.
2. Мені потрібний номер люкс.
3. Моїй сестрі дійсно не подобається когось проводити.
4. Він не виносить години пік.
5. Ми завжди подорожуємо без речей.
6. У вас є вільні номери?
7. Мій батько купив білет у плацкартний вагон.
8. Ви повинні звільнити номер до 9 ранку.
9. Моя тітка працює покоївкою.

### 2. Complete the sentences with the following answers

<i>How long are they staying?</i>		<i>Are there any seats available?</i>		<i>When can the tickets come?</i>	
<i>When do they plan to leave?</i>		<i>What are the options?</i>		<i>Are there any British Airways flights about the time?</i>	
<b>Susan</b>	Grand Tour Agency. Susan Sharp speaking.				
<b>Hans</b>	Hello, Susan. This is Hans Bradley. I need to send two of our sales managers to Rome next week. _____ ?				

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

<b>Susan</b>	OK. _____?
<b>Hans</b>	Monday October 14 <sup>th</sup> .
<b>Susan</b>	And if you want to book a return flight I must ask you: _____?
<b>Hans</b>	Four days. They would like to come back on the night of the 17 <sup>th</sup> . _____?
<b>Susan</b>	Let me have a look. There is a flight at 8.50 p.m. with British Airlines.
<b>Hans</b>	_____?
<b>Susan</b>	Fortunately, there are. I've just called it up on the screen. Shall I reserve you two right now?
<b>Hans</b>	Yes, please. And make it Business Class, OK? _____?
<b>Susan</b>	In three or four days. I'll send them to you as soon as they arrive.

### 3. Make up your own Customs Declaration

*Keep for the duration of your stay in Ukraine or abroad. In case you lose this Declaration, you may be deprived of the right to transfer all the items mentioned in this Declaration across the border of Ukraine.*

*Persons giving false information in the Customs Declaration or to the Customs officers shall render themselves liable according to law of Ukraine.*

#### CUSTOMS DECLARATION

*Full name **Petrovskyi Oleh Kyrylovych***

*Citizenship **Ukrainian***

*Arriving from **Ukraine***

*Country of destination **Netherlands***

*Purpose of visit (business, tourism, private, etc.) **private***

*My luggage (including hand luggage) submitted for Customs inspection consists of **4** pieces.*

*In my luggage and with me I have:*

*1. Weapons of all descriptions and ammunition **no***

*2. Narcotics or narcotics paraphernalia **no***

*3. Poisonous, radioactive and explosive substances **no***

*4. Antiques and objects of art (painting, drawing, icons, sculptures, etc.) **no***

*5. Ukrainian currency, Ukrainian State Loan Bonds, Ukrainian State Lottery Tickets (in figures / in words) **I have got 950 UAH (nine hundred and fifty hrivnias)***

*6. Foreign currency (bank notes, exchequer bills (казначейський вексель), coins), payment vouchers, (cheques, bills, letters of credit, etc.) securities (цінні папери) (shares, bonds, etc.) in foreign currency, precious metals (gold, silver, platinum, metals of platinum group) in any form of condition, crude and processed natural precious stones (diamonds, rubies, emeralds, sapphires, and pearls, jewellery and other articles made of precious metals and stones or fragments thereof, as well as estate papers:*

<b>Description</b>	<b>Amount/quality</b>	<b>In figures / in words</b>	<b>For official use</b>
Pounds sterling			
US Dollars	1270	<i>one thousand two hundred and seventy</i>	<i>for private use</i>
Euro	900	<i>nine hundred</i>	<i>for private use</i>
Golden / silver / platinum chain	1	<i>one</i>	<i>for private use</i>
Golden / silver / platinum ring	5	<i>five</i>	<i>for private use</i>
Golden / silver / platinum earrings	<i>no</i>	-	-



## Practical Grammar of the English Language

Golden / silver / platinum bracelet	no	-	-
Golden / silver / platinum breastpin	no	-	-
<p><i>I am aware that in addition to the object listed in the Customs Declaration I must submit for inspection: printed matter, manuscripts, films, audio and video tapes or cassettes, magnetic media (i.e., computer disks, etc.), postage stamps, fine arts items, means of self-defence, foodstuff, high-frequency equipment (високочастотне обладнання), weapons other than firearms, as well as mineralogical and paleontological samples.</i></p> <p><i>I also declare that my luggage sent separately consists of - 3 pieces.</i></p>			
Date <b>23.02.2019</b>		Owner of luggage _____	
		(signed)	

**4. Speaking practice. You have to fly from London to Athens and then to Istanbul where you have some appointments. What questions will you ask in the airport inquire office? (Look at the airport time-table)**

Depart	Flight	Arrive	Price (P)
London (Heathrow) – Athens			
07.50	BR 250	14.25	315.25
08.10	LZ 171	15.05	330.50
Damascus – Bangkok			
19.55	SU 213	22.15	85.10
Istanbul – Beirut			
15.50	LO 191	18.05	73.75
16.30	TU 233	18.45	91.96
Athens – Damascus			
14.55	SV 131	17.40	88.70
16.15	PM 102	19.15	88.10
Istanbul – Ankara			
14.20	LY 220	15.45	78.00
17.25	QM 110	18.35	82.75
Athens – Istanbul			
14.15	GF 810	15.30	40.16
15.35	BG 331	16.55	48.91

**Plan other trips: Damascus – Bangkok; Athens – Ankara; Athens - Bangkok**

### 5. Project 7 “Declaration Form”

## Practice 63 Text: “Hotels”

### Read the text “Hotels”

Hotels are divided into some classes.

- 1. Luxe Hotels** are the most expensive. They are for millionaires.
- 2.** Less expensive hotels are the **Hotels of Class Charming Town House**, which combine good service with comparatively moderate price.
- 3.** The 3<sup>rd</sup> class is **inexpensive hotels** situated mostly around of the large railway stations.



4. The 4<sup>th</sup> class includes **Boarding Houses, Bed & Breakfast (B&B)** and **inns**.

5. The fifth class – are **the cheapest hotels: Youth Hotels, Youth Holiday Centres, and Country Guest Houses**.

To price for accommodation adds VAT (*Value Added Tax*), it makes up 17.5% of the price. Cost of breakfast often includes into cost of accommodation.

There are two variants of breakfast:

1) frugal continental breakfast (tea or coffee and a bun with butter and jam);

2) good or substantive English breakfast (starter – maize, (corn) or oatmeal flakes with milk, juice, etc. plus the main course – fried eggs with fat and ham, tomatoes, white bread etc.).

A tip as a rule includes in to a bill in hotels and some restaurants. If a tip doesn't include into a bill, one should “give a tip” 10-15% from sum of account.

### Vocabulary

*luxe* [lʌks] люкс, розкішний

*moderate* середній

*Boarding Houses* мебльовані

кімнати з харчуванням

*inn* готель (за містом)

*accommodation* розміщення

*VAT (Value Added Tax)* ПДВ

(податок на додану вартість)

*frugal* ['fru:g(ə)l] ощадливий,

економний; скромний, невибагливий

*substantive* ['sʌbst(ə)ntɪv] міцний,

грунтовний, солідний; постійний;

значний, істотний

*oatmeal flakes* вівсяні пластівці

*tip* чайові

### 1. Read the text

Very often it's in hotel that you have to enter into some detailed conversation in a foreign language. Sometimes you can witness many humorous notices in European hotels. Read the following announcements and have a good time.

<i>Please to bath inside the tub Japanese hotel</i>	<i>We take your bags and send them in all directions Airline, Copenhagen</i>
<i>Waiters be collected from here. (They had in fact meant trays not waiters.) Hotel, Finland</i>	
<i>Please do not feed the animals. If you have any suitable food, give it to the guard on duty Zoo, Hungary</i>	
<i>Teeth extracted by the latest methodists Dentist's advertisement, Hong Kong</i>	
<i>Ladies are requested not to have children in the bar Norwegian hotel</i>	<i>Ladies, leave your clothes and spend the afternoon having a good time Italian hotel laundry</i>
<i>No trespassing without permission Private school</i>	<i>Specialist in women and other diseases Doctor's surgery, Rome</i>
<i>The Manager has personally passed all the water served here Hotel, Acapulco</i>	
<i>Are you an adult that cannot read? If so, we can help Poster</i>	<i>Open seven days a week, and weekends too Restaurant</i>
<i>Do not activate with wet hands Automatic hand dryer in public lavatory</i>	<i>Persons are prohibited from picking flowers from any but their own graves Cemetery</i>

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

<p style="text-align: center;"><i>For your convenience, we recommend courteous, efficient self-service Supermarket, Hong Kong</i></p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><i>It is forbidden to enter a woman even a foreigner if dressed as a man Temple, Bangkok</i></p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><i>This hotel is renowned for its peace and solitude. In fact, crowds from all over the world flock here to enjoy its solitude Hotel brochure, Italy</i></p>	
<p style="text-align: center;"><i>You are welcome to visit the cemetery where famous Russian and Soviet composers, artists and writers are buried daily except Thursday Hotel, Moscow (opposite Russian Orthodox Monastery)</i></p>	
<p style="text-align: center;"><i>It is strictly forbidden on our Black Forest Camping Site that people of different sex, for instance, men and women, live together in one tent unless they are married with each other for this purpose Black Forest, Germany</i></p>	
<p style="text-align: center;"><i>Coles and heats: if you want condition of warm air in your room, please control yourself Hotel air-conditioner instructions, Japan</i></p>	

### 2. Read the sample of Hotel Reservation Form and make up your own

<p><b>RESERVATION FORM</b></p> <p>March 29, 2018 – April 2, 2018</p> <p><i>International Practical and Scientific Conference</i></p>	
<p><i>Arrival Date</i>    29.03.2018</p>	<p><i>Time</i></p>
<p><i>Departure Date</i>    02.04.2018</p>	
<p><i>Name(s)</i>    Zhurakivskiy Petro</p>	
<p><i>Firm or Organization</i>    Lviv State University of Humanities</p>	
<p><i>Street</i>    Mlynivska, 49</p>	
<p><i>City</i>    Lviv</p>	
<p><i>State</i>    Ukraine</p>	
<p><i>Please check accommodations desired:</i></p> <p>Single \$ _____+</p> <p>Twin \$ _____</p> <p>Suite \$ _____</p> <p><i>(rates do not include 8% hotel tax)</i></p>	

### 3. You need a room in the hotel. Translate your questions into English

<b>Clerk</b>	<i>Good morning, Sir. Can I help you?</i>
<b>You</b>	Скажіть, що вам потрібно одномісний номер і континентальний сніданок на один тиждень.
<b>Clerk</b>	<i>I am sorry, sir. I am afraid we have no rooms available at the moment.</i>
<b>You</b>	Спитайте, чи можна зняти номер люкс.
<b>Clerk</b>	<i>Let me see ... . Yes, there are some rooms.</i>
<b>You</b>	Спитайте скільки коштує такий номер.
<b>Clerk</b>	<i>120 pounds a night.</i>
<b>You</b>	Скажіть, що це для вас дорого.
<b>Clerk</b>	<i>Unfortunately, I can't help any.</i>
<b>You</b>	Спитайте, чи немає в місті більш дешевих готелів.
<b>Clerk</b>	<i>You may try the Northern Star Hotel. It's near the station on Davies street.</i>
<b>You</b>	Подякуйте.

#### 4. Puzzle Out

There are five people staying at a hotel: Mr Petty, Mr Grove, Mrs Williams, Ms Stevens and Mr Harvey. Use the clues to complete the chart with the information below (each person's job, character, hobby and another item of information)

Room number	101	102	103	104	105
Name					
Job					
Character					
Interest/hobby					
Other information					

Job:	Character:	Interest/hobby	Other information
carpenter	sociable	painting	is a widower
teacher	selfish	knitting	can't stand rats
programming engineer	creative	singing	likes alcohol
solicitor	conceited	bird-watching	is Australian
estate agent	bossy	amateur dramatics	is deaf
librarian	obstinate	martial arts	has a big family
surgeon	mean	tennis	is a twin
manager	patient	cycling	is American
traffic warden	optimistic	modelling	is bald
dean	energetic	chatting on the Internet	is a widow
plumber	generous	gardening	is bilingual

#### Clues:

- Ms Stevens usually looks on the bright side of life.
- The man in room 101 loves going to parties and meeting people.
- The person who works at a hospital and lives in room 102 is from down under.
- Mr Grove doesn't like telling strangers what his job is - especially not motorists.
- Mr Harvey sold two houses last week.
- The person in the room next to him often deals with divorces and wills.
- The person who wears a uniform to work has green fingers.
- The woman who speaks German as well as she speaks English hates spending money.
- The plumber who lives next to a doctor has a dress rehearsal tonight.
- The person who loves ordering people about has an end room.
- Mr Harvey has been an ornithologist for nearly twenty years.
- The estate agent's wife passed away last year.
- Mrs Williams has an excellent serve.

14. The man with a tanned scalp has a very high opinion of himself.
15. The person in the room next to the plumber often visits art galleries.
16. Mr Petty is in the room between Ms Stevens and Mrs Williams.
17. The traffic warden's brother was born half an hour before him.
18. The optimist is staying in room 102.
19. The solicitor hopes to play at Wimbledon one day.
20. The person in room 104 never tips.
21. Mr Harvey is in room 105.

### 5. Additional reading

Have you ever heard about the **original, strange and amusing** hotels of the world, thought by well-known designers and artists?

Let's begin with *the Hotel Lady's First* in Switzerland. One inconvenience – it is forbidden enter here for men (except for “12-year-old boys”). A hotel is intended exceptionally for ladies. There are also not representatives of stronger sex among managers, cooks, drivers. Petticoat government! Guessing the clients' desires the hotel creators equipped the rooms by the large bathrooms and huge wardrobes where one can easily place into clothes, bags, hats, and shoes.

Walls of the *Crazy Bear Hotel* in Britain county Oksfordshir covered by plush, and we feel ourselves as we are in the Toy Teddy cottage. This hotel has both Chimney Sweep's (black and the blackest) room and Belosnezhka's "mint room" with a solarium.

In England one will find the *Alton Towers Hotel*, where apartments are designed, as a burrow of Peter Rabbit, bar of chocolate, Arabic large tent, theatre dressing-room and audio recording studio (for the karaoke admirers). The night in an eccentric township costs \$550.

The American staff Idaho has the *Dog Bark Park Inn*, created by Sallivan. The artist built the hound-shaped building with the help of a saw. There is a sleeping room in its “stomach”, a mansard and library are in dog's “head”. The Denis Sallivan's workshop with his hand-made wood articles, animals' figures is situated near the hotel.

*“Jules' Undersea Lodge”* is situated on a depth 6,5 meter at the shore of Florida. You can enter in this hotel only with the help of aqualung. The hotel has own diving school. All rooms are equipped by the modern technique. The room windows look like as illuminators and one can observe the various kinds of fish outside. The night here costs from \$390 and higher.

American publisher Peter Lewis built a hotel on the twenty hundred-year old cedar in the state Maine! He leases a house-nest after \$ 300 for night. Spiral staircase has 84 stages fixed with the steel staples; the observatory with a suspension bridge with a view on Cordillers.

Every November the interesting hotel is opened in the Swedish village Yukkasyarvi. Guests' rooms, hall, theater — all is built from 30 thousand tons of snow and 10 thousand tons of ice. If you are a lover of pungent feelings you can spend the night in the icy palace of the Snow Queen.

## Practice 64

### Advertising and Advertisement

#### Read the text “The Cola Wars”

Americans consumers gulp nearly 40 million soft drinks per day. The Coca-Cola Company produces about 40% of those soft drinks, while Pepsi-Cola produces about 30 percent of the market supply. With nearly 70% of the market between them, Pepsi and Coke wage fierce battles for market share.

The major weapon in these “cola wars” is advertising. Coke spends over \$100 million a year to convince consumers that its products are superior. Pepsi spends almost as much to win the hearts and tastes of American consumers. The advertisements also try to create a particular image for each cola.

The advertising apparently works. Half of all softdrink consumers profess loyalty to either Coke or Pepsi. In their view, there is only one “real” cola, and that's the one they will buy every time.

Ironically, few people can identify their favorite cola in blind taste test. 70% of people who swore loyalty to either Coke or Pepsi picked the wrong cola in a taste test.

**Changing Tastes** - In January 1975 Miller Brewing Company set out to change the tastes of U.S. beer drinkers. It introduced Miller Lite, a low-calorie beer. Many other companies had produced low-calorie beer and failed. But Miller was convinced it could succeed. Other companies had directed their sales pitches on diet-conscious people and had ignored the mass of beer drinkers. In introducing its new beer, Miller emphasized that Lite tasted as good as regular beer but simply contained fewer calories. In its advertising Miller used sports figures and other celebrities to emphasize that Lite was a real beer, not a diet drink. As one analyst noted, “The typical beer drinker is dietetically oriented, but when he sees a football player drinking this low-calorie beer, he figures he shouldn't be ashamed to drink it”. Miller spent nearly \$ 10 million per year to get this message across.

The results of the advertising campaign were phenomenal. Sales of Miller Lite increased and Miller Brewing moved up from fifth place to second place in total U.S. beer sales.

**Unchanged Taste** - In April 1985 the Coca-Cola Company announced that it was changing the 99-year old world-famous formula. Coca-Cola spent million of advertising dollars trying to convince consumers that the new, sweeter Coke was better. But consumer tastes didn't change. The Coca-Cola Company was besieged with letters and phone calls from consumers demanding a return to the old formula. The company had to give in to consumer pressure, announcing that it would revive the original formula.

#### Vocabulary

**consumer** [kən'sju:mə] *споживач, клієнт; замовник; покупець*

**gulp** [gʌlp] *ковтати*

**soft drinks** *безалкогольні напої*

**per day** *в день*

**market supply** ринкова пропозиція  
**wage** [weɪdʒ] вести, проводити, здійснювати  
**fierce** [fiəs] лютий, запеклий, жорстокий; злий  
**market share** доля на ринку  
**advertising** ['ædvɜːtɪzɪŋ] рекламування  
**convince** [kən'vɪns] переконувати, запевняти  
**superior** [s(j)u:'pi(ə)riə] кращий; більший; чудовий, вищої  
 якості **advertisement** [əd'vɜːtɪsmənt] оголошення; реклама;  
 анонс **profess** [prə'fes] відкрито визнавати, заявляти  
 (привселюдно) **loyalty** ['lɔɪəlti] вірність, відданість  
**identify** упізнавати  
**blind** [blaɪnd] сліпий, незрячий  
**besiege** [bɪ'siːdʒ] закидати (проханнями, запрошеннями)  
**revive** [rɪ'vaɪv] відроджуватися, відновлюватися

**1. Read. Make up question to each item of information. For example:**

1. What sort of car is it?

**ALPHA ROMEO 1991**  
**Blue, One owner.**  
**Excellent condition.**  
**20,000 miles.**  
**No accidents.**  
**£2800**

**2. Read these short advertisements and say what is advertised in each of them**

<i>“Golden Dreams”</i>	<i>Parker pen</i>	<i>hotel</i>
<i>cosmetics; hosiery</i>	<i>material</i>	<i>equipment</i>

1. I have no doubt that your \_\_\_ is of high quality, reliable and efficient.
2. The “Sheraton” is a very comfortable \_\_\_\_. There are a lot of luxurious single rooms with a lovely view and all the modern conveniences, colour TV including.
3. Here's a charming thing \_\_\_\_. It's one of the sweetest things written by this author.
4. Here you are, that's just your size. This \_\_\_\_\_ will wear for years, and it's washable.
5. You can get a good \_\_\_\_\_ at our stationery store.
6. Welcome to Nordstrom's. All good \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ can be bought here. That's on the way.

**3. Read the following funny advertisements from various papers. Each advertisement contains mistakes in the wording. Find what is strange and correct them**



### **Funny Advertisements**

1. Buy our car directly from the factory 100% cheaper.
2. Wanted - farm horse. Must be reasonable.
3. For sale - a cow, giving three gallons of milk, two dozen chickens, and a cook.
4. Spend your holiday on Queen Elizabeth. Luxury accommodation.
5. Buy "Shiny" stockings. A lot of women wear nothing else.
6. Why go elsewhere to be cheated when you can come to our department store?

#### **4. Read and translate some interesting facts about advertisement**

It isn't easy to establish when the first advertisement appeared. A papyrus in the collection of the British Museum, in London, advertises the sale of a slave. Rock drawings and inscriptions along the roads were also an excellent way to advertise things.

Probably the oldest advertisement was found in the excavations of the ancient Egyptian town of Memphis. It says: "I, Rhinos from Cyprus, live here. Gods gave me the gift of the true telling of dreams". This advertisement is 2,500 years old. It is carved in stone and visitors to one of the Cairo museum can inspect it.

\*\*\*

In the excavations of one of the towns of ancient Greece archaeologists found about 300 stone fragments with letters of the Greek alphabet. When they put the fragments together they found it was a tablet for a shop window with a list of goods and their prices.

\*\*\*

The first newspaper in the world that put in an advertisement was a hand-written Roman newspaper "Daily Happenings". It contained announcement of meetings, births, and marriages in the noble families in Rome.

\*\*\*

One of the houses built in Kyiv early in 20<sup>th</sup> century may also be considered as an advertisement. It is decorated by figures of sea monsters, shells and sea dragons. The story of the house is unusual. The owner of a cement plant couldn't sell his product as it was a new material and construction firms were quite conservative. So, when he learnt that a well-known architect was going to build a new house for himself he offered cement free of charge on the condition that the house would be decorated by sculptures made of cement. The unusual building attracted everybody's attention and served as an excellent advertisement of the new building material.

\*\*\*

Cigarette advertising is dangerous to health. Much money is spent every year persuading people to buy a product, which is known to be extremely bad, even fatal for health. This is the most, widespread and dangerous case of deception in advertising today.

Young, healthy, handsome people still splash in pools with Salem cigarettes between their pearl-white teeth (something very few heavy smokers have).

It was typical for cigarette advertising of the 20s and 30s to use celebrities to prove that smoking was good for digestion, or some such nonsense. In one ad a

handsome businessman smiles with his best businessman's smile and say: "Don't ask me why I smoke. Ask me why I smoke Winston." And one should certainly ask, because he is supposed to be so smart, since below is the warning: "Cigarette smoking is dangerous to your health."

Cigarette smoking has been proved to be a contributive factor in lung cancer, heart disease and a number of other serious and often fatal illnesses.

**5. A problem with Language** - Firms selling abroad face special difficulties, which do not apply to domestic sales. Documents, advertising and trade names may have to be translated into other languages. This sometimes causes problems with brand names, which may be offensive or silly in another language.

A Turkish company was surprised when their product **Bum Biscuits** never made breaking into the UK biscuit market. A Taiwan company was equally put out with their refreshing toothpaste **Darkie**. A brand of tinned fish from South America, with the brand name of **Grated Fanny**, never even made it to the shelves. Another South American company had very little success with their product which was sold under the **Bimbo Bread** label.

For example **Nike** is an extremely rude word in some Arabic dialects, and the **Volkswagen Rabbit** had to be called the **Golf** in Britain because British consumers would be put off by the original name.

You may have bought powder for killing cockroaches **Machen'ka** or eaten Ukrainian chocolates **Finish**.

What's the problem? Well, as you may realize, it all hangs on the choice of name. None of the above-mentioned brand names did anything to encourage customer interest for reasons of negative association. Do you think **I'm So Sorry Please Forgive Me** chocolate from Switzerland and **Lucky Cow** cheese from Germany were fortunate brand names or **Cock**, a perfumed deodorant, as well? Brave names indeed! But only one brand name seems to have paid off and that's the perfume **Poison**. Mind you, the manufacturers do not expect the customers to drink it.

**6. There is a part of the newspaper, somebody destroyed it. Can you put the pieces of the paper in the correct place and read the article?**

1. style of the bottle and important for the success make only Coca-Cola. new drinks – Fanta and	6. ner Frank M. Robinson Cola and writes the new - and that becomes the famous Coca-Cola bottle
2. Dr Pemberton's part-suggests the name Coca-name in a special way famous trademark. Thirty years later the	7. Sprite in 1960s, and diet The recipe of Coca-Cola company does some- The change the recipe! unhappy. And soon
3. Coke in 1982. is a secret. In a 1985 the thing almost incredible. But the public is very after, they bring back the	8. original recipe: "Coca- Today they sell Coca- Hundreds of millions day. It has the most world.

4. Cola Classic". Cola in 195 countries. of people drink it every famous trademark in the	9. gins in Atlanta, Georgia, ton invents a new drink. are the South American can cola nut. Pemberton for the drink. Finally,
5. The Coca-Cola story be- in 1886. John S.Pember- Two of the ingredients coca leaf and the Afri- can't think of a good name	10. design first appears. The the trademark are very of the drink. For many years, they They only introduce

## 7. Project 8 "Advertisement"

### Practice 65 Revision Word Quiz

**accounts** рахунки  
**quiet** ['kwaɪət] спокійний  
**self-confident** самовпевнений  
**strong-willed** рішучий, вольовий  
**weak spot** слабе місце (у людини)  
**publish** публікувати  
**editor** ['editə] редактор  
**take care** піклуватися  
**only** єдиний  
**spoilt** [spɔɪlt] розпещений  
**late** покійний  
**nurse** [nɜ:s] 1) нянька; 2)  
 годувальниця; 3) медична сестра  
**selfish** ['selfɪʃ] егоїстичний,  
 корисливий, себелюбний  
**arrogant** ['ærəgənt] зарозумілий,  
 гордовитий, пихатий;  
 самовпевнений  
**extremely** [ɪk'stri:mli] украй;  
 надзвичайно; найвищою мірою  
**ambitious** [æm'biʃəs] честолюбний,  
 амбітний  
**used to be** колись була  
**Contest** конкурс  
**love match** шлюб по любові  
**hostess**. ['həʊstɪs] господиня  
**neither ... nor** жоден з двох  
**affectionate** [ə'fɛkʃ(ə)nɪt] люблячий,  
 ніжний, лагідний

**used to bring** зазвичай приносила  
**stray dogs and cats** бродячі собаки і  
 коти  
**graduate** ['grædʒueɪt] закінчити  
 вищий навчальний заклад  
**finish** ['fɪnɪʃ] закінчувати школу  
**involve** [ɪn'vɒlv] залучати,  
 втягувати, уплутувати  
**adventurer** авантюрист; шукач  
 пригод  
**rob** [rɒb] грабувати, обкрадати  
**prison** ['prɪz(ə)n] в'язниця  
**upset** [ʌp'set] засмучений  
**realized = understand** усвідомлювати  
**either** будь-який  
**respectable** [rɪ'spektəb(ə)l] поважний;  
 респектабельний  
**bring up** виховувати  
**apply to a college** поступити в  
 коледж  
**refuse** відмовляти  
**give financial support** надавати  
 фінансову підтримку  
**waitress** офіціантка  
**earn money (make money)** заробляти  
 гроші  
**fee** оплата за навчання  
**be satisfied** бути задоволеним  
**mind** думати

<b>blue-collar</b> “синій комірець”, технічний працівник, робітник на виробництві	<b>pollution</b> [pə'lu:ʃ(ə)n] забруднення; забруднення навколишнього середовища
<b>fellow-worker</b> співробітник	<b>traffic</b> ['træfik] рух, повідомлення; транспорт
<b>sack</b> звільняти	<b>rush</b> [rʌʃ] кидатися, прямувати, направлятися; нестися; мчати щодоуху
<b>be unemployed</b> бути безробітним	<b>magnificent</b> [mæg'nɪfɪs(ə)nt] чудовий; пишний; величний
<b>dole</b> [dəʊl] допомога по безробіттю	<b>queue</b> [kju:] черга
<b>unskilled</b> некваліфікований	<b>block of flats</b> багатоквартирний будинок
<b>labourer</b> ['leɪb(ə)rə] (некваліфікований) робітник; чорнороб	<b>violence</b> ['vaɪələns] насильство, примус
<b>attend</b> [ə'tend] відвідувати	<b>exciting</b> [ɪk'saɪtɪŋ] збуджуючий, хвилюючий; захоплюючий
<b>extra</b> ['ekstrə] додатковий	<b>worth</b> [wɜ:θ] вартий, що заслуговує (чого-н.); що має значення
<b>training</b> виховання; навчання; підготовка; освіта	<b>for instance</b> наприклад
<b>successful career</b> успішна кар'єра	<b>gossip</b> ['gɒsɪp] балаканина, розмови; плітка; чутки; вигадки
<b>poorly paid</b> низкооплачуваний	<b>maybe</b> ['meɪbi] може бути; можливо
<b>clerk</b> [kla:k] конторський службовець, клерк	<b>trouble</b> [trʌb(ə)l] неприємність, біда, горе; напасті
<b>white-collar</b> службовець	<b>same</b> той самий, цей же
<b>transfer</b> переведення (по службі)	<b>admit</b> [əd'mɪt] визнавати, допускати
<b>sales</b> купівля-продаж; розпродаж; збут	<b>exhibition</b> [eksɪ'biʃ(ə)n] виставка; експонат(и)
<b>sales representative</b> торговий представник	<b>ancestor</b> ['ænsəstə,'ænsɛstə] предок, прабатько
<b>promote</b> просувати; підвищувати в чині або званні	<b>completely</b> [kəm'pli:tli] зовсім, повністю, цілком
<b>salary</b> ['sæləri] платня, оклад; заробітна плата службовця	<b>strawberry</b> ['strɔ:b(ə)ri] суниця, полуниця
<b>benefit</b> ['benɪfɪt] перевага, привілей; премія	<b>turnip</b> ['tɜ:nɪp] турнепс, ріпа
<b>retire</b> звільняти у відставку; переводити на пенсію	<b>bake</b> [beɪk] пекти, випікати; запікати
<b>apprentice</b> [ə'prentɪs] учень, підмайстер; новачок	<b>frozen food</b> заморожені продукти
<b>engineer</b> [endʒɪ'niə] інженер; конструктор	<b>tinned food</b> консервовані продукти
<b>cope</b> [kəʊp] ( <b>with</b> ) упоратися (з труднощами)	<b>fresh</b> [freʃ] свіжий, натуральний; неконсервований
<b>afford</b> [ə'fɔ:d] мати можливість, могти (зробити що-небудь); дозволити собі	<b>miss</b> [mɪs] пропустити; пройти мимо; не помітити
<b>give up</b> відмовитися (від роботи, пропозиції); кинути (звичку); залишити	<b>rubbish</b> [rʌbɪʃ] сміття, мотлох
	<b>psychiatrist</b> [saɪ'kaɪətrɪst] психіатр



<b>lonely</b> ['ləʊnli] самотній	будинок
<b>instead</b> [in'sted] замість	<b>capital</b> столиця
<b>enough</b> [ɪ'nʌf] достатня кількість	<b>bush</b> [buʃ] кущ; чагарник
<b>alone</b> [ə'ləʊn] один, самотній; на самоті	<b>picture galleries</b> мистецька галерея
<b>evening classes</b> вечірні курси	<b>noisy crowd</b> шумний натовп
<b>advice</b> [əd'vaɪs] порада; консультація (юриста, лікаря)	<b>metropolis</b> дуже велике місто
<b>village</b> ['vɪlɪdʒ] село; селище	<b>underground crossing</b> підземний перехід
<b>multi-storeyed house</b> багатопверховий будинок	<b>unpolluted environment</b> незабруднене середовище
<b>suburb</b> ['sebz:b] пригород, передмістя, окраїна	<b>bedroom district</b> спальний район
<b>shopping centre</b> торговий центр	<b>state</b> держава
<b>country</b> країна	<b>traffic jam</b> дорожня пробка
<b>province</b> ['prɒvɪns] провінція; периферія	<b>convenient bus service</b> зручне автобусне обслуговування
<b>outskirts</b> передмістя	<b>vegetable garden</b> огород
<b>peaceful atmosphere</b> мирна (спокійна) атмосфера	<b>field</b> поле
<b>settlement</b> поселення, селище	<b>pure water</b> чиста вода
<b>traffic lights</b> світлофори	<b>museum</b> музей
<b>housing estate</b> мікрорайон, жилий район	<b>rush hour</b> година пік, години пік
<b>well-kept park</b> парк, що утримується у порядку	<b>orchard</b> ['ɔ:ʃəd] фруктовий сад
<b>region</b> область	<b>hospital</b> лікарня
<b>bench</b> лавка	<b>theatre</b> театр
<b>industrial area</b> промисловий район	<b>avenue</b> ['ævɪnju:] авеню, проспект, широка вулиця
<b>kitchen garden</b> город	<b>swimming pool</b> плавальний басейн
<b>district</b> округ, район	<b>well</b> колодязь
<b>street lamp</b> вуличний ліхтар	<b>car park</b> парковка
<b>the City</b> фінансовий центр Лондона	<b>square</b> площа, майдан, сквер
<b>meadow</b> ['medəʊ] луг, лучка	<b>spectacular</b> [spek'tækjʊlə] ефектний, захоплюючий; вражаючий
<b>town</b> місто; містечко	<b>pendulum</b> ['pendjʊləm] маятник; маятниковий важіль
<b>hedge</b> [hedʒ] (жива) огорожа, живопліт	<b>timekeeper</b> ['taɪm,ki:pə] годинник, хронометр
<b>the country</b> село, сільська місцевість	<b>Whitechapel</b> ['waɪt,tʃæp(ə)l] Уайт-чепел (бідний район Лондона)
<b>fence</b> огорожа	<b>chime</b> [tʃaɪm] вибивати мелодію (на дзвонах, курантах); дзвонити, дзвеніти; бити, відбивати (про годинник)
<b>city</b> місто; велике місто	<b>turret</b> [tʌrɪt] башточка
<b>heavy traffic</b> великий транспортний рух	<b>incendiary</b> [ɪn'sendɪəri] запалювальний
<b>industrial estate</b> індустріальний район	<b>intact</b> [ɪn'tækt] неушкоджений, непошкоджений, цілий
<b>block of flats</b> багатоквартирний	

<b>reassurance</b> [ri:ə'ʃʊ(ə)rəns]	<b>kid-gloves</b> лайкові рукавички
заспокоювання, підбадьорення;	<b>lacy</b> [leisi] мереживний; схожий на мереживо
розрада	<b>turn down</b> відмовлятися
<b>breach</b> [bri:tʃ] розрив (відносин);	<b>insult</b> [ɪn'sʌlt] ображати
порушення (закону, зобов'язання)	<b>refuse</b> [rɪ'fju:z] відмовлятися
<b>restored</b> [ri'stɔ:d] відновлений; який	<b>hospitality</b> [hɒspi'tæləti] гостинність, привітність
відновився; реставрований	<b>accept</b> [ək'sept] приймати;
<b>centennial</b> [sen'teniəl] столітній	погоджуватися; визнавати,
<b>purchase of a ferry ticket</b> купівля	допускати, схвалити
білета	<b>pray</b> [prei] молитися
<b>focal</b> центральний	<b>negotiations</b> [ni,gəʊʃi'eɪʃ(ə)ns]
<b>delight</b> [dɪ'laɪt] приносити насолоду;	переговори
тішити; захоплюватися, бути у	<b>avoid</b> [ə'vɔɪd] уникати, цуратися,
захваті, насолоджуватися	ухилятися
<b>anticipation</b> [æntɪsɪ'peɪʃ(ə)n]	<b>plenty</b> ['plenti] велика кількість,
очікування, передбачення,	достаток; статок
передчуття	<b>suspicious</b> [sə'spiʃəs] підозріливий,
<b>soar</b> [sɔ:] злітати; набирати	недовірливий
висоту; підніматися	<b>experience</b> [ɪk'spi(ə)rɪəns]
<b>conceive</b> [kən'si:v] 1) осягати,	(життєвий) досвід
розуміти; 2) відчутти; 3)	<b>apply for a visa</b> - запросити візу
задумувати, замишляти; 4) гадати,	<b>be liable to duty</b> - підлягає
думати; 5) представляти, уявляти	оподаткуванню
<b>feasibility</b> [fi:zə'bɪləti] 1)	<b>bill</b> – рахунок
здійсненність; 2) придатність; 3)	<b>come to an agreement</b> - прийти до
можливість, імовірність	згоди
<b>groundwork</b> ['graundwɜ:k] основа;	<b>conclude (make) an agreement (strike</b>
фундамент	<b>a deal)</b> - укласти угоду
<b>in recognition of</b> на знак подяки	<b>customs fee</b> - митні збори
<b>MBE (Member of the Order of the</b>	<b>declare</b> - задекларувати
<b>British Empire)</b> Кавалер Ордену	<b>duty free</b> - не підлягає
Британської імперії	оподаткуванню
<b>glove</b> [glʌv] рукавичка	<b>embassy</b> - посольство
<b>sidewalk</b> ['saɪdwɔ:k] тротуар	<b>get through the customs</b> - пройти
<b>carriage</b> ['kærɪdʒ] екіпаж; карета	митний догляд
<b>formal party</b> офіційний прийом	<b>luggage / baggage</b> - багаж
<b>banquet</b> ['bæŋkwɪt] банкет	<b>make an appointment with smb</b> -
<b>solemnity</b> [sə'lemnɪti] урочистість	призначити ділову зустріч з кимось
<b>reception</b> прийом (гостей, офіційних	<b>open-date ticket</b> - білет з відкритою
представників	датою
<b>dinner-jacket</b> смокінг	<b>pay cash</b> - платити готівкою
<b>tail-coat</b> фрак	<b>pay customs fee</b> – заплатити митні
<b>frock</b> [frɒk] вечірній чоловічий	збори
костюм / вечірня жіноча сукня	<b>representative</b> представник;
<b>adornmen</b> [ə'dɔ:nmənt] прикраса	уповноважений
<b>felt</b> фетр	



**return ticket, round ticket** (амер. *two-way ticket*) - зворотний квиток  
**single ticket** (амер. *one-way ticket*) - квиток в одну сторону  
**job interview** співбесіда  
**impression** [im'preʃ(ə)n] враження; уявлення  
**delay** [di'lei] затримка  
**ahead** [ə'hed] заздалегідь  
**fit** [fit] придатний; підходящий; відповідний; належний, гідний  
**review** [ri'vju:] розгляд; огляд; перегляд  
**application form** бланк заяви  
**resume** I [ri'zju:m] 1) одержувати, брати назад; знову знаходити; 2) відновлювати, продовжувати (роботу, розповідь); 3) підбивати підсумок, резюмувати; II [re(i)zjumei] 1) резюме; зведення; конспект; підсумки, висновки; 2) коротка автобіографія (представляється кандидатом на посаду)  
**employer** [im'plɔiə] наймач, роботодавець; хазяїн; хазяйка; агент по найму  
**outfits** одяг, повний комплект одягу  
**fancy** ['fænsi] вигадливий, химерний, фантастичний  
**modest** ['mɒdist] скромний; стриманий; соромливий  
**bore** [bɔ:] набридати  
**employee** [em'plɔi'i:] робітник; службовець; той, хто працює по найму  
**skill** [skil] майстерність, вправність; досвід; спритність, уміння; кваліфікація, професія; талант, дар, здібності  
**available** [ə'veɪləb(ə)l] придатний, корисний; наявний, доступний  
**benefit** ['benɪfɪt] перевага, привілей; користь, благо; вигода  
**position (post)** посада  
**hire** наймати на роботу  
**applicant** - претендент

**bonus** - премія  
**enterprise** - підприємство; завод, фабрика; фірма, компанія  
**fire** - звільняти, виганяти з роботи  
**hold the position** - займати посаду  
**obligation (syn. duty)** - обов'язок  
**opening position (vacancy)** - вакансія  
**position (post)** - посада  
**personnel office** - відділ кадрів  
**red-tape** - канцелярська робота  
**reference** - 1) посилання; 2) рекомендація, відгук  
**responsibility** - 1) відповідальність; 2) обов'язок  
**salary** - зарплата службовців  
**staff** - штат (працівників); персонал  
**upgrading** - підвищення кваліфікації  
**wages** - зарплата робітників  
**work under pressure** - працювати під тиском  
**fill in** заповнювати (анкету); вписувати  
**boarding** ['bɔ:diŋ] посадка  
**request** [ri'kwest] просити; пропонувати, рекомендувати  
**valid** ['vælɪd] дійсний, що має силу  
**customs declaration** митна декларація  
**violate** ['vaɪəleɪt] порушувати  
**existing regulations** діючі правила; діюче законодавство  
**immigration service** іміграційна служба  
**occasionally** [ə'keɪz(ə)nəli] зрідка, час від часу, іноді  
**custom officer** митник  
**authorities** влада, право розпорядження, адміністрація; власті, органи влади  
**illegally** незаконно, незаконним шляхом  
**smuggling** контрабанда; незаконне ввезення або вивезення  
**failure** невиконання, недогляд  
**fine** [faɪn] штраф; пеня  
**penalty** покарання, стягнення

<b>agricultural</b>	<b>pests</b>	значний, істотний
сільськогосподарські	шкідники,	<b>oatmeal flakes</b> вівсяні пластівці
шкідливі комахи, паразити		<b>tip</b> чайові
<b>commercial</b> торговельний, торговий		<b>consumer</b> [kən'sju:mə] споживач,
<b>duty</b> мито, акциз, податок		клієнт; замовник; покупець
<b>car / carriage</b> (Am.) - вагон		<b>gulp</b> [gʌlp] ковтати
<b>I can't help any</b> - нічим не можу допомогти		<b>soft drinks</b> безалкогольні напої
<b>chambermaid, maid</b> – покоївка		<b>per day</b> в день
<b>reservation</b> – резервування номеру		<b>market supply</b> ринкова пропозиція
<b>reserved seats car</b> – плацкартний вагон		<b>wage</b> [weɪdʒ] вести, проводити, здійснювати
<b>rush hours</b> – години пік		<b>fierce</b> [fiəs] лютий, запеклий, жорстокий; злий
<b>see somebody off</b> – проводити когось		<b>market share</b> доля на ринку
<b>suite</b> [swi:t] – номер люкс		<b>advertising</b> ['ædvɛtaɪzɪŋ] рекламування
<b>the hotel is full</b> – вільних місць немає		<b>convince</b> [kən'vɪns] переконувати, запевняти
<b>travel light</b> – мандрувати без речей		<b>superior</b> [s(j)u:'pi(ə)riə] кращий; більший; чудовий, вищої якості
<b>vacant room</b> – вільний номер		<b>advertisement</b> [əd'vɜ:tɪsmənt] оголошення; реклама; анонс
<b>vacate the room</b> – звільнити номер		<b>profess</b> [prə'fes] відкрито визнавати, заявляти (привселюдно)
<b>luxe</b> [lʌks] люкс, розкішний		<b>loyalty</b> ['lɔɪəlti] вірність, відданість
<b>moderate</b> середній		<b>identify</b> упізнавати
<b>Boarding Houses</b> мебльовані кімнати з харчуванням		<b>blind</b> [blaɪnd] сліпий, незрячий
<b>inn</b> готель (за містом)		<b>besiege</b> [bɪ'si:dʒ] закидати (проханнями, запрошеннями)
<b>accommodation</b> розміщення		<b>revive</b> [rɪ'vaɪv] відроджуватися, відновлюватися
<b>VAT (Value Added Tax)</b> ПДВ (податок на додану вартість)		
<b>frugal</b> ['fru:g(ə)l] ощадливий, економний; скромний, невибагливий		
<b>substantive</b> ['sʌbst(ə)ntɪv] міцний, ґрунтовний, солідний; постійний;		

## Practice 66 Defence of Projects

## Practice 67 Final Test

Утворення множини іменника  
Присвійний відмінок іменника  
Вживання означеного артикля  
Вживання неозначеного артикля  
Назвіть прийменники. Наведіть приклади

Утворення пасивного стану в англійській мові. Складіть речення  
Порядок слів в англійському реченні  
Утворення Present Perfect Tense  
Утворення Past Perfect Tense  
Утворення Future Perfect Tense

Допоміжне дієслово групи Perfect Tense

Утворення Present Indefinite Tense

Утворення Past Indefinite Tense

Утворення Future Indefinite Tense

Допоміжне дієслово групи Indefinite Tense

Утворення Present Continuous Tense

Утворення Past Continuous Tense

Утворення Future Continuous Tense

Допоміжне дієслово групи

Continuous Tense

Назвіть групи займенників. Наведіть приклади

Які модальні дієслова ви знаєте?

Наведіть приклади

Назвіть групи прислівників.

Наведіть приклади

Перекладіть наступні прийменники:

*in, on, at, under, near, over, next to, between, above, among, about, up, down, with, since*

Видавництво ПП "Новий Світ-2000"

# CHAPTER I

## ANSWER KEY

### Practice 1

#### Grammar: The Noun

#### Number of Nouns. Possessive Case of Nouns

### 5. Grammar Exercises

#### 1. Make the words Plural

boys; roofs; monkeys; glasses; school-mates; companies; lunches; mothers-in-law; paths; payments; forget-me-nots; men-servants; arms; chiefs; branches; pianos; photos; fountainpens; heroes; daughters-in-law; dishes; flies; drinking-songs; months; children; shelves; tomatoes; news; people; housewives; fish.

#### 2. Translate the following Nouns and denote them by the type of morphological structure

<i>the Simple Noun</i>	<i>the Derived Noun</i>	<i>the Compound Noun</i>
<i>an arm</i> - рука, <i>rain</i> - дощ, <i>ice</i> - лід, <i>school</i> - школа, <i>water</i> - вода, <i>a way</i> - шлях; дорога, <i>a house</i> - будинок	а <u>pianist</u> - піаніст, а <u>building</u> - будинок, будівля, споруда; а <u>dictation</u> - диктант, а <u>writer</u> - письменник, <u>happiness</u> - щастя, <u>friendship</u> - дружба, <u>childhood</u> - дитинство	<i>a schoolgirl</i> - школярка, <i>a railroad</i> - залізниця, <i>a book-lover</i> - любитель читати, <i>a fountainpen</i> - авторучка, <i>a drinking-song</i> - застільна пісня, <i>a merry-go-round</i> - карусель

#### 3. Translate the word-combinations

<b>into Ukrainian</b>	<b>into English</b>
<i>a piece of information</i> - одна інформація; <i>a piece of good news</i> - одна хороша новина; <i>a sheet of paper</i> - лист паперу; <i>a tablespoonful of sugar</i> - одна столова ложка цукру; <i>a teaspoonful of salt</i> - одна чайна ложка цукру; <i>exotic fruits</i> - екзотичні фрукти; <i>French perfumes</i> - французькі парфуми; <i>two pieces of good advice</i> - дві корисні поради	пляшка мінеральної води - <i>a (one) bottle of mineral water</i> ; пакет цукру - <i>a paper bag of sugar</i> ; буханка білого хліба - <i>a loaf of white bread</i> ; італійські вина - <i>Italian wines</i> ; три корисні поради - <i>three pieces of good advice</i> ; погана новина - <i>a piece of bad news</i>

#### 4. Make the words of Latin origin Plural

Curriculum - *curricula*, medium - *media*, memorandum - *memoranda*, datum - *data*, alumnus - *alumna*, genus - *genera*, symposium - *symposia / symposiums*, corpus - *corpora / corpuses*, synopsis - *synopses*, diagnosis - *diagnoses*, criterion - *criteria*, appendix - *appendices*, portmanteau - *portmanteaux*, matrix - *matrices*.

#### 5. Choose the correct Plural form

1. *children*; 2. *delays*; 3. *watches*; 4. *gas*; 5. *eagles*; 6. *holidays*; 7. *wives*; 8.

*currencies*; 9. *chiefs*; 10. *kisses*; 11. *secretaries-elect*; 12. *studios*; 13. *bases*; 14. *vice-presidents*; 15. *sons-in-law*; 16. *toothbrushes*; 17. *radios*; 18. *mainframes*.

### 6. Choose the proper verb

1. The pieces of advice he gave me *are* good. 2. His jeans *looks* fine. 3. Money *is* better than everything else. 4. Your eye-glasses *is* on the desk. 5. Bad news *flies* fast. 6. Her hair *is* too long. 7. His clothes *is* scattered all over the room.

7. Add the following word-combinations by the corresponding nouns. For example: *a cup of coffee*

a cup of *coffee / tea / water / orange juice / milk*; a can of *tinned fish / salmon / tuna*; a piece of *cake / toast / wood*; a packet of *biscuits*; a box of *matches*; a glass of *water / orange juice cola / wine / beer*; a bottle of *water / orange juice / milk / cola / wine / beer*; a carton of *cigarettes / chalk*; a bar of *chocolate*; a bowl of *soup*; a jar of *jam*.

## Practice 2 Text: "Makaton"

### 2. Find in the text

*рух рук і тіла* - movements of the hand and body  
*які не чують* - who could not hear  
*може допомогти їм* - can help them  
*перші літери їхніх* - first letters of their  
*взяти участь у іграх* - take part in games  
*вираз обличчя* - expression on the face  
*сьогодні більше ніж* - Today over  
*як вони почуваються* - how they are feeling  
*вигадана (штучна) мова* - invented language  
*починає розмовляти* – starts to use spoken language  
*особливо для маленьких дітей* - especially, for young children  
*багато людей* - a lot of people  
*для глухих людей* - for Deaf People

4. Put in Plural form the following nouns. For example: a box – some boxes

1. a person – many *people*; 2. a banana – four *bananas*; 3. a deer – some *deer*; 4. a watch – three *watches*; 5. a cup – fifteen *cups*; 6. a knife – ten *knives*; 7. a sheep – a hundred *sheep*; 8. a chair – some *chairs*; 9. a tooth – thirty-two *teeth*; 10. a family – some *families*; 11. a foot – two *feet*; 12. a fountain-pen – eleven *fountain-pens*; 13. a photo – some *photos*; 14. an ox – several *oxen*; 15. a wish – many *wishes*

5. Complete the sentences with the affirmative and negative imperative form of the verbs in the box

1. **Don't swim** in the river. There are crocodiles. 2. **Don't forget** sunscreen every day in summer. 3. **Don't use** your torch in the day. You need it to see at night. 4. **Look** at the compass and find north. 5. **Make** dinner on the stove. 6. **Wear** waterproof clothes. It's going to rain.

### 6. Reread the text "Makaton" and do the test

- |                            |                                  |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. - a) invented language; | 6. - a) first letters;           |
| 2. - b) spoken words;      | 7. - c) three researchers;       |
| 3. - b) 100,000;           | 8. - a) helps them;              |
| 4. - c) 1970;              | 9. - c) hear;                    |
| 5. - c) forty;             | 10. - b) expression on the face. |

## Practice 3 Grammar: The Article

### 5. Grammar Exercises

#### 1. Insert the proper word with the corresponding article

1. Can you tell me **time** please? 2. We had **dinner** at the restaurant. 3. **The sun** is a star. It gives us light & warmth. 4. Did you see the film on **television** last night? 5. I was hungry this morning, because I didn't have **breakfast**. 6. **The police** stopped me because I was driving too fast. 7. Can you play **the guitar**? 8. What did you have for **lunch**? Just a salad. 9. When I am working at home I like listening to **the radio**. 10. **The sky** is very clear tonight. You can see all the stars. 11. My house is at **the end** of this street. 12. The table is in **the middle** of the room. 13. My brother is in **the army** now. 14. Tom can play **the piano**. 15. I like watching **TV set**. 16. We live in **the same** street.

#### 2. Insert the proper word with the corresponding article a/an or the

1. Can you ride **a bicycle**? 2. What's the man doing on **the roof** of that house? Is he repairing something? 3. We went to the theatre last night but **the play** was not very good. 4. Do you think English is **a difficult language** for people to learn? 5. Would you like **a cigarette**? No, thanks. I don't smoke. 6. Where is Jack? He is in **the kitchen**. He is cooking something. 7. Excuse me, what time is **the next train** to London? 8. It is **a nice day** today. Let's go out.

#### 3. Put the corresponding article

<i>Indefinite Article</i>	<i>Definite Article</i>	<i>нульовий артикль</i>
<i>a cup, an apple, a credit card, a hat, a toothbrush, a lot of, a car, a glass of milk, a hundred, a bit, a cup of, a child, a million, an engineer</i>	<i>the Hague, the first, the same, the USA, the radio, the Dnipro, the best, the moon, the piano, the Netherlands, the army</i>	<i>sand, tea, toothpaste, money, soap, Christmas, classical music, coffee, honey, chocolate, two, Baikal, dinner, love, football, October, Mathematics, Spain, children, Italian, Friday, Niagara Falls</i>



**4. Fill in: a, an or the**

Last night I went to **an** Indonesian restaurant. I had **a** very nice meal with **a** good friend, Helen. **The** waiter was Chinese. **The** food was great. We drank **a** bottle of Coke. When we asked for **the** bill we didn't have enough money, so we had to do **the** washing-up. It is not **a** good way to end **the** evening.

**5. Fill in: a, an or the**

I arrived at **the** airport just in time to see **an** airplane take off. There is nothing unusual about this, except that I was supposed to be on that plane! When I went to **the** desk to ask when **the** next available flight was, I heard **an** awful noise. I turned to see **a** car crashing through **the** front windows with **a** police car just behind it. I ran towards **the** departure gate **a** policeman stopped me to see if I was **the** armed robber they were chasing. I told him I was not **an** armed robber but **a** businessman who had missed his plane. He let me go and I was able to catch **the** last flight to my destination.

**6. Fill in: the where necessary**

1. Is \_\_\_ Lisbon **the** capital of \_\_\_ Portugal? 2. Is \_\_\_ Malta in **the** Mediterranean? 3. Is \_\_\_ Paris in **the** United Kingdom or in \_\_\_ France? 4. Where is **the** Sahara Desert? 5. What is **the** biggest island in \_\_\_ Greece? 6. What is **the** capital of \_\_\_ Italy? 7. Is **the** Indian Ocean bigger than **the** Arctic Ocean? 8. Is \_\_\_ Everest **the** highest mountain in **the** world? 9. Where are \_\_\_ Malta and \_\_\_ Corsica? 10. Where are **the** Mississippi River and **the** Thames?

**Practice 4  
Revision  
Test 1**

**1. Choose the proper verb**

1. The pieces of advice he gave me **are** good. 2. His jeans **looks** fine. 3. Money **is** better than everything else. 4. Your eye-glasses **is** on the desk. 5. Bad news **flies** fast. 6. Her hair **is** too long. 7. His clothes **is** scattered all over the room.

**2. Add the following word-combinations by the corresponding nouns**

a cup of **tea**; a can of **tinned fish**; **tuna**; **salmon**; a piece of **cake**; **toast**; **chalk**; **wood**; a packet of **biscuits**; a box of **matches**; a glass of **water**; **orange juice**; **cola**; **milk**; **wine**; **beer**; a bottle of **water**; **orange juice**; **cola**; **milk**; **wine**; **beer**; \_\_\_; a carton of **cigarettes**; a bar of **chocolate**; a bowl of **soup**; a jar of **jam**.

**3. Fill in: a, an or the where necessary**

1. Is **a** tomato **a** fruit or **a** vegetable? 2. Is **an** apple red or blue? 3. What is **the** capital of France? 4. When we visited London we stayed at **the** Hilton Hotel. 5. Does **the** river Seine run through Paris or Madrid? 6. Is **the** Indian Ocean larger than **the** Mediterranean Sea? 7. Is New York in **the** USA or in Canada? 8. Is **an** / **the** elephant bigger than **an** / **the** alligator? 9. Does **the** Amazon run through Africa or South America?

**4. Find the sentences where it is necessary to use *the*:**

1. Manila is *the* capital of *the* Philippines. 2. Andes is a mountain range of South America. 3. China is *the* most populated country in *the* world. 4. A tunnel has been built beneath *the* English Channel. 5. *The* longest river in *the* world is *the* Nile. 6. Many people have climbed Everest. 7. Sicily is an Italian island. 8. *The* capital of Italy is Rome. 9. *The* Panama Canal joins *the* Atlantic and Pacific Oceans. 10. *The* North Sea is between Britain and Norway. 11. Do you know where *the* Rocky Mountains are? 12. Trafalgar Square is in London. 13. *The* Severn Bridge is in Wales. 14. Australia is in *the* southern hemisphere. 15. I learn to play *the* cello when I was at school. 16. She spent *the* morning working in *the* library. 17. I plan to study French at *the* university *the* next year. 18. *The* Smiths have just bought a holiday home near Lake Geneva. 19. I usually go to work by bus.

**5. Fill in: *a, an* or *the* where necessary**

Last year *the* Smiths went on holiday to London with their friends *the* Browns. They visited Hyde Park and went on *a* boat trip on *the* Thames. Mr. Brown visited Buckingham Palace hoping to see *the* Queen. Unfortunately, Queen Elizabeth II wasn't at home at *the* time.

**6. Choose the best word to fit into each of the following sentences:**

1. *c) knives*; 2. *b) peas*; 3. *a) socks*; 4. *c) deer*. *b) tomatoes*

**Practice 5**

**Text: "British National Flowers"**

**2. Find in the text**

*королівський будинок* - royal house

*зазвичай вважається* - is usually considered

*рослина з трьома пелюстками* - three-leaved plant

*біле над зеленим* - white over green

*також вважається традиційною емблемою* - also considered to be a traditional emblem

*прийнята як англійська емблема* - adopted as England's emblem

*теорія Святої Трійці* - doctrine of the Holy Trinity

*рослина схожа на конюшину* - plant similar to clover

*традиційно одягається на* - is traditionally worn on

*чия емблема була* - whose emblem was

*ймовірно тому, що її кольори* - possibly because its colours

*символ захисту* - symbol of defense

**5. Choose the correct word**

1. They lost against Liverpool. The *also lost* against Arsenal. 2. He is good at singing. He *is also* good at dancing. 3. We visited London. We *went also* to Oxford. 4. His old video game was boring. It is *was also* very easy.

**6. Reread the text “Britain's National Flowers” and do the text**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. - c) Northern Ireland;                     | 6. - c) 15 <sup>th</sup> century;      |
| 2. - b) defeat of King Richard III;           | 7. - b) beneath the shield;            |
| 3. - a) three-leaved plant similar to clover; | 8. - b) Wales                          |
| 4. - b) civil wars;                           | 9. - a) royal house ... royal house;   |
| 5. - b) doctrine;                             | 10. - a) white rose with a red centre. |

**7. Match each start of a sentence 1-4 with its conclusions A-D**

1. I hope that you	<b>D – are well and happy</b>
2. It was great	<b>A – to hear from you</b>
3. Write and tell	<b>B – me all your news</b>
4. I really hope to	<b>C – visit the UK one day</b>

**Practice 6  
Grammar: The Numeral**

**7. Grammar Exercises**

**1. Write the English Cardinal Numerals**

*three, four, seven, eight, twelve, thirteen, fourteen, fifteen, seventeen, nineteen, twenty-two, twenty-eight, thirty-nine, forty, eighty-eight, 107 one (a) hundred and seven, 349 three hundred and forty-nine, one (a) thousand two hundred and thirty-six, 4789 four thousand seven hundred and eighty-nine, six million three hundred thirty-four thousand eight hundred and fifty-seven, twenty three million five hundred seventy-eight thousand seven hundred and twenty-one*

**2. Translate the following sentences into English**

*1. Read only part five. 2. Your task is in paragraph four. 3. Open the textbook on page two hundred and twenty-seven, please. 4. The teacher-parent meeting will take place in classroom 101. 5. Her cousin lives in the same house, in apartment 45. 6. You need shuttle van 64. 7. Her father wears size forty-two shoes.*

**3. Write the English Ordinal Numerals**

*the second book, the fourth day, the eighth month, the fourteenth week, the twentieth house, the twenty-second lecturer, the sixtieth construction, the one hundredth pencil, the one hundred and forty-eighth student, the three thousand one hundred and seventy-eighth flat*

**4. Write the following words-combinations into English**

*four hundred smart phones; two thousand houses; seven hundred doctors; eight thousand years; nine million people; eighteen hundred animals; hundreds of people; thousands of years; millions of birds; some hundreds of flats; some thousands of teachers; a few gross of posters*

**5. Write what is the time?**

7.05 – it is five minutes past seven am; 8.07 - it is seven minutes past eight am; 9.10 - it is ten minutes past nine am; 10.15 - it is a quarter (fifteen minutes) past ten am; 11.20 - it is twenty minutes past eleven am; 12.26 - it is twenty-six minutes past twelve pm; 13.30 - it is half past one pm; 15.38 - it is twenty-two minutes to four pm; 16.40 - it is twenty minutes to five pm; 17.45 - it is a quarter (fifteen minutes) to six pm; 18.50 - it is ten minutes to seven pm; 19.55 - it is five minutes to eight pm; 20.58 - it is two minutes to nine pm; 21.00 – it is nine o'clock sharp pm (it's nine o'clock pm); 22.25 - it is twenty-five minutes past ten pm; 23.55 - it is five minutes to twelve pm; 24.00 - it is twelve o'clock sharp pm (it's twelve o'clock pm); 0.04 - it is four minutes twelve am; 1.12 - it is twelve minutes past one am; 2.16 - it is sixteen minutes past two am; 3.24 - it is twenty-four minutes past three am; 4.32 - it is twenty-eight minutes to five am; 5.41 - it is nineteen minutes to six am; 6.00 - it is six o'clock sharp am (it's six o'clock am); 11.30 - it is half past eleven am.

**6. Write the following dates in English**

1045 – nineteen forty-five; 2019 – two thousand nineteen; 1004 – ten 0 four / a (one) thousand four; 1861 – eighteen sixty-one; 1987 – nineteen eighty-seven; 2003 - two thousand and three (two thousand 0 three); 1961 - nineteen sixty-one; 2007 - two thousand and seven; 2000 - two thousand; 1917 - nineteen seventeen; 1957 - nineteen fifty-seven; 2011 - two thousand eleven; 1900 - nineteen hundred; 21 травня - the 21<sup>st</sup> of May; 24 грудня - the 24<sup>th</sup> of December; 13 квітня - the 13<sup>th</sup> of April; 1 березня 1986 року - the 1<sup>st</sup> of March, nineteen eighty-six; Різдво Христове – в січні. – Christmas is in January.; Моя двоюрідна сестра народилася взимку. – My cousin was born in winter.; Цей письменник жив у 19 столітті. – This writer lived in the nineteenth.; о 5 ранку – at 5 o'clock sharp am; о 7.30 – at half past seven am; 068-016-21-27 – o-six-eight-o-one-six-two-one-two-seven; 050-227-38-65 - o-five-o-double two-seven-three-eight-six-five; 036-244-55-57 - o-three-six-two-double four-double five-five-seven; 080-155-55-66 - o-eight-o-one-double five-double five-double six

**Practice 7**

**Text: “Chinese Horoscope”**

**1. Write out the underlined words from the text in to the table**

<u>The Noun</u>	<u>The Verb</u>	<u>The Numeral</u>	<u>The Adjective</u>	<u>Tense form</u>
astrology animals legend meeting People characteristics atmosphere	is calculate are	twelve second	aggressive cautious merry faithful traditional	New Year falls it begins came named was they relate
<u>The Pronoun</u> It your this they				

## 2. Find in the text

*базується на дате народження* - based on your year of birth

*названі на честь тварин* - are named after animals

*десь між* - somewhere between

*легко розрахувати* - easy to calculate

*який назвав* - who called

*у порядку, в якому вони з'явилися* - order in which they arrived

*не слід сприймати занадто серйозно* - should not be taken too seriously

*впливати на погоду планети Земля* - affect the Earth's weather

## 5. Match questions 1-8 with answers a-h

1. - d) 2. - e) 3. - g) 4. - f) 5. - h) 6. - b) 7. - a) 8. - c)

## 6. Reread the text "Chinese Horoscope" and do the test

1. - b) 1900; 2. - b) Dog ... honest Pig; 3. - a) twelve animals; 4. - c) hard-working Ox; 5. - c) mid-January; 6. - a) change in the Sun; 7. - c) characteristics of the year's animal; 8. - a) Earth's weather; 9. - b) aggressive Rat; 10. - c) cautious Rabbit.

## Practice 8

### Revision

### Test 2

## 1. Write the English Cardinal Numerals

8 - *eight*, 12 - *twelve*, 13 - *thirteen*, 15 - *fifteen*, 17 - *seventeen*, 22 - *twenty-two*, 39 - *thirty-nine*, 40 - *forty*, 349 - *three hundred and forty-nine*, 4.789 - *four thousand seven hundred and eighty-nine*, 53.878.929 - *fifty-three million eight hundred seventy eight thousand nine hundred and twenty-nine*

## 2. Translate the following sentences and word-combinations into English

1. *Read only task 5.* 2. *Open the textbook on page one hundred and forty-five, please.* 3. *The students' meeting will take place in classroom one hundred and twenty-one.* 4. *Her cousin lives in the same house, in apartment seventy-six.* 5. *You need trolleybus three.* 6. *the seventh book, the fifth day, the eighth month, the fourteenth book, the twentieth house, the twenty-second teacher, the one hundred and forty-seventh student, three thousand one hundred and seventy-eighth flat*

## 3. Write what is the time

7.05 - it is five minutes past seven am; 8.07 - it is seven minutes past eight am; 9.10 - it is ten minutes past nine am; 10.15 - it is a quarter (fifteen minutes) past ten am; 11.20 - it is twenty minutes past eleven am; 12.26 - it is twenty-six minutes past twelve pm; 13.30 - it is half past one pm; 15.38 - it is twenty-two minutes to four pm, 16.40 - it is twenty minutes to five pm; 17.45 - it is a quarter (fifteen minutes) to six



pm; 18.50 - it is ten minutes to seven pm; 19.55 - it is five minutes to eight pm; 20.58 - it is two minutes to nine pm; 21.00 – it's nine o'clock pm; 22.25 - it is twenty-five minutes past ten pm; 23.55 - it is five minutes to twelve pm; 24.00 - it's twelve o'clock pm; 1.12 - it is twelve minutes past one am; 2.16 - it is sixteen minutes past two am

#### 4. Put *a / an* or *the* in the sentences if necessary

1. She lives not far from *an* antiques shop. 2. People say that *the* British are reserved. 3. I am not sure, but I think I would like to be *an* architect when I grow up. 4. Don't forget your sun cream. *The* sun is very strong today. 5. Leisure time is increasing for most people in Europe. 6. We stayed at *a* very nice hotel in Barcelona. 7. That was one of *the* best books I have read for ages. 8. Shall we sit in *the* garden for a while?

#### 8. Fill in: *a, an* or *the* where necessary

1. *The* gun is used by soldiers. 2. *The* giant panda mostly lives in bamboo forests high in *the* mountains. 3. *The* Yangtze River is 6,380 km long. It is *the* third-longest river in *the* world. 4. Do you remember about *the* story I told you before? 5. China covers *an* area of almost six million square kilometers and is *the* most populous on *the* Earth, having more than one billion people. 6. *The* Chinese mainly speak Mandarin but there are over 150 other languages spoken in *the* country. 7. I've got three Chinese silk dresses: *a* red one and two black ones. I think I'll wear *the* red one for my party. 8. Xiaolu Guo is *a / the* famous Chinese novelist and film-maker. In 2009 she made *a / the* film called "She, A Chinese". *The* film won the top prize at *an* International Film Festival. 9. *The* umbrella was invented around 450 AD to protect from sun and rain. 10. Zong Zi is *a* dish made of rice and bamboo leaves is traditionally eaten during *the* Dragon Festival.

## Practice 9

### Grammar: The Adjective. Degrees of Comparison

#### 4. Grammar Exercises

1. Translate the following adjectives and denote them by the type of morphological structure

Simple Adjectives	Derivative Adjectives	Compound Adjectives
tall – високий;	hopeless - безнадійний; безвихідний;	overcrowded –
wet – мокрий;	illegal - незаконний, нелегальний;	переповнений;
вологий;	hairless - безволосий, лисий;	cold-hearted - безсердечний;
little – маленький;	reddish - червонуватий;	absent-minded – неуважний;
big – великий;	interesting – цікавий; unhappy -	good-looking – гарний;
short – короткий;	нещасний; yellowish – жовтуватий;	snow-white – білосніжний;
tiny – крихітний;	childish - дитячий, наївний;	346-page (book) - книжка на
	dangerous – небезпечний; careful -	346 сторінок;
	турботливий, уважний; childlike -	three-wheel –
	невинний; impatient – нетерплячий;	шестиколісний;
	irregular - неправильний;	five-year-old - п'ятирічний



**2. Write the degrees of comparison of the following adjectives**

<i>the Positive Degree</i>	<i>the Comparative Degree</i>	<i>the Superlative Degree</i>
short	<i>shorter</i>	<i>the shortest</i>
comfortable	<i>more comfortable</i>	<i>the most comfortable</i>
thin	<i>thinner</i>	<i>the thinnest</i>
bad	<i>worse</i>	<i>the worst</i>
wet	<i>wetter</i>	<i>the wettest</i>
illegal	<i>more illegal</i>	<i>the most illegal</i>
black	<i>blacker</i>	<i>the blackest</i>
impatient	<i>more impatient</i>	<i>the most impatient</i>
three-year-old	-	-
good	<i>better</i>	<i>the best</i>
enormous	<i>more enormous</i>	<i>the most enormous</i>
yellowish	<i>more yellowish</i>	<i>the most yellowish</i>
clever	<i>cleverer</i>	<i>the cleverest</i>
simple	<i>simpler</i>	<i>the simplest</i>
little	<i>less</i>	<i>the least</i>
amazing	<i>more amazing</i>	<i>the most amazing</i>
far	<i>farther / further</i>	<i>the farthest / furthest</i>
stupid	<i>more stupid</i>	<i>the most stupid</i>
incredible	<i>more incredible</i>	<i>the most incredible</i>
polite	<i>politer / more polite</i>	<i>the politest / most polite</i>
dead	-	-

**3. Translate the following adjectives into Ukrainian**

Red-faced - рум'яний, typical - типовий, long-faced - з витягнутим обличчям; з сумним виглядом, unexact - неточний, unkind - недобрый, злий, long-nosed - довгоносий, unplanned - незапланований, stone-hearted - безсердечний, warm-hearted - чуйний, щиросердечний, ungrammatical - граматично невірний, cold-blooded - бездушний; жорстокий, unwritten - незаписаний; неписаний, full-blooded – повнокровний, здоровий, unscientific - ненауковий; антинауковий, uncultured - некультурний, з низькою культурою, thin-skinned - тонкошкірий, unreal - нереальний, уявний, thick-skinned - товстошкірий, dark-skinned - темношкірий, long-eared - довговухий, ice-cooled - прохолодний, global - всесвітній; загальний; глобальний.

**4. Translate the following sentences using the substantivised adjectives into English**

1. All the Italians are fond of pizza. 2. The old don't understand the young. 3. A lot of the young learn Chinese in the USA. 4. The Germans hold in high respect their national traditions. 5. He thought that the future will be better than the past. 6. The Spanish respect foreigners. 7. The some old still work. 8. My granny thinks that the past was better than the present. 9. The young like modern devices.

**5. Complete the sentences with the adjectives in the box. Use the comparative form**

1. The Empire State Building is *taller* than the Eiffel Tower. 2. The River Nile is *longer* than the River Thames. 3. Is your town *more dangerous* than New York? No, it's really safe. 4. That plane ticket to Rome is 1000 Euros! It's *more expensive* than the train. 5. This park is beautiful. It's *prettier* than the ugly park near my home. 6. The air in my town is *cleaner* than the air in this city. 7. London is *noisier* than my village. My village is quite! 8. The people in your town are *more unfriendly* than the people in my town.

**6. Match the verbs in the box with words 1-8**

1. *be* homesick; 2. *share* a room; 3. *have* a break; 4. *chat* with friends; 5. *be* busy; 6. *work* abroad.

**7. Complete the sentences with the affirmative or negative forms of the verbs in the box in exercise 6**

1. Olena's parents *don't work* abroad. 2. I *share* a room with my best friend. 3. We *are* homesick. 4. Billy *is* busy at the moment. 5. My friends *have* a break before homework. 6. His brother *doesn't chat* with his friends all day.

**Practice 10**

**Text: "Canada"**

**3. Find in the text**

*багато людей з інших країн* - lot of people from other countries

*Канада межує із США* - It has got a border with the United States

*люди також вивчають* - people also study

*є великою країною* - is a large country

*Тихий океан на заході* - Pacific Ocean is to the west

*більше 30 відсотків* - over thirty percent

*є основною мовою* - is the main language

**6. Complete the conversation with the words in the box**

**A.** Who is that *tall* boy with the *dark* hair?

**B.** That is Tim. He is a very good athlete. He takes part in a lot of *competitions*. He won the 100 metres *race* last week. He broke the school *record*.

**A.** What about you? Are you into *athletics*?

**B.** No, I am not. But I *play* football. I play for the school *team*. We were second in the championships last year.

**A.** Second? That is not bad. Did you *score* any goals?

**B.** No, I did not. I am a goal keeper.

**7. Reread the text "Canada" and do the test**

1. - b) Quebec area; 2. - a) west; 3. - b) population; 4. - b) east; 5. - b) Mandarin; 6. - a) Canadian dollar; 7. - c) South; 8. - c) big cities; 9. - c) Ottawa; 10. - c) English.

## Practice 11 Grammar: The Verb

### 5. Grammar Exercises

#### 1. Change the verbs in Past Indefinite

1. finished. 2. slept. 3. opened, did. 4. applied. 5. was, grew. 6. broke. 7. forgot. 8. dreamt.

#### 2. Translate the following sentences into English using the grammatical construction *to have* + *Noun*

1. Let's *have a rest*. 2. They *had a wash, had breakfast* and went *to have a swim*. 3. He was tired and he wants *to have a drink* and *to have a meal*. 4. We *had a try* to perform this task. 5. His parents always *have a quarrel*. 6. My brother has three cats. They always *have a fight*. 7. Let's sit down and *have a talk*. 8. Her sister went to the park to *have a walk*. 9. They invited me *to have a cup of tea*. 10. My children don't want *to have a sleep* alone.

#### 3. Write down three forms of the following verbs

Make – *made - made*, cut – *cut - cut*, play – *played - played*, conclude – *concluded - concluded*, break – *broke - broken*, run – *ran - run*, speak – *spoke - spoken*, get – *got - got*, know – *knew - known*, come – *came - come*, forget – *forgot - forgotten*, put – *put - put*, buy – *bought - bought*, build – *built - built*, do – *did - done*, go – *went - gone*, tell – *told - told*, understand – *understood - understood*, find – *found - found*, clean – *cleaned - cleaned*, live – *lived - lived*, repair – *repaired - repaired*, accept – *accepted - accepted*, act – *acted - acted*, add – *added - added*, cost – *cost - cost*, set – *set - set*, assist – *assisted - assisted*, shut – *shut - shut*, connect – *connected - connected*, direct – *directed - directed*, lend – *lent - lent*, distribute – *distributed - distributed*, draw – *drew - drawn*, spell – *spelt - spelt*, deal – *dealt - dealt*, impress – *impressed - impressed*, inform – *informed - informed*, feel – *felt - felt*, keep – *kept - kept*, lay – *laid - laid*, lose – *lost - lost*, manage – *managed - managed*, pay – *paid - paid*, sell – *sold - sold*, occupy – *occupied - occupied*, operate – *operated - operated*, have – *had - had*, hold – *held - held*, drink – *drank - drunk*, fly – *flew - flown*, grow – *grew - grown*, prefer – *preferred - preferred*, produce – *produced - produced*, show – *showed - shown*, catch – *caught - caught*, restrict – *restricted - restricted*, fall – *fell - fallen*, forgive – *forgave - forgiven*, satisfy – *satisfied - satisfied*, stand – *stood - stood*, take – *took - taken*, stick – *stuck - stuck*, suit – *suited - suited*, vary – *varied - varied*.

#### 4. Write affirmative or negative sentences with *have got* / *has got*

1. She / a book about animals. *She has got a book about animal*. 2. I / a DVD player. *I have got a DVD player*. 3. He / a white rat / no. *He has not got a white rat*. 4. You / no / hip hop CDs. *You have not got hip hop CDs*. 5. Nelly / a red dress. *Nelly has got a red dress*. 6. We / no / a blue pen. *We have not got a blue pen*.

**5. Choose the correct responses to the sentences**

1. - *a)*    2. - *b)*    3. - *a)*    4. - *a)*    5. - *a)*

**6. Match expressions 1-8 with responses a-h**

1. This is Tim. *g) Hello, Tim.* 2. What part of Britain are you from? *e) I am from London.* 3. I am really into music. What about you? *b) Me too, especially hip hop.* 4. Are you into skateboarding? *f) Yes, but I am not very good.* 5. See you later then. *h) Yeah. See you later.* 6. How are things? *a) Not bad.* 7. I hate rats. What about you? *c) I like them, but I prefer cats.* 8. Good to meet you. *d) And you.*

**Practice 12**

**Revision**

**Test 3**

**1. Fill in the Definite Article where necessary**

1) *The* Peters are a very interesting family. Mr. Peters has sailed around 2) *the* world on his yacht 3) ... "Bella". Mrs. Peters has traveled around 4) ... India and seen many exciting things. Their son, John, works for a newspaper and he has interviewed many famous people including 5) *the* Pope and 6) ... Princess Anne. Sally, their daughter, is very ambitious. She is training to be a lawyer. One day she hopes to be 7) *the* most successful lawyer in 8) *the* country. As a family, they spend very little time together. They only see each other for a short time in 9) *the* mornings before they all go their separate ways. At the moment Mrs. Peters is writing a book about 10) ... famous buildings. She is doing research on 11) ... Westminster Abbey and 12) *the* St. Paul's Cathedral. She hopes to publish 13) *the* book by the end of 14) *the* year. Mr. Peters is getting ready for a trip around 15) ... Europe. This time however he has decided to go by 16) ... bus and not by 17) ... boat. John is preparing for a trip to 18) *the* USA where he will be meeting 19) *the* President. Sally, of course, doesn't have much spare time as her studies take up most of 20) *the* day.

**2. Translate into English**

1. An elephant lives longer than a cat. 2. The skyscraper Burj Halifa is higher than Eiffel Tower. 3. This is the shortest way to Kyiv. 4. Oleh is cleverer than Dmytro. 5. Ann is the cleverest student at our college. 6. Our new manager more stupid than the last one. 7. My eldest son is the most careful. 8. This boy is politer / more polite than other boys. 9. Olha's dog is quiet / more quiet than Helen's ones. 10. The Missisipi is longer than the Dnipro. 11. The Nile is the longest rive in the world. 12. The wild animals are more dangerous than domestic. 13. This task is the most difficult.

**4. Which of the materials from the box below can you use to describe what each of the following words is made of?**

1) a *silver, gold* ring, a *metal* car, a *glass* mirror, *denim, cotton* jeans, a *cotton, silk, wool* shirt, a *plastic, porcelain* cup, a *gunpowder* bomb, an *iron* computer, a *wood* table, a *wool* sweater, a *marble, bronze* monument, *silver, gold, plastic* ear rings, *lycra* pants, a *glass* window, a *paper* book, a *silk, wool* scarf, *leather* gloves, a *rubber* toy, a *silver, gold, bronze* medal, an *iron* nail

2) My ring is made of **gold**. His car is made of **metal**. Their mirror is made of **glass**. My jeans are made of **denim**. His shirt is made of **silk**. Our caps are made of **porcelain**. This bomb is made of **gunpowder**. His computer is made of **iron**. Their table is made of **wood**. My sweater is made of good **wool**. These monuments are made of **bronze**. I have ear rings. They are made of **silver**. Her pants are made of **lycra**. Our window is made of **glass**. This book is made of **paper**. His scarf is made of **wool**. My mother's gloves are made of **leather**. My little brother's toys are made of **rubber**. Their medal is made of **silver**. This nail is made of **iron**.

### 5. Choose the correct options

1. Giraffes have got very long **necks**. 2. Ben has no hair at all – he is **bald**. 3. How much is this **pair** of jeans? 4. You should wear a comfortable **tracksuit** to do sports. 5. Jessica has got dark hair. She's blond now because she is wearing **a wig**. 6. Anton is tall and very good-**looking**. 7. He's got short, **round / curly** brown hair. 8. Well, it doesn't **fit** you well. It's too big.

### 6. Insert the article if it is necessary

- 1) **The** Mediterranean Sea is laying between Africa and Europe.
- 2) **The** Danube flows through Vienna, Budapest and Belgrade.
- 3) Peru is in South America.
- 4) **The** Alps are in Europe.
- 5) **The** Hague is the city in **the** Netherlands.
- 6) **The** Pacific Ocean is between America and Asia.
- 7) **The** Panama Channel joins **the** Atlantic and Pacific Ocean.

## Practice 13

### Text: "A Funny Story"

### 2. Write down in to the table the Parts of Speech

<u>the Noun</u>	<u>the Verb</u>	<u>the Adjective</u>
gentlemen restaurant dogs conversation eggs supermarket	talked to eat listened believe want send like best." asked have	intelligent fresh clever old
<u>the Pronoun</u>		
They them She something him nothing another my		



**3. Find in the text:**

*наскільки розумний мій собака* - how intelligent my dog is  
*запитали стареньку жінку* - asked the old lady  
*в маленькому ресторанчику за містом* - in a little restaurant in the country  
*що я люблю найбільше* - I like best  
*увійшла старенька жінка* - old lady came  
*замовила щось поїсти* - ordered something to eat  
*собаки купляють продукти* - dogs go shopping  
*почали голосно розказувати один одному* - started to tell each other in loud voices  
*які спокійно лежали* which - were lying quietly  
*ви не повірите* - you won't believe  
*він купляє тільки свіжі яйця* - he will only take fresh eggs  
*це ще нічого!* - that's nothing

**5. Complete the sentences with the verbs in the box**

1. Graham Bell *invented* the telephone. 2. Thomas Mapother IV *changed* his name to Tom Cruise. 3. The Romans *invaded* France in 58 BC. 4. Americans first *discovered* gold in the USA in 1799. 5. Marco Polo *travelled* to China in the 13<sup>th</sup> century. 6. Columbus *crossed* the Atlantic Ocean in 1492. 7. They *named* their baby after a pop star. 8. Spanish people first *established* the city of Los Angeles.

**6. Reread the text “A Funny Story” and do the test**

1. - a) likes best; 2. - c) old lady; 3. - b) talked about their dogs; 4. - b) ordered something to drink; 5. - b) restaurant in the country; 6. - b) listened to them; 7. - b) conversation; 8. - c) an intelligent dog; 9. - c) the manager; 10. - b) ever seen.

**Practice 14**  
**Grammar: Word Order**

**6. Grammar Exercises**

**1. Make up the sentences paying attention to the Word Order**

1. *I don't like football very much.* 2. *Tom writes the letter every day.* 3. *We do the same thing every day.* 4. *I don't like this picture very much.* 5. *The woman puts money in her bag.* 6. *I did a lot of housework yesterday.* 7. *We met at the concert some friends.* 8. *You wear the same clothes every day.* 9. *She smokes ten cigarettes every day.* 10. *I explained my plan last day.*

**2. Make up the sentences using the attribute Word Order**

1. *Peter and Jane have bought a beautiful big round old brown French wooden table.* 2. *One can buy usually in this shop several thousands fresh white loaves of bread.* 3. *My friend sold a lot of expensive long square and round modern green, black and red striped, polka-dot and flowered Chinese cotton carpets.* 4. *What a wonderful little new black cat!* 5. *Look at some special thin ancient American books.*



### 3. Order the words to make sentences

1. *Bristol is a very exciting city.* 2. *It's in the west of England.* 3. *It's got a population of 500.000.* 4. *My favourite place is the art gallery.* or *The art gallery is my favourite place.* 5. *There are some great shops.* 6. *It's got two football teams.* 7. *I like Bristol because it's a friendly place.* 8. *It's about 190 kilometres from London.*

### 4. Complete questions 1-6 with the words in the box. Then match the questions with answers a-f

1. **Where** is your mother from? - e) *Florida.* 2. **How** old is your cat? - f) *Six months old.* 3. **When** is Steve's birthday? - a) *In June.* 4. **What** is your favourite sport? - c) *Tennis.* 5. **Who** is your best friend? - b) *Sally Heines.* 6. **How many** DVDs have we got? - d) *Thirty.*

### 5. Order the words to make sentences

1. *Paris is a very beautiful city.* 2. *There are really some interesting shops.* 3. *I like exciting place.* 4. *The streets are very safe.* 5. *The very quiet library is in this building.* 6. *Manchester is a big city.* 7. *The town has got a very big park.*

### 6. Complete the sentences with the words in the box

1. I am not **mad** about books. 2. My brother is an Arsenal **fan**. 3. I like art, but I am not very **good** at it. 4. We are really into music, **especially** hip hop and pop. 5. I like chatting on the Internet, but I **prefer** meeting friends. 6. I have got a rat, but my mother **can't** stand it.

## Practice 15 Final Test

### 1. Write the following dates in English

1045 – nineteen forty-five; 2019 – two thousand nineteen; 1004 – ten 0 four; 1861 – eighteen sixty-one; 1987 – nineteen eighty-seven; 2003 - two thousand and three (two thousand 0 three); 1961 - nineteen sixty-one, 2000 - two thousand; 1900 - nineteen hundred; 21 травня - the 21<sup>st</sup> of May; 24 грудня - the 24<sup>th</sup> of December; 13 квітня - the 13<sup>th</sup> of April; 1 березня 1986 року - the 1<sup>st</sup> of March, nineteen eighty-six; Різдво Христове – в січні. – Christmas is in January.; Моя двоюрідна сестра народилася взимку. – My cosine was born in winter.; Цей письменник жив у 19 столітті. – This writer lived in the nineteenth.; о 5 ранку at 5 o'clock sharp am; 068-016-21-27 – o-six-eight-o-one-six-two-one-two-seven; 036-244-55-57 - o-three-six-two-double four-double five-five-seven; 080-155-55-66 - o-eight-o-one-double five-double five-double six

### 2. Write the Plural form of the underlined nouns:

1. The **boys** had **baseballs** in **their hands**. 2. My **horses** **prefer** to wear English **saddles**. 3. **Those cats** never **seem** to tire of jumping in and out of the **boxes**. 4. **You** stole my **ideas** and didn't give **us** any credit. 5. Your **mom** **are** going to be upset

about **those** broken **lamps**. 6. It's not difficult to grow **trees** as long as you give it plenty of water. 7. **We** can't believe **you** let your **dogs** stick its **heads** out the **windows** while you drive.

**3. Transform each of the following words into plurals:**

day - **days**; tax - **taxes**; taxi - **taxies**; lady - **ladies**; mountain - **mountains**; office - **offices**; company - **companies**; mother-in-law - **mothers-in-law**; friend - **friends**; photo - **photos**; fountain-pen - **fountain-pens**; railroadman - **railroadmen**; story - **stories**; schoolgirl - **schoolgirls**; shelf - **shelves**; forget-me-not - **forget-me-nots**.

**4. Choose the correct plural for each of the words:**

1. - b); 2. - c); 3. - c); 4. - b); 5. - a)

**5. Translate into English**

1. An elephant lives longer than a cat. 2. The skyscraper Burj Halifa is higher than Eiffel Tower. 3. This is the shortest way to Kyiv. 4. Oleh is cleverer than Dmytro. 5. Ann is the cleverest student at our college. 6. Our new manager more stupid than the last one. 7. My eldest son is the most careful. 8. This boy is politer / more polite than other boys. 9. Olha's dog is quiet / more quiet than Helen's ones. 10. The Mississippi is longer than the Dniro. 11. The Nile is the longest rive in the world. 12. The wild animals are more dangerous than domestic. 13. This task is the most difficult.

**Practice 16**  
**Text: "Animals"**

**2. Find the second part of the following sentences**

1. Females have one baby, g) *every two or three years*. 2. Orcas live in i) *all of the world's oceans*. 3. I think that is important e) *to protect these animals*. 4. An orca is not a whale, b) *but a type of dolphin*. 5. They hunt and play j) *in groups*. 6. They are swimming h) *in a group near the shore*. 7. Orcas are in the "red list" a) *because they are in danger of becoming extinct*. 8. Orcas usually eat f) *fish, squid, seals and turtles*. 9. Some of orcas are in danger d) *because there is pollution in the sea*. 10. May be they are c) *hunting seals*. .

**Insects:** *worm, caterpillar, spider, ant, lady-bird, bug, mosquito, fly, butterfly*

**Reptiles:** *snake, frog, lizard, chameleon, viper (asp), python (boa), crocodile, tortoise*

**Mammals:** *elephant, giraffe, lion, tiger, cheetah, monkey, bear, fox, hare, wolf, shark, whale, dolphin, seal, rhino, sea cow, fur seal (walrus), hippo (river horse), beaver*

**Birds:** *parrot, sparrow, falcon, eagle, owl*

**Fish:** *salmon, herring, pike, carp, crucian*

**6. Compare the sentences with names of animals**

1. *Owls* hunt at night. They eat small animals.
2. *Snakes* hide in trees. They have not got legs.
3. *Bears* catch fish. They sleep in winter.
4. *Chameleons* don't feed their young. They can change colour when they want to hide.
5. *Crocodiles* hunt smaller fish. They sometimes attack human.
6. *Human* build houses. They catch animals and put them in zoos.
7. *Dolphins* protect their babies from sharks. They sing to each other.

**7. Check the meanings of the verbs and choose the correct**

1. The blackbird is *feeding* its chicks.
2. The beaver is *building* a dam.
3. The chameleon is *catching* an insect with its tongue.
4. The fish is *protecting* the other fish.
5. The bear is *hunting* the salmon.
6. The falcon is *chasing* a group of smaller birds.

**8. Choose the correct words**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Humans <i>kill</i> / <i>die</i> seals for their fur.   | 5. Female elephants <i>attack</i> / <i>protect</i> their babies. |
| 2. Crocodiles <i>feed</i> / <i>eat</i> meat.              | 6. Bears <i>catch</i> / <i>fight</i> fish in rivers.             |
| 3. Falcons <i>build</i> / <i>hide</i> in trees.           | 7. Whales don't <i>fly</i> / <i>swim</i> .                       |
| 4. Rabbits <i>climb</i> / <i>dig</i> holes in the ground. | 8. Some snakes can <i>climb</i> / <i>chase</i> trees.            |

**Practice 17**

**Grammar: The Present Indefinite Tense**

**3. Grammar Exercises**

**1. Put the verbs into the Present Indefinite**

1. General Director *concludes* agreements every day.
2. He *doesn't like* black coffee.
3. I *sign* contracts every day.
4. She *reads* detectives every evening.
5. *Do* you *go* for a walk every day?

**2. Insert the verbs: to, to, , to in proper tense**

1. Steve *smokes* ten cigarettes a day.
2. We usually *have* dinner at 7 o'clock.
3. I *like* films. I often *go* to the cinema.
4. Water *boils* at 100 degrees Celsius.
5. In Britain the banks *open* at 9.30 in the morning and *close* at 18.30 in the evening.
6. Shoes are expensive. They *cost* a lot of money.
7. Tina *teaches* mathematics to young teacher.
8. Your job is very interesting. You *meet* many people.
9. Emma *washes* his hair twice a week.

**3. Give the correct form of the Simple Present in each verb**

1. My uncle *works* in a factory.
2. The children *eat* a lot of sweets.
3. I always *go*

out on Sundays. 4. She never **gets** up very early. 5. The concert **starts** at 7 every Friday. 6. Joan and Sue **wear** glasses.

**4. Make the following sentences negative**

1. The waiters **don't do** their work well. 2. The dog **doesn't sleep** all day in the house. 3. He **doesn't know** the correct answer. 4. The students **don't have** new textbooks. 5. She **doesn't try** to play tennis well. 6. I **don't go** to bed very early.

**5. Make the following sentences interrogative**

1. **Do** his sons **go** to the local school? 2. **Where do** they fish? 3. **Why do** elephants never forget? 4. **When does** the river freeze? 5. **What does** she **realise**? 6. **When do** we **miss** the bus?

**6. Match the verbs in the box with words 1-8**

1. **have** lunch
2. **speak** Spanish
3. **watch** TV
4. **go** to bed
5. **work** in a factory
6. **cook** dinner
7. **start** school
8. **do** my homework

**Practice 18**

**Text: "The Broken Vase"**

**3. Find in the text**

*коштують дорого* - cost a lot of money  
*подумав хвилину* - thought a moment  
*розказав йому все* - told him everything  
*він увійде в кімнату* - he enters the room  
*він не міг відвести очі від неї* - he could not take his eyes off it  
*хочете купити її* - want to buy it  
*упакувати всі уламки* - pack the pieces  
*як було сплановано* - as had been planned  
*там в кутку* - in the corner there  
*зробити їй подарунок* - to make her a present  
*багато гарних речей* - many beautiful things  
*в нього було дуже мало грошей* - he had very little

**4. Choose the correct options**

1. Giraffes have got very long **necks**. 2. Ben has no hair at all – he is **bald**. 3. How much is this **pair** of jeans? 4. You should wear a comfortable **tracksuit suit** to do sports. 5. Jessica has got dark hair. She's blond now because she is wearing **a wig**. 6.

Anton is tall and very good-*looking*. 7. He's hot short, *curly* brown hair. 8. Well, it doesn't *fit* you well. It's too big.

**5 Give the correct form of the Simple Present in each verb**

1. My uncle *works* in a factory. 2. The children *eat* a lot of sweets. 3. I always *go* out on Sundays. 4. She never *gets* up very early. 5. The concert *starts* at 7 every Friday. 6. Joan and Sue *wear* glasses.

**6. Make the following sentences interrogative**

1. *When do* their daughters *play* tennis? 2. *Where do* they buy milk? 3. *Do* my friends pick up mushrooms every autumn? 4. *Where do* fish *live* in water? 5. *Why do* crocodiles attack people? 6. *Do* monkeys *climb* trees? 7. *Where does* she study? 8. *Why does* she sometimes *miss* her dinner?

**7. Reread the text "The Broken Vase" and do the test**

- |                          |                                  |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. - c) help you;        | 7. - c) present;                 |
| 2. - b) beautiful vase;  | 8. - c) to buy a vase;           |
| 3. - a) a broken vase;   | 9. - a) was in love;             |
| 4. - c) very little;     | 10. - b) take the packed present |
| 5. - a) a young man;     | with the broken vase.            |
| 6. - c) pack the pieces; |                                  |

**8 Make the following sentences negative**

1. The waiters *don't do* their work well. 2. The dog *doesn't sleep* all day in the house. 3. He *doesn't know* the correct answer. 4. The students *don't have* new textbooks. 5. She *doesn't try* to play tennis well. 6. I *don't go* to bed very early.

**Practice 19**  
**Revision**  
**Test 4**

**1. Translate the following word-combinations into English:**

*fish, squids and turtles; whales, dolphins, seals and penguins; population, country, capital and currency; this country has got borders with 5 countries; a culf and a cub; fox females; polar bears are in danger; orcas are becoming extinct; protect environment; hunt small animals, sometimes attack humans; intelligent and quiet; Mandarin is not official language of the country; climb trees*

**2. Write the animas for each group:**

**Mammals:** *elephant, giraffe, lion, tiger, cheetah, monkey, bear, fox, hare, wolf, shark, whale, dolphin, seal, rhino, sea cow, fur seal (walrus), hippo (river horse), beaver;* **Fish:** *salmon, herring, pike, carp, crucian;* **Insects:** *worm, caterpillar, spider, ant, lady-bird, bug, mosquito, fly, butterfly;* **Birds:** *parrot, sparrow, falcon,*



eagle, owl; **Reptiles:** snake, frog, lizard, chameleon, viper (asp), python (boa), crocodile, tortoise

#### 4. Make up sentences using the following words

1. *We are not going to accept it.* 2. *I am going to correct them.* 3. *We are going to cancel it.* 4. *I am going to close it.* 5. *She is going to update them.* 6. *He is going to sell it.*

#### 5. Complete the sentences with the words from the box. There are three extra words

1. Can you send me an *e-mail* with Jenny's address? 2. My job is boring: I ask people their *opinion* and write down their answers. 3. I never *work* long hours – I usually go home at three o'clock. 4. Matt works for a *travel* company – he can help you find a cheap tour. 5. Sally wants to gain some *experience* by working this summer as a doctor. 6. Working as a lecturer I *earn* about 3 hundred dollars per week. 7. He doesn't get paid – it's *voluntary* work. 8. In my job, I am *responsible* for looking after three little children.

#### 6. Fill in: a, an or the

At *the* weekend, Alex and Amanda went to *the* theatre. They saw *a* great play called \_\_\_\_ "I Would Die For You". *The* play was *a* romantic story about lives of *a* couple in love. After going to *the* theatre, Alex and Amanda went to *a* restaurant. They both ate *a* very large meal. Amanda had *a* huge bowl of \_\_\_\_ spaghetti and Alex had *an* enormous plate of various kinds of \_\_\_\_ meat. *The* spaghetti and *the* meat were followed by \_\_\_\_ chocolate cake. After leaving *the* restaurant, Alex and Amanda got *a* taxi home. On *the* way home they saw *a* nasty car accident. *A* yellow car had run straight into *a* black van. *The* yellow car was badly damaged. *The* taxi driver had to take Alex and Amanda home by another \_\_\_\_ route.

## Practice 20

### Grammar: The Past Indefinite Tense

#### 4. Grammar Exercises

##### 1. Make up special questions to the following sentences

1. *When did I decide* to go to England? 2. *Where did I arrive* last year? 3. *Why did I go* to my hotel by bus last Saturday? 4. *How many letters did I write* yesterday? 5. *What did he do* last Sunday? 6. *When did they speak* English with their friends?

##### 2. Insert the verbs: *to clean, to die, to enjoy, to finish, to happen, to live, to open, to play, to rain, to smoke, to start, to stay, to want* in Past Simple

1. I *cleaned* my teeth 3 times yesterday. 2. He *smoked* 20 cigarettes yesterday evening. 3. The concert last night *started* at 7.30 and *finished* at 10 o'clock. 4. The accident *happened* last Sunday afternoon. 5. When I was a child I *wanted* to be a doctor. 6. Mozart *lived* from 1756 to 1791. 7. We *enjoyed* our holiday last year. 8.



Today the weather is nice, but yesterday it **rained**. 9. It was hot in the room so I **opened** the window. 10. The weather was good yesterday afternoon so we **played** tennis. 11. William Shakespeare **died** in 1616. 12. We **stayed** at a very good hotel last weekend.

**3. Make the following sentences into the Simple Past**

1. It **started** to rain. 2. People **liked** our house. 3. She **drank** coffee last morning. 4. I **played** chess with my father last evening. 5. My brother **sat** with his best friend. 6. The boy **stopped** a taxi in the street.

**4. Make the following negative using the Simple Past**

1. It **did not start** to rain. 2. People **did not like** our house. 3. She **did not drink** coffee last morning. 4. I **did not play** chess with my father every evening. I **did not play** chess. 5. My brother **did not sit** with his best friend. My brother **did not sit** with his best friend. 6. The boy **did not stop** a taxi in the street. The boy **did not stop** a taxi in the street.

**5. Make up general questions using the Simple Past**

1. **Did** we **watch** the interesting DVD in the cinema? 2. **Did** my friends **like** chatting on the Internet? 3. **Did** she **drink** many cups of coffee last day? 4. **Did** I **play** football last Sundays? 5. **Did** my sister **meet** her first teacher last week? 6. **Did** the women **be** and **drink** in the café and drank green tea with lemon yesterday? 7. **Did** they **discuss** the problem at the last meeting?

**6. Complete the questions and answers in the dialogue. Use the the question words in the box and the past tense of the verbs in brackets**

A. 1. **What time** did Koji come into the café?

B. He 2 **came** into the café at 8.00.

A. 3. **Where** did he sit?

B. He 4 **sat** near the door.

A. 5. **Who** did he talk to?

B. He 6 **talked** to a man with a beard.

A. 7. **What** did Koji drink?

B. He 8 **drank** coffee.

A. 9. **How** did he die?

B. He 10 **died** after drinking the coffee.

**7. Make affirmative and negative sentences. Use the prompts and your own ideas**

1. *I didn't have a sandwich for lunch. I had a hamburger.* 2. *I didn't meet my friends in town. I met my parents.* 3. *We didn't go to a café. We went to a restaurant.* 4. *I didn't read a book in bed. I read a newspaper.* 5. *We didn't eat at home on Friday. We ate in the café.* 6. *I didn't write a letter to a friend. I wrote a composition.*

## Practice 21

### Text: “Jim and Della”

#### 3. Find in the text

*це – гарне волосся* - it is fine hair

*працювали зранку до ночі* - worked from early morning till late at night

*вийняв пакет із своєї кишені* - took a packet out of his pocket

*вже була у перукарні* - was already at the hairdresser's shop

*дійсно не знала, що робити* - really did not know what to do

*вже чекав на неї* - was already waiting for her

*вона сказала сама собі* - she said to herself

*на одній з брудних вулиць* - in one of the dirty streets

*стояла навпроти дзеркала* - stood in front of the mirror

*в одному з магазинів* - In one of the shops

*був непотрібний йому* - was of no use to him

#### 4. Find in the text and write the endings for the following sentences

1. Christmas was coming and Della e) *wanted to give Jim a nice present but she had no money.*

2. The beautiful chain, Della's j) *... present, was of no use to him.*

3. She got up and stood in l) *... front of the mirror and look at her beautiful long hair.*

4. Jim and Della lived in a small room in k) *... an old house in one of the dirty streets of New York.*

5. She took the money h) *... and went to buy a present for her husband.*

6. Then she left the house and c) *... in a few minutes she was already at the hairdresser's shop.*

7. He had sold his gold watch i) *... to buy a Christmas present for his wife.*

8. He took a packet out d) *... of his pocket and gave it to Della.*

9. So Della bought a gold watch-chain g) *... as a Christmas present for Jim.*

10. They worked from early a) *... morning till late at night, but they got very little money for their work.*

11. She opened it and saw two f) *... beautiful combs that she had seen in a shop window and had wanted for so long.*

12. Dear Jim, my hair will grow b) *... and I wanted to give you a present.*

#### 5. Supply the Past Simple of the verbs in brackets

1. When William *was* 18 years old he *left* his village and *went* to London. 2. We *began* work at 9 o'clock last Monday. 3. He *put* his car into a car park and it *cost* him \$1 for the day. 4. The next day he *got* up early and *went* in by tube but he *forgot* that it was Sunday. 5. When he *got* to the bank, he *saw* that it was closed. 6. William *sold* his car, *took* his things and *went* back home to Wales.

**6. Complete the text with the correct past simple form of the verbs in the boxes**

When Jonathan Wendel was thirteen, he often went to arcades and he 1 *played* games against older teenagers. He was very good and he often 2 *won* . His parents 3 *knew* about this, but they 4 *did not like* it. Luckily, Jonathan 5 *does not listen* to them.

When he was eighteen, he 6 *took* part in his first professional competition. He 7 *did not win* but he 8 *was* the third. In his next competition he 9 *become* a champion of the game Quake 3.

After that he 10 *travelled* around the world and he 11 *did not lose* very often. He 12 *beaten* all the best players. He 13 *started* his company Fatality, Inc. and 14 *made* a lot of money selling things for computers.

**7. Reread the text “Jim & Della” and do the test**

1. - b) wanted to give; 2. - c) watch chain; 3. - a) pocket; 4. - c) sofa; 5. - b) dirty streets; 6. - a) long hair; 7. - c) till late; 8. - c) hairdresser's shop; 9. - a) gold watch; 10. - a) waiting.

**Practice 22**

**Grammar: The Future Indefinite Tense**

**3. Grammar Exercises**

**1. Translate the sentences using the *Future Indefinite Tense*. Make up negative and interrogative forms**

1. He will reserve a room in a hotel. 2. We will have supper at 7 PM. 3. They will park cars. 4. He will be late on a train. 5. We will declare all presents.

**2. Write sentences with *will* and *won't* and the verbs in brackets**

1. We *will take* warm clothes. 2. I *won't use* my mobile phone. 3. It *will be* cold in the Antarctic. 4. I think she *will phone* me tonight. 5. You *won't get* lost because you have got a map. 6. I hope we *will see* penguins. 7. It *will rain* tomorrow, so you need waterproof clothes.

**3. Insert the verbs in proper tense**

1. Steve *will smoke* ten cigarettes tomorrow. 2. We *will have* dinner at 7 o'clock next Tuesday. 3. Next Sunday we *will go* to the cinema. 4. Tomorrow this bank *will open* at 9.30 am and *will close* at 18.30 pm. 5. These shoes are expensive. They *will cost* a lot of money. 6. Peter *will teach* arts to young teachers next year. 7. Your job is very interesting. You *will meet* many people. 8. Peter *will wash* his hair next month.

**4. Insert the verbs in proper time**

1. I *cleaned* my teeth 3 times yesterday. 2. He *smoked* 20 cigarettes yesterday evening. 3. Today's concert *will start* at 7.30 and *will finish* at 11 pm. 4. The

accident **happened** last Sunday afternoon. 5. Mozart **lived** from 1756 to 1791. 6. We **will enjoy** our holiday next year. We **will stay** at a luxury hotel. 7. Today the weather is nice, but yesterday it **rained**. 8. It was hot in the room so I **will open** the window. 9. The weather will be good next day so we **will play** tennis. 10. William Shakespeare **died** in 1616.

**5. Write questions and answers about the future using the verbs in the box**

1. *Will the weather be cold tonight? No, it won't.* 2. *Will the weather change in the future? Yes, it will.* 3. *Will the polar bears become extinct? Yes, they will.* 4. *Will the people live in the Arctic? No, they won't.* 5. *Will the scientists study the weather? Yes, they will.* 6. *Will all the Arctic melt in the next 10 years. No, it won't.* 7. *Will the people kill all the mosquitoes? No, they won't.*

**Practice 23**  
**Revision**  
**Test 5**

**1. Translate into English**

*incredible luxury comb; enormous dirty building; dear, glass skyscraper; tiny watch chain; poor servant, owner of the shop and expensive vase; amazing desert; fast modern lifts; enormous tower with stairs; trees next to the skyscraper; the first (ground) floor*

**2. Choose the correct words**

1. Columbus **discovered** America. 2. My grandmother changed her **surname** when she married. 3. We went to London two weeks **ago**. 4. Tom is **chef** and he works in a restaurant. 5. William I was **king** of England 1.000 years ago. 6. Being a firefighter is a **dangerous** job. 7. Victoria was a popular first name in the 19<sup>th</sup> **century**. 8. Jaguar is a famous **brand name** for a car.

**3. Make the following sentences negative**

1. The waiters **don't do** their work well. 2. The dog **doesn't sleep** all day in the house. 3. He **doesn't know** the correct answer. 4. The students **don't have** new textbooks. 5. She **doesn't try** to play tennis well. 6. I **don't go** to bed very early.

**4. Insert the verbs in brackets in Past Simple:**

1. Last year I **decided** to go to England. 2. When I left Kiev it **rained**, but when I **arrived** in London it **cleared up**. 3. I **went** to my hotel by bus last Saturday. 4. I **wrote** some letters yesterday. 5. He **did** his homework last Sunday. 6. As soon as I **filled in** I **saw** a friend of mine from Ukraine.

**5. Complete the text "Christopher Columbus" with affirmative and negative forms of the verbs in brackets**

Columbus **wanted** to find a new way to India. In 1492, he **travelled** across the Atlantic Ocean. He **arrived** in San Salvador in the Bahamas two months later. He **visited** a lot of islands and he **named** them the Indies. He **called** the native people

Indians. It was a very beautiful place, but he **didn't discover** any gold there. Columbus **did not stay** a long time and he **arrived** back in Spain in March 1493. The King and Queen of Spain were not happy because he **did not discover** any gold or a new way to India. Columbus **did not visit** North America, but he was the first European to explore Central America.

**6. Fill in: a, an or the where necessary**

**John:** Do you want to come to **the** theatre with me tonight?

**Ann:** Sorry, I can't. I'm going to **a** restaurant with my cousin from \_\_\_ America.

**John:** What part of **the** USA does he come from?

**Ann:** He lives in \_\_\_ Colorado, near **the** Rocky Mountains. He is quite **a** famous man in \_\_\_ America. He plays **the** guitar in **a** rock band. In fact he's giving a concert at **the** Odeon in \_\_\_ Regent Street tomorrow evening.

**Practice 24**

**Text: "City in the Sky"**

**2. Write the Plural form for the following words**

*cities, glasses, skyscrapers, floors, deserts, buildings, people, hotels, offices, restaurants, swimming pools, libraries, gyms, flats, visitors, areas, cars, streets, towers, lifts, stairs, parks, lakes, centres, shops, places.*

**3. Find in the text**

*на вулиці виглядають крихітними* - streets below are tiny

*якщо ви – багата людина* - if you are a very rich

*прохолодно усередині* - cool inside

*розкішний готель* - luxury hotel

*багато сходів* - lots of stairs

*хмарочосів у пустелі* - skyscrapers in the desert

*торговий центр розташований поблизу* - big shopping centre next to

*неймовірний хмарочос* - incredible skyscraper

*дорогих квартир* - expensive flats

*велике озеро* - large lake

*величезна будівля* - enormous building

*башта має* - tower has got

**5. Write affirmative and negative sentences using the past simple**

1. I **visited** Trafalgar Square. 2. Columbus **did not discover** North America. 3. We **moved** to Brighton last year. 4. My mom **did not change** her name when she got married. 4. They **stayed** in London last Saturday evening. 5. John Logie Baird **invented** the TV. 6. My dad **stopped** smoking last month. 7. My birthday present **did not arrive** in the post last morning.



**6. Write affirmative and interrogative sentences using the present simple**

1. They *fight* with fire every day. *What do* they *do* with fire every day? 2. Tony *meets* his friends every Friday. *When does* Tony *meet* his friends? 3. My sister *goes* to the cinema on Sundays. *Where does* my sister *go* on Sundays? 4. We *move* every seven years. *Why do* we *move* every seven years? 5. Tony *plays* football very well. *Does* Tony *play* football very well? 6. Paul *likes* black coffee. *What coffee does* Paul *like*? 7. My dog is very lazy he *sleeps* all the day. *How much does* my dog *sleep*?

**7. Reread the text “City in the Sky” and do the test**

- |                            |                             |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. - c) 25000;             | 6. - a) offices;            |
| 2. - b) 1200 luxury shops; | 7. - b) 100 kilometres;     |
| 3. - a) desert;            | 8. - c) 57 very fast lifts; |
| 4. - b) 828 metres high;   | 9. - b) lake;               |
| 5. - a) cold inside;       | 10. - a) fantastic place.   |

**Practice 25**

**Grammar: The Present Continuous Tense**

**2. Grammar Exercises**

**1. Put the verbs into the Present Continuous Tense**

1. General Director *is concluding* the agreement now. 2. We *are not speaking* to him at the moment. 3. She *is signing* the present contract now. 4. You *are watching* an interesting film at the moment. 5. They *are cleaning* the room now.

**2. Put the verbs into the Present Indefinite or the Present Continuous Tense**

1. Who is that lady who *is standing* in the doorway? 2. *Do* you *not recognise* her? It *is* Helen, my aunt. 3. My grandfather *is not working*. He is a pensioner. 4. *Do* you *not see* the kettle *is boiling*? 5. I *think* that the weather *is improving*. 6. *Does* Mary *come* this evening? 7. She always *comes* on time. 8. “Where is Michael?” “He *is having* a smoke.” 9. We usually *have* our lunch at 2 p.m. 10. *Do* you *try* to learn the poem by heart? 11. She *speaks* three languages. 12. I can *see* somebody who *is going* along the street. 13. He *looks* like my cousin.

**3. Make up general questions to the following sentences**

1. *Did I decide* to go to England last year? 2. *Did I arrive* in London last year. 3. *Did I go* to my hotel by bus last Saturday? 4. *Did I write* some letters yesterday? 5. *Did* he *do* his homework last Sunday? 6. *Did I see* a friend of mine from Ukraine?

**4. Translate the following sentences taking into account the construction *be going to + Infinitive***

1. I *am going* to see this film on Sunday. 2. I *am going* to play football after lessons. 3. Olena *is going* to buy a new dress. 4. Богдан не збирається робити цю вправу. Bohdan *is not going* to do this exercise. 5. Що ти збираєшся вдягнути на



вечірку? What **are** you **going** to wear on the party? 6. *Має бути дощ.* It **is going** to rain. 7. *Ми прочитаємо це.* We **are going** to read it. 8. *Вони продають свій будинок.* They **are going** to sell their house. 9. *Ми відвідаємо багато музеїв та галерей.* We **are going** to visit many museums and art galleries.

**5 Complete the sentences. Use the present simple and present continuous forms of the verbs**

1. He usually **goes to school** by car, but today he **is walking**. 2. I **am listening** to rap music at the moment, however I **prefer** heavy metal. 3. They **do not usually go** to the cinema, but now they **are watching** DVD. 4. Their children **go** to bed late every day but they **are sleeping** now. 5. He **always plays** football after school, but he **is playing** tennis at the moment. 6. She **is eating** a steak for dinner now, but she **likes** fish.

**6. Write questions and create answers. Use the present continuous**

1. *What is Emma watching? She is watching the documentary.* 2. *Where are the seals sitting? They are sitting on the rocks.* 3. *What are the seals doing in the sea? They are swimming.* 4. *Where is the shark attacking the seal? It is attacking the seal near the beach.* 5. *Who is counting the seals? The scientists are counting the seals.* 6. *When are they speaking about animals? They are speaking about animals after dinner.*

**Practice 26**

**Text: “American Government”**

**2. Find in the text**

*наступні 13 департаментів* - following thirteen departments

*очолюється призначеним* - is headed by an appointed

*який проголошується державним секретарем* - as announced by the presidential secretary

*і як результат немає* - and consequently no

*єдине виключення* - only exception

*виконують обов'язки заступників секретарів* - performing the duties of assistant secretaries

*міністерство фінансів* – Treasury Department

*функції заступників міністрів* - functions of deputy ministers

*міністерство торгівлі* - Commerce Department

*за що міністерства внутрішніх справ відповідають в інших країнах* - ministries of the interior are responsible for in other countries

**4. Write affirmative and negative sentences using the correct form of *be going to***

1. *Emma is not going to take a tent. She is going to sleep outside.* 2. *The students are not going to study. They are going to explore the rainforest.* 3. *He is not going to*

travel by boat. He is going to fly. 4. We are not going to ask someone. We are going to look at the map. 5. You are not catch the frogs. You are going to count them. 6. They are not going to have any hot water. They are going to wash in the river.

**5. Reread the text “American Government”**

1. - b) Assistant Secretaries;
2. - c) FBI;
3. - a) “administration”;
4. - b) Interior department;
5. - a) ministries;
6. - b) positions;
7. - b) Educational Department;
8. - c) thirteen departments;
9. - c) four departments;
10. - b) Inspector General.

**6. Complete the dialogue with the phrases in the box**

**Paul:** 1 - *What are you doing* at the moment?

**Anna:** 2 - *I'm reading* an e-mail from Emma. She is in Australia.

**Paul:** Is she having 3 - *a good time*?

**Anna:** Yes, she says it is fantastic. She goes swimming 4 - *every day*.

**Paul:** Listen! What's that?

**Anna:** 5 - *Maybe it is* a mosquito.

**Paul:** Well, it is not a mosquito.

**Anna:** Look. It is yellow and black. 6 - *It looks like* a wasp.

**Paul:** I am not sure it is.

**Anna:** 7 - *It sounds like* a bee.

**Paul:** That's OK, then.

**Practice 27**

**Revision**

**Test 6**

**1. Translate the following phrases into English**

*presidential secretary of the department of Commerce; governmental institution; Attorney General as an exception; stew, chop, cereals and a tart; Secretary of the department of Treasury; Under Secretary instead of deputy minister; brew and draw tea; perform the functions of the Federal Bureau of Investigation; responsible for keeping law and order but not overseeing national park system;*

**2. Put the verbs into the Present Continuous Tense**

1. General Director *is concluding* the agreement now. 2. We *are not speaking* to him at the moment. 3. She *is signing* the present contract now. 4. You *are watching* an interesting film at the moment. 5. They *are cleaning* the room now.

**3. Put the verbs into the Present Indefinite or the Present Continuous Tense**

1. Who is that lady who *is standing* in the doorway? 2. *Do* you *not recognise* her? It *is* Helen, my aunt. 3. My grandfather *doesn't work*. He is a pensioner. 4. *Do* you *not see* the kettle *is boiling*? 5. I *think* that the weather *is improving*. 6. *Is* Mary *coming* this evening? 7. She always *comes* on time. 8. "Where is Michael?" "He *is having* a smoke." 9. We usually *have* our lunch at 2 p.m. 10. *Are* you *trying* to learn the poem by heart? 11. She *speaks* three languages. 12. I can *see* somebody who *is going* along the street. 13. He *looks* like my cousin. 14. *Is* your sister *going* to the exhibition next Saturday? 15. I *remember* well the things I *like*.

**4. Order the words to make questions with will. Then write short answers**

1. Will the scientist find new species? Yes, they will. 2. Will you see the monkeys in the jungle? Yes, I will. 3. Will we arrive early? Yes, we will. 4. Will you need waterproof clothes? No, we won't. 5. Will they win the match? No, they won't.

**5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the box**

1. There are about 500 million *people* in the European Union. 2. Seattle and Los Angeles are *cities* in the west of the USA. 3. There are 27 *countries* in the European Union. 4. There are people of 179 different *nationalities* living in London. 5. In Canada, there are two official *languages*. 6. There are *classes* in French and Spanish in my school. 7. The *population* of London is more than 7.5 million.

**6. Match the verbs in the box with words 1-8**

1. *have* lunch; 2. *speak* Spanish; 3. *watch* TV; 4. *go* to bed; 5. *work* in a factory; 6. *cook* dinner; 7. *start* school; 8. *do* my homework.

**7. Complete the sentences with the affirmative or negative forms of the verbs in the box in exercise 1**

1. Colette *doesn't watch* DVDs after dinner. 2. I *go* to bed at about 11 pm.  
3. We *do not have* lunch at our canteen. 4. Billy *does* his homework before dinner. 5. My parents *speak* Polish fluently. 6. His brother *doesn't work* in an office.  
7. Emma and I *do not start* school at 9 am. 8. Dad *cooks* dinner at the weekend.

**Practice 28**

**Grammar: The Past Continuous Tense**

**4. Grammar Exercises**

**1. Put the verbs into the correct form**

1. Yesterday at 7 we *were reading*. 2. At 11 am he *was working* with his fellow workers. 3. At 12 o'clock PM we *were sitting* in the room listening to the radio. 4. When you called on me I *was writing* the report at home. 5. In the spring of the year 2019 they *were passing* their exams. 6. Last year at 9 we *were playing* tennis. 7. At 2 pm she and her boyfriend *were singing* in the karaoke club. 8. At 5 pm we *were watching* DVD. 9. When they read the newspaper we *were cooking* dinner in the

kitchen. 10. In the summer of the year 1982 he *was studying* at school.

**2. Write the negative form of the sentences from the Exercise 1**

1. Yesterday at 7 we *were not reading*. 2. At 11 am he *was not working* with his fellow workers. 3. At 12 o'clock PM we *were not sitting* in the room listening to the radio. 4. When you called on me I *was not writing* the report at home. 5. In the spring of the year 2019 they *were not passing* their exams. 6. Last year at 9 we *were not playing* tennis. 7. At 2 pm she and her boyfriend *were not singing* in the karaoke club. 8. At 5 pm we *were not watching* DVD. 9. When they read the newspaper we *were not cooking* dinner in the kitchen. 10. In the summer of the year 1982 he *was not studying* at school.

**3. Write the interrogative form of the sentences from the Exercise 1**

1. When were we reading? 2. Where was he was working at 11 am? 3. What were we doing at 12 o'clock? 4. What was I writing when you called on me? 5. What were they passing in the spring of the year 2019? 6. Where were we playing tennis last year at 9? 7. What were she and her boyfriend doing in the karaoke club at 2 pm? 8. When were we watching DVD? 9. What were we cooking in the kitchen when they read the newspaper? 10. When was he studying at school?

**4. Complete each sentences so that it means the same as the first sentence. Use the comparative form of the adjectives in brackets**

1. The cinema is *more modern* than the library. 2. The train station is *farther* than the bus station. 3. Those flats are *cheaper* than these houses. 4. New York is *noisier* than Geneva. 5. The shopping centre is *dirtier* than the sports centre. 6. The ocean is *more dangerous* than the swimming pool.

**5. Write questions using *be going to*. Then match the questions with the answers a-h**

1. *What equipment is Lucy going to take?* c) *A map and a camera.* 2. *Is there going to be hot?* d) *Yes, it is.* 3. *Are you going to take photos?* a) *Yes, I am.* 4. *What are you going to do there?* e) *I'm going to take photos of animals.* 5. *What are you going to see there?* h) *Polar bears.* 6. *What is Tim going to wear?* b) *Waterproof clothes.* 7. *Are they going to go by train?* f) *No, they are not.* 8. *How are they going to travel?* - g) *In a canoe.*

**6. Write questions for these answers with the words in brackets**

1. How often do you have Spanish classes? 2. Where does Tony live? 3. What time do Tom and Jim have lunch? 4. When do you usually get up? 5. Who sits next to Peter in class? 6. What does she read? 7. How often do you practise dancing?

## Practice 29

### Text: "English Food"

#### 3. Find in the text

*гарячу страву на вечерю* - a hot meal in the evening

*подаються рідко* - seldom served

*додається кипляча вода* - Boiling water is added

*зварене яйце* - a boiled egg

*пудинг із заварним кремом* - pudding with custard

*чайна ложка чаю* - teaspoonful of tea

*з або без цукру* - with or without sugar

*їдять гарячим або холодним* - eaten hot or cold

*дешеві відрізані шматки* - cheaper cuts

*рисовий пудинг* - rice pudding

#### 5. Choose the correct word in *italics*

1. Sushi is a Japanese dish made with *raw* fish. 2. *Stir* the mixture slowly every five minutes. 3. Ugh! This soup is much too *salty*. 4. First, you *chop* the onion into cubes. 5. I don't eat many cakes and biscuits. I find them too *sweet*. 6. Fill a large saucepan with water and *boil* the pasta for ten minutes. 7. Macaroni cheese is my favourite *dish*. 8. The *cooker* has broken. I need to buy a new one. 9. In Britain at Christmas, it's traditional to *roast* a turkey in the oven. 10. Oh no! I have put chicken in the soup and Diane is a *vegetarian*.

#### 6. Reread the text "English Food" and do the test

1. - c) Meat;
2. - a) fried fish;
3. - b) potatoes or bread;
4. - c) bread and cheese;
5. - a) a cup of tea or coffee;
6. - b) plain;
7. - b) one teaspoonful of tea for each person;
8. - b) cabbage;
9. - a) nine;
10. - c) custard.

## Practice 30

### Grammar: The Future Continuous Tense

#### 3. Grammar Exercises

##### 1. Put the verbs into the *Future Continuous Tense*

1. I *will be working* at 6 o'clock. 2. He can't come at two o'clock tomorrow because he *will be giving* a lesson at that time. 3. When I come back, they *will be*



*having* supper. 4. I **will be working** when he returns. 5. If you come after 11 o'clock, I **will be sleeping**. 6. He **will be preparing** for his exams in May. 7. She **will be writing** a play during the summer. 8. In June they **will be going** to the Black Sea.

## 2. Write negative form

1. We **will still be staying** at eight o'clock. 2. They and their relatives can't come at two o'clock tomorrow because he **will be giving** a lesson at that time. 3. When we come back, they **will be having** supper. 4. She **will be working** when her son returns. 5. If you come after seven o'clock, I **will be sleeping**. 6. He and his classmates **will be preparing** for their exams in May. 7. She **will be writing** a play during the summer. 8. In June they **will be going** to the Black Sea. 9. We **will be reading** the whole evening. 10. We **will be coping** these exercises all day tomorrow.

## 3. Write interrogative form

1. We **will still be staying** at eight o'clock. 2. We **will be coping** these exercises all day tomorrow. 3. They **will be having** supper at seven o'clock. 4. She **will be working** when her son returns. 5. I **will be sleeping** after eleven o'clock. 6. He and his classmates **will be preparing** for their exams in May. 7. She **will be writing** a play during the summer. 8. In June they **will be going** to the Black Sea. 9. We **will be reading** the whole evening. 10. They and their relatives can't come at two o'clock tomorrow because he **will be giving** a lesson at that time.

## 4. Put the verbs into the Future Continuous Tense

1. Next Saturday at 7.00 am Mary **will be visiting** Brighton with her friends. 2. Queen Elisabeth **will be receiving** an American delegation next day. 3. Meet me at 2 pm. I **will be looking for** you. 4. We **will be playing** all morning. 5. You **won't be coming back** here any more. 6. During our last exam I **will be asking** thousands of questions. 7. He **will be going** to school soon. 8. During her next visit my sister **won't be seeing** sightseeing in London.

## 5. Read this short article about British and American families

1 - D – *they often mean only*; 2 - B – *closely involved in*; 3 - K – *is traditionally based on*; 4 - H – *which normally consists of*; 5 - A – *taken to*; 6 - J – *expected to obey*; 7 - E – *is being weakened*; 8 - C – *getting married*; 9 - I – *they wanted to start*; 10 - F – *for people to get*.

## 6. Complete the sentences with the present continuous or the present simple

1. a) We **watch** TV every day. b) We **are watching** a good documentary now. 2. a) I **swim** in the sea every day. b) Oh, no! That shark **is swimming** towards us. 3. a) He **is eating** in a restaurant at the moment. b) He usually **eats** at home. 4. a) Humans sometimes **hunt** animals for sport. b) Look! Those men **are hunting** baby seals.



**Practice 31**  
**Revision**  
**Test 7**

**1. Put the verbs into the *Future Continuous Tense***

1. We *will still be working* at 9 o'clock. 2. Her cousin can't come at two o'clock tomorrow because he *will be giving* a lesson at that time. 3. When I come back, they *will be having* supper. 4. I *will be working* when he returns. 5. If you come after 11 o'clock, I *will be sleeping*. 6. He *will be preparing* for his exams in May. 7. She *will be writing* a play during the summer. 8. In June they *will be going* to the Black Sea.

**2. Write the negative form**

1. They *will not be going* to the cinema next Sunday. 2. His son *will not be teaching* English, French and Spanish next year. 3. Their relatives *will not be telling* about last accident tomorrow. 4. I *will not be working* next week. 5. They *will not be sleeping* at 3 am. 6. He *will not be preparing* for his exams in March and April. 7. She *will not be reading* this book next evening. 8. In August their friends *will not be going* to Italy.

**3. Write the interrogative form**

1. When *will they be going* to the cinema? 2. What languages *will* his son *be teaching* next year? 3. What *will* their relatives *be telling* about tomorrow? 4. Where *will I be working* next week? 5. When *will they be sleeping* at 3 am? 6. When *will* he *be preparing* for his exams? 7. Where *will* she *be reading* this book next evening? 8. Where *will* their friends *be going* in August?

**4. Put the verbs into the *Past Continuous Tense*. Then write negative and interrogative forms**

1. Yesterday at 5 pm he *was watching* new film in the cinema. Yesterday at 5 pm he was not watching new film in the cinema. When was he watching new film in the cinema? 2. Last week at 11 am she *was meeting* her friend. Last week at 11 am she *was not meeting* her friend. What was she doing last week at 11 am? 3. Yesterday at 10 PM we *were speaking* with our relatives. Yesterday at 10 PM we were not speaking with our relatives. Where were we speaking with our relatives? 4. When you called on me I *was listening* to music. When you called on me I was not listening to music. What was I doing when you called on me? 5. Last winter they *were celebrating* his birthday in the restaurant. Last winter they were not celebrating his birthday in the restaurant. Where were they celebrating his birthday last winter? 6. At 9 she *was playing* the guitar. At 9 she was not playing the guitar. What was she doing at 9? 7. Last month at 11 pm she *was sleeping* at home. Last month at 11 pm she was not sleeping at home. When was she sleeping last month at 11 pm? 8. At 7 pm they *were going* to the theatre. At 7 pm they were not going to the theatre. Where were they going at 7 pm? 9. When they read the newspaper he *was singing* in the kitchen. When they read the newspaper he was not singing in the kitchen. Where was he

singing when they read the newspaper? 10. Last autumn he *was learning* Spanish and French at school. Last autumn he was not learning Spanish and French at school. What languages was he learning at school last autumn?

**5. Fill in the correct preposition, then explain the phrases**

1. Ann has been **absent from** work for two weeks. 2. It has taken Mark a long time to become **accustomed to** the Australian climate. 3. They **accused** him *of* stealing the car. 4. We need to **agree on** a time to meet. 5. He **apologized to** Mary *for* being late last night. 6. Emma has **applied to** Leeds University *for* a place on the History course. 7. Some people don't **approve of** the council's plan to build a new shopping centre in town. 8. The old man was **begging for** food. 9. Do you **believe in** magic? 10. Rob has been **busy with** the redecorating all week.

**Practice 35**

**Text: "About My Family and Myself. Hobbies in Our Family"**

**About my Family and Myself**

**3. Find in the text**

*їй навіть важко подумати* - She hardly ever thinks  
*великі рахунки* - big accounts  
*яка колись була* - who used to be  
*захоплюється* - is fond of  
*більш за все в світі* - more than anything else in the world  
*любов до його онуків* - love to his grandchildren  
*під час пологів* - at childbirth  
*її спеціальність* - Her special field  
*брак кишенькових грошей* - lack of pocket money  
*де вона зупиняється* - where she stays  
*своїх дітей* - children of their own  
*подалі від* - far from  
*був розпещеним* - was spoilt  
*вживали наркотики* - took drugs  
*дуже засмучені* - very much upset  
*закінчення коледжу* - graduating from her college  
*він був втягнутий* - he got involved

**4. Fill in the gaps in the following sentences the right words from the box.**

**One word is odd:**

1. Lucy is Andrea and Joseph's little *niece*. 2. Donald and Rosemary's *son* is an affectionate husband. 3. Charles's *halfbrother* Robin wasn't fond of school in his childhood. 4. Andrea's *nephew* David is fond of fishing. 5. Charles doesn't show much respect to his *stepmother* Rosemary. 6. Being spoiled by his *grandparents* and *nurse*, Charles grew up to be a very selfish man. 7. Robin is secretly in love with his

*sister-in-law* Amanda. 8. Donald and Rosemary's *son-in-law* is a children's doctor. 9. Donald's *wife* is a successful novelist. 10. Andrea is a *halfsister* of Charles. 11. Andrea is a favourite *daughter* of Rosemary. 12. Donald and Rosemary are the *parents* of three children. 13. Donald is a *husband* of Rosemary.

**5. Reread the text "Meet the Family" and do the test**

1. - b) Spain; 2. - b) three dogs and a cat; 3. - a) Yes; 4. - b) bugs and butterflies; 5. - c) strong-willed person; 6. - a) romantic novels; 7. - b) two children; 8. - b) respect nature; 9. - c) a company of teenagers; 10. b) 36 years ago.

**6. Match the things in A with the actions in B. Write the sentences using present continuous**

1. Two dogs *are running* in the park. 2. A parrot *is singing* to its partner. 3. A man *is speaking* English. 4. A whale *is having* a meal. 5. Children *are practicing* the piano. 6. A girl *is making* a cake. 7. A lion *is attacking* a mosquito.

**7. Complete the text with words in the box**

Polar bears are becoming 1 - *extinct*. Why? Human 2 - *pollution* is changing the 3 - *climate*. Polar bears 4 - *live* on the ice in the Arctic. But the ice is melting and their 5 - *habitat* is getting smaller. Every year it gets more difficult for the bears to 6 - *hunt* seals. Polar bears can 7 - *swim* but they can't live in the sea.

**Practice 36**

**Grammar: The Pronoun**

**11. Grammar Exercises**

**1. Translate into English**

1. This is our house. 2. He doesn't think your flowers are better than mine. 3. They use their car. 4. Where are all our things? – Mine are here. 5. Your textbook is here and where is hers? 6. Their children are big and ours are small. 7. This door is yours, and not mine. 8. They use their laptop. 9. Whose car is it? It's mine. 10. May I borrow your clothes? I've lost mine. 11. We sold our house. 12. This is my bag and that is yours. 13. I have eaten all our fruits, can I have yours? 14. She uses her things. 15. This doll is ours. 16. Andrii asks if you have seen a site of his.

**2. Translate into English**

1. This was the same party. 2. Romeo and Juliet loved each other very much. 3. Give us, please, those documents. 4. He often speaks to himself. 5. These facts speak for themselves. 6. He dressed himself. 7. Tom and Helen greeted one another. 8. I cut myself. 9. He washes himself in cold water. 10. I saw it myself. 11. We said "Hello" to each other. 12. They spoke to the President of the company themselves. 13. The house itself is very old, but it is possible to live there. 14. I and Ihor looked at each other. 15. She knows all these things.

### 3. Translate into English

1. He saw nobody there. or He did not see anybody there. 2. I know neither her, nor her parents. 3. You can buy papers at any post-office. 4. Somebody is standing at the door. 5. There are some books on the shelves. 6. Will you have some more wine? 7. No manager could help him. 8. Give us some magazine to read. 9. We will tell to someone. 10. Are there anybody at home? 11. One can buy butter, sour cream and cottage cheese at the dairy counter. 12. We do not speak anything. or We speak nothing. 13. One should be careful when crossing the street. 14. One can buy here eggplants, vegetable marrows and potatoes. 15. They know nothing. or They don't speak anything.

### 4. Translate into English

1. I have a few books. 2. We have few apples. 3. He has very little time. 4. Andrii has a lot of books. 5. We spend a lot of time. 6. Olena has little sugar. 7. We have a little milk. 8. There were many students in the classroom. 9. A library has few books. 10. I have a few notebooks. 11. I have few pencils. 12. We have little time to do this task. 13. We have a little time to do this task.

### 5. Insert *few*, *a few*, *little* or *a little*

1. few 2. a little 3. a few 4. little. 5. few

### 6. Translate into English

many notebooks, much milk, much water, many days, many newspapers, much chalk, much snow, many rooms, many years, many pictures, much music, many boys, much work.

few houses, few windows, little paper, few toys, little light, little sausage, little juice, few friends, little salt, few trees, few castles, few children, little coffee.

### 9. Translate into English

many exercise books	few houses
much milk	little tea
much water	few cups
many days	few apples
many newspapers	few windows
much chalk	little paper
much snow	little coffee
many years	few articles
many pictures	few palaces
much music	little joy
many boys	little soup
many girls	few trees
much tea	little grass
many lemons	few children
much meat	few toys
many rooms	little light
many teachers	few desks
much work	little sausage
much air	little juice
many cars	few books
many birds	few flowers
much coffee	little salt
many pencils	few friends

**10. Translate into English**

a little money, little money, a few chairs, a few chairs, a few songs, few songs, a little fun, little fun, few boys, a little water, a few people, little water, little air, few tables, a few minutes, a few cats, little grass, a little luck, a few days, little work, a little salt, a few spoons, little light, few windows, a few cars, a little sugar, few eggs, little cheese

**Practice 37**

**Text: “Jobs and Professions”**

**2. Find in the text**

дуже задоволена - very much satisfied  
 була змушена працювати - had to work  
 вона незабаром зрозуміла - she soon realized  
 досить старомодні люди - rather old-fashioned people  
 зробила хорошу кар'єру - made a good career  
 заробляти трохи грошей - to earn some money  
 які могли виконувати їхню роботу - who could do their job  
 почати відвідувати - to start attending  
 як кваліфікований робітник - as a skilled worker  
 низькооплачуваний службовець - poorly paid clerk  
 він не має часу - he has no time  
 жити і працювати за кордоном - live and work abroad

**4. Underline the word that does not belong to each group**

1.	close	end	<i>transfer</i>	finish
2.	check	<i>confirm</i>	go over	organize
3.	<i>receiver</i>	assistance	help	aid
4.	hint	sign	signal	<i>trip</i>
5.	grateful	inefficient	<i>rude</i>	unprofessional

**6. Insert the corresponding pronouns**

1. **He** is reading a book. 2. **It** is green. 3. **They** are on the wall. 4. **They** are running. 5. **They** are watching TV. 6. **It** is in the garden. 7. **He** is riding a bike. 8. **They** are dirty. 9. **She** has a brother. (Helen)

**7. Read the descriptions and guess the jobs**

1. She works in a hospital. She is a *surgeon / doctor*. 2. He works in a garage. It's a hard job. He is a *mechanic*. 3. She works in an office. It's a well-paid job. She is a *businesswoman*. 4. She works in a café. It's a tiring job. She is a *waitress*. 5. He works in a school. It's a stressful job. He is a *teacher*. 6. He works in many places. It's a dangerous job. He is a *firefighter*.



**8. Reread the text “Choosing Your Way in Life” and do the test**

1. - c) 50 years old; 2. - a) optician; 3. - c) sixteen; 4. - b) successful career; 5. - c) abroad; 6. - c) 39 years old; 7. - a) apprentice; 8. - b) labourer; 9. - c) refused to give her any financial support; 10. - b) 30.

**Practice 38**  
**Revision**  
**Test 8**

**1. Translate the following words into Ukrainian**

*тітка, дядько, племінник, племінниця, двоюрідний брат / двоюрідна сестра*  
*теща; свекруха, тесть / свекор, невістка, зять, брат чоловіка / дружини,*  
*сестра чоловіка / дружини*

*вітчим, мачуха, пасинок / пасербиця, родич, єдинокровна сестра,*  
*єдинокровний брат, пасербиця, пасинок*

*мати, батько, батьки, діти, донька, син, брат, сестра, чоловік, дружина,*  
*близнюки, дідусь, онуки*

**2. Translate the following word-combinations into English:**

*nurse, poorly paid clerk, white-collar, apprentice, engineer, blue-collar and sales representative; extremely selfish, arrogant and ambitious man; This editor is quiet, self-confident and strong-willed.; finish school and graduate college; affectionate parents give financial support; apply to a college and earn money for college fee; unemployed unskilled labourer receives a dole; good salary, successful career and benefit; used to bring stray dogs and cats; extra training*

**3. Translate into English**

*багато дівчат many girls; багато чаю much tea; багато лимонів many lemons;*  
*багато м'яса much meat; багато кімнат many rooms; багато вчителів many*  
*teachers; багато роботи much work; багато повітря much air; багато машин many*  
*cars; багато птахів many birds; багато кави much coffee; багато олівців many*  
*pencils*

*мало дерев few trees; мало трави little grass; мало дітей few children; мало*  
*іграшок few toys; мало світла little light; мало парт few desks; мало ковбаси little*  
*sausage; мало соку little juice; мало книг few books; мало квітів few flowers; мало*  
*солі little salt; мало друзів few friends*

**4. Insert the correct pronouns**

1. My name is Sue. **I** am English. And this is my family. 2. My mum's name is Angie. **She** is from Germany. 3. Bob is my dad. **He** is a manager. 4. On the left you can see Simon. **He** is my cousin. 5. **We** are twins. 6. He lives in Canterbury. **It** is not far from London. 7. Our dog is a girl. **It / she** is two years old. 8. My grandparents live in the village and **they** often come and see us. 9. What can **you** tell me about your family?



**5. Write sentences using the correct form of the present continuous**

1. He *is catching* fish for dinner. 2. We *are studying* the climate. 3. Those crocodiles *are not sleeping*. 4. I *am watching* a TV programme about polar bears. 5. They *are not doing* their homework. 6. She *is writing* a book about whales. 7. You *are not listening* to me.

**Practice 39**

**Grammar: The Preposition**

**4. Grammar Exercises**

**1. Insert the proper preposition at / on / in**

1. Where were you *on* 28 February? 2. I got up *at* 7 o'clock this morning. 3. My sister got married *in* May. 4. We often go to the beach *in* summer. 5. George is not here *at* the moment. 6. I will send you the money *at* the end of this month. 7. *In* autumn, the leaves fall from the trees. 8. The company started *in* 1969. 9. I often go away *at* the weekend. 10. I like looking *at* the stars *in* the sky *at* night.

**2. Insert the proper preposition about, after, against, before, between, from, into, like, over, same**

February comes *after* January. March is *before* April. August comes *after* July and *before* September. We fight *against* war. Both the English and Americans speak the *like* language. Birds fly *over* our heads. I would like to tell you *about* this book. He divided the apple *between* two boys. I live in the *same* street.

**3. Insert the proper preposition**

1. He used to live here *from* 1994 *till* 1997. 2. I'm sorry, he's off. Please call him back *in* an hour. 3. My birthday is *on* March 26. 4. Let's meet *before* the beginning of the lesson. 5. Bye, see you *on* Monday! 6. The lesson begins *at* half past eight. 7. We haven't seen him *since* last year. 8. I hope to meet you *at* Easter. 9. He graduated from school *at* the age of 16. 10. She takes English classes *on* Wednesday nights. 11. I won't see you *by* the time you come home.

**4. Insert the proper preposition**

1. None of us has got an invitation *to* the party. 2. We have some need *for* spare parts to our computers. 3. Tom has no reasons *for* leaving school. 4. Ann is *on* a diet now, and she is losing weight very quickly. 5. I was surprised at their reaction *to* what I said. 6. Ann took my umbrella *by* mistake. 7. Who knows the solution *to* this problem? 8. I'm sorry, but my father is out *on* business. 9. We arrived just *in* time for the second half of the game. 10. Do you have a good relationship *with* your teachers? 11. I'm going to watch a new film *on* television. 12. We had some sandwiches and tea *for* lunch. 13. *In* my opinion, the weather isn't fine at all.

**5. Insert the corresponding pronouns**

1. I am a pupil. This is *my* bag. 2. You are a pupil. This is *your* bag. 3. He is an engineer. That is *his* office. 4. She is a teacher. I am *her* pupil. 5. It is my kitten. This

is *its* basket. 6. - Is this *your* book? - No, it isn't. My book is in my bag. 7. That isn't Ann's sister. *Her* sister is at home. 8. The dog has got a ball. *Its* ball is little. 9. - Is that your school? - No, it isn't *my* school is there.

### Practice 40

#### Text: "My Working Day and My Day Off"

##### 1. Fill in the gaps with the words given in the box

Peter Dryden lives in a *suburb near Manchester* (1). He is a *sixth form student* (2). Every morning he gets up at *7.15 am* (3). He has *a glass of orange juice and an egg* (4) for breakfast and lives the house at *8.30 am* (5). He goes to his public school by a school bus. He usually has four lessons before lunch. He doesn't take a packed lunch from home and prefers to eat *in the school canteen* (6). He has 3 more classes after lunch and then plays football with his *team-mates* (7). Peter is promising football player and he dreams that *one day* (8) he will be invited to play for "Manchester United". After his training he takes a *local bus* (9) home and has dinner at about 7 o'clock. Peter doesn't spend much time *on his homework* (10) and it is usually ready by 9 o'clock. His usual evening *finished with* (11) watching TV or listening to the CDs of his favourite pop-groups. He goes to bed at *11 pm* (12).

##### 3. Fill in each gap with the necessary preposition from the box

1. What time do you usually wake *up*? I usually get *up at* seven *on* weekdays. My sister usually gets *up at* a quarter *to* 8 *on* Sundays. We always get *up at* half *past* eleven *in* summer.

2. When the alarm clock rang I jumped *out of* bed, switched *on* the radio and started doing my morning exercises listening *to* music.

3. She doesn't live very far *from* her school. She goes *to* school *by* foot. But if she is short of time she goes *by* bus 34.

4. He prefers to go *for* a walk *in* the morning when the air is fresh. He never goes *out on* weekday evenings and always has dinner *at* home.

5. I got *up* early *in* the morning and felt sleepy *in* the daytime but when my friends left me *in* the evening I felt so excited that I couldn't fall asleep *at* night.

##### 6. Complete the dialogue with the phrases in the box

**Maria:** Hello, Bill! 1 *How are things?*

**Bill:** Not bad, thanks. 2 *This is Sam.* He is my cousin. He is from Australia.

**Maria:** Hi, Sam! 3 *Good to meet you.*

**Bill:** And you. Hey, that is a cool camera. 4 *Are you into photography?*

**Maria:** Yes, but I am not very good at it. 5 *What part of Australia* are you from?

**Bill:** I am from Sydney.

**Maria:** That's interesting. 6 *See you later then.*

**Bill:** Yeah. Good bye!

**7. Look at the information in the table and write questions and short answers using *have got / has got***

1. Has Jasmine got a new teacher? Yes, she has. 2. Have Jack and Emma got a new teacher? No, they haven't. 3. Has Jasmine got two parrots? Yes, she has. 4. Have Jack and Emma got two parrots? No, they haven't. 5. Has Jasmine got fashion clothes? Yes, she has. 6. Have Jack and Emma fashion clothes? No, they haven't. 7. Has Jasmine got fantastic books? No, she hasn't. 8. Have Jack and Emma got fantastic books? Yes, they have. 9. Has Jasmine got a laptop? Yes, she has. 10. Have Jack and Emma got a laptop? No, they haven't. 11. Has Jasmine got a new mobile? No, she hasn't. 12. Have Jack and Emma got a new mobile? Yes, they have.

**Practice 41**  
**Grammar: The Postposition**

**3. Grammar Exercises**

**1. Translate sentences using the prepositions and the postpositions**

1. Я розбив вазу. 2. Мені потрібні ці папери. Не викидай їх. 3. Будь ласка, загаси сигарету. 4. У нас закінчився цукор. 5. Вони пішли в гори на світанку. 6. Він завжди вихваляється своїми грошима. 7. Вони жаліються на те, що їм не вистачає інформації. 8. Я скористався можливістю познайомитись з нею. 9. Вона швидко подивилась на годинник. 10. Я попрошу його зайнятися білетами. 11. Цей будинок повний мишей. 12. Ти палиш? Ні, я кинув два роки тому.

**2. Translate the following English sentences into Ukrainian and Ukrainian sentences into English**

1. Я надаю перевагу подорожувати поїздом. 2. Йому подобається бути при грошах. 3. Це – виняток з правил. 4. Ти маєш плани на вечір? 5. Я зробив це на його прохання. 6. He looks at the children. 7. We laugh at you. 8. He plays tennis. 9. I must do it at any cost. 10. He is the life of the party.

**3. Insert the proper preposition**

1. Bill isn't very good **at** physics, but he is excellent **at** languages. 2. Mary isn't interested **in** football at all. But she is keen **on** dancing. 3. Their children have always been polite **to** us. 4. It's so kind **of** you to give us a lift. 5. Jim's parents are often upset **about** his marks. 6. Despite they are brothers; they are quite different **from** each other. 7. Your handwriting is similar **to** mine. 8. Our city is famous **for** its historical sights. 9. She has been happily married **to** John for two years. 10. I am not pleased **with** my progress in Chemistry. 11. Our son has entered the university. We've proud **of** him. 12. Last week our tutor wasn't satisfied **with** our class. 13. It's silly **of** him to be from school so often.

**4. Choose the correct answers in these sentences**

1. Hi! I am a student **at** Seaford School. 2. I am really **into** pop music. 3. He likes sport and he is good **at** hockey. 4. What **about** you? 5. Send a photo **if** you have got one. 6. Bye **for** now!

**5. Write questions and short answers. Use the present continuous**

1. *Is the climate changing? Yes, it is.* 2. *Are tigers becoming extinct? Yes, they are.* 3. *Are you talking to Billy? No, I am not.* 4. *Is that female bear protecting its baby? Yes, it is.* 5. *Are we learning new vocabulary? Yes, we are.* 6. *Are your friends running in the park now? Yes, they are.* 7. *Is Jack looking for his book? No, he is not.* 8. *Are her parents playing tennis at the moment? Yes, they are.*

**Practice 42**  
**Revision**  
**Test 9**

**1. Translate into English**

1. *My children are playing in the garden.* 2. *He lives on the second floor.* 3. *A town on the Mississippi River.* 4. *He is standing at the door.* 5. *We meet at the theatre.* 6. *You can see the timetable at the station.* 7. *In Germany children get presents at Easter.* 8. *I always feel good in the morning.* 9. *Helen is not at work because she is on holiday.* 10. *Some people talk about their work all the time.*

**2. Insert the proper postposition and translate into Ukrainian: forx3, over, like, ofx2, to, as, at,**

1. **What music are you listening to?** *Яку музику ви слухаєте?* 2. **She was afraid of a dog.** *Вона налякана собакою.* 3. **What are you waiting for?** *Чого ви чекаєте?* 4. **He is bad at mathematics.** *Він не встигає з математики.* 5. **This dress is made of cotton.** *Воно зроблене з бавовни.* 6. **Those people care for senior citizens.** *Ті люди опікуються старшими людьми.* 7. **I did not know that he looks for me.** *Я не знав, що він мене шукає.* 8. **Now she looks as a princess.** *Зараз вона виглядає як принцеса.* 9. **Her daughter looks like her mother.** *Її донька схожа на свою матір.* 10. **My sister is a teacher. She often looks through the pupil's copybooks.** *Моя сестра вчителька. Вона часто проглядає учнівські зошити.*

**3. Insert the proper postposition and translate into Ukrainian: up, out, from, over, tox3, atx2, into**

1. **Please, put out the cigarette.** *Будь ласка, загасить цигарку.* 2. **I gave up smoking two years ago.** *Я кинув палити два роки тому.* 3. **I knocked over a glass.** *Я розбила склянку.* 4. **She is suffering from headaches.** *Вона страждає на головний біль.* 5. **He threw a stone at her.** *Він кинув в неї камінь.* 6. **A horrible thing happened to her.** *З нею сталася страшна річ.* 7. **He translated into English this story.** *Він переклав оповідання на англійську.* 8. **She smiled at the baby.** *Вона всміхнулася дитині.* 9. **This house belongs to my brother.** *Цей будинок*

належить моєму брату. 10. **She invited us to the party.** Вона запросила нас на вечірку.

**4. Complete the sentences below with the words from the box. Three of the words cannot be used**

1. We were all very *relieved* when she arrived home safely at midnight. 2. What's happened to your beard? I have never seen you *clean-shaved* before. 3. I have got really *vivid* memories of my childhood. I can remember every detail. 4. Monica is a very *skeptical* person. She never believes anything people tell her. 5. Jim has become quite *muscular* in his arms and legs since he started going to the gym. 6. Looking through my old photo albums has made me feel really *nostalgic*. 7. You can't go to the interview in those *scruffy* clothes. You need to look smart. 8. My father said I should go to university, but my brother told me it was a waste of time, so I was quite *confused* about what to do.

**5. Choose the correct variant**

1. *d) She doesn't come home early.* 2. *b) Do you often play basketball?* 3. *c) How much does it cost for the return ticket?* 4. *a) We always go abroad for our holidays.* 5. *d) We enjoy the theatre, but we don't go there very often.* 6. *b) The next train leaves at two fifteen in the morning.*

**Practice 43**

**Text "City and Country Life"**

**2. Find in the text**

*викидають сміття на вулицю* - throw things in the street

*найближче місто* - nearest town

*купити літні квіти* - buy summer flowers

*тобі потрібно стояти в черзі* - you have to queue

*потрібно прокинутися о 5 ранку* - had to get up at five in the morning

*їм потрібно спілкування з іншими людьми* - they need other people

*спокійне життя* - quite life

*я не можу дочекатися* - I can't wait

*місто з його забрудненням і дорожнім рухом* - city with its pollution and traffic

*спостерігаючи за кожним* - spying on everyone

*вони самотні* - they are lonely

*велична лінія дерев* - magnificent line of trees

*не варто знати* - not worth knowing

*очікування автобусів* - waiting for the buses

*вуличні ринки* - street markets

*знати своїх сусідів* - to know your neighbours

*плітки людей* - people gossip

*проблема села* - the trouble with the country

*ріпу взимку* - turnips in winter



**4. Find all Pronouns in the text and determine their group**

Personal	Possessive	Demonstrative	Interrogative	Indefinite	Negative	Quantitative
<i>he, its, I, it, they, you, me, him, she, her, them, we, our, they</i>	<i>its, his, her, their, your, our, my, his</i>	<i>this, that, same, these</i>	<i>who, whose</i>	<i>some, something, someone, anything</i>	<i>nothing</i>	<i>many, much</i>

**6. Write the questions and short answers about you in the past simple**

- meet a friend last night - Did you meet a friend last night? Yes, I did.*
- go to town on Saturday - Did you go to town on Saturday? No, I did not.*
- make a pizza last night - Did you make pizza last night? No, I did not.*
- write an e-mail yesterday - Did you write e-mail yesterday? Yes, I did.*
- have coffee at breakfast - Did you have coffee at breakfast? No, I did not.*
- see a film on TV - Did you see a film on TV? Yes, I did.*
- bake a tart last month - Did you bake a tart last month? No, I did not.*
- play tennis on Sunday - Did you play tennis on Sunday? No, I did not.*

**7. Reread the text “City and Country Life” and do the test**

- |                             |                                |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. - c) lonely;             | 6. - c) frozen or tinned food; |
| 2. - b) get fed up;         | 7. - c) 5 km;                  |
| 3. - a) 34-year-old doctor; | 8. - c) likes;                 |
| 4. - a) 43-year-old farmer; | 9. - b) depressing;            |
| 5. - c) living on the farm; | 10. - b) to leave home.        |

**Practice 44**

**Grammar: Modal Verbs**

**13. Grammar Exercises**

**1. Translate into English**

1. He can't play the guitar. 2. I can speak Spanish. 3. She could play tennis, when she was in the summer camp. 4. You can't do it. 5. He can do it on Saturday. 6. She can take it. 7. He can't have done. 8. Her sister was not able to write correct answers. 9. She could be in the library now. 10. She must read 30 texts. 11. We can't speak to them. 12. May I drink it? 13. What can you see in the map? 14. These things might be hers. 15. You should see a lecturer. 16. They can not speak Polish.

**2. Translate into English**

1. *You must not do it.* 2. *Can they type?* 3. *May I see your licence?* 4. *You should not smoke.* 5. *They used to do it in the morning.* 6. *Can you read English texts?* 7. *They are not used to reading big texts.* 8. *One should not be late for the lessons.* 9. *We used to think that he was a doctor.*



**3. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences**

1. *Mark has to wear a blue T-shirt to school.* 2. *I have make coffee to my boss for every day.* 3. *Do you be eighteen to have to buy a car?* 4. *They do not to have get home before 10 o'clock.* 5. *Does she to have exercise every day?*

**4. Choose the correct words**

1. *These* are my cousins, Joshua and Emily. 2. Is your food good? Yes, *this* pizza is fantastic! 3. *Those* DVDs are very expensive. 4. *This* girl is in my English class. 5. Hey, *these* shoes are cool! 6. Happy Birthday! *This* present is for you.

**5. Write questions in the past simple. Then match the questions with answers a-f**

1. *Where did they go last night?* f) *To the cinema.* 2. *When did she buy a computer?* c) *On Saturday.* 3. *What did they have for dinner?* d) *Pizza.* 4. *Did they win the match last week?* e) *No, they did not. They lost.* 5. *Did you go home early last night?* b) *Yes, we did.*

**Practice 45**

**Text: “The Place I Live in”**

**2. Complete the sentences with the words in the box**

1. My friend Suzan has got a very bad leg. She is in *hospital*. 2. My sister's son likes swimming. It is in the *swimming pool*. 3. There are many *offices* in this building. 4. We have not got any butter, meat, milk and bread. Let's go to the *supermarket*. 5. Their mother is interested in painting. We bought ticket in to the *art gallery* for her. 6. The fantastic *café* is the near the *river*. 7. You can go to any place from our town by bus. The big *bus station* is in town. 8. There are not any cars in the *car park*. 9. Zlata Plaza is a very big *shopping centre*.

**4. Write questions and answers using *Is there / Are there***

1. *How many schools are there in your town? There are twenty-eight schools in my town.* 2. *Is there a restaurant in your town? Yes, there is.* 3. *Is there a supermarket in your town? Yes, there is.* 4. *Is there a swimming pool in your town? No, there is not.* 5. *Is there a block of flats in your town? No, there is not.* 6. *Are there shops in your town? Yes, there are.* 7. *Is there an art gallery in your town? No, there is not.* 8. *Is there a car park in your town? No, there is not.* 9. *Is there a park in your town? Yes, there is.*

**5. Look at the words in brackets. Then complete the text with the words in the box**

Ruth has got a *fantastic* job. She has got an *enormous* office in the centre of London. Her office is bigger than my flat! It is in an *incredible* building.

Ruth has got *luxury* flat near the park and a new car – it is really *fast*! It is an *amazing* car. I love it! She has got *tiny* dog – its name is Benji.

**6. Fill in: a, an or the where necessary**

\_\_ Australia is **an** interesting country. **The** Australians are very friendly, happy people. Some of **the** strangest animals in **the** world live there. In **the** Great Victoria Desert you can find \_\_ kangaroos and \_\_ koala bears. **The** most famous city in Australia is \_\_ Sydney.

**Practice 46**

**Revision**

**Test 10**

**1. Fill in each gap with the necessary preposition from the box**

1. The pen is **in** the box. 2. Peter doesn't spend much time **on** his homework. 3. Every morning Peter gets up **at** 7.15 am. 4. The books are **on** the table. 5. Their friends are playing **in** the park. 6. His village is **on** the border. 7. The number is **on** the door. 8. The table is **in** the middle of the room. 9. Alex is usually ready **at** 9 o'clock. 10. A town is **on** the Dnipro. 11. Mother cooks dinner **in** the kitchen. 12. A dirt is **on** your shirt. 13. He goes to his public school **by** a school bus. 14. Please, write your surname **at** the top of the page. 15. He lives **on** the second floor. 16. The car was parked **between** two very expensive ones. 17. Some people talk **about** their work all the time. 18. I am going on holiday **at** the end of October. 19. I met some interesting people **during** my holidays. 20. He is standing **at** the door. 21. The car is **on** the crossroads. 22. We meet **at** the theatre. 23. There are 200 seats **in** the theatre. 24. You can see the timetable **at** the station. 25. He lives **at** 45 Ozerna Street. 26. He left school **at** the age of 16. 27. The dog is lying **under** the table. 28. We will be tomorrow **from 10 till** 11 AM. 29. Are you going away **at** the weekend? 30. I could not find her **among** all those people. 31. In Germany children get presents **at** Easter. 32. I always feel good **in** the morning.

**2. Translate into English**

1. *I don't like queues.* 2. *magnificent trees, nice strawberry, fresh milk* 3. *frozen food instead of tinned food* 4. *blocks of flats, multi-storeyed houses, shopping centre and underground crossing* 5. *heavy traffic, traffic jams and traffic lights* 6. *unpolluted environment, peaceful atmosphere, fields, meadows, orchards and kitchen gardens* 7. *theatre, museum, convenient bus service, car park, picture galleries, avenue, swimming pool, rush hour and noisy crowd* 8. *fence, hedge, well, pure water*

**3. Translate into English. Use modal Verbs**

1. I **can** speak Italian and Spanish. 2. We **must** do it. 3. **May** I say? 4. What **can** you see in the picture? 5. My sister **can't** swim. 6. She **could** play the piano, when she was little. 7. We **must** say it. 8. You **should** use the mobile phone.

**4. Translate into English. Pay attention to the constructions with Modal Verbs**

1. We **used to think** that they were doctors. 2. His niece **used to return** by the last bus. 3. He is not **used to learning** hard. 4. They are **used to drinking** coffee in the

morning.

**5. Write general questions in the past simple. Then write the answers**

1. *Did you read a book in bed? No, I did not.* 2. *Did you buy clothes last weekend? Yes, I did.* 3. *Did you come to university on the bus this morning? Yes, I did.* 4. *Did you go to bed early yesterday? No, I did not.* 5. *Did you have a lot of homework last year? Yes, I did.* 6. *Did you eat chocolate yesterday? No, I did not.* 7. *Did you use a computer last Sunday? Yes, I did.* 8. *Did you phone a friend yesterday? Yes, I did.*

**Practice 46**  
**Revision**  
**Test 10**

**1. Fill in each gap with the necessary preposition from the box**

1. The pen is *in* the box. 2. Peter doesn't spend much time *on* his homework. 3. Every morning Peter gets up *at* 7.15 am. 4. The books are *on* the table. 5. Their friends are playing *in* the park. 6. His village is *on* the border. 7. The number is *on* the door. 8. The table is *in* the middle of the room. 9. Alex is usually ready *by* 9 o'clock. 10. A town is *on* the Dnipro. 11. Mother cooks dinner *in* the kitchen. 12. A dirt is *on* your shirt. 13. He goes to his public school *by* a school bus. 14. Please, write your surname *at* the top of the page. 15. He lives *on* the second floor. 16. The car was parked *between* two very expensive ones. 17. Some people talk *about* their work all the time. 18. I am going on holiday *at* the end of October. 19. I met some interesting people *during* my holidays. 20. He is standing *at* the door. 21. The car is *at* the crossroads. 22. We meet *at* the theatre. 23. There are 200 seats *in* the theatre. 24. You can see the timetable *at* the station. 25. He lives *at* 45 Ozerna Street. 26. He left school *at* the age of 16. 27. The dog is lying *under* the table. 28. We will be tomorrow *from 10 till 11* AM. 29. Are you going away *at* the weekend? 30. I could not find her *among* all those people. 31. In Germany children get presents *at* Easter. 32. I always feel good *in* the morning.

**2. Translate into English**

1. *I don't like queues.* 2. *magnificent trees, nice strawberry, fresh milk* 3. *frozen food instead of tinned food* 4. *blocks of flats, multi-storeyed houses, shopping centre and underground crossing* 5. *heavy traffic, traffic jams and traffic lights* 6. *unpolluted environment, peaceful atmosphere, fields, meadows, orchards and kitchen gardens* 7. *theatre, museum, convenient bus service, car park, picture galleries, avenue, swimming pool, rush hour and noisy crowd* 8. *fence, hedge, well, pure water*

**3. Translate into English. Use modal Verbs**

1. I *can* speak Italian and Spanish. 2. We *must* do it. 3. *May* I say? 4. What *can* you see in the picture? 5. My sister *can't* swim. 6. She *could* play the piano, when she was little. 7. We *must* say it. 8. You *should* use the mobile phone.

**4. Translate into English. Pay attention to the constructions with Modal Verbs**

1. We *used to think* that they were doctors. 2. His niece *used to return* by the last bus. 3. He is not *used to learning* hard. 4. They are *used to drinking* coffee in the morning.

**Practice 47  
Grammar: The Adverb**

**4. Grammar Exercises**

**1. Insert the necessary adverb**

1. I'm doing to say something very important, so please listen to me *carefully*. 2. I need you help. Come *quickly*! 3. I met him but I don't know him very *well*. 4. They work *hard*. At the end of the day they were always tired. 5. I am tired this morning. I slept *badly* last night. 6. You are much better tennis player than me. When we play you always win *easily*. 7. Think *carefully* before you answer the question. 8. Our teacher is not very good. He does not explain things very *clearly*.

**2. Divide the following adverbs in to the necessary group: here, often, today, there, never, very, too, badly, yesterday, fortunately, where, sometimes, usually, quite, quickly, now, ever, little, near, above, soon, much, well, early, slowly, late, approximately, then, before, easily**

Adverbs of Time	Adverbs of Place	Adverbs of Repetition and Frequency	Adverbs of Degree	Adverbs of Manner
<i>today</i>	<i>here</i>	<i>often</i>	<i>very</i>	<i>quickly</i>
<i>yesterday</i>	<i>there</i>	<i>never</i>	<i>quite</i>	<i>well</i>
<i>now</i>	<i>where</i>	<i>sometimes</i>	<i>little</i>	<i>badly</i>
<i>soon</i>	<i>near</i>	<i>ever</i>	<i>too</i>	<i>slowly</i>
<i>early</i>	<i>above</i>	<i>usually</i>	<i>much</i>	<i>easily</i>
<i>late</i>				<i>fortunately</i>
<i>then</i>				<i>approximately</i>
<i>before</i>				

**3. Write the degrees of comparison of the following adverbs: late, carefully, fast, long, quietly, loud, slowly, easy**

late	later	latest
carefully	more carefully	most carefully
fast	faster	fastest
long	longer	longest
quietly	more quietly	most quietly
loud	louder	loudest
slowly	more slowly	most slowly
easy	more easily	most easily

**4. Complete the pairs of with the correct adjectives and adverbs.**

1. a) I fell and hurt myself quite **badly**. b) The pollution is very **bad** in this part of town. 2. a) Don't worry. He is a very **careful** driver. b) You really need to do your homework more **carefully**. 3. a) Your pronunciation is absolutely **perfect**. b) He speaks English almost **perfectly** now. 4. a) How **well** can you play the guitar? b) She is a very **good** tennis player now.

**5. Identify the tenses in bold, then match them to their use**

1. The Earth **revolves** round the Sun. *b) law of nature*
2. The train **leaves** at 5:30. *g) timetable*
3. John **is looking** for a new house. *d) action happening around the time of speaking*
4. She can't play. She **has broken** her leg. *e) result / consequence of a past activity in the present*
5. He **is** always **biting** his nails. *c) expressing irritation*
6. I **have been trying** to call you for an hour. *a) action which started in the past and continues up to the present with emphasis on duration*
7. He **is flying** to Madrid tomorrow. *f) fixed arrangement in the future*
8. It **is getting** colder and colder. *h) gradual development*

**Practice 48**

**Text: "Niagara Falls"**

**2. Find in the text**

*сьогодні як десять тисяч років тому* - today as ten thousands years ago  
*для місцевих потреб* - for local use  
*із жахливим шумом* - with a terrible noise  
*кілька людей* - some people  
*рухати велике каміння* - move big rocks  
*чудо природи* - natural wonder  
*розташована між* - situated between  
*найбільш небезпечна частина* - the most dangerous part  
*намагалися описати* - tried to describe  
*кличе в минуле* - calls up the past  
*кидати їх у воду* - throw them into the waters

**4. Complete the sentences with the words in the box**

1. Jack is into **sport**, especially football. 2. I like **chatting** on the Internet with my friends. 3. Jessica likes **cycling**. She has got a new bike. 4. My father is mad about **rats** but I can't stand them. 5. His brother has got a camera. He is mad about **photography**. 6. We hate **watching** TV. It is boring. 7. I like **meeting** my friends in the café. 8. She is **interested** in **music** and she really hates hip hop.



**5. Paraphrase the following sentences using the modal verb CAN**

<b>A</b>	1. You have the right to use dictionaries.	You <i>can</i> use dictionaries.
	2. He has the right to receive a passport.	He <i>can</i> receive a passport.
	3. They have the right to live in this flat.	They <i>can</i> live in this flat.
	4. She has the right to stay away from these lessons.	She <i>can</i> stay away from these lessons.
	5. He has the right to take a month's holiday in summer.	He <i>can</i> take a month's holiday in summer.
	6. We have the right to sell our house.	We <i>can</i> sell our house.
<b>B</b>	1. Will you allow me to attend your lectures?	<i>Can</i> you allow me to attend your lectures?
	2. Will you allow me to take my seat?	<i>Can</i> you allow me to take my seat?
	3. Will you allow me to join you?	<i>Can</i> you allow me to join you?
	4. Will you allow me to take your dictionary?	<i>Can</i> you allow me to take your dictionary?
	5. Will you allow me to stay here?	<i>Can</i> you allow me to stay here?
<b>C</b>	1. You haven't the right to travel by train without a ticket.	You <i>can't</i> travel by train without a ticket.
	2. He hasn't the right to occupy this house.	He <i>can't</i> occupy this house.
	3. She hasn't the right to enter the cinema hall during the show.	She <i>can't</i> enter the cinema hall during the show.
	4. We haven't the right to hunt hares now.	We <i>can't</i> hunt hares now.
	5. Children haven't the right to go to an evening show.	Children <i>can't</i> go to an evening show.

**6. Reread the text "Niagara Falls" and do the test**

- |                               |                          |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. - a) swimming across;      | 6. - a) 25 km;           |
| 2. - b) wonder;               | 7. - b) Charles Dickens; |
| 3. - b) New York ... Chicago; | 8. - c) rocks;           |
| 4. - a) continent;            | 9. - a) ten thousands;   |
| 5. - c) Lincoln;              | 10. - b) horse power.    |

**Practice 50**

**Grammar: The Present Perfect Tense**

**4. Grammar Exercises**

**1. Choose the correct form of the auxiliary verb**

1. He *has* seen this film. 2. I *have* read many books. 3. She *has* not met him. 4. They *have* sung two songs. 5. We *have* translated the text. 6. Peter *has* finished school. 7. *Have* his friends finished school too? 8. The teacher *has* not given us any home task.

**2. Put the verbs into the Present Perfect**

1. It's the first time he *has not made* any mistakes. 2. My parents *have been* to many countries. 3. They *have gone* to Italy twice. 4. Tom *has not received* any letters up to now. 5. Jane is the prettiest girl I *have ever seen*. 6. Sheila *has bought* a lot of things in the supermarket. 7. *Have* you *heard* anything from him? 8. How many times *have* you *been* in love? 9. It *has not rained* for ages.



**3. Translate the following sentences into English:**

1. I *have brought* a book for you. Here it is. 2. They *have broken* the old house and built the new one. 3. We *have finished* our work before he came. 4. By 5 o'clock we *had done* all tasks. 5. I *have locked* the door. 6. He *has told* me about him. 7. You *have not shown* me your room *yet*. 8. She *has known* Jack ever since she was a child. 9. I *have not seen* him this year. 10. *Have you ever thought* about it?

**4. Fill in the gaps with the right forms of the verbs in brackets to complete the following English sentences in Present Perfect Tense**

1. He *has closed* the door. 2. He *has done* it since we left him. 3. I *have given* him my last penny. 4. This order *has led* to many misunderstandings. 5. He *has written* his name on my book. 6. She *has bought* a new umbrella. 7. He *has looked* my exercise over and over. 8. I *have bought* those books very cheaply. 9. He *has worked* for two months. 10. She *has found* a new job. 11. He *has spoken* very well. 12. The children *have eaten* the whole pudding. 13. You *have read* many detective stories. 14. Our team *has won* the first prize. 15. My little daughter *has cut* her finger with a knife.

**5. Complete the mini-dialogues with one word in each gap**

1.	A:	Can I help you with those bags?	<i>kind</i>
	B:	Thank you. You are very _____. (kind)	
2.	A:	Do you and your sister have a lot ____ common?	<i>in</i>
	B:	No, we are very different.	
3.	A:	Are you very _____, Katy?	<i>ambitious</i>
	B:	Yes, I really want to be the director of the company!	
4.	A:	Simon is a very _____ person.	<i>calm</i>
	B:	Yes, he never gets nervous or stressed.	
5.	A:	I always _____ fun when I meet my friends.	<i>have</i>
	B:	What do you usually do together?	
6.	A:	What do you think of Andrea?	<i>humour</i>
	B:	She's got a really great sense of _____.	
7.	A:	Kim loves painting, drawing and writing stories.	<i>creative</i>
	B:	Yes, she is very _____ person.	
8.	A:	David is such an _____ man!	<i>unsociable</i>
	B:	He never likes going out or meeting people.	

**6. Fill in the correct colours: *white, blue, black, green*. Then explain the phrases formed with the words in bold**

1. Sophie goes to the cinema **once in a blue moon**. She doesn't like it much. 2. Jack fell down the stairs and he **is and black and blue** all over. 3. Angela definitely has **green fingers** – everything in her garden grows really well. 4. He **is a bit green** - he hasn't got much experience in this kind of work. 5. They knew that if she found out the truth it would hurt her feelings so they told her a **little white lie**. 6. She doesn't want to say anything until she has seen the facts **in black and white**.

## Practice 51

### Text: "Big Ben"

#### 2. Find in the text

був названий на честь - was named after the first

чотири циферблати - four dials

на величезний пам'ятник - on the huge pendulum

надією, що кожен почує - hope to all who heard it

запалююча бомба - incendiary bomb

часова башта залишилась неушкодженою - clock tower remained intact

із старого Вестмінстерського палацу - from the old Palace of Westminster

могли бути ув'язненими за порушення - can be imprisoned for a breach

чудовий годинник - excellent timekeeper

добре відомий архітектурний пам'ятник - best-known landmarks

#### 4. Choose the correct emotion from the box for each person

1. She's very **relieved** that the police have dropped all the charges against her. 2. Our children are getting very **excited** about our trip to Disneyworld next month. They keep asking when we're going. 3. Most of the people interviewed said they felt **uneasy** about the idea of living near a nuclear power station. 4. Sam's **optimistic** about selling his flat quickly. He's had lots of people come to see it since it went up for sale last week. 5. My sister's **annoyed** with me because I borrowed her favourite jacket without asking her. 6. When I was learning to ski she gave me so many different pieces of advice that I just ended up totally **confused**. 7. Environmental groups are **sceptical** that the government is serious about tackling the problem of global warming. 8. I'm very **curious** to know why Sarah got the job of marketing director. She's only been in the company a few months. 9. I'm afraid I'm fairly **uninterested** in politics and politicians. They all seem to say the same things these days. 10. The fact that he didn't want to answer the police officer's questions made them **suspicious**. 11. Julie's mother was quite **shocked** when they told her they were going to get married in June. They have only been together two months.

#### 5. Reread the text "Big Ben" and do the test

1. - b) 1858; 2. - c) clock tower; 3. - a) chimes; 4. - c) clock faces; 5. - c) parliamentary privilege; 6. - b) timekeeper; 7. - b) thirteen ton bell; 8. - a) William III; 9. - c) Westminster; 10. - c) world.

## Practice 52

### Grammar: The Past Perfect Tense

#### 2. Grammar Exercises

##### 1. Put the verbs into the *Present Perfect*, *Past Perfect* or *Past Indefinite*

1. Columbus **discovered** America in 1494. 2. Columbus **did not know** that he **had**

*discovered* America. 3. My Friend *has* just *phoned* me from New York. 4. My mother *had* just *come* home when I *phoned* her. She *had been* at work. 5. I *felt* tired, so I *went* straight to bed.

### 2. Put the verbs into the Past Perfect

1. We *had translated* this article by five o'clock. 2. By the end of the year he *had learnt* to speak Spanish. 3. They *had done* their work by six o'clock. 4. We *had spent* his money by last Tuesday. 5. My friend just *had phoned* me from Los Angeles. 6. My mother just *had finished* to write her thesis by 11 o'clock. 7. She *had bought* 3 houses by that time. 8. We *had sold* all the things by Sunday.

### 3. Write the negative form

1. We *had not translated* this article by five o'clock. 2. By the end of the year he *had not learnt* to speak Spanish. 3. They *had not done* their work by six o'clock. 4. We *had not spent* his money by last Tuesday. 5. My friend just *had not phoned* me from Los Angeles. 6. My mother just *had not finished* to write her thesis by 11 o'clock. 7. She *had not bought* 3 houses by that time. 8. We *had not sold* all the things by Sunday.

### 4. Write the interrogative form

1. What *had* we *translated* by five o'clock? 2. What *had* he *learnt* by the end of the year? 3. When *had* they *done* their work? 4. Where *had* we *spent* his money? 5. Why *had* my friend just *phoned* me from Los Angeles? 6. What *had* my mother just *finished* by 11 o'clock? 7. What *had* she *bought* by that time? 8. When *had* we *sold* all the things?

5. Choose the options (A, B or C) which has the closest meaning to the underlined word or words

1. *b) thin* 2. *a) is very energetic* 3. *a) not shy* 4. *c) These jeans are what I'm looking for.* 5. *b) Some students are taller than Matt.* 6. *b) Patrick is very good at football.* 7. *c) crazy*

## Practice 53

### Revision

### Test 11

### 2. Translate into English these word-combinations

*intact pendulum and timekeeper; intact turret; breach of one's duties; spectacular tower; excellent timekeeper*

### 3. Translate into English (use Present Perfect)

1. I *have broken* my pen. 2. He *has left* Chernivtsi. 3. She *has finished* her work. 4. Nephew and niece *have gone* home. 5. We *have read* this task. 6. They *have written* four textbooks. 7. My friend *has gone* 121000 steps during his trip. 8. He never *has read* this book.

**4. Write negative form for the following sentences**

1. Sorry, but I *have not spent* all your money. 2. His girlfriend *has not called* to her friends. 3. She *has not told* about that accident. 4. Your parents *have not received* all correspondence. 5. We and our relatives *have not arrived* to the airport. 6. They *have not seen* this DVD. 7. My friend *has not spoken* with his father many hours. 8. He and his stepsister *have not lost* last game.

**5. Write interrogative form for the following sentences**

1. Why *have* you *spent* all my money? 2. When *has* his girlfriend *called* to her friends? 3. What *has* she *told*? 4. When *have* your parents *received* all correspondence? 5. Where *have* we and our relatives *arrived* to the airport? 6. What DVD *have* they *seen*? 7. Why *has* my friend *spoken* with his father many hours?

**6. Put the verbs into the Past Perfect**

1. We *had translated* this article by five o'clock. 2. By the end of the year he *had learnt* to speak Spanish. 3. They *had gone* their work by six o'clock. 4. We *had spent* his money by last Tuesday. 5. My friend just *had phoned* me from Los Angeles. 6. My mother just *had finished* to write her thesis by 11 o'clock. 7. She *had bought* 3 houses by that time. 8. We *had sold* all the things by Sunday.

**Practice 54**

**Text: "Statue of Liberty"**

**2. Find in the text**

*обмежена кількість часу* - limited number of time

*та членів екіпажу* - and crew members

*система була здійснена* - system has been implemented

*федеральна власність частково* - federal property partly

*купівля білету на пором* - purchase of a ferry ticket

*був доданий до Системи Національних парків* - was added to the National Park System

*була присвячена* - was dedicated

*була подарунком на знак дружби* - was a gift of friendship

*хто планує увійти у статую* - who plan on entering

*відвідати землі острову Свободи* - to visit the grounds of Liberty Island

**4. Match the underlined adjectives (1-8) with their correct definitions (a-h)**

1. I really like silk. It feels so smooth. a) *has an even surface*; 2. I can't wear wool. It's too itchy for my skin. d) *feels uncomfortable to wear because it irritates your skin*; 3. For the interview I wore a suit and my new shiny leather shoes. g) *has a bright surface*; 4. I have got some new winter boots with furry inside. c) *feels / looks like fur*; 5. Wear something stretchy for the gym class so you can move easily. f) *is slightly elastic*; 6. Be careful on the icy path. It's very slippery. h) *is wet or difficult to hold / walk on*; 7. It was a very uncomfortable journey because the road is was so

rough. b) *has an uneven surface*; 8. The bed is too soft for me. I need a mattress that supports my back more. e) *isn't hard or firm, but is easy to press*

### 5. Reread the text "Statue of Liberty" and do the test

- |                                |                     |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. - b) Ellis island;          | 6. - b) New Jersey; |
| 2. - a) 1924;                  | 7. - c) no cost;    |
| 3. - b) National Park Service; | 8. - a) 25;         |
| 4. - a) France;                | 9. - b) way;        |
| 5. - a) 1965;                  | 10. - b) vessels.   |

### 6. Complete the sentences with the names of jobs. The first letter is given

1. My sister is a shop *assistant* in a shoe shop. 2. George is a *farmer* - he grows a lot of vegetables. 3. My dad is a Maths *teacher* and he works at a secondary school. 4. A *mechanic* can repair your car when there is a problem. 5. My aunt is a *nurse* at the local hospital. She looks after sick people. 6. An *architect* designs lots of different buildings. 7. This man can do difficult operations and he works day and night at his hospital. He is a *surgeon*. 8. You call a *plumber* if you have a broken pipe.

## Practice 55

### Grammar: The Future Perfect Tense

#### 2. Grammar Exercises

#### 1. Put the verbs into the *Future Perfect*, *Future Indefinite* or *Future Continuous*

1. This time tomorrow we *will be sitting* in the train on our way home. 2. Mr. Dickson *will be* happy to answer your questions. 3. By the time we get to the airport, Tom's plane *will have already arrived*. 4. I hope it *will have stopped* raining by tomorrow morning. 5. *Will you be using* your computer tomorrow afternoon? 6. Before our vacation ends, we *shall have spent* all our money. 7. He *will get* in touch with you the day after tomorrow. 8. Next Saturday Tom *will be reading* the newspaper as usual. 9. When we get to school the lesson *will have begun*. 10. Don't worry! By the time you come back, we *will have taken* care of everything. 11. I am sure you *will do* well on the test. 12. When Professor Brown retires next month, he *will have taught* for 20 years. 13. At midnight tomorrow I *will be sleeping*. 14. Next weekend I *will be visiting* my relatives in the country. 15. I *will go* to bed after I finish my work.

#### 2. Put the verbs into the *Future Perfect*

1. We *shall have translated* the article by 5 o'clock. 2. That plant *will have watered* by this evening. 3. They *will have sent* it when your telegram arrives. 4. The train *will have left* by the time we get to the station. 5. I *shall have finished* this work if you come at seven o'clock. 6. We *shall have spent* all money by the end of the month. 7. He *will have copied* all documents by the next morning. 8. They *will have*



*taken* all exams by the first of July. 9. We *shall have gone* to the cinema by the end of the year.

### 3. Write the negative form

1. We *shall not have copied* the article by 11 o'clock. 2. These flowers *will not have watered* by this morning. 3. Their friends *will not have sent* it when your letter arrives. 4. The plain *will not have left* by the time we get to the airport. 5. We *shall not have finished* this task if you come at seven o'clock. 6. We *shall not have spent* all money by the end of the month. 7. He *will not have translated* all documents by the next morning. 8. They *will not have taken* all exams by the first of July. 9. We *not shall have watched* this DVD by the end of the year.

### 4. Write the interrogative form

1. What *shall* we *have copied* by 11 o'clock? 2. When *will* these flowers *have watered*? 3. When *will* their friends *have sent* it? 4. Where *will* the plain *have left*? 5. When *shall* we *have finished* this task if you come at seven o'clock? 6. *Shall* we *have spent* all money by the end of the month? 7. Why *will* he *have translated* all documents by the next morning? 8. When *will* they *have taken* all exams? 9. What *will* we *have watched* by the end of the year?

### 5. Complete the sentences with the words from the box. There are three extra words

1. Can you send me an *e-mail* with Jenny's address? 2. My job is boring: I ask people their *opinion* and write down their answers. 3. I never *work* long hours – I usually go home at three o'clock. 4. Matt works for a *travel* company – he can help you find a cheap tour. 5. Sally wants to gain some *experience* by working this summer as a doctor. 6. Working as a lecturer I *earn* about 3 hundred dollars per week. 7. He doesn't get paid – its *voluntary* work. 8. In my job, I am *responsible* for looking after three little children.

## Practice 56

### Text "The London Eye"

#### 2. Find in the text

святкування нацією нового століття - Nation's celebration of the New Century

дослідив і розробив - researched and developed

знаходиться в русі - is set in motion

є найбільшим серед споруд такого типу - is the largest of its kind

колесо огляду - observation wheel

ти можеш впізнати - you can identify

особливу поїздку для того, щоб побачити - special journeys to see

чим вище воно піднімається - The higher it soars

з висоти пташиного польоту - from a birds eye view



переможці конкурсу - winners of the competition

**4. Complete the sentences with *by* or *on***

1. A return ticket *on* the train is \$15.20. 2. Paris is two hours from here *by* plane. 3. It's about ten minutes to the supermarket *by* bus. 4. How much is the single ticket *on* the coach? 5. The National park is an hour from here *by* foot. 6. It's more dangerous *on* foot than *by* car. 7. Mary is *on* the plane now. 8. I really hate travelling *by* train.

**5. Reread the text "The London Eye" and do the test**

- |                             |                                |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. - c) birds eye view;     | 6. - b) Westminster Abbey;     |
| 2. - a) 1600 tonnes;        | 7. - a) husband and wife team; |
| 3. - c) January;            | 8. - b) participate in;        |
| 4. - b) breathtaking views; | 9. - c) two and a half years;  |
| 5. - a) central London;     | 10. - a) 1893.                 |

**Practice 57**  
**Revision**  
**Test 12**

**2. Put the verbs into the *Future Perfect***

1. They *will have translated* this text by 22 pm. 2. This work *will have done* by this evening. 3. They *will have received* it when you depart. 4. The plain *will have left* by the time they get to the airport. 5. I *shall have finished* to copy this text if you allow me. 6. We *shall have spent* all money by the end of the week. 7. He *will have written* all exercises by the evening. 8. They *shall have passed* their exams by the May. 9. We *shall have gone* to the theatre by the end of the month.

**3. Write the negative and interrogative forms**

1. We shall *not* have gone to the cinema by the end of the year. Shall we have gone to the cinema by the end of the year? 2. That plant will *not* have watered by this evening. What will have done by this evening? 3. They will *not* have sent it when your telegram arrives. What will they have sent when your telegram arrives? 4. The train will *not* have left by the time we get to the station. What will have left by the time we get to the station? 5. I shall have *not* finished this work if you come at seven o'clock. Who will have *not* finished this work if you come at seven o'clock? 6. We shall *not* have spent all money by the end of the month. How much money shall we have spent by the end of the month? 7. He will *not* have copied all documents by the next morning. What documents will he have copied by the next morning? 8. They will *not* have taken all exams by the first of July. 8. What will they have taken by the first of July? 9. We shall *not* have translated the article by 5 o'clock. What will we have translated by 5 o'clock?

**4. Read the answers and complete the questions with an interrogative pronoun**

1. **Where** is your father from? - *He is from Portugal.* 2. **When** is the English exam? - *It is on Thursday.* 3. **How old** are you? - *I am twenty.* 4. **How many** brothers have you got? - *I have got three brothers.* 5. **What** is your favourite DVD? - *My favourite DVD is Titanic.* 6. **Who** is your best friend? - *My best friend is Michael.*

**5. Complete the sentences with the comparative or superlative form of the adjectives in brackets**

1. I think that my sister is **more talented** than I am. 2. What's the **most important** thing to do now? 3. I am a **better** student than my best friend. 4. The changing room on the second floor is **bigger** than this one. 5. I am sure Eve is the **prettiest** girl in my class. 6. My uncle is probably the **worst** driver in the world! 7. I think that Maths is **more difficult** than English.

**Practice 58**  
**Culture of Professional Communication**

**2. Find in the text**

*відмовлятися від їжі та напоїв* – turn down food or drink

*зверніть увагу на це правило* - Pay attention to this rule

*коли гості сидять за столом* - sitting at the table

*срібні прикраси* - silver adornment

*тобі слід зняти рукавички* - You should take off gloves

*можуть не довіряти вам* - may distrust you

*стороні тротуару* - side of the sidewalk

*в середині переговорів* - in the midst of negotiations

*вечірня сукня* - an evening dress (a frock)

*щоб жінка не забруднилася* - that the woman would not get dirty

*келих вина* - a glass of wine

*ніколи не торкнутися руки чоловіка* - never touch a man's hand

**4. Translate into English**

1. *These presents are duty free.* 2. *You should apply for a visa at the embassy 5 month ago.* 3. *Our directors don't come to an agreement.* 4. *This manager can't conclude agreements.* 5. *You should declare your luggage / baggage.* 6. *I have got an appointment with one of teachers at 11 a.m.* 7. *Give me, please, a bill.* 8. *We must pay customs fee and get through the customs.*

**6. Find the American equivalent**

Return ticket **round-trip ticket**, shop assistant **salesman**, company **corporation**, autumn **fall**, petrol **gas**, city centre **downtown**, underground **subway**, time-table **schedule**, luggage **baggage**, taxi **cab**, football **soccer**, railway **railroad**, motorway **highway**, lawyer **attorney**, flat **apartment**, single ticket **one-way ticket**, booking office **ticket-office**.

**7. Try to determine the meaning of these statements concerning the attitudes by nonverbal means such as gestures, eye movements, or posture and impressions from how people look, dress, speak**

1. - *d*); 2. - *e*); 3. - *a*); 4. - *b*); 5. - *c*); 6. - *g*); 7. - *f*)

**8. In Russia they sit down at cocktail parties. In China the most important guest is seated facing the door. In Japan a tip is not expected; in France it is an insult not to leave one. How culturally aware are you at the table? Try the quiz below**

1. - Greece; 2. - Brazil; 3. - Portugal; 4. - Japan; 5. - France; 6. - American; 7. - Arab; 8. - Mexico; 9. - Chinese; 10. - Japanese; 11. - American; 12. - Spain; 13. - Asian/Arab ; 14. - Asian

**9. Check your knowledge of the etiquette, in order not to be confused. Read the following rules and fill in the gaps. Use the word combinations in the box below.**

1. <i>meat is eaten with a fork and a knife.</i>	10) <i>elbows are not put on the table while eating.</i>
2. <i>fish is cut with a special knife.</i>	11) <i>legs are not crossed beneath the table.</i>
3. <i>napkin is laid on knees while eating.</i>	12) <i>tea is not squelched from the cup.</i>
4. <i>fruits are taken by hands.</i>	13) <i>food is chewed slowly and carefully.</i>
5. <i>champagne is served in tall wine glasses.</i>	14) <i>salad is eaten before hot meals.</i>
6. <i>hands are washed after eating a chicken.</i>	15) <i>dishes are not passed across the table.</i>
7. <i>a fork and a knife are put on the table before meals.</i>	16) <i>conversations are held after everything is eaten.</i>
8. <i>dessert is given after a hot meal, salads and drinks.</i>	17) <i>wine is probed at first and then poured.</i>
9. <i>Cheese is served to a red wine.</i>	18) <i>bread is never passed... by hands.</i>

**10. Do the quiz “Around the World Trip”**

1. *China* - **b) Refusing an offer of food. It is very impolite to refuse food.** 2. *Saudi Arabia* - **b) Yes, but only if you are not a woman. Women are forbidden to drive.** 3. *Finland* - **a) Nothing. It is unhygienic to wear anything.** 4. *Cyprus* - **a) Eat it: it is a dessert. A glyco is a traditional dish. It is given as a welcome to visitors. It's impolite to refuse it or offer money for it.** 5. *Morocco* - **c) You may enter only if you're a Muslim. Non-Muslims are forbidden to go inside Moroccan mosques.** 6. *Sweden* - **c) None. Drinking and driving is illegal.** 7. *Spain* - **c) You can eat very late, because Spaniards often eat after 11 p.m. In Spain restaurants stay open very late.** 8. *USA* - **a) You are not allowed to drink alcohol in Central Park. Alcohol laws are different in various states. Usually it is prohibited to drink alcohol in public places which do not have special license.** 9. *Singapore* - **a) Chewing gum is forbidden by law. You can be punished for chewing gum in Singapore.** 10. *Japan* - **c) You shouldn't wash yourself. You should shower yourself clean before relaxing in the bath tub.**

**Practice 59**  
**Grammar: Passive Voice**

**3. Grammar Exercises**

**1. Translate the following sentences into English. Put the verbs into the Passive Voice**

1. *The house is surrounded by the trees.* 2. *Money is kept by the bank.* 3. *The computer is used by my friends.* 4. *Pop music is remembered by me.* 5. *Lyrics is written by the poet.* 6. *This verse was written by Taras Shevchenko.* 7. *All the articles were translated by my friend.* 8. *The bridge was built in 1956.* 9. *The apple pie was baked by my mother.* 10. *This book was written by the poet.* 11. *The sky is covered by clouds.* 12. *The wrong number was given me by my friends.* 13. *The mistake was done by a secretary.* 14. *The driving licence was requested by the policeman.*

**2. Add the sentences with the verbs in the required voice: to build, to damage, to find, to invent, to pay, to show, to speak, to make, to steal**

1. Paper is made from wood. 2. There was a fire at the hotel last week. Two rooms were damaged. 3. Many different languages are spoken in India. 4. These houses are very old. They were built about 5 years ago. 5. Many American programmes are shown on British television. 6. "Is this a very old film?" "Yes, it was made in 1949. 7. My car was stolen last week. The next day it was found by the police. 8. The transistor was invented in 1948. 9. She has a very good job. She is paid \$300 a month.

**3. Add the sentences with the verbs in the required voice**

1. In our country psychology is taught in universities. 2. The ball was found in the river yesterday. 3. Twenty-six cars have been stolen from the city centre since October. 4. Where will the next Olympics be held? 5. Alcoholic drinks are not sold to children under 16. 6. The hole in my roof will be repaired next Friday. 7. Mary has not told about the accident yet.

**4. Change the Active Voice sentences into the Passive Voice ones**

1. The food must be prepared by them tonight. 2. Sam was attacked by someone on Saturday night. 3. Beds are made by the maid every morning. 4. The letter will be written by him next week. 5. The project had been finished by Gary. 6. The birthday cake is being baked by Catherine. 7. The burglars were being watched by the police. 8. Your homework should be completed tonight. 9. Three languages are taught by them at that school. 10. The kitchen was being tidied by Mrs. Jefferson.

**5. Translate the following sentences with the help of the Future Perfect Passive**

1. Домашню роботу буде закінчено до 6 години вечора. *This homework will have been finished by six pm.*

2. Який з цих магазинів буде зачинено до кінця місяця? *Which of these shops will have been closed by the end of the month?*

3. Листи не будуть прочитані до твого повернення. *The letters won't have been read by your return.*

4. Наша пральна машина буде полагоджена до завтра. *Our washing machine will have been repaired by tomorrow.*

5. Я впевнений, що до 20 червня останній іспит буде складений студентами. *I am sure that last exam will have been passed by the students by twentieth of June.*

### 6. Choose a suitable phrase to accompany the passive constructions

1. This book was written *by famous writer* 2. The weather's gloomy. The sky is covered *with clouds* 3. Ukrainian souvenir boxes are made *by hand* 4. The actors were met *with a storm of applause* 5. Her pictures are done *in pencil* 6. Bohdan was greeted *by the Sales manager* 7. The Christmas cards were sent *by air mail* 8. The agreement has been signed *by the Ex-President*

### 5. Make up the passive constructions

1. You assured me that everything was all right. *I was assured by you that everything was all right.* 2. You gave me the wrong number. *The wrong number was given by you.* 3. You made a mistake. *A mistake was made by you.* 4. You have caused me a lot of troubles. *I have caused by you a lot of troubles.* 5. We have turned down your invitation. *Your invitation was turned down by us.* 6. We have received no payment. *No payment had received by us.* 7. We sent cheques regularly on Mondays. *Cheques were sent by us regularly on Mondays.*

## Practice 60 Job Hunting

### 2. Find in the text

*що ти написав у бланку заяви* - that you wrote on the application form

*приблизно на 10 хвилин раніше* - about ten minutes before

*погане перше враження* - a poor first impression

*намагатися дізнатися, яка ви людина* - try to find out what kind of person you are

*вид роботи і її переваги* - type of work and benefits

*друкований аркуш паперу* - a printed sheet

*який досвід у вас є* - what experience you have

*навіть, якщо ви зрозуміли, що* - even if you realise that

*Чи здатна ця людина виконувати цю роботу* - Does this person have the skills to do the job

*під час співбесіди з майбутніми працівниками* - interviewing future employees

### 3. Reread the text "Job Interview" and do the test

1. - c) application form and resume; 2. - b) printed sheet; 3. - a) experience; 4. - b) clearly and intelligently; 5. - b) impression; 6. - c) on time; 7. - c) benefits; 8. - c) children; 9. - a) intelligent; 10. - b) contact.



#### 4. Translate into English

1. *Let me introduce our heads of departments.* 2. *She is not an applicant on the position of an executive.* 3. *He always recruits the staff of our enterprise.* 4. *Our institute has opening positions of a Lecturer of History and a Lecturer of Foreign Literature.* 5. *I would like to speak to the System Administrator.* 6. *An Executive hires and fires.* 7. *She doesn't like to work under pressure.* 8. *He can't stand red tape.* 9. *This employee has great experience.* 10. *You find all information in the personnel office.*

### Practice 61 Revision Test 13

#### 2. Translate into English

1. *I am a representative of the Mary Kay Company.* 2. *These things are liable to duty.* 3. *I need a return ticket.* 4. *It is our baggage.* 5. *You should pay cash.* 6. *His homework is always done by him in time.* 7. *These verses are written by her every day.* 8. *Her composition was written 3 years ago.* 9. *This portrait was painted by famous artist.* 10. *The resume is being read by the employer.* 11. *He is a good employee.* 12. *She holds the position of a manager.* 13. *He has good salary and bonuses.* 14. *An employer hires new teachers.* 15. *What liabilities have you?* 16. *Please, fill in an application form and show your resume.*

#### 3. Translate the following sentences

1. *Susan wants to know if you have seen a file of hers.* 2. *Somebody is knocking on the door.* 3. *Your luggage is here and where is hers?* 4. *He does not speak anything.* 5. *They use their camera.* 6. *She often speaks to herself.* 7. *She knows nothing.* 8. *I cut myself.* 9. *We shall meet at Bob's house.* 10. *He left school at the age of 16.* 11. *Are you going away at the weekend?* 12. *In Germany children get presents at Easter.* 13. *I go to school five times a week.* 14. *He is from Ukraine.*

#### 4. Circle the correct tense

- I'm afraid I can't make it tonight. I \_\_\_\_\_ the estate agent at 7 o'clock.  
a) see   b) *am seeing*   c) have seen   d) have been seeing
- The film \_\_\_\_\_ at 7:30.  
a) has been starting   b) has started   c) is starting   d) *starts*
- He \_\_\_\_\_ to find a cleaning woman for a month now.  
a) *has been trying*   b) tries   c) is trying   d) has tried
- Look! You \_\_\_\_\_ coffee all over my desk!  
a) have been spilling   b) *have spilt*   c) were spilling   d) spill
- He \_\_\_\_\_ the property section of the newspaper every day, but he still hasn't found anything.  
a) *has been reading*   b) is reading   c) have read   d) read



**5. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct present tense**

1. She *is moving* house next week. 2. Carl and Mary are looking for a new house. The landlord *has evicted* them from their flat. 3. *Have you been waiting* a long time? 4. They *are converting* the old mill into a beautiful new home at the moment. 5. Water *freezes* at 0°C. 6. Her flight *arrives* tonight at 7 pm. 7. *Are you signing* the contract for the house next week? 8. The Earth *is becoming* warmer and warmer. 9. The bus *comes* every ten minutes. 10. Jack and Maggie *have* still *been searching* for the perfect house. 11. Bob can't move house now because he *has signed* a two-year contract.

**Practice 62  
On a Business Trip**

**1. Translate into English. Use the Active Vocabulary**

1. *Our hotel is full.* 2. *I need the suite.* 3. *My sister really doesn't like to see somebody off.* 4. *He can't stand rush hours.* 5. *We always travel light.* 6. *Have you got vacant rooms?* 7. *My father bought a ticket in to a reserved seats car.* 8. *You should vacate the room until 9 pm.* 9. *My aunt works as a chambermaid.*

**2. Complete the sentences with the following answers**

<b>Susan</b>	Grand Tour Agency. Susan Sharp speaking.
<b>Hans</b>	Hello, Susan. This is Hans Bradley. I need to send two of our sales managers to Rome next week. <i>Are there any British Airways flights about the time?</i>
<b>Susan</b>	OK. <i>When do they plan to leave?</i>
<b>Hans</b>	Monday October 14 <sup>th</sup> .
<b>Susan</b>	And if you want to book a return flight I must ask you: <i>How long are they staying?</i>
<b>Hans</b>	Four days. They would like to come back on the night of the 17 <sup>th</sup> . <i>Are there any seats available?</i>
<b>Susan</b>	Let me have a look. There is a flight at 8.50 p.m. with British Airlines.
<b>Hans</b>	<i>What are the options?</i>
<b>Susan</b>	Fortunately, there are. I've just called it up on the screen. Shall I reserve you two right now?
<b>Hans</b>	Yes, please. And make it Business Class, OK? <i>When can the tickets come?</i>
<b>Susan</b>	In three or four days. I'll send them to you as soon as they arrive.

**4. Speaking practice. You have to fly from London to Athens and then to Istanbul where you have some appointments. What questions will you ask in the airport inquire office?**

1. Can you get to Istanbul from Heathrow airport? *No, you can't.* 2. What flight can you use? *You should use a flight to Athens BR 250 at 07.50 from Heathrow airport. You will be in Athens at 14.25. Then you should take a flight to Istanbul BG 331 at 15.35 from Athens airport.* 3. What time will you be in Istanbul at? *You will be in Istanbul at 16.55.* 4. How much does it cost for you? *It costs 364.16 pounds for you.*

Plan other trips:

**Damascus – Bangkok**

1. Can you get to Bangkok from Damascus airport? *Yes, you can.* 2. What flight can you use? *You should use a flight to Bangkok SU 213 at 19.55 from Damascus airport.* 3. What time will you be in Bangkok at? *You will be in Bangkok at 22.15.* 4. How much does it cost for you? *It costs 85.10 pounds for you.*

**Athens - Ankara**

1. Can you get to Ankara from Athens airport? *No, you can't.* 2. What flight can you use? *You should use a flight to Istanbul GF 810 at 14.15 from Athens airport. You will be in Istanbul at 15.30. Then you should take a flight to Ankara QM 110 at 17.25 from Istanbul airport.* 3. What time will you be in Ankara at? *You will be in Ankara at 18.35.* 4. How much does it cost for you? *It costs 122.91 pounds for you.*

**Athens - Bangkok**

1. Can you get to Bangkok from Athens airport? *No, you can't.* 2. What flight can you use? *You should use a flight to Damascus SV 131 at 14.55 from Athens airport. You will be in Damascus at 17.40. Then you should take a flight to Bangkok SU 213 at 19.55 from Damascus airport.* 3. What time will you be in Bangkok at? *You will be in Bangkok at 22.15.* 4. How much does it cost for you? *It costs 173.80 pounds for you.*

**Practice 63**  
**Text: "Hotels"**

**3. You need a room in the hotel. Translate your questions into English**

<b>Clerk</b>	Good morning, Sir. Can I help you?
<b>You</b>	<i>I need a single room with continental breakfast for 1 week.</i>
<b>Clerk</b>	I am sorry, sir. I am afraid we have no rooms available at the moment.
<b>You</b>	<i>Can I reserve a suite?</i>
<b>Clerk</b>	Let me see ... . Yes, there are some rooms.
<b>You</b>	<i>How much does it cost?</i>
<b>Clerk</b>	120 pounds a night.
<b>You</b>	<i>I am sorry, but it is too expensive for me.</i>
<b>Clerk</b>	Unfortunately, I can't help any.
<b>You</b>	<i>Do you know any cheaper hotels in this city?</i>
<b>Clerk</b>	You may try the Northern Star Hotel. It's near the station on Davies street.
<b>You</b>	<i>Thank you very much.</i>

**4. Puzzle Out**

Room number	101	102	103	104	105
<b>Name</b>	<b>Mr Grove</b>	<b>Ms Stevens</b>	<b>Mr Petty</b>	<b>Mrs Williams</b>	<b>Mr Harvey</b>
<b>Job</b>	<i>traffic warden</i>	<i>a surgeon</i>	<i>plumber</i>	<i>solicitor</i>	<i>estate agent</i>
<b>Character</b>	<i>sociable</i>	<i>optimistic</i>	<i>conceited</i>	<i>mean</i>	<i>bossy</i>
<b>Interest/hobby</b>	<i>gardening</i>	<i>painting</i>	<i>amateur dramatics</i>	<i>tennis</i>	<i>bird-watching</i>
<b>Other information</b>	<i>is a twin</i>	<i>is Australian</i>	<i>is bald</i>	<i>is bilingual</i>	<i>is a widower</i>

**Practice 64**  
**Advertising and Advertisement**

**2. Read these short advertisements and say what is advertised in each of them**

1. I have no doubt that your *equipment* is of high quality, reliable and efficient. 2. The "Sheraton" is a very comfortable *hotel*. There are a lot of luxurious single rooms with a lovely view and all the modern conveniences, colour TV including. 3. Here's a charming thing "*Golden Dreams*". It's one of the sweetest things written by this author. 4. Here you are, that's just your size. This *material* will wear for years, and it's washable. 5. You can get a good *Parker pen* at our stationery store. 6. Welcome to Nordstrom's. All good *cosmetics* and *hosiery* can be bought here. That's on the way.

**6. There is a part of the newspaper, somebody destroyed it. Can you put the pieces of the paper in the correct place and read the article?**

5. The Coca-Cola story began in 1886. John S. Pemberton. Two of the ingredients coca leaf and the African can't think of a good name	9. gins in Atlanta, Georgia, ton invents a new drink. are the South American can cola nut. Pemberton for the drink. Finally,
2. Dr Pemberton's partner suggests the name Coca-name in a special way famous trademark. Thirty years later the	6. ner Frank M. Robinson Cola and writes the new - and that becomes the famous Coca-Cola bottle
10. design first appears. The the trademark are very of the drink. For many years, they They only introduce	1. style of the bottle and important for the success make only Coca-Cola. new drinks – Fanta and
7. Sprite in 1960s, and diet The recipe of Coca-Cola company does some- The change the recipe! unhappy. And soon	3. Coke in 1982. is a secret. In a 1985 the thing almost incredible. But the public is very after, they bring back the
8. original recipe: "Coca- Today they sell Coca- Hundreds of millions day. It has the most world.	4. Cola Classic". Cola in 195 countries. of people drink it every famous trademark in the

## CHAPTER II

### THE TASKS FOR ENGLISH LESSONS

#### Task 1. Discussion about Books

Books, I believe, may be divided into three classes:

- books to read;
- books to re-read;
- books not to read at all.

The third class is the most important. To tell people what to read is, as rule, either useless or harmful. But to tell people what not to read is a very different matter.

It is indeed necessary in this age of ours, an age that reads too much, that it has no time to admire, and writes so much that it has no time to think. Whoever will select "The Worst Hundred Books" and publish a list of them will give the rising generation a real and lasting service.

#### Discussion

1. Do you agree that there are three classes of books: books you must read, books you must re-read and books you must not read at all?
2. Which are the largest and the smallest class? Why?
3. How do you choose a book to read?
4. What books do you re-read?
5. How do you know what books not to read at all?
6. Do you agree that the list of the "Worst Hundred Books" may be useful?
7. From the book review: "It is not a book to throw aside lightly, it is book to throw away with great force". Have you ever read such books? What are they?
8. Make your own list of best books to read and speak about your choice:
  - a) for children of;
  - b) for teenagers;
  - c) for men;
  - d) for women;
  - e) for old people.
9. Say whether you enjoy reading: fairy tales, adventure stories, detective stories, spy thrillers, classics, contemporary novels, poetry, non-fiction, biographies, memoirs, travel books, science fiction. Arrange them according to their importance to you.

#### Task 2. Choose the explanation from the left column for the words in the right

1) poetry	a) stories about something that will happen in future
2) a romance	b) poems
3) a legend	c) a story about love
4) a biography	d) a book about the spirit of a dead person
5) science fiction	e) an old story
6) an adventure novel	f) a book about something that happened in the past

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

7) a horror novel	g) a story of someone's life
8) a historical novel	h) a book about a policeman who finds out how a crime happened
9) a ghost novel	i) a book about something exciting, dangerous etc.
10) a detective novel	j) a book about something terrible and frightening

### Task 3. Make up 5-7 sentences using the chart

Books about great people	teach us	to be kind and clever
Books about famous travellers		to be noble
Books on history		to love nature
Books about birds and animals		to be true friends
Books about children		to be brave and honest to be hard-working
Fairytales	can teach us	to be polite, to please other people
Fables		to understand the beauty of nature
Poems		to understand what is right and what is wrong
Stories		not to be lazy and naughty
Novels		not to boast to love our Motherland

### Task 4. Match the pennames with the names of the writers

1. Anna Akhmatova	a) <i>Oleksii Peshkov</i>
2. Voltaire	b) <i>Hanna Horenko</i>
3. George Eliot	c) <i>Anrie Marie Beyle</i>
4. George Sand	d) <i>Charles Lutwidge Dodgson</i>
5. Kornei Chukovskiy	e) <i>Marie Fransois Arouet</i>
6. Lewis Carroll	f) <i>Mary Ann Evans</i>
7. Maksym Horkyi	g) <i>Mykola Korneichuk</i>
8. Mark Twain	h) <i>William Sydney Porter</i>
9. O. Henri	i) <i>Samuel Clemens</i>
10. Stendhal	j) <i>Aurora Dupin</i>

### Task 5. Look at this list of book titles and match with their authors

"Alice in Wonderland"	<b><i>J. K. Rowling</i></b>
"The Adventures of Tom Sawyer and Huckleberry Finn"	<b><i>Pamela Travers</i></b>
"The Jungle Book"	<b><i>A. A. Milne</i></b>
"Winnie-the-Pooh"	<b><i>Lewis Carroll</i></b>
"Marry Poppins"	<b><i>Mark Twain</i></b>
"Harry Potter and the Sorcerer's Stone"	<b><i>Robert L. Stevenson</i></b>
"Treasure Island"	<b><i>Rudyard Kipling</i></b>

### Task 6. Do you remember whose characters they are?

Mickey Mouse	is are	Mark Twain's	character(s)
Tom Sawyer		Pamela Travers'	
Mary Poppins		Walt Disney's	
Chippollino		Jannie Rodari's	

**Task 7. Read these abstracts and define what genre of literature are they: a detective story, a romance, a biography, an adventure story, a horror story**

a) He was very frightened now. He got up and went to the bathroom to wash his face. He looked in the mirror and screamed. In front of him in the mirror, there was the head of a dead man. There were no eyes, and no nose, just deep black holes. Then suddenly the head came alive, and it began to laugh.

b) For the next thirty years the Duke and Duchess lived in Paris. They gave parties and travelled round the world, but they never went back to Buckingham Palace. When King George died in 1952 and Queen Mary died in 1961, Edward returned to Windsor for a few days. But Wallis stayed in France.

c) That night we went back to the house. When we saw Helen Stonor's lights, Holmes and I got in quietly through the window. Then we waited silently in the middle bedroom. We waited for three hours and did not move. Suddenly we saw a light and heard a sound ...

d) "Run!" the man thought "Move! Faster! I can't stop now."

Over the man's head the night sky was black and cold, and in front of him were the trees. Tall, dark trees ... "I can hide there", the man thought. He looked behind him. He could see the lights. There were five or six men. Then he heard the dogs ...

**Task 8. There are nouns, pronouns, verbs, adjectives, and adverbs in the following text. Put the underlined words in the columns under the proper headings**

Juan was a Spanish student. He wanted to go to Britain where he could speak English with real English people. His sister's husband was an Englishman, and they lived in England. When Juan wrote to his sister, she brightly invited him to stay with them. She met him at the airport early in the morning and, of course, spoke Spanish all the time. "Never mind", he thought, "the husband speaks English ...". But this Englishman spoke Spanish too. Juan's sister had only Spanish friends and Juan did not speak a word of English while he was staying with her. One morning, Juan saw the young postman and was very glad to see him. He quickly opened the door and said "Good morning". The postman said "Good morning" and walked away. At last Juan's big day came. One of his sister's friends was going to have a party and invited Juan to it. "I shall meet English people at last and really speak English with them", he thought. When the party began, a beautiful girl came up to him and said, "How nice that you are Spanish. I am having a Spanish examination soon. I can practise on you". And in Spanish she invited him to dance. From that moment Juan stopped trying to speak English. "I must go to another town if I want to speak English", he sadly said to himself.

Noun	Pronoun	Verb	Adjective	Adverb



**Task 9. Add the verse by the following interrogative pronouns: *where, why, what, how, who, when***

I have six honest serving men. They taught me all I knew.

Their names are \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

And \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

**Task 10. Replace the following definitions by the necessary adjectives: *brown-haired, dark-eyed, home-made, blue-eyed, old-fashioned***

1. A girl with blue eyes. – A \_\_\_ girl. 2. A dress which was fashionable ten years ago. – A \_\_\_ dress. 3. A cake which is made at home. – A \_\_\_ cake. 4. A boy with brown hair. – A \_\_\_ boy. 5. A man with dark eyes. – A \_\_\_ man.

**Task 11. Write the following nouns in the Plural form:** Glass, photo, fox, city, hero, fly, bridge, goose, knife, roof, smile, ox, daughter-in-law, cap, brush, mouse, flower, pin, bee, forget-me-not.

**Task 12. Write the following nouns in the Singular form:** Beds, families, tomatoes, wolves, deer, means, chiefs, teeth, mothers-in-law, data, crises, merry-go-rounds, enemies, swine, wharves.

**Task 13. Write the italicized nouns in the Plural form and change the sentences**

1. Bob has a fine *dog*. 2. I see *a man* and *a woman* there. 3. There is *a match* in the box. 4. Miss Hopkins teaches my *child* French. 5. They need a new *mini-bus*. 6. He has *a sister* and *a brother*. 7. *The map* is on the *shelf*. 8. Alice, will you bring *a fork* and *a knife* from the kitchen?

**Task 14. Translate into Ukrainian**

The more we study, the more we know.

The more we know, the more we forget.

The more we forget, the less we know.

The less we know, the less we forget.

The less we forget, the more we know.

So why study?

A wise old owl lived in an oak

The more he saw, the less he spoke;

The less he spoke, the more he heard;

Why can't we all be like that wise bird?

**Task 15. Pick out the right English variant for the Ukrainian sentences**

1. Я можу грати в шахи.	a) I may play chess.
	b) I could play chess.
	c) I can play chess.
2. Тобі не слід смітити на вулиці.	a) You shouldn't litter in the street.
	b) You mustn't litter in the street.
	c) You cannot litter in the street.

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

3. Чи можу я запитати Вас?	a) Can I ask you a question?
	b) Should I ask you a question?
	c) May I ask you a question?
4. Не могли б Ви допомогти мені?	a) Can you help me?
	b) Could you help me?
	c) Must you help me?
5. Ти не повинен брати з собою ці предмети.	a) You shouldn't take these things with you.
	b) You cannot take these things with you.
	c) You mustn't take these things with you.

### Task 16. Translate the sentences concentrating on the use of Modal Verbs

<i>cannot have (done)</i>	не може бути, щоб ...
<i>could have (done)</i>	міг би зробити (але не зробив)
<i>may have (done)</i>	можливо зробив
<i>must have (done)</i>	мав це зробити
<i>should have (done)</i>	слід було зробити (але не зроблено)
<i>may be (doing)</i>	можливо (робить)

1. He cannot have translated this text without a dictionary. 2. She cannot have done such a thing. 3. They cannot have come so late. 4. He cannot have said it. 5. He could have done it without your help. 6. The Browns could have invited us to the evening party. 7. Eve could have told them about it long ago. 8. You could have published the article in our journal. 9. The problem may have been solved, but I am not sure. 10. The delegation may have arrived, but we don't have exact information. 11. They may have bought the necessary goods there. 12. They must have sent a new spaceship into orbit. 13. It must have taken him much time to complete the work. 14. All the people are leaving the conference hall; the session must have been declared closed. 15. You should have helped your friend long ago. 16. They should have told you about it last week. 17. Paul may be taking part in a swimming contest, but I don't know exactly. 18. What is going in the club? – They may be showing a film. 19. Where are the members of the delegation? – They may be visiting places on interest.

### Task 17. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian paying attention on usage of Postpositions

1. The bottle *fell off* the table. 2. He *pulled* the child *out* of the water. 3. They *pushed* him *into* the car. 4. A piece of paper *fell out* of the book. 5. He *held up* his hand. 6. *Take* the stones *out*. 7. You must not *go out* there is too much wind. 8. He *run out* of the house. 9. She *took* the cups *out* of the box.

### Task 18. Translate the sentences concentrating on the use of the Gerund

1. Do you mind my (*палити*) here? 2. Leonid is against (*лишатися*) there long. 3. (*гуляти*) in such weather is very pleasant. 4. I remember (*бачити*) that film. 5. Our students think of (*поїхати*) to Lviv next Sunday. 6. Let's go on (*працювати*) at this problem. 7. Will you stop (*говорити, розмовляти*)?

**Task 19. Answer the following questions using one of the necessary adjectives: *reliable, trustworthy; absent-minded; timid, uncomfortable, nervous,***

*dull, reserved, quiet; envious; angry, nervous, offensive; a messy person; punctual, reliable, well-organized; a greedy person; painstaking, sorry; trustworthy, reliable*

1. What would you call a person who never shares things with other people? 2. How would you feel if a friend of yours failed a difficult exam? 3. How would you feel if you found yourself at a party where you know almost no one? 4. What would you call a person whose room is in a mess? 5. What would you call a person who always comes on time? 6. What would you call a person who envies other people? 7. What would you call a person who never betrays his/her friends? 8. What would you call a person who always loses his/her things? 9. What would you call a person who never lets people down? 10. How would you feel if you wanted to buy a new dress but had no money to do it?

**Task 20. Write comparisons for the following as in the example:** Snakes are dangerous. ... *Yes, but tigers are more dangerous.*

1. Spain is a hot country. 2. Pearls are expensive. 3. Dogs are intelligent. 4. Greek is a difficult language. 5. Travelling by bus is long. 6. Kyiv is big. 7. Detective stories are interesting. 8. Learning of Chemistry is useful. 9. An armchair is comfortable. 10. Tiger's teeth are sharp.

**Task 21. How long does it take?** Write sentences using the information in the chart. For example: *The teacher goes to work by bus. It takes forty-five minutes.*

	Transport	Leaves home	Arrives at ...
<b>The teacher</b>	bus	8.15	9.00
<b>My father</b>	train	7.15	9.15
<b>Her sister</b>	bicycle	7.10	8.02
<b>Our parents</b>	car and train	8.11	14.45
<b>They</b>	taxi	8.10	8.24
<b>I</b>	motorbike	8.00	8.28
<b>My brother</b>	car	8.27	9.00

1. My father \_\_\_\_ . 2. It takes \_\_\_\_ . 3. Her sister \_\_\_\_ . It takes \_\_\_\_ . 4. Our parents \_\_\_\_ . It takes \_\_\_\_ . 5. They \_\_\_\_ . It takes \_\_\_\_ . 6. I \_\_\_\_ . It takes \_\_\_\_ . 7. My brother \_\_\_\_ . It takes \_\_\_\_ .

**Task 22. Some people are talking about the bad things they did last year. Put the Verbs in the Past Tense and write them**

1. I \_\_\_\_ (*drink*) some beer at my friends party. 2. I \_\_\_\_ (*draw*) a funny picture of my teacher. 3. I \_\_\_\_ (*eat*) my brothers sweets and cakes. 4. I \_\_\_\_ (*break*) my dad's computer and I didn't tell him. 5. I \_\_\_\_ (*wear*) my brother's jumper without asking his permission. 6. I \_\_\_\_ (*hide*) my sister's favourite T-shirt when she was going to a party. 7. I \_\_\_\_ (*hit*) my little brother when he annoyed me. 8. I \_\_\_\_ (*forget*) my best friend's birthday. 9. I \_\_\_\_ (*keep*) some money that was supposed to be for charity. 10. I \_\_\_\_ (*throw*) my friend's homework in the bin. 11. I \_\_\_\_ (*put*) a spider in my sister's hair. 12. I \_\_\_\_ (*swear*) at my dad. 13. I \_\_\_\_ (*spend*) my school lunch money on crisps and sweets. 14. I \_\_\_\_ (*hurt*) my friend's feelings by saying she was fat. 15. I \_\_\_\_

(sell) my brother's Walkman to my friend because I needed some money. 16. I \_\_\_ (steal) five pounds from my mum's purse. 17. I \_\_\_ (go) to my friend's house instead of doing my homework. 18. I \_\_\_ (tell) my mum a lie.

### Task 23. Role-play „A Detective”

<b>Role I.</b> You are a <u>detective</u> . Ask your witness questions about the appearance of the man you are looking for.		
<b>Role II.</b> You are a <u>witness</u> . Answer the detective questions.		
Questions	Answers	
1. Is the man tall or short?	He is	tall; very tall; short
2. What colour is his hair?	It is	fair; dark; grey; red; brown
3. What kind of nose does he have?	He has a	long; straight nose; turned-up
4. What does he have on? etc.	He has a	coat; jacket on; suit

### Task 24. Imagine an accident on the road. Use this plan to make up a story

<b>The accident</b>	
1. Date	
2. Time	
3. Colour of car	
<b>The driver</b>	
4. Clothes	
5. Age	
6. Style of driving	
<b>The policeman</b>	
7. Reaction	
8. Questions	

**Task 25. Insert the necessary words and you'll find out how to brew tea: cold, tea, hot, teaspoon, cup, kettle**

<b>A</b>	Boil the _____ water.
<b>B</b>	Warm the _____.
<b>C</b>	Put one _____ of _____ in the kettle for each person and one extra for the pot.
<b>D</b>	Pour _____ water into the kettle.
<b>E</b>	Let's have a _____ of tea.

**Task 26. Make up a list of necessary products for cooking: омлет; салат „Олів'є”; борщ; плов; млинці та ін.**

### Task 27. Role-play “Cooking”

Pupils are suggested “to cook” something themselves. Pupils are given worksheets with a recipe. They should look at the ingredients and write how to make the dish. **Home Task:** Write about your favourite meal. For example:

**Carrot Biscuits: Ingredients:** 1 egg, 70 gr of oil, 70 gr of sugar, 1 cup of flour, 1 teaspoon of baking powder, some salt, 1 cup of boiled carrots, 4 tablespoons of raisins. *Use words:* mix, add, roll, cut, bake, oven.

**Apple Pie: Ingredients:** 1 eggs, 50 gr of oil, 60 gr of sugar, 2 cups of flour, 1

teaspoon of baking powder, some salt, 500 gr of apples. *Use words:* mix, peel, break, add, chop, roll, cut, fry, bake.

**Boston Burgers:** *Ingredients:* 750 gr minced beef, 1 clove of garlic, 5 nuts, 2 onions, 2 lemons, 4 buns, 3 tomatoes, 50 gr of cheese, 1 tin of pineapple, some salt, pepper, lettuce. *Use words:* mix, slice, fry, add, peel, toast, cut, chop, bread.

**Task 28. Read the descriptions and name the things:** *university, raincoat, gymnasium, tents, library*

1. A large room with bookshelves and bookcases full of books in different languages and magazines. 2. A place where students study after leaving school. 3. Small houses where schoolchildren live when they are at a summer camp. 4. A coat you put on when it rains to be dry. 5. A large room where schoolchildren (students and other people) have their physical training lessons.

**Task 29. Find and Name the Animals**

You can find words-names of animals hidden horizontally, vertically or diagonally in this puzzle:

w	c	o	t	g	f	i	s	h	e	a	m
p	r	w	b	i	r	d	n	i	n	g	q
i	t	a	c	h	o	x	a	k	e	l	h
g	o	z	d	o	g	o	f	l	o	w	c
c	r	t	o	r	w	l	u	g	i	t	e
r	a	q	i	s	p	i	d	e	r	i	l
a	b	j	e	e	m	o	u	s	e	s	e
m	b	i	t	m	u	n	p	e	e	h	p
t	u	p	a	r	r	o	t	k	r	a	w
o	r	k	e	y	p	k	c	o	c	n	t

**Task 30. Complete each sentence a) to j) with one of the endings 1) to 10). Use each ending once only**

a) A large green snake ...	1) ...was spinning its web across the window.
b) A small brown duck...	2) ...was plodding across the field, mooing loudly.
c) A large black and yellow wasp ...	3) ...was buzzing around the jar of honey on the table.
d) A shiny green crab...	4) ...was sitting on a branch and meowing.
e) An enormous black spider...	5) ...was slithering across the floor towards me.
f) A bright green frog...	6) ...was sitting on a leaf and croaking.
g) A black and white puppy...	7) ...was following the flock, baaing quietly.
h) A herd of cattle...	8) ...was swimming on the pond and quacking loudly.
i) A dirty black lamb...	9) ...was barking furiously outside the gate.
j) A small ginger kitten...	10) ...was pinching Fiona's toe as she stood on the sea shore.

**Task 31. Match these words with the descriptions given: camel, bee, fly, rabbit, giraffe, moth, leopard, pig, shark, worm, dolphin, whale**

1. It lives in a hole in the ground and has long ears. 2. It flies at night and is attracted to light. 3. It lives in a hive and makes honey. 4. It has yellow fur and a long neck. 5. It is a large dangerous fish. 6. It lives in the earth and we can use it when we go fishing. 7. It is a large member of the cat family with spotted fur. 8. It is the largest kind of animal in the world. 9. It is used for transport in desert countries. 10. It is a fat pink animal which lives in a sty. 11. It is a large intelligent sea animal. 12. It is an insect which spreads diseases.

**Vocabulary**

*hive* [haiv] вулик

*moth* [mʌθ] 1) моль 2) нічний метелик 3) метелик

*sty* [stai] свинарник; хлів

*worm* [wɜ:m] 1) хробак; гусінь, личинка

**Task 32. Find the animals hiding in the following sentences: falcon, horse, bear, camel, egret, deer, dog, fish, frog, goat, lion, yak, monkey, ox, snake, cow, tiger, bison, dingo, walrus, koala, cat. For example: Close the door at once! (rat)**

1. That will be a real help. 2. She came late every day. 3. He came to America today. 4. Eric owes me ten cents. 5. We made errors in each one. 6. Do good workers succeed? 7. If I shout, he'll hear me. 8. If Roger comes, we'll begin. 9. We will go at two o'clock. 10. Is it the sixth or seventh? 11. In April I only came once. 12. I'll sing; you hum on key. 13. I made a Xerox copy of it. 14. She clothes naked babies. 15. At last, I, Gerald, had won. 16. Your comb is on the table. 17. We're sending only one book. 18. He regrets having said that. 19. If Al concentrates, he'll win. 20. When I withdrew, Al rushed in. 21. He called Mikko a lazy boy. 22. It's only a kilometre away.

**Vocabulary**

*egret* ['i:gret] біла чапля

*walrus* [wɔ:lɹəs] морж

**Task 33. Crack the Code**

Code:	1) - A	5) - E	9) - I	13) - M	17) - Q	21) - U	25) - Y
	2) - B	6) - F	10) - J	14) - N	18) - R	22) - V	26) - Z
	3) - C	7) - G	11) - K	15) - O	19) - S	23) - W	
	4) - D	8) - H	12) - L	16) - P	20) - T	24) - X	
<b>A</b>	Every - 3 - 12 - 15 - 21 - 4 - 8 - 1 - 19 - 9 - 12 - 22 - 5 - 18 - 12 - 9 - 14 - 9 - 14 - 7.						
<b>B</b>	One - 7 - 15 - 15 - 4 - 20 - 21 - 18 - 14 - 4 - 5 - 19 - 5 - 18 - 22 - 5 - 19 - 1 - 14 - 15 - 20 - 8 - 5 - 18.						
<b>C</b>	Actions - 19 - 16 - 5 - 1 - 11 - 12 - 15 - 21 - 4 - 5 - 18 - 20 - 8 - 1 - 14 - 23 - 15 - 18 - 4 - 19.						
<b>D</b>	First - 20 - 8 - 9 - 14 - 11 - 20 - 8 - 5 - 14 - 19 - 16 - 5 - 1 - 11.						
<b>E</b>	What - 9 - 19 - 4 - 15 - 14 - 5 - 3 - 1 - 14 - 14 - 15 - 20 - 2 - 5 - 21 - 14 - 4 - 15 - 14 - 5.						



**Task 34. Find the M's. Знайдіть якомога більше слів, що починаються на літеру "М"**

m	e	t	w	u	q	e	y	l	v	r	m
o	t	a	t	e	s	k	t	a	z	e	a
m	e	l	a	m	o	n	m	e	m	t	s
x	p	l	o	a	n	e	y	n	b	m	a
m	a	i	w	m	o	u	s	e	e	a	s
i	l	k	z	u	s	m	t	e	r	r	k
c	m	a	r	k	i	i	x	z	y	k	m
e	e	l	o	n	c	g	i	c	k	e	a
m	d	m	a	y	q	a	s	t	a	t	c
a	a	o	h	t	y	m	i	t	o	r	a
c	l	u	m	r	e	a	l	t	n	i	i
h	i	t	a	z	t	t	g	m	e	n	s
e	n	h	n	e	z	q	a	s	s	w	z

**Task 35. Write antonyms. For example: good – bad etc.**

beautiful - \_\_\_\_ ; young - \_\_\_\_ ; rich - \_\_\_\_ ; lucky - \_\_\_\_ ; small - \_\_\_\_ ; pleasant - \_\_\_\_ ; clean - \_\_\_\_ ; tall - \_\_\_\_ ; thick- \_\_\_\_ ; kind- \_\_\_\_

**Task 36. Find synonyms:**

<b>1. a present</b> a) a cloth b) the time c) a gift d) a person	<b>4. to destroy</b> a) to build b) to repair c) to ruin d) to improve	<b>7. faithful</b> a) loyal b) clever c) friendly d) honest	<b>10. much</b> a) a lot of b) few c) little d) large
<b>2. to keep</b> a) to contain b) to have c) to hold d) to preserve	<b>5. a mistake</b> a) a blunder b) a misguide c) a misfortune d) a misconduct	<b>8. chance</b> a) aspect b) opportunity c) luck d) advantage	<b>11. to ignore somebody</b> a) to like somebody b) to dislike somebody c) not to notice somebody d) to cherish somebody
<b>3. a journey</b> a) a voyage b) a walk c) a trip d) a game	<b>6. to listen to</b> a) to comprehend b) to tune to c) to understand d) to look after somebody	<b>9. to accept</b> a) to bring b) to understand c) to admit d) to allow	<b>12. to start from scratch</b> a) to start from the very beginning b) to start as usual c) to begin beforehand d) to commence at once

**Task 37. Find antonyms of some of the personal characteristics below**

1) amiable	11) competitive	21) grateful	31) ignorant
2) bad-tempered	12) democratic	22) gullible	32) messy
3) brave	13) docile	23) hospitable	33) noisy
4) bright,	14) dull	24) honest	34) naughty
5) calm	15) energetic	25) hypocritical	35) optimistic
6) careful	16) easy-going	26) idealistic	36) polite
7) caring	17) emotional	27) patient	37) reliable
8) cheerful	18) forgiving	28) practical	38) selfless
9) conscientious	19) generous	29) sensitive	39) tactful
10) co-operative	20) gentle	30) responsible	40) trustworthy

Cowardly, impolite, hostile, passive, sweet-natured, reserved, unemotional, knowledgeable, insensitive, slow, well-organized, dull, stupid, unreliable, vengeful, nervous, greedy, quiet, selfish, careless, ruthless, jolly, indifferent, obedient, ungrateful, pessimistic, dull, sceptical, careless, irresponsible, hostile, uncooperative, tactless, dishonest, untrustworthy, tight-fisted, non-competitive, sincere, domineering, realistic, stubborn, impatient, humorous, impractical.

**Task 38. Find synonyms**

1) amiable	<i>a) caring</i>
2) brave	<i>b) inquisitive</i>
3) cautious	<i>c) courageous</i>
4) considerate	<i>d) friendly</i>
5) cruel	<i>e) careful</i>
6) clever	<i>f) ruthless</i>
7) curious	<i>g) conscientious</i>
8) cheerful	<i>h) shy</i>
9) docile	<i>i) active</i>
10) diligent	<i>j) intelligent</i>
11) energetic	<i>k) open-hearted</i>
12) easy-going	<i>l) thorough</i>
13) generous	<i>m) jolly</i>
14) modest	<i>n) open</i>
15) painstaking	<i>o) obedient</i>

**Task 39. Find antonyms**

Small, love, long, expensive, hate, large, thin, difficult, cheap, short, thick, early, near, easy, far, late.

**Task 40. Match the following words with the words or expressions that are nearly the same in meaning**

neat	<i>pretty or handsome</i>
have artistic talent	<i>a child who is not well behaved</i>
portrait	<i>an animal</i>
in bad shape	<i>a type of haircut</i>
creative	<i>with everything in order</i>
brat	<i>painting or picture of someone</i>
attractive	<i>not in good health</i>
creature	<i>making new things or ideas</i>
Mohawk	<i>be good in drawing</i>
lovely	<i>nice or pleasant</i>

**Task 41. Find synonyms**

Unhappy, tidy, like, sick, sad, neat, enjoy, ill, answer, come back, shut, correct, reply, right, return, close.

**Task 42. Find appropriate word**

1. I have not done this and you are making a terrible \_\_\_\_\_ in suspecting me.  
*a) error;    b) mistake;    c) blunder;    d) gaffe;*

2. Elizabeth realized that it had been a \_\_\_\_\_ to take her daughter to the house where her father was killed some years before.  
a) *mistake*;    b) *slip*;    c) *fault*;    d) *misunderstanding*;
3. The accident was due to the \_\_\_\_\_ of the driver.  
a) *slip*;    b) *error*;    c) *blunder*;    d) *lapse*;
4. Without her glasses she made a \_\_\_\_\_ and filled in the wrong form.  
a) *error*;    b) *blunder*;    c) *lapse*;    d) *fault*;
5. Jacqueline is a good secretary but lately she often makes \_\_\_\_\_ in such simple things as typing and uploading information.  
a) *blunders*;    b) *errors*;    c) *faults*;    d) *misunderstandings*;
6. My literature teacher speaks so quickly that he often makes \_\_\_\_\_ of the tongue.  
a) *mistakes*;    b) *faults*;    c) *slips*;    d) *blunders*;
7. Don't even think of shifting the blame on me, please! It's not my \_\_\_\_\_ for what happened.  
a) *fault*;    b) *error*;    c) *gaffe*;    d) *misunderstanding*;
8. I wouldn't call this a bad mistake; it is simply a \_\_\_\_\_ of the pen.  
a) *error*;    b) *blunder*;    c) *gaffe*;    d) *slip*;

### Vocabulary

**blame** [bleɪm] 1) осуд, докір 2) провина, відповідальність

**blunder** [blʌndə(r)] груба помилка

**gaffe** [gæf] хибний крок, недоречний вчинок, помилка

**lapse** [læps] необачність, недогляд, помилка, промах; ляпсус; похибка; описка

**shift** [ʃɪft] 1) переміщення, перестановка, перенесення; зміна 2) зрушення; зсув, пересування, 3) виверт, хитрощі, нечесний прийом; засіб, спосіб

**slip** [slɪp] 1) ковзання: сповзання 2) помилка; промах

**Task 43. Do You Know the Profession of these Men?** (a writer, a scientist, an artist, a spaceman, an actor, a composer, a sportsman)

Tchaikovsky; Charlie Chaplin; Lewis; Carroll; Michelangelo; Gagarin; Archimedes; Kasparov

**Task 44. Read the description and name the answers: trousers, coat, old, door, eyes, cap, fair, socks, shoes, chair**

1. Not new. - \_\_\_\_ . 2. We have them on our feet. - \_\_\_\_ . 3. Your hair is not dark, it is \_\_\_\_ . 4. We see with our \_\_\_\_ . 4. You put it on. - \_\_\_\_ . 5. You can see it in a room. You may open or shut it. - \_\_\_\_ . 6. You can sit on it. - \_\_\_\_ . 7. Boys and girls have them on their legs. - \_\_\_\_ . 8. You have it on your head. - \_\_\_\_ . 9. It is not a skirt. Boys and girls put them on. - \_\_\_\_

### Task 45. Use the proper forms of the verbs in brackets

1. Miss Grey (to teach) us English. 2. They (to meet) in our club very often. 3. My friend (to help) me in my German yesterday night. 4. These students (to rent) a room. 5. Mr. Green and his wife (to live) in London. 6. Last winter we (to ski) and (to

skate) a lot. 7. Nick (to shave) now. 8. Many people (to play) in tennis there next year.

**Task 46. Change the sentences inserting the words in brackets**

1. **They** help **their** father. (he) 2. **I** watch too much TV. (she) 3. **They** lie in the bed all day. (it) 4. Do **you** like boiled eggs? (he) 5. **They** do not wash the floor every week. (she)

**Task 47. Use the proper forms of the verbs in brackets**

1. Be quite. The baby (to sleep). The baby (to sleep) for ten hours every night. 2. She usually (to play) cards or (to watch) TV. 3. Ali (to speak) Arabic. 4. Mary is at home. She (to eat) dinner. She always (to eat) dinner with her family. 5. Ann (to make) a dress for herself at the moment. She (to make) all her own clothes. 6. Mrs. Wilson (to sit) at the breakfast table. She (to read) the morning paper. She (to read) the newspapers every morning. 7. Shhh. Irene (to talk) on the long-distance phone. – Who (she, to talk) to? – Her brother. They (to talk) for almost an hour. Her brother is in some kind of trouble. 8. What you (to do) now? – We (to pick) apples.

**Task 48. Write the negative and interrogative forms**

1. My brother has tried giving up smoking. 2. They have visited Ukraine several times so far. 3. I have lost my job because of being too lazy at work. 4. He knows almost everyone in this house. 5. I spent all my money.

**Task 49. Grammar Test. Choose the correct answer**

1. Danny _____ a party at nine o'clock tonight.
a) have;    b) has;    c) is having;
2. Kate pretended _____ when her father came into the room.
a) studying;    b) to be studying;    c) study;
3. I'll take my umbrella _____ it rains later today.
a) so that;    b) in case;    c) in order to;
4. They _____ for an hour now, so they are tired.
a) have been exercising;    b) exercise;    c) are exercising;
5. The office _____ work is very large.
a) where;    b) which;    c) that;
6. This time next week, I _____ on a sandy beach.
a) am lying;    b) lie;    c) will be lying;
7. _____ River Nile flows through Egypt.
a) an; =    b) - ;    c) the;
8. We _____ the lock fixed before we went on holiday.
a) had had;    b) will be having;    c) have had;
9. The bank _____ into during the night.
a) was broken;    b) broken;    c) broke;
10. I think I _____ my hair cut next Saturday.
a) have;    b) have had;    c) will have;

11. She _____ them that she was leaving the following day.		
a) asked;	b) told;	c) said;
12. When I left home this morning, it _____.		
a) was raining;	b) is raining;	c) rains;
13. By the time I got there, Bill _____.		
a) had already left;	b) left;	c) is leaving;
14. Miss Jones _____ two cups of tea today.		
a) has drunk;	b) is drinking;	c) drinks;
15. Sarah _____ my best friend since 1992.		
a) was;	b) is being;	c) has been;
16. It's the second time I _____ by plane.		
a) am flying;	b) have flown;	c) fly;

**Task 50. Correct mistakes in the given sentences, explain**

1. Mr Brick are in the shop. 2. Bruno want to go home. 3. I am liking coffee. 4. They runs into the street. 5. She are in front of the thief. 6. He do not like reading. 7. They does went to university. 8. She is living in the London. 9. I are speaking to Mr Tornton now.

**Task 51. Choose the right form of the Verb. Example: I often \_\_\_ (help / will help / helped) my mother at home.**

1. My elder brother \_\_\_\_\_ (*repairs* / *will repair* / *repaired*) my bike yesterday. 2. My little sister usually \_\_\_\_\_ (*plays* / *will play* / *played*) the piano. 3. Mary \_\_\_\_\_ (*washes* / *will wash* / *washed*) the dishes in twenty minutes. 4. Bob \_\_\_\_\_ (*doesn't* / *won't* / *didn't*) water the flowers yesterday. 5. Why \_\_\_\_\_ (*doesn't* / *won't* / *didn't*) you answer my phone calls yesterday evening? – I \_\_\_\_\_ (*am not* / *won't be* / *wasn't*) at home. 6. I usually \_\_\_\_\_ (*do* / *am doing* / *did*) my homework after dinner.

**Task 52. Underline the correct tense in these sentences. Example: They write/are writing their composition now.**

1. Tom is *drinking/drinks* milk every day. 2. The children are *doing/do* their homework now. 3. Oh lovely! The sun is *shining/shines* again. 4. Paul is *drawing/draws* pictures every day. 5. Where's Mary? She is *watching/watches* cartoons in the sitting-room. 6. Those men are *building/build* a factory at the moment. 7. Every summer we are *going/go* to the Crimea.

**Task 53. Choose the necessary word (*aches; asthma; disease; hurts; lung cancer; myself; pain; stomach-ache; heart attack; prescription*)**

1. I hit my hand on the desk and it really \_\_\_\_\_. 2. They say she died of a \_\_\_\_\_. 3. She had some apples that were not ready to eat and now she's got \_\_\_\_\_. 4. I've got this terrible \_\_\_\_\_ in my neck from sleeping in the wrong position. 5. He died of \_\_\_\_\_ even though he never smoked a cigarette in his life. 6. I went to the doctor, and she gave me a \_\_\_\_\_ for some medicine. 7. Pollution makes her \_\_\_\_\_ worse and it's difficult for her to breathe. 8. There are different forms of hepatitis; one is more

serious \_\_\_\_\_ than the other. 9. I hurt \_\_\_\_\_ when I fell off that chair. 10. My back \_\_\_\_\_ from sitting at the computer all day.

**Task 54. Match the halves of the proverbs**

... <i>in a sound body.</i>	... <i>keeps the doctor away.</i>
... <i>makes a man healthy, wealthy and wise.</i>	... <i>after supper walk a mile.</i>
... <i>is above wealth.</i>	... <i>have desperate cures.</i>

1. An apple a day ... 2. After dinner sit a while ... 3. Desperate diseases must ... 4. Early to bed and early to rise ... 5. Good health ... 6. A sound mind ...

**Task 55. Match the halves of the broken proverbs**

... <i>is only skin deep.</i>	... <i>begins at home.</i>	... <i>speak louder than words.</i>
... <i>sweeps clean.</i>	... <i>makes perfect.</i>	... <i>run deep.</i>
... <i>deserves another.</i>	... <i>saves nine.</i>	... <i>make the heart grow fonder.</i>

1. A stitch in time ... 2. Absence ... 3. Still waters ... 4. Actions ... 5. Practice ... 6. Charity ... 7. One good turn ... 8. A new broom ... 9. Beauty ...

**Task 56. Join the parts of the given proverbs**

1. You can lead a horse to water,	<i>a. spoil the broth.</i>
2. It's the early bird	<i>b. shouldn't throw stones.</i>
3. Too many cooks	<i>c. the pounds will look after themselves.</i>
4. Many hands	<i>d. out of a molehill.</i>
5. Those who live in glass houses	<i>e. but you can't make him drink.</i>
6. You cannot teach	<i>f. in the mouth.</i>
7. If you look after the pennies,	<i>g. that catches the worm.</i>
8. Don't make a mountain	<i>h. and eat it.</i>
9. Don't look a gift horse	<i>i. an old dog new trick.</i>
10. You can't have your cake	<i>j. make light work</i>

**Task 57. Match the halves of the broken sentences**

... *to find out what the words mean.* ... *to boil those potatoes.* ... *to get to the top floor.* ... *to wash my hands.* ... *to travel abroad.* ... *to book our summer holidays.* ... *to get a new pair of glasses.* ... *to see the wild animals.* ... *to draw straight lines.* ... *in his buttonhole.* ... *to see in the dark.* ... *for his birthday.*

1. I am going to the zoo ... 2. Let's go to the travel agent ... 3. I need some soap ... 4. You'll need a saucepan ... 5. You should better take a torch ... 6. I need a ruler ... 7. I must go to the optician's ... 8. You need a passport ... 9. Let's take the lift ... 10. You can use a dictionary ... 11. My son wants a pet hamster ... 12. He often wears a carnation ...

**Task 58. Put the adjectives in brackets in the correct position.** *Example: a beautiful table (wooden, round) a beautiful round wooden table*

1. an unusual ring (gold) \_\_\_\_ 2. an old lady (nice) \_\_\_\_ 3. a good looking man (young) \_\_\_\_ 4. a modern house (attractive) \_\_\_\_ 5. black gloves (leather) \_\_\_\_ 6. an



*Practical Grammar of the English Language*

American film (old) \_\_\_ 7. a large nose (red) \_\_\_ 8. an ugly dress (orange) \_\_\_ 9. a red car (old, little) \_\_\_ 10. a metal box (black, small) \_\_\_ 11. a long face (thin) \_\_\_ 12. a wide avenue (long) \_\_\_ 13. a big cat (fat, black) \_\_\_ 14. a little village (old, poor) \_\_\_ 15. long hair (fair, beautiful) \_\_\_ 16. an old painting (interesting, French) \_

**Task 59. Do You Know?** A department store is a large shop, which sells a wide range of goods in different departments, each with a special name. Here are some of them and beside them is a list of goods. In which department would you buy them?

<b>GROCERY</b>	<i>erasers, drawing-pins, files, paper-fasteners</i>
<b>LEATHERWARE</b>	<i>cardigan, pullovers, sweaters, jackets</i>
<b>ELECTRICAL</b>	<i>chocolates, sweet</i>
<b>HABERDASHERY</b>	<i>broadcloth, linen</i>
<b>STATIONARY</b>	<i>pantyhose, tights, stockings, socks</i>
<b>CAFETERIA</b>	<i>foodstuffs</i>
<b>BEDDING</b>	<i>sheepskins</i>
<b>CONFECTIONARY</b>	<i>radio, electric appliances</i>
<b>HOSIERY</b>	<i>combs, wallets, pins, thread, needles, neckties, belts, cufflinks</i>
<b>KNITWEAR</b>	<i>pots and pans, saucepans, frying pans</i>
<b>HOUSEHOLD UTENSILS</b>	<i>sheets, pillow-cases, pads</i>
<b>TEXTILES</b>	<i>a cup of tea or coffee, a glass of orange juice</i>

**Task 60. Make up a shopping list of necessary products for (a birthday party, a picnic etc.) using the following expressions**

a bottle of milk; a tin of sardines; a box of matches; a bottle of mineral water (wine, oil); a slice of cheese (bread, meat); a bar of chocolate (soap); a pinch of salt; a dozen of eggs; a peace of cake; a peace of paper; a block of wood; a lump of sugar; a tube of toothpaste; a sheet of paper; a packet of biscuits; a jar of jam

**Task 61. Complete this grid (you may use a dictionary):**

<i>Outlet</i>	<i>Size</i>	<i>Product</i>
supermarket	large or small	food, household goods
kiosk	small	sandwich, postcards, cigarettes
department store	large	
market		food, flowers, clothes
butcher's		
baker's		bread
dairy's		
grocer's		
fishmonger's		
greengrocer's		
chemist's		
newsagent's		

**Task 62. Give your opinion** *What are the good points and bad points about television? For example:*

Good points	Bad points
1. It keeps you informed about the rest of the world.	1. It stops people talking and visiting theatres.
2. It educates and brings up.	2. Television is "a chewing-gum" for our eyes.
3.	3.
4.	4.

**Task 63. Mixed up stories.** These are two stories from a newspaper. Somehow they were mixed up. Can you sort them out? Take a pen and underline the lines in the two stories which go with the headline *"What a Can of Beans!"* The lines which you have not underlined go with the story *"Official Opening Ceremony"*.

What a Can of Beans!	Official Opening Ceremony
<p>Yesterday morning the Queen opened a can of baked beans. It cost £52,000,000. One of her shoes fell off when she tried to eat it. Her husband was extremely angry and they laughed about it. She spoke to the town's Mayor, who works in the bean canning plant. She then shook hands with her boyfriend, who plays in a rock group. The Mayor presented her with 24 cans of baked beans. It was a present from the town.</p>	<p>Tracey Fenwick found a diamond ring in a new hospital in Watermouth. It was worth about £200. She broke one of her front teeth while she was planting a tree. Prince Philip picked it up for her and complained to the manufacturers. The ring belonged to a Miss Green, who is a wealthy local industrialist. She said she was afraid to tell several of the doctors and nurses. The manufacturers sent Mrs Fenwick a beautiful gold clock. They apologized for their mistake.</p>

**Task 64. Love Problems. Read the problems and unscramble the anagrams**

<p>I'm a 14-year-old girl with a big problem. I've <b>ALFENL</b> in love with a boy two years older than me. I've never felt like this before and I can't concentrate on my schoolwork, I can't think about anything else, only him. If I asked him out, would he just think that I was a silly <b>TILTLE</b> girl? I just don't know what to do to get <b>ROVE</b> my feelings for this boy.</p>	<p>My sister is getting married soon and I am worried that her boyfriend will try and take her away from her family. He doesn't get on <b>LEWL</b> with his family but our family is really dose. I think he's jealous of us. The other <b>YAD</b> he made some nasty comments about our <b>YFLAMI</b>. Is there anything I can do?</p>
<p>There's this girl in my year at school who I've liked for ages. I think she likes me too because she told one of my <b>SEINFRD</b> that she thinks I am handsome and <b>SATMR</b>. I want to ask her out but I asked her once before and at first she said no, then yes, and then <b>ILFLYAN</b> she said no. Should I try again?</p>	<p>I started seeing this boy secretly six months ago. We were both going out with other people but now he's left his girlfriend. He says I must tell my boyfriend the truth and leave him or he'll stop seeing me completely. I'm not sure I want you to leave one <b>LIONTEARSHIP</b> to go straight into another one. I know it sounds <b>FISHLES</b> but I really liked things the way they were. I just don't know what to do. Please <b>PHLE</b> me decide.</p>

**Task 65. Discussion**

**Card 1.** Your neighbours are very noisy. They play loud music all the time and often hold late night parties. You have asked them to be quieter, but they are always very rude. **Card 2.** You want to give up smoking. **Card 3.** You're fed up with the other people in your flat - they never do any housework. **Card 4.** You've got to buy a birthday present for your best friend and you've no idea what to get. **Card 5.** You live at home and you hate it. You quarrel with your parents nearly every day and you're all getting on each others' nerves. **Card 6.** You have been quarrelling with your boy/girlfriend a lot recently. **Card 7.** Your boy/girlfriend is very mean. He/she never pays for anything and didn't give you a present at Christmas or on your birthday.

**Task 66. Discussion**

1. Name 5 points you like and dislike about schooling	
<p><b>Possible answers:</b>  <i>I like schooling because I ...</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- get new knowledge;</li> <li>- associate it with my friends;</li> <li>- develop my own ideas;</li> <li>- cultivate habits of social life;</li> <li>- exchange information.</li> </ul>	<p><i>I dislike schooling because I ...</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- lessons start too early;</li> <li>- sometimes it's boring;</li> <li>- some teachers are not friendly;</li> <li>- we lack extra class activities;</li> <li>- there's too much homework.</li> </ul>
2. Name 5 items you would like to implement into your schooling	
<p><b>Possible answers:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- to introduce dancing lessons;</li> <li>- to eliminate schooling uniform;</li> <li>- to prolong a lunch break;</li> <li>- to hold more extra school sports activities;</li> <li>- to be involved into international exchange educational programs.</li> </ul>	

**Task 67. Find the odd word**

A	B	C	D
1. tea	coffee	bread	milk
2. kitchen	bathroom	bedroom	garage
3. green	big	blue	red
4. fair	red	green	grey
5. milk	meat	bread	fish
6. car	sheep	train	bicycle
7. March	Monday	Tuesday	Thursday
8. book	letter	TV	magazine
9. March	June	April	Christmas
10. sister	uncle	friend	relative
11. pen	pencil	sofa	pencil-box
12. shirt	skirt	shoes	dress

**Task 68. Cross out the odd word and explain why**

humorous	<i>serious, funny, light-hearted, comic</i>
affection	<i>hug, kiss, holding hands, anger</i>
merchant	<i>customer, florist, seller, salesperson</i>
feelings	<i>happiness, anger, homework, love</i>
companion	<i>person, friend, car, room-mate</i>
festival	<i>party, celebration, funeral, parade</i>
sweetheart	<i>wife, boyfriend, husband, enemy</i>
decorations	<i>flowers, paper hearts, pictures, dresses</i>
romance	<i>affair, relationship, fight, love</i>

**Task 69. Find the “odd man out”.** For example: I think the word “horse” is “odd man out” because the only one commonly used for sport.

horse, cat, mouse, camel, lion, cow
apple, orange, mango, banana, grape, peach
Spain, Germany, France, USA, Poland
finger, blood, heart, muscle, tongue
sock, coat, dress, underpants, scarf, jeans
quiet, angry, graceful, shy, modest, quick

**Task 70. The questions and answers in the quiz are strange, but they are logical. Find the correct answers in the boxes**

**Questions:** 1. Which part of London is Brazil? 2. Why shouldn't you put the letter M into a refrigerator? 3. Which question always has the answer “Yes”? 4. Which question can never have the answer “Yes”? 5. What is the longest word in the English language? 6. Which English word is always pronounced wrongly? 7. Which 5-letter word has 6 left when you take 2 letters away? 8. What can you always find in the middle of March? 9. What can you find once in every minute, but never in a thousand years? 10. What starts with a P ends stands with an E and has thousands of letters? 11. Why is the letter B hot? 12. Why is the letter E lazy? 13. Why is the letter T like on island?

**Answers:** 1. The letter R. 2. Because it changes ice into mice. 3. Are you asleep? 4. Post office. 5. How do you pronounce “y-e-s”? 6. Because it's in the middle of the water. 7. Sixty. 8. Because it's always in bed. 9. The letter L. 10. Because it makes oil boil. 11. The letter M and I. 12. The word that's spelt w-r-o-n-g-l-y. 13. Smiles (because there is a mile between the first letter and the last letter).

**Task 71. Write the words correctly. Be attentive, some words are written without mistakes**

1. Skoolchildrens																			
2. Postkard																			
3. Mounster																			
4. Chocolutte																			
5. November																			
6. Shopping																			
7. Computer																			
8. Grandfazer																			
9. Theatre																			
10. Laight																			
11. Sendvich																			
12. Turist																			
13. Tangerine																			
14. Orchard																			
15. Guirraffe																			
16. Twinkle																			
17. Strouberry																			
18. Oushean																			
19. Arkitector																			
20. Squirrel																			

**Task 72.** You can see a sentence which has six mistakes. Please, correct it: He has payed many maney for this shoes too years ago.

**Task 73.** Choose the right answer

1. Antarctica is a...  
*a) country                      b) continent                      c) family name*
2. A roof is a...  
*a) piece of furniture              b) nationality                      c) part of the house*
3. Milk is a.....  
*a) drink                              b) shop                              c) animal*
4. Chinese is a ...  
*a) country                              b) city                              c) nationality*
5. Secretary is a ...  
*a) job    b) first name              c) country*
6. North is a ...  
*a) day                              b) language                      c) direction*
7. December is a ...  
*a) surname                              b) month                              c) season*
8. Seventy is a ...  
*a) number                              b) place name                      c) shop*
9. Lunch is a ...  
*a) part of a day              b) school subject              c) meal*
10. Mississippi is a ...  
*a) city                              b) nationality                      c) river*

**Task 74. Choose the most suitable word or phrase underlined in each sentence**

1. The fields were flooded after the river burst its banks / edges / sides. 2. After the rain the street was full of floods / lakes / puddles. 3. During the storm, the climbers sheltered in a cave / cliff/ valley. 4. A small river / stream / torrent runs across the bottom of our garden. 5. It was difficult to swim because the waters / waves / tides were so high. 6. From the peak / summit / top of the hill you can see the sea. 7. You must carry a lot of water when you cross the desert / plain / sand. 8. In the middle of the square there is an old fountain / source/tap. 9. I think it's going to rain. It's very clouded / clouding / cloudy. 10. The church caught fire when it was struck by hurricane / lightning / thunder.

**Task 75. Complete the compound word in each sentence, using a word given in list. Use each word once only: forecast, hive, house, side, top, fountain, hole, mower, skin, trap.**

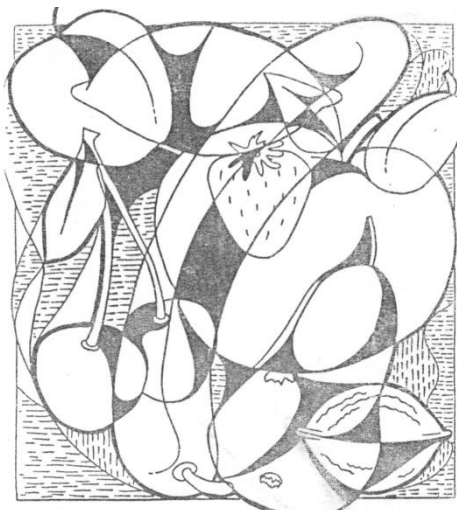
1. There were so many mice we had to buy a mouse \_\_\_\_\_. 2. Paula was cutting the grass with an electric lawn \_\_\_\_\_. 3. There's a drinking \_\_\_\_\_ on the other side of the park. 4. What's the weather \_\_\_\_\_ for tomorrow? 5. The hill \_\_\_\_\_ was covered in beautiful wild flowers. 6. You can see the mountain \_\_\_\_\_ among the clouds in the distance. 7. At the end of the field was a large stone farm \_\_\_\_\_. 8. We collect honey from our own bee \_\_\_\_\_. 9. There's a rabbit \_\_\_\_\_ in the corner of this field. 10. Martin was wearing imitation snake \_\_\_\_\_ boots.

**Task 76. Choose the rhyme**

*a. Always mean a good fine day. b. Then close your windows and shut your doors. c. Means rain and snow are coming soon. d. Fine before eleven.*

1. A ring around the sun or moon \_\_\_\_\_. 2. Rain before seven \_\_\_\_\_. 3. Evening red and morning grey \_\_\_\_\_. 4. When the forest murmurs and the mountain roars \_\_\_\_\_.

**Task 77. Name the fruits drawn in the picture. Paint out them. Name the colours**





**Task 78. Choose the rhyme: you, give, sweet, heart, two, blue, leaves, red**

Here are two Valentine poems:

Roses are .....	My ..... is like a cabbage
Violets are .....	Divided into .....
Sugar is .....	The ..... I give to others,
And so are .....	But the heart I ..... to you.

**Task 79. Find carrot's family.** A carrot is not an animal! Put it in the empty box. Name this box. Can you find carrot's brothers and sisters? They are in the other boxes!

<u>Animal</u>	<u>Sport</u>	<u>Jobs</u>	<u>Travel</u>
cow	sailing	doctor	car
horse	skiing	cook	bus
dog	hiking	typist	lorry
goose	fencing	driver	cabbage
carrot	cycling	pilot	taxi
sheep	diving	farmer	cycle
pig	fishing	lettuce	boat
hen	tomato	baker	plane
<u>Music</u>	<u>Numbers</u>	<u>Actions</u>	_____
guitar	nine	bring	_____
drums	four	carry	_____
onion	twenty	drink	_____
piano	fifteen	hit	_____
violin	three	listen	carrot
harp	ten	potato	_____
flute	eleven	open	_____
saxophone	peas	run	_____

**Task 80. Find the silent letters. For example - Have you ever seen a *ghost*?**

1. Brighton is full of *foreign* students. 2. What do you do at *Christmas*? 3. We are going on holidays to one of the Greek *Islands*. 4. My *muscles* are killing me after playing football yesterday. 5. I don't *know* how she did it. 6. They read in the newspaper about a new *bomb*. 7. I can't stand Anne; she never *listens* to anything you say. 8. We'll pop round in an *hour* if you are not doing anything. 9. I'd like a cheese *sandwich*, please. 10. Then guests will be offered some caviar and broiled *salmon*. 11. Don't forget to add *almond* to the tart. 12. The cashier gave me a *receipt* and I came up to the shop assistant. 13. There are many *high* trees in our park. 14. She got on her hands and *knees* and scrubbed the dirt off with a scrubbing brush.

**Task 81. Choose the suitable answer for every question**

1) Thanks very much.	a) Yes, help yourself.
2) Anything else?	b) Never mind, don't worry.
3) Can I help you?	c) About twenty minutes.
4) I'm sorry I'm late.	d) I'm being served, thanks.

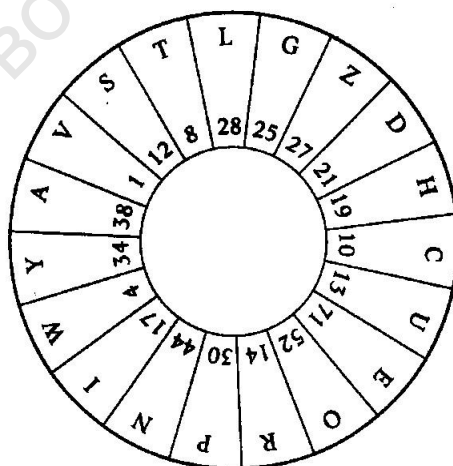
## Practical Grammar of the English Language

5) What's the matter?	e) <i>No, go ahead.</i>
6) How long does it take?	f) <i>Yes. Quarter to seven.</i>
7) Have a nice weekend.	g) <i>Sorry, I don't smoke.</i>
8) Could I leave a message?	h) <i>Not at all.</i>
9) Have you got a light?	i) <i>Yes, you too.</i>
10) Could I borrow your pen?	j) <i>No, that's all, thanks.</i>
11) Have you got the time?	k) <i>Nothing. Why?</i>
12) Do you mind if I open the window?	l) <i>Yes, of course, I'll just get a pen.</i>

**Task 82. Match the beginnings of the sentences in list A with their endings in list B**

A	B
1) Dreams are caused ...	a) <i>that dreams could foretell the future.</i>
2) Dreams express our ...	b) <i>since ancient times.</i>
3) Dreams can tell you if ...	c) <i>make up about 25% of the nights sleep.</i>
4) Dreams have aroused our curiosity ...	d) <i>by the food you eat.</i>
5) Four thousand years ago people believed ...	e) <i>mean quite a lot.</i>
6) An ordinary dream can ...	f) <i>you're going to be ill.</i>
7) Scientific work on dreams has ...	g) <i>we do not remember our dreams.</i>
8) It has been discovered that we all dream, even if ...	h) <i>secret desires.</i>
9) A person has four or five periods of ...	i) <i>only a short history.</i>
10) Dreams occur roughly every 90 minutes and ...	j) <i>dream sleep during the night.</i>

**Task 83. Can you do this puzzle?** What are these people's hobbies? Work out the maths and the right letters on the table. Can you spell the words?



1. She is interested in \_\_\_\_ . Add 7 to these numbers: **18, 64, 45, 18, 7, 31, 23, 12, 27.**
2. My sister collects \_\_\_\_ . Divide these numbers by 2: **42, 104, 56, 56, 24.**
3. Her hobby is \_\_\_\_ . Subtract **11** from these numbers: **36, 49, 25, 32, 82, 55, 28, 55, 36.**
4. Does he like playing \_\_\_\_ ? Divide these numbers by 3: **24, 213, 132, 132, 51, 36.**  
No, he likes \_\_\_\_ . Subtract **5** from these numbers: **9, 43, 13, 15, 24, 22, 49, 30.**
5. My friend's hobby is solving \_\_\_\_ . Add **3** to these numbers: **27, 10, 24, 24, 25, 68, 9.**

**Task 84. Explain the meanings of the following Nouns: What's the word for ...**

1	money paid to kidnappers to make them release a prisoner?	a)	<i>remedy</i>
2	a person escaping from danger and seeking shelter?	b)	<i>scalp</i>
3	a cure for a disease?	c)	<i>refugee</i>
4	a noisy and violent disturbance by a crowd?	d)	<i>rucksack</i>
5	a safe place for people, or for birds and animals?	e)	<i>shin</i>
6	a bag, often on a frame, used for carrying things on your back?	f)	<i>sanctuary</i>
7	the skin on your head?	g)	<i>ransom</i>
8	the front of the leg between the knee and the ankle?	h)	<i>riot</i>

**Task 85. Explain the meanings of the following Verbs: Which verb means ...**

1	to shout angrily and wildly as if mad?	a)	<i>to scamper</i>
2	to burn skin and flesh by contact with hot liquid or vapour?	b)	<i>to rave</i>
3	to run quickly with short steps?	c)	<i>to trudge</i>
4	to walk very unsteadily?	d)	<i>to recite</i>
5	to shine strongly and brilliantly?	e)	<i>to scald</i>
6	to repeat aloud, usually from memory?	f)	<i>to blaze</i>
7	to shine brightly in small flashes, for example, a diamond?	g)	<i>to glitter</i>
8	to walk slowly and with effort?	h)	<i>to stagger</i>

**Task 86. Can you decode the telephone number?**

1. The first and the fourth numbers are equal. 2. The second number is one third of the eighth number. 3. The third number is the sum of the fifth, the sixth and the seventh numbers. 4. The fourth number is  $4 + 1 + 2 - 3 - 4$ . 5. The fifth is greater by one than the fourth number. 6. The sixth number is three. 7. The seventh number is equal to the fifth number. 8. The eighth number is three times as much as the sixth number. 9. The ninth number is smaller by three than the eighth number. 10. The tenth number is greater by two than the second number.

**Task 87. Please make up the half-cutted words.** The teacher has prepared the words written on the cards. Then these cards are cutted on two parts. All parts are mixed on the table. Pupils make up the half-cutted words. For example: *cli-; beau-; -mate; -tiful; - climate; beautiful*

<i>go-</i>	<i>-ver</i>
<i>sil-</i>	<i>-son</i>
<i>sea-</i>	<i>-rbance</i>
<i>plea-</i>	<i>-tives</i>
<i>mo-</i>	<i>-ver</i>
<i>co-</i>	<i>-gry</i>
<i>won-</i>	<i>-tle</i>
<i>an-</i>	<i>-ovel</i>
<i>diam-</i>	<i>-ern</i>
<i>distu-</i>	<i>-derful</i>
<i>rela-</i>	<i>-akfast</i>
<i>lit-</i>	<i>-ther</i>
<i>n-</i>	<i>-ond</i>
<i>mod-</i>	<i>-sure</i>
<i>bre-</i>	<i>-od</i>

**Task 88. Hidden Countries.** In each of the sentences below, the names of two countries are hidden. For example, the sentence: “*Interpol and the FBI track down hidden marksmen*” conceals the names **POLAND** and **DENMARK**. Can you find all hidden countries?

1. *Vladimir and Olga are Soviet names.* 2. *Have you ever heard an animal talk in dialect?* 3. *Extra tuition will help an amateur to improve his painting.* 4. *In the United Nations we denounce the wholesale ban on atomic weapons.* 5. *The king and queen eat breakfast and lunch in a fine palace.* 6. *If an iron pipe rusts you just have to shrug and accept it.*

**Task 89. Odd word out**

Colours	Relatives	Animals	Furniture
yellow	father	pig	bed
dark	boy	horse	chair
green	son	cow	settee
little	sister	beef	desk
pink	son-in-law	dog	window
grey	parents	cat	sofa
red	daughter	pig	wardrobe
violet	grandmother	rat	shelf
black	step-mother	mouse	arm-chair
Vegetables	Jobs	Clothes	Materials
cabbage	waiter	jacket	steel
potatoes	doctor	feet	wool
pears	teacher	socks	plastic
peas	actor	skirt	strong
beans	husband	shirt	wood
carrots	clerk	jeans	metal
tomatoes	lawyer	coat	leather
onion	accountant	hat	silk
lettuce	cashier	dress	paper

**Task 90. Number Game.** Move on with the help of the playing cube.

Do the tasks and move to Finish!

<b>START</b>	<b>21</b> Work out $54 + 9 = ?$ $100 - 24 = ?$	<b>22</b> Spell the numbers <i>2, 15, 80, 64, 185</i>
<b>1</b>	<b>20</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>2</b> Count from <i>2 to 7</i>	<b>19</b> Fill in the letters <i>f**rty, t*enty, si*</i>	<b>24</b> What is between <i>sixty-seven</i> and <i>sixty-nine</i> ?
<b>3</b> Work out $8 + 4 = ?$ $3 + 7 = ?$	<b>18</b> Write in words <i>68, 38, 62, 50, 27</i>	<b>25</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>17</b> What is between <i>fifty-two</i> and <i>fifty-four</i> ?	<b>26</b> Name every third number from <i>10</i>
<b>5</b> Fill in the letters <i>s*ven, el*ven, th**teen</i>	<b>16</b>	<b>27</b> Multiply by <i>10</i> : <i>3, 7, 5, 8, 10, 34, 56, 106</i>
<b>6</b> What is between <i>seventeen</i> and <i>nineteen</i> ?	<b>15</b> Count backward from <i>41 to 35</i>	<b>28</b> Write in words <i>26, 34, 71, 1167, 13, 93</i>
<b>7</b>	<b>14</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>8</b> Work out $6 \times 4 = ?$ $15 - 6 = ?$	<b>13</b> Divide by <i>4</i> : <i>4, 64, 28, 36</i>	<b>30</b> Count backward from <i>83 to 73</i>
<b>9</b> Write in words <i>28, 37, 15, 48, 51</i>	<b>12</b>	<b>FINISH</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>11</b> Count from <i>18 to 27</i>	

**Task 91. Using *all*, say what the following groups of words have in common**

1.	oranges, apples, pears, lemons	eg. 1. They are all fruit.	or	eg. 1. All of them are fruit.
2.	Prince, Michael Jackson, Madonna, Elton John			
3.	football, basketball, tennis, golf			
4.	London, Paris, Athens, Kyiv			
5.	Italy, Germany, Spain, Ukraine			
6.	green, red, brown, grey, blue			
7.	January, February, December			
8.	horses, cows, dogs, cats			
9.	lions, tigers, monkeys, crocodiles, elephants			
10.	BMW, Golf, Mercedes			
11.	baker's, butcher's, grocer's			

**Task 92. Find the odd word**

Clothes	Furniture	Food	Jobs
cardigan	stool	roll	printer
docker	chest	pie	decorator
cap	wardrobe	spinach	spanner
scarf	desk	spade	miner
vest	boots	fish	surgeon

**Task 93. ABC TEST**

<p><b>1. The British Isles lie in the ... of Europe.</b> a) northeast b) southwest c) northwest</p>	<p><b>6. Great Britain is ...</b> a) a presidential republic b) a large colony c) a parliamentary monarchy</p>
<p><b>2. Great Britain consists of ...</b> a) England, Ireland and Wales b) England, Scotland and Wales c) England, Britain and Wales</p>	<p><b>7. English wool is ...</b> a) exported to many countries b) imported to Great Britain c) exported only to France</p>
<p><b>3. England is situated in the ... part of Great Britain.</b> a) southern b) western and central c) central and southern</p>	<p><b>8. The heart of the City is ...</b> a) Piccadilly Circus b) the Stock Exchange c) the British Museum</p>
<p><b>4. English Channel is ...</b> a) in the east of Great Britain b) between Europe and Great Britain c) in the west of the island</p>	<p><b>9. The Queen's Residence is ...</b> a) Buckingham Palace b) the Treasury c) Westminster Palace</p>
<p><b>5. The surface of Scotland is ...</b> a) flat b) mountainous c) not mountainous</p>	<p><b>10. Many writers are buried in ...</b> a) the Tower of London b) Buckingham Palace c) Westminster Abbey</p>



**Task 94. Make up as many words as you can from the word: FAIRYTALES**  
- Examples of words: *fairy; tale; etc.*

**Task 95. Links.** Find the link between the first 2 words and then find a similar link to complete the sentence. *For example:*

1. Pound is to pence as dollar is to:  
a) *note*      b) *coin*      c) *gram*      d) *cent*
2. Elephant is to hide as bird is to:  
a) *feather*    b) *wing*    c) *beak*      d) *fur*
3. Petrol is to tank as wine is to:  
a) *label*      b) *grape*    c) *cork*      d) *barrel*
4. Man is to foot as dog is to:  
a) *collar*    b) *nail*      c) *paw*      d) *tail*
5. Heaven is to holy as hell is to:  
a) *devil*      b) *evil*      c) *murder*    d) *violence*
6. Directory is to phone number as dictionary is to:  
a) *book*      b) *translation*    c) *word*      d) *index*
7. Video is to video-cassette as computer is to:  
a) *tape*      b) *program*    c) *screen*    d) *calculation*
8. Saucer is to crockery as paper is to:  
a) *stationery*    b) *envelope*    c) *office*    d) *file*
9. Lung is to breathe as throat is to:  
a) *taste*      b) *tongue*    c) *swallow*    d) *cough*
10. Bread is to baker as clothes are to:  
a) *wardrobe*    b) *uniform*    c) *dry cleaner*    d) *tailor*

**Task 96. A Picnic in the Country.** Look at the picture. Read the statements and determine what statement is true and what is false?

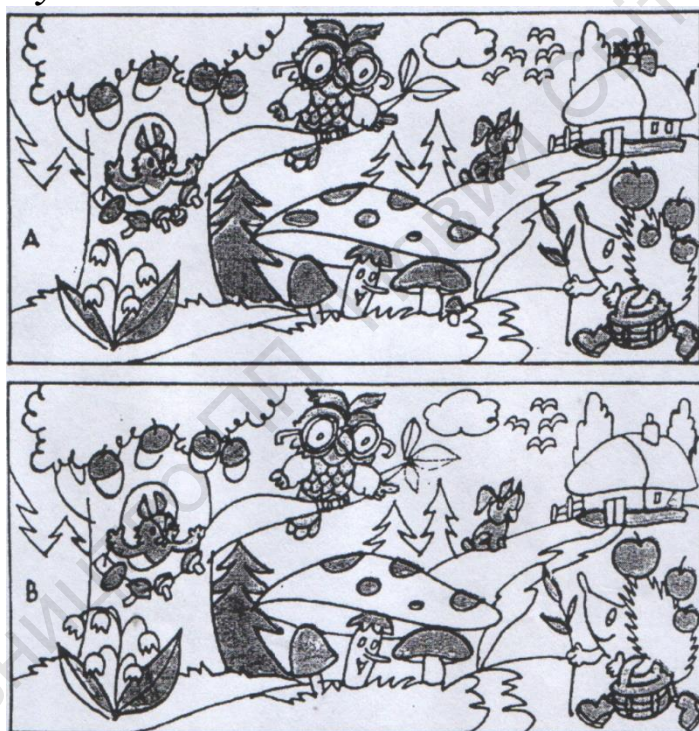




Practical Grammar of the English Language

	Statement	True	False		Statement	True	False
1	Someone is reading.			11	Someone is crying.		
2	Someone is swimming.			12	Someone is shaving.		
3	Someone is driving.			13	Someone is hurrying.		
4	Someone is climbing.			14	Someone is laughing.		
5	Someone is drinking.			15	Someone is hiding.		
6	Someone is riding.			16	Someone is standing.		
7	Someone is resting.			17	Someone is leaving.		
8	Someone is fighting.			18	Someone is smoothing.		
9	Someone is jumping.			19	Someone is watching.		
1	Someone is sewing.			20	Someone is running.		

**Task 97. Differences.** Spot the differences between these two pictures. Write them down. For example: *In the picture A there are four mushrooms, but in the picture B there are only three ones.*



**Task 98. Adding**

1. Josh has three piles of bricks. There are 20 bricks in one pile, 18 bricks in the second pile, and 10 bricks in the third pile. How many bricks does Josh have altogether? 2. What is the total of 13, 17, and 20? 3. Joanne is given some money at Christmas. She is given £5.00 by Uncle Eddie, £2.50 by Aunt Jo, and £3.50 by her sister. How much is she given in total? 4. A child receives 32 birthday cards and 77 Christmas cards. How many cards has she received? 5. How much do these coins add up to: 20p, 50p, 10p, and 5p? 6. Add together 50p, 20p, and 50p. 7. What is the sum of 23, 24, and 25? 8. Jane has three piggy banks. One contains £1.20, the second contains £0.80, and the third contains £3.00. How much does Jane have altogether? 9. How much is 50p plus 70p plus 80p? 10. One bag contains 24 grapes, another bag contains 34 grapes, and the third bag contains 30 grapes. What is the total number of

grapes? 11. Bill collects comics. He has 120 but is given 60 more by a friend. How many does Bill have now? 12. Gill buys three bars of chocolate. One costs 30p, another costs 28p, the third costs 32p. What is the total cost of the chocolate? 13. What is the total of 60, 70, and 80? 14. Three containers of sand are delivered to a building site. They weigh 70kg, 90kg, and 100kg. How much do they weigh altogether? 15. Add together 12 cm, 24 cm, and 36 cm. 16. A teacher gives out 33 house points on Monday, 25 on Tuesday, and 35 on Wednesday. How many house points have been given out altogether?

**Task 99. Family Tree.** Look at the family tree and complete the sentences, use a word from the list on the right and make up own one

<b>Agnes - Mark</b> (have a son and a daughter)					
<b>Katy – Jack</b> (have two daughters)			<b>Jane – Robert</b> (have a son and a daughter)		
<b>Mary - Ted</b>		<b>Kelly - John</b>		<b>Loren - Ben</b>	<b>Ann</b>
<b>Tom</b>	<b>Charles</b>	<b>Sarah</b>	<b>Donna</b>	<b>Mike</b>	

1. Ben and Loren are Mike's _____	<i>great grandmother</i>
2. Ted is Charles's _____	<i>nephew</i>
3. Jane is Ann's _____	<i>children</i>
4. Katy and Jack are Tom's _____	<i>sister-in-law</i>
5. Kelly is John's _____	<i>son</i>
6. Jane and Jack are Mark's _____	<i>wife</i>
7. Tom is Mary's _____	<i>cousin</i>
8. Mary is Jack's _____	<i>father</i>
9. John is Mary's _____	<i>brother</i>
10. Charles is John's _____	<i>new-born child</i>
11. Ben is Loren's _____	<i>parents</i>
12. Robert is Mike's _____	<i>aunt</i>
13. Sarah is Mary's _____	<i>grandmother</i>
14. John is Jack's _____	<i>husband</i>
15. Mike is _____	<i>great grandson</i>
16. Sarah and Donna are Jack's _____	<i>son-in-law</i>
17. Loren is Ann's _____	<i>grandchildren</i>
18. Agnes is John's _____	<i>brother-in-law</i>
19. Mary is Kelly's _____	<i>grandparents</i>
20. Agnes is Sarah's _____	<i>daughter-in-law</i>
21. Jack is Jane's _____	<i>daughter</i>
22. Kelly is Ann's _____	<i>great grandfather</i>
23. Mark is Mike's _____	<i>mother</i>
24. Loren is Robert's _____	<i>niece</i>
25. Jack is Ted's _____	<i>grandfather</i>
26. Agnes is Katy's _____	<i>mother-in-law</i>
27. Jane is Mary's _____	<i>great granddaughter</i>
28. Donna is Mark's _____	<i>sister</i>
29. Charles is Agnes's _____	<i>uncle</i>
30. Ann is Mark's _____	<i>father-in-law</i>
31. Jack is Loren's _____	<i>granddaughter</i>

**Task 100. Define the language of the country:** Bulgarian, French, English, Armenian, Greek, Ukrainian, English, Mandarin, Hebrew, English, German, Chinese, German, English, French, Portuguese

<i>Country</i>	<i>Language</i>
<i>Ukraine</i>	
<i>Bulgaria</i>	
<i>England</i>	
<i>Israel</i>	
<i>Austria</i>	
<i>Armenia</i>	
<i>Germany</i>	
<i>France</i>	
<i>USA</i>	
<i>Brazil</i>	
<i>Australia</i>	
<i>Greece</i>	
<i>China</i>	
<i>Canada</i>	

**Task 101. Make up two stories “Last Time on Ice” and “Playing Golf”**

- a) A very stout woman was very fond of skating.
- b) A sportsman was playing over a golf course, and playing very badly.
- c) A young man came skating up to her and helped her to rise.
- d) And as she was very heavy and stout she was unable to get up.
- e) Once she went down to a lake to spend a few hours on the ice.
- f) “Dear, dear!” he remarked at last,
- g) She sat on the ice looking sad.
- h) Very soon she had a bad fall.
- i) “There can’t be worse players than myself!”
- j) “Is it your first time on the ice?” he asked.
- k) “It is not my first but it will be my last, thank you”.
- l) “Maybe there are worse players”, said the man who watched him play,
- m) “No”, she answered,
- n) “but they don’t play”.

**Task 102. Computer Error. Find the mistake**

1. Shapp I capp a doctor? 2. Shall I bpen the dbbr fbr ybu? 3. Cet’s go for a wack.  
4. I’ll cud dhe domadoes – you wash dhe ledduce. 5. Shyll we tyke y tyxi? 6. Why don’t wy go to thu cinuma this uvuning? 7. Wfere sfall I put tfis cfair? 8. Kho shall ke invite to the kedding?

**Task 103. Find the name of a color hidden in each sentence. The first one has been done as a sample:** *yellow, purple, gray, black, pink, white, orange, rose, violet, scarlet, green*

1. Some parts of the face are the eye, **eyebrow**, **nose**, cheek, and mouth. 2. I'm not really dumb; lack of sleep made me forget the answers. 3. If I tell you what she said, will you agree never to tell anyone? 4. In the secret box we found a pencil, a pin, keys, stamps, and a few coins. 5. Are three zeros enough to write the number one thousand? 6. The wheelbarrow hit eleven rocks as it rolled down the hill. 7. When the nurse gives you the injection, just yell "Ow" if it hurts. 8. Elsa and Otto ran gently down the path to the river. 9. Before you arrive at Kuala Lumpur, please fill out the customs form. 10. I play nearly all the stringed instruments: violin, cello, bass viol, etc. 11. When I opened the window, shining rays of sunlight flooded the room. 12. We'll go in Jims car, let's leave at six o'clock

**Task 104. Where in the world is ... ? Each sentence below contains the name of a capital city. Can you identify each city and country? Example: *Here is the draft of your letter. If you mark it "ok" your secretary will type it. – Tokyo – Japan***

1. Those who were against the war saw to it that their voices were heard. 2. To make underground water potable, scientists first used ammonia, then sand later on. 3. Can karate movies on television really make children more aggressive? 4. No slot machine is needed here. 5. The idiom "on a par" is used to mean "equal". 6. While visiting Africa, I rode on buses and trains instead of driving a car there. 7. Housekeepers usually prefer washing to not doing anything at all. 8. If you have an infection in your colon, don't eat fats or any other rich food.

**Task 105. Read the text and write the names of the different people in the appropriate box below, depending on how the writer feels about them. Use the words and expressions in italics to help you. One has been done as an example**

**Friends and Relations**

I come from a fairly close-knit family, although we don't always get on too well. I am very close to my grandmother, Emma, especially as we have a lot in common, but I've recently fallen out with my grandfather, John. Their son is my father, Bob. He's quite old-fashioned, and we don't always see eye to eye I know I should look up to him as a role model, but the fact is I don't respect him very much. On the other hand, I worship my mother, Maureen; she's kind, caring and very tolerant of others. I have one younger sister, Sally, who I'm quite fond of, and I admire my brother-in-law, Andrew, who is a very talented painter. I have a precocious nephew, Tony, who I'm a bit fed up with, and a lovely little niece, Claudia, whom I adore. My father has a sister - my aunt Sue. I respect her, as she's had to put up with a lot of hardship in life, especially being married to my uncle Stanley, who treats her terribly. I must confess I loathe him. I also despise his son, my cousin Stuart, who takes after his father. My older cousin Claire, on the other hand, I idolise.

<i>The writer feels positive about these people</i>	<i>The writer feels negative about these people</i>
Emma (his grandmother)	

**Vocabulary**

**adore** [ə'dɔ:] *обожнювати; поклоняться; схилятися*

**close-knit** зв'язаний тісними узами, згуртований; логічний, послідовний

**confess** [kən'fes] 1) визнавати; зізнаватися 2) сповідати; сповідатися

**despise** [dis'praɪz] нехтувати

**fairly** ['feəli] 1) чесно; справедливо, неупереджено 2) досить; певною мірою; пристойно; зовсім, цілком, явно; досить 3) сприятливо; належним, відповідним чином 4) ясно, чітко, розбірливо

**fall out** 1) випадати 2) виходити зі строю, розходитися 3) сваритися 4) виявлятися; траплятися

**fed up** ситий до не схочу

**loathe** [ləʊð] 1) відчувати відразу, огиду 2) не любити: ненавидіти, не терпіти

**have a lot in common** мати багато спільного

**precocious** [pri'kəʊʃəs] 1) не за віком розвинений, рано розвинений; передчасний 2) скоростиглий, ранній

**put up** терпіти, миритися; примиритися

**see eye to eye** сходиться в поглядах

**treat smb** поводитись з кимось

**worship** ['wɔ:ʃɪp] 1) поклонятися, схилитися; шанувати 2) обожнювати, боготворити

**Task 106. Complete the sentences on the left with an appropriate word or expressions on the right. There are an example: Laurence and I get on really well and do absolutely everything together. He is ... my best friend**

1. I know Bob, but not very well. He is ...	... my ex-girlfriend
2. Jenny and I work together in the same office. She is ...	... my fiancée
3. Jane and I announced our engagement last week and plan to get married in the summer. She is ...	... my workmate
4. Clare and I used to go out together. She is ...	... my flatmate
5. Susie and I have been going out together now for a few months. She is..	... just good friends
6. Jordi attends the same English lessons as me. He is	... my best friend
7. Sarah works alongside me on the production line in a factory. She is ...	... my steady girlfriend
8. John and I share an apartment in the city. He is ...	... a good friend
9. I often go out with Ben to the cinema or the pub. He is ...	... my classmate
10. Andy and I are going out together, but we haven't told anybody yet. In fact, if anyone asks, we say that we are ...	... an acquaintance
	... my colleague



Task 107. What is an odd man out in each group? Name it and explain why



Task 108. Find the differences Example: 1) In the second picture one can see a *cep* on the hill but in the first picture there is no *cep*.





Task 109. What is an odd man out in each group?



Task 110. What is an odd man out in each group?



## ANSWER KEY

### Task 2.

1) – b; 2) – c; 3) – e; 4) – g; 5) – a; 6) – i; 7) – j; 8) – f; 9) – d; 10) – h.

### Task 4.

1. *Hanna Horenko*; 2. *Marie Franois Arouet*; 3. *Mary Ann Evans*; 4. *Aurora Dupin*; 5. *Mykola Korneichuk*; 6. *Charles Lutwidge Dodgson*; 7. *Oleksii Peshkov*; 8. *Samuel Clemens*; 9. *William Sydney Porter*; 10. *Annie Marie Beyle*.

### Task 5.

“Alice in Wonderland” - *Lewis Carroll*; “The Adventures of Tom Sawyer and Huckleberry Finn” - *Mark Twain*; “The Jungle Book” - *Rudyard Kipling*; “Winnie-the-Pooh” - *A. A. Milne*; “Marry Poppins” - *Pamela Travers*; “Harry Potter and the Sorcerer’s Stone” - *J. K. Rowling*; “Treasure Island” - *Robert L. Stevenson*

### Task 6.

Mickey Mouse is Walt Disney’s character. Tom Sawyer is Mark Twain’s character. Mary Poppins is Pamela Travers’ character. Chip and Dale are Walt Disney’s characters. Chippollino is Jannie Rodari’s character.

### Task 7.

a) a horror story; b) a biography; c) a detective story; d) an adventure story.

### Task 8.

Noun	Pronoun	Verb	Adjective	Adverb
<i>people</i>	<i>he</i>	<i>was</i>	<i>Spanish</i>	<i>quickly</i>
<i>husband</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>lived</i>	<i>real</i>	<i>sadly</i>
<i>airport</i>	<i>they</i>	<i>met</i>	<i>glad</i>	<i>brightly</i>
<i>friends</i>	<i>them</i>	<i>to stay</i>	<i>beautiful</i>	<i>really</i>
<i>morning</i>	<i>him</i>	<i>speaks</i>	<i>nice</i>	<i>early</i>
<i>postman</i>	<i>this</i>	<i>came up</i>	<i>young</i>	
<i>door</i>	<i>that</i>	<i>staying</i>	<i>good</i>	
<i>day</i>	<i>another</i>	<i>said</i>	<i>big</i>	
<i>moment</i>	<i>you</i>	<i>stopped</i>		
<i>examination</i>	<i>himself</i>			
<i>party</i>				

### Task 9.

I have six honest serving men. They taught me all I knew. Their names are *what* and *why* and *when*. And *how* and *where* and *who*.

### Task 10.

1. A *blue-eyed* girl; 2. An *old-fashioned* dress; 3. A *home-made* cake; 4. A *brown-haired* boy; 5. A *dark-eyed* man.

**Task 11.**

*glasses, photos, foxes, cities, heroes, flies, bridges, geese, knives, roofs, smiles, oxen, daughters-in-law, caps, brushes, mice, flowers, pins, bees, forget-me-nots.*

**Task 12.**

*bed, family, tomato, wolf, deer, mean, chief, tooth, mother-in-law, datum, crisis, merry-go-round, enemy, swine, wharf.*

**Task 13.**

1. *dogs.* 2. *men, women.* 3. *matches.* 4. *children.* 5. *mini-buses.* 6. *sisters, brothers.* 7. *maps, shelves.* 8. *forks, knives*

**Task 14.**

*Чим більше ми вивчаємо, тим більше ми знаємо.*

*Чим більше ми знаємо, тим більше ми забуваємо.*

*Чим більше ми забуваємо, тим менше ми знаємо.*

*Чим менше ми забуваємо, тим більше ми знаємо.*

*Навіщо тоді вчитися?*

*Мудра стара сова жила на дубі.*

*Чим більше вона бачила, тим менше розмовляла;*

*Чим менше вона розмовляла, тим більше чула;*

*То чому ми всі не можемо бути схожими на того мудрого птаха?*

**Task 15.**

1. *c).* 2. *a).* 3. *c)* 4. *b)* 5. *c).*

**Task 16.**

1. *Не може бути, щоб він переклав текст без допомоги словника.* 2. *Не може бути, щоб вона зробила таку річ.* 3. *Не може бути, щоб вони так заізнислися.* 4. *Не може бути, щоб він це сказав.* 5. *Він міг би зробити це без твоєї допомоги.* 6. *Брауни могли б запросити нас на вечірку.* 7. *Єва могла би давно їм про це розказати.* 8. *Ви могли б опублікувати цю статтю в нашому журналі.* 9. *Це питання можливо буде вирішено, але я не впевнений.* 10. *Ця делегація можливо приїде, але ми не маємо точної інформації.* 11. *Вони можливо придбали там необхідні товари.* 12. *Вона мали запустити космічний корабель на орбіту.* 13. *Це забере в нього часу закінчити роботу.* 14. *Всі люди залишаються в конференц-залі; сесія має закінчитися.* 15. *Тобі слід було давно допомогти своєму другу.* 16. *Їм слід було сказати це тобі минулого тижня.* 17. *Пауль, можливо, візьме участь у змаганнях з плавання, але я не знаю точно.* 18. *Що зараз цікавого в клубі? – Можливо, показують кіно.* 19. *Де члени делегації? – Можливо, вони відвідують визначні місця.*

**Task 17.**

1. *Пляшка впала зі столу.* 2. *Він виштовхнув дитину з води.* 3. *Вони*

заптовхнули його в машину. 4. Лист паперу випав з книги. 5. Він підтримав його за руку. 6. Викинь це каміння. 7. Тобі не слід виходити, дуже сильний вітер. 8. Він вибіг з дому. 9. Вона дістала чашки з коробки.

**Task 18.**

1. *smoking* 2. *leaving* 3. *Walking* 4. *seeing* 5. *going*. 6. *working* 7. *talking?*

**Task 19.**

1. *a greedy person*; 2. *painstaking, sorry*; 3. *timid, uncomfortable, nervous, dull, reserved, quiet*; 4. *a messy person*; 5. *punctual, reliable, well-organized*; 6. *envious*; 7. *trustworthy, reliable*; 8. *absent-minded*; 9. *reliable, trustworthy*; 10. *angry, nervous, offensive*.

**Task 20.**

1. *Yes, but Egypt is hotter*. 2. *Yes, but diamonds are more expensive*. 3. *Yes, but dolphins are more intelligent*. 4. *Yes, but Chinese is more difficult*. 5. *Yes, but hiking is longer*. 6. *Yes, but New York is bigger*. 7. *Yes, but fantastic tales are more interesting*. 8. *Yes, but learning of Mathematics is more useful*. 9. *Yes, but a sofa is more comfortable*. 10. *Yes, but shark's teeth are sharper*.

**Task 21.**

1. *My father goes to his plant by train. It takes two hours*. 2. *Her sister goes to school by bicycle. It takes fifty-two minutes*. 3. *Our parents go to their house in the village by car and train. It takes six hours and thirty-four minutes*. 4. *They go to the theatre by taxi. It takes fourteen minutes*. 5. *I go to my college by motorbike. It takes twenty-eight minutes*. 6. *My brother goes to his university by car. It takes thirty-three minutes*.

**Task 22.**

1. *drank* 2. *I drew* 3. *ate* 4. *broke* 5. *wore* 6. *hid* 7. *hit* 8. *forgot* 9. *kept* 10. *threw* 11. *put* 12. *swore* 13. *spent* 14. *hurt* 15. *sold* 16. *stole* 17. *went* 18. *told ...*

**Task 25.**

A. *cold* B. *kettle*. C. *teaspoon of tea*. D. *hot* E. *cup*

**Task 26.**

*омлет - eggs, milk, salt, oil; салат „Олів'є” - sausage, mayonnaise, peas, carrots, onions, cucumbers, salt, potatoes, eggs; борщ - red beets, carrots, onions, meat, fresh cabbage, tomatoes, salt, pepper, garlic, oil; плов - meat, rice, carrots, onions, salt, pepper, oil; млинці - meal, eggs, sugar, milk, salt.*

**Task 28.**

1. *library*; 2. *university*; 3. *tents*; 4. *raincoat*; 5. *gymnasium*.

**Task 29.**

*a cow, a frog, a bird, a mouse, a spider, a horse, a dog, a cat, a tiger, a rabbit, a lion, a parrot, a fish, a tortoise, a snake, a shark, an eagle, a crab, a ram, a pig, a hen, a turkey, a wolf, a fox, an elephant, a sheep, a cock.*

**Task 30. Complete each sentence**

a) - 5); b) - 8); c) - 3); d) - 10); e) - 1); f) - 6); g) - 9); h) - 2); i) - 7); j) - 4)

**Task 31.**

1. *a rabbit*; 2. *a moth*; 3. *a bee*; 4. *a giraffe*; 5. *a shark*; 6. *a worm*; 7. *a leopard*; 8. *a whale*; 9. *a camel*; 10. *a pig*; 11. *a dolphin*; 12. *a fly*

**Task 32.**

1. That will **be a** real help. 2. She **came late** every day. 3. He came to America **today**. 4. Eric **owes** me ten cents. 5. We **made errors** in each one. 6. **Do good** workers succeed? 7. **If I shout**, he'll hear me. 8. **If Roger** comes, we'll begin. 9. We will **go at** two o'clock. 10. Is it the **sixth or seventh**? 11. In April **I only** came once. 12. I'll sing; you **hum on key**. 13. I made a Xerox **copy** of it. 14. She clothes **naked** babies. 15. At last, **I, Gerald**, had won. 16. Your comb **is on** the table. 17. We're **sending only** one book. 18. **He regrets** having said that. 19. **If Al concentrates**, he'll win. 20. When I withdrew, **Al rushed** in. 21. He called Mikko **a lazy** boy. 22. It's **only a kilometre** away.

**Task 33.**

**A.** *Every cloud has a silver lining.* **B.** *One good turn deserves another.* **C.** *Actions speak louder than words.* **D.** *First think, and then speak.* **E.** *What is done cannot be undone.*

**Task 34.**

*macaroni, machine, magic, mail, man, mane, map, mark, market, mask, master, mat, matter, may, meal, meat, medal, mellow, melon, member, men, message, metal, mice, milk, mistake, mitten, mix, money, monkey, mosque, mot, mouse, mouth, music, mystery, myth*

**Task 35.**

*ugly; old; poor; unlucky; big; unpleasant; dirty; short; thin; wicked*

**Task 36.**

1. - c); 2. - c); 3. - c); 4. - c); 5. - a); 6. - b); 7. - a); 8. - b); 9. - c); 10. - a); 11. - c); 12. - a)

**Task 37.**

1) *hostile*; 2) *sweet-natured*; 3) *cowardly*; 4) *slow*; 5) *nervous*; 6) *careless*; 7) *indifferent*; 8) *dull*; 9) *careless*; 10) *uncooperative*; 11) *non-competitive*; 12) *domineering*; 13) *stubborn*; 14) *humorous, jolly*; 15) *passive*; 16) *reserved*; 17) *unemotional*; 18) *vengeful*; 19) *greedy, tight-fisted*; 20) *ruthless*; 21) *ungrateful*;



22) *sceptical*; 23) *hostile*; 24) *dishonest*; 25) *sincere*; 26) *realistic*; 27) *impatient*; 28) *impractical*; 29) *insensitive*; 30) *irresponsible*; 31) *knowledgeable*; 32) *well-organized*; 33) *quiet*; 34) *obedient*; 35) *pessimistic*; 37) *unreliable*; 38) *selfish*; 39) *tactless*; 40) *untrustworthy*; 36) *impolite*

**Task 38.**

1) - *d*); 2) - *c*); 3) - *e*); 4) - *g*); 5) - *f*); 6) - *j*); 7) - *b*); 8) - *m*); 9) - *o*); 10) - *a*); 11) - *i*); 12) - *n*); 13) - *k*); 14) - *h*); 15) - *l*).

**Task 39.**

large; hate; short; cheap; thick; easy; late; far.

**Task 40.**

*with everything in order; be good in drawing; painting or picture of someone; not in good health; making new things or ideas; a child who is not well behaved; pretty or handsome; an animal; a type of haircut; nice or pleasant*

**Task 41.**

sad; neat; enjoy; ill; reply; return; close; right.

**Task 42.**

1. *b*) mistake; 2. *a*) mistake; 3. *c*) blunder; 4. *b*) blunder; 5. *b*) errors; 6. *c*) slips; 7. *a*) fault; 8. *d*) slip.

**Task 43.**

*a composer; an actor; a writer; an artist; a spaceman; a scientist; a sportsman.*

**Task 44.**

1. *old*; 2. *shoes*; 3. *fair*; 4. *eyes*; 5. *coat*; 6. *door*; 7. *chair*; 8. *socks*; 9. *cap*; 10. *trousers*

**Task 45.**

1. *teaches*. 2. *meet* 3. *helped* 4. *rent* 5. *live* 6. *skied, skated* 7. *is shaving* 8. *will play*

**Task 46.**

1. *He helps his father*. 2. *She watches too much TV*. 3. *It lies in the bed all day*. 4. *Does he like boiled eggs?* 5. *She does not wash the floor every week*.

**Task 47.**

1. *The baby is sleeping*. The baby *sleeps* for ten hours every night. 2. She usually *plays cards or watches TV*. 3. *Ali is speaking Arabic*. 4. She *is eating dinner*. She always *eats dinner* with her family. 5. *Ann is making a dress for herself at the moment*. She *makes* all her own clothes. 6. *Mrs. Wilson is sitting at the breakfast table*. She *is reading* the morning paper. She *reads* the newspapers every morning. 7.



Irene *is talking* on the long-distance phone. – Who *is she talking* to? – Her brother. They *are talking* for almost an hour. Her brother is in some kind of trouble. 8. What you *are doing* now? – We *are picking* apples.

**Task 48.**

1. *My brother has not tried giving up smoking. Has my brother tried giving up smoking?* 2. *They have not visited Ukraine several times so far. How many times have they visited Ukraine?* 3. *Why have I lost my job? I have not lost my job.* 4. *He does not know almost everyone in this house. Where does he know almost everyone?* 5. *I did not spend all my money yesterday. When did I spend all my money?*

**Task 49.**

1. *c) is having.* 2. *b) to be studying.* 3. *b) in case.* 4. *a) have been exercising.* 5. *a) where.* 6. *c) will be lying.* 7. *c) the.* 8. *We a) had had.* 9. *a) was broken.* 10. *c) will have.* 11. *She b) told.* 12. *a) was raining.* 13. *a) had already left.* 14. *a) has drunk.* 15. *c) has been.* 16. *b) have flown.*

**Task 50.**

1. *Mr Brick is* in the shop. 2. *Bruno wants* to go home. 3. *I like* coffee. 4. *They run on* the street. 5. *She is* in front of the thief. 6. *He does not like* reading. 7. *They went* to university. 8. *She lives* in London. 9. *I am speaking* to Mr. Tornton now.

**Task 51.**

1. *repaired.* 2. *plays.* 3. *will wash.* 4. *didn't.* 5. *didn't – wasn't.* 6. *do.*

**Task 52.**

1. *drinks.* 2. *are doing.* 3. *is shining.* 4. *draws.* 5. *is watching.* 6. *are building.* 7. *go.*

**Task 53.**

1. *hurts.* 2. *heart attack.* 3. *stomach-ache.* 4. *pain.* 5. *lung cancer.* 6. *prescription.* 7. *asthma.* 8. *disease.* 9. *myself.* 10. *aches.*

**Task 54.**

1. *An apple a day keeps the doctor away.* 2. *After dinner sit a while after supper walk a mile.* 3. *Desperate diseases must have desperate cures.* 4. *Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy and wise.* 5. *Good health is above wealth.* 6. *A sound mind in a sound body.*

**Task 55.**

1. *A stitch in time saves nine.* 2. *Absence begins at home.* 4. *Actions speak louder than words.* 5. *Practice makes perfect.* 6. *Charity makes the heart grow fonder.* 7. *One good turn deserves another.* 8. *A new broom sweeps clean.* 9. *Beauty is only skin deep.*

**Task 56.**

1. - e. 2. - g. 3. - a. 4. - d. 5. - j. 6. - i. 7. - c. 8. - b. 9. - f. 10. - h.

**Task 57.**

1. to see the wild animals. 2. to book our summer holidays. 3. to wash my hands. 4. to boil those potatoes. 5. to see in the dark. 6. to draw straight lines. 7. to get a new pair of glasses. 8. to travel abroad. 9. to get to the top floor. 10. to find out what the words mean. 11. for his birthday. 12. in his buttonhole.

**Task 58.**

1. an unusual gold ring; 2. a nice old lady; 3. a good looking young man; 4. an attractive modern house; 5. black leather gloves; 6. an old American film; 7. a large red nose; 8. an ugly orange dress; 9. a little, old red car; 10. a small black metal box; 11. a long thin face; 12. a long wide avenue; 13. a big fat black cat; 14. a poor little old village; 15. beautiful long fair hair; 16. an interesting old French painting.

**Task 59.**

**GROCERY** – foodstuffs; **LEATHERWARE** – sheepskins; **ELECTRICAL** - radio, electric appliances; **HABERDASHERY** - combs, wallets, pins, thread, needles, neckties, belts, cufflinks; **STATIONARY** - erasers, drawing-pins, files, paper-fasteners; **CAFETERIA** - a cup of tea or coffee, a glass of orange juice; **BEDDING** - sheets, pillow-cases, pads; **CONFECTIONARY** - chocolates, sweet; **HOSIERY** - pantyhose, tights, stockings, socks; **KNITWEAR** - cardigan, pullovers, sweaters, jackets; **HOUSEHOLD UTENSILS** - pots and pans, saucepans, frying pans; **TEXTILES** - broadcloth, linen

**Task 61.**

Outlet	Size	Product
supermarket	large or small	food, household goods, <i>hard and soft drinks, toys, haberdashery</i>
kiosk	small	sandwich, postcards, cigarettes, <i>hot dogs, frankfurters, rissoles/meatballs, hamburgers, doughnuts</i>
department store	large	<i>men's, women's, children's clothes, shoes, gifts, crockery, haberdashery</i>
market	<i>large</i>	food, flowers, clothes
butcher's	<i>small</i>	<i>meat, ham, bacon, pork, beef, veal, mutton, beefsteak, sirloin, mince, sausage, fat, chop, cutlets, liver, heart, tongue, fat/lean meat</i>
baker's	<i>small</i>	bread, <i>rolls, scones, buns, croissants, baking, biscuits, sponge cakes, pastry</i>
dairy's	<i>small</i>	<i>milk, cream, sour cream, cottage cheese, fresh eggs, cheese, yoghurt, butter, mayonnaise, margarine</i>
grocer's	<i>small</i>	<i>cereal, sugar, buckwheat, macaroni, noodles, rice, spaghetti, flour, salt, tea, coffee, cocoa, black/red/white pepper, vinegar, sunflower oil, olive oil, vegetable oil, spice, mustard</i>
fishmonger's	<i>small</i>	<i>fish, herring, shrimps, lobster, perch, pike, plaice, trout, cod, halibut, salmon, sprats, black/red caviar, pressed caviar, eel, carp, smoked fish, marinated fish</i>

Practical Grammar of the English Language

greengrocer's	<i>small</i>	<u>Vegetables:</u> <i>onion, potatoes, radish, peas, aubergine, turnip, beets, lettuce, fennel, garlic, spinach, cauliflower, cabbage, tomatoes, cucumbers, carrots, beans, capsicum, marrow, celery, pumpkin, parsley</i> <u>Fruits:</u> <i>apples, apricots, pears, plums, peaches, cherries, grapes, bananas, oranges, pineapples, tangerines, lemons, pomegranates, kiwi fruits, watermelons, grapefruits, melons</i>
chemist's	<i>small</i>	<i>medicine, drug, drops, plaster, bandage, cotton wool, thermometer, pills, an aspirin, mustard-poultice</i>
newsagent's	<i>small</i>	<i>newspapers, magazines, journals, postcards, envelopes, advertisement, announcement</i>

**Task 63.**

What a Can of Beans!	Official Opening Ceremony
Tracey Fenwick found a diamond ring in a can of baked beans. It was worth about £200. She broke one of her front teeth when she tried to eat it. Her husband was extremely angry and complained to the manufacturers. The ring belonged to a Miss Green, who works in the bean canning plant. She said she was afraid to tell her boyfriend, who plays in a rock group. The manufacturers sent Mrs Fenwick 24 cans of baked beans. They apologized for their mistake.	Yesterday morning the Queen opened a new hospital in Watermouth. It cost £52,000,000. One of her shoes fell off while she was planting a tree. Prince Philip picked it up for her and they laughed about it. She spoke to the town's Mayor, who is a wealthy local industrialist. She then shook hands with several of the doctors and nurses. The Mayor presented her with a beautiful gold clock. It was a present from the town.

**Task 64. Love Problems**

ALFENL - <del>FALLEN</del> TILTLE - <del>LITTLE</del> ROVE - <del>OVER</del>	LEWL - <del>WELL</del> YAD - <del>DAY</del> YFLAMI - <del>FAMILY</del>
SEINFRD - <del>FRIENDS</del> SATMR - <del>SMART</del> ILFLYAN - <del>FINALLY</del>	LIONTEARSHIP - <del>RELATIONSHIP</del> FISHLES - <del>SELFISH</del> PHLE - <del>HELP</del>

**Task 67.**

1. C – *bread*; 2. D – *garage*; 3. B – *big*; 4. A – *fair*; 5. A – *milk*; 6. B – *sheep*; 7. B – *Monday*; 8. B – *letter*; 9. D – *Christmas*; 10. C – *friend*; 11. C – *sofa*; 12. C – *shoes*

**Task 68. Cross out the odd word and explain why**

humorous - *serious*; affection - *anger*; merchant - *customer*, feelings - *homework*; companion - *car*; festival - *funeral*; sweetheart - *enemy*; decorations - *dresses*; romance - *fight*.

**Task 69. Possible answers:**

I think the word “*horse*” is an “odd man out” because the only one commonly used for sport.

I think the word “*banana*” is an “odd man out” because it is not round.

I think the word “*USA*” is an “odd man out” because it is situated on the other continent.

I think the word “*blood*” is an “odd man out” because it is liquid.

I think the word “*underpants*” is an “odd man out” because it is intimate part of clothes.

I think the word “*graceful*” is an “odd man out” because it is not a feature of the person’s character.

**Task 72.**

1. The letter L. 2. Because it changes ice into mice. 3. How do you pronounce “y-e-s”? 4. Are you asleep? 5. Smiles (because there is a mile between the first letter and the last letter). 6. - The word that’s spelt w-r-o-n-g-l-y. 7. Sixty. 8. The letter R. 9. The letter M and I. 10. Post office. 11. Because it makes oil boil. 12. Because it’s always in bed. 13. Because it’s in the middle of the water.

**Task 71.**

1. *schoolchildren*; 2. *postcard*; 3. *monster*; 4. *chocolate*; 5. *November*; 6. *shopping*; 7. *computer*; 8. *grandfather*; 9. *theatre*; 10. *light*; 11. *sandwich*; 12. *tourist*; 13. *tangerine*; 14. *orchard*; 15. *giraffe*; 16. *twinkle*; 17. *strawberry*; 18. *ocean*; 19. *architector*; 20. *squirrel*

**Task 72.**

He paid much money for these shoes two years ago.

**Task 73.**

1. b); 2. c); 3. a); 4. c); 5. a); 6. c); 7. b); 8. a); 9. c); 10. c)

**Task 74.**

a) *banks*; b) *puddles*; c) *cave*; d) *stream*; e) *waves*; f) *top*; g) *desert*; h) *fountain*; i) *cloudy*; j) *lightning*.

**Task 75.**

1. *trap*; 2. *mower*; 3. *fountain*; 4. *forecast*; 5. *side*; 6. *top*; 7. *house*; 8. *hive*; 9. *hole*; 10. *skin*.

**Task 76.**

1. *means rain and snow is coming soon*. 2. *fine before eleven*. 3. *always mean a good fine day*. 4. *then close your windows and shut your doors*.

**Task 77.**

Plum – *deep blue (violet)*; lemon – *yellow*; cherry – *wine-coloured*; strawberry – *red*; apple – *yellow (green, red)*; pear – *green*; nut – *brown*; peach – *pink*; banana – *yellow*.

**Task 78.**

Roses are *red*, violets are *blue*,  
Sugar is *sweet* and so are *you*.

My *heart* is like a cabbage divided into *two*.

The *leaves* I give to others, but the heart I *give* to you.

**Task 79.**

*Vegetables: tomato; lettuce; cabbage; onion; carrot; peas; potato.*

**Task 80.**

1. *foreign*; 2. *Christmas*; 3. *Islands*; 4. *muscles*; 5. *know*; 6. *bomb*; 7. *listens*; 8. *hour*; 9. *sandwich*; 10. *salmon*; 11. *almond*; 12. *receipt*; 13. *high*; 14. *knees*.

**Task 81.**

1) - h) 2) - j) 3) - d) 4) - k) 5) - b) 6) - c) 7) - i) 8) - l) 9) - g) 10) - a) 11) - f) 12) - e)

**Task 82.**

1) - d) 2) - h) 3) - f) 4) - b) 5) - a) 6) - e) 7) - i) 8) - g) 9) - j) 10) - c)

**Task 83.**

1) geography; 2) dalls; 3) gardening; 4) tennis; watching; 5) puzzles

**Task 84.**

1. g) 2. c) 3. a) 4. h) 5. f) 6. d) 7. b) 8. e)

**Task 85.**

1. b) 2. e) 3. a) 4. h) 5. f) 6. d) 7. g) 8. c)

**Task 86.**

03-50-13-19-66

**Task 87.**

*good; silver; season; pleasure; mother; cover; wonderful; angry; diamond; disturbance; relatives; little; novel; modern; breakfast*

**Task 88.**

1. Vladimir and Olga are *Soviet names*. – *IRAN, VIETNAM* 2. Have you ever heard an *animal talk in dialect*? - *MALTA, INDIA* 3. Extra tuition will help *an amateur* to improve his *painting*. - *PANAMA, SPAIN* 4. In the United Nations *we denounce* the wholesale ban on atomic weapons. - *SWEDEN* 4. The king and queen eat breakfast and lunch *in a fine palace*. - *CHINA, NEPAL* 5. If an iron pipe *rusts* you just have to shrug *and accept* it. - *PERU, UGANDA*

**Task 89.**

**Colours:** *little*; **Relatives:** *boy*; **Animals:** *beef*; **Furniture:** *window*; **Vegetables:** *pears*; **Jobs:** *husband*; **Clothes:** *feet*; **Materials:** *strong*

**Task 91.**

2. *They are all pop singers / All of them are pop singers.* 3. *They are all sport games / All of them are sport games.* 4. *They are all capitals / All of them are capitals.* 5. *They are all countries / All of them are countries.* 6. *They are all colours / All of them are colours.* 7. *They are all winter months / All of them are winter months.* 8. *They are all domestic animals / All of them are domestic animals.* 9. *They are all wild animals / All of them are wild animals.* 10. *They are all cars / All of them are cars.* 11. *They are all shops / All of them are shops.*

**Task 92.**

**Clothes:** *docker*; **Furniture:** *boots*; **Food:** *spade*; **Jobs:** *printer*.

**Task 93.**

1. c) *northwest of Europe.* 2. b) *England, Scotland and Wales* 3. c) *central and southern.* 4. b) *between Europe and Great Britain.* 5. b) *mountainous.* 6. c) *a parliamentary monarchy.* 7. a) *exported to many countries.* 8. a) *Piccadilly Circus.* 9. a) *Buckingham Palace.* 10. c) *Westminster Abbey*

**Task 94. Possible answers:** *tail; late; let; far; sir; fair; air; ear; fat; fate; art; sit; tea; tear; fear; year; sail; sale.*

**Task 95.**

1. d) *cent*; 2. d) *fur*; 3. d) *barrel*; 4. d) *tail*; 5. b) *evil*; 6. c) *word*; 7. b) *program*; 8. a) *stationery*; 9. c) *swallow*; 10. d) *tailor*.

**Task 96.**

1. True; 2. True; 3. False; 4. True; 5. False; 6. False; 7. True; 8. True; 9. False; 10. True; 11. True; 12. False; 13. True; 14. False; 15. True; 16. True; 17. False; 18. False; 19. True; 20. True

**Task 97.**

2) In the picture A the tree has two leaves, but in the picture B it has three ones. 3) In the picture A there are five birds in the sky, but in the picture B there are only four birds. 4) In the picture A the cat is sitting on the roof of the house, but in the picture B it is no cat. 5) In the picture A the hedgehog carries four apples on his back, but in the picture B it carries only three ones. 6) In the picture A there are six spots on the hat of the fly agaric, but in the picture B there are five spots. 7) In the picture A the squirrel dries nine mushrooms on the tree near its hollow, but in the picture B it dries only eight mushrooms. 8) In the picture A the lily of the valley has four flowers, but in the picture B it has five ones. 9) In the picture A there is one tree behind the house, but in the picture B there are two trees. 10) In the picture A there is the dark



*chimney* on the roof of the house, but in the picture B there is a *light chimney*. 11) In the picture A the house has *one window*, but in the picture B it has *two windows*.

**Task 98.**

1. 48; 2. 50; 3. £11; 4. 109; 5. 85 p; 6. 120 p; 7. 72; 8. £5.00; 9. 200 p; 10. 88; 11. 180; 12. 90 p; 13. 210; 14. 260 kg; 15. 72 cm; 16. 93

**Task 99.**

1. Ben and Loren are Mike's *parents*. 2. Ted is Charles's *father*. 3. Jane is Ann's *mother*. 4. Katy and Jack are Tom's *grandparents*. 5. Kelly is John's *wife*. 6. Jane and Jack are Mark's *children*. 7. Tom is Mary's *son*. 8. Mary is Jack's *daughter*. 9. John is Mary's *brother-in-law*. 10. Charles is John's *nephew*. 11. Ben is Loren's *husband*. 12. Robert is Mike's *grandfather*. 13. Sarah is Mary's *niece*. 14. John is Jack's *son-in-law*. 15. Mike is *new-born child*. 16. Sarah and Donna are Jack's *grandchildren*. 17. Loren is Ann's *sister-in-law*. 18. Agnes is John's *grandmother*. 19. Mary is Kelly's *sister*. 20. Agnes is Sarah's *great grandmother*. 21. Jack is Jane's *brother*. 22. Kelly is Ann's *cousin*. 23. Mark is Mike's *great grandfather*. 24. Loren is Robert's *daughter-in-law*. 25. Jack is Ted's *father-in-law*. 26. Agnes is Katy's *mother-in-law*. 27. Jane is Mary's *aunt*. 28. Donna is Mark's *great granddaughter*. 29. Charles is Agnes's *great grandson*. 30. Ann is Mark's *granddaughter*. 31. Jack is Loren's *uncle*.

**Task 100.**

Ukraine – *Ukrainian*; Bulgaria – *Bulgarian*; England – *English*; Israel – *Hebrew*; Austria – *German*; Armenia – *Armenian*; Germany – *German*; France – *French*; USA – *English*; Brazil – *Portuguese*; Australia – *English*; Greece – *Greek*; China – *Chinese, Mandarin*; Canada – *French, English*

**Task 101.**

“*Last Time on Ice*” - a) A very stout woman was very fond of skating. e) Once she went down to a lake to spend a few hours on the ice. h) Very soon she had a bad fall. d) And as she was very heavy and stout she was unable to get up. g) She sat on the ice looking sad. c) A young man came skating up to her and helped her to rise. j) “Is it your first time on the ice?” he asked. m) “No”, she answered, k) “It is not my first but it will be my last, thank you”.

“*Playing Golf*” - b) A sportsman was playing over a golf course, and playing very badly. f) “Dear, dear!” he remarked at last, i) “There can’t be worse players than myself!” l) “Maybe there are worse players”, said the man who watched him play, n) “but they don’t play”.

**Task 102.**

1. Shall I call a doctor? 2. Shall I open the door for you? 3. Let’s go for a walk. 4. I’ll cut the tomatoes – you wash the lettuce. 5. Shall we take a taxi? 6. Why don’t we go to the cinema this evening? 7. Where shall I put this chair? 8. Who shall we invite to the wedding?

**Task 103.**

2. I'm not really dumb; **lack** of sleep made me forget the answers. 3. If I tell you what she said, will you **agree** never to tell anyone? 4. In the secret box we found a pencil, a **pin**, keys, stamps, and a few coins. 5. Are three **zeros** enough to write the number one thousand? 6. The wheelbarrow **hit** eleven rocks as it rolled down the hill. 7. When the nurse gives you the injection, just **yell "Ow"** if it hurts. 8. Elsa and **Otto** **ran** gently down the path to the river. 9. Before you arrive at Kuala Lumpur, **please** fill out the customs form. 10. I play nearly all the stringed instruments: violin, cello, bass **viol, etc.** 11. When I opened the window, shining **rays** of sunlight flooded the room. 12. We'll go in **Jims car, let's** leave at six o'clock

**Task 104.**

1. Those who were against the **war saw** to it that their voices were heard. – **Warsaw - Poland** 2. To make underground water potable, scientists first used ammonia, **then** sand later on. – **Athens - Greece** 3. **Can karate** movies on television really make children more aggressive? – **Ankara - Turkey** 4. **No slot** machine is needed here. – **Oslo - Norway** 5. The idiom "on a **par**" **is** used to mean "equal". – **Paris - France** 6. While visiting Africa, **I rode** on buses and trains instead of driving a car there. – **Cairo - Egypt** 7. Housekeepers usually prefer **washing to** not doing anything at all. – **Washington - USA** 8. If you have an infection in your **colon, don't** eat fats or any other rich food. – **London - England**

**Task 105.**

<i>The writer feels positive about these people</i>	<i>The writer feels negative about these people</i>
Emma (his grandmother)	John (his grandfather)
Maureen (his mother)	Bob (his father)
Sally (his younger sister)	Tony (his nephew)
Andrew (his brother-in-law)	Stanley (his uncle)
Claudia (his little niece)	Stuart (his cousin)
Sue (his aunt)	
Claire (his older cousin)	

**Task 106.**

1. an acquaintance. 2. my colleague. 3. my fiancée. 4. my ex-girlfriend. 5. my steady girlfriend. 6. my classmate. 7. my workmate. 8. my flatmate. 9. a good friend. 10. just good friends.

**Task 107. Possible answers:**

**Group 1.** A spider is an odd man out because only it can spin a web. **Group 2.** A penguin is an odd man out because only it lives in the North. **Group 3.** A guitar is an odd man out because only it is a string instrument. **Group 4.** A bear is an odd man out because only it sleeps in winter. **Group 5.** A squirrel is an odd man out because only it lives in the forest. **Group 6.** An apple is an odd man out because only it can spin a web.

**Task 108.**

2) In the 1<sup>st</sup> picture the photographer has got a **game-bag** but in the 2<sup>nd</sup> picture he has not got one. 3) In the 1<sup>st</sup> picture the **camera gun has two key buttons** but in the 2<sup>nd</sup> picture it has only one key buttons. 4) In the 1<sup>st</sup> picture the **camera gun has backsight** but in the 2<sup>nd</sup> picture it has no one. 5) In the 1<sup>st</sup> picture there **two pockets on the rucksack** but in the 2<sup>nd</sup> picture there is only one pocket. 6) In the 1<sup>st</sup> picture there is a **handle of the camera gun slip** but in the second picture there is no handle. 7) In the second picture there is a **medal on the dog's collar** but in the first picture there is no medal. 8) In the second picture there are **three fly agarics near the stump** but in the first picture there are two ones. 9) In the second picture the **beetle sits on the stone** but in the first picture there is no beetle. 10) In the first picture the **squirrel looks at the photographer** but in the second picture it looks at the other way. 11) In the second picture there is a **lizard on the stone** but in the there is no lizard in the first picture. 12) In the first picture one can see a **cub near the big bear** but in the second picture there is no cub. 13) In the first picture there a **small button on the hunter's cap** but in the second picture there is no button. 14) In the first picture there is a **hunter's coat lapel** but in the second picture there is no lapel.

**Task 109. Possible answers:**

**Group A:** the flower is “an odd man out” because it cannot grow in the sand.

**Group B:** 1) the sea star is “an odd man out” because it has not nipping claws. 2) the scorpion is “an odd man out” because it lives in the desert (or it does not live in the water). **Group B:** the duck is “an odd man out” because only it can make a sound (or it does not live in the water).

**Task 110. What is an odd man out in each group?**

A chicken is an odd man out because it is a bird.

## CHAPTER III

### PSYCHOLOGICAL TESTS “LET’S GET ACQUAINTED!”

#### Test 3.1. A Map of Interest

*Answer the following questions by writing “Yes” or “No”*

1. Are you interested in the causes of different diseases and their cure?
2. Do you like to read critical articles after you’ve read a book?
3. Do you like to take responsibility in organising things (e.g. parties)?
4. Do you like to read historical novels?
5. Do you ever go to listen to symphonies?
6. Do you like to explain to your classmates how to do a sum or write a grammatically correct sentence?
7. Are you interested in the causes of different diseases and their cure?
8. Do you like to read critical articles after you’ve read a book?
9. Do you like to take responsibility in organising things (e.g. parties)?
10. Do you like to read historical novels?
11. Do you ever go to listen to symphonies?
12. Do you like to explain to your classmates how to do a sum or write a grammatically correct sentence?
13. Can you say that your first impulse when you see somebody hurt is to give the first aid?
14. Do you like to write poetry and prose?
15. Do you like to observe people’s behaviour?
16. Would you like to find out about the history of your family, the street you live in, your city, etc.?
17. Are you fond of singing, reciting poetry, dancing, etc. in front of the audience?
18. Do you enjoy spending time with kids, reading them books, playing with them, helping them, etc.?
19. Are you irritated when your sick relatives ask you to help them?
20. Do you soon get tired when you work with dictionaries or reference books?
21. Can you quickly switch from one job to another?
22. Do you like to make reports on history?
23. Do your hobbies include playing musical instruments, drawing or wood carving?
24. Have you ever wanted to give a class instead of your teacher?
25. Have you ever wanted to give a class instead of your teacher?
26. Are you interested in people’s anatomy?
27. Do you like to discuss books with your friends?
28. Do you like to analyse the events that have happened in your or your friends’ lives?
29. Are you interested in your country’s past?
30. Do you enjoy reading about the history of arts?
31. Have you ever wanted to work as a nurse during your summer holidays?
32. Are you interested in word origin?

33. Do you keep a diary?
34. Are you interested in the past of other countries?
35. Do you like to watch one and the same film or play several times?
36. Have you ever tried to teach your younger brothers (sisters, cousins, etc.)?

**Analysis:**

1. If you positively answered questions numbers **1, 7, 19** and **25**, and negatively number **13** – we would recommend you to think of choosing a **medical profession**.
2. If you have written out numbers **2, 8, 14, 20, 26** – your special field is **literature and languages**.
3. If you have marked numbers **9, 19, 21, 27** – your vacation is **journalism**.
4. If you have chosen numbers **4, 10, 16, 22**, and **28** – you are mostly interested in **history**.
5. If your answers include numbers **5, 11, 17, 23**, and **29** – you'd better choose **arts** as your future profession.
6. If your choice is numbers **3, 6, 12, 18, 24, 30** – you are **a born teacher** and you'll regret it all your life if you don't follow your vacation.

**Test 3.2. A Good Language Learner Test**

*Answer the following questions by writing "Yes" or "No"*

1. I don't panic if I come across a lot of unknown words in the text, I enjoy working with a dictionary and I understand that every new word enriches my vocabulary.
2. I am usually scared when I see a lot of new words in the text, I am bored if I have to work with a dictionary for hours, it irritates me to look each unknown word up.
3. I very seldom use dictionaries when I read for pleasure.
4. When I read for pleasure I look every unknown word up.
5. It is always difficult for me to start and keep up a conversation in a foreign language.
6. I always enjoy speaking in a foreign language even if I know that I make a lot of mistakes.
7. I try to use a foreign language as little as possible because I realize how many mistakes I make.
8. I enjoy watching video films in foreign languages even if I don't understand much.
9. I like to listen to recordings in foreign languages if I do some physical work.
10. If I don't understand some grammar point I always try to find an explanation in a reference book or ask my teacher/friend to explain.
11. I am very interested to find out about people behind the language.
12. I don't like history, it's boring.
13. I speak foreign languages only during class and only if my teacher requires it.
14. I never do more work in a foreign language at home than my teacher requires.
15. I can't remember more than 5-7 words a day.

16. I like to experiment with foreign languages.
17. If I don't know how to say something in the right way, I don't speak at all.
18. I will never be able to know any foreign language well, because I know that my language abilities are poor.
19. My parents make me learn foreign languages and I understand that it is necessary for my future career, but I hate every minute of it.

**Analysis:**

If you have ticked numbers **1, 3, 6, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 17** – you are an outstanding learner. You enjoy learning and using foreign languages, it is a constant source of delight for you.

If you have chosen numbers **2, 4, 5, 7, 13, 14, 15, 16, 18, 20** – learning languages is hard work for you get there in the end. You probably had a bad experience at school. Don't give up when you feel you are not making progress. A bit more confidence, and some concentrated practice, and you could easily feeling at home in the foreign language you learn.

**Test 3.3. What Are Your Chances This Term?**

<p><b>1. Have you attended lectures?</b> a. all of them. b. half of them. c. one at all.</p>	<p><b>7. Have you been active during the discussions at your seminars?</b> a. very active. b. just listening. c. sleeping through the discussions.</p>
<p><b>2. Have you read the books on your list?</b> a. all the books. b. half of the books. c. just a few.</p>	<p><b>Have you made any cribs?</b> a. a lot of them. b. just a few. c. none at all.</p>
<p><b>3. Have you attended lectures?</b> a. all of them. b. half of them. c. none at all.</p>	<p><b>9. Have you missed any classes?</b> a. a lot of them. b. just a few. c. none at all.</p>
<p><b>4. Have you read any additional material?</b> a. a lot. b. only a little. c. none.</p>	<p><b>10. Have you ever studied late into the night?</b> a. very often. b. not very often. c. never.</p>
<p><b>5. Have you made any notes at the lectures?</b> a. very detailed notes. b. just the main points. c. none at all.</p>	<p><b>11. Have you had your meals regularly?</b> a. always. b. only at weekends. c. hardly ever.</p>
<p><b>6. Have you made any reports at the seminars?</b> a. at every seminar. b. only a few. c. none at all.</p>	<p><b>11. Have you kept fit this term?</b> a. fairly fit. b. not really. c. not at all.</p>



**Add your score:**

<b>1</b>	; c - 0	<b>7</b>	c - 5
<b>2</b>	; c - 0	<b>8</b>	c - 5
<b>3</b>	; c - 0	<b>9</b>	c - 5
<b>4</b>	; c - 0	<b>10</b>	c - 0
<b>5</b>	; c - 0	<b>11</b>	c - 0
<b>6</b>	; c - 0		

**Analysis:**

1. From **55 to 40**. Do not worry. You are sure to pass.
2. From **40 to 20**. Take care. You will pass only if you are very lucky.
3. From **20 to 0**. No chance at all, you are sure to fail the exam to pass.

**Test 3.4. Have You Time To Study?**

<p><b>1. How many films have you seen this month?</b> a) 10. b) 4. c) none.</p>	<p><b>7. How many times have you been to a café this month?</b> a) 4. b) 1. c) not once.</p>
<p><b>2. How many times have you been to the theatre this month?</b> a) 4. b) 1. c) not once.</p>	<p><b>8. How many parties have you been to this month?</b> a) 6. b) 2. c) none.</p>
<p><b>3. How often do you watch TV this month?</b> a) every day. b) on weekends. c) not at all.</p>	<p><b>9. How many times have you been to the country this month?</b> a) 4. b) 2. c) not once.</p>
<p><b>4. How many concerts have you been to this month?</b> a) 3. b) 1. c) none.</p>	<p><b>10. How often you gone skating/skiing/swimming/running and other kinds of sports this month?</b> a) 8. b) 4. c) 1.</p>
<p><b>5. How many exhibitions have you been to this month?</b> a) 3. b) 1. c) none.</p>	<p><b>11. How often have you stayed home in the evening this month?</b> a) most of the time. b) sometimes. c) hardly ever.</p>
<p><b>6. How many times have you been to a disco this month?</b> a) 4. b) 1. c) not once.</p>	

**Add your score:**

<b>1</b>	5; c - 1	<b>7</b>	5; c - 1
<b>2</b>	5; c - 1	<b>8</b>	5; c - 1
<b>3</b>	5; c - 1	<b>9</b>	5; c - 1
<b>4</b>	5; c - 1	<b>10</b>	5; c - 1
<b>5</b>	a - 10; b - 5; c - 1	<b>11</b>	a - 1; b - 5; c - 10
<b>6</b>	a - 10; b - 5; c - 1		

**Analysis:**

1. From **110** to **80**. You have had no time for studies this month, have you? Take care!
2. From **80** to **40**. You have enjoyed yourself this month, haven't you?
3. From **40** to **10**. Life has been a little dull this month, hasn't it?

**Test 3.5. Are You a Good Communicator?**

- 1. You and your best friend have an argument. The next day when you see him/her, what do you do?**
  - a) immediately start the argument again.
  - b) pretend it never happened.
  - c) be friendly and laugh about it but explain why you argued with them.
- 2. You need to borrow a book from the library. It's urgent! You need it for an essay that was due yesterday. The library is shutting in two minutes. You have forgotten your library card. Now what?**
  - a) cry, think about joining the French Foreign Legion.
  - b) explain everything that has happened to the librarian and ask if there is any way at all that you can borrow the book.
  - c) flatter the librarian's taste in clothes and ask if she used to be a model.
- 3. You need to ask someone who you don't know very well a huge favour. What do you do?**
  - a) drop one hint then give up.
  - b) get to the point immediately then keep on explaining why you need the favour.
  - c) chat a bit first then explain why you need the favour.
- 4. How do you speak when you are with your friends?**
  - a) say what you think but keep a few thoughts to yourself.
  - b) say everything you think.
  - c) often say something different to what you are thinking.
- 5. While you are talking to your friends, which of the following do you usually do?**
  - a) notice their facial expressions and body language.
  - b) stare at something behind them.
  - c) make sure you make eye contact all the time and that your faces are very close.
- 6. While you are telling a really story, your friend looks bored. What do you do?**
  - a) stop immediately and ask what matter is.
  - b) put a bit more energy into it and end the story quite quickly.

c) keep on talking.

**7. When people talk to you, which of the following might be notice?**

a) you occasionally mumble, fidget, hide your eyes with your hair or give one word answers.

b) you speak loudly, interrupt people, make a joke of people tell you or don't listen properly.

c) you do none of the things in **a** or **b**.

**8. You are at a party when your boyfriend/girlfriend annoys you about something. What do you do?**

a) tell them how you feel after the party.

b) refuse to speak to them for days.

c) tell them what the problem is at the party.

**Add your score:**

<b>1</b>	a) 3; b) 1; c) 2;	<b>5</b>	a) 2; b) 1; c) 3;
<b>2</b>	a) 1; b) 2; c) 3;	<b>6</b>	a) 3; b) 2; c) 1;
<b>3</b>	a) 1; b) 3; c) 2;	<b>7</b>	a) 1; b) 3; c) 2;
<b>4</b>	a) 2; b) 3; c) 1;	<b>8</b>	a) 2; b) 1; c) 3;

**Analysis:**

**8-11 points** - You should try a bit harder to say what's on your mind and make people understand how you feel. You are obviously kind and don't like confrontation. However, you ought to show more of your personality when you speak. Some people might think you are shy or that you are bored when you speak to them. This may make some people nervous.

**12-17 points** - Yes, you are a good communicator. You can be assertive when you need to be. You choose the right times to talk to people about things, you are diplomatic and chatty. When people meet you they find you easy to get on with. This is because you take the time to speak to people and listen carefully to what they say.

**18-21 points** - You are a good communicating but ought to try listening to people a bit more. You a good at being the centre of attention and like trying to charm people but sometimes you can be too loud and pushy. Remember that not everyone is an extrovert like you.

**22-24 points** - You certainly make sure people to listen to you. The poor things can't get a word in edgeways. You are too busy forcing your views on them. You might think you are charming and persuasive but you pressurise people too much. You ought to try thinking before you speak.

### Test 3.6. What About Your Health?

*Answer the following questions by writing "Yes" or "No"*

1. Did you have more than two pieces of bread and butter for breakfast?
2. Did you have more than two teaspoonfuls of sugar in your tea or coffee?
3. Did you drink half a litre of milk?
4. Did you eat any fruit?
5. Did you eat any sweets or chocolates?

6. Did you have any cakes?
7. Did you eat potatoes for supper?
8. Did you have your last meal after 9 p.m.?
9. Did you have soup at dinner?
10. Did you go for a run in the morning?
11. Did you do any exercises?
12. Did you walk to the University?
13. Did you smoke at all?
14. Did you get up before 11 o'clock?
15. Did you go to bed before 11 o'clock?
16. Did you watch TV for more than 2 hours?
17. Did you sleep with your windows open?

**Add your score:**

No	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
1	0	1	7	0	1	13											
2	0	1	8	0	1	14											
3	1	0	9	1	0	15											
4		0	10	1	0	16											
5		1	11	1	0	17											
6		1	12	1	0												

**Analysis:**

- 1) 17 – 15 – You are very healthy – but do not forget to relax.
- 2) 15 – 10 – Not too bad! Keep trying!
- 3) 10 – 0 – Watch out! You are wrong way!

**Test 3.7. Going to Live to 100?**

**1. How often do you eat fruit and vegetables?**

- a) every day.
- b) never.
- c) two or three times a week.

**2. Look at this list of food and drink. How many do you eat in a day? (ice-cream, sweets, fizzy drinks, chips, extra salt on your food, extra sugar on your food or in a drink, take-away food (hamburgers, pizzas)).**

- a) more than two.
- b) one or two.
- c) none.

**3. When you have a problem do you**

- a) forget about it?
- b) talk to a parent, teacher or a friend about it?
- c) wait, and then talk to a friend later?

**4. Do you play a sport or go to a dance class**

- a) once a week or more?
- b) two or three times a month?

c) once a month?

**5. When you have free time do you**

- a) watch TV?
- b) go to the swimming pool with your friends?
- c) take serious exercise (e.g. jogging)?

**6. Do you live**

- a) in town?
- b) in the country?

**7. Do you sleep**

- a) more than ten hours a night?
- b) less than ten hours a night?

**8. Your friends live on the third floor of a block of flats. Do you**

- a) walk up the stairs when you visit them?
- b) take the lift when you visit them?

**9. When you are in a hurry do you**

- a) still remember to eat good meals ?
- b) miss meal but eat a packet of crisps or chocolate?

**10. Are you going to smoke when you are an adult?**

- a) yes.
- b) no.

**Add your score:**

<b>1</b>	a) 3; b) 0; c) 1;	<b>6</b>	a) 1; b) 3;
<b>2</b>	a) 0; b) 1; c) 3;	<b>7</b>	a) 1; b) 3;
<b>3</b>	a) 1; b) 3; c) 2;	<b>8</b>	a) 3; b) 1;
<b>4</b>	a) 3; b) 2; c) 1;	<b>9</b>	a) 3; b) 0;
<b>5</b>	a) 0; b) 2; c) 3;	<b>10</b>	a) 0; b) 3;

**Analysis:**

**5-12 points** - You are not going to live to 100 without good food or exercise. You must eat more fruits and vegetables. You must take more exercise, too. It's fun to be fit.

**13-14 points** - Not bad do the same things but more often. Try to eat some more fruit and swim once a week.

**25-30 points** - You do all the right things. You are going to live to 100.

**Test 3.8. Are You a "Foodie"?**

**1. What was used as money in 16<sup>th</sup> century Sweden?**

- a) tomatoes
- b) chocolate
- c) cheese

**2. Egyptian slaves went on strike and stopped building the pyramids when they weren't given enough**

- a) garlic
- b) peppers

c) cinnamon

**3. What was invented in France in 1869?**

- a) butter
- b) mayonnaise
- c) margarine

**4. Tomato ketchup was invented in**

- a) America
- b) Spain
- c) Canada

**5. What is wrapped around some Indian sweets?**

- a) flour and water
- b) gold and silver
- c) paper and plastic

**6. Pizza originally comes from**

- a) America
- b) Italy
- c) Germany

**7. Ice-cream was invented in**

- a) Italy
- b) China
- c) America

**8. The world's greatest cheese eaters are**

- a) the Swiss
- b) the Germans
- c) the French

**9. What is the main food for over half the world's population?**

- a) potatoes
- b) rice
- c) bread

**10. The saying "we will eat anything with wings except an airplane and anything with four legs except a table" comes from?**

- a) England
- b) Chine
- c) Malaysia

**Add your score:**

<b>1</b>	c	<b>6</b>	b
<b>2</b>	a	<b>7</b>	b
<b>3</b>	c	<b>8</b>	b
<b>4</b>	b	<b>9</b>	c
<b>5</b>	b	<b>10</b>	d

**Analysis:**

**Less than 4 points** - That was terrible. You'll never be a "foodie".



**4-6 points** - Not bad, but we're afraid you need to study more to become a true "foodie".

**7-10 points** - Well done. When it comes to food, you really know your opinions.

### Test 3.9. What's Your Relationship with Food Like?

**1. In the morning:**

- a) you drink a glass of milk and rush out.
- b) you have a big breakfast.

**2. Your ideal meal is:**

- a) eaten alone in front of the television.
- b) eaten at the table with your whole family.

**3. For you cooking is:**

- a) a waste of time.
- b) a hobby.

**4. The ideal place for eating out is:**

- a) a fast food restaurant.
- b) a traditional restaurant.

**5. Usually:**

- a) you eat little and often.
- b) you eat three meals a day.

**6. When you go away:**

- a) you take enough money for a filled roll.
- b) the day before you prepare lots of good things to take.

**7. At a party:**

- a) you begin to dance immediately.
- b) the first thing you do is look at when there is to eat.

**8. At break-time:**

- a) you munch some crisps.
- b) you eat an apple.

**Analysis:**

**More than 4 A answers:** for you eating well is of little importance and your body is like a car which must be given oil every so often.

**More than 4 B answers:** for you eating is one of the greatest pleasures in life. You are real gourmet.

**4 A answers and 4 B answers:** eating is not very important to you, but you know how to appreciate good food.

### Test 3.10. What Type of Boyfriend / Girlfriend are You?

**1. When a girl and a boy go out to the cinema together, who do you think should pay?**

- a) The boy.
- b) The person who has more money.

c) They should pay for themselves.

**2. Your boyfriend/girlfriend is in a play. He/she has to kiss someone who you know he/she likes. What do you do?**

a) Forbid him/her to take the part.

b) Trust him/her.

c) Worry but say nothing. You might sound paranoid.

**3. Your boyfriend/girlfriend is always very attentive when you are alone together. However when he/she is with other people he/she almost ignores you. What do you do?**

a) Nothing, it's obvious that he/she is going to act differently.

b) Demand more attention.

c) Ask him/her why he/she is acting differently.

**4. You and your boyfriend/girlfriend are going to a party. He/she tells you that the person who he/she used to go out with will be there. What do you do?**

a) Go to the party and try to be friendly to his/her "ex".

b) Worry that you are not as attractive/interesting as his/her "ex".

c) Refuse to go to the party.

**5. You receive two Valentine's cards. One is definitely from your boyfriend/girlfriend but you don't know who the other one is from. The unidentified card has a very romantic message. Do you tell your boyfriend/girlfriend about it?**

a) Of course. I want him/her to be jealous.

b) Of course. I don't want any secret between us.

c) No. The other person who sent a card might be attractive

**6. Your boyfriend/girlfriend is depressed. You don't know why. He/she says doesn't want to go out on Saturday night but your friend is having a party. What do you do?**

a) go to the party but ring him/her to check that he/she OK.

b) get angry with him/her because you want to go out.

c) Go to his/her house and try to cheer him/her up.

**Add your score:**

<b>1</b>	a - 3; b - 2; c - 1;	<b>4</b>	a - 1; b - 2; c - 3;
<b>2</b>	a - 3; b - 1; c - 2;	<b>5</b>	a - 3; b - 1; c - 2;
<b>3</b>	a - 1; b - 3; c - 2;	<b>6</b>	a - 2; b - 3; c - 1;

**Analysis:**

**6-9** - You are someone who is very trusting - perhaps too trusting at times. You are happy to devote a lot of time to your boyfriend/girlfriend. You are obviously a generous and patient person when you go out with someone. However, do not sacrifice too much. Sometimes you are too cool and distant because you don't want to be a nuisance. Your feelings are as important as your boyfriend/girlfriend's.

**10-14** - You are a caring person who enjoys seeing your boyfriend/girlfriend but you are not too demanding. If there is a small problem in your relationship,

you do not panic or go mad. You sort it out sensibly. You are neither too possessive nor too distant.

**15-18** - You are very passionate and romantic. This is great but you are not too possessive. Your views of boy-girl relationships are very old-fashioned and traditional. Be careful, we think you might get hurt. Either this or your boyfriend/girlfriend will be made angry by your constant demand for attention. Stop feeling so insecure!

### Test 3.11. How Romantic are You?

*Do you think Valentine's Day is a chance for romance or just an excuse for buying pointless presents?*

**1. According to the tradition of Valentine's Day, the first person you see on Valentine's Day should be your Valentine. What would you do on Valentine's morning?**

- a) Stay in your room with your door locked and curtains closed until your true love arrived?
- b) Nothing, just get up as usual.
- c) Get up early, go into the town centre and wait for rush-hour!

**2. There are many presents which celebrate love and marriage. Which do you find most romantic?**

- a) A huge box of chocolates in heart-shaped silk box.
- b) A dream pillow that is filled with herbs and flowers to stimulate and enhance dreams and make special memories.
- c) A photo of yourself.

**3. Celebrity romance is always popular. Which wedding brought tears to your eyes?**

- a) Michael Jackson to his nurse.
- b) Miss Piggy to Kermit the Frog in the Muppet Movie *The Muppets Take Manhattan*.
- c) The Sleeping Beauty to the Handsome Prince.

**4. You're cooking a romantic Valentine's meal for your true love. Which recipe book do you buy?**

- a) Fat Free and Healthy Meals (includes calorie count and nutritional analysis)
- b) Cheap, Cheerful & Quick Cookery Comer (all recipes cost less than £1 and can be prepared in under 10 minutes)
- c) Fantastic Food (special easy-to-cook recipes from Europe's top-class restaurants)

**5. Make Valentine's Day extra special and choose one of the following tips for added romance**

- a) Pay for your boyfriend or girlfriend to spend a day at a beauty salon being made to look good enough to go out in public with you.
- b) Plan three different days out, write the details down and put them in envelopes. Ask your boyfriend or girlfriend to pick one envelope.
- c) Sing your favourite love song to your boyfriend or girlfriend in front of a large crowd of friends.

**6. Flowers are always linked with romance. Which of the following flowers would you give to your Valentine or would you like to receive?**

- a) A single red rose, displayed in a silk box.
- b) A bunch of delicate flowers that were grown by yourself of your Valentine.
- c) A huge bouquet of flowers that was found in the bins at the back of a hotel.  
(Well, it's the thought that counts)

**Add your score:**

<b>1</b>	a = 3; b = 2; c = 1;	<b>4</b>	a = 2; b = 1; c = 3;
<b>2</b>	a = 2; b = 3; c = 1;	<b>5</b>	a = 1; b = 3; c = 2;
<b>3</b>	a = 1; b = 2; c = 3;	<b>6</b>	a = 2; b = 3; c = 1;

**Analysis:**

**13 - 18:** You are very romantic and you want to make sure that your loved one gets special treatment. You could be the world's most perfect Valentine! You are sensitive, although you are also a bit predictable and like to give traditional and expensive gifts that you hope will be remembered for ever.

**7 - 12:** You are certainly quite romantic, but you tend to be practical and a little bit different in your approach to romance, being more personal and less traditional. You are not always predictable, and like to celebrate your relationship in quite unusual ways. You'll certainly keep romance alive in your relationship!

**1 - 6:** Oh dear. Either you don't have any idea about romance or you don't have a single romantic bone in your body and are cooler than a competitor at the Winter X-Games! You are selfish with your emotions and your cash, and you prefer yourself to be the centre of attention. The only person you love is yourself!

**Test 3.12. Are You Green?**

<b>Відповіді:</b>	<b>Always</b>	<b>Sometimes</b>	<b>Never</b>
	2 points	1 point	0 points

How often do you take your own shopping bags to the store?

How often do you avoid using a bag if you are buying only one item?

How often do you buy loose fruits and vegetables instead of pre-packaged ones?

How often do you share your magazine subscriptions with another person?

**Analysis:**

**3 - 4 -** Congratulations, you're already green!

**0 - 2 -** You need to become more environmentally aware.

**Test 3.13. Are You an Artistic Person?**

Some people are fond of painting; others are keen on music and can listen to it all day long. Try this French test to learn if you belong here. Or maybe you are the one who prefers material values to spiritual ones.

1. Do you know the difference between "colour" and "shade"?

2. Can you feel comfortable in a dull and comfortless room?

3. Do you like drawing?

4. Do you follow the latest fashion or do you dress to your own taste when choosing new clothes?

5. Have you ever heard of Wagner, Gainsborough or Handel?
6. Would you agree that you are sullen and bad-tempered?
7. Do you have your personal colour or clothing?
8. Are you a museum goer?
9. Would you stop to admire the sunset on your way to some important meeting?
10. Do you like drawing geometric figures?
11. Do you often visit art galleries?
12. Are you the one to wander about the streets for a long time?
13. Do you like to be on your own?
14. Do you think a person who begins reciting poems is silly?
15. Do you listen to music only for relaxation and pleasure?
16. Do wonderful landscapes stay vividly in your memory for a long time?
17. Would you say that pebbles are beautiful?
18. Do you like meeting new people?
19. Are you fond of reciting poems?
20. Have you ever wanted to paint pictures on the walls of your room?
21. Do you often change your hairstyle?
22. Do you often rearrange furniture in your house/flat?
23. Have you ever tried to compose songs?
24. Do you write poems?

**Add your score:**

Score one point for each answer “*yes*” to numbers *1, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 9, 11, 12, 13, 16, 17, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24*; one point for each answer “*no*” to questions *2, 6, 10, 14, 15, 18*.

**Analysis:**

If you have got more than **16** points, you are definitely an artistic person, possessing a feeling for the beautiful.

If your score is between **8** and **16** points, you are not indifferent to the beautiful, but you are also rationalist and tend to combine pleasure and common sense. If you've got fewer than **4** points, you could be characterised as a person, who sees the world in black and white colour.

**Test 3.14. You See Yourself as Others See You?**

**Personality Quiz**

*It is no good looking into a mirror if you wish to see the real you. The real test is to see yourself as others see you, and the following test can let you do just that... Tick your answers to the questions below. If you doubt how to answer some of the questions, ask your close friend to help you.*

**1. When do you feel your best?**

- a) In the morning.
- b) During the afternoon and early evening.
- c) Late at night.

**2. Do you usually walk**

- a) fairly fast, with long steps?

- b) fairly fast, but with short, quick steps?
- c) less fast, head up, looking the world in the face?
- d) very slowly?

**3. When talking to people, do you**

- a) stand with your arms folded?
- b) have your hands clasped?
- c) have one or both hands on your hips?
- d) touch or push the person to whom you are talking?
- e) play with your ear, touch your chin, or smooth your hair?

**4. When relaxing, do you sit with**

- a) your knees bent and your legs neatly side by side?
- b) your legs crossed?
- c) your legs stretched out or straight?
- d) with one leg curled under you?

**5. When something really amuses you, how do you react? Do you give**

- a) a big, appreciative laugh?
- b) a laugh, but not a loud one?
- c) a quiet chuckle?
- d) a big smile?

**6. When you go to a party or social gathering, do you**

- a) make a loud entrance so everyone notices you?
- b) make a quieter entrance, looking around quickly for someone you know?
- c) make the quietest possible entrance and try to stay unnoticed?

**7. You are working hard, concentrating hard. You're interrupted. Do you**

- a) welcome the break?
- b) feel extremely irritated?
- c) vary between these two extremes?

**8. Which of the following colours do you like most?**

- a) Red or orange.
- b) Black.
- c) Yellow or light blue.
- d) Green.
- e) White.
- f) Brown, grey, or violet.

**9. When you are in bed at night, in those last few moments before going to sleep, do you lie**

- a) stretched out on your back?
- b) stretched out face down on your stomach?
- c) on your side, slightly curled?
- d) with your head under the covers?

**10. Do you often dream that you are**

- a) falling?
- b) fighting or struggling?
- c) searching for someone or something?
- d) flying or floating?



- e) or do you usually have a dreamless sleep?  
f) or do you have pleasant dreams?

**Add your score:**

1. a – 2; b – 4; c – 6;	6. a – 6; b – 4; c – 2;
2. a – 6; b – 4; c – 7; d – 2;	7. a – 6; b – 2; c – 4;
3. a – 4; b – 2; c – 5; d – 7; e – 6;	8. a – 6; b – 7; c – 5; d – 4; e – 3; f – 2;
4. a – 4; b – 6; c – 2; d – 1;	9. a – 7; b – 6; c – 4; d – 2;
5. a – 6; b – 4; c – 3; d – 5;	10. a – 4; b – 2; c – 3; d – 5; e – 6; f – 1;

**Analysis:**

**Under 21 points:** People think you are shy, nervous, and indecisive, someone who needs to be looked after, who always wants someone else to make the decisions and who doesn't want to get involved with anyone or anything. They see you as a worrier, who sees problems that don't exist. Some people think you are boring. Only line people who know you well know that you aren't. The trouble is that you don't let very many people get close to you.

**From 21 to 30 points:** Your friends see you as painstaking, perhaps a little too fussy at times. They see you as very, very cautious and extremely careful, a slow arid steady plodder. It would really surprise them if you ever did something impulsively or on the spur of the moment. They expect you to examine everything carefully from every side and then usually decide against it. They think this reaction on your part is caused partly by your careful nature and partly by laziness.

**From 31 to 40 points:** Other people see you as sensible, cautious, careful, and practical. They see you as clever, gifted, or talented, but modest. Not a person who makes friends too quickly or too easily, but someone who is extremely loyal to the friends she/he does make and who expects the same loyalty in return. Those who really get to know you realize that it takes a lot to shake your trust in your friends, but equally, that it takes you a long time to get over it if that trust is shaken.

**From 41 50 points:** Others see you as fresh, lively, charming, amusing and always interesting; someone who is constantly the centre of attention, but sufficiently well-balanced, not to let it go to your head. They see you also as kind, considerate and understanding; someone who will cheer them up or help them out.

**From 51 to 60 points:** Your friends see you as an exciting, highly volatile, rather impulsive personality; a natural leader, quick to make decisions (though not always the right ones). They see you as bold and venturesome, someone who will try anything - well, almost anything - once; someone who takes a chance and enjoys an adventure. They enjoy being in your company because of the excitement you radiate.

**Over 60 points:** Others see you as someone they should "handle with care". You are seen as vain, self-centred, and extremely dominant. Others may admire you and wish they could be more like you but they don't always trust you and hesitate to become too deeply involved with you.

**Test 3.15. School's out for Summer**

**1. Will you be sad to miss your favourite TV programmes?**

- a) No, it won't matter; I'll do video them.

b) Maybe, but the holiday will be different, and it will be fun.

c) No, I can always amuse without TV.

**2. Will you go swimming while you're on holiday?**

a) Yes – if the water's warm

b) You're joking! The sea is full of sharks.

c) Of course. Why go on holiday if you don't swim?

**3. What about foreign food?**

a) McDonald's hamburgers are the limit for me.

b) OK, but not too hot and spicy.

c) Pizza, paella, sauerkraut, spaghetti, roast beef, curry ... you name it and I'll eat it.

**4. What will you enjoy best about your holiday?**

a) New friends, new things to see and do.

b) A good rest after a hard year at school.

c) The journey home again.

**5. Will you try to speak another language if you visit a foreign country?**

a) Why? I'll speak loudly and slowly and everyone will understand.

b) I can say "please" and "thank you" in many languages – that's enough.

c) Of course. That's why I'm going.

**6. Are you going to visit any ruins?**

a) Of course. I adore history.

b) A pile of old stones? Why?

c) Of course – but I hope there's a good café for a cold drink or an ice cream there too.

**7. Will you buy any presents on this trip for your friends or family?**

a) Absolutely not. I haven't got enough money.

b) Yes – small cheap presents; special things from that region.

c) Of course! I'll "shop till I drop".

**Add your score:**

<b>1</b>	a) 1	b) 2	c) 3	<b>2</b>	a) 2	b) 1	c) 3
<b>3</b>	a) 1	b) 2	c) 3	<b>4</b>	a) 3	b) 2	c) 1
<b>5</b>	a) 1	b) 2	c) 3	<b>6</b>	a) 3	b) 1	c) 2
<b>7</b>	a) 1	b) 2	c) 3				

**Analysis:**

**7 – 10** – you'll be happier if you stay at home, but if your parents have organized a family holiday, try to enjoy it and then it will be fun for everyone.

**11 – 16** – relax and you'll enjoy your holiday. Try new things and you'll have a pleasant surprise.

**17 – 21** – holiday will be your idea of heaven. You know how to entertain yourself and know how to get the best from your holiday.

**Test 3.16. New Year Test**

*What kinds of Christmas-tree decorations do you remind the first when it's time to decorate the Christmas tree? Ordinary decorations can tell us a lot about*

*your character.*

**A glass ball**

You are a punctual and rather conservative person. Your relatives feel themselves very reliable close to you (they know that in hard times you offer them a helping hand).

**A snowman**

You are a big child in your soul that's why you get along well with children. Your relatives continue to present plush toys to you. You often dream even when it's time to act. Your friends love you because you have a forgiving nature and kind heart.

**An icicle**

You are a prudent and economical person. You have a good taste and talent to decorate your house without anything. You understand the role of details that's why you think about all – from accessories for clothes to colour of napkin for festive table. Also you consider gifts for your relatives and friends beforehand.

**A garland**

You are a bright and witty person, all people are glad to see you at any party. You are an easy-going person, you like music; you have something bohemian at your character. You seldom act without profit; you spend money easy and irrationally. You are considered to be the life and soul of the party.

**Gold or silver rain**

You are an improvident and contradictory person. You like to shine in a big party and then to stay at home for a week. You adore receiving presents but you remind to buy them at the last moment. However you are a very kind and sincere person.

**Test 3.17. Do You Have a Good Body Image?**

A person with anorexia may be very thin but still might see themselves as overweight. Try out quiz to find out if you are happy with your body.

**1. When you look in the mirror, do you feel happy with what you see?**

- a) Yes, I usually feel pleased with what I look like,
- b) Sometimes. It depends if I'm having "a bad hair day"
- c) No, never. I always think I look awful.

**2. How many different clothes do you try on before you decide what to wear?**

- a) I wear the first thing I put on.
- b) 2 – 3
- c) I try on so many that I can't remember.

**3. What's the worst experience?**

- a) An exam.
- b) A bad haircut.
- c) Going shopping for clothes.

**4. How do you feel about having your photo taken?**

- a) I love it!
- b) I like it most of the time.

c) I avoid it whenever I can.

**5. A friend tells you that you're looking good. How do you reply?**

a) Thanks very much. I feel good today

b) Thanks but I need to lose a bit of weight

c) Are you blind?

**Analysis:**

**Mostly as:** You have a very good body image. You are comfortable with you boy and you are confident. Well done!

**Mostly bs:** Most days you have a good body image but on the days when you don't, try to remember the things that are really important in life: good health, good friends and having fun!

**Mostly cs:** You have a very bad body image. You are always thinking about improving your body. You should relax and find friends who are more interested in personality than looks.

**Test 3.18. Are You a Fashion Victim?**

A fashion victim is a person who only thinks they "look" right if they have exactly the clothes, make-up and hairstyle which are fashionable right now. They look at models on TV or in magazines and think, "If I can't look like that, I'm nobody". Are you like that? Do this questionnaire and see.

**1) How often do you buy clothes?**

a) Once a week.

b) Once a month.

c) Once a year.

**2) How do you feel about your hair?**

a) My hair is my hair - I just make it look as good as I can.

b) I can't make it look the way I want.

c) I don't care how it looks at all.

**3) If you were given \$ 150, how much would you spend on clothes?**

a) All of it.

b) None of it.

c) Some of it.

**4) How do you buy clothes?**

a) My parents have to force me to buy new clothes.

b) I go out and spend time buying clothes, whether I really "need" them or not.

c) I buy clothes when I need them.

**5) Where do you buy your clothes?**

a) Big department stores.

b) Fashionable boutiques.

c) The cheapest possible place.

**6) Imagine you are going out tonight. You've got a favourite item of clothing (a dress, a shirt, a pair of jeans) that you think looks fantastic and you want to wear it. However, you discover it's being washed, and you can't. How do you**

feel?

- a) Very depressed.
- b) It's a pity but it doesn't really matter.
- c) You don't care.

**7) Imagine you are going out tonight. How long do you spend getting dressed?**

- a) 1 - 3 hours.
- b) 20 minutes - 1 hour.
- c) Less than 20 minutes.

**Add your score:**

1.	a - 3;	b - 2;	c - 1;
2.	a - 2;	b - 3;	c - 1;
3.	a - 3;	b - 1;	c - 2;
4.	a - 1;	b - 3;	c - 2;
5.	a - 2;	b - 3;	c - 1;
6.	a - 3;	b - 2;	c - 1;
7.	a - 3;	b - 2;	c - 1;

**Analysis:**

**14 – 21:** You are a fashion victim. You worry continually about what you look like. Do you really think it's right to worry so much about your image? Can't you be just you?

**6 – 13:** You seem to have a balanced attitude to fashion. You like to look good, - because you like yourself, and you want to present an appearance to the world that matches your view of yourself.

**1 – 5:** You are at the other extreme from "fashion victim". You're a sort of "anti-fashion victim". You probably look terrible - and you don't care. Could it be because you don't care about yourself? - if so, think more of yourself.

### Test 3.19. Which Pet is the Best for You?

**1. Are you ready to spend time taking care of animals?**

- a) If I have my own pet, I am ready to spend all my free time taking care of it.
- b) I don't have enough time, but I can always count on the help of my parents.
- c) I like playing with animals and watching them but I don't think caring about animals takes a lot of time.

**2. Your ideal pet is for you:**

- a) something to help you stand out in a crowd.
- b) a good friend.
- c) something quiet and peaceful.

**3. Do you think that a pet makes your house/flat a mess?**

- a) Yes, it does, but I can stand it if it helps me to be original.
- b) Yes, sometimes it does, but if you love it that ideal orders is not important.
- c) Only if one lets it go wherever it wants. You can find a certain place for your pet to live in.

**4. Is your house/flat:**

- a) large enough to house a whole zoo?
- b) there's enough place for my family and a pet
- c) comfortable but not very large?

**Add your score A, B or C:**

How many *As*, *Bs* and *Cs* have you got?

**Analysis:**

**Now find out which pet is best for you. If you get mostly:**

*As* - You like to show off a bit some exotic pet is ideal for you.

*Bs* - You are a good-natured so a cat or a dog is a good friend for you.

*Cs* - You like animal world but you are not prepared to meet any difficulties. Besides, you like peace and quietness. That's why keeping fish is an excellent choice for you.

**Test 3.20. What Suits You more: City or Country Life?**

**1. Is entertainment an important part of your life?**

- a) Yes, of course, I like going out to a different place each time.
- b) Yes, it is, but sometimes I can do without it as well.
- c) Mainly I like to stay at home to watch TV and read books.

**2. Do you like having picnics in the open air?**

- a) No, thank you, I'd better go to the theatre.
- b) Yes, from time to time it is useful.
- c) Yes, being out in the open air is essential to me.

**3. Do you like meeting new people every day?**

- a) Yes, the more new people - the more new impressions!
- b) Well, a person you meet today can become your friend tomorrow... But don't forget the old ones.
- c) No, I feel uncomfortable with strangers.

**4. Is peace and quiet important for you?**

- a) It's not my top priority.
- b) Yes, sometimes I need peace and quiet to concentrate.
- c) Yes, they are essential to me.

**Add your score A, B or C:**

How many *As*, *Bs* and *Cs* have you got?

**Analysis:**

**Now find out what suits you more: city or country life. If you get mostly:**

*As* - You are a real child of a noisy city.

*Bs* - You like living in a city but you need a summer cottage in the countryside.

*Cs* - Country life suits you more. You are happy there.



**Test 3.21. What Kind of School is Best for You?**

**1. What are you most likely to have in your school bag?**

- a) An old piece of bubble gum.
- b) Nothing.
- c) Your mobile phone and personal organizer.
- d) Your ballet shoes, a musical instrument and a script.

**2. What would you prefer to eat for school lunch?**

- a) Pizza and chips.
- b) Organic vegetable curry and brown bread.
- c) Salad.
- d) There's only time for a quick sandwich. I have to go to an audition.

**3. What's the worst punishment?**

- a) Detention.
- b) Knowing you've let yourself down.
- c) The teacher taking your credit card away.
- d) Losing your part in the school play.

**4. What game are you most likely to play in the playground?**

- a) Skateboarding or football.
- b) Climbing trees and reading poetry.
- c) Designer label spotting.
- d) Inventing songs and dances.

**5. What is the coolest thing to wear to school?**

- a) The best trainers.
- b) Anything that expresses the real you.
- c) Anything very expensive.
- d) Dance clothes.

**6. What is your favourite sport?**

- a) Football.
- b) Yoga.
- c) Aerobics.
- d) Dancing.

**7. You're good at...**

- a) Science.
- b) Talking about your friends.
- c) Shopping.
- d) Showing off.

**Analysis:**

**Mostly a's:** Normal school. The best school for you is a normal, average school. You like normal school food, sports and activities and you make friends easily.

**Mostly b's:** Democratic school. The best school for you is a democratic school or studying at home. You like to be free and independent. And you enjoy the sort of food and activities that you don't find at a normal school.

**Mostly c's:** Posh school. The best school for you is a posh school where

everyone has lots of money. You can spend your break times with your friends at the cafe or the shopping mall.

**Mostly d's:** Theatre school. You love drama and dance so the best school for you is a theatre school where you can be really creative and show off your talents.

### Test 3.22. What has Life Taught You?

*According to Albert Einstein education is something that remains after a person forgets everything he has been taught. And what has life taught you? Answer the questions and sum up the results*

- 1) Have you been taught to cope with difficulties?
- 2) Are you always prepared for the lessons?
- 3) Are most of domestic duties done by you or your family members?
- 4) Are you prepared to treat people the way you want to be treated?
- 5) Are you aimed at self-education?
- 6) Are you usually involved in out-of-class activities?
- 7) Are you allowed to plan your life the way you want?
- 8) Are you satisfied with the level of education you are provided?
- 9) Are you born to create something new and unusual?
- 10) Are you influenced by people's opinion?
- 11) Are you interested in pop-music?
- 12) Are you appreciated by all of your acquaintances?
- 13) Are you touched by sufferings of people?

Each positive answer - **1** score, negative - **0**.

#### **Analysis:**

**0 - 5** - you are not experienced enough. But you have time to gain experience.

**5 - 10** - you are a life expert, but some gaps in your education are left.

**10 - 13** - you are born to be a master of fate.

### Test 3.23. Teachers' Quiz

*How professional are you? Each question has one answer worth maximum points. Check your scores and your rating. Come on, be honest!*

#### **1. It's the last day of the summer holidays, do you**

- a) look forward to being back at work;
- b) mark the weeks to half-term on your wall calendar;
- c) buy an extra Lotto ticket;

#### **2. Children are ...**

- a) the enemy;
- b) the future;
- c) the reason you became a teacher;

#### **3. The Government announces yet another curriculum change, do you**

- a) welcome it with open arms;
- b) look up the Samaritans' number in the phone book;
- c) decided you are going to teach what you have always taught anyway;

**4. You are called into the head's office accused of swearing in class, do you**

- a) say that "you know fuck all about it";
- b) argue for the need to address pupils in their home;
- c) apologise and promise it won't happen again;

**5. An angry parent confronts you in your classroom, do you**

- a) scream for help;
- b) speak to them in a calm voice and suggest it's better to discuss things in the head's room;

- c) tell your mum you wish she wouldn't bother you while you are at work;

**6. A colleague makes an unkind remark to you, do you**

- a) let it go, we all get stressed;
- b) make a doll image of them and stick pins in it;
- c) speak to them and explain your feelings;

**7. A younger teacher is promoted ahead of you, do you**

- a) accept that the best person won and look forward to the next opportunity;
- b) look for grounds for grievance;
- c) doubt yourself and your abilities;

**8. You see a pupil you don't know crying, do you**

- a) tell him to "cheer up";
- b) report it to the child's teacher;
- c) cry with him;

**9. At the end of every term your pupils give you gifts, do you**

- a) open a market stall selling toiletries;
- b) suggest they make contributions to a charity of your choice;
- c) drop hints that you would prefer alcohol;

**10. There is a class you can't control, do you**

- a) shout yourself hoarse to no avail;
- b) ask your head for help;
- c) keep it to yourself because you are the head;

**11. It's the day before inspections, do you**

- a) look forward to it with nervous anticipation;
- b) think of some symptoms that would allow you to stay home;
- c) Say "all things must pass" as you go to the pub;

**12. An interactive white board is**

- a) a great teaching tool;
- b) something you have to use when you're being observed;
- c) a good place to put up displays;

**13. You see two children fighting at break time, do you**

- a) run towards them;
- b) run away from them;
- c) walk calmly towards them;

**14. The best thing about teaching is**

- a) the summer holidays;
- b) making a real difference to the lives of young people;
- c) the pay;

**15. In the future do you see yourself?**

- a) still doing the same thing as you are now;
- b) running your school;
- c) running away;

**Check your answers and add up your points out of 30**

<b>1</b>	a - 2	b - 1	c - 0	<b>8</b>	a - 1	b - 2	c - 0
<b>2</b>	a - 0	b - 1	c - 2	<b>9</b>	a - 0	b - 2	c - 1
<b>3</b>	a - 2	b - 0	c - 1	<b>10</b>	a - 0	b - 2	c - 1
<b>4</b>	a - 0	b - 1	c - 2	<b>11</b>	a - 2	b - 1	c - 0
<b>5</b>	a - 0	b - 2	c - 1	<b>12</b>	a - 2	b - 1	c - 0
<b>6</b>	a - 2	b - 0	c - 1	<b>13</b>	a - 1	b - 0	c - 2
<b>7</b>	a - 2	b - 0	c - 1	<b>14</b>	a - 1	b - 2	c - 0
				<b>15</b>	a - 1	b - 2	c - 0

So, to which group of teachers do you belong?

**21 - 30 – Outstanding** - You are the *crème de la crème*, you are a teacher for the right reasons. You are doing a professional job. You work hard for your pupils, you are honest and you're a good colleague. But remember work/life balance is important.

**11 - 20 – Good** - You clearly have it in you to be an outstanding teacher, your intentions are good. Perhaps sometimes your inexperience lets you down. For example, if you walk calmly rather than run towards an incident then you are giving the pupils a chance to say "look out, teacher's coming", you've already started to deal with the matter before you arrive. Come on, let your inner teacher out.

**1 - 9 – Satisfactory** - Oh dear. Your heart's not really in it, is it? We all know the days of being content to be "satisfactory" are long gone. Teaching has never been more demanding. Are you sure you're the one to help children to fulfill their hopes and dreams? Perhaps you would be happier as an estate agent? After all, houses don't have feelings.

**0 – Inadequate** - There are websites that carry your picture, so just give yourself up now.

**Test 3.24. Talking Scribbles**

Thinking about something, we often draw on the sheet of paper the scribbles. And these scribbles can tell much about us!

**Flowers** - you always have fine, you prefer to see only positive side of the life! People like to spend the time with you and you have a lot of friends.

**Small boxes** - you are very organized and tidy person, you always know what you want, and you like to plan your life in advance.

**Mugs** - if your mugs smile you are friendly person. Ugly faces tell about that you something can knit your brows.

**Hearts** - you are very romantic person and sometimes too vulnerable. The more the heart the more you like to be in the highlight.

**Stars or suns** - you are very persistent, and you have large plans. You would like to be a star and, possibly, you will become it!

**Arrows and lines** – Arrows mean that you are thinking about some decision now. Crossed lines testify that you are nervous!

**Patterns** - Repetitive elements (waves or circles) tell about that you balanced and quiet person who likes to control the situation.

**Intricate drawings** - Thick and angular contours tell about that it is difficult to concentrate for you. If you cover with drawing the figures in the middle it is the sign of calmness.

Видавництво ПП "НОВИЙ СВІТ-2000"

## CHAPTER IV

### ANIMAL IDIOMS

#### *Dog Idioms*

**dog eat dog** - a situation in which people compete very hard and will do anything to be successful: *It's dog eat dog in the television industry.*

**a dog in the manger** - someone who does not want or need something, but will not let other people have it;

**dressed up like a dog's dinner** - dressed in a way that shows that you are trying to impress people, but is not suitable for the occasion;

**every dog has its/his day** - used for saying that every person will have a time during their life when they are important, lucky, or successful;

**give a dog a bad name** - used for saying that once someone has a bad reputation, people will blame them for everything;

**going to the dogs** - if a place or organization is going to the dogs, it is not as good as it was in the past: *He's always saying that the country is going to the dogs.*

**it's a dog's life** - used for saying that life is not fair and is full of troubles;

**like a dog with a bone** - not willing to stop until you have finished dealing with something, especially a problem that is worrying you;

**in the doghouse** - if you are in the doghouse someone is angry with you because you have done something wrong;

**call off the/your dogs** - to stop criticizing or attacking another person: *All right, you win - you can call off the dogs now.*

**you can't teach an old dog new tricks** - used for saying that it is very difficult to make someone do something in a new way when they have been doing it their own way for a long time;

**let sleeping dogs lie** - to leave a person or situation alone if they might cause you trouble: *Don't ask him again. It's better to let sleeping dogs lie.*

**the tail wagging the dog** - used for saying that a situation is stupid because something important is being decided or controlled by something less important;

**work like a dog** - to work hard and much;

**to treat someone like a dog** - to treat anyone badly;

**to sleep like a dog** - to sleep deeply;

**to make a dog's dinner of something** - miss one's target; make a mess of things;

**dogsbody** - someone who is forced to do all the jobs that no one else wants to do;

**dog days** - the hottest days of the year;

**dog-tired** - extremely tired;

**puppy love** - love that a young boy and a girl feel for each other that does not last;

**top dog** - the best, most important, or most powerful person, often the winners in a competition;

**a dog's breakfast/dinner** - something that is very untidy or badly done.



### Horse Idioms

**back/pick the wrong horse** – to choose the wrong thing or person for a particular purpose;

**change horse in midstream** - to change your mind about something in the middle of doing it;

**get on/off your high horse** - behave/stop behaving as if you know more or are better than anyone else;

**hold your horses** - used for telling someone to wait before doing something;

**I could eat a horse** - used for saying that you are very hungry;

**wild horses couldn't/wouldn't drag smb somewhere or wild horses couldn't/wouldn't make smb do smth** - used for emphasizing that someone is determined not to do something;

**you can lead/take a horse to water but you can't make him drink** - used for saying that you can try to help someone do something but they may still choose not to do it;

**put the cart before the horse** - to do one thing before another thing that you should have done first;

**don't/never look a gift horse in the mouth** - used for saying that if you are given something good, you should not complain about it or try to find things that are wrong with it;

**from the horse's mouth** – information from the horse's mouth comes from someone who is directly involved;

**a dead horse** – exhaust the topic;

**a horse opera** – western;

**a horse of a different colour** – it's another story;

**eat like a horse** – to eat a lot;

**work like a horse** – to work hard;

**play the horses** – to play horse racing;

**flog a dead horse** – to do without effect / result, burn daylight;

**dark horse** - 1) someone with a secret, especially a secret ability, skill, or achievement, that surprises you when you finally discover it; 2) someone who wins a race, competition, election etc that no one expected them to win.

### Chicken Idioms

**chickens come home to roost** - used for saying that the bad results of something someone has done are starting to happen or to become clear;

**don't count your chickens (before they are hatched)** - used for telling someone not to make plans that depend on the success of something until they are certain that it is successful;

**chicken** -

1) a game played especially by children in which the winner is the person who continues doing something dangerous the longest: **play chicken** - *The kids were playing chicken on the railway track when the accident happened.*

2) a situation in which two groups or countries threaten each other until one gives the other what they want: **game of chicken** - *The affair degenerated into the longest game of chicken in diplomatic history.*

**chicken** - not brave enough to do something: *I was terrified, but I didn't want the others to think I was chicken.*

**chicken/chicken out** - to not do something you were going to do because you are too frightened: *I was going to tell her how much it really cost, but I chickened out.*

**chicken-and-egg** – a chicken-and-egg situation is one where it is impossible to say which of two things happened first or caused the other to happen;

**hen night or hen party** - a celebration for a woman who is about to be married, in which only her women friends take part - compare **STAG NIGHT**;

**spring chicken - be no spring chicken** - (humorous) to be rather old.

### **Monkey idioms**

**cheeky monkey** - used for telling someone that they are not showing respect, when you are not really angry;

**smb couldn't/doesn't give a monkey's** – used for saying that someone really does not care: *Who gives a monkey's where she's gone?*

**make a monkey out of smb** - to make someone seem stupid;

**monkey – monkey around or monkey a boat** – to behave in a silly way;

**monkey business** – dishonest or bad behaviour;

**monkeyshines** – silly tricks or jokes;

**monkey suit** – a man's formal black suit;

**put smb's monkey up** – to make angry;

**have a monkey in the back** – to be a drug addict;

**make a monkey of** – to make a mockery;

**monkey tricks** – mischief, devilment.

### **Fish Idioms**

**a fish out of water** - someone who is in a situation that they know nothing about or are not used to;

**a big fish in a small pond** - someone who is important or powerful only because there are not many other people competing with them;

**a cold fish** - someone who is not friendly;

**drink like a fish** - to drink a lot of alcohol regularly;

**have bigger/other fish to fry** - to have more important things to do or think about;

**neither fish nor fowl** - used for saying that you do not know what something is;

**there are plenty more fish in the sea** - used for telling someone whose boyfriend or girlfriend has left them that they will soon have another relationship;

**red herring** – something not relevant that confuses you or takes your attention away from what you should be concentrated on.

### **Rat Idioms**

**like rats deserting a sinking ship** - in a hurry to leave when problems develop;

**look like a drowned rat** - to look very wet and cold;

**smell a rat** - to begin to think that something is wrong in a situation for example that someone has tricked you;

**rat** or **1) rat on (rat on smb)** to tell someone in authority about something that someone you know has done wrong; **2) rat on smth** - not do something that you promised to do: *I can't back someone who rats on his promises.*

**rat race** - an activity, job, or situation in which there is a lot of competition and people are too busy to relax or enjoy themselves;

**rat run** - a small road that drivers use at busy times of the day in order to avoid traffic on the main roads;

**rat trap** - a dirty old building in bad condition.

**have rats in the attic** - to be out of one's mind;

**wet like a drowned rat** - wet through.

### Pig Idioms

**make a pig of yourself** - to eat far too much food at one time;

**make a pig's ear of smth** - to do very badly;

**buy a pig in a poke** - something you have bought without seeing it first;

**make a silk purse out of a sow's ear** - to try to improve a person or object that cannot be changed;

**pig off** - to make someone feel very annoyed or upset: *He admits the experience left him thoroughly pigged off.*

**pig out** - to eat an extremely large amount of food: *Kids pigging out on junk food & soda.*

**pigs might fly** - used for saying that something is completely impossible.

**piggyback** - if you give someone a piggyback, you carry them on your back with your arms supporting their legs;

**piggy bank** - a container used by children for saving money in, sometimes shaped like a pig;

**piggy-in-the-middle** - **1)** children's game in which two people throw a ball to each other and a third person stands between them and tries to catch it; **2)** someone who is caught between two people or groups who are having an argument, especially when they are friendly with both sides;

**pigheaded** - obstinate; stubborn.

### Goose Idioms

**what's good for the goose is good for the gander** or **what's sauce for the goose is sauce for the gander** - used for saying that if something is good or acceptable for one person it is therefore good or acceptable for another person;

**smb wouldn't say boo to a goose** - used for saying that someone is very quiet and shy;

**the goose that lays the golden eggs** - a person or thing that provides money.

**golden goose** - something that will continue to make someone very rich or successful for a long time;

**goose bumps** - if you get goose bumps, very small lumps appear on your skin and your hairs stand up straight, because you are cold, frightened, or excited;

**goose-step** - to march by without bending your leg when you raise it;

**wild-goose chase** - an attempt to find something that does not exist or that you are very unlikely to discover.

### Cat Idioms

**let the cat out of the bag** - to tell someone something that was intended to be secret: **He has let the cat out of the bag about the government's true intentions.**

**be the cat's whiskers** - to be better than everyone else;

**(has the) cat got your tongue** - used when someone does not speak when you expect them to;

**it's raining cats and dogs** - used for saying that a lot of rain is falling;

**like a cat on hot bricks** - unable to stay still or concentrate because you are very nervous or worried;

**like the cat that got the cream** - very pleased about something you have achieved;

**look like something the cat dragged/brought in** - to have a very dirty or untidy appearance;

**not enough room to swing a cat** - used for saying that a room is very small and there is not enough space to live comfortably in it;

**not have a cat in hell's chance** - to have no chance at all of doing something: **We don't have a cat in hell's chance of changing her mind.**

**put/set the cat among the pigeons** - to cause trouble by doing or saying something;

**when/while the cat's away (the mice will play)** - used for saying that people will do what they want and have fun if someone in authority is not there;

**have kittens** - to be very nervous, worried, or upset;

**fight like cat and dog** - to fight or argue often or with a lot of anger;

**enough to make a cat laugh** - very funny;

**lead a cat and dog life** - to constantly quarrel, to be at enmity;

**turn cat in the pan** - to go over to the enemy; to become a defector;

**fight like Kilkenney cats** - fight to the end;

**barber's cat** - a yap;

**there isn't enough room to swing a cat** - little space;

**that cat won't jump** - it is no go; nothing doing;

**cat and mouse** - a situation in which you let someone else believe that they have managed to escape, before you actually catch them: **a game of cat and mouse;**

**fat cat** - a very rich and powerful person, usually in business or politics. This word shows that you dislike people like this.

### Sheep Idioms

**count sheep** - to imagine sheep and count them as a way of making yourself go to sleep;

**separate the sheep from the goats** - to separate the people who are clever or good from the ones who are not;

**wolf in sheep's clothing** - 1) someone who seems friendly but is in fact unpleasant or cruel; 2) something that seems good at first but is in fact harmful.

**black sheep** - someone who is not approved of by the other members of their family or the group they belong to because they are thought to behave badly;

**sheepish** - ashamed or embarrassed about something you have done: **a sheepish grin/smile.**

**black sheep** – an outcast, a person who is despised by others;

**follow like sheep** – to follow blindly;

**cast / make sheep's eyes at smb** – cast amorous looks;

**as silly as a sheep** – very stupid.

### **Duck Idioms**

**get (all) your ducks in a row** - to prepare something carefully so that you make no mistakes;

**break the duck** - to be successful again after a series of failures;

**take to smth like a duck to water** - to learn a new activity very easily, as if you have been doing it for a very long time;

**water off a duck's back** - used for saying that advice, warnings, or insults do not affect someone.

**dead duck** - something that will certainly fail.

### **Bird Idioms**

**be (strictly) for the birds** - to have no use, purpose, or importance;

**the bird has flown** - used for saying that someone you are trying to find has already gone or has escaped;

**bird in the hand (is worth two in the bush)** - used for saying that it is better to have something that you can be certain of than to want something that might be better but you are not certain to get;

**the birds and the bees** - the facts about sex, when they are explained to children for the first time;

**birds of a feather (flock together)** - used for saying that people of a similar type tend to support and agree with each other;

**do bird** - to be in prison;

**be a box of birds** - be happy or in good health;

**kill two birds with one stone** - to achieve two aims with one action;

**a little bird told me** - used for saying that you are not going to say who told you something: **A little bird told me you'd got a new job.**

**bird-brained** - stupid in an annoying way: **a bird-brained idea.**

### **Bull Idioms**

**like a bull in a china shop** – awkwardly, clumsily;

**a cock-and-bull story** – a tale; megillah;

**hit / core the bull's eye** – to hit the mark; accurately engage the target;

**bullhead** – dumbass; blockhead;

**bull session** – men's conversation; conversation;

**take the bull by the horns** – boldly get down to business.

### **Goat Idioms**

**get smb's goat** – to irritate; раздражать, make angry;

**as stubborn as a goat** – very stubborn;

**act / play the giddy goat** – to play the idiot; play the fool.



### Hare Idioms

*kiss the hare's foot* – to be late;  
*(as) fast as a hare* – to run away quickly and cowardly;  
*(as) mad as a March hare* – completely insane; stark raving mad;  
*(as) timid as a hare* – timid, shy.

### Wolf Idioms

*cry wolf* – to announce false alarm;  
*keep the wolf from the door* – to fight with poverty;  
*have / hold the wolf by the ears* – to be at hopeless conditions;  
*wolf down* – to eat hungrily;  
*wolf whistle* – admiring whistle at the sight of a beautiful woman.

### Bear idioms

*play the bear* – to behave rudely;  
*as cross / surly / sulky as a bear* – very angry;  
*bear garden* – noisy crowd.

### Camel Idioms

*the straw that broke the camel's back* – a last drop.

### Tiger Idioms

*fight like a tiger* – to fight bravely;  
*a paper tiger* – something that represents only an apparent threat;  
*(as) fierce as a tiger* – fierce.

### Ox Idioms

*as strong as an ox* – very strong;  
*as patient as an ox* – very patient;  
*the black ox* – age; misfortune.

### Elephant Idioms

*white elephant* – burdensome or wasteful property;  
*have a memory like an elephant* – to have unique memory, remember everything;  
*see / to get a look at the elephant* – to see life; gain experience.

### Lion Idioms

*gird one's lions* – prepare carefully; *(as) bold / brave as a lion* – very brave;  
*roar like a lion* – to rear loudly; to shout loudly;  
*show / see the lions* – to show around / see the sights;  
*put one's head in the lion's mouth* – to risk; ride blind;  
*lion's share* – most; majority; *lion in the path / way* – dangerous hurdle.

### Fox Idiom

*(as) sly as a fox* – very shy.



4.1. Check yourself

**Task 1. Animal Idioms**

<i>to kill two birds with a stone</i>	to do two things at one and the same time;
<i>a bull in a china shop</i>	an awkward, heavy-footed person;
<i>to let sleeping dogs lie</i>	to leave alone things that might cause trouble;
<i>to take the bull by the horns</i>	to take bold decisive measures;
<i>to let the cat out of the bag</i>	not to keep a secret;
<i>you can lead a horse to the water, but you can't make it drink</i>	there are some things you can't force people to do;
<i>to work like a horse</i>	to be hard-working;
<i>to lead a cat and dog life</i>	not to get on very well together;
<i>to be like a cat on hot bricks</i>	to fuss;
<i>birds of a feather flock together</i>	to mix with people of one's own kind;
<i>straight from the horse's mouth</i>	to know smth for a fact.

**Fill in the idioms:**

1. How awkward you are, Tom! You are like ... 2. She is very nervous today. Don't trouble her - ... 3. Oh, Henry and Lucy always quarrel. They lead ... 4. Sarah is a real fusspot - she is always like ... 5. I know this for sure - ... 6. Tom ..., he just can't keep secrets. 7. Be decisive! ... 8. She works so hard. - Yes, she works ... 9. Henry is careful what company he keeps. As they say, ...

**Task 2. Guessing the meanings of idioms**

1. The brakes on my car are bad. I bought *a lemon*. 2. When I told him what had happened he *went bananas*. 3. Play soccer in the rain? Are you *nuts*? 4. I works six days a week *to bring home the bacon*.

**Task 3.** Every culture has its sayings and idioms. They are fantastic expressions that have a hidden meaning different from the literal meaning. Most of the time they are funny and amusing. Let's try the ones below and see if you can understand them

1. Go bananas a) Like bananas very much. b) Be very angry. c) Go to buy bananas in a supermarket.	6. Once in a blue Moon a) Something that happens very rarely. b) Something that is difficult to find. c) Wishing to go to the Moon.
2. Set the word on fire a) Put everything on fire. b) Eat something very hot. c) Become successful and famous.	7. Have butterflies in one's stomach a) Be a butterfly collector. b) Feel light and relaxed. c) Feel agitated and nervous.
3. Take off your hat to somebody a) Be very polite to somebody. b) Admire somebody for something that they have done. c) Congratulate somebody on his/her achievements.	8. Be in a jam a) Eat a lot of jam. b) Be in a serious difficulty. c) Stuck in a traffic jam.
4. Pay through the nose a) Pay a very high price for something. b) Buy something with someone's help. c) Buy something that you later regret.	9. Put one's foot in one's mouth a) Do a very difficult thing. b) Like something that is difficult to get. c) Make a gaffe. Say something without thinking carefully.

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

5. Shoot the breeze a) Shoot something that moving. b) Shoot in the air without looking at anything in particular. c) Chat, talk about unimportant things.	10. Talk turkey a) Talk seriously and honestly, especially about business. b) Talk in a foreign language. c) Come to the point.
---	--

**Task 4. Down and Under.** Choose the correct meaning for underlined word-combinations.

1. Poor Charlie **has been down** in the dumps since he learned that he's lost his job.

<i>miserable</i>	<i>angry</i>	<i>furious</i>	<i>uneasy</i>
------------------	--------------	----------------	---------------

2. I think we've had our fun and now it's time we **got down** to the idea of earning some money.

<i>began slowly to consider</i>	<i>began easily to consider</i>
<i>began seriously to consider</i>	<i>began frankly to consider</i>

3. As soon as they heard the news that one of their fellow workers had been given the sack, they all **downed** tools.

<i>went home</i>	<i>stopped working</i>	<i>stopped talking</i>	<i>worked slowly</i>
------------------	------------------------	------------------------	----------------------

4. She always **talks down** to me as if I'm not worth consideration.

<i>speaks softly</i>	<i>speaks quickly</i>
<i>speaks condescendingly</i>	<i>speaks continuously</i>

5. In contrast to her husband she's a **very down-to-earth** sort of person who manages to control his wild ideas.

<i>cynical</i>	<i>boring</i>	<i>clever</i>	<i>practical</i>
----------------	---------------	---------------	------------------

6. He's certainly **picked himself** up since we last saw him when he was clearly down-at-heel.

<i>loudly dressed</i>	<i>shabbily dressed</i>
<i>strangely dressed</i>	<i>oddly dressed</i>

7. I invested all my money in that failed company and now I find my whole investment **has gone down the drain**.

<i>has been overtaken</i>	<i>has been confirmed</i>
<i>has been wasted</i>	<i>has been confused</i>

8. You can use special symbols in your e-mails if you want to show you're **down in the mouth**.

<i>decided</i>	<i>definite</i>	<i>deflated</i>	<i>depressed</i>
----------------	-----------------	-----------------	------------------

9. Let's put it like this - you made the decision and so **it's down to you** as to what happens next.

<i>your responsibility</i>	<i>your concern</i>
<i>your turn</i>	<i>your thought</i>

10. They've had enough of the bad climate and high taxes here and have gone to live **down under**.

<i>in America</i>	<i>in China</i>
<i>in Australia</i>	<i>in India</i>

### Vocabulary

**condescending** [kɒndi'sendɪŋ] *поблажливий*

**deflate** [dɪ'fleɪt] *викачувати, випустати повітря, газ (з чого-небудь); спускати (про шину); скорочувати випуск грошових знаків; знижувати ціни;*

спростовувати; ставити (кого-небудь) на місце

**down-at-heel** стоптанний (про взуття); кінчений (про людину)

**dump** купна мотлоху; купна сміття; смітник

**furious** ['fju(ə)riəs] розлючений, розлютований; шалений

**miserable** [miz(ə)rəb(ə)l] жалюгідний, нещасний; поганий, кепський, незначний

**oddly** ['ɒdli] дивно

**shabby** ['ʃæbi] поношений, порваний, потертий, старий

## 4.2. Answers

### Task 1. Animal Idioms

1. How awkward you are, Tom! You are like **a bull in a china shop**. 2. She is very nervous today. Don't trouble her - **to let sleeping dogs lie**. 3. Oh, Henry and Lucy always quarrel. They **lead a cat and dog life**. 4. Sarah is a real fusspot - she is always **like a cat on hot bricks**. 5. I know this for sure - **straight from the horse's mouth**. 6. Tom **lets the cat out of the bag**, he just can't keep secrets. 7. Be decisive! **Take the bull by the horns!** 8. She works so hard. - Yes, she **works like a horse**. 9. Henry is careful what company he keeps. As they say, **birds of a feather flock together**.

### Task 2. Guessing the meanings of idioms

1. **A lemon** is something that is **a failure** or that is not as good as you expected it to be. 2. He **became** very **angry**. 3. If you say that someone is **nuts**, you mean that he / she is **mad**. 4. The person in a family who **brings** home the **bacon provides** the family with **money, food** and **other necessary things**.

### Task 3.

1. Go bananas - **Be very angry**. 2. Set the word on fire - **Become successful and famous**. 3. Take off your hat to somebody - **Admire somebody for something that they have done**. 4. Pay through the nose - **Pay a very high price for something**. 5. Shoot the breeze - **Chat, talk about unimportant things**. 6. Once in a blue Moon - **Something that happens very rarely**. 7. Have butterflies in one's stomach - **Feel agitated and nervous**. 8. Be in a jam - **Be in a serious difficulty**. 9. Put one's foot in one's mouth - **Make a gaffe. Say something without thinking carefully**. 10. Talk turkey - **Talk seriously and honestly, especially about business**.

### Task 4. Down and Under

1. **miserable**; 2. **began seriously to consider**; 3. **stopped working**; 4. **speaks condescendingly**; 5. **practical**; 6. **shabbily dressed**; 7. **has been wasted**; 8. **depressed**; 9. **your responsibility**; 10. **in Australia**.

# CHAPTER V

## ADDITIONAL READING

### 5.1. A Bit About Foreign Languages

#### 5.1.1. American English

More than 265 million people live in the USA and speak English. There are more native speakers of English there than in any other country.

English is the main language of the United States and is spoken by the great majority of US residents. However nearly 32 million residents aged five or older speak a language other than English at home. Of this total, approximately 54 per cent speaks Spanish, making it the second most widely spoken language in the United States. Other languages spoken include Chinese, Polish, Korean, Vietnamese, Portuguese, Japanese, Greek, Arabic, Hindi, Russian, Ukrainian, Yiddish, Persian, French and many others.

When visitors first come to the USA, they become acquainted with the American way of life, American culture, and, of course, with American language. The development of American English is closely connected with the history of the country.

There was not much purity in the English language brought by the Pilgrim group to America. On the other hand, there is a historical fact that the “*Mayflower*” passengers, who are often chosen as the illustrative example, went from England not directly to America but to Holland. Thus, when the “*Mayflower*” went to the New World carrying 202 passengers, representing two thirds of the entire pilgrim population, it carried passengers who could hardly have represented the regional dialects of England.

The great majority of American immigrants came from the southeast of England, and, perhaps by sheer bulk of numbers, they dominated the speakers of any other dialects present. Although the emigrant groups from England came chiefly from relatively low social strata, they did not transplant the British class relationship.

The extensive maritime borrowing and multilingual situation in early America brought about many words, which can only be explained in terms of two or three languages. Let’s trace the origin of the word: *Yankee*. In the maritime trade, which was so vitally important to early American English, a Dutch sailor was sometimes known as *Janke* (“*Little John*”). On the other hand, **Yankee** is an Indian pronunciation of the word *English*. Thus the word *Yankee* meaning “inhabitant of the USA” came out of a multiethnic, multilingual contact situation.

The first English speakers to arrive met Native Americans who spoke many different languages. To trade with them, the Europeans learned words from the local languages, and some of these words became part of American English. Native Americans also worked as guides, leading the European traders around the country. The Europeans learned the Native American names for the places they were passing

through. Over half the states now have Native American names. American English is very flexible and has absorbed many words from the languages of immigrants.

Modern Americans must recognize their debt to American Indian languages for such words as *moccasin*, *raccoon*, *skunk*, *moose*, *toboggan* and many others, which entered American English because of the colonists' need to describe things that were unfamiliar to them.

From Native Americans through Spanish came new terms for exotic foods: *tomatoes*, *avocado*, *barbecue*, *chilli*. Other Indian terms soon became part of the vernacular: *to go on the war path*, *to bury the hatchet*, *pipe of peace*, *snake dance*, *fire water*. At least half of the states have Native American names, as do countless cities, counties, rivers, lakes, and other place names. Settlers from different countries lived there, and they didn't want to use the names brought by others. Native American words, to them, sounded more neutral. African borrowings include *banjo*, *zombie* etc.

The languages of other colonizing nations also contributed to the English of the New World. Thus from Dutch it received *cherry pit*, *boss*, *snoop*, *cookie*, *sugar bush* and *waffle*. Even *Santa Claus* is attributable to the Dutch settlers of the New York region. Spanish did not have an extensive influence on the American English vocabulary until the nineteenth century. Such words as *mosquito*, *Negro* etc. were borrowed in early colonial days. The westward movement, the Gold Rush, the Spanish-American War, and the popularization of "the Western" in movies and on television have brought *lasso*, *siesta*, *rancho*, *corral*, *mustang*, *canyon* into American English.

The recent influences of French are largely from south-western Louisiana, where French is still spoken by half a million people. This area, settled originally by displaced French settlers from Nova Scotia in the eighteenth century; among them are *banquette*, *pirogue* and *praline*.

It was mid-nineteenth century before German borrowings were very extensive. It may seem strange, perhaps, that a Germanic language should later be influenced by German - but such is the fate of a borrowing tongue, lots of Americans know and use the words *kindergarten*, *dunk*, *delicatessen* etc.

American English has borrowed less actively from other languages. When a word is borrowed, it is usually a term for which there is no English equivalent. American English has borrowed many names for foreign foods and eating customs from the Italian *spaghetti*, *pizza*. Some of these terms became widely used, while others still show the nationality of their users.

### Vocabulary

**extensive** [ik'stensiv] великий, широкий

**maritime** ['mæritaim] морський

**borrowing** ['bɔrəʊɪŋ] запозичення

**Yankee = an American**

**raccoon** [rə'ku:n,ræ-] енот

**skunk** [skʌŋk] скунс

**moose** [mu:s] американський лось

**toboggan** [tə'bagən] тобогган, сани

**unfamiliar** [ʌnfəˈmɪliə(r)] *незнайомий, чужий*

**vernacular** [vəˈnækjʊlə] *національний, народний; місцевий діалект*

**snoop** [snu:p] *людина, яка суне носа не в свої справи; сунути носа в чужі справи; підглядати; шпигувати*

### 5.1.2. How Americans Speak

Today, there are some differences in vocabulary, pronunciation, and spelling between American and British English. Sometimes, the difference in spelling is because Americans wanted to make things simpler, so that a word would be spelled the way it is pronounced.

Despite the great distances separating American English-speaking community from the British Isles, and the great social and cultural differences between them, the forms of English, which they use, remain mutually intelligible to a remarkable degree. The main differences are as follows:

#### 1. Grammar

- Americans (US) use **Past Simple** in some cases where British (GB) people use **Present Perfect**, *for example*:

US:	GB:
He just went home.	He's just gone home. <i>Він щойно прийшов додому.</i>

- Americans use the verb **to have** *мати* a little differently in some cases, *for example*:

US:	GB:
Do you have a problem?	Have you got a problem? <i>Чи є у вас які-небудь проблеми?</i>

- the following verbs are different in US and GB. **to burn** *палити, горіти*, **to dream** *бачити сон, мріяти*, **to lean** *нахилияти(ся)*, **to learn** *вчити, дізнаватися*, **to smell** *пахнути, відчувати запах* and **to spoil** *псувати(ся), грабувати* are all regular in American English, while in British English irregular forms are more common. **to fit** *підходити, припасовувати*, **to quit** *залишити, кидати (справу, заняття)* and **to wet** *мочити, зволожувати* are regular in GB, but irregular in US; e.g. **to fit** – **fit** – **fit**. The American past participle of **to get** *діставати, досягати* is usually **gotten**.

- the subjunctive is much more common in American than in British English, *for example*:

US:	GB:
It's essential that he be informed. <i>Він обов'язково має знати.</i>	... that he should be informed.

- there are many small differences in the use of prepositions, *for example*:

US:	GB:
do smth over	do smth again <i>робити щось знов</i>
meet with smb	meet smb <i>зустрічати когось</i>
protest smth	protest against smth <i>виступати проти чогось</i>
stay home	stay at home <i>залишатися вдома</i>



## 2. Vocabulary

Most British people are familiar with many American equivalents for British terms, *for example*:

US:	GB:
cookie	biscuit печиво
elevator	lift ліфт
gas	petrol бензин
vest	waist coat жилет
vacation	holiday(s) канікули
pants	trousers штани, брюки
movie	film фільм
mail	post пошта
apartment	flat квартира
candy	sweets цукерки
drugstore	chemist's аптека
fall	autumn осінь
sick	ill хворий
subway	underground метро

## 3. Spelling

As far back as the 1780s, Noah Webster, founder of one of the most famous American English dictionaries, decided to eliminate from a word any letters that were not pronounced.

- in American English, final **-l** is not usually doubled in an unstressed syllable, *for example*:

US:	GB:
traveler	traveller мандрівник
canceling	cancelling скасування

- some words end in **-ter** in American English and in **-tre** in British, *for example*:

US:	GB:
theater	theatre театр
center	centre центр

- some words end in **-or** in American English and in **-our** in British, *for example*:

US:	GB:
labor	labour праця, робота
honor	honour честь
color	colour колір, фарба

- some words end in **-og** in American English and **-ogue** in British, *for example*:

US:	GB:
catalog	catalogue каталог
dialog	dialogue діалог
analog	analogue аналог

- some spelling differences in individual words, *for example*:

US:	GB:
<b>analyze</b>	<b>analyse</b> <i>аналізувати</i>
<b>check</b>	<b>cheque</b> <i>чек</i>
<b>defense</b>	<b>defence</b> <i>захист</i>
<b>jewelry</b>	<b>jewellery</b> <i>коштовності, ювелірні вироби</i>
<b>offense</b>	<b>offence</b> <i>порушення, проступок</i>
<b>plow</b>	<b>plough</b> <i>плуг</i>
<b>program</b>	<b>programme</b> <i>програма</i>

#### 4. Pronunciation

In New York City many people have a way of speaking English that is called New Yorkese. Speakers of New Yorkese often speak very fast. They tend not to pronounce the **r** in words that end in **-er**. A word like **water** *вода* sounds like **wata**.

Teenagers often like to use a lot of slang, along with expressions such as **like** and **you know**, which can make their way of talking, seem vague. The words they choose are strongly influenced by popular music and fashion.

#### Vocabulary

**intelligible** [in'telidʒəb(ə)l] *зрозумілий, доступний (для розуміння); ясний, чіткий, виразний; розбірливий*

**subjunctive** [səb'dʒegktiv] *умовний спосіб*

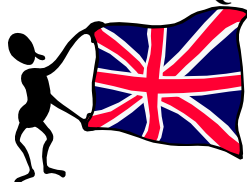
**vague** [veɪɡ] *невизначений, туманний, нечіткий, неясний*

#### The USA Quiz



1. Where does the President of the USA live and work? a) In Congress; b) In the White House; c) In the Pentagon	5. Who was the first President of the USA? a) George Washington; b) Abraham Lincoln; c) Ulysses Grant.
2. Which is the biggest state in the USA? a) Texas; b) California; c) Alaska.	6. Why do the Americans celebrate the 4 <sup>th</sup> of July? a) Declaration of Independence; b) The first Moon landing; c) The end of the American Civil War.
3. How many states are there in the USA? a) 48; b) 52; c) 50.	7. In which city is Hollywood? a) New York; b) San Francisco; c) Los Angeles.
4. When did the American Civil war end? a) In 1789; b) In 1895; c) In 1776.	8. Which is the most popular sport in the USA? a) Baseball; b) American Football; c) Tennis.

Great Britain Quiz



1. The British Isles lie in the ... of Europe. a) <i>northeast</i> b) <i>southwest</i> c) <i>northwest</i>	6. Great Britain is ... a) <i>a presidential republic</i> b) <i>a large colony</i> c) <i>a parliamentary monarchy</i>
2. Great Britain consists of ... a) <i>England, Ireland and Wales</i> b) <i>England, Scotland and Wales</i> c) <i>England, Britain and Wales</i>	7. English wool is ... a) <i>exported to many countries</i> b) <i>imported to Great Britain</i> c) <i>exported only to France</i>
3. England is situated in the ... part of Great Britain. a) <i>southern</i> b) <i>western and central</i> c) <i>central and southern</i>	8. The heart of the City is ... a) <i>Piccadilly Circus</i> b) <i>the Stock Exchange</i> c) <i>the British Museum</i>
4. English Channel is ... a) <i>in the east of Great Britain</i> b) <i>between Europe and Great Britain</i> c) <i>in the west of the island</i>	9. The Queen's Residence is ... a) <i>Buckingham Palace</i> b) <i>the Treasury</i> c) <i>Westminster Palace</i>
5. The surface of Scotland is ... a) <i>flat</i> b) <i>mountainous</i> c) <i>not mountainous</i>	10. Many writers are buried in ... a) <i>the Tower of London</i> b) <i>Buckingham Palace</i> c) <i>Westminster Abbey</i>

5.1.3. What Do You Know About Esperanto?

In 1873 a fourteen-year-old boy in Warsaw began to invent a language. Ludwik Zamenhof was born in Bialystok, Poland. He was bilingual: his native languages were Russian and Yiddish. He spoke French and Hebrew fluently too. He had to learn two other foreign languages, Polish and German, to understand the different ethnic groups in his home town.

**Esperanto: Mondo sen milito**

Ludwik believed that there were conflicts in the world because people spoke different languages. He wanted a world without war. So he decided to invent a universal language. In 1887 he published the book *Unia Libro* under the pseudonym Doktoro Esperanto. He called his new language Lingvo Internacia, but people prefer the name Esperanto.

After Ludwik's death in 1917, Esperanto became more popular. In some countries children had to study it at school. In the 1920s and 1930s many people share Ludwik's dream of a peaceful world with a universal language. Unfortunately, the Second World War started. Ludwik's children died in the Holocaust, and so did Ludwik's dream of a world without war. Esperanto, however, didn't die. Perhaps it is not the world language, but it survived.

**Fact file:**

- Esperanto is an invented language with simple grammar and vocabulary.

- Esperanto is easy. You can learn it quickly. You don't have to study irregular words!
- Esperanto isn't the language of any country.
- There are only a few thousand native speakers of Esperanto but there are probably about two million Esperanto speakers in the world.
- On Facebook there are over 300,000 people have Esperanto as one of their languages and there is a Wikipedia site with about 230,000 articles.

### Vocabulary

**Yiddish** [ˈjidiʃ] *єврейська мова, ідиш*

**Hebrew** [ˈhi:bru:] *єврейський*

**milito** = a world without war

### 5.1.4. The Most Inspiring and Famous Polyglots in the World

Polyglots, or *Poliglots* and *poligot* as they are called in other languages, are people who speak many languages. The word *polyglot* comes from the Greek word *poluglōttos*, which literally means *more than one tongue*. Technically speaking, anyone who speaks more than one language is a polyglot. But most bilingual people don't consider themselves polyglots. This is due to the fact that most people think that being part of the "polyglot club" means that you should be able to speak at least three languages. This is the definition we'll be relying on for this article about the most inspiring and famous polyglots.

I have created a separate section for hyperpolyglots, people who know 12 or more languages. I will start with the famous polyglots, then I will present my selection of hyperpolyglots and I will finish off the list with a bonus polyglot!

Hyperpolyglots and polyglots are both terms that refer to people who can speak more than one language. Although some people think that the two terms mean the same thing, there is a small difference.

We consider a polyglot to be fluent in more than three languages, whereas a hyperglot is a person who is proficient in at least twelve languages.

**Olly Richards** - is a language expert from United Kingdom who runs the blog *I Will Teach You a Language*, a very interesting podcast and YouTube channel. He has eight languages (English (native), Japanese, Cantonese, Portuguese, Spanish, French, Italian and Arabic) under his belt and a lot of incredibly valuable tips to share on how to most effectively learn a language. He is a fan of the Spaced Repetition System and of flashcards. So much so, in fact, that he recently published a very positive review of the MosaLingua apps.

Our co-founder Luca had the chance to interview him recently, and picked up a lot of useful tips about how to immerse yourself in a language without moving abroad (check out the video below). How he learns language: listening to audio material, talking, using flashcards and SRS.

**Benny Lewis** - When you think about famous polyglots, one of the first names that comes to mind is without a doubt Benny Lewis, also known as the Irish Polyglot. He speaks English (native), Spanish, Esperanto, German, French, Italian, Portuguese, Mandarin Chinese, American Sign Language, Dutch and Irish. Benny Lewis likes to define himself as a "fun-loving Irish guy, full-time globetrotter and international

bestselling author.” Yes, because in between all the traveling, public speaking, blogging and language learning Benny also somehow finds the time to write books.

Benny runs *Fluent in 3 Months*, one of the most popular language learning blogs in the world. The project started with his challenge to live in different countries and become conversational in the local language in just three months. Benny loves finding shortcuts to getting by in a language in a very short amount of time. He also encourages people to accept and embrace their mistakes, which are part of the learning process. Benny shares our passion for flashcards and the SRS method, so it’s no surprise that we like his work. How he learns language: talking, hacking the language, flashcards, SRS.

**Lydia Machova** is from Slovakia. She has learned seven languages (Slovak, Czech, English, German, Spanish, French, Polish, Esperanto, Russian, Swahili) without living abroad by using common polyglot methods. She uses her website as a way to help others do the same. Originally from Slovakia, Lydia is a language mentor and professional interpreter. She believes that the most important aspect of learning a language is being able to communicate in everyday situations. She emphasizes the importance of speaking. This means that even if you don’t have a great command of spelling and grammar, you can still communicate.

And finally, Lydia organized two Polyglot Gatherings in (Bratislava) which happened to be among the biggest polyglot events in the world. How she learns language: starting with a book, lots of input, Goldlist method, various combinations of methods.

**Jimmy Mello**, also known as “the Brazilian Polyglot,” has his own language school in Brazil and writes books on language, making full use of his two university degrees: Linguistics and Pedagogy.

Unlike your typical Brazilian person who loves soccer, Jimmy’s passion (and hobby) is learning languages. He knows Portuguese (native), English, Spanish, Italian, French, Catalan, Polish, Russian and Esperanto. Despite his extensive knowledge of language, he has surprisingly never lived abroad. He attributes his language-learning capacity to motivation, dedication, and commitment. Jimmy has an incredible energy and his real gift is being able to share his enthusiasm and passion for languages. He is the author of the Mello Method, which is entirely based on speaking the language you want to learn. Jimmy is also a fan of flashcards and apps. How he learns languages: speaking them from an early stage, using flashcards and apps.

**Aaron Myers** is from the USA. He is someone who wanted to be everything when he grew up, and that’s pretty much what happened. So far, he has been a whitewater rafting and adventure guide, bus driver, religious worker in Mexico, waiter, Boy Scout camp program director, ESL teacher and high school English teacher. After getting married, he went back to university to get ESL teaching credentials, and that’s where he started being interested in languages. He and his wife moved to Turkey as Christian missionaries, and he now teaches English and keeps a blog that includes tips for learning languages. His spoken languages are English (native), Turkish, and Spanish.



**Donovan Nagel** from Australia, like most people, started learning a foreign language at school. And, like most people, he didn't like it, nor was it truly enough to learn a language. It was when he started studying theology in college that he got a taste of what language learning *should* be like: enjoyable. He first started with Ancient Hebrew and Greek, and moved on to Arabic, Italian, Korean, Russian, and the list goes on. He combines his love for traveling, languages, and his wife by learning languages while traveling abroad with her. Donovan has two websites: one is for learning different Arabic dialects, and the other is about languages in general. They're both worth taking a look at! He speaks English (native), Egyptian Arabic, MSA, Korean, Russian, Irish, Ancient Hebrew and Greek.

Donovan hails from Australia and is a big believer that you don't need to know grammar to learn a language. He argues that the best way to learn a language is to copy the way we learned a language as a kid. Even before their first grammar lesson, children learn by listening to and imitating their parents. His theory is that as children, we learn sentences in fragments instead of individual words. For example, "look at that!" instead of "look," "at," and "that" as individual words.

**Judith Meyer** is from Germany. Judith is a polyglot who is also a computer programmer. Not being able to choose just one as her career, she killed two birds with one stone by making use of both skillsets to build programs for language learning. Which makes sense, for someone who was conversational in eight languages and could understand five computer languages by her 18<sup>th</sup> birthday! The way she learns a language is by finding an area of interest in the language, be it a TV series, music or a book, and concentrates on being able to understand that. She also highly recommends finding native speakers to practice with and reinforce what you've learned. Her spoken languages: German (native), English, French, Italian, Esperanto, Chinese, Swahili, Greek, Spanish, Indonesian and Dutch.

**Conor Clyne** (Ireland) is another perfect example that shows that you don't have to be born in a multilingual environment to learn a language. He first started studying a foreign language when he was 21... Fast-forward 10 years, and he now knows 11! After having lived in France for an Erasmus year, he saw that his French was improving. It was then that he realized that he wasn't bad with languages, but rather that most schools aren't good at teaching languages (a common realization for famous polyglots). Through his language-learning experience, he has learned the right and wrong ways to learn a language. Conor runs a very nice blog about traveling and learning languages (see links below). His spoken languages are English (native), French, German, Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, Dutch, Russian, Romanian, Irish and Catalan.

**Simon Ager** is from Great Britain. Simon speaks 11 languages at a conversational level and has basic knowledge of another 13. He runs the Omniglot website, an encyclopedia of writing systems and languages, and also the Omniglot blog, where he writes about language and linguistics. In other words, Simon loves languages. However, he was not taught languages as a young child. In fact, he only knew one language until he was 11. He started studying languages at school, then studied more languages for his undergraduate degree, and that's how it all started. He has lived in 6 different countries so far: England, Wales, France, Jersey, Taiwan and



Japan. Despite truly deserving his spot in this article on the most famous polyglots, he isn't just interested in languages. He also loves music; he sings, plays various instruments, and writes his own songs. His spoken languages are English (native), Mandarin Chinese, French, Welsh, Irish, German, Scottish Gaelic, Manx, Japanese, Spanish and Esperanto.

**Kerstin Cable** is a German. Kerstin has accumulated a vast pool of knowledge about language learning. She blogs about new concepts, motivational tips and excellent techniques. She uses her own experience in learning new languages to give her readers amazing insight. You'll love her savvy advice and engaging writing.

Kerstin believes that language learning is not just for those who are smart, rich, young and / or privileged, and she thinks it should be something that people enjoy doing. Additionally, she informs her readers that when you find the right resources and tools for you, language learning can even become easy. His spoken languages are German (native), French, Spanish and three others.

**Martin Boehme** is from Germany. He creates interesting and informative posts on his blog *Polyglot* to share his insider knowledge on studying languages.

He writes simple but informative articles that are easy to read and include tons of tactics and tips. You'll find information on staying motivated, getting the most out of your language classes, and his own interesting anecdotes.

Boehme has experience teaching English to ESL students and has a declared love of linguistics in general. He also has a lot of experience in coding, which he has been doing for over ten years. Now, he combines his coding skills with his love of languages by coding in the different languages that he knows. His spoken languages are Spanish, French, English, German, Japanese.

**Sam Gendrau** is from the USA. He didn't care too much for languages until around six years ago, when he moved to Australia for two years. It was there that he began learning Korean with his partner. He soon moved onto another language, then another, and so on. He has since lived and traveled in Oceania, Southeast and East Asia, and across North America. His approach to language learning is similar to that of most famous polyglots: whether it is by listening to music, watching films, or reading books, make the process simple and enjoyable. His spoken languages are French (native), English, Korean, Spanish and Portuguese.

**Olle Linge** is a Swedish language enthusiast who has a degree in teaching English and Mandarin Chinese. He runs a website dedicated to learning Chinese and is a Chinese language coach. As all famous polyglots do, he believes in studying languages, but, because he loves games and sports, he makes sure that language learning is as fun as possible. Apart from his own blog, he writes a lot of articles on learning Chinese. His spoken languages are Swedish (native), Mandarin Chinese, English, French and German.

**Maha Yakoub** is a Palestinian polyglot living in Italy, who first started teaching Arabic through private lessons and later moved to YouTube. You can find Arabic, Italian, and Hebrew lessons aimed at beginner and intermediate learners on her channel. She also teaches about Arab culture and shares traditional recipes. There is even a section where she talks about her experience and progress in the German language. Additionally, she organizes 12-day intensive courses to Palestine for

people who want to learn Arabic. Despite being the object of islamophobia and negative criticism, she has calmly carried on teaching languages to this day. Maha truly deserves her spot on this list of the most inspiring and famous polyglots! Her spoken languages are Arabic (native), Italian, Hebrew, German, and English.

**Brian Kwong** is originally from Hong Kong, but moved to the U.S. when he was 12. There, he was bullied for his poor English skills, and because of this, he found it hard to learn English. Later in life, when he started Add1Challenge (encouraged by the support he received from other learners when he decided to learn German), he made sure it would be a pleasant, stress-free and encouraging environment. Something we love and completely agree with! His spoken languages are Mandarin, Cantonese, English, German, Romanian and Japanese.

**Kris Broholm.** Kris Broholm is from Denmark. Growing up, Kris was a top student. Not only that, but he loved foreign language lessons. That is, until the divorce of his parents, and, later, the death of his father. He fell into depression and felt as though he was moving through life without a true purpose. Higher education in Denmark is not only free, but paid, so this is what Kris did, and it is also where he was diagnosed with depression. What helped him out of this was watching famous polyglots on YouTube learn languages.

Learning languages while traveling is something he always wanted to do; it gave him a purpose and a reason to live. He now does exactly this, and his goal is to learn ten languages in ten years! On his website, he gives tips and talks about his language-learning journey to help others learn languages.

Kris Broholm doesn't claim that you'll become fluent in your target language overnight, or even over the course of a year. However, he does provide a massive range of resources to help inspire your language-learning journey. He also produces a podcast about resources, articles and inspirational people. His spoken languages are Danish (native), English, German, Esperanto, Russian, and Hungarian.

**Susanna Zaraysky.** Susanna is Russian. To say that Susanna loves traveling is an understatement, because she has traveled to 50 countries, and lived in nine of them! Needless to say, she is no stranger to languages. On her website, we learn that "she has given presentations at the Defense and State Departments of the United States to help diplomats and military personnel learn languages using music." She has also spoken in various countries, at countless universities and conferences, and her language learning techniques have been featured on TV channels such as CNN, BBC, NBC, CBS and The Guardian. In other words, Susanna is a pretty incredible woman, and she fits in quite well with the rest of our famous polyglots! Her spoken languages are Russian (native), English (native), French, Spanish, Italian, Portuguese, Serbo-Croatian.

**Lindsay Williams.** Lindsay is from Great Britain. Lindsay Williams first started learning French in primary school. She didn't care too much about the language back then. However, getting to have croissants at the end of the year made her stick with it. She later developed a love for one of Shakira's songs and decided to learn Spanish because of it. She took Spanish as an optional class, in addition to her French classes, and that's how her love of languages grew. Having taught everyone from individuals to corporate groups, she now teaches languages online via Skype. Apart from

teaching both French and Spanish, she is one of the most active on this list of famous polyglots as she blogs and does podcasts about languages. Her spoken languages are English (native) Spanish, French, German, Italian, Portuguese, Dutch.

**Gabriel Wyner.** Gabriel is an American. Gabriel Wyner has a systematic approach for learning and teaching languages that he developed after learning German in 14 weeks. To prove that his method was effective, he became fluent in French in five months, and then learned Russian in nine months. He is a strong believer that learners, at first, shouldn't just translate, but should instead focus on the correct pronunciation. He also believes, like us and like many other famous polyglots, that they should use flashcards for memorizing vocabulary. He speaks English (native), German, French, Russian, Italian, Hungarian, Japanese.

**Gabriel Gelman.** Another Gabriel Gelman is from Germany. Gabriel is the creator of Sprachheld, one of the most popular language blogs in German-speaking countries.

Gabriel was raised bilingual (German and Russian), but did not stop there because he later decided to learn French and Spanish. During a talk at the polyglot gathering, he admitted that he is a lazy polyglot who is always looking for the best methods to learn a language without spending too much time and effort. Needless to say, we like this approach – get 80% of the results with only the 20% of the effort.

Luca interviewed Gabriel at the Polyglot Gathering 2017 in Bratislava (in French, but you can turn on English subtitles if needed). His spoken languages are German (native), Russian, French, Spanish, English and Hebrew.

**Jan Van Der Aa.** Jan is from the Netherlands. Jan Van Der Aa likes to define himself as a bad student and on his website he tells us that his English teacher suggested he “choose a career for which foreign languages were not needed”. We can definitely say that this teacher was wrong because today Jan is a successful polyglot who has learned not only English, but also another 9 languages!

He has also made languages part of his professional life because Jan is the co-founder of Language Boost, a company which creates courses to learn languages (the other co-founder is **Lucas Bighetti**, another impressive polyglot from Brazil). Born and raised in Holland, Jan is also a passionate traveller who managed to visit 100 countries when he was still in his twenties. He speaks Dutch (native), Mandarin, French, Brazilian, Portuguese, German, Spanish, Cantonese, and some Russian and Thai.

**Emily Liedel.** She is from the USA. Emily Liedel started out as a journalist and later turned to copywriting, photography, translating, coaching, web designing, blogging and tour guiding. Her goal is to learn all of the UN official languages and become fluent in them by 2019. This means she would be able to communicate with close to 35 percent of the world's population. Her blog gives tons of language-learning tutorials and tips that are great for those who are interested in learning the most common and useful languages. Her spoken languages are French, Russian, German, Chinese, Spanish and other languages.

**Noel van Vliet.** Noel van Vliet is from the USA too. Noel's goal is for his readers to learn a new language as efficiently as possible. He is fluent in three languages and has a lot of valuable information to share. He also knows a lot about the benefits of

learning a language. You can tell that Noel is passionate and cares about his readers. We really enjoy his “Case Studies,” where Noel tests out different techniques, products, and language learning tactics. His spoken languages are Spanish, French, German, English, Italian and Japanese.

**Ellen Jovin.** Ellen Jovin is an American. She is a former freelance writer, and founder of Syntaxis, a communication skills training firm. In 2009, she decided to stop freelancing and start learning as many languages she could find in New York City (where about 800 languages are spoken) simply because of her love for New York and languages! The original plan was to only do this for a year, but she hasn't been able to stop. To date, she has studied more than 20 languages! Her aim is not to learn the languages to full fluency, but to achieve a conversational level. On her blog, you can find out more about her experience with learning languages. Her spoken languages are English, French and Spanish.

#### **Vocabulary**

**Cantonese** [kæntə'ni:z] *кантонський діалект китайської мови*

**American Sign Language** *американська мова жестів*

**Swahili** [swə:'hi:li] *мова суахілі*

**Ancient Hebrew (Biblical Hebrew)** ['hi:bru:] *давньоєврейська мова*

**Catalan** ['kætəlæn,'kætələn] *каталанська мова*

**Manx** [mæŋks] *менський діалект*

**bully** ['buli] *знущатися; грубо поводитися*

**Thai** [tʰai] *тайська мова*

*to date = until now*

#### **5.1.5. The List of Famous Hyperpolyglots**

This is the list of polyglots who speak 12 or more languages!

**Richard Simcott.** Simcott is from United Kingdom. Richard Simcott is a hyperpolyglot who has studied over 40 languages. He has been described as one of the most multilingual persons in the United Kingdom by HarperCollins and was named Ambassador for Multilingualism by the Goethe-Institut. One of the reasons he and Alex Rawlings are two of the most famous polyglots in the world is because of the annual Polyglot Conference they co-organize, which takes place every October. Apart from organizing this amazing event, Richard is a language consultant, offering his expertise on multilingual and multinational projects. He speaks English (native), French, Spanish, Welsh, German, Macedonian, Swedish, Italian, Serbian, Bosnian, Croatian, Portuguese, Czech, Catalan, Russian, Dutch, Romanian and Albanian.

**Steve Kaufmann.** Steve is a Canadian. Luckily Steve Kaufmann realized that the reason he was not “good at learning languages” was because of the traditional methods he was trying to use. He was only seventeen years old when he joined the polyglot club. Fifty odd years later, and he is now a hyperpolyglot and co-founder of Linq. Since his mid-fifties, he has started putting more effort in language learning, thus proving that it's never too late to learn a language. Apart from being an avid language learner, he is also president of a company involved in the international wood products trade. His spoken languages are English (native), Ukrainian, Korean,



Romanian, Swedish, Portuguese, French, Spanish, German, Chinese, Czech, Russian, Italian and Japanese.

**Luca Lampariello.** Luca Lampariello is a famous polyglot from Rome (Italy). He has a very peculiar approach to language learning. It is based on bidirectional translation. Basically, Luca learns vocab and grammar by reading bilingual texts and constantly comparing the original to the translation. Lampariello has also mastered the art of the accent. If you ever hear him speaking your native language, you will be surprised by how close he can imitate a native speaker's accent. His spoken languages are Italian (native), English, French, German, Spanish, Swedish, Russian, Dutch, Portuguese, Japanese, Mandarin Chinese, Polish and Hungarian.

**Elisa Polese.** Elisa Polese is a passionate and enthusiastic language lover and polyglot. She can speak and teach 13 languages! But if we include all the languages she has studied and speaks at a lower level, we can say that Elisa speaks more than 20 languages!

Originally from Naples, Elisa has lived in many countries (UK, Russia, Germany, Spain, France, Italy and Switzerland) where she has taught foreign languages to hundreds of students. She is also a well-known speaker at international conferences. In addition to dealing with language learning, she also focuses on multilingual teaching and intercultural communication. She always makes sure she spreads her contagious love for languages. Her spoken languages are Italian (native), English, German, Spanish, Russian, French, Dutch, Catalan, Portuguese, Greek, Hindi, Arabic, Esperanto, Hungarian, Sinhalese, Mandarin Chinese, Vietnamese, Serbian, Ukrainian, Hebrew, Turkish and Polish.

**Alex Rawlings.** Alex Rawlings is from United Kingdom. Alex is English and of Greek descent. In 2012, he competed against other famous polyglots to earn the title of Britain's most multilingual student. He and Richard Simcott are co-organizers of the Polyglot Conference Luca Sadurny writes about here, and they also run polyglot workshops together. Alex also teaches four languages (English, German, Russian and Greek) and offers consulting and coaching services to people who wish to learn multiple languages at the same time. His spoken languages are English (native), French, German, Spanish, Greek, Dutch, Afrikaans, Italian, Catalan, Hebrew, German, Russian, Yiddish, Hungarian and Serbian.

**Vladimir Skultety.** He is from Slovakia. Vladimir's language learning started early in life. He is originally from southeast Slovakia, which is not too far from Hungary. Although neither of his parents spoke the language, they decided to put him into a Hungarian immersion kindergarten class. Since he was living in what at the time was Czechoslovakia, he also learned Czech. At the age of eight, he went to live in the U.S., and moved to Austria when he was 12, thus learning both English and German. He went on to study in Italy and Russia, and later decided to learn French, Spanish and Portuguese. I think you know where this is going... Vladimir now speaks about 12 languages at a C1-C2 level. He is now a translator and interpreter of Slovak, Mandarin Chinese and English. His spoken languages are Slovak (native), English, Hungarian, Czech, Mandarin Chinese, Russian, German, Italian, French, Spanish, Serbian, Polish, Portuguese, Romanian, Dutch, Japanese and Cantonese.

**Timothy Doner.** Timothy is an American. Timothy is a Harvard student who has been referred to in the media as “The World’s Youngest Hyperpolyglot”. When he was thirteen, he started learning Hebrew through music, and, without actually realizing it, he memorized around 20 songs he liked. You can only imagine his disbelief when he looked up the lyrics and realized he had learned a few hundred words without even trying! And that’s how his language-learning journey to becoming one of the world’s most famous polyglots began. He started learning Arabic, moved to Persian, then Russian, then Mandarin, and so on. In 2014, he started The Teen Polyglot Challenge, where teens are challenged to begin learning a language in five weeks and send a video of themselves speaking the language in front of a camera. Apart from this, Timothy has given talks at Sapphire, TedxTeen and Apple. Not bad at all! His spoken languages are English (native), French, Hausa, Wolof, Russian, German, Yiddish, Hebrew, Arabic, Pashto, Persian, Mandarin, Italian, Turkish, Indonesian, Dutch, Xhosa, Kiswahili, Hindi, Ojibwe, Kinyarwanda, and Creole.

**Emanuele Marini.** Emanuele is from Italy. He is a real mystery in the language learning world, but he is definitely in the famous polyglots club. He has practically no online presence, and was only “discovered” at the Polyglot Conference a few years ago. He was spontaneously tested to see whether his claims were true, and, indeed, they were. His language-learning method is picking up books he finds interesting in any of the languages he wants to learn, and, using a dictionary (often of another language he’s learning), he goes on to decipher their meaning. Later in the process he does language exchanges, and, with the help of a native speaker, learns more of the language. After getting the basics down, he travels to a country where the language is spoken in order to meet natives and get a better grasp of the language. So, how many languages does Emanuele know? Oh, only 34! Some of his spoken languages are Italian (native), Albanian, Arabic, Armenian, Bosnian, Bulgarian, Croatian, Czech, Danish, Finnish, French, Greek, English, Lithuanian, Macedonian, Dutch, Norwegian, Persian, Polish, Portuguese, Romanian, Russian, Serbian, Slovak, Slovenian, Spanish, Swedish, German, Turkish, Hungarian, Ukrainian, Latin, classical Greek and Hebrew.

**Cesco Reale.** He is from Italy too. An Italian phonetics and pronunciation expert (IPA certified) and Esperanto lover, Cesco speaks a whopping 16 languages. He is the UN representative of the World Esperanto Association. He especially likes combining games, languages and math. He helps organize the Polyglot Gathering (first with Judith Meyer and now with Lydia Machova) and various other language-related events. His spoken languages are Italian (native), Esperanto, French, Spanish, Portuguese, English, German, Catalan, Romanian, Greek, Latin, Galician, Chinese, Russian, Sardinian and Dutch.

### **Vocabulary**

**descent** [di'sent] *походження; родовід; покоління*

**immersion** [i'mɜ:ʃ(ə)n] *занурення*

**Hausa** ['hausə] *мова хауса (народ у Західному Судані)*

**Wolof** *мова волоф (мова народів, що живуть у Синегалі, Гамбії, Мавританії та Малі)*



**Yiddish** ['jidiʃ] єврейська мова, ідиш

**Pashto** мова пушту

**Xhosa** мова кхоса

**Kiswahili** мова суахілі

**Ojibwe** мова оджибве

**Kinyarwanda** мова руанда

**Creole** ['kri:əʊl] креольська мова / діалект

**decipher** [di'saifə] розшифровувати; розбирати; розплутувати

**grasp** [gra:sp] здатність швидкого сприйняття, розуміння, схоплювання

**whopping** [wɒpɪn] незвичайний; неперевершений; колосальний, величезний

## 5.2. From the History of the United Kingdom and the USA

### 5.2.1. History of Britain

(without the boring bits) by John Farman

#### What! A Charlie? - 1625

Charles I (crowned in 1625) couldn't have been less like his dad if he'd tried. A right little runt (5ft 4ins) who was prudish, shy, shifty and st-stammering. If his father never really understood the English, Charlie never really understood anyone at all. He believed that if he set a good example, the world would follow. How wrong could he be. The first daft thing he did %vas marry Henrietta, the daughter of the King of France, which really got up the nose of all the no n-Catholics. With the help of his chief adviser, the Duke of Buckingham, handsome ex-boyfriend of his ex-dad, Charles managed to intensify the war.

#### Vocabulary

**runt** [rent] людина маленького зросту, коротун

**prudish** ['pru:diʃ] манірний

**shifty** [ʃifti] хитрий; нечесний; ненадійний

**stammer** ['stæmə] заїкатися

**daft** [daft] божевільний; дурний, ідіотський, безглуздий

#### 1625 - War With Spain

He asked Parliament for money to fight with and they told him to get lost. Weedy Charles tried to do it on the cheap without them, but soon got into a right mess. He begged them again, and again they told him to go away - but probably not that politely. He then tried to borrow money off his friends. Cheekier still, he forced people to feed his troops for free, throwing them into jail if they refused. Parliament eventually gave in and told him that if he was a good boy and behaved himself, they'd give him the cash. He blew it all though, and was forced, finally, to crawl to the Spanish king and make peace (what a Charlie!).

#### Vocabulary

**beg** [beg] просити; благувати, молити; злидарювати; просити милостиню

#### 1629 - Trouble with Parliament

Charles was one of those kings who thought he was next in line to God, which

meant nobody had the right to question him. This really peeved the patient Parliament. In the end things came to the crunch over - three guesses - religion again. Parliament passed a resolution against the Catholic faith which Charles, having Catholic sympathies, took rather badly. He sent them all packing and ran the country alone for eleven years.

**Vocabulary**

*peeved* [pi:vd] роздратований, образений

*crunch over* - роздавлювати, роздушувати

**1635 - Civil War Looms**

Charles was still strapped for cash so he taxed the wealthy landowners heavily, and, for reasons best known to himself, anyone who lived by or near the sea (the Ship Tax). Then he stuck his nose into Scottish religion, which miffed them so much they invaded England (so far - so good, Charlie!) The whole country took sides and whoopee! we have a proper civil war (nice one, Charles!)

**Vocabulary**

*strapped for cash* бракувало грошей

*miffed* роздратований

*whoopie!* [wv'pi:] ого-го-го! (вигук захоплення)

**1640 – Witches**

It was also the time of the famous witch-hunts. Anything that went wrong in the countryside – bad crops, hens not laying, wives becoming ugly, etc, was blamed on witches. Any single old woman who had a broom and/or a cat was suspected of witchcraft. A nasty piece of work called Matthew Hopkins toured Merrie England for three years from 1644, killing old women willy-nilly. His best test involved throwing the poor old souls into any convenient pond. If they sank they were innocent and if they floated it meant Satan was helping them so they were guilty and promptly burned. Hopkins became so good at witch-spotting that, in the end, people wondered if Satan wasn't on his side and hanged him as well for good measure.

**Vocabulary**

*witch-hunts* 1) пошук та переслідування осіб, які начебто мають зв'язок з нечистою силою 2) політ. "полювання на відьом", переслідування прогресивних діячів

*suspect* [sə'spekt] підозрювати

*witchcraft* [wɪtʃkra:ft] чаклунство, чорна магія; чари

*nasty* ['nɑ:sti] огидний, брудний, неприємний, зловбий; небезпечний

*willy-nilly* [,wɪli'nɪli] поневолі, волею-неволею, хочеш не хочеш

*sank* [sæŋk] past від *sink* тонути, топити

*innocent* ['ɪnəs(ə)nt] невинна, невинувата людина

*Satan* ['seɪtn] сатана, диявол

*guilty* [gɪlti] винний, винуватий

*promptly* ['prɒmptli] швидко, негайно, терміново; невідкладно

### 1642 - Oliver Cromwell

Cromwell started out drilling volunteers for the Parliamentary party, but soon emerged as one of their top men. In 1644 a combination of Roundheads, Scots and Cromwell's new cavalry beat the pants off the Cavaliers or Royalists at Marston Moor. Parliament was so chuffed that they asked Cromwell to build a flash new elite army of professional soldiers. It was called the New Model Army and the men were paid the unheard of sum of 10p a day.

Charles, seeing he was getting the worst of it, scarpered up to Scotland in 1646 thinking he'd get well looked after as his old man was once their king. No such luck. The Scots promptly flogged him to Parliament - For Sale, one King!

Cromwell, who was by then Parliament's blue-eyed boy, was given J2,500 a year commission for fixing the deal. Lots of the Royalist soldiers, stuck without a leader and no wages, sloped home to their wives.

#### Vocabulary

*Roundheads* пуританин

*chuffed* [tʃɛft] (страшенно) задоволений

*scarper* тікати

*flog* [flɒg] бити бато́гом; підганяти

#### Roundheads

Things weren't too clever with the Roundheads either. Parliament: was continually harassing them, and worse, sacking their no-longer-needed army without paying them. Cromwell was well brassed off, so he seized poor Charles and offered him a generous deal.

As a result of Cromwell's actions civil war broke out between Cromwell's army, the Scots and the Royalists. In 1648 Cromwell's heavies beat them hollow at the Battle of Preston. Ollie then high-tailed it down to London and gave all the Presbyterians in Parliament the boot.

#### Vocabulary

*harass* ['hærəs] здійснювати напади

*brassed off* втомлений, роздратований

*seize* [si:z] схопити; піймати, заарештувати

### 1648 -The Rump

This left just sixty Independents rather deftly called 'the Rump'. Cromwell then did his naughtiest thing ever. He tried the king for high treason and then in 1649, at a huge public ceremony, neatly severed his head (a rather disloyal thing to do to your king).

Very noble I'm sure, but it looks as if poor old Charlie didn't have much choice. Not many folk know that when Charles's coffin was rediscovered in 1813, the Royal surgeon, Sir Henry Halford, did an autopsy on the body and nicked poor Charles's fourth vertebra. For years he used to horrify his mates by using it as a salt holder at dinner parties. Queen Victoria, never one to like a joke, ordered him to put it back in the coffin.

#### Vocabulary

*deftly* ['deftlɪ] майстерно, спритно, моторно

**treason** ['tri:z(ə)n] зрада; державна зрада

**coffin** ['kɒfɪn] труна

**autopsy** [ɔ:tɒpsɪ] розтин трупа, аутопсія

**nicked** зазубрений; щербатий

**vertebra** ['vɜ:tɪbrə] хребець

### Look Out, Charles - 1650

Meanwhile the Scots were crowning Charles's son, Charles II, who'd been in Holland hiding in the Hague. Cromwell was solving his problems as only he knew how. He shot the mutineers, invaded and massacred the revolting Irish and only then turned his attention to Scotland and their brand new king. It took a few bloody battles to show the Royalist Scots who was boss. Charles, who'd apparently spent much of his time hiding up a tree (funny lot, kings!), rather wisely went on a prolonged holiday to France in 1651 and I bet he didn't send any postcards.

#### Vocabulary

**mutineer** [mju:t(ə)'niə] заколотник; учасник (військового) заколоту; бунтівник

**massacre** ['mæsəkə] влаштувати різанину; різати, розгромити

### 1653 - King Oliver?

Oliver obviously wasn't someone who was easy to get on with, and before long he fell out with his Rump, which sounds rather painful. He fired the lot of them and so, for the first time, England was ruled by a military dictatorship.

Some slimy creeps kept begging him to become king. Instead of being King Oily I he called himself the 'Lord Protector of a United Commonwealth of England, Scotland, Ireland and the Colonies' (what a mouthful).

#### Vocabulary

**slimy** [slɑɪmi] 1) мулистий, грузлий; липкий 2) слизуватий; покритий слизом; слизький 3) противний, огидний

**creep** [kri:p] здригання; мурашки

**mouthful** ['maʊθf(ə)l] ім'я, слово або фраза, що важко вимовляються

### By the Way

Cromwell died of natural causes, believe it or not, aged sixty, just before he was buried, his brain was weighed and found to be an incredible 82.25 ounces (the average man's weighs 49 ounces).

Some time later, when definitely worm-bait, he was dug up (pooh!) with all his fellow king killers and strung up at Tyburn. As a special treat, Cromwell's head was displayed on a pole outside Westminster Abbey which jolly well served him right - not, I suspect, that he cared. It remained there for twenty-four years until 1685 when a strong wind blew it off. It was found by a captain of the guard who took it home and hid it up his chimney. Years later it turned up at a freak show and was valued at sixty guineas. An actor, Samuel Russell, had been paying his rent by charging the punters half a crown a look. After changing hands several more times it ended up on display in Bond Street. The syndicate which had bought it for £230 all died

mysteriously and it fell into the hands of a Doctor Wilkinson. The Wilkinson family kept it in a wooden box, wrapped in red and black silk, for years and years until eventually giving it to Sydney Sussex College in 1960 where it was buried secretly.

### **5.2.2. The Glimpse of Great Britain and Its Parliament Life**

Great Britain or the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland as the country is officially called among the oldest constitutional monarchies in Europe. The country's first constitution, *the Magna Charta*, was signed under the pressure of her Parliament by the despotic King John Lackland, son of King Richard the Lion Hearted, in 1215. *The Magna Charta* had a great influence on the country's parliamentary life and traditions which have remained unchanged for centuries. Thus, the Palace of Westminster where Parliament is held and which was built anew and rebuilt for several times is in the same place for more than 1,000 years.

Besides the Parliament consists of two Chambers or Houses - the Upper Chamber or the House of Lords and the Lower Chamber or the House of Commons. The Upper House consists of over 1,100 Members belonging to one of the three unequally represented groups of peers:

1. Hereditary Peers, Marquises, Earls, Viscounts, Barons (almost half of all peers), and Peeresses (ab 20);
2. Life Peers and Life Peeresses;
3. Archbishops (2) and Senior Bishops (20).

The House of Lords is headed by the Lord Chancellor who is also the minister of Justice and Head of the High Court.

The House of Commons consists of 659 elected MPs (1997 elections). The House is headed by the Speaker.

There are nine Royal British orders of Knighthood. The highest of them is the order of the Garter, which was founded by King Edward III in 1348. It consists of two parts - a collar gold chain worn around the neck with St. George killing the Dragon, and an eight-pointed star. The order is conferred to the members of the Royal family and 25 knights. The only commoner to have received the order was Sir Winston Churchill in 1957. This order gives the bearer the right to be buried in Westminster Abbey.

The next important order is the order of the Bath established during the reign of Henry IV (1399-1413). The name of the order comes from the ceremony of bathing (the symbol of purity) before being given it.

The highest military award in Great Britain is the Victoria Cross instituted by Queen Victoria in 1856 to mark the victory in the Crimean War. The cross is made from the metal of the Russian guns captured in Sevastopol during the Crimean War in 1855.

Several traditional ceremonies are held in the capital of Great Britain attracting the attention of many Londoners and their numerous domestic and foreign guests. One of them observed every day is the changing of the Household Guards quartered in the Chelsea and Wellington Barracks near the Buckingham Palace. The Brigade of Guards of the Queen (and the Royal family body-guards) consists of two regiments representing the nationalities of the United Kingdom.



The English Grenadiers wear the bearskin caps twenty inches high. The Scots Guards wear a wide black ribbon on the back of their uniform colour 15 cm wide and 25 cm long. All the Guards wear scarlet or red tunics and black trousers except the Scots Guards wearing their traditional regimental cloth. The Irish Guards wear a triple row of brass buttons and distinctive plumes.

The second ceremonial event which can be seen at 11 a.m. every weekday and at 10 a.m. on Sundays is Mounting the Guard. In this ceremony the Household Cavalry (the Royal and Life Guards) take part. They wear breast and back shiny plates made of steel armour.

The third ceremony is observed only once a year on the second Saturday in June at ab. 11.15 a.m. and is called Trooping the Colour. The ceremony marks the "official" birthday of the Queen and presents an inspection parade of the Queen's own troops. This spectacular ceremony with the Queen riding side-saddle on a highly trained horse ahead of the Guards is watched by many hundreds of people.

Among other old traditions the most prominent are the ceremony of the Keys which is over 700 years old (since 1215 when King John was forced to sign the Magna Charta) and Lord Mayor's Show. The latter goes back to the mayoralty of Richard (Dick) Whittington, who was mayor four times (1396, 1397, 1406 and 1419). The Lord Mayor rides from the City in a splendid six horses-spanned coach through the streets of London and stops at Law Courts where he is presented to the Lord Chief of Justice, who hands him his sword of office after receiving a solemn promise to carry out his duties faithfully. The procession then continues to Westminster, and then returns to the Mansion House, the official residence of the Lord Mayor.

### Vocabulary

**the Magna Charta = Magna Carta** [ˌmagnə 'kɑ:tə] Велика хартія вільностей

**Upper Chamber (House of Lords)** верхня палата (Палата лордів)

**Lower Chamber (House of Commons)** нижня палата (Палата громад)

**peer** [piə] пер, лорд

**hereditary** [hi'redit(ə)ri] спадковий, спадкоємний, який переходить з покоління в покоління; наслідуваний

**Marquis** ['mɑ:kwis, mɑ:'ki:] маркіз

**Earl** [z:l] граф (титул у Великій Британії)

**Viscount** ['vaikaunt] віконт

**Life Peer** довічний пер

**Archbishop** [ɑ:(r)tʃbɪʃəp] архієпископ

**Bishop** ['biʃəp] єпископ

**Lord Chancellor** лорд-канцлер (спікер палати лордів)

**MPs = Members of Parliament**

**Order of the Garter** орден Підв'язки

**confer** [kən'fə:] дарувати, надавати; присуджувати

**Order of the Bath** орден Бані (у Великобританії)

**Changing of the Household Guards** Зміна Охорони Королівського Двору  
**regiment** [redʒimənt] полк

**Mounting the Guard** Розведення Караулів

**Household Cavalry** Королівська кінна гвардія



**Trooping the Colour** ['tru:piərə'kvlə] *винесення прапора, урочисте розведення караулів з винесенням прапора*

**ceremony of the Keys** *церемонія передачі ключів*

**Lord Mayor** *лорд-мер*

**mayoralty** ['me(ə)rəlti] *посада мера; термін перебування на посаді мера*

**splendid** ['splendid] *блискучий, яскравий; розкішний, багатий, пишний*

**solemn** ['sələm] *урочистий; офіційний, формальний*

### 5.2.3. An Englishman's Day

An Englishman's day - and who better to describe it than an Englishman's wife?

It begins when, ignoring me, he sits down to breakfast with his morning paper. As he scans the headlines (or the racing results) there is nothing he likes better than his favourite breakfast of cornflakes with milk and sugar (porridge if he lives in the North) followed by fried bacon and eggs, marmalade and toast, the whole accompanied by tea or coffee. But whether he in fact gets such a meal depends on the state of my housekeeping budget!

After breakfast, except on Sundays and (in many cases) Saturdays which are holidays, he sets off to work by train, tube, car, motor scooter, motor bike or even on his own two feet. The time he sets out depends in large degree upon whether he is what might colloquially be termed a "striver" (one who works himself), a "driver" (one who sees that others works) or a "thrifer" (one who profits from others work).

If he is a "striver", he will jostle along with thousands like him on the 7.20, probably still reading his paper (or somebody else's) and studying the successes (or otherwise) of his favourite team. The "drivers" customarily depart about an hour later while the "thrivers" *travel up to the City* in great style about an hour later. But be he "striver", "driver" or "thrifer", he will enjoy his tea or coffee break around about 11. The tea or coffee is usually brought to the factory bench or office desk.

Then, at mid-day, everything stops for lunch. Most offices and small shops close for an hour, say from 1 to 2, and the city pavements are thronged with people on their way to cafes. Factory workers usually eat in their canteens. The usual mid-day meal usually consists of two courses - a meat course accompanied by plenty of vegetables, followed by a sweet dish, perhaps fruit pudding and custard with tea or coffee to finish. Most Englishmen like what they call "good *plain food*, not messed about with". They must be able to recognize what they are eating. Otherwise they are likely to refuse it. Usually they like beef steaks, chops, roast beef and Yorkshire pudding and fried fish and chipped potatoes. They are in the main not overfond of soup, remarking that it fills them without leaving sufficient room for the more important meat course. Then back to work again, with another break in the middle of the afternoon, once again for tea or coffee, sometimes with a cake or biscuit.

The working day finishes at time between 4 and 6, with the "thrivers" usually first home and the "strivers" last. On arrival home, many Englishmen seem to like to inspect their gardens before their evening meal.

This goes under various names - tea, high tea, dinner or supper depending upon its size and also the social standing of those eating it. Usually a savoury meat course is followed by stewed fruit or cake and tea. His evening meal over, the Englishman might do a bit of gardening and then have a walk to the "local" for a "quick one".

The “local” means the nearest beer house while a “quick one” means a drink (alcoholic, of course!) taking anything from half-an-hour to three hours to imbibe! There is plenty of lively, *congenial* company at the “local” and he can play darts, dominoes, billiards or discuss the weather or the current situation.

But if the Englishman stays at home, he might listen to the radio, watch television, talk, read or pursue his favourite hobby. Then at any time between 10 and 12 he will have his “nightcap” - a drink accompanied by a snack - and then off to bed ready for tomorrow.

(S. Andrews)

### Vocabulary

*sets off* виїзджати

*colloquially* у розмовній мові

*striver* from *to strive* [straɪv] намагатися, докладати зусилля; важко працювати

*driver* from *to drive* [draɪv] керувати

*thrifer* from *to thrive* [θraɪv] процвітати; розкішно жити

*jostle* ['dʒɒs(ə)l] штовхати; тіснити

*custard* ['kɛstəd] рідкий заварний крем

*high tea* рання ситна вечеря з чаєм

*savoury* ['seɪv(ə)rɪ] смачний, апетитний; ароматний; гострий, пікантний

*stewed fruit* компот; узвар

*imbibe* [ɪm'baɪb] пити

*congenial* [kən'dʒɪ:niəl] близький, подібний, споріднений; сприятливий

*pursue* [pə'sju:] займатися (чим-небудь)

*nightcap* ['naɪtkæp] чарочка спиртного на ніч

*snack* [snæk] легка закуска

## 5.3. Sightseeing

### 5.3.1. Taj Mahal

The most famous building in India is the Taj Mahal. It has a very romantic story. In 1631, the wife of Emperor Mumtaz Mahal died. The emperor loved his wife very much and he wanted a special building to bury her in. 20,000 men built the Taj Mahal and it took 20 years to finish. It is a beautiful building of white marble, decorated with jewels.

“A white marble tomb built in 1631 - 48 in Agra, seat of the Mugal Empire, by Shah Fehan for his wife, Arjuman Banu Begum, the monument sums up many of the formal themes that have played through Islamic architecture. Its refined elegance is a conspicuous contrast both to the Hindu architecture of pre-Islamic India, with its thick walls, corbeled arches, and heavy lintels, and to the Indo-Islamic styles, in which Hindu elements are combined with an eclectic assortment of motifs from Persian and Turkish sources.”

“The Mausoleum of the Taj Mahal at Agra stands in a formally laid-out walled garden entered through a pavilion on the main axis. The tomb, raised on a terrace and first seen reflected in the central canal, is entirely sheathed in marble, but the mosque and counter-mosque on the transverse axis are built in red sandstone.

The four minarets, set symmetrically about the tomb, are scaled down to heighten the effect of the dominant, slightly bulbous dome.

The mosques, built only to balance the composition are set sufficiently far away to do no more than frame the mausoleum. In essence, the whole riverside platform is a mosque courtyard with a tomb at its centre. The great entrance gate with its domed central chamber, set at the end of the long watercourse, would in any other setting be monumental in its own right.”

“The interior of the building is dimly lit through pierced marble lattices and contains a virtuoso display of carved marble. Externally the building gains an ethereal quality from its marble facings, which respond with extraordinary subtlety to changing light and weather.”

### Vocabulary

**jewels** ['dʒu:əl] коштовний камінь

**tomb** [tu:m] могила

**Shah** [ʃɑ:] шах

**refine** [rɪ'faɪn] очищувати

**conspicuous** [kən'spɪkjʊəs] 1) видимий, помітний; який кидається в очі; очевидний; 2) видатний, видний, помітний

**corbeled** ['kɔ:b(ə)l] розмістити на кронштейні; підтримувати кронштейном

**arch** [ɑ:tʃ] арка

**lintel** ['lɪntl] перемичка (вікна або дверей); одвірок

**eclectic** [i'klektɪk] еkleктичний

**axis** ['æksɪs] вісь; центральне питання, стрижень

**sheathed in marble** обкладений мармуром

**mosque** [mɒsk] мечеть

**red sandstone** ['sændstəʊn] червоний піщаник

**bulbous** ['bʌlbəs] який має форму цибулини, цибулиноподібний; опуклий; круглий

**dome** [dəʊm] купол, баня, що-небудь куполоподібне або дугоподібне

**courtyard** ['kɔ:t jɑ:d] внутрішній двір

**watercourse** ['wɔ:təkɔ:s] потік; річка; струмок; канал

**interior** [ɪn'ti(ə)riə] внутрішній вигляд приміщення, інтер'єр

**dimly** ['dɪmli] тьмяно

**lattices** ['lætɪs] ґрати, решітка

**ethereal** [ɪ'θiəriəl] повітряний, неземний

**facing** [feɪsɪŋ] облицювання; зовнішнє покриття

**subtlety** [sʌt(ə)lti] витонченість, вишуканість

### 5.3.2. Eiffel Tower

In 1884 the French government announced that there would be an international exhibition in Paris, opening in 1889, to celebrate the 100<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the French Revolution. The main attraction would be a tower, 300 metres high. They held a competition to find the best design, and out of more than 100 entries they chose the plans of Alexandre Gustave Eiffel.

In 1884 the French government announced that there would be an international

exhibition in Paris, opening in 1889, to celebrate the 100<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the French Revolution. The main attraction would be a tower, 300 metres high. They held a competition to find the best design, and out of more than 100 entries they chose the plans of Alexandre Gustave Eiffel.

Eiffel was the most famous and successful engineer in France. He had designed and built more than 40 large railway bridges, many buildings and the frame that supported the giant statue of liberty in New York. Not one of his bridges collapsed, which was an unusual record for an engineer at that time.

By the time the government had chosen his design, the opening of the exhibition was less than two years away. Eiffel and his team had to work fast. Eiffel planned the tower with absolute precision.

First every detail was drawn on a separate plan, in over 500 drawings. The complete order of assembly was carefully worked out, so that when work began the tower could be fitted together quickly.

The tower was made of iron girders, joined together by rivets. All the girders were made in Eiffel's factory, where they were joined into pieces not more than 5 metres long. These pieces were then assembled on the site. The foundations were laid, and on July 1887 the tower began to rise. Two hundred and fifty men worked from dawn to dusk, swinging the girders into place and driving in the red-hot rivets. The people of Paris watched their tower to grow with astonished speed.

An important feature of the tower was its lifts. A tall building is useless if people cannot get to the top quickly. The lifts were made by an American firm Otis. They took visitors from the ground to the second level.

By March 1889 the Eiffel Tower was complete. At 300.51 metres, it was the highest structure in the world, a record it held until the construction of the Chrysler Building in New York in 1930. It had cost \$ 1.6 million, and only one life. On 15 May 1889 the tower was opened to the public. To date it has attracted over 185 million visitors. It remains the symbol of Paris, and a monument to the skill and bravery of Eiffel and his team.

Have ever heard about these facts?

- The sixteen huge columns of the tower were adjusted to a fraction of a millimetre by tiny hydraulic jacks built into their bases. Two men pumped to force water into the jack. A third man drove in an iron wedge to fix the column.
- The arches do not help in supporting the tower. Eiffel added them just for decoration.
- The third platform is 274 m high. On a clear day you can see for up to 72 km. Above it is a small flat used by Eiffel.
- The second platform is 115 m high. In 1889 there was a printing press and newspaper office there, as well as a bar and pastry shop.
- The first platform is 57 m high. In 1889 there were four restaurants there, each serving a different style of food.
- The four legs rest on massive concrete and stone blocks. Eiffel used caissons, like those used on the Brooklyn Bridge, to dig the foundations, as they were below the level of the River Seine.

### Vocabulary

**entry** ['entri] список учасників (конкурсу); той, хто записався (для участі в конкурсі), претендент, здобувач

**collapse** [kə'laeps] валити, обвалюватися; звальюватися; обрушувати; ламати своєю вагою

**absolute precision** ['æbsəlu:t pri'si:z(ə)n] абсолютна точність

**iron girders** ['aɪən 'gɜ:də] залізні балки

**rivet** ['rivit] заклепка

**from dawn** [dɔ:n] **to dusk** [dʌsk] із світанку до сутінок

**massive** ['mæsɪv] важкий; суцільний великий; величезний

**concrete** ['kɒŋkri:t] бетон

**caisson** ['keɪs(ə)n, kə'su:n] кесон

### 5.3.3. London's Buses

There are two kinds of buses in London: the red double-decker and the red single-decker. Some double-deckers have automatic doors and you pay the driver when you go in. On the single-decker you buy your ticket from a machine in the bus. But most London buses have a conductor who collects fares.

You can get a bus map of London at most underground stations. The map shows the routes for all the buses. The main places the bus goes to are shown on the front of the bus. Double-deckers have seats for sixty-five people. Only five people can stand when the seats are full. So the conductor may stop you getting on the bus if there are five passengers already standing.

### Vocabulary

**double-decker** ['dʌb(ə)l 'dekə] двоповерховий автобус

**single-decker** ['sɪŋ(ə)l 'dekə] звичайний (одноповерховий) автобус

**fare** [feə] плата за проїзд; вартість проїзду

### 5.3.4. Seven Wonders of the World

Seven Wonders of the World is the most exquisite and interesting among numerals monuments of arts and architecture created by the mankind.

**The Seven Wonders of the World** (or the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World) is a widely-known list of seven remarkable constructions of classical antiquity. It was based on guide-books popular among Hellenic sight-seers and only includes works located around the Mediterranean rim. Later lists include those for the Medieval World and the Modern World.

The historian Herodotus and the scholar Callimachus of Cyrene at the Museum of Alexandria, made early lists of “seven wonders” but their writings have not survived, except as references.

A later list, under various titles like *De septem orbis spactaculis* and traditionally misattributed to the engineer Philo of Byzantium, may date as late as the fifth century AD, though the author writes as if the Colossus of Rhodes were still standing. These are given in the table below:

**Great Pyramid of Giza**

**Hanging Gardens of Babylon**



**Temple of Artemis at Ephesus**

**Statue of Zeus at Olympia**

**Mausoleum of Maussollos at Halicarnassus**

**Colossus of Rhodes**

**Lighthouse of Alexandria**

The Greek category was not “Wonders” but “*theamata*”, which translates closer to “must-sees”. The list that we know today was compiled in the Middle Ages - by which time many of the sites were no longer in existence. Since the list came mostly from ancient Greek writings, only sites that would have been known and visited by the ancient Greeks were included. Even as early as 1600 BC, tourist graffiti was scrawled on monuments in the Egyptian Valley of the Kings.

**Vocabulary**

**exquisite** [ik'skwizit, 'ekskwizit] *вишуканий, витончений*

**mankind** [mæn'kaɪnd] *людство, людський рід*

**Hellenic** [he'lenɪk, -'li:nɪk] *грецька мова; еллінський, грецький*

**scholar** ['skɒlə] *учений*

**Byzantium** [bɪ'zæntɪəm, baɪ-] *Візантія*

**Colossus** [kə'lɒsəs] *гігант, колос*

**Giza** ['gi:zə] *місто Гіза*

**Temple** ['temp(ə)l] *храм*

**Ephesus** ['efɪsəs] *місто Ефес*

**Mausoleum of Halicarnassus** [ˌhalɪkɑː'nəsəs] *гробниця Мавзола у Галікарнасі*

**Rhodes** [rəʊdz] *острів Родос*

**Great Pyramid of Giza**

The Great Pyramid is the oldest and the largest of the three pyramids in the Giza Necropolis bordering what is now Cairo, Egypt in Africa. The oldest and only remaining member of the Seven Wonders of the World, it is believed to have been constructed over a 20 year period concluding around 2560 BC. The Great Pyramid was built as a tomb for Fourth dynasty Egyptian pharaoh Khufu (Cheops), and is sometimes called Khufu's Pyramid or the Pyramid of Khufu.

The Great Pyramid is the main part of a complex setting of buildings that included two mortuary temples in honour of Khufu (one close to the pyramid and one near the Nile), three smaller pyramids for Khufu's wives, an even smaller “satellite” pyramid, a raised causeway connecting the two temples, and small tombs surrounding the pyramid for nobles. One of the small pyramids contains the tomb of queen Hetepheres (discovered in 1925), sister and wife of Sneferu and the mother of Khufu.

There was a town for the workers of Giza, including a cemetery, bakeries, a beer factory and a copper smelting complex. More buildings and complexes are being discovered by The Giza Mapping Project.

**Vocabulary**

**Necropolis** [ni'krɒpəlɪs] *кладовище; колумбарій; некрополь, місто мертвих*

**Khufu** ['ku:fu:] (**Cheops** ['ki:ɒps]) *Хеопс*

**mortuary temple** ['mɔ:ʃv(ə)rɪ] *храм мертвих*

**causeway** ['kɔ:zweɪ] *бруківка; пішохідна доріжка*



### Hanging Gardens of Babylon

The Hanging Gardens of Babylon (also known as Hanging Gardens of Semiramis) and the walls of Babylon (near present-day Baghdad in Iraq) were considered one of the Seven Wonders of the World. They were both supposedly built by Nebuchadnezzar II around 600 BC. He is reported to have ordered the construction of the gardens to please his wife, Amyitis of Media, who longed for the trees and beautiful plants of her homeland. The lush Hanging Gardens are extensively documented by Greek historians such as Strabo and Diodorus Siculus, but otherwise there is little evidence for their existence.

In fact, there are no Babylonian records of any such gardens having existed. Some circumstantial evidence gathered at the excavation of the palace at Babylon has accrued, but does not completely substantiate what look like fanciful descriptions. Through the ages, the location may have been confused with gardens that existed at Nineveh, since tablets from there clearly show gardens. Writings on these tablets describe the possible use of something similar to an Archimedes' screw as a process of raising the water to the required height.

#### Vocabulary

*supposedly* [sə'pəʊzɪdli] *приблизно*

*Nebuchadnezzar II* [nebjukəd'neɪzə] *Навуходносор Другий*

*long* [lɒŋ] (*for, after*) *палко бажати, жадати; прагнути*

*lush* [lʌʃ] *соковитий, буйний, пишний (про рослинність); покритий буйною рослинністю; родючий; квітучий*

*Strabo* *Страбон (грецький історик і географ)*

*Diodorus Siculus* *Діодор Сицилійський*

*accrue* [ə'kru:] *виникати, відбуватися*

*substantiate* [səb'stæɪnʃeɪt] *обґрунтовувати (що-небудь); підкріплювати доказами*

*fanciful* ['fænsɪf(ə)l] *фантастичний, нереальний*

*Nineveh* ['nɪnɪvə] *давнє місто*

*Archimedes' screw* [ˌɑːkɪ'miːdiːz] *гвинт Архімеда*

### Temple of Artemis at Ephesus

The Temple of Artemis (in Greek - Artemision, and in Latin - Artemisium), also known less precisely as Temple of Diana, was a temple dedicated to Artemis completed, in its most famous phase, around 550 BC at Ephesus (in present-day Turkey) under the Achaemenid dynasty of the Persian Empire. Nothing remains of the temple - not the first on its site - which was one of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World.

#### Vocabulary

*temple* ['temp(ə)l] *храм*

*Artemis* ['ɑːtɪmɪs] *Артеміда*

*Ephesus* ['efəsəs] *місто Ефес*

*Achaemenid* [ə'ki:məniːd] *Ахеменіди (давньоперська династія)*

*Persian Empire* ['pɜːʃ(ə)n,-ɜ(ə)n 'empaɪə] *перська; іранська імперія*

### Statue of Zeus at Olympia

The Statue of Zeus at Olympia is one of the classical Seven Wonders of the Ancient World. It was carved by the famed Classical sculptor Phidias (5<sup>th</sup> century BC) circa 435 BC in Olympia, Greece.

The seated statue occupied the whole width of the aisle of the temple that was built to house it, and was 12 meters tall. “It seems that if Zeus were to stand up”, the geographer Strabo noted early in the 1<sup>st</sup> century BC, “he would unroof the temple.”

Zeus was a chryselephantine sculpture, made of ivory and accented with gold plating. In the sculpture, he was seated on the magnificent throne of cedarwood, inlaid with ivory, gold, ebony, and precious stones. In Zeus’ right hand there was a small statue of Nike, the goddess of victory, and in his left hand, a shining sceptre on which an eagle perched. Plutarch, in his Life of the Roman general Aemilius Paulus, records that the victor over Macedon “was moved to his soul, as if he had beheld the god in person”, while the Greek orator Dio Chrysostom wrote that a single glimpse of the statue would make a man forget his earthly troubles.

#### Vocabulary

**famed** [feɪmd] *прославлений; відомий, знаменитий*

**Phidias** [ˈfɪdiəs] *Фідій*

**aisle** [aɪl] *бічний боковий; прохід між рядами*

**Strabo** *Страбон (грецький історик і географ)*

**chryselephantine sculpture** [kriseliˈfænt(a)ɪn] *скульптура із золота та слонової кістки*

**cedarwood** [ˈsiːdəwud] *деревина кедра*

**ebony** [ˈebəni] *чорне або ебенове дерево; чорне дерево (деревина)*

**sceptre** [ˈseptə] *скінетр*

**perched** [pɜːtʃt] *який високо сидить*

### Mausoleum of Maussollos at Halicarnassus

The Mausoleum of Maussollos, or Mausoleum of Halicarnassus, was a tomb built between 353 and 350 BC at Halicarnassus (present Bodrum, Turkey) for Mausolus, a satrap in the Persian Empire, and Artemisia II of Caria, his wife and sister. The structure was designed by the Greek architects Satyrus and Pythius. It stood approximately 45 meters in height, and each of the four sides was adorned with sculptural reliefs created by one of four Greek sculptors - Bryaxis, Leochares, Scopas and Timotheus.

The finished structure was considered to be such an aesthetic triumph that Antipater of Sidon identified it as one of his Seven Wonders of the Ancient World. The word mausoleum has since come to be used generically for any grand tomb, though “Mausol - eion” originally meant “dedicated to Mausol”.

#### Vocabulary

**Halicarnassus** [ˌhəlɪkɑːˈnæsəs]

**tomb** [tuːm] *могила; надгробний пам'ятник; гробниця; склеп; мавзолей*

**Bodrum** [ˈbɒdrəm] *Бодрум*

**satrap** [ˈsætrəp] *сатрап (намісник провінції в Древній Персії)*

**adorn** [əˈdɔːn] *прикрашати; служити прикрасою*

**relief** [rɪ'li:f] *рельєф*

**Bryaxis** *Брайксіс (давньогрецький скульптор)*

**Scopas** *Скопас (давньогрецький скульптор)*

**Timotheus** *Тімофій (давньогрецький скульптор)*

**aesthetic** [i:s'aetik] *естетичний; який відчуває красу, який має розвинутий смак*

### Colossus of Rhodes

The Colossus of Rhodes was a giant statue of the Greek god Helios, erected on the Greek island of Rhodes by Chares of Lindos, a student of Lysippos, between 292 and 280 BC. It was one of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World. Before its destruction, the Colossus of Rhodes stood 70 cubits tall, over 30 metres, making it the tallest statue of the ancient world. Alexander the Great died at an early age in 323 BC without having time to put into place any plans for his succession. Fighting broke out among his generals, the Diadochi, with three of them eventually dividing up much of his empire in the Mediterranean area.

During the fighting Rhodes had sided with Ptolemy, and when Ptolemy eventually took control of Egypt, Rhodes and Ptolemaic Egypt formed an alliance which controlled much of the trade in the eastern Mediterranean.

Another of Alexander's generals, Antigonus I Monophthalmus, was upset by this turn of events. In 305 BC he had his son Demetrius Poliorcetes, also a general, invade Rhodes with an army of 40,000; however, the city was well defended, and Demetrius - whose name "Poliorcetes" signifies the "besieger of cities" - had to start construction of a number of massive siege towers in order to gain access to the walls. The first was mounted on six ships, but these were capsized in a storm before they could be used. He tried again with a larger, land-based tower named Helepolis, but the Rhodian defenders stopped this by flooding the land in front of the walls so that the rolling tower could not move.

In 304 BC a relief force of ships sent by Ptolemy arrived, and Demetrius's army abandoned the siege, leaving most of their siege equipment. To celebrate their victory, the Rhodians sold the equipment left behind for 300 talents and decided use the money to build a colossal statue of their patron god, Helios. Construction was left to the direction of Chares, a native of Lindos in Rhodes, who had been involved with large-scale statues before. His teacher, the sculptor Lysippos, had constructed an 18-metre high bronze statue of Zeus at Tarentum.

#### Vocabulary

**Helios** ['hi:lɪəs] *Геліос*

**erect** [i'rekt] *будувати, споруджувати*

**cubit** ['kju:bit] *лікоть*

**Diadochi** [daɪ'ædəkaɪ] *шість македонських генералів*

**alliance** [ə'laɪəns] *союз, об'єднання*

**Antigonus** *Антигон*

**besieger** [bɪ'si:dʒə] *сторона, яка здійснює облогу*

**siege** [si:dʒ] *1) престол, трон; 2) облога; довгий, болісний період (часу)*

**capsize** [kæp'saɪz] *перекидання; перекидати (човен); перекидатися*

**flooding** ['flʌdɪŋ] затоплення

**abandon** [ə'bændən] 1) відмовлятися; залишити; 2) здавати (ворогові)

**Rhodian** ['rəʊdiən] житель острова Родос

**talent** ['tælənt] талант (грошова одиниця та одиниця ваги)

### Lighthouse of Alexandria

The Pharos of Alexandria was a tall tower built in the 3<sup>rd</sup> century BC (between 285 and 247 BC) on the island of Pharos in Alexandria, Egypt to serve as that port's landmark, and later, its lighthouse.

With a height variously estimated at between 115 and 135 metres it was among the tallest man-made structures on Earth for many centuries, and was identified as one of the Seven Wonders of the World by classical writers. It was the third tallest building after the two Great Pyramids (of Khufu and Khafra) for its entire life. Some scientists estimate a much taller height exceeding 152 metres that would make the tower the tallest building up to the 14<sup>th</sup> century.

Only *the Pyramids of Egypt* still survive as wonders.

#### Vocabulary

**lighthouse** ['laɪthaus] маяк

**Khufu** ['ku:fu:] see **Cheops** ['ki:ɒps] Хеопс

### 5.3.5. Four Wonders of Nature

#### Asia

#### The Valley of Flowers

The Valley of Flowers lies about 4,000 metres above seal level in the Himalayas. You have to walk seventeen kilometres to get there. The valley is famous for its mountain flowers. It changes colour almost every day, when different kinds of plants begin to flower. This lovely spot is home to many rare animals – bears, snow leopards and different kinds of butterflies.

Valley of Flowers in Uttarakhand is India's most mesmerizing flower valley, which is also a UNESCO world heritage site. The valley is flourishing in the middle of Bhyundar Valley, up in the western part of the Himalayas at an elevation of 3,658 mts above sea level. It is popular for its verdant valleys of endemic alpine flowers and the unbelievably mesmerizing scenic beauty.

When you trek to Valley of Flowers, you see rare flowers, including Brahma kamala, Yellow Cobra Lily, Jacquemont's Cobra Lily, Wallich's Cobra Lily, Elegant Slipper Orchid (орхідея), Himalayan Slipper Orchid, Himalayan Marsh Orchid etc. The trek has been done and praised by many mountaineers, botanists, and renowned trekkers in the past.

#### Africa

#### The Congo Rainforest

Not many places on Earth are as full of life as the Congo rainforest, the world's second largest tropical forest. It covers two million square kilometres in six countries (Central Africa through Cameroon, Equatorial Guinea, Gabon, the Central African Republic, the Democratic Republic of Congo and the Republic of Congo) along the

river Congo. Two thirds of the rainforest is found in the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC) where 57% of the countries land area is made up of forest. About 10,000 kinds of tropical plants grow here. Many of them are unique to the Congo area. Rare animals live in the jungle. The forest is home to a wealth of biodiversity with over 10,000 species of plant, 30% of which are found only in the region, 400 species of mammal, 700 species of fish and 1,000 species of bird, according to WWF. Some of the species found in the Congo rainforest include the pygmy chimpanzee, the forest elephant, gorillas, the Congo peacock, the white rhino, the okapi and the ground pangolin. Perhaps one of the most unique species is the okaipi, a close relative of the giraffe with striped marking on their legs resembling the stripes of a zebra. There are an estimated 10,000-20,000 okaipis remaining in the wild in the DRC. They live in mountainous regions with altitudes between 500-1000 metres and in swamp forests below 500 meters.

### **The Pasific The Coral Triangle**

The Coral Triangle is an area in the Pasific Ocean between Indonesia and the Solomon Islands. Its coral reefs are like underwater gardens. They are full of wonderfully rich life. There are 600 kinds of coral and 2,000 kinds of fish. Six of the world's seven types of sea turtles swim in the sea here. There are whales, sharks and strange sea snails which eat coral and look like bits of coral!

### **Three Things to Know About the Coral Triangle, the Ocean's Biodiversity Hot Spot**

The Triangle is a billion-acre ocean region controlled by Indonesia, Malaysia, Philippines, Papua New Guinea, Solomon Islands and Timor-Leste. Unlike some other coral-rich areas like the Great Barrier Reef, the Coral Triangle isn't a household name. But it's importance to Southeast Asia and the world's oceans can't be downplayed. The region encompasses a full 30 percent of the world's coral and has the highest diversity of corals and fishes in the world. It's a place to know - especially if you're concerned about conservation and coastal communities, which many are.

**1. It's been called "the Amazon of the ocean"** - Like the Amazon rainforest in comparison to other forest regions, the Coral Triangle is home to diversity found nowhere else in the reef system. More than 75 percent of the world's coral species - over 600 species - live in the Triangle, and the area contains more than 30 percent of all the world's coral reefs.

But the coral is only the start of the diversity in this living system. "The Coral Triangle has more coral reef fish diversity than anywhere else in the world," writes the World Wildlife Federation. Of the 6,000 currently known species of reef fish, 37 percent of the world's coral reef fish live in parts of the Triangle. Two hundred and thirty-five of those species are found nowhere else.

Six out of the world's seven marine turtles live in regions of the Coral Triangle. So do aquatic mammals like blue whales, sperm whales and dolphins and endangered species like dugongs? The list is long. In fact, writes the WWF, the criteria used to define the Coral Triangle relied on high species diversity - higher than that of nearby reefs in Australia and Fiji. The green turtle, the leatherback, the hawksbill, the olive



ridley, the loggerhead and the flatback species of turtle are all found in the Coral Triangle.

**2. It may be where coral reefs began** – “The theory is that this is where coral reefs started,” says naturalist Chris Cook in the *National Geographic* documentary below. Today, the Triangle is the center of diversity for ocean life, and research in reef sciences has suggested that it was the historic point of origin for many coral species as well as many of the species that live there.

Paleontologists are studying ocean in the Triangle to get a sense of what the underwater past looked like. “The ancient diversity of the Coral Triangle can tell us much about how life has adapted to changing conditions in the past, and how life may well adapt again in the future,” writes Britain’s National History Museum.

Among the abundant species Cook and his colleagues observed recently: the cuttlefish, a species which itself has been around for more than 500 million years. “It’s hard to explain. You have to see it,” Cook says. “It’s a mollusc. It’s related to a clam. And it just displays such intelligence.”

**3. It’s in danger exactly because of its abundance**

Like reefs everywhere else on the planet, the Triangle is in critical danger because of human-produced factors. It’s in danger from localized threats like cyanide fishing for rare aquarium fish that live in its waters. This practice damages fish communities and the surrounding environment. But it’s also in danger because of huge threats, like anthropogenic climate change, which is warming the seas as they become more acidic, resulting in conditions where many species of coral can’t live.

On top of that, coral bleaching and white syndrome are immediate threats to many species of coral that dominate the Triangle – the Acropora corals. “In the next century, maybe all coral reef researchers will be paleontologists”, one coral researcher said to the Natural History Museum.

But there’s hope that parts of the Coral Triangle may be refuges for marine life once again. “High levels of biodiversity, coupled with fast rates of growth and recovery, put many Coral Triangle ecosystems in a favorable position to survive climate change,” writes the World Wildlife Fund.

## **South America**

### **Iguazu Falls**

You can hear it from miles away. On the border between Brazil and Argentina lies Iguazu, one of the world’s largest waterfalls, surrounded by subtropical rainforest. The curtain of water is nearly three kilometres wide and eighty-two metres in the highest place. Rare plants which can only live in running water grow in the waterfall.

#### **10 Things to Know Before You Visit Iguazu Falls, Brazil**

In the case of the absolutely breathtaking Iguazu Falls, it doesn’t matter how many photos, or how much video you see of it, it always lives up to the hype. Here are some helpful facts and info to know before your legendary day at the Iguazu waterfalls.

**1. Open Earth** - one of the most unique waterfalls on the planet, and now one of the most famous, was created when an enormous volcanic eruption created a huge



crack in the earth, which creates the incredible spectacle as the Paraná River runs off it.

**2. Sheer enormity** - to put in perspective the enormity of this volcanic crack, Iguazu Falls is not only 31 meters (102 feet) taller at the highest points, than the more famous Niagara Falls, but it is also twice as wide!

**3. Who left the tap on?** - those figures do not make Iguazu the biggest waterfall in the world, however, it certainly is one of the wettest, something you appreciate when you visit, as the sound of the water is deafening. A staggering flow rate average of 62,000 cubic feet of water flow over the edge, every single second.

**4. Dry run** – due to the size, surface area and incredible number of actual cliffs, edges and falls located within the crevasse of Iguazu, there is still a stretch of almost 3,000 feet of the 1.7 mile long falls that doesn't have any water running over it.

**5. Triple frontier** - rivers are often used as dividing lines and borders between territories and nations and the natural curve of the Parana River weaves and bends its way alongside Paraguay, Argentina and Brazil, at a point where you can view all three “frontiers.” The waterfall itself is shared between the nations of Brazil, and Argentina.

**6. Remote location** - good things come to those who wait, and great things come to those willing who go long distances. That is certainly the case when visiting the falls as they're located on the southwest corner of Brazil, 8 to 10 hours from the closest big city of Curitiba. From the Argentinian perspective, the closest notable city is the capital, Buenos Aires, which is between 15 and 18 hours drive away.

**7. Brazilian side** - from the green and gold side of the falls, you will pay just under 64 Brazilian Reals (2018) which correlates to roughly \$18.50 USD. This includes your entrance to the park, from open to close, transportation to the beginning of the trail along the river's edge, and transportation back to the main gate of the park. Average duration of time to walk the 1.5 km trail, and river walk over the waters edge is usually 1.5 – 3 hours.

**8. Argentinian side** - from the blue and white side of the falls, where you will of course have to factor in the process of crossing an international border, the entrance cost to the park will set you back 500 Argentinian Pesos, roughly \$25 USD (2018) but the cost is justified as the average time spent on the Argentinian side to see everything is between 3 and 6 hours.

**9. When to go** - the river is always gushing so there is no fear of witnessing a dry falls, however there is a good and bad time to visit the falls. The winters in this area of Brazil are never cold, but the water level can be considerably lower than other seasons, and summer can be unbearably humid, so it is recommended to visit in the tranquil seasons of fall, or spring.

**10. Hollywood** - Iguazu Falls, which in Guarani and Tupi translate to “big water” has been globally featured as the impressive backdrop in a number of big Hollywood productions including the movie, Indiana Jones and the Kingdom of the Crystal Skull.

### Vocabulary

*trek* [trek] *подорож; переселення, марш, похід; перехід*

*katama* *камала*

**Cobra Lily** аризема; дарлінгтонія

**Orchid** орхідея

**WWF = World Wide Fund for Nature**

**pygmy chimpanzee** карликовий шимпанзе

**okapi** [əʊ'kɑ:pɪ] окапі, лісовий жираф

**rangolin** [ræŋ'gəʊlɪn] ящір

**DRC = Democratic Republic of Congo**

**swamp** [swɒmp] болото, драговина, трясовина; zalивати, затопляти

**downplay** ['daʊn,pleɪ] применшувати; приглушати; згладжувати)

**encompass** [ɪŋkʌmpəs] 1) оточувати; обносити (стіною); обводити (ровом); оточувати (увагою); обступати (про небезпеку); огортати; 2) містити (в собі), стосуватися; 3) виконати (завдання), здійснити; 4) обертається (навколо чого-небудь); ходити навкруги (чого-небудь)

**dugong** ['du:ɡɒŋ] дюгонь

**leatherback** ['leəbæk] шкіряста черепаха

**hawksbill** морська черепаха

**olive ridley** оливкова черепаха

**loggerhead** морська черепаха з великою головою

**cuttlefish** [kʌt(ə)lɪfɪʃ] каракатиця

**clam** ([klæm] істівний морський молюск; клем

### 5.3.6. London Underground

People in towns and cities take public transport every day. In London four million people take the Underground! London Underground – Londoners call it “the Tube” – is the oldest in the world. The first line opened in 1863. Now there are 11 lines, 270 stations and 400 kilometres of track.

In 1931 Harry Beck designed the famous Tube map. Before that the map was complicated and difficult to understand. Beck put all the stations in straight lines with the same spaces between them. Undergrounds in other countries now use the same idea. It's easy to find your way.

People say there are lots of ghosts at stations on the Underground:

1. **Liverpool Street:** a man in white overalls sometimes wait for a train at night. A station worker first saw him in 2000 and the ghost was also on CCTV.
2. **Bethnal Green:** people often hear women and children screaming at the station. 126 people died there during the Second World War.
3. **King's Cross:** here a well-dressed woman stands with her hands out and screams. Then she disappears!
4. **Covent Garden:** workers often leave this station because they see the ghost. It's a tall man in a hat and coat with gloves. People say it's an actor. Someone killed him a long time ago.
5. **Aldgate:** 100 years ago an electrician nearly died. He fell onto the track. But he lived. His friends saw an old woman beside him. She touched his head. Then she disappeared!

**Vocabulary**

**overalls** робочий халат; спецодяг

**CCTV** = *closed circuit television* кабельне телебачення

**scream** [skri:m] пронизливо кричати

**nearly** ['niəli] майже; ледве не

**touch** [tʌtʃ] торкатися, чіпати

### 5.3.7. The 10 Most Beautiful Lakes in Ukraine

Ukraine is a wonderful country. It has marvelous picturesque landscapes, where there are mountains, seas, rivers, and steppes. There are about 20 thousand lakes in Ukraine: they are in flood plains of rivers, sea bays and high in the mountains.

#### Lake Synevyr

*Village Synevyrska Poliana, Mizhhirskiy district, Transcarpathian region*

Just Synevyr is called the most beautiful lake in Ukraine. Picturesque Carpathian landscapes and romantic legends make it unique nature. The legend about the origin of the lake tells: "The waters of Synevyr are transparent, like girlish tears. People say that the young Syn had cried her eyes out for her beloved Vyr". The calm and deep Synevyr (22 m) is called the Sea Eye of the Carpathians.

#### Lake Koiaske

*South of the Kerch Peninsula*

This Lake is separated by a narrow sandy bank from the Black Sea. It is liman saline lake inhabited by *dunaliella salina* - a microscopic unicellular mobile algae, which contains the red pigment b-carotene in its composition. It gives the water pink-reddish colour. Koiaske lake is considered the most salted lake among all lakes of the Crimea.

#### Lake Nesamovyte

*Rakhiv district of Transcarpathian region*

The highland lake Nesamovyte, located in the mountain massif of Chornogora, has a mystical glory. There are many Carpathian legends about the ever cold water, in which you can not throw stones and swim in them. The lake is very shallow (1.5 m) and its length is 88 meters. One can be impressed with the wonderful lake and the picturesque nature of the mountain peaks and valleys, spreading around the enchanting landscapes.

#### Lake Bile

*Volodymyrets district, Rivne region*

Lake Bile is called the lake of youth. The people say the water is rich in glycerine, it is even soft to the touch. Inhabitants tell that in the middle of the past century, the Polish ladies were specifically delivered whitewater from Ukraine for taking baths. The lake is very beautiful. Here one can find a unique combination of marsh, lake and forest natural complexes of Western Polissia. Lake Bile is of karst origin. The water here is clean so that it allows you to see the sandy bottom through the depth of several meters.

#### Lake Svitiaz

*Village Svityaz, Shatskyi district, Volyn region*

Lake Svitiaz is one of the pearls of the Shatskyi National Natural Park collection, which has 24 unique lakes. The lakes are rich in fish, therapeutic mud. The lakes have clean, extremely transparent water and sandy shores. Svitiaz is the deepest lake

in Ukraine (up to 58.4 m). So in the sunny weather the bottom can be seen a few meters deep. This lake was named one of the seven natural wonders of Ukraine. Around the Svitiyaz is huge coniferous forests, and walks there are very healthy.

### **Lake Maricheika**

*Verkhovyna district, Ivano-Frankivsk region*

The lake Maricheika is another lake of the Chornohora massif, surrounded by a thick fir forest everywhere. And its nearest shores are covered the sub-alpine meadows. The legend about the name of the lake reminds the beautiful girl Marichka, who sacrificed her life, to save the fellow-villagers from the enemies' attack. The lake was formed from the tears of the beloved of Marichka - the shepherd Ivanko. And the surrounding forest was called Divochyi. One can see this forest in the mirror of transparent clear water, through which, you can see the bottom if you come closer.

### **Lake Yalpukh**

*Near the city Bolhrad in Odessa region*

Yalpukh is the largest in Ukraine and the second in Europe freshwater lake of natural origin, which has 25 kilometers. This is the liman lake, formed in the basin of the Danube. Yalpukh is adorned Bolhrad, which is situated in the green gardens and vineyards in summer. Interestingly, archaeologists have found the so-called Hunnish treasures - kilograms of gold, silver, and precious stones on the shore of Lake Yalpukh several years ago.

### **Lake Shelekhivske**

*Near the village Mezhyrich, Lebedynskyi district, Sumy region*

The lake saves its primordial beauty from the times of the Ice Age, it has not lost its coldness of glaciers, because the water here is never warm. Lake Shelekhivske is as old as Ladoga or Baikal. Here is the calm and silence that is violated only by the songs of the birds. The lake is surrounded by high pine, alder and maple forests. From the bird's eye view, lake Shelekhivske looks like a huge unbended horseshoe with a tiny island in the middle of it.

### **Lake Molochnyi Liman (Milky Liman)**

*South of Zaporizka region*

This lake, formed on the site of the Sea of Azov. It is separated from the sea with the sand bank. Today, this lake is mostly called Molochnyi Liman. Mud of the Molochnyi Lake have therapeutic properties, and the water is very similar to the "Azov" water in its composition.

### **Lake Brebeneskul**

*Rakhiv district, Transcarpathian region*

The highest highland lake of Ukraine is at the bottom of the glacial cirque on the slope of the Mount Hutyn-Tomnatyk. The weakly mineralized water of Brebeneskul remains crystal clear and cool throughout the year (although it is considered the warmest lake among the all lakes of the Chornohora ridge). It is interesting, the river with the same name flows out from the lake Brebenskul. The cleanest mountain air and amazing Carpathian nature, where the azaleas and crocuses bloom on green tops are around the lake.

### **Vocabulary**

*marvelous* ['marv(ə)ləs] *чудоєвий*

*flood plains* [flʌd] долина затоплення  
*bay* [beɪ] бухта, затока  
*transparent* [træn'spærənt] прозорий  
*liman* [li'mɔ:n] лиман  
*saline* ['seɪlɪn] соляний, який містить сіль; сольовий  
*dunaliella salina* дуналієлла соляно водна (одноклітинна водорість)  
*unicellular mobile algae* ['ældʒɪ:] одноклітинна рухома водорість  
*massif* ['mæsi:f] гірський масив  
*shallow* ['ʃæləʊ] мілкий, мілководний; неглибокий  
*enchanted* [ɪn'tʃɑ:ntɪd] чарівний; чаклунський  
*marsh* [mɑ:ʃ] болото  
*karst* [kɑ:st] карст  
*therapeutic mud* [θə'reɪpju:tɪk mʌd] лікувальні грязі  
*coniferous forest* [kə'nɪf(ə)rəs] хвойний ліс  
*subalpine* [səb'ælpɪn] субальпійський  
*sacrifice* ['sækrɪfaɪs] жертвувати  
*vineyard* ['vaɪnjəd] виноградник  
*Hunnish* ['hʌnɪʃ] який відноситься до гунів  
*primordial* [praɪ'mɔ:diəl] початковий, первинний; споконвічний; первісний  
*Ice Age* льодовиковий період, льодовикова епоха  
*glacier* ['glæsiə] льодовик  
*pine* [paɪn] сосна  
*alder* ['ɔ:lɪdə] вільха  
*unbended* розігнутий  
*horseshoe* ['hɔ:ʃu:] підкова  
*cirque* льодовик у горах; цирк  
*ridge* ['rɪdʒ] гірський хребет, гірський хребет  
*azalea* [ə'zeɪliə] азалія

## 5.4. Education Abroad

### 5.4.1. Great Britain. System of Secondary Education

There are many different types of schools in Britain. There are, however, only three main systems: comprehensive, selective and private.

#### 1. The Comprehensive System

More than 90 per cent of children who go to the state schools go to school in the comprehensive system. Children go to a primary (or first) school at the age of five. Depending on the policy of the Local Education Authority, they may go directly to the upper school - usually called the comprehensive school - at the age of 11. Alternatively, they may go to the middle school for three or four years before going to the upper school.

The comprehensive system is non-selective. This means that all children go from one school to another taking any exams and without being selected according to their abilities.



## **2. The Selective System**

In some areas of Britain, you can still find a different, older system of education (introduced in 1944). This is a selective system - children are selected for certain schools according to their abilities.

All children go to a primary school until the age of 11. They then take an examination called the 11-plus. Those who are successful go to grammar schools, where they receive a more academic education. Those who fail the exam go to secondary modern schools, where they receive an education which is less academic, and more intended to train them for a job when they leave at the age of 16.

## **3. The Private (Independent) System**

About 7 per cent of children go to private schools. There are three levels of private schools - primary schools (age 4 to 8) and preparatory (prep) schools (8 to 13). At the age of 13, children take an examination. If they pass, they go to the public school, where they usually remain until they are 18. Many prep and most public schools are boarding schools - the children live at school during the school terms.

Be careful - although these schools are called public, they are in fact, private, and it can be very expensive to send your child to such a school.

Within the three systems, there are several varieties of schools. For instance, you can find:

- schools for boys only;
- schools for girls only;
- mixed schools - for boys and girls;
- voluntary schools - often with a religious background - such as Roman Catholic schools.

You can see that the British education system is rather confusing.

### **5.4.2. Great Britain. Higher Education**

There are 47 universities in Britain and 30 polytechnics, and 350 colleges and institutes of higher education (some of which train teachers).

Courses in arts and science are offered by most universities in Great Britain. At nearly all universities courses are available in one or more applied sciences. Imperial College, London, University of Manchester, Institute of Science and Technology and some of the newer universities concentrate on technology, although they may also offer a number of courses in social studies, modern languages and other non-technological subjects.

Undergraduate courses normally take three years of full-time study, although a number of subjects take longer, including medicine, architecture and foreign languages (where courses include a year abroad). They lead in most cases to a Bachelor's degree in Arts or Science.

There are various postgraduate degrees, including Master of Philosophy and Doctor of Philosophy, the last two being awarded for research in Arts or Sciences.

Degrees are awarded either by the institution itself, or by the Council for National Academic Awards, particularly in vocational areas. Students of law, architecture and some other professions can take qualifications awarded by their own professional bodies instead of degrees.



University teaching combines lectures, practical classes (in scientific subjects) and small group-teaching in either seminars or tutorials, the last being a traditional feature of the Universities of Oxford and Cambridge.

The typical academic program for university students in Great Britain is composed of a variety of courses or subjects within a field of specialization.

**Vocabulary**

*undergraduate* [ˌʌndə'grædʒjuːt] студент останнього курсу

*postgraduate degrees* ступінь магістра

*Master of Philosophy* магістр філософії

*tutorials* [tju:əto:riəl] консультація; практичні заняття з керівником; урок, семінар; період навчання в коледжі; навчальний посібник

**5.4.3. College Life in Great Britain**

Higher education in England has several branches:

- colleges of education;
- polytechnics;
- universities.

The most famous English universities are Oxford and Cambridge. Oxford is a collection of colleges which were founded long ago. The University is only an administrative centre that arranges lectures, hold exams and gives degrees. The tutorial system is one of the ways in which Oxford and Cambridge differ from all other English universities. Every student has a tutor who plans his work and acts as a parent to the student. Besides tutor there is a Dean who is in charge of the discipline among 300 students inside College. Discipline out of college is the responsibility of two Dons called Proctors. At Cambridge to each students room there is man-servant who with woman-servant keeps the room clean.

The academic year is divided into 3 parts (terms):

- 1<sup>st</sup> – October – December;
- 2<sup>nd</sup> – January – March;
- 3<sup>rd</sup> – April – June.

**Vacations:**

- a month at Christmas;
- a month at Easter;
- 3 – 4 months in summer.

Terminal exams are held at the end of each term. Final exams are taken at the end of the course of studies. Only two re-examinations are allowed. For a break of discipline can be fined a sum of money, for a serious offence he may be expelled from the university.

A person studying for a degree at a British university is called an undergraduate; one who has taken a degree is called a graduate. The first degree at a university is *B.A.* or *B.Sc.* – *Bachelor of Arts* or of *Science*. *M.A.* or *M.Sc.* – stands *Master of Arts* or of *Science*. One can become a Bachelor after 3 years of hard studying and a Master at the end of 5 years.

**Vocabulary**

*tutorial system* система прикріплення студентів до кураторів в

університетах

**Proctor** ['prɒktə] проктор, наглядач, інспектор (в Оксфордському та Кембриджському університетах)

**terminal exams** семестрові экзамени

**re-examinations** повторне складання іспиту / заліку

**fine** штраф, пеня; штрафувати

**offence** [ə'fens] порушення

**expel** [ɪk'spel] виганяти; виключати

**graduate** ['grædʒʊeɪt] закінчити вищий навчальний заклад, отримати ступінь бакалавра; закінчити будь-який навчальний заклад

**arrange lectures** складати (узгоджувати) розклад

#### 5.4.4. Schools in the USA

The USA does not have a national system of education. There are many different kinds of school: public schools, Private schools, parochial schools, schools specializing in the arts, literature or science, etc.

Education in the United States comprises three basic levels: elementary, secondary and higher education. Vocational training, adult education, schools or classes for special types of children, and kindergartens also form part of the program in most states.

Parents may choose whether to send their children to their local free public schools, or to private schools which charge fees.

The vast majority of students at the primary and secondary levels go to public schools. Most of those who attend private school attend church-sponsored parochial schools.

The school year is usually nine months, from early September to mid-June.

##### **Preschool education**

A child's introduction to formal education is usually in kindergarten classes operated in most public school systems. Many systems also provide nursery schools. The age group is commonly four and five years. These preschool education programs maintain a close relationship with the home and parents, and aim to give children useful experiences which will prepare them for elementary school. The programs are flexible and are designed to help the child grow in self-reliance, learn to get along with others, and form good work and play habits.

##### **Elementary school**

The main purpose of the elementary school is the general intellectual and social development of the child from 6 to 12 or 15 years of age. Curricula vary with the organization and educational aims of individual schools and communities. The more or less traditional program consists of teaching prescribed subject matter. Promotion from one grade to the next is based on the pupil's achievement of specified skills in reading, writing, spelling, arithmetic, history, geography, music, and art.

##### **Secondary school**

Most pupils follow a course that includes English, science, social studies, mathematics and physical education. Elective subject may be chosen in the fields of foreign languages, fine arts, and vocational training. Pupils usually elect about half their work in grades nine through twelve.

### Vocabulary

**public school** 1) закритий приватний привілейованийий середній навчальний заклад, для хлопчиків (у Великій Британії; готує до вступу в університет)  
2) (безкоштовна) середня школа (у США та Шотландії)

**parochial school** [pə'rəʊkiəl] парафіяльні школи, які підтримує церква (особливо Греко-Католицька)

**comprise** [kəm'praɪz] включати, містити в собі, становити; охоплювати; складатися з; входити до складу

**vocational training** професійне (або трудове) навчання

**nursery school** дитячий садок

**elementary school** початкова школа

**self-reliance** упевненість у собі, у своїх силах

**curricula** [kə'rikjələ] курс навчання; навчальний план (у школі, університеті); розклад (лекцій, уроків)

### 5.4.5. USA Higher Education

The first American college was Harvard, which was founded by the graduates of Cambridge University. Later the college of William and Mary was founded in Williamsburg, Virginia. There were nine colleges in the colonies, including Princeton (New Jersey), Pennsylvania, Columbia (New York), Brown (Rhode Island), Rutgers (New Jersey), and Dartmouth (New Hampshire). These universities are among the most respected in the country today.

41% of high school graduates go to college. Students pay tuition to study at public and private universities. Some of them have scholarships to help with the cost of tuition. Even with a scholarship, higher education is very expensive; many families take out loans to pay for their children's college education.

Colleges and universities of the USA offer such a great variety of requirements for admission and many different types of programs.

The terms “college” and “university” are often used interchangeably, although the former often is a part of the latter. An American college typically offers a blend of natural and social sciences and humanistic studies. Students, traditionally from 18 to 22 years old, attend classes for approximately four years to receive, if they successfully complete all requirements, a bachelor's degree in arts or sciences. A university, on the other hand, is usually composed of an undergraduate college of arts and sciences, plus graduate schools and professional schools and facilities.

Most American university degrees are awarded on completion of a special number of courses which earn students credits or points.

Some American universities are famous all over the world; they are very selective and very expensive. The most outstanding are Brown, Harvard, Yale, Columbia, Cornell, Dartmouth College, Princeton and Pennsylvania. These universities have similar academic and social prestige in the USA to Oxford and Cambridge in Britain.

### Vocabulary

**tuition** [tju:'iə(ə)n] плата за навчання

**scholarship** стипендія

**admission** [əd'mɪʃ(ə)n] доступ, вхід; прийом в навчальний заклад

**interchangeably** [ɪntə'tʃeɪndʒəbli] замінюючи один одного; поперемінно, по

*черзі, змінюючи один одного*

**blend** [blend] *суміш*

#### **5.4.6. Floating Schools**

The United Nations say that every child has the right to education. But millions of children around the world don't go to school. The government in their country doesn't have the money to build state schools. In some places there is a primary school for children up to 11 years old but there is no secondary school so students have to leave school when they are still very young. In some countries, like Bangladesh in South Asia, a lot of children miss school between July and October because of all the rain.

But now a non-profit organization in Bangladesh is solving the problem. When schools on land close because of the floods, the organization runs free "floating schools". Twenty special boat schools up and down the rivers and pick children from all the villages. They are mixed schools for boys and girls. Each school has one classroom for thirty students and a teacher. Children go to their boat schools for four or three hours a day, six days a week.

The students are very proud of their floating schools. They never miss a class and they are always on time for lessons! They do their homework and try very hard to get good marks – they want to do well and pass the exams.

Boat schools mean that children in South Asia now have a chance to get education and even go to university.

#### **5.4.7. Green School**

Green School in Bali is a usual school. It was an experiment in 2010 by John and Cynthia Hardy. Their idea was to make a school that was totally environmentally friendly. Everything in this school is "green" – that means it's good for the environment, the classrooms are made of bamboo wood the light is from the sun. The school uses solar power water from their river.

The Hardy's experiment was successful and there are now 160 students from more than twenty-five countries - and it goes from kindergarten up to age eighteen. The students at Green School don't only learn subjects such as English and Maths; they also learn to grow organic vegetables and other food such as rice in the huge school gardens. They look after the plants and learn to cook them. The school also has a cow, some pigs and a buffalo. The students also study building, making furniture and traditional art and dance.

The Hardys want the local community to be a part of Green School. They have a rule that twenty percent of the students must be from Bali because they want local children to learn about protecting the environment. The children are often poor, so people from all over the world pay for them to go to the school. The idea of green living is becoming more popular and now people are building green houses near the school so their children can walk to school. The Hardys' dream is that one day all the schools in the world will be green.

### **5.4.8. Unusual Schools**

Every school has a timetable so students know what they are doing. Every school has classrooms so students know where to go. Every school gives the students homeworks and tests. Every school makes rules for its students. True or false? False! Some schools are very different.

#### **1. Byron Court School**

Many schools have students of different nationalities. In the playground at one school of London you can hear not five languages, not fifteen, not thirty but forty-two! Byron Court is a primary school with 600 children from five to eleven years old. They are from Somalia, Iraq, Poland, Romania, Nepal, the Philippines and many more. And, oh yes, of course, from England! This part of London has families from all over the world. They come to live and work in London.

Many children don't speak English when they start. It can be a problem. But with good teachers and friends they learn fast. Soon their English is good and their school work is good too. The children at this school get to know children from different countries. They are laughing and talking together. It's great for them have friends from different countries.

At Byron Court the children don't only do school work. They learn about different cultures. They also learn to work together. It is a good example for everyone.

#### **2. Waldorf Schools**

There are primary and secondary Waldorf schools all over the world. These schools can decide about some of the things they teach, but they all teach art, social skills and critical thinking. Students do all sorts of creative play and practical activities, for example, painting, weaving and woodwork. Waldorf schools even have a special subject, Eurythmy. It is a very interesting drama and dance class. There are no tests in primary school, and secondary students take exams only if it is important for university. And there are no grades before students are fourteen or fifteen.

#### **3. Vittra Telefonplan School, Stockholm**

The Vittra Telefonplan School in Sweden wants children to learn languages, to learn to work together and to be creative.

So in this school there are classrooms and spaces for different group, project and individual activity. The rooms are amazing, colourful places with wonderful furniture. And every student has a tablet or computer! Learning is fun here.

#### **4. The Brit School**

Do you know about the Brit School? It's one of the most famous schools in the UK. It is not famous for its exam results and you don't study subjects like Maths and Science there. It's a school for actors, singers, musicians, dancers and artists. I am sure you know some of its old students. Do you like Adele's or Amy Winehouse's music? They went to the Brit School!

The school started in 1991. It's in Croydon, London. In 1991 it was small but now it's bigger than it was then. It's also unusual because students don't have to pay for lessons there. It's free.

Every year there are the famous Brit Awards. People from lots of countries watch them on television. Money from these awards helps the students.



### Vocabulary

*Eurythmy* [ju:'ripmi] *ритмічність; евритмія, рівномірність ритму (музики, танцю, мови); злагодженість (рухів)*

*tablet* ['tæblit] *планишет*

## 5.5. Rules of Etiquette

### 5.5.1. Table Manners in Great Britain

Although rules regarding table manners are not very strict in Britain, it is considered rude to eat and drink noisily. At formal meals, the cutlery is placed in the order in which it will be used, starting from the outside and working in. The dessert spoon and fork are usually laid at the top of your place setting, not at the side.

After each course the knife and fork should be laid side by side in the middle of the plate. This shows that you have finished and the plate can be removed. If you leave the knife and fork apart you will show that you have not yet finished eating.

It is considered impolite to smoke between courses unless your hosts say otherwise. It is polite to ask permission before you smoke in people's home.

In Britain smoking is now forbidden in many public places, for example, on the underground, on stations, in shops, in theatres and in cinemas.

### 5.5.2. Attributes of Formal Parties

By the key moments of blameless style for business-lady more frequent than all there are faultlessly neat accessories.

Any woman will say you: "Without a bag I am as without hands". But if in everyday life, choosing a "carry-on baggage", it is possible to show the most unbridled fantasy, a dress-code insists on restraint and demands the certain rules.

- Material which a bag is executed from must correspond to material of your shoes. In color they can coincide not just, and on a texture - necessarily.

- If the colour division in a business suit takes place on a horizontal line, it is better to pick up a bag to overhead part (to the blouse, coat), and shoes - to lower.

- If you use in the clothing of color of different saturation, shoes must be dark, and bag - light.

- A work-bag must be capacious, but not bulky, rectangular, but only to such degree, that the document of format of A-4 was included in her (a rectangle at unconscious level is associated with prestige status). In this sense a small lady portfolio differs advantageously.

- A business bag not must be cheap, from substitute of leather.

Memorize, a "business" bag is accepted to put on the floor near a chair or on a table (but not dinner, but a table for negotiation). But nowise it is not needed to hang her on the back of the chair!

A business person does not often give gifts to clients or business acquaintances. An employee who is retiring, getting married or having a child will usually receive a gift from his colleagues. An employee sometimes brings back inexpensive gifts for colleagues after a vacation. When receiving a gift, Americans often say, "Can I open it now?" This shows that they are pleased at being offered a gift. When visiting



someone's home for dinner, the guest usually brings a gift such as flowers or a bottle of wine. Business acquaintances do not often exchange gifts at Christmas, but usually send each other Christmas cards. Americans appreciate small gifts but gift-giving is not as common as in Ukraine.

When you are at the restaurant unwrap a napkin and put it on your knees. On the official party you should wait until the hostess does that and then follow her example. If you finish your meal or going to leave put a napkin to the left (if the plates were taken away - before yourself). Don't put together or crumple it. At the dinner-party the hostess put her napkin on the table as a sign of dinner finishing, after this all guests do the same.

If a dish or spices stand far from you it is naturally to ask your neighbour to pass them to you. If it is uncomfortable to keep the plate in your hand you can put it on the table. Having taken a portion pass a dish to the other guest.

Dishes with hands or jugs for cream one can pass with the hand directing to a man who takes for his comfort.

If you want to correspond to all norms of correct behaviour you should lean only on the edge of the table and only with the wrist. For women – one can allow to lean on the table with the elbow for a short time.

On the official dinner you can put your elbows on the table only in the case if noise disturbs you to say some words to a man which sits opposite you.

You should hold a cup for the ear but run a forefinger through it or set aside the little finger – is movetone.

A teaspoon is only for stirring sugar with. After that one can put a teaspoon on the saucer. Wait drink to get cool. One can't take a saucer you can only lift a cup. A slice of lemon you can put accurately on the plate.

You can talk at the table, but whispering at the table – impolite.

- don't touch a communicator with the aim to attract his attention;
- speaking to one neighbour try not to turn a back to other one;
- if you (on some reason) refuse some dish, don't tell about the reason of refusal (for example, allergy).

If you want to give a dinner speech or toast it is better to wait for a break or a pause between dishes. A man who wants to say, stands up and gently taps on his wine-glass to attract the guests' attention and begins to speak. Dinner speech, as a rule, is finished by a toast.

- Before the beginning of the speech one can ask to fill wine-glasses;
- Don't speak for a long time and too brightly coloured;
- It's impolite to eat and talk when somebody is giving a dinner speech.

When you stand in a cloak-room in front of the mirror you can only tidy your hair. But if you want to comb your hair, touch up your make-up you should go to the lavatory. This also concerns the case if you have a bout of coughing or cold.

### **Vocabulary**

*cold collation* [kə'leɪʃ(ə)n] *холодна закуска*

*covers* *прибори*

*faultlessly* ['fɔ:ltlɪsli] *бездоганно; безпомилково*

*crumple* [krʌmp(ə)l] *м'ятися, морщитися; жмакати, м'яти в руках*

### 5.5.3. Handshakes

In Spain, let a handshake last 5 to 7 strokes; pulling away too soon may be interpreted as a sign of rejection.

In France, however, the preferred handshake is a single stroke.

In Ukraine, the length of the strokes depends on the feeling you want to express: a short casual stroke is good for business and the longer the handshake, the warmer the welcome.

In Canada, a weak, “fishy” handshake is disliked. A strong firm handshake is most desirable.

In England, never stick pens or pencils or other subjects in your front suit pocket. Doing so is considered *gauche* (socially awkward, tactless).

Stress the longevity of your company when dealing with Germans, Dutch, and Swiss. If possible, print the founding date on your business card.

#### **Vocabulary**

*rejection* відмова

*gauche* [gəʊʃ] незграбний, безтактний

*longevity* [lɒn'dʒeviti] довге життя, довголіття; довговічність; стаж роботи

### 5.5.4. Culture Shock

When you travel, you know about the cultural rules in the countries you visit. For example, in China you have to take a present with two hands, but in the USA you don't have to use two hands to accept a present – one is fine. In Spain, in the summer, you mustn't be noisy after lunch. You don't have to sleep a siesta, but you have to be quiet. And in Britain you have to wait in a queue for everything and you mustn't jump the queue.

In Japan you have to take off your shoes when you visit someone's home. But in France you don't have to take off your shoes – you can keep them on. Austrians are very punctual, so you don't have to be late for a meeting in Vienna. In Germany you have to wait for the green light to walk across the street, but in Egypt you don't have to wait – you can cross any time! And in Singapore you mustn't chew gum in public.

### 5.5.5. Rules of Etiquette in the United Kingdom

There are no strict etiquette rules that you have to stick to when in the UK. It is advisable, however, to demonstrate decent manners and respect to the local culture and traditions. Let's start from

**Greetings and meetings** - When first meeting a Brit, he or she may seem reserved and cold, but that is just an impression. In reality, they are very friendly and helpful to foreigners. A handshake is the common form of greeting, but try to avoid prolonged eye contact, as it may make people feel ill at ease. Use last names and appropriate titles until specifically invited to use first names. It is proper to shake hands with everyone to whom you are introduced, both men and women; the appropriate response to an introduction is “Pleased to meet you”.

**Time and punctuality** - British people are very strict when it comes to punctuality. In Britain people make a great effort to arrive on time, so it is considered

impolite to be late, even with by few minutes. If you are delayed, be sure to inform the person you are meeting. Here are some situations when you are obliged to be on time, as well as some situations when it is advisable: for formal dinners, lunches, or appointments you always come at the exact time appointed; for public meetings, plays, concerts, movies, sporting events, classes, church services, and weddings, it's best to arrive a few minutes early; you can arrive any time during the hours specified for teas, receptions and cocktail parties.

The British often use expressions such as “drop in anytime” and “come see me soon”. However, do not take these literally. To be on the safe side, always telephone before visiting someone at home. If you receive a written invitation to an event that says “RSVP”, you should respond to the sender as soon as possible, whether you are going to attend or not.

**Body language and dress-code** - British people are not very keen on displaying affection in public. Hugging, kissing and touching are usually reserved for family members and very close friends. You should also avoid talking loudly in public or going to extremes with hand gestures during the course of communication. The British like a certain amount of personal space. Do not stand too close to another person or put your arm around someone's shoulder.

When it comes to clothes, there are no limits and restrictions on how to dress. Just make sure that you respect the general rules when in formal situations. Observation will reveal that people in larger cities dress more formally, especially in London. Men and women wear wools and tweeds for casual occasions. Slacks, sweaters and jackets are appropriate for men and women. Do not wear a blazer to work - it is country or weekend wear. On formal occasions, always select an outfit that fits the dress code. When attending a holiday dinner or cultural event, such as a concert or theatre performance, it is best to dress formally.

**General advice** - Men should open doors for women and stand when a woman enters a room, although it is generally accepted for men and women both to hold the door open for each other, depending on who goes through the door first.

It is important to respect the British desire for privacy. Don't ask personal questions about family background and origin, profession, marital status, political preferences or money issues. It is considered extremely impolite to violate a queue, so never push ahead in a line. It is also considered very rude to try to sound British or mimic their accent.

Remember that humour is ever-present in English life. It is often self-deprecating, ribbing, sarcastic, sexist or racist. Try not to take offence.

Cultural etiquette dictates that when invited to someone's home, you should bring a small gift for the hostess. Give flowers, chocolates, wine, champagne or books. Feel free to express your gratitude and delight with the visit on the next day with a note or a telephone call.

**Women rules** - Women in Britain are entitled to equal respect and status as men, both at work and daily life. The British have the habit to use ‘affectionate’ names when addressing someone, so do not take any offense if they call you love, dearie, or darling. These are commonly used and not considered rude.

It is acceptable, but may be misconstrued, for a foreign woman to invite an English man to dinner. It is best to stick with lunch. Also, if you would like to pay for

your meal, you should state it at the outset. Remember that when in public, it is proper to cross your legs at the ankles, instead at the knees.

### 5.5.6. Rules of Etiquette in Germany

Every culture has its own particular traditions and customs, as well as social etiquette – that set of unspoken rules about how to behave. The rules differ from culture to culture, yet most reflect the fact that, as humans, we are a species comprised of infallibly social creatures. Learning about a country's etiquette can help us navigate awkwardness, establish personal boundaries, and determine the appropriate ways to express and conduct ourselves in social situations. Here's what you need to know if you find yourself in Germany.

Say "Hallo!" - In German etiquette one thing is for sure: extending greetings to those you encounter is critical. When entering a room, at restaurants and shops, at the gym or doctor's office – it is expected that one say *hallo* (hello) in greeting and *tshüss* (bye) on the way out, even if you don't know anyone there. It's not limited to interactions in person either. On the phone, for instance, don't forget to extend greetings to housemates and relatives of the person you're speaking with, even if you don't know any of them personally. In German, they are known as the *unbekannterweise*, or the "unbeknownst".

**Prost! and other drinking etiquette** - In German culture it is important that people make eye contact with one another when clinking glasses. This rule is bolstered by the belief that failing to do so will condemn you to seven years of bad luck... more specifically in the form of bad sex. Also, while in some cultures refusing a beverage when offered might be a sign of politeness that prompts the host to insist, in Germany it's best to back off when someone declines a drink. Overall though, Germans have an admirably lax attitude towards consuming alcohol – the legal drinking age for beer and wine is low, at merely 16 – and it is acceptable to drink outside, so don't be surprised by open containers in parks and on public transport.

Eating politely - No list of cultural etiquette practices would be complete without a rundown of proper comportment at the table. For starters, it's important to eat as quietly as possible. Making slurping sounds, snorts, or other noises as a result of eating is quite inappropriate. Furthermore, it is polite to keep your hands visible on the table. Lastly, when eating out, don't be surprised if a waiter seats others at the empty spaces at your table. While this is common mainly at more casual eateries, it does happen, so be forewarned.

**Squeeze past others facing them** - We are all familiar with the awkwardness of having to squeeze by people who are sitting in the same row as us, in an effort to reach our seats at the theater or cinema. One might consider winging it, but in Germany order tends to prevail. Crossing people front-wise is the law of the land. Should you slide to your chair with your backside to the people seated, you are likely to offend with each successive step.

**Speaking by formal "Sie"** - Many languages have both formal and informal means of addressing others and, if you plan on practicing you German during your visit, it's good to differentiate between the two. "**Sie**" (*you*) is the formal way of addressing others, and it is often used with elders, acquaintances, and in professional



settings. Feel free to interchange “*Sie*” with the person’s name, as Germans tend to make a particular point of doing this. However, leave it up to the older or higher ranking person to decide when it’s time to switch to the friendlier, more informal “*du*” (*you*).

**Reduce and reuse, but always recycle** - Germans make concerted efforts to minimize their carbon footprint and generate less waste, and take recycling very seriously. Most garbage zones consist of bins for landfill waste, paper and glass, which is often further divided into “brown”, “green” and “white” categories. Take the time to separate your waste or you might risk a reprimanding. Pro tip: Return your plastic and glass bottles and get a portion of their price returned. Or, leave glass bottles beneath garbage cans for those in need to collect them and get back the *pfand*.

**Nudity** - Speaking of birthdays, Germans are exceptionally at ease in their birthday suits. From naked conversations between acquaintances in locker rooms and saunas, to commercials on basic cable with people bearing all, the human body undressed is not necessarily met with shock or horror. At beaches, parks and even nightclubs, public nudity can be a commonly accepted aspect of life. It is important to note, however, that this culture of nudity does not carry sexual connotations.

**Behind closed doors** - Despite public nudity and extending greetings to strangers, Germans are still fairly private people. Such is evident by a common practice to keep doors closed, even when the rooms are unoccupied or when visitors are welcome into them. If you need to enter a room with a closed door, at the office or the home of a friend, simply knock before entering. It’s not necessary to wait for a reply and chances are you won’t be disturbing anyone.

**Don’t go out in public with wet hair** - Most people would agree that leaving the house with wet hair on a winter day isn’t very comfortable, while attending a business meeting with wet hair certainly isn’t very professional. However, Germans take this matter to another level, and it is in fact quite frowned upon to leave the house with wet hair. The same applies to the gym after a shower, or after using the swimming pool, so be sure to pack a hairdryer if necessary. You’re welcome.

#### **Vocabulary**

*infallibly* [in'fæləb(ə)l] *обов'язково, безгрішно*

*bolster* ['bəʊlstə] *підтримувати, підкріплювати; сприяти*

*condemn* [kən'dem] *засуджувати, визнати винним*

*beverage* ['bev(ə)rɪdʒ] *напій*

*lax* [læks] *слабкий, неохайний, невизначений, нечіткий*

*snort* [snɔ:t] *хрипати, фиркати, нюхати*

*squeeze* [skwi:z] *здавлювати, стискувати*

*reprimand* ['reprə,mænd] *робити або оголошувати догану*

*nudity* ['nju:diti] *нагота, оголеність*

*frown* [fraun] *дивитися осудливо; ставитися з несхваленням, виражати несхвалення*

#### **5.5.7. Chinese Etiquette - Do's and Don'ts in China**

As one of the oldest living civilizations on Earth, China has been developing its culture over millennia and during your visit you might notice that Chinese culture isn’t exactly what you’re used to. What might be culturally acceptable in the West

might be taboo in China (and vice versa!) so it's only natural to feel a bit overwhelmed when visiting China for the first time.

To help keep the culture shock to a minimum, we've compiled this handy list of cultural *do's* and *don'ts*, as well as a general etiquette guide that'll help you blend right in when visiting this fascinating country.

### **Some Must-Know Etiquette Rules for Your Next Trip to China**

Travelling to China presents several challenges. Yes, there's the jet lag and the language barrier, but the thing that gets to most first-timers is the culture shock. From the moment your plane lifts off, you may start to feel like things are a bit upside-down. For example, if you're flying a Chinese airline, you'll be likely told to turn off your phone the moment you lift off the tarmac. No, not airplane mode - Chinese regulation requires phones to be off in-flight, so flight attendants might aggressively tell you to turn your phone off. That makes for one long flight if you were planning on listening to music on your phone.

The culture shock continues once you touch down, too. Many of the etiquette taboos with which Americans are indoctrinated seem to go out the window, like: Don't slurp your soup! Don't ask personal questions to strangers! And whatever you do, don't invade someone's personal space.

Here, some quick and easy *do's* and *dont's* for your next trip to China, to help temper that inevitable dose of "where am I?"

**Greetings** - handshakes as greetings in China are as common as they are in the West.

**Do** greet others by using a handshake or a nod. Bows are best saved for your visit to Japan or Korea. Give an appropriate greeting. If you are meeting someone in a business context, shake hands and smile. If it is someone older than you with some sort of rank, you may do a very slight bow from the shoulders (as opposed to a full-fledged bow from the waist) as a sign of respect. Address seniority by an honorific title (family relationship or e.g. "teacher": *laoshi*) or by the family name plus Mr., Ms. Address the eldest or most senior person first. This is done as a sign of respect to those in a more senior position.

**Do** - take your shoes off before entering someone's home. Most homes will have guest slippers - slip those on instead.

**Do** - accept business cards with two hands. It's a sign of respect. Glance at it for a few seconds as if reading it over - even if you aren't - and put it away in a chest pocket or a card holder, never in your back pocket.

**Do** - let elders take the lead at dinner. They sit first and get served first, and pour is always poured for them first. Do not start eating before they take their first bite.

**Do** - slurp your soup. It's a sign of appreciation for the chef's cooking. It is also not uncommon to let out a (gentle) burp.

**Do** - be a good sport. If you visit China and look like a foreigner, it is quite common for people on the street to express their interest in you. Chances are they will even ask to take a picture with you. Regardless of whether you agree you look like Jennifer Lawrence or not, say, thank you; smile; and enjoy your trip.

**Do** join in on toasts. It's considered polite to join in on each toast and even to stand up during formal gatherings.



**Do** sample all dishes at banquets or formal occasions. It's considered polite, and at the end of the meal be sure to leave a little on the plate to honor your host's generosity.

**Do** tap the table when someone refills your tea. The gesture of using two fingers to tap the dining table is used to show thanks toward whoever refilled your tea.

**Do** present and receive things with both hands. This is considered polite in Chinese culture.

**Do** refuse a gift a number of times before accepting it. Politely refusing a gift before accepting it is the norm in Chinese culture, so don't be discouraged when someone initially refuses your gift.

**Do** gift small items like books, music CDs, perfumes, cigarettes and candies from your home country (or a well-known Chinese brand). These are always appreciated and are always well received.

**Do** walk in a clockwise direction when touring a temple or monastery.

**Do** take off your hat when entering temples. This is done as a sign of respect.

**Do** donate a few yuan to religious beggars. This is considered an act of merit in Tibetan culture.

**Do** cover your head with a scarf. Women are required to wear headscarves when visiting mosques.

**Don't** offer too firm of a handshake. A firm handshake could be construed as a sign of aggression.

**Don't** go straight for a hug. Especially when meeting someone for the first time. Any body contact, apart from a simple handshake, may make your new Chinese friends feel uncomfortable.

**Don't** address elders using 'ni hao' (/nee haow/). Instead, use 'Nin hao' (/neen-haow/ "you good"). This is more polite, formal and respectful.

**Don't** put bones, seeds or other inedibles into in your rice bowl. Use a tissue or your hand to place them in the small plate provided - or observe how others deal with them.

**Don't** tap your chopsticks. Tapping your bowl or the table with your chopsticks is considered rude and impolite.

**Don't** use your own chopsticks to pick food from the central dishes. This is typically considered unhygienic. Use the serving spoons or serving chopsticks provided.

**Don't** be too eager to unwrap your gift. Unless the person offering the gift insists. It's considered polite in Chinese culture to open gifts after you or your guests leave.

**Don't** wrap gifts using black or white wrapping paper. Choose festive colors, such as red, instead.

**Don't** photograph old folk without permission. It's often assumed that a request to photograph them is an offer to pay – the same in some places on the Silk Road.

**Don't** touch a Tibetan on the head. Tibetans believe that God resides in your head and may be offended by this gesture.

**Don't** dip your fingers in the yak butter lamps in temples. You may be tempted to taste the butter but this is highly offensive, not to mention unhygienic and a health risk.

**Don't** ask sensitive questions. Sensitive topics such as relations between the various ethnic groups and the governments should be avoided.

**Don't** assume that alcohol and cigarettes are permitted. This is usually not the case. It's best to ask first if you're unsure.

**Don't** bring non-halal items into a Muslim restaurant / home (our guide can help if you're unsure).

**Don't** - give someone white flowers. They are for funerals. No exceptions.

**Don't** - give clocks as gifts. Especially to the elderly. It's the functional equivalent of telling someone that their days are numbered.

**Don't** - split the bill at dinner. It is very rare to split the bill in China. More often, one person will pay - usually the most senior person or whoever extended the dinner invitation. And whereas in America it might be polite to do the obligatory fight-over-the-bill scramble, this is unacceptable in China. If it is clear who the host is, don't try to pay - it's offensive. (However, if you are in a group of friends your own age, splitting may be acceptable.)

**Don't** - tip for everything. Tipping is usually not necessary in China - except for exceptional service at fine restaurants, to tour guides, and to bellboys handling luggage in hotels. Otherwise, skip the tip. If eating at a fine restaurant, a few dollars couldn't hurt but is by no means expected the way it is stateside.

**Don't** - stick your chopsticks upright into your food while pausing during a meal. This resembles incense, which is what many people use to pray for the dead. Bad juju.

**Don't** - point at people. Especially when talking or gesturing, and definitely do not point your finger at someone. It's considered hostile and extremely rude.

**Don't** - talk business too soon. It is the norm to start all business meetings with a healthy dose of chitchat - the weather, your jet lag, what you had for breakfast and so forth.

**Don't** - use first names unless someone tells you to. Always use "Mrs." or "Mr."

**Don't** - be late. Punctuality is a sign of respect, and don't expect to get away with blaming your tardiness on subway traffic the way you can in New York. Just be on time.

**Don't** - whistle. Whistling at home feels charming and all-American. In China it's considered a nuisance. At nighttime, it's said to attract spirits. During the day, it is considered mischievous.

### Vocabulary

**overwhelm** [əʊvə'welɪm] *приголомшувати, вражати*

**blend** [blend] *змішувати; об'єднувати*

**nod** [nɒd] *кивок (знак згоди або вітання)*

**donate** [də(u)'neɪt] *підносити як дарунок, (від) давати як донор*

**jet lag** *синдром зміни часових поясів; втомленість від довготривалого перельоту*

**first-timer** *новачок*

**upside-down** *перевернутий догори дном, догори ногами*

**tarmac** ['tɑ:mæk] *гудроноване шосе*

**touch down** *приземлитися, торкнутися землі*

**indoctrinate** [in'dɒktrineɪt] знайомити з теорією, вченням

**slurp** [slɜ:p] сьорбати; ковтати (напої); чавкати

**inevitable** [i'nevɪtəb(ə)l] неминучий

**burp** [bɜ:p] відрижка

**chopsticks** [ˈtʃɒpstɪks] палички для їжі

**upright** прямо, вертикально

**incense** ['ɪnsens] фіміам, ладан; пахощі від паління фіміаму або ладану; кадіння фіміамів (кому-небудь)

**juju** ['dʒu:dʒu:] 1) чари, заклинання 2) амулет; фетиш 3) табу, заборона

**hostile** ['hɒstail] ворожий

**chitchat** [ˈtʃɪtʃæt] балаканина; розмова про те про се

**tardiness** запізнення

**mischievous** ['mɪstʃɪvəs] зловредний, шкідливий, лихий

### 5.5.8. Rules of Etiquette Important in Arab Culture

While Arabs are some of the friendliest and warmest people in the world, there are still a few things to remember when meeting Arabs for the first time or when travelling to an Arab country. Within their colourful and diverse culture, there are social rules that are considered basic etiquette. Learn these and you'll be welcomed with open arms!

#### ***Standing when someone enters a room***

Arabs are all about respect, and one way of showing this is to stand up when someone enters a room to greet them. This way, you are showing that the person entering is important enough for you to take the time and effort to really say “hello”.

#### ***Greeting everyone individually***

This is another way of showing respect, by greeting each and every person individually. If it gets too tiring to say “hello” over and over again, a nod with eye contact and a warm smile is usually enough!

#### ***The host escorts their guest to the door***

To show that they really did enjoy the company of their guests, Arab hosts will walk their guest to their car or to the outside of the house to make sure they leave safely. The “goodbyes” and “thankyous” won't finish either until the guest is finally out of earshot!

#### ***Never open a gift in front of the giver***

Arabs are all about showing the upmost respect towards others, and this manifests in the idea that gifts should not be opened in the presence of the giver, in order to avoid any possible embarrassment either of the giver or the receiver. Don't be offended if an Arab rushes to put your gift out of sight; they're doing this out of respect for you!

#### ***Put elderly people first***

Elderly people are always given the best of everything, and Arabs will do everything from opening doors for them, serving them food first, and greeting them first. If you're an older person among Arabs, get ready to feel pampered!

#### ***Men should always offer their seat to a woman or elderly person***

For those who believe in chivalry, you should hang out with Arabs! Arab men will always offer their seat either in public or in private settings to a woman or older person if there is nowhere else for them to sit.

***Give attention to the correct person***

Arabs will consider it rude if you, as a man, are meeting a couple for the first time, and end up speaking to the wife more than the husband (and vice versa if you are a woman). Both the husband and the wife will be offended and notice this detail, so try to remember to speak to them equally!

***Don't show the soles of your feet***

To show someone the bottom of your feet, which are considered dirty and only for the floor, is considered very rude. Be careful when sitting or lounging about, and try to always face the bottom of your feet away from your Arab friends, especially the elders.

***Take off shoes before entering someone's home***

Similar to the soles of the feet, shoes are considered dirty and just for the outdoors, and should always be taken off before entering the home of an Arab person. Arab homes will almost always be adorned with richly designed carpets, and to dirty these with your outside shoes would be a tragedy!

***When serving tea, fill the cup to the top***

If serving tea to Arab guests, make sure to remember to always fill the cup up to the brim with tea, as anything else will be considered an insult. If you do make this mistake however, don't fret too much – Arabs love their tea, so any tea is good tea – as long as it has sugar in it!

Arabs love food, and they are generous with it and love to share it. When eating out with your Arab friends, try to ditch the only-order-for-yourself mentality, and indulge in sharing large plates of delicious food.

**Vocabulary**

***earshot*** [iəʃɒt] *межа чутності*

***embarrassment*** [im'bærəsmənt] *зніяковілість, замішання, сум'яття*

***offend*** [ə'fend] *кривдити, ображати, порушувати (що-небудь)*

***rampere*** ['ræmpəd] *розпещений, зніжений*

***chivalry*** ['ʃiv(ə)lri] *лицарство, шляхетність*

***sole*** [səʊl] *1) підошва, ступня*

***lounge*** [laundʒ] *відпочивати; сидіти відкинувшись у кріслі, на дивані*

***adorn*** [ə'dɔ:n] *прикрашати; служити прикрасою*

***fret*** [fret] *дратуватися; турбуватися, хвилюватися*

***indulge*** [ɪndʌldʒ] *зробити собі приємність, не відмовити собі (у задоволенні; дозволити собі)*

## 5.6. Advertising and Advertisement

### 5.6.1. Advertising Strategies

Three strategies that have been especially popular with advertisers can be classified as slogans, rational appeals and emotional appeals.

**Slogans** - Advertisers often use slogans that sound great but mean little or

nothing.

*“See Charley Prinz for Your Printing Needs  
Remember, Charley is the Prince of Printers”*

Charley is not fooling anybody; people know that he is not really a prince. Yet, advertisers seem to feel that such slogans, when repeated often enough, do increase sales.

**Rational appeals** rely upon logic or reason to convince the consumer to buy a product.

*“Our cookies contain 25% Fewer Calories than Others”, “Suave Skin Lotion Enriched with Vitamin E to Heal and Protect Dry Skin”*. There are examples for advertisements that appeal to reason. Ad for health foods, pain relievers and home remedies tend to use this technique.

**Emotional appeals.** Emotional appeals rely upon the use of psychology. The following is a sampling of such strategies:

\*Testimonials. These are advertisements in which famous people claim they use and enjoy a particular product. Ads for sports equipment frequently rely on this strategy.

\*The Bandwagon. The bandwagon derives from the practice, during nineteenth century circus or political parades of jumping on or following behind the wagon carrying the band. Soft drink and automobile ads use this appeal.

\*Popularity. Some advertisements suggest that simply by using the advertised product you will be popular or find romance. Toothpaste ads showing moments of romance between handsome young men and women are typical of these kinds of campaigns.

### **Vocabulary**

*rational appeals* раціональне звернення

*emotional appeals* емоційне звернення

*testimonial* [ˌtestiˈmɒniəl] рекомендація, характеристика, рекомендаційний лист

## **5.6.2. Advertisers Perform a Useful Service to the Community**

The poor old consumer! He'd have to pay a great deal more if advertising didn't create mass markets for products. It is precisely because of the heavy advertising that consumer goods are so cheap. But we get the wrong idea if we think the only purpose of advertising is to sell goods. Another equally important function is to inform. A great deal of the knowledge we have about household goods derives largely from advertisements we read. Advertisements introduce us to new products or remind us of the existence of ones we already know about. Supposing you wanted to buy a washing machine, it is more than likely you would obtain details regarding performance, price, etc., from an advertisement.

Lots of people pretend that they never read advertisements, but this claim may be seriously doubted. It is hardly possible to read advertisements these days. And what fun they often are, too! Just think what a railway stations or newspapers would be like without advertisements. Would you enjoy gazing at a blank wall or reading railway by-laws while waiting for a train? Would you like to read only closely-



printed columns of news in your gardening performance, price, etc., from an advertisement?

Lots of people pretend that they never read advertisements, but this claim may be seriously doubted. It is hardly possible not to read advertisements these days. And what fun they often are, too! Just think what a railway station or a newspaper would be like without advertisements. Would you enjoy gazing at a blank wall or reading railway by-laws while waiting for a train? Would you like to read only closely-printed columns of news in your daily paper? A cheerful, witty advertisement makes such a difference to a drap wall or a newspaper, full of daily ration of calamities.

We must not forget, either, that advertising makes a positive contribution to our pockets. Newspapers, commercial radio and television companies could not subsist without this source of revenue. The fact that we pay so little for our daily paper, or can enjoy so many broadcast programmes is due entirely to the money spent by the advertisers. Just think what a newspaper would cost if we had to pay its full price!

Another thing we musn't forget about is "small ads" whiare virtually in every newspaper and magazine. What a tremendously useful service they perform for the community! Just about anything can be accomplished through these columns. For instance, you can find a job, buy or sell a house, announce a birth, marriage or death in what used to be called the "hatch, match and dispatch" columns; but by far the most fascinating section is a personal of "agony" column. No other item in a newspaper provedes such entertainingreading or offers such a deep insight into human nature. It's the best advertisement for advertising there is!

### **Vocabulary**

*gaze* [geɪz] *пильно дивитися, вдивлятися; витріщатися; втуплюватися*

*blank wall* *глуха стіна*

*by-laws* *правила внутрішнього розпорядку; нормативні положення*

*drap wall*

*ration* ['ræʃ(ə)n] *раціон, пайок; порція*

*calamity* [kə'læmɪtɪ] *нещастя; лихо; велика біда, катастрофа; горе, скорбота; розпач*

*subsist* [səb'sɪst] *жити, існувати*

*revenue* ['revɪnju:] *доход*

*hatch, match and dispatch* *хрестини, шлюби і поховання*

## **5.7. Let's Speak a Little About Some Holidays Abroad**

### **5.7.1. Christmas Customs**

Many Christmas customs are based on the birth of Christ. Such as giving presents because of the Wise Men, who brought presents to the baby Jesus. Christmas carols based on Christ's birth and scenes of the birth with figures of shepherds, the Wise Men, and animals surrounding the baby Jesus. But some of the ways people celebrate Christmas have nothing to do with Christ's birthday. Many bits of older holidays have crept into Christmas!

As time went on, new customs crept into Christmas. One was the Christmas tree, which was started in Germany. As the Germans settled in new lands they brought



with them this tradition. Last but not least is Saint Nick. A long time ago, a bishop named Nicholas lived in what is now the country of Turkey.

No one knows much about him. There are stories that he often helped children in need. Many years after his death, Nicholas was made a saint. In time, he became the patron saint of children.

### **Vocabulary**

*Christmas carols* різдвяні колядки

*bishop* ['bɪʃəp] Єпископ

## **5.7.2. Trees around the World**

**Canada** - German settlers migrated to Canada from the United States in the 1700s. They brought with them many of the things associated with Christmas we cherish today - Advent calendars, gingerbread houses, cookies - and Christmas trees. When Queen Victoria's German husband, Prince Albert, put up a Christmas tree at Windsor Castle in 1848, the Christmas tree became a tradition throughout England, the United States, and Canada.

**Mexico** - In most Mexican homes the principal holiday adornment is el Nacimiento (Nativity scene). However, a decorated Christmas tree may be incorporated in the Nacimiento or set up elsewhere in the home. As purchase of a natural pine represents a luxury commodity to most Mexican families, the typical arbolito (little tree) is often an artificial one, a bare branch cut from a copal tree (*Bursera microphylla*) or some type of shrub collected from the countryside.

**Britain** - The Norway spruce is the traditional species used to decorate homes in Britain. The Norway spruce was a native species in the British Isles before the last Ice Age, and was reintroduced here before the 1500s.

**Greenland** - Christmas trees are imported, as no trees live this far north. They are decorated with candles and bright ornaments.

**Guatemala** - The Christmas tree has joined the "Nacimiento" (Nativity scene) as a popular ornament because of the large German population in Guatemala. Gifts are left under the tree on Christmas morning for the children. Parents and adults do not exchange gifts until New Year's Day.

**Brazil** - Although Christmas falls during the summer in Brazil, sometimes pine trees are decorated with little pieces of cotton that represent falling snow.

**Ireland** - Christmas trees are bought anytime in December and decorated with coloured lights, tinsel, and baubles. Some people favour the angel on top of the tree, others the star. The house is decorated with garlands, candles, holly, and ivy. Wreaths and mistletoe are hung on the door.

**Sweden** - Most people buy Christmas trees well before Christmas Eve, but it's not common to take the tree inside and decorate it until just a few days before. Evergreen trees are decorated with stars, sunbursts, and snowflakes made from straw. Other decorations include colourful wooden animals and straw centrepieces.

**Norway** - Nowadays Norwegians often take a trip to the woods to select a Christmas tree, a trip that their grandfathers probably did not make. The Christmas tree was not introduced into Norway from Germany until the latter half of the 19<sup>th</sup> century; to the country districts it came even later. When Christmas Eve arrives, there

is the decorating of the tree, usually done by the parents behind the closed doors of the living room, while the children wait with excitement outside.

A Norwegian ritual known as “circling the Christmas tree” follows, where everyone joins hands to form a ring around the tree and then walk around it singing carols. Afterwards, gifts are distributed.

**Ukraine** - Celebrated on December 25<sup>th</sup> by Catholics and on January 7<sup>th</sup> by Orthodox Christians, Christmas is the most popular holiday in the Ukraine. During the Christmas season, which also includes New Year's Day, people decorate fir trees and have parties.

**Spain** - A popular Christmas custom is Catalonia, a lucky strike game. A tree trunk is filled with goodies and children hit at the trunk trying to knock out the hazel nuts, almonds, toffee, and other treats.

**Italy** - In Italy, the presepio (manger or crib) represents in miniature the Holy Family in the stable and is the centre of Christmas for families. Guests kneel before it and musicians sing before it. The presepio figures are usually hand-carved and very detailed in features and dress. The scene is often set out in the shape of a triangle. It provides the base of a pyramid-like structure called the ceppo. This is a wooden frame arranged to make a pyramid several feet high. Several tiers of thin shelves are supported by this frame. It is entirely decorated with coloured paper, gilt pine cones, and miniature coloured pennants. Small candles are fastened to the tapering sides. A star or small doll is hung at the apex of the triangular sides. The shelves above the manger scene have small gifts of fruit, candy, and presents. The ceppo is in the old Tree of Light tradition which became the Christmas tree in other countries. Some houses even have a ceppo for each child in the family.

**Germany** - Many Christmas traditions practised around the world today started in Germany. It has been long thought that Martin Luther began the tradition of bringing a fir tree into the home. According to one legend, late one evening Martin Luther was walking home through the woods and noticed how beautifully the stars shone through the trees. He wanted to share the beauty with his wife so he cut down a fir tree and took it home.

Once inside he placed small lighted candles on the branches and said that it would be a symbol of the beautiful Christmas sky. Hence, the Christmas tree. Another legend says that in the early 16<sup>th</sup> century, people in Germany combined two customs that had been practiced in different countries around the globe. The Paradise tree (a fir tree decorated with apples) represented the Tree of Knowledge in the Garden of Eden. The Christmas Light, a small, pyramid-like frame, usually decorated with glass balls, tinsel, and a candle on top, was a symbol of the birth of Christ as the Light of the World.

Changing the tree's apples to tinsel balls and cookies; and combining this new tree with the Light placed on top, the Germans created the tree that many of us know now. Today, the Tannenbaum (Christmas tree) is traditionally decorated in secret with lights, tinsel, and ornaments by the mother and is lit and revealed on Christmas Eve with cookies, nuts, and gifts under its branches.

**South Africa** - Christmas is a summer holiday in South Africa. Although Christmas trees are not common, windows are often draped with sparkling cotton

wool and tinsel.

**Saudi Arabia** - Christian Americans, Europeans, Indians, Filipinos, and others living here have to celebrate Christmas privately in their homes. Christmas lights are generally not tolerated. Most families place their Christmas trees somewhere inconspicuous.

**Philippines** - Fresh pine trees are too expensive for many Filipinos, so handmade trees in an array of colours and sizes are often used. Star lanterns, or parole, appear everywhere in December. They are made from bamboo sticks, covered with brightly coloured rice paper or cellophane, and usually feature a tassel on each point. There is usually one in every window, each representing the Star of Bethlehem.

**China** - Of the small percentage of Chinese who do celebrate Christmas, most erect artificial trees decorated with spangles and paper chains, flowers, and lanterns. Christmas trees are called “trees of light”.

**Japan** - For most of the Japanese who celebrate Christmas, it's purely a secular holiday devoted to the love of their children. Christmas trees are decorated with small toys, dolls, paper ornaments, gold paper fans and lanterns, and wind chimes. Miniature candles are also put among the tree branches. One of the most popular ornaments is the origami swan. Japanese children have exchanged thousands of folded paper “birds of peace” with young people all over the world as a pledge that war must not happen again.

### Vocabulary

**cherish** [ˈtʃerɪʃ] зберігати; цінувати; дорожити

**gingerbread** [ˈdʒɪndʒəbreɪd] імбирний пряник

**adornment** [əˈdɔːnmənt] прикраса

**pine** [paɪn] сосна

**artificial** [ɑː(r)tɪfɪʃ(ə)l] штучний, не природний; синтетичний

**shrub** [ʃrʌb] чагарник, кущ

**spruce** [spruːs] ялина; хвойне дерево

**tinsel** [ˈtɪns(ə)l] мішура, показний блиск; блискуча тканина, матеріал з блискучими нитками; парча

**bauble** [ˈbɔːb(ə)l] дрібничка; брязкальце (часто про прикраси)

**garland** [ɡɑː(r)lənd] гірлянда; вінок

**holly** [ˈhɒli] падуб; гостролист

**ivy** [ˈaɪvi] плющ звичайний

**wreath** [riːθ] вінок

**mistletoe** [ˈmɪst(ə)ltəʊ] омела біла

**evergreen** вічнозелена рослина

**centrepiece** [ˈsentəpiːs] головний, основний предмет колекції; головна прикраса; головний ефект

**excitement** [ɪkˈsaɪtmənt] збудження, хвилювання; стимул, заохочення

**goodies** [ˈɡʊdɪz] солодощі, ласощі; цукерки, льодяники

**toffee** [ˈtɒfi] тоффі (цукерка типу іриски)

**kneel** [niːl] ставати на коліна, схилити коліна

**triangle** [ˈtraɪæŋ(ə)l] трикутник

**inconspicuous** [ɪnkənˈspɪkjʊəs] непомітний, непримітний, який не привертає

*уваги, який не кидається в очі*

*secular* ['sekjulə] світський, мирський, нецерковний

*wind chimes* китайський дзвоник

*pledge* [pledʒ] запорука; знак, символ, обіцянка

### 5.7.3. Valentine's Day

Valentine's Day is celebrated on February 14<sup>th</sup> as a festival of romance and affection. People send greeting cards called "valentines" to their sweethearts, friends and members of their families.

Many valentines have romantic poems; others are humorous. But almost all valentines ask "Be My Valentine." This may mean be my friend or be my love or be my companion. Valentines often show a cupid with an arrow. Cupid, also called Eros, was the ancient Roman god of love

Valentine's Day is not a legal holiday; schools and banks are open as usual. Merchants sell valentines and decorations for Valentine's Day parties and dances. All the decorations are bright red, and the most popular ones are heart shaped.

School children decorate their classrooms with bright red paper hearts and celebrate the day in their classroom. They also make valentine cards for their friends and parents.

Stores advertise heavily for this holiday since it is traditional for sweethearts, spouses, and members of the family to exchange gifts on Valentine's Day. Heart shaped boxes of candy; jewellery and flowers are some of the popular gifts given on this day.

Many newspapers carry advertisements or messages placed by people in love. Both men and women want to let their sweethearts know how much they love them. On Valentine's Day, many radio stations play romantic music all day long. One very famous song is called "My Funny Valentine."

Valentine's Day is a day to share loving feelings with friends and family. It has become traditional for many couples to become engaged on this day. Also, famous couples are remembered. Some of them are Romeo and Juliet, Caesar and Cleopatra, among others. This is a happy day because it is especially dedicated to celebrate love, affection and friendship.

#### Background

Valentine's Day comes on the feast of two different Christian saints named Valentine. But the way that Valentine's Day is celebrated is nothing to do with the lives of the saints.

This celebration comes from an ancient Roman festival called "Lupercalia" which took place every February 15<sup>th</sup>. This festival honoured Juno, the Roman goddess of women and marriage, and Pan the god of nature. It was also believe that birds choose their mates on this date. Valentine's Day became very popular in the United States in the 1800<sup>th</sup>.

February 14<sup>th</sup> is the day on which young lovers send each other anonymous Valentines - bright, lacy, colourful cards, with loving emblems and amorous doggerel. The shops are full of these cards. The message the Valentine conveys is simple. Love's message has always been so. Here are some examples:

*Though absent, still within my heart  
Thy memory holds its place  
Too firmly fixed for time or change  
To ever it efface.*

*February the fourteenth day  
It's Valentine, they say,  
I choose you from among the rest,  
The reason was I loved you best.*

*Round is the ring that has no end,  
So is my love for you, my friend,  
Again to take this in good part,  
Along with it you have my heart.  
But if you do the same refuse,  
Pray burn this paper and me excuse.*

*Sure as the grape grows on the  
vine,  
So sure you are my Valentine.  
The rose is red, the violet blue,  
Lilies are fair and so are you.*

*I am like a cabbage  
Divided into two;  
The leaves I give to others  
But the heart I give to you.*

#### 5.7.4. The Valentine's Card

Saint Valentine's Day is February 14<sup>th</sup>, and for a long time young English people have been sending Valentine's cards to each other every year. The idea is to tell other people that you love them, but you never put your name on the card

One day last February Jillian went into the card shop near the house which sells many different cards. There were cards for birthdays, cards saying Congratulations for people who have passed an examination and Valentine's cards

The assistant went across the shop to the cashier. "I have been selling Valentine's cards all day", she said. "People have been coming in and taking two or three. I do not know who they have been buying them for, but the cards have been going very quickly. But that young lady over there", she said pointing to Jillian, "has not been spending much money. She can not decide what she wants. She's been looking at the cards for half an hour. She's been reading them two or three times; she's been picking them up and putting them down again. And most of the best cards have gone now".

Jillian thought: "I've been trying to find a good one for Martin for half an hour. But I can't decide". She looked down at the Valentine's card in her hand. It said: "*Roses are red, violets are blue. Grass is green and I love you!*"

"Bah", said Jillian and threw the cards down again into the counter. "I think, I'll better take the card without any words at all".

#### Making Valentines

I'm making a pretty card  
To give to my love.  
I'll neatly write: "I love you!"  
Or "Won't you be mine?"

#### Do you know that ...

... traditionally men propose to women. In Britain, men often choose Valentine's Day to make their marriage proposal. But on Valentine's Day in a leap year women can propose marriage to their lovers!



**For My Friends**

To every little friend of mine,  
 I'll send a pretty Valentine.  
 This one is like a little book;  
 You'll find a message if you  
 look.  
 I'll use an envelope for this.  
 I'll write my name, then seal a  
 kiss.  
 What colour shall I give to  
 you?  
 Orange, purple, green or blue?  
 Yellow or pink? White or red?  
 Or maybe a lacy one instead.

**I'll send you one Valentine**

I'll send you one Valentine, that's what I'll do.  
 I'll send you one Valentine, and maybe two!  
 I'll send you two Valentines wait and see.  
 I'll send you two Valentines, and maybe three!  
 I'll send you three Valentines from the best store.  
 I'll send you three Valentines, and maybe four!  
 I'll send you four Valentines, that's what I'll do,  
 But on each one, I will write: "I love you!"

**Match thy Famous Couples**

1. Carmen	a. Bathsheba
2. Adam	b. Josephine
3. Lady Di	c. Jane
4. Napoleon	d. Eve
5. David	e. Prince Charles
6. John Lennon	f. Don Jose
7. Miss Piggy	g. Yoko
8. Tarzan	h. Kermit the Frog
9. Grace Kelly	i. Prince Rainier
10. Rhett Butler	j. Orpheus
11. Chio-Chio-San	k. Scarlet O'Hara
12. Sophia Loren	l. Captain Pinkerton
13. Eurydice	m. Carlo Ponti

**Answers:**

1. - f	2. - d	3. - e	4. - b	5. - a	6. - g	7. - h
8. - c	9. - i	10. - k	11. - l	12. - m	13. - j	

**5.7.5. Hallowe'en**

*Hallowe'en* (abbreviated from "All Hallows Eve", an ancient pagan holiday when spirits of the dead came back) is the holiday of religious origin. It is celebrated on October 31<sup>st</sup>. It is an old custom and an occasion for children to get dressed up as witches, goblins, and ghosts and go "trick or treating". They make a round of visits around a neighbourhood dressed in costume and knocking on doors. They offer adults an alternative: a "trick" or a "treat". People give the children candies (the treats). This old custom comes from the Celts in ancient Britain who feared the coming of winter and dressed in frightening costumes. They supposed the demons of winter would think they were one of them and did them no harm. Nowadays people give out the children treats so that the children would not play tricks on them. And the custom



represents a devil coming to the home in costume whom one can placate with a treatio

Celtic priests called Druids first celebrated Halloween many centuries ago in Ireland and Scotland. They observed the end of autumn and the beginning of winter.

The Druids thought that Halloween was the night when the witches came out. As they were afraid of the witches they put on different clothes and painted their faces to deceive the evil spirits. They also placed food and small gifts near the door of their houses for the witches. This was, as they say now, the beginning of the expression “trick or treat” (meaning “give me something or I’ll play a trick on you”).

It is considered that the immigrants brought Halloween to America from Ireland and Scotland. In the 19<sup>th</sup> century they celebrated Halloween according to their odd traditions (the integral part of the festival was a lantern made of a pumpkin with holes in the form of eyes, a nose and a mouth, and people believed that during the celebration all pumpkins were leaving their vegetable gardens to dance in the streets). As time and it was celebrated almost entirely by children. Dressed very strangely, children held festivals. During their carnival and after it, groups of children visited nearby houses and asked for candies. “Trick or treat, Trick or treat” was heard everywhere.

In recent years, grown-up people have begun taking part in Halloween’s. In New York, for examples, young and old take part in parades together. On the 31<sup>st</sup> of October, long before the time when the carnival procession begins to move, a great number of people get together in one of the street. They dressed as witches, demons, and other evil spirits. There are hundreds of large orange “pumpkins” in their bands. After the parade the festival lasts almost till early morning. This is how the Americans celebrate Halloween.

#### **5.7.6. April Fool’s Day – April 1**

For many centuries the first of April was a day of laughing and jokes. This day is kept in many countries not only in Britain and the USA. This is a day to play jokes and make people laugh. Nobody knows when the beginning of this custom was. Some people connect it with the end of winter and the return of spring which made people merry and ready to play jokes.

In Scotland young people were sent for hen’s teeth or bird’s milk and everybody laughed when they could not to find such things. In the USA and Britain someone could place a sign on a person’s back with the words “push me!”. Children often tell a grown-up that his sock is torn or he had something black on his face, and then shout “April Fool!” There is also the old purse trick. A purse is left lying in the street, but when someone wants to take it, it is quickly pulled back by a string which the hidden joker holds in his hand.

Or the purse may be filled with stones, sometimes invitations are sent to people asking them to come and visit somebody but when they come they see that nobody expected them. Some people like to telephone to the Zoo on that day and ask for Mr. Fish, Miss Fox or Mrs. Cat.

All these jokes are very old but still they make people laugh. In some places tricks are played only in the morning of April 1. Then, if anyone tries to fool someone later that day, or on the next, he is met with these words:

“April Fool is past,  
And you are the biggest fool at last!”

**Task:** *Find the sentences about the April Fool tricks. There must be seven tricks.*

### **April Fool's Day**

The doorbell is ringing,  
Better hurry and see!  
It might be a postman  
With a present for me.  
It might be a spaceman  
Coming in for a call,  
But – today's April Fool's Day –  
There is no one at all!  
It might be a farmer  
With a bag of hay,  
Or a clown from the circus  
Who just wants to play

#### **5.7.7. The Story of Easter**

Easter is a time of springtime festivals. In Christian countries Easter is celebrated as the religious holiday commemorating the resurrection of Jesus Christ, the son of God. But the celebrations of Easter have many customs and legends that are pagan in origin and have nothing to do with Christianity.

Traditions associated with the festival survive in the Easter rabbit, a symbol of fertility, and in coloured Easter eggs, originally painted with bright colours to represent the sunlight of spring, and used in Easter-egg rolling contests or given as gifts.

Easter is observed by the churches of the West on the first Sunday following the fool moon that occurs on or following the spring equinox (March 21). So Easter became a “movable” feast which can occur as early as March 22 or as late as April 28.

Easter is at the end of the Lenten season, which covers a forty-six-day period that begins on Ash Wednesday and ends with Easter.

Holy Thursday commemorates the Last Supper, which was held the evening before the Crucifixion.

Friday in Holy Week is the anniversary of the Crucifixion; the day that Christ was crucified and died on the cross.

Holy Week and the Lenten season end with Easter Sunday, the day of resurrection of Jesus Christ.

**Vocabulary**

*commemorate* [kə'meməreɪt] відзначати, святкувати

*resurrection* [rezə'rekʃ(ə)n] воскресіння (Христа)

*pagan* ['peɪgən] язичеський

*fertility* [fɜ:'tɪlɪtɪ] родючість, достаток

*spring equinox* ['i:kwɪnɒks] весняне рівнодення

*Ash Wednesday* середа, з якої починається Великий Піст (у англійців)

*Holy Thursday* великий четвер

*Last Supper* тайна вечеря

*Crucifixion* розпінання Христа

*Holy Week* Страшний тиждень

*Lenten* ['lent(ə)n] великопосний

*have nothing to do with* не мають нічого спільного з

**5.7.8. Traditional British Wedding**

In Britain people get married either in church or in a registry office. In the US people often get married in a house, a garden, a park, a hotel, or in the wedding chapel as well as in church. Most people, when they think of wedding, think of people getting married in church and the many customs that go with this type of wedding, called a white wedding.

If a couple decides to get married, the two become engaged and the bride to be often receives a ring from her bride / bridegroom / fiancé.

Permission from the parents used to be necessary; today it is a courtesy to tell the parents first and ask for their blessing or good wishes. Engagements vary in length depending on the circumstances and the couple's preference.

There are special names of some of the people in the wedding ceremony. The woman who is getting married is called the bride and the man is called the bridegroom or groom. The man has a male friend with him called the best man and the bride has some female friends called die bridesmaids. It is traditional for the bride to wear a long white dress/gown and a white veil as a traditional sign of purity and to carry flowers in a bouquet. It is considered bad luck for the groom to see the bride before the ceremony on the day of wedding.

She is also supposed to wear "something old, something new, something borrowed and something blue" because this will bring her luck. The groom often wears a formal suit or sometimes a morning suit or a tuxedo. Everyone else wears their best clothes and the woman often buys hats specially.

**Vocabulary**

*chapel* [tʃæp(ə)l] каплиця; (невелика) церква

*couple* [kʌp(ə)l] пара

*engage* [ɪn'geɪdʒ] заручитися (з ким-небудь)

*bride* [braɪd] наречена; молода

*bridegroom* ['braɪdgru:m,-grum] наречений; молодий

*fiancé* [fi'ɒnseɪ] наречений

*courtesy* ['kɜ:tɪsi] ввічливість, чемність, люб'язність

*blessing* ['blesɪŋ] благословення

**groom** [gru:m, grum] від **bridegroom** молодий, наречений (на весіллі)  
**bridesmaid** ['braɪdzmeɪd] подружка нареченої  
**gown** [gaʊn] сукня (жіноча)  
**veil** [veɪl] вуаль  
**purity** ['pjʊ(ə)rɪtɪ] чистота; непорочність  
**bouquet** [bəʊ'keɪ, bu:] букет  
**formal suit** вечірній діловий костюм  
**morning suit** парадний чоловічий костюм  
**tuxedo** [tʊkəsi:dəʊ] смокінг

Яке зізнання можна написати лише за допомогою літер та малюнка? І як відповісти на це зізнання, додавши тільки одну цифру?

**Key:**

I ♥ U – *I love you*

I ♥ U 2 – *I love you too*

### 5.7.9. Wedding Cakes

The symbolic nature of superstition regularly leads to everyday items taking on extra connotations, and it is therefore no surprise that various parts of the wedding procedure, such as the cake and the ring, have taken on love-divinatory roles. A number of procedures existed, for example, which involved placing pieces of wedding cake under the pillow, in the promise that the sleeper would dream of their future spouse.

Most girls have had pieces of wedding cakes given them to “dream on”, which they put under their pillows before going to bed, but at Northleigh a girl went through quite a ceremony when doing so. She took a piece of wedding cake, which must consist of both cake and icing, the cake representing the man and the icing the girl, and got into bed backwards, repeating the following lines:

*I put the wedding cake under my head  
To dream of the living and not of the dead,  
To dream of the man that I am to wed,  
Not in his best or Sunday array  
But in clothes he wears every day.*

On no account must the girl speak after repeating this rhyme, as if she said a word, it would prevent her from dreaming of her future husband.

#### Vocabulary

**superstition** [s(j)u:pə'stɪʃ(ə)n] марновірство; ірраціональний забобон; несвідоме упередження

**connotation** [kɒnə'teɪʃ(ə)n] додатковий, побічний відтінок значення; те, що мається на увазі

**spouse** [spaʊz] чоловік; дружина

**divination** [dɪvɪ'neɪʃ(ə)n] гадання, ворожіння, пророкування майбутнього

**icing** ['aɪsɪŋ] глазурування; цукрова пудра

**wed** [wed] 1) одружуватися; виходити заміж; вступати в шлюб, побратися; 2) вінчати; видати заміж; одружити

### **5.7.10. The Weird Food Festivals That Sound Fake (but aren't)**

Festivals are a great way to bring people together to celebrate almost any occasion. While there are lots of festival types including music festivals, food festivals are some of the most popular. They take place all over the world and there are festivals for just about any type of food including pizza, seafood, bacon, chocolate, and even fruits.

Many food festivals feature foods local to the region such as the Poutine Fest in Ottawa or the Taste of Chicago festival. While some festivals are all about the foods in that area, other festivals focus on one type of food and you'll find several different ways to enjoy it.

Alcoholic beverages such as beer and wine are often heavily featured at food festivals as well. Some even include those beverages in the name of the festivals such as the San Diego Bay Wine and Food Festival. Other staples you'll likely find at food festivals include cooking demonstrations, workshops, contests, music, and things to entertain the kids.

There are lots of annual food festivals that take place in the United States, but there are also a good number of them that take place across the world. There are probably hundreds if not thousands of food festivals that take place but many of them are small regional events that most people wouldn't consider traveling to get to.

The food festivals on this list include some of the bigger and more well known festivals that you would want to consider when making your travel plans. Many of them are in great locations that feature lots of things to do so the festival makes for a great reason to check them out.

**Herring Festival.** If you travel to Hvide Sande, Denmark you can attend the annual Herring Festival. This festival celebrates schools of herring which migrate to the Ringkobing fjord and includes the herring fishing world championship. Whether you like your herring fried, filleted, pickled, or fish-caked you're in luck. There are workshops that teach you how to pickle fried herring or you can leave it to the professionals and watch them do it. You can even enter the Herring Recipe of the Year contest and children can attend the Herring fishing school or join the Junior Fishing Contest. If you don't like fish you may want to head somewhere else.

**Chinchilla Melon Festival.** At first you may be put off by the name of this festival, but you won't find any dishes with rodents in them. The festival is held in Chinchilla, Australia and only happens every other year. All things melon are celebrated including plenty of dishes, a melon chariot race, a celebrity melon eating contest, and even melon skiing. One of the most interesting aspects is the melon weigh-in to find out which local farmer can grow the biggest melon. You can even take part in a free melon feast, beach part, concerts, and street parade. This is a great experience you won't want to miss.

**La Tomatina.** If you like having fun and aren't afraid to get dirty, the La Tomatina festival may be the place for you. This even takes place in Bunol, Spain and is one of the country's most popular festivals. You'll find plenty of tomato dishes to try but the highlight of the event is the world's biggest food fight which features more than 100 hundred metric tons of tomatoes which are over-ripe. You'll be able to throw tomatoes at random strangers while ducking and trying to avoid getting hit



yourself, almost like you're playing a massive game of dodge ball but only with bright red fruits.

**Boston Local Food Fest.** Boston, Massachusetts is a great place to visit, especially if you want to enjoy some local food. The Boston Local Food Fest takes place in September and takes a closer look at how your food ends up on your table. The event features local farmers and gives you the chances to interact with them because most of us never actually meet the people who grow our food. There are lots of local vendors and food trucks to choose from and the festival focuses on health and sustainable local foods. This festival has a bit of a different vibe than the other more party-like atmospheres, but it may become more popular as time goes on.

**Street Eats Food Truck Festival.** Food trucks are more popular than ever before, but usually you just have to go with whichever one or two are at a location near you. The Street Eats Food Truck Festival in Scottsdale, Arizona brings them all together. Imagine more than 50 food trucks lined up for you and parked there all weekend. You'll find food trucks for all types of foods including entrees, desserts, and drinks. There are cooking demonstrations and other festivities and music as well. You'll see long lines at some trucks while others are a lot shorter. Try as many food trucks as you can without having to track them down.

**Taste of Charlotte.** If you haven't been to Charlotte, North Carolina you might not think of it as a great culinary city. This festival takes place on six city blocks and is free. There are more than 100 vendors and this is a coin style event where you buy your tokens up front. The event includes the Best of the Taste Awards and all types of foods including steak, barbecue, and much more. There are cooking demonstrations and lots to see and do as well even for the kids. The weather in June is great in Charlotte and you'll certainly enjoy sampling everything.

**Baltimore Seafood Fest.** Most people think of Baltimore for crab cakes, but the truth is that all types of seafood are popular there. At the Baltimore Seafood Fest in September you can sample everything from crab to oysters and even shrimp. The event takes place at Canton Waterfront Park and overlooks the Northwest Harbor. You can buy special entry passes that will come with treats like a bucket of crabs. There are more than 30 local vendors as well as food trucks so you can have fish tacos, lobster rolls, and everything else in between. There are also the standard cooking demonstrations and live entertainment.

**Sacramento Bacon Fest.** Almost everyone loves bacon, so attending a whole festival dedicated to the cured meat seems reasonable. This is a week long event that takes bacon to a whole new level. You can enjoy almost everything with bacon including bacon salad, bacon pizza, bacon ramen, bacon tater tots, and even a bacon milkshake. Bacon goes well with craft beer and more than 100 restaurants participate in this festival with their own bacon dishes. There's also live music and the humorous Kevin Bacon Soundtrack Tribute Show has become a favorite among festival goers over the years. Sacramento is a good place to visit anyway so scheduling your trip during Bacon Fest is a good way to go.

**Ottawa Poutine Fest.** Poutine has become quite trendy in recent years and if you enjoy it you'll want to travel to Ottawa, Canada for this festival. It takes place annually in May in its home country and thousands celebrate the delicious dish which



features french fries, gravy, and cheese curds. You'll be able to visit several local restaurants which offer their unique takes on poutine such as churro poutine, butter chicken poutine, or Pad Thai poutine. If you can't get enough you can enter a poutine eating contest or learn how to make your own in a workshop. The event is family friendly and has activities for kids like face painting.

**San Diego Bay Wine and Food Festival.** At most food festivals alcohol is everywhere, so some of them don't try to hide that fact. Each November in San Diego the Bay Wine and Food Festival takes place. San Diego is a great place to visit in the first place but you'll want a jacket because it can be a bit cool later in the year. This festival is very popular and attracts chefs from all over the country as well as winemakers and brew masters. There are plenty of delicious things to eat and drink and the weather during the day should be delightful as well with plenty of sunshine.

**Epcot International Food and Wine Festival.** What makes this food festival extra special is its location in Orlando, Florida. This festival spans six weeks so chances are you won't be able to experience the whole thing unless you live there or can afford to take a lot of time off. You'll be able to enjoy food and wine from more than 25 countries. There is lots of entertainment and plenty of interactive experiences such as cooking demonstrations, wine tastings, and mixology classes. Don't forget to spend some time at Disney World and all the other fun attractions in the area. There's plenty of food to be enjoyed inside the theme park if you don't get enough at the festival.

**Nugget Rib Cook-off.** This festival takes place toward the end of summer and happens in Sparks, Nevada. If you love barbecue and ribs this is the place for you. Almost a quarter of a million pounds of ribs will be cooked to be enjoyed for hundreds of thousands of attendees. This festival bills itself as the biggest and best free-entry barbecue festival in America. While there might be some chicken nuggets, the name comes from the location which is the Nugget Casino Resort. There's also plenty to do including a concert series which have included national acts such as 10,000 Maniacs and Mark McGrath.

**Taste of Dallas.** Dallas, Texas is a great city for food lovers. The annual Taste of Dallas festival has been going on for more than 30 years. Make sure you find the Backyard Bites section to try some delicious barbecue as well as craft beer and burgers with lawn games to keep you entertained. Don't forget the Taste Curbside area with food trucks and if you prefer to eat healthy check out the Fuel area. For some extra dough you can attend the Foodie Experience which features an unlimited tasting of more than 30 chefs and restaurants and that also includes drinks so get your ticket early.

**Hawaii All Food And Wine Festival.** Most people don't need a good excuse to take a vacation to Hawaii, but if you're looking for one the Hawaii Food and Wine Festival could be it. This event takes place in Honolulu in September. It was founded by chefs Roy Yamaguchi and Alan Wong who are both James Beard Award winners. It spans four days and features several leading chefs, wine and spirit producers, and culinary personalities. You can attend the festival and enjoy delicious foods and drinks and still enjoy all the natural beauty Hawaii has to offer. Many people aren't familiar with Hawaiian foods and this is a great way to try various dishes.

**New Orleans Wine and Food Experience.** New Orleans, Louisiana is a great place to visit to experience local culture and festivals. One of the most popular festivals is the Wine and Food Experience which celebrated its 26<sup>th</sup> year in 2018. This festival is a great time and delicious but it also helps out various nonprofit organizations in New Orleans and has raised more than \$1 million over the years. There are some great local chefs and some amazing national and international wines featured as well. You certainly won't get bored in New Orleans where you can take in all that the famous and historic city has to offer.

**Taste of Vail.** Vail, Colorado is a great place to visit and travelers enjoy the small town feel paired with the great locations to ski and snowboard. This festival happens each year and has many of the best local chefs. Winemakers and vineyard owners from all around the country gather in Vail for this festival every year. You may run into some celebrities trying to fit in with the crowd so keep an eye out. Find a quaint lodge to stay in and enjoy the crisp and cool air while having some great local food and some delicious wine. This festival typically takes place around the first day of fall.

**NYC Wine and Food Festival.** New York City is another great location to have a food festival because there is plenty to see and do in addition to enjoying the festivities. This festival benefits the NYC Food Bank and the nonprofit Share Out Strength so it's for a good cause. It happens every year and you'll have a chance to see some celebrity chefs as well as known personalities in the culinary field. You'll want to plan on spending some time here but make sure you have plenty of time to enjoy the rest of the city so nice they named it twice while you're there.

**Taste of Chicago.** Cuisine from Chicago has made its way all across America, but the best place to enjoy it is where it actually came from. This event is billed as the world's largest food festival and spans five days each year with more than two million people visiting. You'll find all the foods you would expect including Chicago dogs, Chicago-style pizza, and other regional foods you might not know about. Make sure to save room for dessert from the famous Eli's Cheesecake. This festival takes place each year in July which is a great time to be in the Windy City. Be sure to check out some of the Chicago area attractions if you've never been before.

**Pizzafest.** Pizza is one of the most popular foods in the world and comes in all types and flavors. This annual food festival takes place in Naples, Italy in September and goes for a whole week. If you travel to Italy to celebrate pizza you'll be in for a real treat if all you know is American pies. There will be plenty of pizza to eat but the entertainment and education makes it worthwhile. The World Pizza-Making Championship takes place and you can also take a pizza-making workshop. Try a slice of several different types of pizza including Neapolitan, marinara, and margherita.

**Salon du Chokolat.** When it comes to food festivals, any festival celebrating chocolate is going to be very popular. This festival is actually a trade fair for the international chocolate industry. More than 500 participants take part in the annual event and come from more than 60 countries. You can sample chocolates from five continents and attend workshops. This festival has plenty of entertainment in addition to satisfying your sweet tooth. It has a chocolate sculpture contest and an interesting

chocolate fashion show. If you love chocolate this is certainly a festival you'll want to visit and you'll actually be encouraged to overindulge.

### Vocabulary

**weird** [wiəd] дивний, незрозумілий; фантастичний

**beverage** ['bev(ə)rɪdʒ] напиво, напої

**fjord** [fjɔ:d, fi:ɔ:d] = **fiord** фіорд

**fillet** ['filit, filei] філе

**fish-cake** рибна котлета

**rodent** ['rəʊd(ə)nt] гризун

**Chinchilla** [ʃin'ʃilə] шиншила

**chariot** ['ʃæriət] автомобіль

**weigh-in** зважування

**over-ripe** [əʊvə'raip] переспілий

**vendor** ['vendə] продавець, постачальник

**food truck** пересувний продуктовий фургон

**entree** ['ɒntrei] основна страва за обідом

**token** ['təʊkən] подарунок на пам'ять; сувенір

**sampling** зразок; проба

**shrimp** [ʃrimp] дрібна креветка

**taco** ['tə:kəʊ] гарячий згорнутий маїсовий корж із начинкою з рубаного м'яса / риби, сиру, цибулі, бобів, гострою підливою

**ramen** лапша швидкого приготування

**tater tots** хрустка смажена картопля

**routine** [ru:'ti:n] картопля фри із шматочками сиру та гарячою підливою

**gravy** ['greivi] підлива; соус

**cheese curds** сир у фритюрі

**churro** солодка випічка

**Pad Thai** тайська лапша

**cookoff** ['kukɔf] конкурс кухарів

**craft beer** авторське пиво

**worthwhile** [,wɜ:'a'wail] вартий; що дає результат

**overindulge** [əʊvərin'deldʒ] надмірно балувати (кого-небудь); надмірно захоплюватися (чим-небудь)

## 5.8. Do You Know English Words?

### 5.8.1. Euro-English

The most popular second language in Europe today is English. Perhaps you already knew that (after all, you speak it yourself).

But did you also know that English has borrowed thousands of words from other European languages? Here are some examples.

Language	Words
Czech	robot / pistol
Dutch	yacht / wagon / boss / landscape
French	prison / parliament / soup / cigarette / garage

German	kindergarten / hamburger / waltz / delicatessen / seminar
Hungarian	coach / paprika
Italian	violin / umbrella / cartoon / carnival / solo
Spanish	mosquito / cargo / patio / potato / guerrilla

### Vocabulary

**pistol** [pɪst(ə)l] *пістолет*

**delicatessen** [delɪkə'tesn] 1) *холодні закуски* 2) *магазин, гастрономічний магазин*

**coach** [kəʊtʃ] 1) *каре́та, екіпа́ж*; 2) *пасажи́рський вагон, розділений на купе*; 3) *(туристичний) міжміський автобус*; 4) *тренер, інструктор*; 5) *репетитор; учитель, викладач*

**patio** ['pætiəʊ] *внутрішній дворик; патіо*

**guerrilla** [gə'rilə] 1) *партизан; боєць*; 2) *партизанська війна*

### 5.8.2. Origin of Some Words

The name “tattoo” has an interesting origin. Traditionally the soldiers were told to return to the living quarters each night by a beat of the drum which sounded like “tat-too”.

The word “holiday” literally means “holy day”. In the United States, the word “holiday” is synonymous with “celebration”.

The word “clan” means “family” and the great clans of the 16<sup>th</sup> and 17<sup>th</sup> centuries were really like big families, ruled by powerful chiefs. Sometimes there were battles between different clans but nowadays the McDonalds, the McKenzies and the Campbells all live in piece with each other.

Many people in Scotland have the name *McDonald* or *McKenzie*. “Mac” means “son of” and people with this name usually feel they belong to the same family or clan. Common boys’ names are Donald or Duncan, and girls’ names are Fiona or Jean. Many Scottish people still use some Scottish words when they speak English.

For example, “wee” means *small* as in “wee laddie” - *small boy*. A “bonnie lass” is a *pretty girl* and a “bairn” is a *young child*. If someone answers your questions with “aye” [ai] they are agreeing with you, because “aye” means “yes”. Finally, if you are offered a “wee dram” be careful: you’ll be given some whisky to drink and you will probably have to drink it all in one go.

Although not many Welsh words are well-known in England, the word “eisteddfod” is understood by almost everybody. This is the Welsh name for an annual competition where people meet to dance, sing and read poems. Usually, only Welsh is spoken and in recent years they have attracted people who wish to protest against the influence of English on the Welsh language and culture. Years ago, all Irish people spoke Gaelic, and this language is still spoken in some parts of Ireland, although today all Irish people speak English also. Evidence of Gaelic is still found in place names, for example “bally” - *town*, “slieve” - *mountain*, “loughs” - *lake*, “inis” - *island*, “drum” - *mountain top*, “glen” - *valley*.

The Scots prefer the adjective *Scottish*, but other people often use the word *Scotch*. *Scotch* is used for whisky. British people do not usually use the words *Briton*

or *Britisher* themselves. *Briton* appears mostly in newspaper headlines - for example TWO BRITONS KILLED IN AIR CRASH. *Britisher* is used mainly by Americans, Australians etc.

### Vocabulary

**origin** ['ɔːrɪdʒɪn] 1) джерело; початок; вихідна точка; 2) походження

**tattoo** [tæ'tuː] 1) сигнал вечірньої зорі; час вечірньої зорі; 2) показові виступи, демонстрація рушничних прийомів; 3) барабанний дріб; 4) стукіт

**literally** [lɪt(ə)rəli] буквально, дослівно

**holy** ['həʊli] святий; священний

**Gaelic** ['geɪlɪk, 'gæɪlɪk] гельська мова

### 5.8.3. Hooligan

Do you know the word “Hooligan”? Yes, you know the word and you don't like hooligans, of course.

But do you know that Hooligan was an English surname? In 1890 there lived in London a man whose surname was Hooligan. He was a very bad man and he behaved so badly, that soon everybody in London knew him and talked about him. When somebody began to behave badly, people said, “Oh, he behaves like Hooligan”, and a new word was born.

You can find this word not only in English but in some other languages too.

### Vocabulary

**hooligan** ['huːlɪgən] хуліган

### 5.8.4. Mackintosh

Do you know what a mackintosh is? Of course, you do. But do you know that the word “Mackintosh” is a surname?

In 1823, in Scotland lived a man whose name was Charles Mackintosh. It often rained in Great Britain, and Charles Mackintosh got wet quite often.

One day he rubberized his coat and it became waterproof. Many of his friends liked his coat and asked him to rubberize their coats too. Soon many people began to rubberize their coats and they called those coats “mackintoshes”.

### Vocabulary

**mackintosh** ['mækɪntəʃ] макінтош, плащ, непромокальне пальто

**rubberize** ['rʌbə,raɪz] додати гуму до тканини

**waterproof** ['wɔːtəpruːf] водонепроникний, непромокальний; водовідштовхуючий

### 5.8.5. What is It “Boycott”?

At the end of the XIX century an English lord hired for his estate in Ireland the bailiff also an Englishman, captain Boycott. Being strict and ruthless Boycott in a short period of time was so hated by all farmers and peasants that all of them refused to deal with him in any business neither big nor small. Since that time “boycott” has acquired the significance of person's isolation from the society and refusal to communicate with him. This is a very punishment. The Captain Boycott after these events had to escape from Ireland.



### Vocabulary

**estate** [i'steit] маєток; земельне володіння; майно, статок

**bailiff** ['beilɪf] управляючий маєтком

**ruthless** ['ru:θlɪs] безжалісний, жорстокий

**acquire** [ə'kwaiə] здобувати; одержувати

**significance** [sig'nɪfɪkəns] значення, зміст

**punishment** ['pʌnɪʃmənt] покарання

### 5.8.6. Was the First Computer “BUG” a Real Insect?

The story goes that one of the early electromechanical computers suffered a failure because an insect had crawled into the machine and been squashed between the moving parts of a relay switch, thereby jamming it. The incident was written up in the logbook and spread from there throughout the whole of the infant computer industry. However, although the account seems to be genuine, the word is older: the event was recorded as an amusement for posterity precisely because the term “a bug” was already in use.

The term in fact originates not with computer pioneers, but with engineers of a much earlier generation. The first example cited in the 20-volume historical *Oxford English Dictionary* is from the *Pall Mall Gazette* of 11 March 1889:

*Mr. Edison, I was informed, had been up the two previous nights discovering “a bug” in his phonograph - an expression for solving a difficulty, and implying that some imaginary insect has secreted itself inside and is causing all the trouble.*

It seems clear from this that the original “bug”, though it was indeed an insect, was in fact imaginary.

### Vocabulary

**failure** ['feɪljə] аварія, ушкодження; перебіг; відмова в роботі; вихід з ладу; збій

**crawl** [krɔ:l] повзти

**squash** [skwɒʃ] протискуватися, пробиватися, проитовхуватися; втискуватися

**relay switch** релейний перемикач

**thereby** 1) за допомогою цього; у такий спосіб; 2) у зв'язку з цим

**jamming** 1) заїдання; защемлення; 2) (радіо) створення радіотехнічних перешкод, глушіння

**logbook** ['lɒgbʊk] журнал роботи, робочий щоденник

**infant industry** нова галузь промисловості

**account** [ə'kaʊnt] 1) рахунок (у банку); 2) розрахунок; 3) звіт; доповідь, повідомлення; 4) опис, розповідь; 5) думка, відгук, оцінка; 6) причина, підстава; 7) вигода, користь; 8) замовник, покупець, клієнт

**amusement** [ə'mju:zmənt] 1) розвага, забава; задоволення; 2) (приємне) здивування, (радісний) подив 3) веселоці, радість

**posterity** [pɒ'sterɪti] потомство; наступні покоління; нащадки

**cite** [saɪt] 1) посилатися; наводити; 2) цитувати

**phonograph** ['fəʊnəgrɔ:f] фонограф

**imaginary** [ɪ'mædʒ(ə)n(ə)rɪ] уявний; нереальний



### 5.8.7. What is the Origin of the Following Phrases?

**“Dressed to the Nines”** - One theory is that it comes from the name of the 99<sup>th</sup> Wiltshire Regiment, known as **the Nines**, which was renowned for its smart appearance. There are a couple of problems with this suggestion, though. To begin with, the regiment’s sartorial reputation seems to have dated from the 1850s, while the first recorded use of the phrase is from 1837. Secondly, *dressed to the nines* developed as an extension of the much earlier phrase *to the nines*, meaning “*to perfection, to the greatest degree*”: the 20-volume Oxford English Dictionary’s first example of this earlier form dates back to 1719.

Why it should have been *to the nines* rather than *to the eights, to the sevens*, etc. remains unclear.

#### Vocabulary

**Wiltshire Regiment** ['wɪltʃɪə] ['redʒɪmənt] Уїлтширський полк

**renown** [ri'naʊnd] прославлений, відомий; знаменитий

**smart appearance** парадний вигляд

**suggestion** [sə'dʒestʃ(ə)n] 1) пропозиція, порада; 2) натяк, вказування; 3) імовірна або можлива обставина; припущення

**sartorial** [sə:'tɔ:riəl] кравецький

**dressed to the nines** вдягнений с иголки

**“Sleep Tights”** - It seems that **tight** in this expression is the equivalent of the only surviving use of the adverb **tightly** meaning “*soundly, properly, well, effectively*”. The 20-volume historical Oxford English Dictionary labels this adverb “*now dialectal*”.

#### Vocabulary

**tight** [taɪt] 1) щільний, непроникний; компактний; 2) міцний; 3) важкий, складний; 4) строгий, твердий

**survive** [sə'vaɪv] 1) пережити (сучасників, славу); 2) залишитися в живих, вижити, вціліти; продовжувати існувати, зберігатися

**dialectal** [daɪə'lektl] діалектальний, діалектний

**“the Bee’s Knees”** - The phrase was first recorded in the late 18<sup>th</sup> century, when it was used to mean “*something very small and insignificant*”. Its current meaning dates from the 1920s, at which time a whole collection of American slang expressions were coined with the meaning “*an outstanding person or thing*”. Examples included *the flea’s eyebrows, the canary’s tusks*, and one that still survives - *the cat’s whiskers*. The switch in meaning for *the bee’s knees* probably emerged because it was so similar in structure and pattern to these other phrases.

#### Vocabulary

**it was used to mean** колись означало

**insignificant** [ɪnɪsɪg'nɪfɪkənt] незначний, несуттєвий, маловажний; незначний, невеликий; беззмістовний, порожній, який нічого не виражає

**slang expressions** жаргонні вирази

**coin** [kɔɪn] 1) карбувати (монету); вибивати (медаль); 2) фабрикувати, вигадувати; 3) створювати нові слова, вирази

*flea* [fli:] блоха

*canary* канарка

*tusk* [tʌsk] ікло, бивень (слона, моржа, кабана)

*whisker* [wɪskə] 1) волос бороди; борода; 2) бакенбарди, баки; 3) вуса, вусики (у тварин)

### 5.8.8. What is the Origin of the Terms?

“**Brass Monkey**” - The story goes that cannonballs used to be stored aboard ship in piles, on a brass frame or tray called a “*monkey*”. In very cold weather the brass would contract, spilling the cannonballs: hence very cold weather is “*cold enough to freeze the balls off a brass monkey*”. There are several problems with this story, as follows:

- the term “*monkey*” is not otherwise recorded as the name for such an object;
- the rate of contraction of brass in cold temperatures is unlikely to be fast enough to cause the reputed effect;
- the phrase is actually first recorded as “freeze the tail off a brass monkey”, which removes any essential connection with balls.

It therefore seems most likely that the phrase is simply a humorous reference to the fact that metal figures will become very cold to the touch in cold weather.

#### Vocabulary

*cannonball* [ˈkænənbo:l] (сферичне) гарматне ядро

*pile* [paɪl] 1) купа; штабель; (метал.) пакет

*brass* [brɑ:s, bræs] латунь, жовта мідь

*contract* [kənˈtrækt] 1) стискати, скорочувати; звужувати; 2) давати усадку  
*spil* розсипати; розсипатися

*hence* [hens] 1) від цього часу, віднині; 2) отже; в результаті; 3) звідси

*brass monkey* дуже холодний

*reputed* [rɪˈpju:tɪd] 1) який має добру славу, гарну репутацію; відомий 2) гаданий, ймовірний, який вважається (ким-небудь)

“**Flea Market**” comes from the French *marché aux puces*, a name originally given to a market in Paris which specialized in shabby second-hand goods of the kind that might contain fleas. The earliest English use that the 20-volume Oxford English Dictionary has found dates from 1922.

#### Vocabulary

*shabby* [ˈʃæbi] поношений, порваний, потертий, старий (про одяг, речі)

The phrase “**pros and cons**” is an abbreviation of the Latin phrase *pro et contra*, “for and against”, and has been in use in the abbreviated form since the 16<sup>th</sup> century, according to the Oxford English Dictionary.

“**Pros and cons**” is a well-established standard usage; Oxford’s larger dictionaries do not mark it as “*informal*” or in any way restricted in use. The much longer alternative is the phrase “*arguments for and against*”.

The word “**UFO**” is an abbreviation which comes from the initial letters of the words “unidentified flying object”. A UFO is a mysterious object in the sky which can't be explained by current scientific theories. UFOs are often associated with extraterrestrial beings: they're believed to be the spaceships of the “little green men” of science-fiction movies and stories.

According to the Oxford English Dictionary, the term “unidentified flying object” goes back at least to the 1950s: it is recorded in 1953, in a book by the US aviator and writer Donald Keyhoe. The *OED* also gives a citation in 1956 by Edward Ruppelt, an officer in the USAF, stating that he'd invented the term as a more general one to replace the earlier description for such objects, flying saucer.

Strange objects in the sky were first named *flying saucers* in the 1940s: the first *OED* citation is from *The Times*, in 1947. They were so called because of an account by a US pilot, Kenneth Arnold, who stated in various newspaper and radio interviews of that year that he'd seen “saucer-like” objects in the sky while he was flying past Mount Rainier. The media seemed to have quickly changed this to the snappier “flying saucer” and so the term was born. By the time Ruppelt and his USAF colleagues were investigating reports of these sightings in the 1950s, it was clear that “saucer” was too limited a description, since the objects in question were said to be of many different shapes: hence Ruppelt's invention of “UFO”.

UFOs captured the public's imagination and it wasn't long before sightings were reported from all over the world. The study of UFOs became known as ufology (recorded in *The Times Literary Supplement* in 1959) and experts in the field were named ufologists about four years later, even though research in this area isn't generally regarded as an academic discipline.

### Vocabulary

**unidentified flying object** [ˌʌnaɪ'dentɪ faɪd] невідстановлений літаючий об'єкт

**mysterious** [mi'sti(ə)riəs] таємничий; незбагнений

**extraterrestrial being** [ekstrətə'restriəl] позаземна істота

**spaceship** ['speɪsʃɪp] космічний літальний апарат, космічний корабель

**science-fiction** наукова фантастика

**citation** [sai'teɪʃ(ə)n] 1) посилання (на автора); згадування (прізвища); 2) цитування; цитата

**flying saucer** “літаюча тарілка”

**snappy** ['snæpi] швидкий, енергійний; моментальний, миттєвий

**ufology** [ju:'fɒlədʒi] вивчення неопізнаних літаючих об'єктів (“літаючих тарілок”), уфологія

The word “**Berserk**” came into English in the early 19<sup>th</sup> century, as a noun used to describe an ancient Norse warrior who fought with uncontrolled ferocity (also known as a **berserker**).

The English word derives from the Old Norse **berserkr** (noun), itself probably from combining **bjorn** (bear) and **serkr** (coat). It could also possibly from **berr** “bare” (i.e. without armour) and **serkr**.

It is now mostly used in the expression “to go **berserk**”.

### Vocabulary

**berserk** [bər'zɜrk, -'sɜrk] 1) нестямний, безстрашний, невразливий давньоскандинавський воїн; 2) знівисний; шалений, лютий  
**ferocity** [fə'rɒsɪti] жорстокість, лютість; дикість

### 5.8.9. The Fascinating Origins of 15 Common English Words?

Below are just 15 words. From these 15 words, you'll learn the meanings of more than 30 other words! Once you know each word's origin, you'll begin to notice it in other words.

A majority of English word roots come from Latin and Greek. Even English words that come from other languages like French or German are sometimes originally Latin anyway - so they were Latin first, then became French or German and *then* they became English.

Many words on this list have gone through a few languages before getting to English, but in this post we'll focus on just one main origin.

The "related words" sections give a sample of the other words you can learn using these origins, but there are many, many more out there. Most related words are broken down into their own origins, which are defined and then pointed out in parentheses (like these).

For example, if you see the words "together (*sym*)," you'll know that the root *sym* means together. Simple!

And now, the words!

### Vocabulary

**fascinating** [ˈfæsɪneɪtɪŋ] 1) чарівний 2) захоплюючий, зачаровуючий  
**related words** споріднені слова  
**sample** ['sɑmpəl] 1) зразок; проба; приклад 2) шаблон, модель  
**parentheses** [pə'reneɪsɪz] круглі, прості дужки

### Greek

#### 1. Phone

**Meaning:** A *phone* is a device that's used to communicate with people from a distance (you might be using a phone to read this!).

**Origin:** The English word *phone* is actually short for *telephone*, which comes from the Greek words for sound (*phon*) and far away (*tele*).

**Related words:** **Homophones** are words that sound (*phon*) the same (*homo*) but are spelled differently, like hear and here. If you like hearing nice things you might enjoy a **symphony**, which is when many instruments play together (*sym*) to make a beautiful sound (*phon*)... usually.

### Vocabulary

**homophones** [ˈhɒməfəʊn] співпадаючий, однаковий (про звук); який має однакове звучання (про слово)  
**symphony** [ˈsɪmfəni] симфонія; гармонія (квітів); гармонічне сполучення

#### 2. Hyper

**Meaning:** Someone who is *hyper* is very energetic and lively.



**Origin:** *Hyper* actually a shortening of the word **hyperactive**, which combines the Greek word meaning “over, beyond” (*hyper*) and the Latin word for something that’s done (*act*).

**Related words:** When someone tells you they’re so hungry they could eat a horse, you know they’re just exaggerating by using a **hyperbole** - stretching the truth, like throwing (*bole*) something too far (*hyper*). No matter how exciting someone’s hyperbole is, try not to **hyperventilate**! That means to breathe or blow out air (*ventilate*) too much (*hyper*) in a way that makes you dizzy.

#### Vocabulary

**hyper** ['haɪpə]

**hyperactive** [haɪpə'ræktɪv] *надактивний*

**exaggerate** [ɪg'zædʒəreɪt] 1) *перебільшувати* 2) *збільшувати, розширювати*

**hyperbole** [haɪ'pɜːbəli] *гіпербола, перебільшення*

**hyperventilate** [haɪpə'ventɪleɪt] 1) *глибоко дихати* 2) *перенасичувати легені киснем (за допомогою глибокого дихання)*

**dizzy** ['dɪzɪ] 1) *який відчуває запаморочення, нудоту; спантеличений; 2) запаморочливий; 3) викликати запаморочення, нудоту; паморочити; приголомшувати*

### 3. Sync

**Meaning:** When a few things happen at the same time or in the same way, they’re in *sync*. This word is a shortening of the word *synchronize*, but it’s used alone nowadays as a verb (your phone apps might even *sync* to make sure your files are up to date).

**Origin:** *Sync* comes from a Greek word that means to be together (*sym* or *syn*).

**Related words:** A **synopsis** is a summary of something like a movie or a play. It’s a way for everyone to see (*opsis*) the meaning together (*syn*). Synopsis and summary are actually **synonyms**, which are words that share the same (*syn*) meaning but have a different sound or name (*onym*).

Stay away from a play if the synopsis says the actors **lip-sync**. That means they move their lips (*lip*) together (*syn*) with the music without actually creating the sounds themselves.

#### Vocabulary

**Sync** ['sɪŋk] 1) *синхронізацією звуку є зображення; синхронізація; 2) погодженість, відповідність; 3) синхронізувати*

**up to date** [ˌɜptə'deɪt] *до теперішнього часу, до цього часу*

**synopsis** ['sɪ'nɒpsɪs] 1) *резюме; конспект; стислий огляд; синопсис*

**lip-sync** *співати під фонограму*

### 4. Air

**Meaning:** *Air* is all around us. It’s the invisible gas that creates our atmosphere. Without air, we wouldn’t be able to breathe!

**Origin:** The word *air* has gone through a few languages before ending up in English, but it probably comes from the Greek word *aer*, which means to blow or breathe. You can actually find words that use both *aer* and *air*.

**Related words:** In **airplane** is a relatively flat object (*plane*) that flies in the air (*air*). Airplanes are **aerodynamic**, which means they use the air (*aer*) to power (*dynamic*) their flight. Don't forget to look down when you're in that plane, since **aerial** (of the air) views are pretty amazing!

**Vocabulary**

**invisible** [in'vizəb(ə)] *невидимий*

**Latin**

**5. Dense**

**Meaning:** Something *dense* is packed tightly or very thick. For example, a fog can be so *dense*, or thick, that you can't see much through it.

**Origin:** *Dense* comes from the Latin for "thick" (*densus*).

**Related words:** You can see **condensation** when evaporated water molecules join together (*con*) and becomes thick (*dens*) enough to form droplets. **Density** is the measure of how thickly packed (*dens*) something is, like people or things in one space.

**6. Finish**

**Meaning:** To *finish* something means to be done with it. In a few seconds you'll be *finished* reading this sentence.

**Origin:** *Finish* comes from the Latin word *finis* which means "end." In many words, this is shortened to *fin*.

**Related words:** You've probably **defined** a lot of vocabulary words in your English learning, which means you've looked up what the words mean. You could say that you've brought an end (both *d* and *fin*), to your lack of understanding! Don't worry, there's a **finite** number of words in English, which is a noun (*ite*) that means something that has a limit or end (*fin*). If English were **infinite**, or without (*in*) a limit, we would be learning it forever!

**Vocabulary**

**dense** [dens] 1) *густий; щільний, компактний* 2) *посил. глибокий, крайній, цілковитий*

**densus** ['densəs] = **dense**

**evaporate** [i'væpəreit] *випаровувати, перетворювати в пару; випаровуватися, перетворюватися в пару*

**droplet** ['drɒplɪt] *крапелька*

**lack** [læk] *нестача, брак; (повна) відсутність*

**finite** ['fainait] *обмежений, який має межу*

**7. Form**

**Meaning:** The *form* of something is its shape. As a verb, the word *to form* means to create something in a specific shape.

**Origin:** The word *form* comes from the Latin words for a mold (*forma*) and the Latin verb *to form* or to create (*formare*).

**Related words:** Many jobs and schools require people to wear a **uniform**, which is clothing that all looks the same or has one (*uni*) style (*form*). When places don't



have strict rules about what clothes to wear, they're **informal**, or without (*in*) a specific shape (*form*).

### Vocabulary

**mold** [məʊld] = **mould** 1) форма; лекало, шаблон

## 8. Letter

**Meaning:** A *letter* is a symbol that represents a sound in a language, like a, b, c, or the rest of the alphabet. A *letter* is also a message you write and send to someone. E-mails are digital *letters*!

**Origin:** In Latin, a *letter* was called a *littera*, and the *lit* and *litter* parts of this word appear in many English words that are related to *letters*.

**Related words:** If you're reading this, you're **literate** - you know how to read (*liter*). You probably read **literature** (books) and hopefully don't take fiction too **literally** (seriously and exactly). All these words are forms of the stem *liter*, but their suffixes turn them into someone who reads (*literate*), something that exists (*literature*), and someone who does things to the letter (*literally*).

### Vocabulary

**literate** ['lit(ə)rit] 1) грамотна людина; широко освічена людина; 2) грамотний; освічений

**literally** [lit(ə)rəli] 1) буквально, дослівно; 2) точно; без перебільшень; відповідно до фактів; 3) без перебільшення; буквально

**stem** [stem] основа

## 9. Part

**Meaning:** A *part* is a piece of a whole, something that isn't complete. In verb form, the word *to part* means to divide or remove something.

**Origin:** This word comes from the Latin *partire* or *partiri*, which means to divide or share among others.

**Related words:** Somebody **impartial** has no (*im*) opinion about something (they take no *part* in the debate). You can be impartial about whether you live in a house or in **apartment**. An apartment is the result (*ment*) of dividing a building into smaller spaces (*part*). Wherever you live, make sure it's safe - you wouldn't want to put your family in **jeopardy**, which is a dangerous situation or, according to the original definition, an evenly divided (*part*) game (*jeo*).

### Vocabulary

**impartial** [im'pɑ:ʃ(ə)l] безсторонній, неупереджений, справедливий

**jeopardy** ['dʒɛrədi] 1) небезпека, ризик; 2) підсудність

## 10. Voice

**Meaning:** Your *voice* is the sound you use to speak. You can also *voice*, or state, an opinion.

**Origin:** The Latin word for voice is *vox*, and the word for "to call" is *vocare*. These two related words are the origin of a number of English words related to speech or voices. They usually include the root *voc* or *vok*.

**Related words:** In **advocate** is someone who calls (*voc*) others to help him (*ate*) support a cause or a person. Even someone who means well might end up provoking someone who doesn't agree with them. To **provoke** someone means to call someone (*vok*) forward (*pro*) and challenge them in a way that usually makes them angry.

### Vocabulary

**provoke** [prə'vəʊk] 1) викликати, спричиняти, збуджувати 2) провокувати 3) сердити, драгувати 4) спонукувати 5) викликати до суду

### Old Norse

#### 11. Loft

**Meaning:** A *loft* is a room right under the roof or very high up in a building. The *loft* in a house is usually used for storage, but building *lofts* are rented out as (usually smaller) living spaces.

**Origin:** The Old Norse word for air or sky was *loft*, which is written as *loft* in English.

**Related words:** Something **aloft** is up in (*a*) the air (*loft*). If something is very tall, you would say it's **lofty**, which is the adjective form of *loft*. In the same way, someone *lofty* has a very high (*loft*) opinion of themselves, which makes them act proud or snobbish.

### Vocabulary

**Old Norse** північна германська мова

**loft** [lɔft] горище; сінник

**aloft** [ə'lɔft] 1) нагорі; у височині; у повітрі; угору, нагору, наверх; 2) на небесах; на небеса; 3) на марсі, на реях; 4) у польоті, у повітрі

**lofty** ['lɔfti] 1) дуже високий; 2) піднесений, високий; 3) зарозумілий, пихатий

**snobbish** ['snɒbiʃ] снобістський; чванливий, пихатий

### French

#### 12. Question

**Meaning:** Asking a *question* means trying to get information about something. *Questions* end in *question* marks (?).

**Origin:** Originally from Latin, English borrowed the Old French word *question* and never gave it back. The word means “to ask” or “to seek,” and it shows up in a number of ways in other words, from *quire* to *quest*. This one can be tough to spot since it switches between using the French and Latin versions of the word.

**Related words:** Some fantasy books have the main characters going on a **quest**, or a long and difficult search (*quest*) for something. Maybe you're more interested in murder mystery books, which often have in **inquest**, or an official investigation (*quest*) into (*in*) someone's suspicious death. If these types of books sound interesting, you can **inquire**, or ask (*quest*) about (*in*) them at your local library.

### Vocabulary

**quest** [kwest] 1) пошуки; 2) предмет пошуків; 3) пошуки пригод

**inquest** ['ɪnkwest] слідство; розслідування; дізнання; висновки слідства; журі, склад присяжних

**pacify** ['pæsɪfaɪ] 1) умиротворяти, заспокоювати; 2) відновлювати мир, спокій, порядок; 3) утихомирювати

**appease** [ə'pi:z] 1) заспокоювати; умиротворяти; 2) угамовувати (голод); задовольняти (цікавість); 3) полегшувати, заспокоювати (горе, біль)

### 13. Liberty

**Meaning:** *Liberty* is the state of being free. The Statue of Liberty in New York is a symbol of freedom.

**Origin:** Another originally Latin word, *liberty* found its way into English through the Old French *liberete*, usually shortened to *lib*.

**Related words:** A **liberator** is a person (*ator*) who sets others free (*lib*) from a situation like slavery, jail or a bad leader. Becoming free means being open to changes, so it helps if you're **liberal** - someone with a personality (*al*) that's open to (*lib*) new ideas or ways of thinking.

#### Vocabulary

**liberator** ['libəreɪtə] визволитель; рятівник

### Italian

#### 14. Gusto

**Meaning:** Doing something with *gusto* means really enjoying it and being enthusiastic about it.

**Origin:** The Italian word *gusto* actually means taste, and comes from the Latin for taste, *gustus*.

**Related words:** You won't do something with *gusto* if you find it **disgusting**. That's the negative feeling you get about something you think is unpleasant - literally, without (*dis*) taste (*gust*).

#### Vocabulary

**gusto** ['gestəʊ] 1) задоволення, смак; пристрасть (з якою виконується робота); інтерес, любов, схильність (до чого-небудь); 2) висока оцінка; розуміння, смак

**disgusting** [dɪs'gestɪŋ] огидний, противний, паскудний

### Arabic

#### 15. Check

**Meaning:** To *check* means to take a close look at something, or to make sure of something (verify it). For example, before you leave for work in the morning you might check that you have everything you need. *Check* can also be used as a verb that means to stop or slow something down.

**Origin:** The word *check* has an interesting history, moving from language to language and changing its meaning a little with each one. The word is originally from Persian and then Arabic, where it meant "king." Over time, the word started being used in the game of chess and was defined as "to control." Eventually the word's meaning changed to what it is today. So much history in such a small word!

**Related words:** Leaving something **unchecked** means leaving something without (*un*) limits or control (*check*). If you leave weeds to grow unchecked in your

yard, for example, they'll take over and destroy your other plants. The word **check** on its own also refers to a piece of paper worth a certain amount of money (you write checks to pay bills). A **raincheck** used to be a ticket given to people attending outdoor events that had to be stopped because of rain. Today a raincheck is just a promise to do something another time.

### Vocabulary

**verify** ['venfaɪ] перевіряти, контролювати

**unchecked** [ʌn'tʃekt] 1) незатриманий; 2) нестриманий, неприборканий; недисциплінований; 3) неперевірений (про рахунок)

**raincheck** корінець квитка на стадіон, що дає право прийти на гру, перенесену з нагоди дощу; прохання або обіцянка прийняти запрошення іншим разом

### 5.8.10. Foreign Placenames

The names of countries, and of the world's most important cities and natural features, have always been translated into various languages.

Just as the French language calls *London Londres* and the *United States* the *États-Unis*, so English uses *Italy* for the country which its inhabitants call *Italia*, and both English and French call its capital *Rome* rather than *Roma*.

Even if we do not change the spelling of foreign placenames, we often modify their pronunciation for our own comfort, pronouncing *Paris*, for instance, to rhyme with the English surname *Harris*.

But all of this seems to be changing. The English language anglicizes the pronunciation of placenames less than it did even a generation ago. Whether because of increased foreign travel or from a becoming increase in national modesty, we now try to pronounce *Marseilles* and *Rheims* more or less as their citizens do, whereas our forebears made them rhyme with *Wales* and *Dreams*. We also have to learn the names of many towns in their own languages, if only to catch the right plane to *Geneva* or *Florence* when the airport departure board announces flights to *Genf* or *Firenze*.

Here are a few foreign placenames and their English versions:

<i>own language</i>	<i>English</i>
Bruxelles	<i>Brussels</i> ['brʌs(ə)lz]
Firenze	<i>Florence</i> ['flɒrəns]
Gdansk	<i>Danzig</i> ['dænsɪg]
Genève, Genf, Gunevra	<i>Geneva</i> [dʒɪ'ni:və]
Livorno	<i>Leghorn</i> ['lɛghɔ:n]
München	<i>Munich</i> ['mjʊ:nɪk]
Reims	<i>Rheims</i> [ri:mz]

### Vocabulary

**modify** [mɒdɪfaɪ] 1) модифікувати, видозмінювати; 2) пом'якшувати, знижувати

**rhyme** [raɪm] 1) рима; 2) римований вірш; 3) римувати

**anglicize** ['æŋglɪsaɪz] англізувати, надавати англійські риси

**modesty** ['mɒdɪstɪ] 1) скромність; стриманість; 2) сором'язливість

**forebear** ['fɔ:beə] 1) предок; 2) попередник

### 5.8.11. How London's Streets were Named?

Let's start from Piccadilly Circus, as many visitors do. Why “*Piccadilly*”? Nobody is quite sure. Some think that the name comes from a house, in what is now Great Windmill Street, owned by a 17<sup>th</sup> century tailor. The tailor grew rich by making the high collars called “*peckadills*” or “*picadills*”. His home was nicknamed “*Piccadilly Hall*”.

Why “*Soho*”? No one, however, can explain “*Soho*” convincingly. It may have been a hunting call, like “*Tally-ho*” or “*So-ho!*” One thing that is known for certain: Duke of Mornmouth, who owned a mansion in Soho Square (when the square was brand new), chose “*Soho*” as a watchword for his troops at the battle of Sedgemoor in 1685, when he rebelled against James II.

*Haymarket* was just what its name suggests: the site of the National Gallery was occupied by royal stables. In 1685 thousands of French Protestants came to England and settled in London and its outskirts. During the French Revolution of 1793 great numbers of the French constitutes the second wave of emigrants.

*Pall Mall* and the *Mall* are said to be named after a game, called “*paille-maille*” in French, and introduced into England in the 17<sup>th</sup> century.

*Charing Cross* is one of the oldest spots in London. There was a small village here once. The villagers used to char wood, making charcoal of it. That is why the village was called *Charing*. In the 13<sup>th</sup> century when the English Queen Eleanor died, her husband wanted her body be taken to Westminster Abbey, to be buried there.

At every place where the funeral procession stopped a wooden cross was put. The last place where they stopped was *Charing*, and since then the place is called *Charing Cross*.

*Mayfair* is a symbol of wealth, of elegance, of style and of quality. The best and the most expensive shops, restaurants and theatres are located here. Up to the 18<sup>th</sup> century this was all country land. The biggest *fair* was held here every year in *May*, and that is why this district was called *Mayfair*.

All London’s long-past history is told by its streets and district names.

#### Vocabulary

*convincingly* [kən'vɪnsɪkli] *переконливо*

*duke* [dju:k] *герцог*

*mansion* ['mæɪnʃ(ə)n] *великий особняк, великий будинок; палац*

*watchword* ['wɒtʃwɜ:d] *1) пароль 2) гасло*

*troops* [tru:ps] *війська*

*rebel* ['reb(ə)l] *повставати, бунтувати, протестувати*

*bury* ['berɪ] *ховати; здійснювати похоронний обряд*

*funeral* ['fju:n(ə)rəl] *похоронний*

*char* [tʃɑ:] *обпалювати; обвуглювати*

### 5.8.12. Longest Words

The list below contains some of Europe’s longest words. Why not take a deep breath and see if you can pronounce them?

Language	Word	Meaning
Spanish	<b>superextraordinarísimo</b>	extraordinary



French	<b>anticonstitutionnellement</b>	anti-constitutionally
Italian	<b>precipitevolissimevolmente</b>	as fast as possible
Turkish	<b>cecoslovakyalilastiramadicularimizdanmisniz</b>	are you one of those people who we couldn't Czechoslovakianize?
Dutch	<b>kindercarnavalsoptochtvoorbereldingswerkzaamheden</b>	preparations for children's carnival procession
German	<b>donaudampfschiffahrtselektrizitaetenhauptbetriebswerkbauunterbeamtengesellschaft</b>	the name of a pre-1930 club in Vienna

### 5.8.13. Does Anyone Here Speak English?

You are on holiday in a European country where you cannot speak the language. You can speak English though. How do you find out if there are any other English speakers about? You ask, of course. The ten sentences below all mean, “**Does anyone here speak English?**” in different languages. The question is ... ***which languages?***

Choose from the list on the right, and then check your answers.

1. Spricht hier jemand English?	(a) Finnish
2. Puhuuko kukaan englantia?	(b) Portuguese
3. C'è qualcuno qui che parla l'inglese?	(c) Norwegian
4. Spreekt er hier jemand Engels?	(d) Spanish
5. Y-a-t-il quelqu'un ici qui parle Anglais?	(e) Danish
6. Alguém fala inglês?	(f) Greek
7. Er det noen her som snakker engelsk?	(g) Dutch
8. ¿Hay alguien aqui que habla inglés?	(h) German
9. Mila kanis anglica?	(i) Italian
10. Er der nodon her, der taler engelsk?	(j) French

#### Answers

1. (h)	3. (i)	5. (j)	7. (c)	9. (f)
2. (a)	4. (g)	6. (b)	8. (d)	10. (e)

### 5.8.14. The Days of the Week

It is interesting to know how the names of the week came to have such names. These names are very old: people choose them long, long ago in the days when they worshipped a different god each day.

Sunday was the Sun's day and the next day was the Moon's day, or Monday. Tuesday was called after Tieu, the god of war. Wednesday was Woden's day, one highest god of the Teutonic peoples. Thor was the thunder god; his day was called Thor's day, or Thursday.

His wife insisted on having a special day of her own. Her name was Freya, so her day came to be called Friday. Saturn was the Roman god of the fields; his day was Saturn's day, or Saturday.

#### Vocabulary

**worship** ['wɔ:ʃɪp] 1) поклонятися, схилятися; шанувати; 2) обожнювати, боготворити

**Tieu** [tju:] бог війни



**Woden** ['wɒd(ə)n] один з трьох скандинавських богів великої магичної сили та мудрості

**Teutonic** [tju:'tonik] тевтонський

**Thor** [θɔ:] Тор, бог грому

**insist** [in'sist] наполягати; настійно вимагати

**Freya** ['freɪə] богиня плодючості, любові та краси

**Saturn** ['sætən] Сатурн (бог землеробства)

### 5.8.15. Happy Birthday

Do you know the story of the song “Happy Birthday”?

In English *going for a song* means something is for sale at a very low price. But what do real songs cost? They aren't cheap.

Let's look at the most famous English song of all – “Happy Birthday to You”. People have been singing it at birthday parties for more than one hundred years. Two American sisters called Patty Smith Hill and Mildred Hill wrote the song. Its first title was “Good Morning to All”. The sisters taught at a kindergarten in Louisville, Kentucky.

Their song was in a little book called *Song Stories for Sunday School*. They sold their song to the Sengstack family of Princeton, New Jersey. The Sengstack family earned one million dollars every year for the song. How? The answer is royalties.

People must pay royalties when they sing “Happy Birthday” in public, for example, at the theatre, on television or in a film.

Then the Sengstack family sold “Happy Birthday” to an American company called Warner Chappell. Did they sell it for a song? Absolutely not. Warner Chappell paid twenty-five million dollars for it.

#### Vocabulary

**going for a song** іти за безцінь

**royalties** ['rɔɪəltɪs] гонорар (автору книги тощо)

**in public** відкрито, гласно, публічно

### 5.8.16. What was in Pandora's box?

A gift is described as a “Pandora's box” if it seems attractive but is really a curse.

In ancient Greek mythology, Zeus was the father of die gods. When he created mankind, he asked Prometheus die Titan to make them out of clay. Later, Prometheus asked Zeus to give man fire which was reserved for the gods alone. Zeus refused, but Prometheus stole fire from Olympus, the gods' home, and smuggled it down to man on earth. To punish Prometheus, Zeus fashioned Pandora, the first woman, full of beauty and charm - and curiosity. He sent Pandora to Prometheus' simple brother. Epimetheus, together with a box which he warned them not to open. Despite this, the couple opened the box and out flew all the evils that have since afflicted mankind. Only hope remained in the box to help man through his troubles.

#### Vocabulary

**curse** [kɜ:s] прокляття; бич, лихо, нещастя

**smuggle** [smʌg(ə)l] провозити контрабандою; таємно проносити

**fashion** ['fæʃ(ə)n] надавати вигляду, форми; моделювати

*simple brother* рідний брат

*afflict* [ə'flɪkt] засмучувати, турбувати; доводити до відчаю; уражати

### 5.8.17. Who were the Argonauts?

They were the heroes of one of the oldest adventure stories in the world, the Quest of the Golden Fleece. Jason was a young Greek prince who was set the task of bringing back the skin of a magic ram, the golden fleece, which was kept in Colchis on the shores of the Black Sea and guarded by a dragon that never slept. Jason commissioned the finest shipbuilder of the time, Argus, to build for him the first longship, the *Argo*. He gathered together, as crew, the Argonauts, fifty great heroes including Hercules, Orpheus and Theseus. After many adventures, the Golden Fleece was captured and brought back to Greece in triumph.

The legend was known to Homer around 700 BG and is possibly based on a real exploit of the prehistoric Minyae people from Boeotia, a region of ancient Greece.

#### Vocabulary

*Golden Fleece* золоте руно

*commissioned* [kə'mɪʃ(ə)nd] якому надані повноваження; який отримав або має доручення

### 5.8.18. What does the Name Christopher Mean?

In Greek, Christophoros means “the one who carries Christ”. According to the legend, Christopher was a very big man, almost a giant. His ambition was to serve the mightiest of kings, but he could not find the one he sought. He earned his living beside a river, carrying travellers across to the other side. One night, a child asked Christopher to carry him across. When they were but halfway over, the child became so heavy that, it took all the great Christopher's strength to reach the riverbank. He told the child that he had never carried such a weight before. The child replied: “Do not be surprised. You have tonight carried on your back the whole world and its sins. I am Jesus Christ, the mighty king you seek.” Then Christopher abandoned everything to follow Christ and in due course was put to death for his faith.

### 5.8.19. Do you know that ...

**Highland dress** the traditional costume worn by Scottish men on formal occasions or as a military uniform. Its main parts are *a tartan kilt* (= a man's skirt with folds that reaches to the knees), *a sporran* (= a flat bag made of fur or leather hanging in front of the kilt), and *a small knife* which is stuck in the top of one of the stockings.

**Pullman** a comfortable railway carriage, often with beds for passengers to sleep in during journeys at night. It was developed by George Pullman (1831–1901) who built the Pioneer Sleeping Car Company in 1863 and formed the Pullman Palace Car Company in 1867. From 1985, British Rail applied the name “Pullman” to its first-class carriages serving meals, drinks, etc.

**Cream tea** an afternoon meal consisting of tea and *scones* (= small cakes made with flour, fat and milk) eaten with clotted cream and jam. Cream teas are traditional in Devon and Cornwall in south-west England and are popular with visitors and

tourists.

**Gatwick** the capital city's second major airport, serving about 21 million passengers a year. A field here was first licensed for recreational use by light aircraft in 1930. It was developed as a commercial airport in 1934-1935, and was the first in the world to have its own rail link; the Southern Railway opened a station in 1935, joined to the terminal building by a subway. Gatwick subsequently became the world's busiest single-runway airport, but there are now controversial plans for a second runway.

**Ploughman' lunch** a light meal often served in pubs and usually eaten in the middle of the day. It consists of cheese (or sometimes cold cooked meat), bread and butter, salad and pickles (=a mixture of fruit and vegetables preserved in vinegar). Its name was invented in the early 1970s to suggest the sort of food traditionally eaten by people working the fields: *I'll have a Cheddar ploughman's please.*

**Consequences** a game in which each player writes the first line of a story on a piece of paper and then passes it to the next player who writes the second line, and so on. Each player folds the paper so that the next player cannot see what is already written. The result is a number of crazy and often funny stories, the stories follow a pattern that always begins with the names of two people and ends with the sentence "And the consequence was ..."

**Fish and chips** a traditional British dish. It consists of fish which is covered in batter (= a mixture of flour and milk) and fried in deep fat. This is served with chips (= long thin pieces of fried potato). It is quite a cheap meal, which people usually buy at a fish and chip shop and take away wrapped in paper.

**Pancake race** a race in which people carry pancakes in frying pans and repeatedly toss them (= throw them into the air so that they land the other way up in the pan) as they run. Tossing pancakes is the traditional way of cooking them on both sides. Pancake races take place in many parts of Britain on Shrove Tuesday.

**Pooh (Winnie-the-Pooh)** the main character in A. A. Milne's children's stories, *Winnie-the-Pooh* (1926) and *The House at Pooh Corner* (1928). Pooh is a bear who is not very intelligent but very friendly. He enjoys eating, singing songs, and playing with his friends, including Christopher Robin, Piglet and Eeyore.

**Happy Families** a children's card game played with a special pack of cards with pictures of various families on them. There are four members in each family: a man, his wife, their son and their daughter. The aim of the game is to collect as many complete families as possible. If you have one member of the family already, you can ask somebody if, they have another member, e.g. "Mr Bun, the Baker" or "Miss Pill, the Doctor's daughter", and if they do, they have to give the card to you.

### Vocabulary

**pullman** ['pʊlmən] 1) швидкий поїзд зі спальними вагонами; 2) автобус зі спальними місцями

**clotted cream** густі пряжені вершки

**runway** ['rʌn, weɪ] злітно-посадочна смуга

**ploughman** ['pləʊmən] селянин; сільський житель;

**consequence** ['kɒnsɪkwəns] 1) наслідок; результат; 2) висновок 3) значення,

важливість

*consequences* ['kɒnsɪkwənsɪz] гра «Дурниця»

*fish and chip shop* магазин, де основною стравою є риба з картоплею фри

*wrap* [ræp] обгортати; загортати; упакувати

*repeatedly toss* [tɒs] неодноразово підкидати

*Shrove Tuesday* [ʃrəʊv] вівторок на масляну (останній день масляної)

*Pooh* [pu:] Пух

*piglet* ['pɪglɪt] порося, свинка

### 5.8.20. English Terms

*Albion* - A Roman name for Great Britain, rarely used after the 19<sup>th</sup> century.

*Balti cuisine* - A fusion cooking range of Indian style dishes using certain sets of spices and sauces, invented in England. “Balti kiev” are sold in several supermarket chains in the UK.

*Bangers* - A popular name for British sausages, but also used in the singular to mean an old car in poor condition.

*Bank Holiday* - Most holidays are national holidays and are called Bank Holidays, because banks and government offices normally close on those days.

*Beefeaters* - The popular name for the monarch’s guard soldiers at the Tower of London.

*Black cab* - The popular name for a licensed taxi, more correctly called a Hackney Carriage.

*Bobbies* - The old-fashioned popular name for the police, after the Home Secretary who introduced them in the 18<sup>th</sup> century, Sir Robert Peel. Bobby is a diminutive of Robert.

*Boxing Day* - December 26<sup>th</sup>, the second day of Christmas.

*Camelot* - The probably mythical castle of King Arthur, becoming an essential part of the legend in Victorian times.

*Chicken Tikka Masala* (CTM) - A fusion dish of roast marinated chicken, Indian tikka, with a sauce based on garam massala spices, probably invented in Glasgow, Scotland.

*Chocolate limes* - Boiled sweets with a lime-flavoured outer shell and a chocolate centre.

*Christmas crackers* - Tubes of decorated carton that pull apart with a bang to reveal a gift, joke on a slip of paper and a party hat.

*City of London* or *Square Mile* - The original central city of London, now primarily a financial and banking centre.

*Cockney* - A Londoner generally, but more accurately, someone born in a particular small area of East London, within hearing of the bells of Bow Church.

*Cornish pasty* - A savoury pie with meat and vegetable filling from Cornwall, but originally made half with a savory filling and half with a sweet filling for shepherds.

*CTM kiev* - A chicken wrapped around a chicken tikka masala centre, bread-crumbed and deep-fried; fusion cookery.

*Custard* - A milk, egg, cornflower and vanilla sauce eaten hot with a variety of sweet pudding



**Don** - Most often senior members of staff at Oxford or Cambridge colleges but now often applied to most university teachers

**Easter Bunny** - An Americanized cute version of the ancient fertility symbol of a hare, breeding traditionally at Easter

**Fish and Chip Shop** - A shop selling freshly-cooked chips and fish, pies and black pudding, often with a range of other similar food, cooked whenever possible in a deep-fat-fryer.

**Ginger beer** - A non-alcoholic soft drink flavoured with ginger

**Haggis** - A Scottish traditional dish of mixed, minced offal baked in a sheep's stomach with suit, oatmeal and other ingredients. Regarded either as a delicacy or an abomination with few neutral observers.

**Iron Lady** - A popular nickname for Margaret Thatcher, used both by her supporters and her opponents.

**The Knowledge** - The mandatory examination given to potential taxidivers in London to test their knowledge of the streets and buildings of Greater London. No licence is given until the candidate passes this extremely strict test.

**Les Rosbifs** - The French colloquial nickname for the British, literally "the roast-beefs".

**Limeys** - The American colloquial name for the British, after the limes they took on ships to give them vitamin C and combat the disease scurvy.

**Lions of Anjou** - The original banner of King Richard the Lionheart, still used as a national symbol of England.

**May King** and **May Queen** - Symbolic male and female monarchs chosen during a May Day celebration, to govern over the festivities.

**May tree** or **Maypole** - The symbol around which villagers danced, during part of the May Day celebration.

**Mincemeat** and **mince pies** - Meat was in the Middle Ages a word to describe all manner of foodstuffs - the former now uses the contemporary use of meat while the latter is a mixture of preserved fruits cooked together in a thick sweet sauce.

**Oxbridge** - A term used to denote the two top universities in England, from - a combination of their names, Oxford and Cambridge.

**Ploughman's lunch** - A plate of bread, cheese, salad, pickle and pickled onion often served in pubs at lunchtime.

**Public Schools** - Private, fee-paying schools, despite the name.

**Red double-decker bus** - The Routemaster bus characteristic of London

**Simmnel cake** - A rich fruit cake associated with Lent and Mothering Sunday which falls in that period. In some areas simnel cakes are made for Easter, like a куліч.

**Tartare sauce** - A sauce made from mayonnaise and very finely chopped capers, gherkins and other proprietary ingredients.

**Toad in the Hole** - British sausages baked in a Yorkshire pudding-style batter, a London dish often served with onion gravy.

**Union Flag** - The correct name for the flag of the United Kingdom and Northern Ireland. A "jack" and hence "Union Jack" is strictly the name only for a flag hung from a ship's mast.



**West End** - The theatre district of London, second only to Broadway, New York, in importance.

**Yorkshire pudding** - A baked dish from pancake batter, usually bowl shaped.

**Yule cake or Christmas cake** - Rich fruit cake, often with added brandy, eaten at Xmas.

**Yule log** - Traditionally a log burned in a grate at Xmas but today most likely to be a chocolate cake on the shape of a log, again to be eaten at Xmas.

### Vocabulary

**Balti** [bɑ:lti] один з видів карі

**fusion** ['fju:z(ə)n] розплавлена маса

**Beefeaters** ['bi:f,i:təz] б'їф'їтери, "м'ясоїди" (призвисько охорони палацу)

**Hackney** ['hækni] хакні (порода коней)

**Home Secretary** министр внутрешних дел Великобритани

**diminutive** [dɪ'mɪnjutɪv] зменшувальний

**tikka** ['tɪkə] тикка (запечені шматки маринованного мяса)

**garam massala** [mə'sɑ:lə] суміш спецій

**bang** вибух

**Bow Church** ['bəʊ,tʃə:tʃ] церков Боу (те ж саме, що **St Mary-le-Bow** Сент-Мери-ле-Боу (одна з найвідоміших церков Лондона; знаходиться в Сіті; вважається, що людина, яка народилася в межах чутності її дзвонів, у Іст-Енді – справжній кокні)

**bread-crumbed** обвалювати в сухарях, панірувати

**deep-fried** смажений у фритюрі

**Fish and Chip Shop** закусошна, де основне блюдо - риба з картоплею фри

**black pudding** кров'яна ковбаса

**deep-fat-fryer** фритюрниця

**offal** ['ɒf(ə)l] потрухи; тельбух

**suit** [s(j)u:t] ниркове сало

**abomination** [ə,bɒmɪ'neɪʃ(ə)n] відраза, огида

**mandatory** ['mændət(ə)rɪ] обов'язковий, примусовий

**scurvy** ['skɜ:vɪ] цинга

**mincemeat** 1) начинка для пирога (родзинки, яблука, мигдаль, цукор, цукати та ін.); 2) дрібно порублене м'ясний фарш

**mince pies** пиріжки із солодкою начинкою

**mince meat** - мясной фарш

**ploughman's lunch** ['pləʊmən] пахар

**decker** багатопверховий автобус

**gherkin** ['gɜ:kɪn] колючий огірок, корнішон; дрібний огірок для маринування

**toad** [təʊd] жаба

**toad in the Hole** б'їфштекс, запечений і місті

**batter** ['bætə] бездріжджове, рідке тісто, бовтанка

**onion gravy** ['greɪvɪ] тушкуванні; підлива; соус

**mast** [mɑ:st] мачта

**log** [lɒg] колода; опецьок; кряж

**grate** [greɪt] камінна решітка; камін

## 5.9. Have You Ever Heard About ... ?

### 5.9.1. What can the Sea Levels Tell about the Past Climates?

There are many methods used to find out about past climates. One of them is to study sea and lake levels. When the climate warms, the sea level rises for two reasons. Most obvious is the melting of the ice locked up in the ice caps of Atlantics and Greenland. Less obvious is the expansion of the ocean waters as they warm.

Around much of the world there are signs that lakes were considerably larger during the warm phase of 6 000 to 2 000 BC than their remnants are today. Fish remains and old-lines provide the evidence. Lake Chad on the southern edge of the Sahara is a good example. The Caspian Sea was also immense. Many Californian lakes were larger than they are now.

When the sea levels were rising between 8 000 and 5 000 BC, and the rate of rise perhaps 1 to 2m (3 to 6 ft) per century.

#### Vocabulary

**obvious** ['ɒbvɪəs] 1) явний, очевидний; помітний, видимий; 2) ясний, зрозумілий; банальний; 3) занадто очевидний

**remnants** ['remnənts] залишки, сліди

**immense** [ɪ'mens] 1) величезний, колосальний; 2) неосяжний, безкрайній, безмежний, нескінченний

### 5.9.2. The Weather

There are lots of different kinds of weather. In some parts of the world the weather does not change much from day to day. In others, it can be hard to tell what is going to happen next.

Whatever the weather, it is always made up of the same things: wind, water and heat from the Sun.

- A cloud is formed of billions of tiny droplets of water or ice.
- Cumulonimbus clouds can be as high as a mountain. They usually bring rain.
- Lightning is a spark of electricity jumping between a cloud and the ground.
- Weather vanes point into the wind. They show us where it is coming from.
- Some people believe that windy weather makes everyone bad-tempered.
- From an aeroplane you can see that rainbows actually form a complete circle.
- In some parts of the world, there are periods when it rains at the same time every day.
- Snowdrifts have been known to cover three-storey buildings.
- The South Pole is the coldest place on Earth. It is colder than a home freezer.
- A day on Earth has twenty-four hours, but how long is a day on other planets? On Pluto one day lasts six Earth days and nine hours. On Venus one day is longer than a year on our planet! Jupiter is the biggest planet, but it has the shortest day. It lasts only nine hours and fifteen minutes!

#### Vocabulary

**cumulonimbus** ['kju:mjʊləs] **clouds** дощові/купчасті хмари

**vane** [veɪn] флюгер, вертушка

**bad-tempered** злий, дратівливий

*funnel* ['fen(ə)l] *лійка; розтруб; димохід, труба*

*snowdrift* ['snəʊdrɪft] *сніговий завал; замет*

*Pluto* ['plu:təʊ] *Плутон*

### 5.9.3. Moon

The Moon is the brightest object in the night sky. On some nights, the moon looks like a shining circle of light. On others, it looks like a thin, silver fingernail. However, the moon does not make its own light. The light we see comes from the sun and bounces off the moon.

If the moon and Earth were side by side, the moon would look like a tennis ball next to a basketball. It looks bigger than the stars and as large as the sun because it is closer to Earth than any other object in space. But the moon is about 400 times smaller than the sun, and it is not all that close to Earth. A rocket journey from Earth to the moon and back takes about six days.

A day on Earth has twenty-four hours, but how long is a day on other planets? On Pluto one day lasts six Earth days and nine hours. On Venus one day is longer than a year on our planet! Jupiter is the biggest planet, but it has the shortest day. It lasts only nine hours and fifteen minutes.

The moon is a huge rock that travels around Earth. Nothing lives on the moon. The moon has no air and no wind. Its surface is dry. Its sky is always black, even in the daytime, and the stars are always visible. At night, the moon's rocky surface is colder than any place on Earth. During the day, the rocks are hotter than boiling water.

Astronauts who visit the moon carry air with them to breathe. They talk to each other by radio because there is no air to carry sounds. Space suits protect astronauts from the heat and the cold.

Astronauts can walk easily on the moon, even though they wear heavy equipment. The equipment feels light because the force of gravity on the moon is weaker than gravity on Earth. Gravity on Earth keeps us from floating away in space.

Earth is not the only planet with a moon. Some of the other planets have moons, too. Jupiter has at least 16 moons. There are so many craters on the moon that the moon has craters within craters. Some craters have hills or mountains in them or around them. Some are surrounded by light gray streaks. The largest crater has a floor covered by dark lava. It forms one eye of the "man in the moon". The face of the "man in the moon" is made by light and dark patches of gray in the moon's surface. The dark patches are flat areas of rock covered by a thin layer of rocky soil. The rocky soil of the moon has tiny round bits of glass in it. Some of the rocks are made of hardened lava. Most of the light gray parts are filled with mountains and valleys. The moon also has many big, bowl-shaped holes called craters.

Many small craters were formed when meteoroids hit the moon. Meteoroids are rocks or other objects that travel through space. Many large craters probably formed when larger objects, such as comets or asteroids, hit the moon. A few craters look like the tops of volcanoes. We cannot see all sides of the moon from Earth. The part of the moon we cannot see from Earth is called the far side. Pictures from spaceships have shown us what it looks like.

**Vocabulary**

*force of gravity* земне тяжіння

*crater* ['kreitə] жерло, кратер (вулкана); кратер, чашоподібне заглиблення; воронка (від метеорита, снаряда)

*gray* [grei] = *grey* сірий

*streak* [stri:k] смужка (нерівна, вигнута); жилка, прожилка

*patch* [pætʃ] 1) латка; 2) клантик, кланть; шматок

*meteoroid* ['mi:tiə, rɔid] метеороїд, метеор

*asteroid* ['æstəroid] астероїд, мала планета

*volcano* [vɒl'keinəu] вулкан; вогняна гора; сопка

**5.9.4. Where is the Longest River in the World?**

The longest river in the world is the Nile in Africa. It is 4,145 miles long and provides water for many parts of Africa that are usually hot and dry. Many crocodiles swim in the Nile. As they work each day, farmers and fishermen living along the river banks must watch out for these creatures. The Nile starts in the centre of Africa in a country called Burundi. Then it flows north and empties into the Mediterranean Sea by Egypt.

**Vocabulary**

*Nile* [naɪl] Ніл

*Burundi* [bʊ'ru:ndi] Бурунді (країна у центральній Африці)

*empty* ['empti] впадати (про ріку)

**5.9.5. Why is it Cold in Winter and Hot in Summer?**

The sun is a giant star in the middle of the solar system, which is our family of planets. The earth travels around the sun in a circle called an orbit. The earth is tipped at an angle as it speeds through space, and the sun heats the earth as it travels around the sun. When the part of the earth where we live is tipped nearer to the sun, our weather gets hotter, because we are closer to the sun's hot rays. Then we have summer.

But when our part of the earth is tipped farther away from the sun and its warming rays, our weather gets colder. Then it is winter.

Hot and cold weather, summer and winter - all of these changes are caused by how far away we are from the sun.

**Vocabulary**

*solar system* сонячна система

*orbit* ['ɔ:bit] орбіта

*tip* [tip] нахилити

*angle* ['æŋg(ə)l] кут

**5.9.6. Fruits & Vegetables**

- that the orange, the lemon and the peach originated in China?

- that the orange tree is twenty feet high, and it gives from 3 to 4 oranges a year?

The orange trees give better fruit than the younger ones.

- that the grape is one of the oldest plants?

- that there are more than five thousand different kinds of the pear?

- that the apple-tree is one of the oldest fruit-trees? It is more than four thousand years old.

- that the banana plant grows only where there is plenty of heat and rain? Banana plants grow high. Some of them are thirty feet high, with leaves which are often ten feet long. Bananas have many uses. The ripe fruit is very nice food. Very good flour is made from dry bananas. In hot countries people make roofs for houses from the leaves of the plant.

- that the water-melon is the berry?

- that until about a century ago people thought that the tomato, though beautiful, was a poisonous fruit? People grew it in flower gardens for decoration, and called it the love apple. Then one day, nobody knows exactly how or when, some brave person took a bite, and that was not harmful. The tomato is a native of South America, but today people grow the tomato in many parts of the world.

- the biggest flower in the world is called *rafflesia*. It is one metre wide and it is not very pretty. But this is not the only strange thing about this flower. *Rafflesia* flowers have the worst smell of all!

### Vocabulary

*rafflesia* [ræ'fli:ziə] раффлезія

## 5.9.7. Melons without Seeds

### *How do seedless watermelons grow when the watermelons come from the seeds?*

Scientists have done a neat trick. They have grown watermelon vines that produce watermelons with no seeds.

To understand how this is done, you first have to know some basic ideas about how a normal seed works. Each seed contains a complete set of coding – a blueprint – for making a new plant. That coding is in a set of long, chain-like molecules. All together, that set of molecules is called the plants DNA.

When one watermelon flower is fertilized by pollen from a different watermelon plant, that flower makes new seeds. In each seed, half of the blueprint comes from one plant, and the other half comes from the other plant. That's what happens in most plants.

To make seedless watermelons, scientists use a trick. They use a special chemical to give each seed twice as much DNA as a normal seed has. These seeds can grow into watermelon vines and make watermelons that contain seeds.

But after one of these double-DNA seeds grows into a vine and that vine is fertilized by a normal plant, the new seeds will grow into an unusual vine. The vine is healthy, but because it has one and a half sets of DNA, seeds will not form. So the vine gives seedless watermelons.

### Vocabulary

*vine* [vain] повзуча рослина або рослина, яка в'ється; лоза

*blueprint* ['blu:print] план, проект, програма; намітки

*molecule* ['mɒlikju:l] молекула

*DNA* [deɔzyribonucleic acid] дезоксирибонуклеїнова кислота ДНК



**pollen** ['pɒlən] 1) квітковий пилок; 2) запилювати

### 5.9.8. The Unhappy Potato

People didn't like it at first. It came to Europe from South America. A sailor brought it to Spain in 1953. But people did not want to grow it. It was not easy to make them do it. A king threatened to cut off the noses of those peasants who did not want to grow potatoes.

Other kings tried different ways. King Louis XVI of France wore potato flowers in his buttonhole, and his wife wore them on her hat. But the French peasants said that potatoes made them ill and again they did not want to grow them. The king talked with a scientist about the potato. The scientist thought that the potato could become good and cheap food.

Then the king thought of a plan. He asked the scientist to grow potato in his garden and sent the soldiers to guard it day and night. If somebody came near the garden, the soldiers shouted and told them to go away. The people became interested. "This is new potato plant!" they said. "It must be good if the king looks after it!"

In autumn the soldiers dug the potatoes and left them in the garden. When the hungry peasants took some of the potatoes they did not seem to notice it.

Soon the peasants took all the potatoes. After it people began to grow potatoes and French women learned to cook them.

#### Vocabulary

**threaten** [θret(ə)n] загрожувати; грозити

**buttonhole** [bʌt(ə)nhoʊl] 1) петля; петелька; петлиця; 2) бутоньєрка

### 5.9.9. Big Tree, Little Tree

#### *Why Two Maple Trees were Planted at the Same Time now Different Sizes?*

There are several possible reasons why these two trees have grown to different heights. First, each tree may have inherited different characteristics from the parent trees, causing one to grow faster than the other. In many kinds of living things, including humans, sisters and brothers can be very different from one another, even though they have the same parents. Second, one tree may be in a spot where it gets more sunlight, water, or nutrients than the other. And third, the shorter tree may have insects, fungi, or other pests living off it, which would make it sick and slow to grow.

#### Vocabulary

**maple** ['meɪp(ə)l] клен А

**nutrients** ['nju:triənts] живильні, поживні речовини

**fungi** ['fʌŋɡaɪ, 'fʌndʒaɪ, 'fʌndʒɪ] гриби; грибки; пліснява

### 5.9.10. Why is it that Women Don't Go Bald & Men Do?

In fact, about 18 per cent of women do experience hair loss under the age of 40, although it is more noticeable in men.

Like height, weight and other characteristics, baldness is genetic and can be inherited from either side of the family.

The male hormones, testosterone and dihydrotestosterone, make the hair follicle sensitive – so gradually over time the hair begins to change, becoming shorter and thinner until the follicle eventually dies.

Contrary to popular belief, baldness is irreversible, although it is possible to slow down the process.

### Vocabulary

*baldness* облісіння

*hormone* ['hɔ:məʊn] гормон

*testosterone* [te'stəʊstərəʊn] тестостерон

*dihydrotestosterone* [dɪˌhaɪdrəʊtəs'təʊstərəʊn] дігідротестостерон

*hair follicle* ['fɒlɪk(ə)l] волосяний фолікул, волосяна сумка

*irreversible* [ɪrɪ'vɜ:səb(ə)l] необоротний

### 5.9.11. Amazing Water Facts

Water is the most important resource in the world. Here are interesting facts about water.

- 68.7% of the fresh water on Earth is trapped in glaciers;
  - 30% of fresh water is in the ground;
  - 1.7% of the world's water is frozen and therefore unusable;
  - water can dissolve more substances than any other liquid including sulfuric acid;
  - the freezing point of water lowers as the amount of salt dissolved in it increases.
- With average levels of salt, seawater freezes at -2 °C (28.4 °F);
- about 6,800 gallons of water is required to grow a day's food for a family of four;
  - to create one pint of beer it takes 20 gallons of water;
  - 780 million people lack access to an improved water source;
  - 1/3 what the world spends on bottled water in one year could pay for projects providing water to everyone in need;
  - unsafe water kills 200 children every hour;
  - water weighs about 8 pounds a gallon;
  - it takes 120 gallons of water for one egg;
  - a jellyfish and a cucumber are each 95% water;
  - 70% of the human brain is water;
  - 80% of all illness in the developing world is water related;
  - up to 50% of water is lost through leaks in cities in the developing world;
  - in Nairobi urban poor pay 10 times more for water than in New York;
  - in some countries, less than half the population has access to clean water;
  - \$260 billion is the estimated annual economic loss from poor water and sanitation in developing countries;
  - a person can live about a month without food, but only about a week without water;
  - water expands by 9% when it freezes;
  - there is about the same amount of water on Earth now as there was millions of years ago;
  - the length of the side of a cube which could hold the Earth's estimated total volume of water in km = 1150;

- 85% of the world population lives in the driest half of the planet;
- agriculture accounts for ~70% of global freshwater withdrawals (up to 90% in some fast-growing economies);
- 300 tons of water are required to manufacture 1 ton of steel;
- refilling a half-liter water bottle 1,740 times with tap water is the equivalent cost of a 99 cent water bottle at a convenience store;
- it takes about 12 gallons per day to sustain a human (this figure takes into account all uses for water, like drinking, sanitation and food production);
- each day, we also lose a little more than a cup of water (237 ml) when we exhale it;
- by 2025, water withdrawals are predicted to increase by 50% in developing countries and 18% in developed countries;
- by 2025 half the world's people will live in countries with high water stress;
- the average family of four uses 180 gallons of water per day outdoors. It is estimated that over 50% is wasted from evaporation, wind, or overwatering;
- it takes more than twice the amount of water to produce coffee than it does tea;
- chicken and goat are the least water intensive meats to consume;
- hot water can freeze faster than cold water under some conditions (commonly known as the Mpemba effect);
- if the entire world's water were fit into a 4 liter jug, the fresh water available for us would equal only about one tablespoon;
- over 90% of the world's supply of fresh water is located in Antarctica;
- water regulates the Earth's temperature;
- water use has grown at more than twice the rate of population increase in the last century;
- only 0.007% of the planet's water is available to fuel and feed its 6.8 billion people;
- three quarters of all Americans live within 10 miles of polluted water;
- producing a gallon (3.79 liters) of corn ethanol consumes 170 gallons (644 liters) of water in total, from irrigation to final processing. On the other hand, the water requirement to make a gallon of regular gasoline is just five gallons (19 liters);
- over 42,000 gallons of water (enough to fill a 30×50 foot swimming pool) are needed to grow and prepare food for a typical Thanksgiving dinner for eight;
- an acre of corn will give off 4,000 gallons of water per day in evaporation;
- in a 100-year period, a water molecule spends 98 years in the ocean, 20 months as ice, about 2 weeks in lakes and rivers, and less than a week in the atmosphere;
- water is the most common substance found on earth;
- water makes up about 66% of the human body;
- there are no scientific studies that support the recommendation to drink 8 glasses of water per day;
- drinking too much water can be fatal (known as water intoxication);
- there is more fresh water in the atmosphere than in all of the rivers on the planet combined;
- if all of the water vapor in the Earth's atmosphere fell at once, distributed evenly, it would only cover the earth with about an inch of water;

- of the estimated 1.4 billion hectares of crop land worldwide, around 80% is rain fed and accounts for about 60% of global agricultural output (the other 40% of output is from irrigated crop land);
- household leaks can waste more than 1 trillion gallons annually nationwide. That's equal to the annual household water use of more than 11 million homes;
- 10% of homes have leaks that waste 90 gallons or more per day;
- a leaky faucet that drips at the rate of one drip per second can waste more than 3,000 gallons per year;
- each cubic foot of Martian soil contains around two pints of liquid water, though the molecules are not freely accessible, but rather bound to other minerals in the soil;
- there is an estimated 326 million trillion gallons of water on earth;
- NASA has discovered water in the form of ice on the moon;
- a 2.6 billion year old pocket of water was discovered in a mine, 2 miles below the earth's surface;
- two-thirds of the world's population is projected to face water scarcity by 2025, according to the United Nations;
- 1 apple requires 18 gallons of water;
- 1 pound of chocolate requires 3,170 gallons of water;
- 500 sheets of paper requires 1,321 gallons of water;
- ground water occurs almost everywhere beneath the land surface. The widespread occurrence of potable ground water is the reason that it is used as a source of water supply by about one-half the population of the United States;
- the High Plains Aquifer covers eight states and 175,000 miles.

### Vocabulary

*sulfuric acid* сірчана кислота

*exhale* [eks'heil] видихати, робити видих

*evaporation* [i,væpə'reiʃ(ə)n] випаровування; зневоднювання

*Mpemba effect* ефект Мпемби

*ethanol* ['eənəl, 'i:a] етиловий спирт; етанол

*faucet* ['fə:sit] водопровідний кран

*Martian* [mɑ:(r)ʃ(ə)n] марсіанський

*scarcity* ['skeəsiti] брак, нестача; дефіцит; рідкість

*potable* ['pəʊtəb(ə)l] придатний для пиття; питний

### 5.9.12. Why is it that Some People are Left-Handed?

Some believe that it is for genetic reasons or pathological damage at birth or a young child may copy left-handed parents.

The brain is divided into two halves, with the left hemisphere, which is dominant in right-handed people, controlling the right side of the body and directing speech writing and abstract thinking.

The right, dominant in left-handed people, controls the left side of the body, and directs the non-verbal memory, emotions and concrete thinking.

As a result, left-handers are sometimes considered to be better at lateral thinking and problem solving and to be more artistic.

**Vocabulary**

*pathological* [ˌpæθəˈlɒdʒɪk(ə)l] *патологічний*

*hemisphere* [ˈhemɪsfiə] *півкуля головного мозку*

*lateral thinking* *нестандартне мислення*

**5.9.13. Cultural Differences in Body Language**

Oxford University research psychologist, Dr Peter Collett, examined some of the differences in the “body language” among Europeans. Dr.Collett says that if we compare the way different European nations use gestures, they fall into three major groups.

The Nordic nations belong to the first group. These are the Swedes, Finns, Norwegians, and Danes.

They use gestures very little. The second group, which includes the British, Germans, Dutch, Belgians, and Russians, use some gestures when they are excited, or want to communicate over long distances, or insult each other.

The third group use gestures a lot, to emphasize what they are saying, or to hold the other person’s attention. They are the Italians, Greeks, French, Spanish, and Portuguese.

The distance that separates one person from another – “personal space” - also varies between people of different nationalities. What is right for one nationality may be uncomfortable for another. People stand close enough to touch each other easily in such countries as France, Spain, Greece, and Italy. British zoologist, Desmond Morris calls this the “elbow zone”. In the countries of East Europe such as Hungary, Poland, and Romania, people stand a “wrist zone”, that is a little more distant. They are close enough to touch wrists. But in the Scandinavian countries, in Britain, Holland, Belgium, and Germany, people stand further away from each other - the “fingertips zone”.

**Vocabulary**

*Danes* [deɪn] *датчани*

*Dutch* [dʌtʃ] *голландці*

*insult* [ɪnˈsʌlt] *ображати; кривдити*

*emphasize* [emfəsaɪz] *підкреслювати, надавати особливого значення, виділяти; наголошувати (на чомусь)*

*personal space* *особистий простір*

*elbow zone* *зона ліктя*

*wrist zone* *зона зап’ястка*

*fingertips zone* *зона кінчика пальця*

**5.9.14. The Magic of Dreams**

Did you know that fever, withdrawal from medication, lack of sleep, indigestion and allergies can all *Cause Nightmares*?

*Drinking* - Being thirsty in a dream means that you're a very ambitious person. For the future: drinking wine means that you will experience happiness and make new friends, whereas drinking beer means that you will be very disappointed by something soon.



**Sea** - In general, dreaming about the sea means that you're not satisfied with your life at the moment and need to make some changes. If you dream about a calm sea, you might begin a new relationship or business venture soon. On the other hand, a dream about a stormy sea means that you will have problems at work or at home in the near future.

Dreams of **Flying** are common and are very positive. Flying symbolises ambition, achievement and freedom, and dreams of flying are often enjoyed by successful people who have a high profile. Flying dreams are associated with feelings of great happiness and power. Dreaming about flying suggests that you want to escape from something in your life at the moment. If you fall while flying, you may have an accident in the future, but if you wake up before hitting the ground, you will recover.

Dreams can often warn us of forthcoming **Health Problems**. These often persistent dreams feature powerful symbols and leave the dreamer with a strong physical sense of foreboding upon awakening.

If you dream that your **Teeth** are falling out, you're going to experience big changes in your life. Dreaming that your teeth are loose means that you'll receive bad news soon. Cleaning your teeth in a dream suggests that you'll have to deal with a big struggle or conflict with your family.

**Running** in a dream shows that you fear something in your life at the moment. It might be a situation you don't feel ready for or something you are deeply afraid of. As far as the future is concerned, running alone means that you'll do better in your career than your friends and running from danger means that something bad may happen to someone you love.

If you dream about finding **Money**, you'll have some worries in the near future, but after that you'll be very happy. If you dream about swallowing money, you're becoming selfish.

Dreaming of **People You Know** is your mind's way of making you aware of qualities and feelings that you desire. The qualities and feelings expressed in your dream interaction with the person you know will be those you are becoming aware of in real life ...

Dreaming of **People You don't Know** is a way of confronting hidden aspects of yourself. Ask yourself what this person in your dream means to you. Do you like this person? What, then, does this say about these hidden aspects of yourself?

Real physical sensations experienced by your body as you dream can influence the content of your dreams. For example, **a Cold Wind Blowing Through the Window** can transform itself into dreams of sailing and storms.

As **Red** is the colour of passion, heat, fire and anger, dreams that feature the colour red can symbolise any one of these things. It could also point to your energy levels: are you directing your energies in the most efficient way?

Finding **Keys** in your dream represents confidence and domestic bliss, while dreaming of broken keys symbolises jealousy or separation. Unlocking a door with a key points to the existence of new friends or even lovers!

Dreams of **Pearls** represent pleasure and purity, particularly if you find yourself admiring them. Discovering pearls in an oyster symbolises an uncovering of secrets.

**Driving a Car** in your dreams symbolises the way in which you "drive" through

life. Pay attention to your driving dreams. Are you the driver or the passenger? Are you in reverse or unable to start your car? Is your foot on the brake but the car won't stop?

The **Feelings** you have upon awakening from a dream are the key to your understanding of the dream. You may have dreamt of being chased but woke up laughing. This dream will mean something quite different from the same dream after which you have awoken in fear.

It can be a frightening experience to **Look into a Mirror** in your dream and have a strange face stare back at you. This situation represents an identity crisis of some sort. Look carefully at the face in the mirror. Is this face familiar? How do you feel about the reflection?

When **a Man Dreams of Babies** he is usually questioning the feminine aspect of his being. Such dreams are also strongly associated with the birth of creativity in waking life. On a more literal level, men with pregnant partners are likely to have dreams that they, too, are pregnant.

**Snow** symbolises purification and transformation. It can also refer to icy emotions. If your dreams involve snow, you may need to look closely at your emotions. Are you 'cold' and lacking warmth?

Some people have been known to dream the names of **Race Winners**. While this is not terribly common, some such dreamers claim to have various strategies that could help others do the same!

Have you ever dreamt that you **Missed Your Bus** or misplaced your keys or were unable to make an emergency telephone call? Such dreams suggest frustration and anxiety in your waking life, and are reminders of the stresses under which you may be putting your body.

Dreams that feature a general **Blackness** or **Black Objects** are usually reflecting a feeling of depression in the waking life of the dreamer. Being a negative colour, black can also symbolise our unknown or hidden side.

**Food** dreams symbolise nourishment and can point to greedy behaviour or feelings of neglect in your waking life. It is also often connected with sexuality and sensuality. If you dream of food, take note of your feelings in your dream. Do you feel guilty as you eat? Are you ravenous and eat to excess?

As in real life, **a Rainbow** in your dreams symbolises hope, healing and new beginnings?

### Vocabulary

**fever** ['fi:və] 1) жар, гарячка; пропасниця; 2) нервові збудження

**medication** [medi'keiʃ(ə)n] 1) лікування; 2) засіб для лікування; 3) обробка, насичення, ліками

**indigestion** [indi'dʒestʃ(ə)n] розлад травлення, нетравлення шлунка

**nightmare** ['naitmeə] кошмар; страшний сон; кошмар, жах

**thirsty** [θɜ:(r)sti] що відчуває спрагу, що мучиться від спраги

**venture** ['ventʃə] ризиковане, сміливе підприємство; ризикована спроба; небезпечна витівка, авантюра

**warn** [wɔ:n] 1) попереджати

**forthcoming** [fɔ:'a'keɪmɪŋ] 1) майбутній, наступний, прийдешній; 2) наявний;

3) ввічливий, привітний, товариський

**persistent** [pə'sistant] 1) завзятий, наполегливий; 2) стійкий, сталий, постійний

**foreboding** [fə'bəʊdɪŋ] 1) погана прикмета; провісник нещастя; 2) (погане) передчуття

**aware** [ə'weə] 1) усвідомлюючий (що-небудь); обізнаний (з чим-небудь); 2) свідомий; 3) чуйний

**passion** ['pæʃ(ə)n] пристрасть, палке захоплення

**anger** ['æŋɡə] 1) гнів, лють; (сильне) роздратування; 2) подразнення, запалення; (пекучий) біль

**bliss** [blɪs] блаженство, щастя

**have awoken in fear** прокинутися у страху

**stare** [steə] пильно дивитися, витріщитися

**literal level** буквальний рівень

**pregnant** ['pregnənt] 1) вагітна; 2) сповнений ідей, з багатою уявою, винахідливий; сповнений сили, змісту; вагомий, важливий, значимий; 3) повний, сповнений, багатий (на що-небудь)

**purification** [pju(ə)rifi'keɪʃ(ə)n] 1) очищення, очистка; 2) ректифікація, рафінування, очищення; 3) церх. обряд очищення

**frustration** [frʌ'streɪʃən] 1) розлад, зрив; розгром; 2) катастрофа, крах; провал; фрустрація; розчарування; невіра у свої сили; 3) припинення зобов'язання внаслідок неможливості його виконання

**anxiety** [æŋ'zaiəti] 1) тривога, занепокоєння, боязнь; страх; патологічний стан тривоги, безпричинного страху; почуття болісного неспокою; 2) неприємності, турботи; 3) палке бажання; прагнення, запал

**sensuality** [senʃu'æliiti] чуттєвість

**guilty** [gɪlti] 1) винний, винуватий; 2) злочинний

**ravenous** ['ræv(ə)nəs] 1) голодний як вовк; 2) ненажерливий; жадібний; ненаситний; 3) хижий; грабіжницький

**healing** ['hi:lɪŋ] лікування; вилікування; загоєння; лікувальний, цілющий

### 5.9.15. Bullfighting

Bullfighting is one of Spain's most famous spectacles. Although some Spaniards consider them to be cruel, bullfights or corrida to use the Spanish term remain popular and there are more than 400 bullrings in Spain - the largest of which has room for 20,000 spectators. During a typical bullfight, three matadors each fight two bulls. The crowd judge the matadors on their courage and elegance in the ring - and if they like what they see, they show their approval by shouting Olé!

#### Vocabulary

**bullfighting** [b'ʊlfɑɪtɪŋ] бій биків

**bullrings** ['bulrɪŋ] арена для бою биків

### 5.9.16. The Candymaker's Witness

A candymaker in Indiana wanted to make a candy that would be a witness, so he made the famous throughout America Christmas Candy Cane on which he

incorporated several symbols. He began with a hard candy stick of pure white, which symbolizes the Virgin Birth and the sinless nature of Jesus; and hard to symbolize the Solid Rock, the foundation of the Church, and the firmness of the promises of God.

This candy cane was made in the form of the letter “J” to represent the name of Jesus, who came to earth as our Savior. It could also represent the staff of the “*Good Shepherd*” with which he reaches down into the ditches of the world to lift out the fallen lambs who, like all sheep, have gone astray. for the birth, ministry and death of Jesus Christ. Thinking that the only white candy was somewhat plain, the candymaker stained it with red stripes. He used three small stripes to show the stripes of the scourging Jesus and the large red stripe was for the blood that was shed by Christ on the cross so that we could have the promise of eternal life. Unfortunately, in America the candy became known only as a sweet Candy Cane - a meaningless decoration seen at Christmas time. But the meaning is still there for those who “have eyes to see and ears to hear”.

### Vocabulary

*witness* [witnis] свідок, свідчення

*Virgin Birth* непорочне зачаття

*sinless* ['sinlis] безгрішний

*Solid Rock* твердиня

*firmness* ['fɜ:mnis] твердість; міцність; стійкість, незмінність

*Savior* ['seivɪə] рятівник; Ісус Христос, Спаситель

*go astray* заблукати

*ministry* проповідницька діяльність, служіння

*stain* [stein] фарбувати

*scourge* [skɜ:dʒ] наносити удари, бити батогами; карати

*eternal life* [i'tɜ:n(ə)l] безсмертя

*meaningless* ['mi:nɪŋlis] безглуздий

### 5.9.17. Facts and Myths about your Health

- Garlic prevents heart disease.
- Apricot is good for your skin.
- Green tea protects your teeth.
- Brown eggs are more nutritious than white eggs.
- Onion is good for your nerves.
- Eating raw goldfish helps to gain strength.
- Milk strengthens your bones.
- Cutting out certain foods is the fastest way to a healthy diet.
- Banana is good for your muscles.
- Cabbage may help prevent the development of cancer.
- Cranberry helps soothe your tired eyes.
- Eating only one type of food, such as grapefruit, helps to lose weight.
- Eating healthy means trying to consume a little less than you'd like to.
- Carrots are good for your eyesight.
- Milk is very good for children.

### 5.9.18. Headaches

**Beat that headache.** Most of us suffer from a headache at some time or another. Take simple steps to help prevent, treat and alleviate this common, painful problem. Tension causes the vast majority of headaches. Severe headaches that recur are called cluster headaches. A migraine is a disabling headache with throbbing pain that usually begins on one side of the head. An attack can last for hours or days, is accompanied by other symptoms such as nausea and vomiting, and may be preceded by warning signs.

**First Steps to Help** - Identify and eliminate headache or migraine triggers. Drink 6 to 8 glasses of water a day and exercise regularly. Practise deep breathing which increases oxygen supply to the brain.

**Tension Headaches** - Check your work station layout. Poor posture is a major culprit. Take regular breaks, including a proper lunch break. Replace biscuits and chocolates with healthier nibbles such as dried apricots. To relieve headaches, massage essential oil of lavender on temples. Unwind at the end of the day. Plan your evening meal around a protein-rich main course, such as a simple grilled lean pork chop.

**Migraine Facts and Tips** - Certain foods and drinks, especially those containing compounds known as amines, are notorious migraine triggers. Avoid mature cheeses, onions, pickles, nuts, cured meats, red wine, beer, sour cream, freshly baked yeast products, citrus fruits, tomatoes, caffeinated drinks, eggs. Do eat fish rich in omega-3 fatty acids, such as salmon and tuna.

**Soothing Supplements** - Feverfew can reduce intensity and frequency of headaches and migraines when taken over several months. Drink chamomile tea as a general nerve tonic, to relieve pain and ease stress. Magnesium and calcium taken long-term help to maintain healthy blood vessels and reduce muscular tension.

#### Vocabulary

*headache* ['hedeɪk] *головний біль*

*alleviate* [ə'li:vieɪt] *полегшувати, пом'якшувати (біль, страждання); частково знімати (симптоми)*

*severe* [si'viə] *важкий, серйозний, сильний*

*recur* [ri'kɜː] *повторюватися, відбуватися знову; рецидивувати*

*throbbing pain* *пульсуючий біль*

*nausea* ['nɔːziə] *нудота*

*vomiting* ['vɒmɪt] *блювота*

*culprit* ['kɜːlprɪt] *винний; злочинець; обвинувачуваний; підсудний*

*temples* *скроні*

*lean* [li:n] *пісне м'ясо*

*amines* [ə'mi:n, 'æmɪn] *амін*

*notorious* [nə(u)'tɔːriəs] *який користується поганою славою; сумно відомий; горезвісний; загальновідомий*

*mature* [mə'tʃʊə] *зрілий; спілий*

*cured meats* *консервоване м'ясо*

*yeast* [jiːst] *дріжджі*

*chamomile* ['kæmə, maɪl] *ромашка*



### 5.9.19. Ithaa Undersea Restaurant (Rangali Island, Maldives)

Ithaa is the world's first *undersea restaurant*. It's about five metres below the sea and has fantastic views because it has glass walls. You can sometimes see sharks! Visitors go to a small building and climb down some stairs to the restaurant. It's a really cool place to eat for up to fourteen people. The restaurant serves six courses at lunch time. It's great for really *fresh fish* and *seafood*, but they also serve meat dishes. And the *desserts* are *delicious* too. A meal costs from \$90 to \$200, but *it worth it!*

#### Dinner in the Sky (any city in the world)

Dinner in the Sky organizes meals in forty countries and the food is different in each place. In Hungary, for example, you can have traditional dishes like *halászlé* (fish soup) or *pancakes* with meat. In Spain, you can have *paella*, a traditional dish of rice with seafood. You choose a city and a menu and then Dinner in the Sky takes you fifty metres up in the sky for your meal! It's very expensive – about \$30,000 for twenty-two people – but it's a wonderful *experience*. *It doesn't matter* how old you are, but you need to be at least 150 centimetres tall if you want to eat there.

#### 's Baggers (Nuremberg, Germany)

There are twelve chefs at this restaurant, but there aren't any waiters! You order your food from *touch screen computers* at the table. The kitchens are upstairs. The food comes to the along *long metal tracks!* The food is very healthy because the chefs use only fresh *local* ingredients and very little fat. There are *vegetarian* dishes if you don't eat meat. Main courses are around \$10-20 and desserts \$5-7. Try the *grilled pork* with *mushroom sauce* or the *spicy sausage* (it has a hot strong *taste!*). And after your meal, you can rate the food and the experience from your touch screen!

### 5.9.20. Eat Out for Less

**“How much is it?” In some restaurants, the answer is: “What you want to pay?” Here are some of the “Pay-what-you-want” restaurants around the world.**

***Der Wiener Deewan – Vienna, Austria*** – This is a Pakistan restaurant but it is in Vienna. You always go down the stairs to a small, cosy room but the restaurant is on three floors altogether. There are no menus and waiters don't come to ask you what you want - the food is in large, hot containers on a table and the menu changes every few hours but always with three vegetarian and two meat options. The meal then costs what you want to pay. The traditional Pakistani food is delicious but, be careful, some of it is very spicy! Try the Alu Methi Gajar – spicy but sweet vegetables - and, of course, some Pakistani rice. The restaurant “Pay-what-you-want” restaurant but also a “Play what you want” restaurant. In the evenings, you can take a djembe, an African drum, and play music with others. It's a really cool place to spend some time.

***Soul Kitchen – Red Bank, New Jersey, USA*** – Soul Kitchen is a great place to for lunch. The menu has choices of starters, main course – fish, meat or vegetarian – and dessert. But, it doesn't have any prices. That's because you can pay what you want. The restaurant asks for \$10 or more but people who haven't got \$10 can eat there and work for an hour to pay for their meal. The food is healthy and local. The restaurant even has a garden and grows a lot of the vegetables that they use in their meals.

**Lentil as Anything – Melbourne, Australia** – This is a vegetarian restaurant in Australia's second city. In fact, there are four Lentil as Anything restaurants in the city. Nine hundred eat in the restaurant in the Abbotsford district of the city every day. The restaurants are open all day and you can eat breakfast, lunch and dinner there. They are friendly places where you can chat to other customers, listen to good music and, when you leave, you put some money in a box. The food is healthy and delicious. They don't serve meat but you can find great food with other ingredients like pumpkins. Their pumpkin curry is amazing.

**Vocabulary**

*lentil* ['lentl] сочевиця

*spicy* ['spaisi] приправлений спеціями, змішаний зі спеціями; пряний, ароматний

**5.9.21. Are Museums Boring? We Don't Think So!**

Museums are often very boring places to visit, but a few years ago some big museums started to get more visitors, especially young people. Why? There was a series of three very funny Hollywood films called *Night in Museum*. In the film the exhibits at the museums come alive at night! People started to get more interested in history. They wanted to visit the museums from the films.

**1. American Museum of Natural History, New York**

This is where they made the first film. The year after the film, twenty percent people visited the museum. There were more than five million visitors. They wanted to see exhibits like the statue of Theodore Roosevelt, the US president of the film. The museum first opened in 1896. Roosevelt's father started it. It's a wonderful place. They have got the skeleton of a very old woman – she is over three million years old! And there are very big African elephants, lots of dinosaurs and a blue whale that is more than twenty-eight metres long!

**2. British museum, London**

The filmed the third film in London. This museum opened in 1759. It was the first free museum in the UK and it's still free today. It's got more than seven million things to see. There are sculptures from Egypt and Italy, like in the film, and the oldest exhibit is nearly two million years old. It's a stone – one of the first human tools. More than six million people visit this museum every year. Because of the film, they are hoping to get more and more visitors.

Maybe the exhibits don't come alive, but they are certainly not boring!

**3. The Black Museum**

Everyone knows the New Scotland Yard. It's the home of the London Police. It's also the home of a special museum called The Crime Museum. People also called it The Black Museum. The are things in here from the most terrible crimes of the last 150 years. A policeman called Percy Neame started this strange museum in 1875. He wanted new policemen to learn from the exhibits. The Crime Museum is usually only for policemen, but today people can see 600 exhibits from The Crime Museum here at the Museum of London. There are lots of guns. But there are also some unusual things. Here are the gloves of terrible murderer. And this champagne is very old. The police found it in 1963 after the Great Train Robbery. There are some horrible

weapons. And this is how some murderers died. Many exhibits are very old, but some are more modern. There is a police car from 1996. This is not a mobile phone – it’s a stun gun. It stops people with electricity. The laptop is from a fire at an airport in 2007. And look at this diamond – cost: about 200 million pounds! The police stopped the robbery in 2000. They changed the real diamond with this one. It’s a fake. These exhibits are certainly not boring.

### **Vocabulary**

*stun gun* электрошокер

### **5.9.22. Secrets of Memory**

Researchers scanned the brains of memorizers as they practiced tried-and-true memory techniques to see how their brains changed in response to their training. In five minutes, 32-year-old Boris Konrad can memorize more than 100 random dates and events. After 30 seconds, he can tell you the order of an entire deck of cards. During the 2009 German Memory Championships, Konrad memorized 195 names and faces in 15 minutes - a feat that won him a gold medal. What's it like to be born with a brain capable of such incredible feats? He says he wouldn't know.

That’s because Konrad’s remarkable talent wasn’t innate; it was learned. “I started with a normal memory and just trained myself,” he recalls. Konrad credits his subsequent success in the world of competitive memory sports to years of practice and employing memorization strategies like the ancient “Memory Palace” technique. In fact, Konrad says, any average forgetful Joe can use these same strategies to train their brains like a memory champion.

The idea that simple memory techniques can result in significant, lasting gains in the ability to memorize faces and lists may at first sound hard to believe. But a new brain imaging study that Konrad co-authored lends scientific support to the claim. Konrad, a world-ranked memory champ who has trained many memories himself over the years, teamed up with Martin Dresler, a cognitive neuroscientist at Radboud University Medical Center in The Netherlands, to delve deeper into the neuroscience behind these tried-and-true memory-boosting techniques.

For the first time, the researchers used brain imaging to reveal that practicing these kinds of mnemonic techniques can actually alter crucial connections to make memorizers’ brains more resemble those of the world's memory champions. The results, published March 8 in the journal *Neuron*, shed some light on why these techniques have such a strong track record.

In the study, 23 participants who spent 30 minutes a day training their memories more than doubled their abilities to remember lists in just 40 days. (For example, those who could remember an average of 26 words from a list were able to recall 62.) Perhaps best of all, it appears that these gains aren't short-lived and don't require continued training: Researchers invited the group back after four months and found that their memory performance was still high, even though they hadn't been training at all.

In recent years, Dresler and colleagues investigated 35 of those memory champions and found they share something surprising in common. “Without exception, all of them tell us that they had a pretty normal memory before they

learned of mnemonic strategies and started training in them”, he says. “Also, without exception, they say the method of loci is the most important strategy”.

The “method of loci” - sometimes called the Memory Palace - is a systematic memory technique that dates back to the days of ancient Greece. The system remained prevalent through the Middle Ages and the Renaissance. Educators used it as did orators, the better to remember aspects of long speeches of a more attentive age.

In the 2011 UK Open Memory Championships held at MWB Business Exchange, competitors were tasked with remembering a 2,000 digit number and the running order of 12 packs of cards.

How does it work? Users create a visual map in the mind, like a familiar house or walking route, and then connect memorable, multisensory images to each location to retrieve them later. To remember a string of unrelated words, for example, Konrad might map the body starting with the feet, then moving to the knees, and so on. He then “places” two words at each location to memorize a list of unconnected terms.

For example, if the words for feet are “*moss*” and “*cow*”, he might picture walking on a mossy field, getting bits of moss stuck on his socks and watching a smelly cow grazing on that moss. If the next location, the knees, is assigned the words “*queen and bell*” Konrad then imagines walking off the moss to sit on a stump. Suddenly the Queen of England promptly appears to sit on his knee. She then pulls from her pocket a bell which she begins to ring loudly.

Absurd? Of course. But memorable, Konrad, stresses. And that's the point. The system takes advantage of the memory's strong ability to store spatial locations and make associations.

Konrad wasn't surprised that the study results showed dramatic improvements for all the subjects who put in the training time. “As it was my training paradigm we used, and I have trained many groups with it before, I at least knew it does work - and work well”, he says. “So I also had the hypothesis it would have a comparable effect in the brain as within the athletes”. Moreover, previous studies have chronicled the success of these kinds of memory techniques.

But until now, researchers didn't understand how they worked in the brain. So for this study, researchers decided to scan the brains of memorizers as they practiced tried-and-true memory techniques, to see how their brains changed in response to their training. They used fMRI scans to look at the brains of 23 memory competitors and 51 people who resembled them in age, health and intelligence but had only typical memory.

As far as brain structure and anatomy were concerned, the brains all looked basically the same, offering no clue to the memory mojo that some of them enjoyed. But when the average memory people divided into three groups and began to train their memories, something changed.

The control group that received no memory training, unsurprisingly, showed little to no gain in memory performance. The second group practiced memorizing challenges similar to the way one might when playing concentration, finding and remembering locations of matching cards from a deck spread across a table. They'd



recalled 26 to 30 words, on average, before training. After 40 days, they'd upped that by an average of 11 words.

But those who trained using the method of loci received the real boost. That third group used a public platform called Memocamp, which Dresler chose because it's used by many champion memorizers. They more than doubled their initial memorizing ability during the 40 days.

Not only had the group's memory abilities changed - so had their brains. The fMRI images mapped blood flow and brain activity for some 2,500 different connections, including 25 that stood out as most linked with the greater memory skills displayed by the competitors. Post-training scans showed that this group's patterns of connectivity had begun to rearrange themselves in a way that the memory champions functioned, but the others groups did not.

"I think the most interesting part of our study is the comparison of these behavioral memory increases with what happens on the neurobiological level", he says. "By training this method that all the memory champions use, your changeable brain connectivity patterns develop in the direction of the world's best memory champions".

That result also says something about the origins of the champions' memorizing talent, says Umeå University neuroscientist Lars Nyberg, who wasn't involved in the study. "The finding that training can shape the brain in a similar way in non-experts supports the view that expert performance is really the result of training - not any particular abilities", he says.

Being able to memorize long lists of names and faces might seem like a novelty, but it can have some real world applications. Users might memorize grocery lists, for example, or learn to match faces and names, which is an event at memory competitions. But those hoping that practice will help them never miss an appointment should think twice.

Monica Melby-Lervåg, at the University of Oslo, has explored how working memory training might help the cognitive development of children and adults. So far, she notes, this kind of training hasn't been shown to impact more general cognitive or memory function. "The more critical thing here is how this transfer to tasks relevant for daily life (i.e. beyond a technical memory test), and the prospects for this do not look very good based on many previous studies", she notes.

Indeed, even the superstars of memory sport admit to having the same day-to-day brain cramps as the rest of us, from forgetting their car keys to leaving their wallet at a restaurant. So far, it appears that if memory trainers like the method of loci are valuable tools, they only work for memorizing lists and only when people actively use them.

"You do have to apply this for it to work", says Dresler. "Your memory doesn't just get better in general. So when you don't apply this strategy, probably your memory is only as good as it was before".

### **Vocabulary**

*feat* [fi:t] 1) *подвиг* 2) *майстерність, вправність, мистецтво*

*innate* [i'neit] *уроджений, природний; властивий*



**delve** [delv] поринати, заглиблюватися у вивчення (чого-небудь); ритися; дошукуватися; ритися (у кишенях), шукати  
**crucial** ['kru:ʃ(ə)l] вирішальний; ключовий; критичний  
**shed** [ʃed] випромінювати (світло, тепло); проливати (світло)  
**method of loci** метод геометричних локацій  
**retrieve** [ri'tri:v] згадувати; відновлювати в пам'яті  
**smelly** ['smeli] який погано пахне; смердючий  
**grazing** ['greiziŋ] утримування худоби на пасовищі, на підніжному кормі; пасовище  
**stump** [stemp] пень  
**spatial** ['speiʃ(ə)l] просторовий; який займає який-небудь простір; існуючий у просторі  
**resemble** [ri'zemb(ə)l] бути схожим, мати подібність  
**mojo** ['mɔ:dʒəʊ] амулет, талісман

## 5.10. Corner of Science & Techniques

### 5.10.1. Some Scientific Discoveries & Names

The great pioneer of the Industrial Revolution in the 18<sup>th</sup> century was James Watt, the inventor of the steam engine. He made vast improvements to the steam engine, making it practical for large-scale industrial use. In 1764 Watt was given a Newcomer steam engine to repair. While working on the engine, he realized that it wasted energy. He eventually introduced a variety of modifications, including a separate cooling chamber for the steam that made the engine much more efficient. W. Th. Lord Kelvin, Professor of Natural Philosophy in the University of Glasgow with Professor M. Rankine founded present-day thermodynamics. He formulated the two laws of thermodynamics – “potential” and “kinetic” energy were his terms. To mention a few of his inventions - the mirror galvanometer, deep-sea sounding apparatus. He calculated that molecular motion stops at - 273°C. He called this temperature “absolute zero”, the lowest possible temperature.

Equally brilliant was the Edinburgh scholar James Clerk Maxwell, whose kinetic theory of gases and theory of the Electro-magnetic field put the way for future investigations. The results of Maxwell’s comprehensive theory of electricity and light are wireless telegraphy and the modern doctrine of relativity. The modern telephone was invented in 1876 by A. G. Bell, the vacuum flask by James Dewar.

To the same period belongs Daniel Rutherford’s discovery of nitrogen. In medicine the famous name is J. V. Simpson, who first used chloroform for the relief of pain in operations.

#### Vocabulary

**steam engine** паровий двигун  
**large-scale** у великому масштабі, великомасштабний; великий (про промисловість)  
**thermodynamics** [θɜ:məʊdai'æmiks] термодинаміка  
**galvanometer** [gælvə'nɒmɪtə] гальванометр  
**deep-sea sounding apparatus** глибоководний звуковий апарат

*scholar* ['skɒlə] *учений, гуманітарій*  
*wireless telegraphy* *радіотелеграфія*  
*doctrine of relativity* *теорія ймовірності*  
*vacuum flask* ['vækjʊ(ə)mflɑ:sk] *термос*  
*nitrogen* ['naitrədʒ(ə)n] *азот*

### 5.10.2. Great American Inventions

The creative genius of early American inventors laid the foundations for the modern world, as we know it. Nineteenth-century inventor Thomas Edison was one of the greatest inventors of his time - the ideas just kept coming!

#### Great Ideas

1807 - steamboat: Robert Fulton  
1837 - telegraph: Samuel Morse  
1867 - typewriter: Christopher Sholes  
1876 - telephone: Alexander Graham Bell  
1877 - phonograph: Thomas Edison  
1879 - light bulb: Thomas Edison  
1888 - roll-film camera: George Eastman  
1893 - motion picture camera: Thomas Edison  
1903 - airplane: Wilbur and Orville Wright

The American inventor Thomas Edison was an enterprising experimenter from an early age. Well-known for developing the first practical electric light bulb, electric generating system, sound-recording device, and motion picture projector, he patented more than 1000 inventions during his lifetime.

The best known for inventing the telegraph and the Morse Code is Samuel F.B.Morse. In 1837, the first electrical telegraph instruments were invented by Samuel Morse in the United States and by Sir Charles Wheatstone and Sir William F.Cooke in Britain. Morse sent the first public telegraph message in 1844.

Einstein, Albert (1879-1955), German-born American physicist and Nobel laureate, is best known as the creator of the special and general theories of relativity.

In the 1950s, American virologist Albert Sabin developed an oral poliomyelitis vaccine containing attenuated, live viruses.

In 1909, pioneers of the growing psychoanalytic movement assembled at Clark University in Worcester, Massachusetts, to hear lectures by Sigmund Freud, the founder of psychoanalysis. Freud's visit, the only one he made to the United States, broadened the influence and popularity of psychoanalysis.

#### **Vocabulary**

*genius* ['dʒi:niəs] 1) *обдарованість; геніальність; 2) геній, геніальна людина, геніальна особистість; 3) талант; схильність; здібність*  
*light bulb* (електрична) *лампочка*  
*roll-film camera* *плівковий фотоапарат*  
*motion picture camera* *кінокамера*  
*sound-recording device* *звукозаписуючий прилад*  
*motion picture projector* *кінопроектор*

**general theories of relativity** загальна теорія ймовірності

**virologist** вірусолог

**poliomyelitis vaccine** [pəliəʊmaie'laɪtɪs 'væksɪːn] вакцина проти поліомієліту

**attenuated** [ə'tenjuəɪtɪd] 1) виснажений, змарнілий; 2) розчинений; розріджений

### 5.10.3. Isaac Newton

Newton was born in Lincolnshire, England, in 1642. As a boy, he enjoyed making machines more than studying. He invented a small windmill for grinding wheat, a water clock, and a sundial. Newton became a student at Cambridge University, though he showed no particular promise. However, in just 18 months between 1665 and 1667, Isaac Newton made discoveries which changed the way we see the world.

Newton left Cambridge during an outbreak of plague and went to live in the country. During this time, he suddenly realized that the same force that pulls an object to earth also keep the moon in its orbit. This force of *universal gravitation* makes bodies in the universe attract each other. Newton proved that many types of motion are due to that one kind of force. He showed that the gravitational force of the sun keeps the planets in their orbits.

When Newton was 23, the sight of an apple falling from a tree caused him to question how far the force of gravity reaches. He realized that the same force that pulled the apple from the tree holds the moon in its orbit around the earth. One version of this story says the apple hit Newton on the head as he sat beneath the tree.

Newton also discovered the secrets of light and colour. And he invented a branch of mathematics called *calculus*, which was also devised independently by Gottfried Leibniz, a German mathematician.

Although Newton finished his first investigations on gravity and motion by 1666, nothing more was heard of them for nearly 20 years. Meanwhile, he continued to teach mathematics at Cambridge, where he was a professor.

Then one day, astronomer Edmond Halley, scientist Robert Hooke, and architect Christopher Wren were discussing the force that makes the planets move around the sun. What is it? The three men could not solve this problem. Halley went to see Newton, and found that the Cambridge professor had a complete proof of the law of gravity. Halley persuaded Newton to publish his findings, and they appeared in 1687 in *Philosophiae Naturalis Principia Mathematica (Mathematical Principles of Natural Philosophy)*. This book was the first to present a unified system of scientific principles explaining what happens on earth and in the heavens. Modern physics would not have been possible without Newton's discoveries.

#### Vocabulary

**Sundial** [sendaɪəl] сонячний годинник

**outbreak of plague** спалах епідемії

**universal gravitation** всесвітнє тяжіння

**force of gravity** сила тяжіння

**calculus** ['kælkjʊləs] числення; калькуляція

**unified** об'єднаний

#### 5.10.4. Edison's First Invention

When Edison was a boy of fifteen, he worked as a telegraph operator. He had to be on duty at night, from seven o'clock in the evening till seven o'clock in the morning. But at night there was never much work and the telegraph operators usually slept. So the boss ordered each operator to give a signal every hour to show that he was awake.

Edison's signals always came at the same time, at the beginning of each new hour. That surprised the boss. When the inspector opened the door, he saw Edison sleeping in his chair. The inspector was going to shake the boy when he saw a clock with a mechanism on the table near the telegraph apparatus. He waited to see what would happen. When the hand of the clock pointed to the hour, the mechanism began to work and sent a signal.

The inspector went up to the boy and shook him. Edison awoke. He was told that he had lost his job.

This story explains why the first of Edison's many inventions was never patented.

#### Vocabulary

**to be on duty at night** чергувати вночі

**order** ['ɔ:də] 1) порядок, послідовність; розташування, розміщення (у певному порядку); 2) справність, порядок, хороший стан; хороший (фізичний) стан; 3) порядок, спокій; заведений порядок; дотримання закону, правил

**to show that he was awake** показати, що він не спить

**the same time** в один і той самий час

#### 5.10.5. Micheal Faraday

One of the most prominent scientists of the 19<sup>th</sup> century, Michael Faraday made significant contribution to both physics and chemistry. He discovered the phenomenon known as electromagnetic induction by observing that a current flows in a wire that is moves through a magnetic field. His discovery of electromagnetic induction led to the invention of the electric generator.

#### Vocabulary

**prominent scientist** видатний науковець

**significant contribution** [sig'nifikənt kɒntri'bju:ʃ(ə)n] вагомий внесок

**electromagnetic induction** електромагнітна індукція

**current flows in a wire** рух струму по проводах

**moves through a magnetic field** рухається через магнітне поле

**invention** [in'venʃ(ə)n] винахід, створення

**electric generator** електричний генератор

#### 5.10.6. George Stephenson

George Stephenson, a 19<sup>th</sup>-century English engineer and inventor, was a key figure in the development of the steam railroad in England. He was the first man who put a steam engine on wheels. The English call him the "father of railways".

Stephenson was born in the family of a poor worker near the city of Newcastle, one of the industrial centers of England. The boy's father could not send him to

school, so George helped his mother to look after the younger children in the family. His duty was to see that his little brothers and sisters did not get under the horses that pulled coal-cars on the wooden rails near his father's house. The boy looked at those rails every day and knew how often they were repaired. He decided then that iron rails could be better.

At eight Stephenson began to work as a horse-driver in a coal-mine. The boy could not read and write but he did not forget about the iron rails. Now he thought of a steam engine which could do the work of twenty horses. He built a model in clay of such an engine. At nineteen he was put to work on a steam engine. Now he had time to learn reading and writing.

Soon he made a design of a locomotive, which moved on iron rails. But Stephenson could not build it as he had no money.

Stephenson was fifty years old when some businessman decided to build an iron railway and see how Stephenson's locomotive worked. The first railway was built between Stockton and Darlington.

On the day when it was opened a man on a horse went in front of the engine and shouted that the train was coming. People on horses and in carriages were driving near the train. When they had gone for some time, Stephenson, who was running his locomotive, asked the horseman to go away. He put the steam on and ran his locomotive as fast as 12 miles an hour (about 20 km).

The Parliament didn't want to build railways. They said locomotive could not run against a strong wind. Then Stephenson built a new locomotive and called it The Rocket. This locomotive was faster and stronger than the first one, it could pull thirteen tons and run twenty-nine miles (46 km) an hour. This time the railway company agreed to use Stephenson's locomotive.

#### **Vocabulary**

*steam railroad* залізрна дорога на паровому двигуні

*steam engine on wheels* парова машина на колесах

*pull* [pul] тягти; смикати; витягати, тягти

*coal-car* вагон для вугілля

*coal-mine* вугільна шахта

*clay* [klei] глина

*horseman* ['hɔ:smən] вершник; наїзник; конюх

*go away* іти, піти, відійти

#### **5.10.7. Charles Darwin**

Charles Darwin's theory of natural selection became the foundation concept supporting the theory of evolution. Darwin's theory holds that environmental effects lead to varying degrees of reproductive success in individuals and groups of organisms. Natural selection tends to promote adaptation in organisms when necessary for survival. This revolutionary theory was published in 1859 in Darwin's famous treatise *On the Origin of Species by Means of Natural Selection*.

#### **Vocabulary**

*theory of natural selection* теорія природного відбору

*theory of evolution* теорія еволюції



**reproductive** [ri:prə'dektiv] *репродуктивний; статевий*

**survival** [səvaiv(ə)l] *виживання*

**treatise** ['tri:tiz] *трактат; наукова праця, монографія; курс (підручник)*

**species** ['spi:ʃi:z] *рід, порода; різновид*

### **5.10.8. Volodymyr Zvorykin & Isaac Schoenberg**

*Volodymyr Zvorykin and Isaac Schoenberg work to perfect all-electronic television.*

Saturday 30 January, 1937, was a sad day for Scottish television pioneer John Logie Baird. That was when the British Broadcasting Corporation (BBC) finally abandoned his mechanical television system, with its whirring wheels and messy chemicals. He had come a long way since his first experiments with television in 1923, but it wasn't far enough. His dream was over. The future was electronic.

Three months earlier, on 2 November, 1936, the BBC had started the world's first regular, high-definition, public television broadcasting service. In alternate weeks it used two different sets of equipment. The idea was to test two rival systems. One was Baird's; the other had been created by a team at Electrical and Musical Industries (EMI) led by Russian-born engineer Isaac Schoenberg. The all-electronic EMI system won easily. Its pictures were sharper, its cameras were more mobile, it was more reliable, and it cost less. In all but detail, it was the system we use today.

Schoenberg's team had been formed five years earlier. They had worked with remarkable speed, but they weren't the first to research into all-electronic television. On the other side of the Atlantic, a lone pioneer. Philo T. Farnsworth, had started work on his electronic "image dissector" in 1926. He gave the first demonstration of all-electronic television in 1934. Unfortunately, his cameras needed too much light, and his work came to a dead end.

Modern television owes far more to another US engineer, Russian-born Volodymyr Zvorykin. He was the first to take up the suggestion, made in 1908 by Scottish engineer Alan Campbell Swinton, that a cathode ray tube could create as well as display pictures. In 1929, Zvorykin took charge of television development at the Radio Corporation of America.

By 1931, he and his team had created the first successful electronic camera tube, the Iconoscope. Schoenberg's team later used Zvorykin's basic idea to develop their own Emitron tube, which formed the heart of the cameras they designed for the BBC.

On 1 September, 1939, as war gripped Europe, the BBC television service was closed down. Just four months earlier, the USA's first regular television service had started, when the National Broadcasting Company (NBC) broadcast the opening of the New York World's Fair. Zvorykin, Schoenberg, and a host of other engineers and enthusiasts had finally made the dream of television come true.

The two main pioneers of all-electronic television were both born in Russia. Schoenberg was born in 1880, and Zvorykin in 1889. Schoenberg emigrated to Britain in 1914 and Zvorykin to the USA in 1919. It was Zvorykin who developed the first successful camera tube. It scanned the image with a beam of electrons. Tubes of this type were highly sensitive and could show fine detail.

Regular television broadcasts began later in the USA than in Britain, but the

system there expanded more quickly. This National Broadcasting Company studio, equipped by the Radio Corporation of America, is seen in 1939, carrying on where war had forced the BBC to stop.

### **Vocabulary**

*abandoned* [ə'bændənd] *занедбаний*;

*dissect* [dr'sekt] *розбирати, аналізувати, розглядати критично*

*rival* ['raiv(ə)l] *який суперничає, конкуруючий*

### **5.10.9. Christopher Columbus**

Christopher Columbus was looking for a new way of reaching countries in the East, such as India and China. Many people of the time believed that the world was flat. Columbus thought it was round. He believed that if he sailed west and kept going, he would eventually come to India! He was right, but he did not realize that North and South America were in the way. He accidentally discovered that they were there. Columbus made a further three voyages to the West Indies and South America. However the continents he found do not bear his name. They are named after Amerigo Vespucci, another Italian sailor.

### **5.10.10. Explorers and Discoverers**

Explorers help us to learn about our world. They go to new places, open up new routes for trade, meet new people and study unknown plants and animals. In the past, some people travelled looking for wealth; others were looking for glory for themselves or for their countries. Others went in search of adventure and interesting discoveries.

- six hundred years ago European sailors would not go past the equator for fear of monsters and boiling seas;
- in 1611, Henry Hudson and his son were cast adrift in a small boat by his crew. They were never seen again;
- in the 14<sup>th</sup> century Ibn Battuta crossed the dangerous Sahara desert. He went with traders, so that he would be safe from bandits;
- Christopher Columbus was lost when he discovered the West Indies in 1492. He thought he had reached the East and was in India;
- in 1835 the naturalist, Charles Darwin, saw birds and animals on the Galapagos Island that did not exist anywhere else in the world;
- in 1871, a fisherman found a hut in the Arctic built by the Dutch explorer Willem Barents 274 years earlier. His ship had become trapped by ice, as he tried to travel east to China;
- in 692 AD a Chinese monk named Hsuan-tang went travelling. He returned 16 years later in a chariot pulled by 20 horses and piled high with books;
- Marco Polo left Italy for China in 1271 when he was 17. He was away from home for 24 years. On his return to Italy in 1295, he wrote a fascinating book about his travels;
- underwater explorers have visited the deepest part of the Pacific Ocean. It is about 11 kilometres down;

- the explorer Richard Burton spoke more than 30 languages. In 1853, he travelled to Mecca disguised as an Afghan pilgrim;
- Captain James Cook's famous voyage (1769 - 1771) was a scientific expedition to Tahiti, New Zealand and Australia. Over 700 species of plants were collected;
- Mary Kingsley travelled alone in West Africa in the 19<sup>th</sup> century. She met African tribes and brought home many animals for others to study;
- in 1911, Roald Amundsen and Robert Scott raced each other to the South Pole. Amundsen's Norwegian team won by five weeks.

### Vocabulary

*adrift* [ə'drɪft] який пливе за течією, без керма та вітрил

*afloat* [ə'fləʊt] плаваючий на поверхні води; пливучий за течією

*disguis* [dɪs'gaɪz] переодягати; спотворювати; приховувати, не показувати

*monk* [mʌŋk] чернець

*species* ['spi:ʃi:z] біол. вид; різновид

### 5.10.11. “Audible Alibis” for Phone Cheats

For liars and cheats, mobile phones are already an invaluable tool.

Now, a Romanian firm is making them even more useful, by providing a host of “audible alibis” to help users persuade their bosses, lovers, friends and foes that they are where they say they are.

If you oversleep, you can phone into work from home and claim to be stuck in a traffic jam; the Sound Cover software will provide all the necessary hooting and engine noise to make the lie convincing. Other background sounds include “storm”, “at the park”, “at the dentist” and “circus parade”.

There is also a “phone ring” facility, which programmes a telephone to start ringing incessantly in the background 15 seconds into the call, providing the perfect excuse to cut short, or get rid of a talkative friend. Such skullduggery costs £9.95 and can be downloaded from the internet.

### Vocabulary

*audible* ['ɔ:ɪb(ə)l] чутний, виразний

*cheat* [tʃi:t] шахрайство, обман; шахрай; шулер; самозванець

*foe(s)* [fəʊ] ворог, недруг

*incessantly* [ɪn'ses(ə)ntli] безупинно, безперестану, нескінченно, постійно

*skullduggery* [skel'degəri] обдурювання, ошуканство

### 5.10.12. What Do People Use Computers for?

A word processor is a computer use to prepare documents or letters, or the software that is used for this purpose. Many people use their computers for word processing, e.g. writing letters and reports. A lot of business people use spreadsheets - a program used to enter and arrange numbers and financial information and databases - programs which allow you to store, look at and or change a large amount of information quickly and easily. Some people also use graphics - the pictures and symbols a computer program can produce.

More and more people are becoming computer-literate – they have experience of

working with computers and know how to use them, as many programs and machines are so user-friendly - easy to use.

You can now connect your computer to computers all over the world using the Internet - a system that allows computers to connect using telephone lines. People send each other e-mail - electronic mail messages using this system of network.

If your computer is slow it may need more memory. It may crash - stop working if there is not enough memory or if it has a bug - a software problem; also a virus. Make sure you make a back-up copy of your work (or an extra copy on a floppy disk).

There were two interesting items in the paper some time ago. One was about a man who received a bill from the telephone company for \$999,999,00 for three months! The other was about a man who received \$2,000 a month - for doing nothing.

The connection between the two news items is simple: computers - the worst invention of the 20<sup>th</sup> century. The telephone bill came from a computer which made a horrifying mistake: the man's real bill was only \$21,36. The other item was not so amusing. A man walked into the unguarded computer room of a large packaged food company and expertly programmed the computer to pay him \$2,000 a month for raw meat which he "supplied" to the company. The computer wrote out a cheque, and even "signed" it. It was only a random check that uncovered the trick. It could be happening in thousands of other companies all over the world.

Computers are not the miracle-workers that some people say they are. They make mistakes, they're often slower than humans, and they're easily fooled. The US army used to conscript people with the help of a computer. The army sent out a card, which had to be filled in and sent back. It was easy to avoid being called up, simply by dripping candle-wax on the card. The computer couldn't read the card, and did nothing with it.

### Vocabulary

*back-up copy* резервна копія

*be slow* працювати повільно; „гальмувати”

*bug* вірус

*candle-wax* парафін

*conscription* [kən'skripʃ(ə)n] військова повинність; призов на військову службу

*drip* [drɪp] капати; стікати; виливати

*literate* ['lɪt(ə)rɪt] грамотний; освічений

*random* ['rændəm] випадковий

*spreadsheet* електронна таблиця

*user-friendly* легкий у використанні

### 5.10.13. The Ball-Point Pen

A Hungarian Laszlo Biro made the first ball-point pen in 1323. But only in 1944 the British Army bought thirty thousand pens because soldiers could write with them outside in the rain. At the end of the war "Biros" this kind of pen became quickly very popular all over the world. In 1948 a shop in New York sold ten thousand of pens per day.

#### **5.10.14. Inventions That Changed the World**

From ancient tools to the latest digital advances, human inventions that changed the world and transformed life on the Earth.

Human inventions and technologies have shaped civilizations and transformed life on the Earth. As expectations and capabilities evolve, each new generation possesses its own set of innovative thinkers.

Right from the invention of the wheel to the development of Mars rover, several inventions are revolutionary.

Most major inventions don't have one inventor. Throughout the years, many innovative inventors have had their hand in both the elevation and evolution of an invention.

Here is a list of the top picks of revolutionary inventions that change the world:

**Wheel** - The wheel stands out as the OG of engineering marvels and one of the most famous inventions that influenced numerous other things. This primitive technology made it easier for all of us to travel. From the archeological excavations, the oldest known wheel is from Mesopotamia, around 3500 B.C.

As a result of advancement in the new and innovative design of wheels, industrialization could take root.

The wheel serves a vital purpose in our lives, and we couldn't imagine the world without them.

**Compass** - Created for spiritual and navigational purposes, the earliest compasses were most likely invented by the Chinese in around 1050 BC. It was made of lodestones, which is a naturally magnetized iron ore.

The invention of the electromagnet in 1825 led to the development of the modern compass.

The invention of the compass certainly helped modern navigation more than our GPS-needing culture could understand.

**Automobile** - Although the foundation to the modern car year was laid in 1886 by German inventor Karl Benz, Cars did not become widely available until the early 20<sup>th</sup> century. Henry Ford innovated mass-production techniques that became standard, with Ford, General Motors, and Chrysler. However, he certainly wasn't the only person to develop the horseless carriage.

The history of the automobile reflects a worldwide evolution. Dozens of spin-off industries blossomed creating thousands of new jobs. Oil and steel became two well-established industries.

Vehicle production and sales are one of the major indicators of economic status. Moreover, it influenced the technological advances in petroleum refining, steel making, paint and plate-glass manufacturing, and other industrial processes.

**Steam Engine** - Thomas Savery patented the first practical steam engine in 1698. It was one of the greatest inventions made by a man making him one of the people who has changed the world.

Later in 1781, James Watt patented an improved steam engine and went on to fuel one of the most momentous technological leaps in human history during the Industrial Revolution.



During the 1800s these engines led to an improvement in transportation, agriculture, and manufacturing industries.

Later, the steam engine's basic principle set the stage for innovations like internal combustion engines and jet turbines, which prompted the rise of cars and aircraft during the 20<sup>th</sup> century.

**Concrete** - Concrete is one of the most widely used man-made materials. It's a composite material composed of rough composite bonded together with a fluid cement which hardens over time.

Most concretes used are lime-based, asphalt concrete, and polymer concretes. Earlier, Limestone was used as a crude cement. As the materials and combinations improved, modern concrete was invented.

One of the key ingredients of concrete is cement. The foundation to cement was laid in 1300 BC.

Middle eastern builders coated the outside of their clay fortresses with a thin, and moist burned limestone, which chemically reacted with gasses in the air to form a hard, protective surface.

Around 6500 DC, the first concrete-like structures were built by the Nabataea traders or Bedouins in the southern Syria and northern Jordan regions.

By 700 BC, the significance of hydraulic lime was known, which led to the development of mortar supply kilns for the construction of rubble-wall houses, concrete floors, and underground waterproof cisterns.

By 3000 BC, the Egyptians were using early forms of concrete to build pyramids.

In 1824, the most used Portland cement was invented by Joseph Aspdin of England. George Bartholomew had laid down the first concrete street in the US during 1891, which still exists.

By the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century, the use of steel-reinforced concrete was developed. In 1902, using steel-reinforced concrete, August Perret designed and built an apartment building in Paris. This building a wide admiration and popularity to concrete and also influenced the development of reinforced concrete.

In 1921, Eugène Freyssinet pioneered the use of reinforced-concrete construction by building two colossal parabolic-arched airship hangars at Orly Airport in Paris.

**Petrol** - Without gas, there wouldn't be the first industrial revolution in the automobile industry.

Gasoline is a fuel derivative of oil, which is shortly called "gas" in the United States and "petrol," in other places around the world.

To be more specific, petrol is a transparent, petroleum-derived liquid that is used as an essential fuel in internal combustion engines.

Petrol is the natural by-product and the invention here we are talking about is the numerous processes to improve the quality.

Do you know, gas was initially discarded?

During 1859, in Pennsylvania, Edwin Drake dug the first oil well and refined the oil to produce kerosene. Although the distillation produced gas, he discarded it as he was unaware of it. Until 1892, the prominence of gas wasn't recognized. The first gas pump was manufactured by Sylvanus Bowser on September 5, 1885.

The year 1970 gained attention towards environmental protection.

**Railways** - Railways is a mode of transport which can carry a large number of passengers with ease of comfort and / or heavy loads to long distances.

Modern trains history is around 200 years old, which revolutionized the way we travel. Distant lands become possible, industries are powered with an infinite amount of raw materials. Earlier mode of transport was carts pulled by animals.

During 1500 -1800, wagonways were common in Europe, which was used in mining. After the invention of the Steam engine, more researchers were carried out throughout the world for a better design.

The commercial appearance of train networks came in the late 1820s, and the pioneer in that field was inventor George Stephenson, with his design 'Rocket', the most famous early railway locomotive. This gained rapid expansion across newly acquired lands. In 1821, Stephenson was appointed as an engineer for the construction of the Stockton and Darlington railway, which was opened as the first public railway in 1825.

The grand success of "Rocket" and opening of the Stockton to Darlington railway line energized railway industry. Railways reached another important chapter in the history, with the invention of Diesel Engine.

**Airplane** - On December 17, 1903, Wilbur and Orville Wright achieved the first powered, sustained and controlled airplane.

While flying machines had been dreamt up since da Vinci's time, the Wright Brothers became the biggest successes. Beginning with gliders, the duo laid the foundation for modern aeronautical engineering.

Additionally, new business boomed along with a number of people being trained to fly planes. The possibility to fly over thousands of miles in less time would not have been made possible if the aircraft were not invented.

**Fire** - Though fire is a natural phenomenon, its discovery marked a revolution in the pages of history.

All thanks to our ancestors for leading us to the controlled use of fire which helps us from colorful lighting to delicious cooking. In addition, the biography of various landscapes was altered by fire.

Ancient people might have become acquainted with fire derived from natural sources. Later came the processes of making fire artificially.

This remarkable control of fire happened during Early Stone Age by Homo erectus. The earliest evidence comes from Kenya region. Although fire could have been used about 1 million years ago, evidence of cooked food is found from 1.9 million years.

From the past to the present Fire has been in rituals, agriculture, cooking, generating heat and light, signaling, various industrial processes, cremation, and as a weapon or medium of destruction.

**Nail** - The sophisticated human life would not have been possible without the invention of a small nail. They provide one of the best clues in determining the age of historic buildings.

Prior to the invention of nails, wood structures were built by geometrically interlocking adjacent boards. The invention of nails goes back to several thousand years and was possible only after the development of casting and shaping a metal.

Around 34000 BC, Bronze nails were found in Egypt. According to the University of Vermont, the hand-wrought nails were a norm until the 1790s and early 1800s. By 1913, 90 percent of nails produced in the U.S. were steel wire nails.

Other types of nails include pins, tacks, brads, and spikes with wire nails being popular.

**Tools** - The usage of tools started 2.6 million years back in Ethiopia.

Anthropologists believe the use of tools became an important step in the evolution of mankind. Earlier materials such as sticks and stones made tools.

The invention of machine tools advanced the industrial revolution.

Imagine how would we build or maintain previous innovations without a handy hammer.

**Light Bulb** - The energy we use today at home and office is a bright idea from more than 150 years ago.

Pioneered in the early 19<sup>th</sup> century by Humphry Davy, electric lights developed throughout the 1800s and was one of the most influential, great inventions of all times.

Edison and Swan patented the first light bulb in 1879 and 1880. In the mid-1980s, CFLs hit the market. But the drawbacks such as high cost, bulky, low light output, and inconsistent performance made them less prominent. Currently, LEDs offer the best energy savings on the market.

However, the invention of the bulb electrified new businesses. It also led to new energy breakthroughs such as power plants, electric transmission lines, home appliances etc.

**Electricity** - Electricity has become the basic need for day to day life. It's been there around all along but the practical applications to effectively use it was invented. Although many use electricity, how many of you know the evolution of electricity?

Alessandro Volta discovered the first practical method of generating electricity.

1831 is marked the year of major breakthrough for electricity. A British scientist Michael Faraday discovered the basic principles of electricity generation.

The electromagnetic induction discovery revolutionized the energy usage.

Street lights were some of the earliest attention gaining equipment. With the rise in electricity usability, now it stands as a backbone of modern industrial society.

With increased mobility, human life has become dependent on electricity.

**Battery** – The prehistoric battery dates back to the Parthian empire, which might be 2,000 years old.

The old battery consisted of a clay jar filled with a vinegar solution, into which a copper cylinder surrounded iron rod was inserted.

These batteries might have been used to electroplate silver.

The inventor of the first electric battery is Alessandro Volta. He also laid the foundation of Electrochemistry.

The mass production of the first electric battery began in 1802 by William Cruickshank.

The history of batteries marked a remarkable date in 1859, with the invention of the first rechargeable battery based on lead acid by the French physician Gaston

Planté. The Nickel-Cadmium (NiCd) battery was introduced in 1899 by Waldemar Jungner.

**Printing press** - Before the Internet's ability to spread information, the printing press helped information travel around the globe.

Developed around 1440 in Mainz, Germany, Johannes Gutenberg's machine improved on already existing presses.

By 1500 Gutenberg presses were operating throughout Western Europe with a production of 20 million copies.

By 1600, they had created over 200 million new books.

**Morse Code and Telegraph** - The telegraph was developed around 1830 - 1840 by Samuel Morse and other inventors, which revolutionized long-distance communication.

The electrical signals were transmitted by a wire laid between stations. In addition, Samuel Morse developed a code, called Morse code, for the simple transmission of messages across telegraph lines. Based on the frequency of usage, the code assigned a set of dots (short marks) and dashes (long marks) to English alphabet and numbers.

The telegraph laid major foundations for modern conveniences like telephones and (some scholars argue) coding for the Internet.

**Steel** - While the early ages used stone, bronze, and iron, it was steel that fired the industrial revolution. As per archaeological excavations, the earliest known production of the metal dates back to 4,000 years.

The invention of the Bessemer Process (a technique for creating steel using molten pig iron) paved the way for the mass production of steel, making it one of the biggest industries on the planet. Now steel is used in the creation of everything from bridges to skyscrapers.

**Transistors** - The transistor is an essential component in nearly every modern electronic gadget.

In 1926, Julius Lilienfeld patented a field-effect transistor, but the working device was not feasible.

In 1947 John Bardeen, Walter Brattain, and William Shockley developed the first practical device at Bell Laboratories.

It then won the trio 1956 Nobel Prize in physics.

Transistors have become a fundamental piece of the circuitry in countless electronic devices including televisions, cell phones, and computers making a remarkable impact on technology.

**Antibiotics** - Antibiotics saved millions of lives by killing and inhibiting the growth of harmful bacteria.

Louis Pasteur and Robert Koch first described the Antibiosis (phenomena of antibiotic drug) in 1877.

In 1928, Alexander Fleming set the first leap in antibiotics by identifying penicillin, the chemical compound with antibiotic properties.

Throughout the 20<sup>th</sup> century, antibiotics spread rapidly and proved to be a major living improvement, fighting nearly every known form of infection and protecting peoples' health.

**Films** - Almost everyone loves to watch movies of various sorts like a love story, comedy, drama, horror, suspense, action, fiction, biography etc. A film is also called a movie, motion picture, theatrical film, photoplay, flick. The name “film” originates from the fact that a photographic film has been the medium for recording and displaying motion pictures.

An Early inspiration for movies were the plays and dance, which had elements common to film: scripts, sets, costumes, production, direction, actors, audiences, and storyboards.

Later in the 17<sup>th</sup> century, the lanterns were used to project animation, which was achieved by various types of mechanical slides.

Much later in 1839, Henry Fox Talbot makes an important advancement in photography production.

The year 1846 was important for the development of motion pictures. The first movie ever made is the horse in motion. In March 1895, the first film with a Cinématographe camera was shot on La Sortie de leucine Lumière a Lyon (Workers leaving the Lumière factory at Lyon).

With time, the movies evolved with sound, music, color, and advanced technology.

**X-rays** - Of course, x-rays are a phenomenon of the natural world, and thus can't be invented. But they were discovered accidentally.

The invisible was made visible in 1895. X-ray is undoubtedly one of the epoch-making advancement in the field of medicine.

All credits to physicist Wilhelm Conrad Rontgen. While testing whether cathode rays could pass through glass, he noticed a glow coming from a nearby chemically coated screen. Because of their unknown nature, he named it as X-rays. Through his observation, he learned that X-rays can be photographed when they penetrate into human flesh.

In 1897, during the Balkan war, X-rays were first used to find bullets and broken bones inside patients. In 1901, he received the Nobel prize in physics for his work.

**Refrigerator** - Over the last 150 years, refrigeration offered us ways to preserve food, medicines, and other perishable substances. Before its conception, people cooled their food with ice and snow.

James Harrison built the first practical vapor compression refrigeration system. However, the first widespread refrigerator was the General Electric “Monitor-Top” refrigerator of 1927. While it helped to rev up industrial processes, it became an industry itself.

**Television** - Television! A small box with enormous information that changed entertainment and communications forever.

The invention of the television was the work of many individuals. Although TV plays an important part in our everyday lives, it rapidly developed during the 19<sup>th</sup> and the 20<sup>th</sup> century.

The first television camera was invented by two men without knowing that they both are working on the same one (No TV to communicate them the news); Vladimir Zvorykin and Philo Taylor. In 1884, Paul Gottlieb Nipkow created and patented the first television which he called the electromechanical television system.



Though Color TV was not a new idea, in 1925 Zvorykin filed a patent for an electronic color television system. Over time, television will gain political importance as every country started to share their political agenda through it.

TV also became a good way of preserving peace and order.

**Camera** - The camera is undoubtedly one of the most cherished creations.

Cameras have witnessed many phases of evolution – camera obscura, daguerreotypes, dry plates, callotypes, film to SLRs and DSLRs. In 1826, Joseph Nicéphore Niépce used a sliding wooden box camera made by Charles and Vincent Chevalier to click the first permanent photograph.

With the technological advancements, digital cameras were introduced to save pictures on the memory cards rather than using films.

The history of the digital camera began with Eugene F. Lally idea to take pictures of the planets and stars while traveling through space.

Later, Steven Sasson a Kodak engineer invented and built the first digital camera in 1975. Though the digital camera ruled over the traditional camera, the most revolutionary aspect has been the advent of the camera phone.

Now, every smartphone has an inbuilt camera and is able to take images. With the growing demand, video recording was also made a part of it.

At present, the camera comes with inbuilt GPS system and real-time geotagging options. Freeze the great moments from your life in the form of photographs with better quality and superior handling digital camera. One doesn't have to look much further than a photo album to see that cameras are one of the great inventions that changed the world.

**Computer** - Major shoutout to the mechanical engineer Charles Babbage for laying the foundation to this remarkable and most reliable invention. In the early 19<sup>th</sup> century, the “father of the computer” conceptualized and invented the first mechanical computer. Although there's no single inventor of the modern computer, the principle was proposed by Alan Turing in his seminal 1936 paper.

Today, computers stand as the symbolic representation of the modern world.

**E-mail** - During 1969, shortly after the creation of ARPANET, experimental email transfers between separate computer systems began.

Before email, sending an important document overseas involves a chaotic process. Now communication is one click away. The first substantial use of email began in the 1960s. By mid-1970s, it had taken the recognized form. The present-day most of the official business communication depends on email.

Now, email is available on plenty of friendly web interfaces by providers such as Gmail, Outlook, Yahoo, Hotmail, etc. This excellent medium of communication is well adopted by millions of people.

**Internet** - Unlike the bulb or the telephone, the Internet has no single “inventor”. Instead, it has evolved over time. It started in the United States around the 1950s, along with the development of computers.

Since the mid-1990s, the Internet has had a revolutionary impact on technology, including the rise of electronic mail, instant messaging, voice over Internet Protocol (VoIP) telephone calls, and two-way interactive video calls.

**World Wide Web** – The Internet is a networking infrastructure. Whereas the World Wide Web is a way to access information over the medium of the Internet.

The father of the World Wide Web is a British Computer Scientist, Tim Berners-Lee. While working as a software engineer at CERN in Geneva, Switzerland, Tim noticed that the difficulty in sharing information.

In 1989, this leads to a proposal “Information Management: A Proposal”. However, it was not immediately accepted.

By October 1990, three Tim laid the foundation to the web through HTML, URL, and HTTP technologies.

April 1993, marked an important step in the history of Web. The decision to use the web for free was announced.

To this day, the Web gleamed an encyclopedic wave of inventiveness. The web rapidly changed the traditional way and influenced the development of various industries. For example, it led to the development of online education and economy; the best way to promote your company in 2017 is through Google search.

People can read or watch any types of content online whether through a site or social media such as Facebook and Twitter.

**Banknote** - From materials like livestock to precious metals and coins, currency took various forms throughout history. Due to frequent shortages of coins, banks issued paper notes as a promise against payment of precious metals in the future.

The idea of using a light-weight substance as money originated in China during the Han Dynasty in 118 BC. Through travelers, Europe was introduced to this system in the 13<sup>th</sup> century.

The switch to paper money relieved governments during crisis time. Thus, it changed the face of the global economy with a vital step in a new monetary system.

**Credit Cards** - During the dawn of the 20<sup>th</sup> century, people paid for everything with cash.

The idea of credit cards started around 1950 by Ralph Schneider and Frank McNamara, founders of Diners Club, to consolidate multiple cards.

While technology continues to advance, the idea of paying for daily purchases with a card has now become the norm.

**ATM (Automated Teller Machine)** - The invention of ATM is amongst the most important inventions ever made.

In the present world, ATMs steered the banking into a new concept of self-service. According to the ATM Industry Association (ATMIA), there are now over 2.2 million ATM machines installed worldwide.

Using ATM, customers make a variety of transactions such as cash withdrawals, check balances, or credit mobile phones. Many experts believe that the first ATM was the creation of Luther Simjian, called Bankograph.

In 1967, John Shepherd-Barron came up with a bright idea of money vending machine, which was implemented a London bank called Barclays. Earlier machines used paper vouchers instead of plastic cards.

The customer entered an identification code and can draw a maximum of £10 at a time. Dallas Engineer Donald Wetzel devised the first automated banking machine in the U.S.

**Telephone and Mobile Phones** - “Mr. Watson, come here, I want you.” On March 10, 1876, these were the first words spoken by telephone inventor.

Alexander Graham Bell through his device to his assistant Thomas Watson. Telephone history conceivably started with the human desire to communicate far and wide. With the arrival of the mobile phone in the 1980s, communications were no longer restrained.

The clever invention of cellular network supported the revolution of the telephone industry. Starting from bulky mobiles phones to ultrathin handsets, mobiles phones have covered a long way so far.

John F. Mitchell and Martin Cooper of Motorola demonstrated the first handheld device in 1973.

Scientists continue to create new ideas that will further help users.

**Robot** - Robotic devices often perform complicated, repetitive, and sometimes dangerous tasks. The word Robot evokes various devices ranging from a cooking device to the Rover.

The word “robot” first appeared in R.U.R. (Rossum's Universal Robots), a play was written by Czech playwright Karl Capek in 1921. Coincidentally, the word “robotics” was also coined by a science-fiction writer Isaac Asimov in his short story “Runabout”, published in 1942.

Around 3000 B.C, human figurines were used to strike the hour bells in the Egyptian water clocks. This marked the first mechanical design. As the time flew, more designs and devices were evolved. But Robotics advanced scientifically in the 20<sup>th</sup> century.

The foundation to modern robots was laid in the 1950s by George C. Devol, who invented and patented a reprogrammable manipulator called “Unimate”, from “Universal Automation”.

In the late 1960s, Joseph Engleberger acquired the patent and modified them into Industrial robots. This effort made him “the Father of Robotics”. Who knows! Someday robots might outsmart us and make us completely technology dependents. They are truly inventions that changed the world!

**Guns** - For some guns might be a sensational invention while for others it might be a dreadful invention.

Weapons have been the primary tools since ancient age. But, it is an undeniable fact that the Guns have revolutionized the world.

The earliest usage of a firearm might have been in China during the 13<sup>th</sup> century CE. In earlier days, guns were fired by holding a burning wick to a “touch hole” in the barrel igniting the powder inside.

The first machine gun is the matchlock, which dates to 1400s. By the 12<sup>th</sup> century, the technology started spreading to Asia, followed by Europe. The problem of loading and reliability was solved by the invention of a hand-driven machine gun called Gatling gun. It was invented by Richard J. Gatling during the American Civil War. As the tech continued to evolve, each following model became more deadly.

### **Vocabulary**

*marvel* [ˈmɑːrvəl] *чудо, диво; щось незвичайне, чудове*

*lodestone* *центр тяжіння; природний магніт*

**iron ore** залізна руда

**petroleum** [pi'trəʊliəm] нафта

**lime** [laim] вапно

**mortar** ['mɔ:tə] вапняний розчин; будівельний розчин

**kiln** [kɪln] промислова піч для сушіння або випалу; обпалювати, сушити в печі (цеглу)

**discard** [di'ska:d] відкидати; відмовлятися; переставати використовувати; відбраковувати; списувати (через непридатність)

**waggon way** ['wæqən wei] гужова дорога; відкатувальне вироблення

**nail** [neil] цвях; нагель; шпилька

**sophisticated** [sə'fɪstɪkeɪtɪd] позбавлений простоти, природності; вишуканий, витончений; складний, ускладнений; сучасний; фальсифікований; з домішками

**adjacent** [ə'dʒeɪs(ə)nt] прилеглий, який примикає, суміжний, сусідній

**pin** [pɪn] цвях; палець; штифт; шпилька; шплінт

**brad** [bræd] цвях без головки, штифтик

**tack** [tæk] цвях із широким капелюшком; кнопка

**spike** [spaɪk] зубець; шип; костиль, костильний цвях, штир; клин

**drawback** ['drɔ:bæk] 1) недолік, вада 2) перешкода

**inconsistent** [ɪnkən'sɪst(ə)nt] несумісний; не відповідний; непослідовний, суперечливий; нестійкий, мінливий

**breakthrough** [breɪkθru:] досягнення; відкриття; перемога (наукова); прорив  
**pig iron** чугун в чушках

**perishable** ['perɪʃəb(ə)l] швидкопсувний товар

**rev up** збільшувати, активізувати

**cherish** ['tʃerɪʃ] цінувати; дорожити

**camera obscura** камера-обскура

**daguerreotype** [də'gerə(u)taɪp] дагеротип

**dry plate** скляна суха фотопластина

**collotype** ['kɒlə(u)taɪp] фототипія

**geotagging** геотегінг

**gleam** [gli:m] відбивати світло

**dreadful** ['dredf(ə)l] жахливий, страшний

**undeniable** [,endɪ'naɪəb(ə)l] незаперечний, несумнівний, явний; що не викликає сумнівів, досконалий

**evolve** [i'vɒlv] розвиватися, еволюціонувати

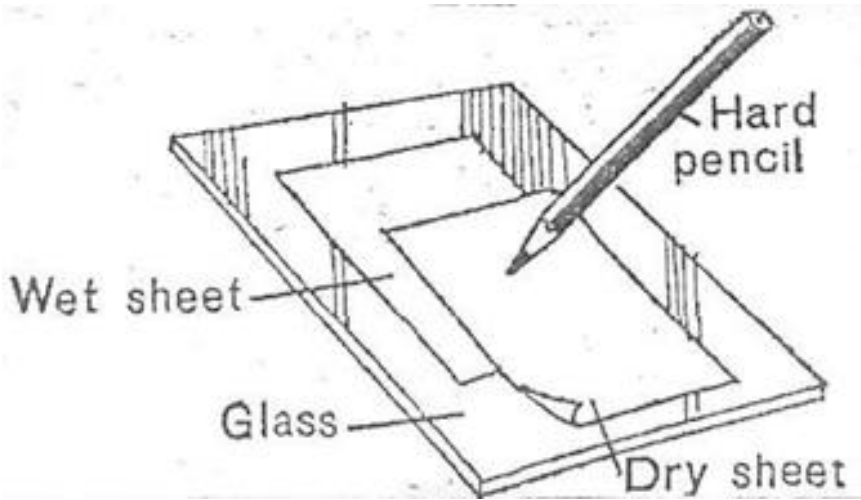
## 5.11. Prove It Yourself

### 5.11.1. Watermarks

Here is an interesting way to write a secret letter.

You do it with the help of watermarks. If you collect stamps, you know what a watermark is. On every stamp there is a mark, which you cannot see. You can see it only when you put the stamp in water. This mark is called “watermark”. The watermark proves that you have a real stamp. People make watermarks on stamps by





applying pressure reflect light in a different way when they are wet.

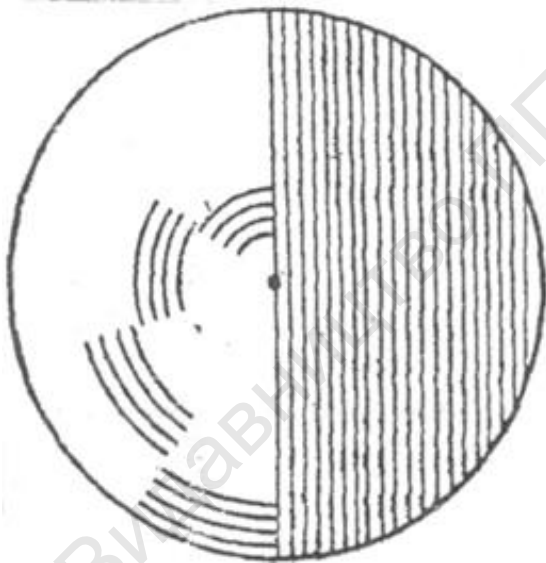
It is easy to make watermarks and use them to write a secret letter. You put a sheet of paper in water, then take it out quickly and put it on a sheet of glass or a mirror.

Put a dry sheet of paper on top of it. Now

you may write on the dry sheet. You must use a hard pencil to apply pressure. When you raise the dry sheet you will find that you can see everything you have written on the wet sheet. When your wet paper becomes dry, you will not see anything, but the text will appear again if you put a sheet of paper in water and take it out quickly. Try it and see how it works!

### 5.11.2. "Subjective Colour"

To show this interesting phenomenon which scientists call "subjective colour"



Copy the circle, which you see in the picture and put it on cardboard. Push a pin through the centre and turn it quickly. You will see many circles of different colours. Now change the direction and the order of colours will also change.

A few years ago a television operator turned a large wheel of this sort, and people who were watching this programme saw the colours quite clearly on their black-and-white television screens.

Scientists have not agreed on what makes these colours appear.

### 5.11.3. The Turnaround Card

You need: Three court cards from a pack; a volunteer from the audience.

No magic act is complete without some card tricks. Here is the simplest trick of all.

You place three court cards (kings / queens / jacks) face upwards in a row. You ask a member of the audience to reverse one of the cards while your back is turned. To everyone's amazement you are able to tell which one.

The secret of this trick is very simple. If you look carefully at the court cards in a pack, you will see that the white margin is often wider on one side than the other. Choose three cards like this and, when you put them down in a row, just make sure



that all the narrow sides are towards the right. Then when the card has been turned, that card will have its narrow margin on the left.

**Vocabulary**

*turnaround* перевернутий

*court cards* фігурна карта в колоді

*reverse* [ri'vɜ:s] міняти (на протилежний); повністю змінювати; перевертати

**5.11.4. A Strange Fact about Paper**

How many times do you think you can fold a piece of paper? It may make fewer folds than you think.

Give somebody a small piece of paper and ask him to fold it eight times. He will be able to fold it six or seven times, because the paper simply won't fold any more.

“Yes,” your friend says, “this is a small piece of paper.”

Well, and then give him a newspaper of two full pages. He will think he can do better. But no matter how big a piece of paper is, he will not be able to fold it more than seven times.

Why? Because on the eighth fold paper will come to 128 thicknesses. But paper cannot be folded so many thicknesses.



**Vocabulary**

*but no matter how big* незалежно якого розміру

**5.11.5. The Disappearing Rabbit**

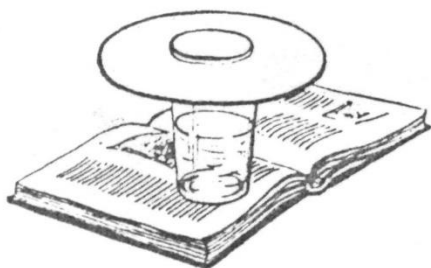
To make this rabbit in the picture disappear you mustn't be a magician. You must make the following simple experiment and the rabbit will disappear at once.

For the experiment you need a glass, a saucer and the picture of the rabbit.

Now put this book on the table. Fill the glass with water and put the saucer on the glass.

Then put the glass on the circle with the rabbit's picture. At once the rabbit will disappear. You can look into the glass again and again but you will not see the rabbit.





Why? The rays from the rabbit's picture pass through the sides of the glass and are bent upward when they come into the air.

So you can see the rabbit (or it is better to say the rays from the rabbit's picture) only if you look down from above, but the saucer does not let do that.

There is no place from which you can see these rays, and so you can not see the rabbit.

### 5.11.6. Do your fingers always obey you?

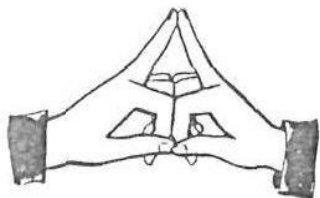
You can have a lot of fun with this experiment.

Ask someone to put his hands together as you see at the first picture. Tell him to separate his hands, which he will do easily.

Picture 1.



Picture 2.



Then ask him to put out the middle finger of each hand and put his hands together again as in the second picture. Tell him to separate the two fingers without separating his hands.

He will try to do this, but will not be able to do so. The more he tries to separate the fingers the more they will stay together.

### 5.11.7. The Amazing Educated Arm

You need: a volunteer from the audience.

This trick is very effective. It really looks as if your victim's arm is obeying your commands. Stand your victim very close to a wall, with his/her right side next to the wall and his/her right wrist actually touching the wall. Your victim must push outwards as hard as possible with the arm, but not the body, as if trying very hard to push the wall away.

Make sure your victim really is pushing. Say: "Push! Press really hard!" Then ask him / her to step away from the wall and let the arm hang by his/her side. At once say: "Arm up! Float away!" Your victim must not try to stop it; he/she must just relax. To everyone's amazement the arm will rise away from your victim's body. Try it yourself. It is a strange feeling. It is a good idea to try this several times yourself, to see how hard you need to press against the wall, and to experience the floating feeling.

#### Vocabulary

*obey* [ə(u)'beɪ] *слухатися, коритися, підкорятися; керуватися; слідувати*  
*educated* *тренований*

*experience* [ɪk'spi(ə)riəns] *випробувати, зазнавати, пережити, відчувати*  
*float away* *плавно опускати*

## 5.12. From the History of Some Toys

### 5.12.1. LEGO Toys



It may be hard to imagine today, but the entire LEGO company started very small. Ole Kirk Christiansen was a carpenter in Billund, Denmark who opened a woodworking shop in 1916. He and his team of apprentices built furniture for people in the area. In 1924, a fire burned down his woodworking shop, because his two young sons had lit a small fire. Christiansen, seeing the good side of this, replaced his old woodworking shop with a bigger one and expanded his business.

The Great Depression hit many companies, and Christiansen's was no exception. To lower prices, he made small models of his products as design aids. These would go on to inspire him to make toys later on. His shop made small wooden toys, such as piggy banks and trucks, and he had modest success. However, he still had to make furniture to stay in business.

In 1934, Christiansen coined the company name LEGO from the Danish words *leg* and *godt*, meaning play well. He also said it meant "I assemble" in Latin, though the translation is more similar to "I read" or "I gather". At this time, his son Godtfred started to take an active role in his father's company.

When plastic came into widespread use, LEGO stayed with the times and made plastic toys. One of the first was a plastic truck that could be taken apart and reassembled, similar to the basis behind modern LEGO bricks.

In 1953, these bricks were renamed LEGO Bricks. In that time, plastic toys were viewed as inferior to wooden ones. As a result, LEGO Bricks had poor sales. Still, Christiansen persevered and continued selling his product. In 1954, his son Godtfred became the junior managing director of LEGO group. His conversations with overseas buyers was where the idea for a toy system first came about. Godtfred saw the potential in LEGO bricks being a source of creative play for children. In 1958, the modern LEGO bricks design with the hollow tubes underneath was invented. This added to the stability and better locking.

The LEGO Group became much larger in the coming years. In 1959, a team was created to design new sets. Another fire struck in 1960, destroying most of the wooden toys. Fortunately, the company decided that the LEGO bricks were successful enough to discontinue the wooden toy line. 1961 and 1962 saw the introduction of the LEGO wheels, so kids could finally mobilize their cars and trucks. LEGO Group expanded their business into Canada. The LEGO Group released the highly successful train line in 1966 with a 4.5 volt motor. The first LEGOLAND Park was opened in Godtfred's hometown of Billund, Denmark. More than 18 million LEGO sets were sold in 1968 alone. In fact, the 1960s were so successful for LEGO Group that the biggest question was how to manage the expanding market.

Since then, LEGO group has made many leaps forward. The LEGO minifigures with moving arms and legs have been made and perfected. LEGO bricks have been cited as a way to encourage child creativity. The "Technic" series has been made as a variation of LEGO bricks for older children. Manufacturing plants have been opened around the world.

LEGO bricks have a very strict manufacturing process. Tens of thousands of dollars are spent on molds that can sense an imperfection. If a piece is off by .002 millimeters, it is thrown out. Worn out molds are hidden away so competitors will never get access to the technology. The molds are so accurate that only 18 out of 1 million LEGO bricks are thrown out. Only quality like this could make the LEGO bricks such a vital part of childhood memories.

### Vocabulary

**carpenter** ['kɑ:pɪntə] *тесля; столяр*

**apprentice** [ə'prentɪs] *учень, підмайстер*

**lit** *запалювати*

**Great Depression** *Велика депресія (Всесвітня економічна криза 1929 – кінець 2930 років)*

**design aids** *макет, модель*

**inspire** [ɪn'spraɪə] *навіювати; надихати; дарувати натхнення*

**piggy bank** *скарбничка*

**coined** [kɔɪn] *вигадувати; створювати*

**assemble** [ə'semb(ə)l] *збирати; підбирати, збирати; монтувати*

**inferior** [ɪn'fi(ə)riə] *який знаходиться нижче; нижчий за значенням, цінністю, сортом, якістю*

**persevere** [pɜ:sɪ'viə] *завзято, наполегливо домагатися; стійко, завзято продовжувати*

**hollow tubes** *тонкостінні трубки*

**locking** ['lɒkɪŋ] *1) замикання; 2) блокування*

**leap** [li:p] *стрибок; різка зміна, стрибок*

**imperfection** [ɪmpə'fekʃ(ə)n] *1) недосконалість; 2) недолік, дефект, вада*

### 5.12.2. Barbie History

Believe it or not, Barbie originally was a real person. Her name was Barbara (Barbie) Handler and her mother and father were Ruth and Elliot. In the early 1950's, Barbie's mother watched her and her girlfriends play with adult female dolls more than they did the baby dolls. Her mother knew it was just as important for young girls to imagine what it would be like to be grown up.

Since most of the adult dolls available at that time were paper or cardboard, Barbie's mother decided to make a three-dimensional female adult doll. One that was lifelike enough to serve as an inspiration for little girl's dreams of the future. She took her ideas to the ad executives at the Mattel Corp., the company that she and Barbie's father had founded in the garage many years prior. The all male committee rejected the idea saying it





would be too expensive and with little market appeal to the mass. She had gone on a trip to Europe and returned with a Lillie doll, modeled after a character in a German comic strip. She then spent lots of time designing a doll (Barbie) to resemble Lillie and even hired a clothing designer to make realistic clothes. The result was the Barbie Doll.

Mattel finally agreed to back her efforts and Barbie debuted at the American Toy Fair in New York City in 1959. Girls went wild over her and set a new sales record for Mattel the very first year at 351,000 sold at \$3.00 each. Since then the Barbie Doll's popularity has rarely waivered and today, with over one billion of her lookalikes sold, the product line is one of the most successful in the history of the toy industry.

As you can see, Barbie was blonde with a pony tail, zebra-striped swimsuit, open toed shoes, sun-glasses and earrings.

Barbie had lots of accessories available. The silly buyers at the industry's annual Toy Fair in New York were not impressed but the little girls sure were! That's all it took to take the retailers by storm! Mattel was so swamped with orders that it took several years for supply to catch up with demand! And now you know the rest of the Barbie History.

### Vocabulary

**adult** ['ædelt, ə'delt] дорослий, повнолітній; зріла людина

**three-dimensional** [,θri:d(ə)'i:menʃ(ə)-nəl] тривимірний, просторовий, об'ємний

**lifelike** ['laɪflaɪk] 1) як живий, дуже схожий; 2) немов живий, начебто живий

**inspiration** [ɪnspɪ'reɪʃ(ə)n] натхнення; душевне піднесення; надихаюча ідея, думка

**ad executive** рекламний менеджер

**reject** [rɪ'dʒekt] відмовляти

**comic strip** комікси

**resemble** [rɪ'zemb(ə)l] бути схожим, мати подібність

**hire** ['haɪə] наймати

**American Toy Fair** американський ярмарок іграшок

**girls went wild over her** лялька звела з розуму дівчат

**annual** щорічний

**retailer** ['ri:teɪlə] роздрібний торговець; крамар

**was so swamped with orders** був завалений замовленнями

### 5.12.3. The History of Making Tilda Dolls



Tilda is a fabric brand founded by the Swedish artist and Norwegian designer Tony Finnanger, best known for its whimsical and naive characters in the form of animals and dolls. There is a certain attitude to life in Tilda's world, whimsical and romantic, like a ball gown worn with wellies – perfectly imperfect!

The Tilda range consists of products such as fabrics,



kits, ribbons, buttons, accessories and books.

Tilda products are produced and distributed by Tilda Fabrics and are available in most of Europe as well as USA, Canada, Australia, New Zealand, China, Japan, Singapore, South Africa, South Korea, Taiwan and Thailand. Book titles are published by Sewandso – an imprint of F&W Media International. Tilda books have been translated into more than 18 languages.

Primitivism, homespun and unbearable fascination- it is these three words that can describe a toy tilde. A rag doll was invented in the late nineties, and thus, forever entered her name in the history of the world's hand-made. The history has continued, and today the tilde is a registered brand, a trademark that, of course, brings profit to the talented woman and at the same time pleases the needlewomen of the whole world.

Inspiration creator drew in those times, when Scandinavian women created rude, primitive amulets for their homes, in the image and likeness of fairy-tale creatures and animals, listening to ancient stories and legends. The name "tilde" is also the wish of Tony herself. In her family, it was customary to call everyone sonorous, short names for the letter "T", and this name seemed to the artist the most suitable for the pupa. Tilda is a printed doll sewn from scraps or whole pieces of flax, it is quite recognizable and at the same time time conditional silhouette, which is created with the help of cotton wool or holofaybera. Usually tilda has long legs, pretty plump body, its face is long. It has eyes-beads, blush and quite impressive nose. Tilda can be a girl, a cat, a postman, a milkmaid and even Santa Claus.

With all the diversity of faces, it preserves unique style, recognizable sewing technology and indescribable charm. In addition, the tildes in the performance of their creator Tony Finnanger always had a very pleasant colour of face and body - light brown, reminiscent of ginger cake, shortbread cookie or coffee with cream. This colour must have a real doll tilde, consider her admirers from all over the world.

The doll tilda angel is the most common variant of the tilde. Lovely young lady of angelic guise, with curls, behind her back - wings. Usually wears a linen light dress of lavender or pink hue. In the hands often holds a wand, of course, magical. Such tilde can be in the form of some animal. For example, the doll's tilde cat. In this form, the tilde does not lose charm at all - on the contrary, every needlewoman will wish to have such an animal. The tilde cat usually wears a dress too, she has a pretty slender body, long paws and a tail, a funny face with black eyes and tight curls of mustaches.

The main thing that unites millions of homemade tilde dolls around the world is the sewing technology. It is very, very simple and at the same time quite painstaking. The artist herself believed that the charm of the real tilde lies precisely in the fact that she draws the image of the master who created it with each of her dashes, and there are simply two identical dolls. The materials for sewing are very simple and affordable: pruning flax, cotton, cotton or holofayber, thick threads or cosmetics (for whiskers). Buttons, beads, wire, beads - for the decoration of the doll it will fit literally everything.

### **Tilde sewing technology**

In general, for sewing any tilde, there are several steps:

- translation patterns on paper (schemes are on the Internet, their great variety);

- Cutting out parts of the doll from the fabric;
- stitching parts;
- stuffing doll pieces with cotton or holofayber;
- assembling dolls;
- coloring or embroidery a face of a doll or a muzzle of an animal;
- tailoring for dolls.

The history of tilde is a record of success. Today the profit from this trademark is estimated at millions of dollars. Their favorite tilde is considered and housewives, and "vanilla" girls, and hipsters, and, of course, ordinary children - from toddlers to teenagers. The fact is that the tilde managed to become a real embodiment of time, which required simplicity, beauty and charm. Such a doll will decorate any interior and create a festive mood. The more that you can sew it yourself, and it's really simple. It takes only a little patience and the feeling that you are back in childhood.

### Vocabulary

**whimsical** ['wɪmzɪk(ə)l] *ексцентричний*

**wellies** ['welɪz] *гумові чоботи (дитячі)*

**imperfect** [ɪm'pɜːfɪkt] *недосконалий; дефектний; незавершений*

**homespun** ['həʊmspɛn] *простий, примітивний; непоказний*

**unbearable** [en'be(ə)rəb(ə)l] *нестерпний, незносний*

**fascination** [fæsi'neiʃ(ə)n] *чарівність, чари, чаклунство*

**needlewomen** ['niːdl,wʊmən] *швачка; рукодільниця*

**sonorous** ['sɒn(ə)rəs,sə'nɔː] *звучний, голосний; дзвінкий; урочистий, пиномовний*

**pupa** ['pjuːpə] *лялечка*

**scrap** [skræp] *шматочок; клаптик, обривок*

**flax** [flæks] *ляне полотно*

**silhouette**, [silu:'et] *силует; обриси*

**eyes-beads** *очі-бусини*

**blush** *рум'янець*

**reminiscent** *нагадування*

**shortbread** ['ʃɔːtbred] *нісочне печиво; нісочний коржик*

**beads** [biːd] *бусина; бісерина; кулька; намисто; бісер; вузлик, шишечка*

**guise** [gaɪz] *зовнішність; вигляд; обличчя*

**wand** [wɒnd] *тонка паличка*

**painstaking** ['peɪnz,teɪkɪŋ] *старанний; ретельний, копіткий*

**dash** [dæʃ] *рух; ривок*

**affordable**: [ə'fɔːdəb(ə)l] *можливий*

**pruning flax** *обрізки лляного полотна*

**stitching** ['stɪtʃɪŋ] *шиття; вишивання; строчка*

**muzzle** ['mez(ə)l] *морда, рило (тварини)*

**hipster** ['hɪpstə] *хіпстер, бітник; любитель поп-музики*

**embodiment** [ɪm'bɒdɪmənt] *об'єднання*

#### **5.12.4. Toy Soldier**

A toy soldier is a miniature figurine that represents a soldier. The term applies to depictions of uniformed military personnel from all eras, and includes knights, cowboys, pirates, samurai, and other subjects that involve combat-related themes. Toy soldiers vary from simple playthings to highly realistic and detailed models. The latter are of more recent development and are sometimes called model figures to distinguish them from traditional toy soldiers. Larger scale toys such as dolls and action figures may come in military uniforms, but they are not generally considered toy soldiers.

Toy soldiers are made from all types of material, but the most common mass-produced varieties are metal and plastic. There are many different kinds of toy soldiers, including tin soldiers or flats, hollow cast metal figures, composition figures, and plastic army men. Metal toy soldiers were traditionally sold in sets; plastic figures were sold in toy shops individually in Britain and Europe and in large boxed sets in the U. S. Modern, collectable figures are often sold individually.

Military figures have been found in ancient Egyptian tombs, and have appeared in many cultures and eras. Tin soldiers were produced in Germany as early as the 1730s, by molding the metal between two pieces of slate. Toy soldiers became widespread during the 18<sup>th</sup> century, inspired by the military exploits of Frederick the Great. Miniature soldiers were also used in the 17<sup>th</sup>, 18<sup>th</sup>, and 19<sup>th</sup> centuries by military strategists to plan battle tactics by using the figures to show the locations of real soldiers. In 1893, the British toy company William Britain revolutionized the production of toy soldiers by devising the method of hollow casting, making soldiers that were cheaper and lighter than their German counterparts.

#### **Vintage Plastic Trojan War Figure by Herald**

In addition to Britains, there have been many other manufacturers of toy soldiers over the years. For example, John Hill & Company produced hollow cast lead figures in the same style and scale. Companies such as Elastolin and Lineol were well known for their composite figures made of glue and sawdust that included both military and civilian subjects. After 1950, rising production costs and the development of plastic meant that many shop keepers liked the lighter, cheaper, and far less prone to break in transit polythene figure. This led to greater numbers of plastic toy soldiers. The first American plastic soldiers were made by Beton as early as 1937. The first plastic toy soldiers produced in Great Britain were made in 1946 by Airfix before they became known for their famous model kits range.

#### **World War I-era Toy Soldiers**

One large historical producer in plastic was Louis Marx & Company, which produced both realistic soldiers of great detail and also historical collections of plastic men and women, including the “Presidents of the United States” collection, “Warriors of the World”, “Generals of World War II”, “Jesus and the Apostles”, and figures from the Coronation of Queen Elizabeth II. Marx also produced boxed playsets that featured many famous battles with armies of two sides, character figures, and terrain features. Britains produced plastic figures under the brand names of Herald and Deetail. Also in England, the scale model company, Airfix produced a variety of high quality plastic sets, which were frequently painted by hobbyists. Many

Airfix figures were imitated by other companies and reproduced as inexpensive, bagged plastic army men. Timpo Toys, Britain's main competitor in terms of sales and quality in the 1960s and 70s developed the "Over – Moulding" system. Different coloured plastics were injected into the mould at various stages, creating a fully coloured figure without the need of paint.

During the 1990s, the production of metal toy-grade painted figures and connoisseur-grade painted toy soldiers increased to serve the demands of the collectors' market. The style of many of these figures shifted from the traditional gloss-coat enamel paint to the matte-finished acrylic paint, which allows for greater detail and historical accuracy. The change was largely inspired by the introduction of very high quality painted figures from St. Petersburg.

There is a substantial hobby devoted to collecting both old and new toy soldiers, with an abundance of small manufacturers, dealers, and toy soldier shows. There are even specialty magazines devoted to the hobby, such as "Toy Soldier Collector", "Plastic Warrior" and "Toy Soldier and Model Figure". Collectors often specialize in a particular type of soldier or historical period, though some people enjoy collecting many different kinds of figures. The most popular historical periods for collecting are Napoleonic, Victorian, American Civil War, World War I, and World War II. Many collectors modify and paint plastic figures, and some even cast and paint their own metal figures.

Actor Douglas Fairbanks Jr had a collection of 3000 toy soldiers when he sold it in 1977. Fantasy novelist George R. R. Martin has a substantial collection of toy knights and castles. The most extensive collection of toy soldiers was probably that of Malcolm Forbes, who began collecting toy soldiers in the late 1960s and amassed a collection of over 90,000 figures by the time of his death in 1990. Anne Seddon Kinsolving Brown of Providence, Rhode Island, USA, began collecting miniature toy soldiers on her honeymoon to Europe in 1930, eventually amassing a collection of over 6,000 figures; these are on display at the Anne S. K. Brown Military Collection at Brown University Library in Providence.

### Vocabulary

**figurine** [figju'ri:n, 'figjuri:n] *статуетка, фігурка*

**depiction** [dɪ'pɪkʃ(ə)n] *описання, зображення*

**hollow cast** *порожнисте лиття*

**lead** [led] *свинець*

**sawdust** ['sɔ: ,dʌst] *турса*

**kit** [kɪt] *ранець, речовий мішок; сумка з набором інструментів; комплект, набір*

**terrain** [tə'reɪn] *територія, район; місцевість; поле дії*

**connoisseur** [kɒnə'sɜ:(r)] *знавець (мистецтва)*

**gloss** [glɒs] *блиск; лиск; глянець*

**enamel** [i'næm(ə)l] *емаль, глазур*

**matte** [mæt] *матова поверхня*

**amass** [ə'mæs] *збирати, накопичувати; складати*

### 5.13. Some Facts of Animals' Life

#### 5.13.1. Do Sleeping Horses Lie?

##### *Why do Horses Sleep on their Feet?*

I have seen horses standing quietly, sometimes several together. I always supposed that they were sleeping. Now I think that they were just dozing.

Scientists have studied sleep in people and in many kinds of animals, including horses. These scientists record electrical signals that can be measured right on the outside of the body, and those signals tell a little about what is going on inside the brain. When a person or animal is sleeping, the brain makes a special electrical pattern.

The scientists found that any horse's brain makes the pattern of complete sleep only when the horse is lying down on its side. The horse sleeps like this in several short periods, each often only a half-hour long.

In the wild, horses had to watch out for predators, like lions and other big cats. So it's understandable that they learned to sleep deeply only in short naps. And that may be why we seldom see horses really sleeping.

#### **Vocabulary**

*doze* [dəʊz] 1) дрімота; 2) дрімату; клювати носом

*predator* ['predətə] хижак

*watch out* остерігатися

*nap* [næp] 1) короткий сон удень; 2) здрімнути; дрімату

#### 5.13.2. Guess Australian Animals

##### **kangaroo; emu; dingo; echidna; koala; platypus**

1. It is a small, primitive aquatic mammal. It has thick blackish-brown fur, a flat, leathery beak like a duck, no lips, a long flat tail and webbed feet. It lays eggs but gives milk to its young. What is it?
2. It is a toothless, egg-laying mammal. It is nocturnal, burrowing animal, feeding on insects by means of a sticky, extensile tongue. What is it?
3. Animal likes a small bear which lives in trees. It is about 2 ft long, with thick grey fur, sometimes called a bear. Its claws are adapted for climbing trees, and it lives chiefly in the eucalyptus, feeding on its buds and shoots. What is it?
4. It is a fierce, wolf like wild dog, about 50 sm high and usually sandy-coloured. What is it?
5. It is a flightless grey-feathered ratite bird, about 6 ft tall, closely related to the ostrich. This large bird can run well but cannot fly. What is it?
6. The animal of a family of herbivorous, marsupial mammals. It has powerful hind legs and a long, tapering tail and short forelegs. It is an animal which jumps along on its large back legs and which carries its babies in the pocket-bag. It moves by leaping. What is it?

#### **Vocabulary**

*aquatic* [ə'kwætɪk, ə'kwɒtɪk] водяний, водний



**mammal** ['mæm(ə)l] *ссавець*  
**beak** [bi:k] *дзьоб*  
**webbed** [webd] *перетинчастий*  
**toothless** ['tu:θləs] *беззубий*  
**nocturnal** [nɒk'tɜ:nl] *нічний*  
**extensile** [ik'stensail] *1) розтяжний; 2) розсувний*  
**eucalyptus** [ju:kə'liptəs] *евкаліпт*  
**buds** [bʌds] *бруньки*  
**shoots** [ʃu:ts] *паростки*  
**flightless** ['flaitlis] *нелітаючий*  
**ratite** ['rætait] *безкільовий (про птахів)*  
**herbivorous** [hɜ:'biv(ə)rəs] *травоїдний*  
**marsupial** [mɑ:'sju:piəl, -'su:-] *сумчастий*  
**hind** [haind] *задній*  
**tapering** [teip(ə)riŋ] *що звужується до кінця, конічний, загострений*  
**foreleg** ['fɔ:leg] *передня нога або лапа*  
**leaping** ['li:piŋ] *стрибання; стрибок*

### 5.13.3. Why Do Elephants Have Trunks?

An elephant drinks by sucking water into its trunk and squirting the liquid into its mouth. And the trunk can make many different sounds, including a distinctive trumpeting noise.

The trunk is the most helpful tool for an elephant.

It can be used to pull down leaves and branches to eat. It also makes a good nose – elephants can squirt dust or water over themselves to keep cool.

An elephant's trunk is a bit like a hand. Using the tip, an elephant can pick up something as small as a button.

Elephants also say “hello” to elephant friends by shaking trunks with them.

#### Vocabulary

**suck** [sʌk] *1) ссати; смоктати, висмоктувати; 2) всмоктувати, засмоктувати*  
**squirt** [skwɜ:t] *бити тонким або слабким струменем*  
**liquid** ['likwid] *рідина; рідка їжа*  
**distinctive** [dis'tɪŋ(k)tɪv] *характерний, особливий, відмітний*  
**trumpet** [trʌmpɪt] *труба*

### 5.13.4. Wild Animals

- that elephants are very good swimmers?
- that the elephant can pick up a coin with his trunk? The elephant can do with his trunk much of what we do with our hands. It can pick up a man and put him on his back; then it can pick up and give him a coin which fell from his pocket;
- that when an elephant grows, everything grows on it except its eyes?
- how long animals live? The animal which lives the longest life is the tortoise. It sometimes lives between 300 and 400 years. The crocodile can live for 300

- years, the elephant and the eagle - for 100 years;
- that crocodiles kill more people in Africa than any other wild animal?
- elephants are the only animals that can't jump;
- that scientists think that the cleverest wild animal is the chimpanzee and the second is the orang-utan and the third is the elephant?
- that among the domestic animals the cleverest are the horse and the dog? These animals take much from the people with whom they live;
- butterflies taste with their feet;
- the ant always falls over on its right side when intoxicated;
- on average, people fear spiders more than they do death;
- a snail can sleep for three years;
- you are more likely to be killed by a Champagne cork than by a poisonous spider;
- why a dog goes round and round before it lies down? This habit goes back to the days when dogs were wild and lived in the jungle grass. If they wanted a comfortable bed, they had to go round a few times in order to level the grass. Now the dogs sleep on a mat or on the floor, but still they go round before they lie down;
- the word *hippopotamus* comes from the Greek words *hippo* and *potamos*. These words mean "horse" and "river". We often say *hippo* because it's shorter and easier to spell than *hippopotamus*!
- no animal can see when it is completely dark. At night there is usually little light from the moon and stars. Then eyes of cats catch the light better and can see better than eyes of people;
- that lions are cleverer than tigers and leopards?
- cats have over one hundred vocal sounds, but dogs only have about ten;
- an ostrich's eye is bigger than its brain;
- all polar bears are left handed;
- a crocodile cannot stick its tongue out;
- pigs can be very helpful in gardens. If you scatter seeds, they can tread them in to just the right depth for planting;
- and even a medium-sized pig creates more than a ton of fertilizer each year;
- that the whales shoot water into the air? They do not really shoot water. One can see their breath just as we see our own breath on a cold day. When they come up from a dive, they let out a big breath. It comes out their blowhole, on the top of their head. Right then, the moisture in my breath gets cold and changes from a gas into a mist of water drops. And that mist can look like a water spout;
- in Somalia, there are as many camels as people. Their language has at least 46 words for camels;
- despite its hump, the backbone of a camel is perfectly straight; wild camels are found only in Australia.

### Vocabulary

**intoxicated** [ɪntɒksɪkeɪtɪd] одурманений, інтоксикований

**poisonous** [ˈpɔɪz(ə)nəs] отруйний

**scatter** [ˈskætə] розсіювати; сіяти

**fertilizer** [ˈfɜːtɪlaɪzə] добриво; удобрювач

**blowhole** [ˈbləʊhəʊl] дихало (у кита)

**mist** [mɪst] 1) (легкий) туман; серпанок; імла

**moisture** [ˈmɔɪstʃ(ə)] вологість, вогкість; волога

**shoot** викидати

**spout** [spaʊt] струмінь, стовп

**hump** [hʌmp] горб

**backbone** [ˈbækbəʊn] спинний хребет

### 5.13.5. The Big Cats

Wild species of the cat family are found all over the world, except for in Antarctica and Australia. They are all carnivores (meat eaters) and all hunt by stalking their prey and then pouncing. There are 37 species of wild cat. Larger members of the family, such as the lion, tiger and leopard, are known as the big cats. Smaller members of the family include the ocelot, the lynx and the serval.

The biggest and most powerful member of the cat family is the tiger, which lives mainly in the rich forest areas of India, southeast China and Indonesia. In the heat of midday sun, the tiger will take to the shade or rest in water to keep cool. Most members of the cat family dislike water, but tigers love it and are good swimmers.

Big cats are related to and similar in appearance to wild cats and domestic cats. The European wild cat looks very much like the domestic tabby cat, as does the rare iriomote cat, and the caffer cat.

Leopards are very agile cats that live in Africa and Asia. They climb trees well and sometimes store their dead prey in trees. The spots on a leopard are more like rosettes than spots, especially along the back, and those of the African species are smaller than those on the Asian variety. Some leopards are completely black and are known as panthers.

A relative of the leopard is the jaguar of Central America which always lives close to water and is an excellent swimmer. The rosettes on its body are quite distinctive because have a black spot in the centre.

The best known of the big cats is undoubtedly the lion, often called “the king of the jungle”. At one time lions roamed all over Europe, Africa and Asia, but now they are found only in parts of Africa and a small area of India. Lions usually hunt in a group and although it is usually the female that kills the prey, it is the male, the head of the pride (group) that gets to eat first.

The snow leopard, or ounce, of Asia is a beautiful creature. It has white spots on a whitish background. It hunts wild sheep and boar in the mountains of central Asia and Himalayas.

### Do You Know?

- in prehistoric times, sabre-toothed tigers attacked prey with their enormous, long, swordlike, curved upper canine teeth;

- leopards often drag the carcass of their prey up a tree - to be eaten later!
- while a cheetah is the fastest sprinter, the pronghorn antelope of North America would outrun it over a longer distance; lions sometimes climb into trees to stop flies biting them;
- ancient kings in Asia used cheetahs to hunt other animals.

### Vocabulary

**species** ['spi:ʃi:z] 1) рід, порода; 2) вид, різновид; 3) вид

**carnivore** ['ka:nɪ,vɔ:] м'ясоїдна тварина

**prey** [prei] 1) жертва; 2) здобич; награбоване; 3) полювати, ловити

**pounce** [paʊns] 1) пазур (хижого птаха); 2) раптовий наліт, наскок, стрибок; 3) налітати, накидатися, атакувати; прямувати вниз; 4) схопити пазурами

**ocelot** ['ɔsilɒt] оцелот, велика дика кішка з коричнюватою або жовтувато-сірою плямистою шкурою

**lynx** ['lɪŋks] рись

**serval** ['sɜ:v(ə)l] сервал, довгоногий африканський дикий кіт

**tabby** ['tæbi] смугаста кішка

**iriomote cat** іріомотейська кішка

**agile** ['ædʒaɪl] 1) рухливий, моторний, швидкий; 2) кмітливий

**panther** ['pæntə] пантера, леопард, барс

**roam** [rəʊm] мандрувати, блукати

**snow leopard** сніжний барс, ірбіс

**ounce** [aʊns] ірбіс

**boar** [bɔ:] кабан, вепр

**sabre-toothed** шаблезубий

**swordlike** шаблезубий

**canine** ['keɪnəɪn, 'kænaɪn] ікло

**carcass** [kɑ:(r)kəs] туша (тварини)

**cheetah** ['tʃi:tə] гепард

**pronghorn** ['prɒŋhɔ:n] вилорога антилопа, вилоріг

### 5.13.6. Jumping Spider

Jumping spiders don't weave webs. Instead, they capture prey by leaping and pouncing. Some jumping spiders can jump 40 times their own body length.

Jumping spiders use sharp eyesight to spot their prey. They have four pairs of eyes, and they can tell the difference between prey and another jumping spider as far as a foot away. They're harmless to people ear flies and other insect pests. Because they use their signs to hunt, these spiders during the day.

Many jumping spiders are colorful. Look for one in a garden or on the outside or a garage or house. If you find one, watch it for a while. Can you see any sign that it sees you?

Jumping spiders live on the leaves and bark of plants, on the ground, and on rocks and buildings. Indoors, they may lurk near windows.

### Vocabulary

**weave webs** плести павутіння

**leaping** ['li:piŋ] стрибання; стрибок  
**sharp eyesight** гострий зір  
**insect pests** шкідливі комахи  
**bark of plants** кора рослин (дерев)  
**lurk** [lɜ:k] ховатися, приховуватися; причаїтися

### 5.13.7. Dolphins Dispel Depression

If life is getting you down, head for the sea: scientists have proved that swimming with dolphins is an effective treatment for mild to moderate depression. For the first controlled trial of its type, researchers recruited a number of depressed people, told them to stop taking their medicines or having therapy, and divided them into two groups. The first group swam with dolphins for an hour a day; the second swam on the same coral reef, but only with each other for company. After two weeks, the people in the dolphin group were significantly more cheerful than those in the control group. Three months after the study, participants reported a lasting improvement in their symptoms. The researchers put the effect down to the dolphins' echo-location system (the sounds they emit to navigate), and the emotional impact of interacting with the creatures.

#### Vocabulary

**dispel** [dɪs'pel] розганяти, розсіювати; розсіюватися, розвіюватися  
**get down** пригнічувати  
**head for the sea** прямувати до моря  
**coral reef** кораловий риф  
**trial** ['traɪəl] випробувальний  
**emit** [i'mit] випромінювати, видавати (звук)  
**emotional impact** емоційний вплив

### 5.13.8. The Loch Ness Monster

It is a large animal which is supposed to live in the waters of Loch (Gaelic for "Lake") Ness in Scotland. There are reports of the monster going back to the sixth century, and over the past forty years there have been a thousand sightings. Some photographs exist, although they are of poor quality. They show a large, long, snake-like animal, perhaps 75 feet long. Scientists cannot explain what kind of animal this might be. Loch Ness is too cold for a reptile and there is no known fish this large.

Although it is beautiful, Loch Ness attracts thousands of tourists each year because people are curious about the existence of this "monster". Some say that it might be the last dinosaur in the world. Others say that it is just a trick by the Tourist Board to encourage tourists. Many people have taken photographs of something in the water but there is still no evidence that it definitely exists!

#### Vocabulary

**loch** [lɒk, lɒh] = **lake** озеро  
**sightings** спостереження  
**poor quality** погана якість  
**are curious about the existence** цікавитись існуванням  
**trick** [trɪk] хитрість, обман



**Tourist Board** міністерство (департамент) з питань туризму  
**encourage tourists** приваблювати туристів  
**evidence** ['evid(ə)ns] підстава; дані, факти; свідчення  
**definitely** ['defɪnɪtli] чітко, ясно, точно; безсумнівно; звичайно

### 5.13.9. Real Fact

The 49-year-old Australian fisherman was on the trailer during the storm. He was washed by the wave to the shark's mouth.

By the desperate effort he hold on the folds of meat of its body, probably, muscles of its gullet. The electronic waterproof watch was showing that the fisherman sailed in the shark's stomach during 8 hours.

"Every swallowing shark's act was deathful for me", - told the fisherman. At last by the wincing effort the shark had thrown him outside together with the stomach's mixture.

The detail elaboration confirmed availableness of tissues of that big shark and its stomach's acids in the fisherman's wounds.

#### Vocabulary

**desperate effort** відчайдушне зусилля  
**muscles of gullet** ['mʌs(ə)l əv ɡʌlɪt] м'язи стравоходу  
**swallowing act** ['swɒləʊɪŋ] ковтання  
**wince** [wɪns] здригання (від переляку, болі, відразу)  
**stomach** ['stʌmək] шлунок  
**detail elaboration** ретельне дослідження  
**availableness of tissues** наявність тканин  
**acid** ['æsɪd] кислота  
**wound** [wu:nd] рана, поранення

### 5.13.10. Animals in the Calendar

Most people are aware of their astrological signs, and they know the characteristics associated with the twelve signs of the zodiac. Astrology is based upon your month of birth. Astrologers believe that there is a connection between our lives and the movement of the sun, the moon and the planets.

**Aries (the Ram)** 21<sup>st</sup> March – 20<sup>th</sup> April

*You want to be important and successful. You are very positive. You say what you think. You are sometimes selfish and you are often the first to start arguing.*

**Good points:** energetic, enthusiastic;

**Bad points:** jealous, bossy;

**Typical job:** politician, surgeon;

**You like:** new clothes, sport;

**You dislike:** waiting.

**Taurus (the Bull)** 21<sup>st</sup> April – 21<sup>st</sup> May

*You always tell the truth. When you promise to do something you do it. You need to have things more than you need people. You often refuse to accept new ideas. You never give up without a fight. You hate to lose, in business or at tiddlywinks.*

**Good points:** reliable, very loving;

**Bad points:** stubborn, easily embarrassed;

**Typical job:** farmer, business person;

**You like:** comfort, gardening;

**You dislike:** change, haste.

**Gemini (the Twins) 22<sup>nd</sup> May – 21<sup>st</sup> June**

You are charming, intelligent, creative and most people like you. But you are two-faced – you can say one thing and mean another. You don't concentrate and you get bored easily. You think you are superior to everyone. You think the whole world revolves around you.

**Good points:** entertaining, charming, versatile;

**Bad points:** quickly bored, impatient;

**Typical job:** journalist, artist;

**You like:** talking, being among people;

**You dislike:** being laughed at, waiting.

**Cancer (the Crab) 22<sup>nd</sup> June – 23<sup>rd</sup> July**

You like being at home. You always try to look after your family. You are kind and sympathetic. You enjoy eating and relaxing. You don't like working too hard.

**Good points:** kind, sensitive;

**Bad points:** too easily hurt, possessive;

**Typical job:** baker, nurse;

**You like:** being with friends, shopping;

**You dislike:** sharing feelings, criticism.

**Leo (The Lion) 24<sup>th</sup> July – 23<sup>rd</sup> August**

You always expect to be a leader. You like giving things to people, and you enjoy visiting people. You are not good at being polite. You behave like the weather in April.

**Good points:** brave, generous;

**Bad points:** stubborn, ambitious;

**Typical job:** lawyer, soldier;

**You like:** winning, children, pets;

**You dislike:** unhappy friends, being ignored.

**Virgo (The Virgin) 24<sup>th</sup> August – 23<sup>rd</sup> September**

You tell people everything about yourself. People can trust you. You like helping others. You hate quarrelling and you hate things being untidy. You dislike spending money. You lack courage. You'll do what you have told. One never knows what you're thinking.

**Good points:** witty, charming, sympathetic;

**Bad points:** untidy, irritable, nervous;

**Typical job:** secretary, mechanic;

**You like:** being punctual, systematic;

**You dislike:** crowds and noise, sitting still for a long time.

**Libra (The Scales) 24<sup>th</sup> September – 23<sup>rd</sup> October**

You enjoy being with other people. You care about other people's feelings. You don't always say what you mean. You have a high opinion of yourself. You should solve all the problems on a desert island and nothing would upset you. You should be a good judge or referee.

**Good points:** charming, cooperative;

**Bad points:** indecisive, flirtatious;

**Typical job:** beautician, politician;

**You like:** peace and quiet, being fussed over;

**You dislike:** ugly places, loud arguments.

**Scorpio (The Scorpion)** 24<sup>th</sup> October - 22<sup>nd</sup> November

*You believe in yourself. You are brave. You don't stop doing something until you have finished the job. Scorpions often talk about themselves, you need to control others. You are very dangerous enemy. You have principles about hurting other people.*

**Good points:** caring, protective;

**Bad points:** moody, jealous;

**Typical job:** scientist, detective;

**You like:** winning, collecting things;

**You dislike:** making mistakes, being asked personal questions.

**Sagittarius (The Archer)** 23<sup>rd</sup> November – 22<sup>nd</sup> December

*You are good at doing practical things. You love playing sports. You are honest, optimistic and cheerful. You don't mind taking risks. You don't tell others what to do. You are not afraid to go mountain climbing, or to join a mountain rescue team. You want to go to wild and unexplored places. You are vivacious, like champagne bubbles. You put your heart and soul into your profession.*

**Good points:** honest, optimistic;

**Bad points:** hot-headed, gambler at heart;

**Typical job:** teacher, writer, vet;

**You like:** travelling, gambling, parties;

**You dislike:** waiting, making promises.

**Capricorn (The Goat)** 23<sup>rd</sup> December – 20<sup>th</sup> January

*You like being the boss. You need to have money and status. You don't mind working hard. When you decide to do something, you always do it. You don't like sitting around and doing nothing.*

**Good points:** hard working, careful;

**Bad points:** unforgiving, anxious;

**Typical job:** banker, civil servant;

**You like:** home and family, privacy;

**You dislike:** new things and new ideas, untidiness.

**Aquarius (The Water Carrier)** 21<sup>st</sup> January – 19<sup>th</sup> February

*You want to help the whole world and every one in it, the group is more important than the individual for you. Your temper goes up and down. You are good in concentrating, you are not good at doing practical things. You jump into the bath without testing the water. If you get an idea in your head, there's no stopping you.*

**Good points:** loyal, caring;

**Bad points:** rude, self-interested;

**Typical job:** engineer, photographer;

**You like:** surprises, being with friends;

**You dislike:** violence, fighting, people who show off.

**Pisces (The Fish) 20<sup>th</sup> February – 20<sup>th</sup> March**

*You believe people and you do what they tell you to do. You have a strong imagination. You like music and art. You are very sympathetic, kind and friendly. You get depressed easily. You are always the last to introduce yourself. You can see beauty in a pile of rubbish and you can then turn the pile of rubbish into a work of art.*

**Good points:** loving, caring, creative;

**Bad points:** self-pitying, hot-tempered;

**Typical job:** actor, writer;

**You like:** poetry, romantic places;

**You dislike:** noisy, crowded places, being second.

**Vocabulary**

**Aries** ['e(ə)ri(:)z] Овен

**argue** [ɑ:gju:] 1) сперечатися; 2) аргументувати; наводити докази; 3) переконувати, радити; 4) стверджувати, доводити

**jealous** ['dzeləs] 1) ревнивий; 2) заздрісний; 3) турботливий, дбайливий, пильний

**Taurus** ['tɔ:rəs] Телець

**tiddlywinks** ['tidltwinks] гра в блішки

**reliable** [ri'laɪəb(ə)l] достовірний, гідний довіри; надійний

**stubborn** [stʌbə(r)n] 1) упертий, неіддатливий; 2) завзятий

**embarrassed** [em'barəst] стурбований

**haste** [heɪst] 1) поспішність, квапливість; поспіх; нашивидкуруч; 2) необачність

**Gemini** ['dʒemɪn(a)i] Близнюки

**superior** [s(j)u:'pi(ə)riə] 1) начальник, старший; 2) той, хто перевершує іншого (у чому-небудь)

**entertaining** [entə'teɪnɪŋ] цікавий; забавний, розважальний

**charming** ['tʃɑ:mɪŋ] чарівний, милий

**versatile** ['vɜ:sətəɪl] 1) різнобічний; 2) непостійний

**Cancer** ['kɑnsər] Рак

**Virgo** ['vɜ:gəʊ] Діва

**quarrelling** ['kwɔrəlɪŋ] сварки

**lack** [læk] 1) нестача, брак; (повна) відсутність; 2) зазнавати нестачі, браку (чого-небудь), потребувати (чого-небудь), не мати (чого-небудь); 3) бракувати, не вистачати, бути недостатнім

**courage** ['kʌrɪdʒ] мужність, хоробрість, сміливість, відвага

**witty** [wɪti] 1) дотепний; 2) розумний

**irritable** ['ɪrɪtəb(ə)l] дратівливий; болісно чутливий; легкозбудливий

**Libra** ['li:brə] Ваги

**mean** [mi:n] 1) мати намір, мати на увазі; 2) думати, гадати; 3) значити, означати, мати значення

**desert island** ['dezət 'aɪlənd] безлюдний острів

**referee** [ˌrefə'ri:] рефері, суддя

**cooperative** [kəʊ'ɒpərətɪv] який бере участь у спільній роботі; який співробітничав



**indecisive** [indi'saisiv] *нерішучий; невизначений, непевний*  
**flirtatious** [flɜ:'teɪʃəs] *кокетливий, який любить пофліртувати*  
**being fussed over** *бути галасливим*  
**hurting** *заподіяння (завдання) шкоди (або збитків)*  
**moody** ['mu:di] 1) *який легко піддається змінам настрою; 2) сумний, похмурий*  
**Sagittarius** [sædʒi'te(ə)riəs] *Стрілець*  
**cheerful** ['tʃiəf(ə)l] *бадьорий, безжурний; веселий, радісний*  
**taking risks** *ризикувати*  
**mountain rescue team** *гірська рятувальна команда*  
**vivacious** [vi'veɪʃəs, vɪ-] *життєрадісний, веселий*  
**gambler at heart** *азартний гравець, картяр; професійний гравець; шахрай*  
**gambling** ['gæmblɪŋ] *азартна гра, гра на гроші*  
**Capricorn** ['kæprɪkɔ:n] *Козерог*  
**unforgiving** [ˌʌnfə'gɪvɪŋ] *що не пробачає; невмолимий*  
**anxious** ['æŋkʃəs] 1) *який турбується, тривожиться, хвилюється; 2) який прагне (до чого-небудь), який палко бажає (чого-небудь)*  
**privacy** ['pr(a)ɪvəsi] 1) *самота; самотність; 2) таємниця, таємність, секретність; 3) особиста, приватна справа*  
**untidiness** [ˌʌn'taɪdɪnɪs] *неохайність, неакуратність; безлад*  
**temper** ['tempə] 1) *вдача, характер; 2) стриманість, самовладання; 3) настрій*  
**self-interested** *егоїстичний, корисливий, спонукуваний особистими інтересами*  
**violence** ['vaɪələns] *насильство, примус*  
**fighting** ['faɪtɪŋ] *бій, битва*  
**show off** 1) *подавати у вигідному світлі; 2) похвалятися, хвастати; виставляти напоказ; 3) красуватися, хизуватися, рисуватися*  
**imagination** [ɪ,mædʒɪ'neɪʃ(ə)n] *уява, фантазія; творча уява*  
**sympathetic** [ˌsɪmpə'tetɪk] 1) *співчутливий; сповнений співчуття; викликаний співчуттям; доброзичливий, схвальний; 2) близький за духом; який відповідає смакам, настрою; 3) симпатичний, привабливий*  
**get depressed easily** *легко впасти в депресію*  
**see beauty in a pile of rubbish** *побачити гарне в купі сміття*  
**self-pitying** *жалость к самому себе*  
**hot-tempered** *запальний, гарячий*  
**noisy** ['nɔɪzi] 1) *шумний, гучний; галасливий; 2) кричущий, який кидається в очі (про одяг, колір)*  
**crowded** ['kraʊdɪd] 1) *переповнений; 2) стиснутий, здавлений; 3) повний, наповнений*

### 5.13.11. Chinese Zodiac Signs

Look at the dates of the Chinese horoscope and find out more about your own and your friends' or parents' personality. Here is a rough guide to the nature of the twelve animals that are the symbols of the Chinese Zodiac:



**Rat** - In the legend, the Rat was the first animal to answer the call of the Buddha, and that's **a good clue to** the Rat. Don't think of him as the creature we all dislike. The Rat in the Chinese calendar has ingenuity, intelligence, independence and is something of a magician. Rats like to win.

If you're a Rat, you know how to get what you want, and you're inventive and original. You'll be very friendly and generous to your friends and those you love, but your enemies should **steer clear!** A complicated person with quick nervous energy, you worry about tomorrow, and **push yourself to your limits**, yet you are quick to criticize others. You need time to be yourself, and to be on your own. You will get on very well with Oxen, Dragons, and Dogs, and probably hardly at all with Rabbits, Horses and Monkeys.

**Ox / Cow** - In Chinese mythology, Lao-Tse, the great philosopher, rode the Ox on his journey to the mountains to seek immortality. Oxen are stoical and patient; they can endure great hardship and will never give up. You take pride in work, and you just get on with the job without fuss, doing the best you can.

You don't rush about and **get worked up**, and **you're laid back** until provoked too far, but then watch out! The might of an enraged Ox is not to be trifled with. You save money rather than spend it, and are resolutely ambitious. You will probably be good friends with Rats, Rabbits, Dragons (especially in business), Roosters and Dogs, but, in fact, the Ox will get on well with most people.

**Tiger** - The King of the Jungle, the Tiger is fierce and courageous. He represents luck, power and royalty. Tigers are enthusiastic, impulsive, loyal and honourable. Just as the Tiger is both revered and feared, a Tiger can be savage or wise. You will like taking risks and **thrive on danger**; routine is not for you. You like the open road, freedom, and the chance of something around the corner.

You despise treachery and falsehood, and you can be very generous, but you like your authority to be acknowledged and you are not the easiest animal to live with. You get on reasonably well with most people up to a certain point, but less well with other Tigers, and not very well at all with Snakes and Roosters.

**Rabbit / Hare** - If you are a Rabbit, you are imaginative and sensitive, like a quiet and peaceful life and don't like change, but paradoxically, you need freedom. Security is important, and you hate arguments; if there is a quarrel in the air, you probably try to defuse it and negotiate between those involved.

You won't rush into anything, and you tread cautiously, always making sure there's a Plan B, but if backed into a corner you can be menacing and ferocious.

You're not as weak as you sometimes seem. Rabbits especially like the company of the Ox, Snake, Sheep, and Pig, but have great difficulty with the Rat and Rooster.

**Dragon** - The Dragon of mythology was a creature of inaccessible places, high mountains or underground caves, breathing fire and ready for battle. The Dragon has been a symbol of deep desire, of wisdom and of luck, and has often been used **to ward off** evil spirits. The Dragon is powerful, brave, obstinate, enthusiastic and always lucky.

If you are a Dragon, you can accomplish things that others consider impossible. Nothing is beyond you, but you're not easy to live with. You can be cranky and demanding, and upset others with your **blunt way of speaking**, but you're

scrupulously honest, and genuinely very charming. You enjoy the company of Rats, Snakes, and Roosters, but there could be problems with Dogs, as well as other Dragons!

**Snake** - In Chinese mythology, from the mouth of the Snake came the first human being. Rich in symbolism, the Snake is both the instrument of temptation in the Garden of Eden, and the symbol of eternity when depicted as the snake biting his tail. If you a Snake, you have a magnetic personality **with poise and elegance**, no matter how you dress. You almost certainly love reading and learning, enjoy deep conversations, dislike arguments unless they are abstract and philosophical, and have an almost telepathic intuition.

You don't like making any more effort than you absolutely have to, but when you decide on a course of action you are unstoppable. You probably remember wrongs done to you for a long time, yet you are wise, and much sought after for your good advice. You will get on well with most people, especially with Dragons and Roosters, but there may be difficulties with Tigers.

**Horse** - The mythical centaur, half horse and half man symbolizes the bond between man and horse, and if you are a Horse you will be popular and likeable. With your sparkling wit, you love the company of your friends, and you're impulsive and enthusiastic, and can't wait **to get on with** the next thing.

Yet, sociable, as you are, you like to do your own thing, and deep inside you are a very private person. Above everything, you are proud and independent. You get on well with almost everybody, but especially well with Tigers, and only with difficulty with Roosters.

**Sheep / Ram** - All manner of creative and artistic activities will probably be what you like most, if you were born in the Year of the Sheep. You are just not bothered with the essentials of life like making money you need it, definitely, but it would be nicer if it just arrived! You are peaceable and calm, imaginative and inventive, and you never **bear a grudge**.

You'll do anything to avoid **falling out with people**, even giving up your own wishes to keep things pleasant. You may be very skilled in your profession, but will never work for the sake of it, only if you enjoy it. You can get upset at first if people insist on trying to make you do things you don't really want to, but at the end of the day **you will dig in your heels**. If you are a Sheep / Ram, you won't have much trouble in getting on with anyone, but you will particularly like the company of Rabbits, Monkeys and Oxen, and will have little in common with Roosters.

**Monkey** - Highly intelligent and ingenious, Monkeys are known as the jokers and pranksters of the Chinese Zodiac. If you are a monkey, you can do almost anything **you set your mind to**, for of all the signs, the Monkey is the most versatile.

You are original, independent and articulate, with a gift for persuading others to your own way of thinking. You dislike routine, love acting, and love to talk and exchange news and ideas. You can be very generous, and sensitive to the needs of others, but at times people misunderstand your waywardness and think you dishonest, which you find very hurtful. You will get on well with almost everyone, but especially well with Sheep and other Monkeys.

**Rooster** - Roosters know the effect they have on other people. Heads turn when

you walk into a room, because you have charisma and style. Always looking your best, you have a charm that goes beyond mere clothes. **You stand up for your rights**, and maintain your own space like a fortress, and you never depend on anybody, but **you will go out of your way** to help others provided they don't intrude on your privacy.

You are forthright, honest and brave, and love to protect anyone weaker than yourself. You make an exciting friend, but keep part of yourself always private. Roosters get on well with Oxen, Dragons, Snakes and Pigs, but less well with Tigers, Rabbits, Horses and Sheep.

**Dog** - If you are a Dog, above all else, you worry. Whatever your circumstances, you are always anxiously trying to do better, worrying in case you have forgotten something, and doing your very best **to live up to your responsibilities**. **Conscientious to a fault**, you never abandon your duty, and you are always loyal and honest, but you do tend to see the black side of everything, and wear an air of melancholy.

You don't really enjoy social occasions, but if it is required of you, you will go to a party and **put on such a good front** that no one will ever know your true feelings. You like everything to be safe and secure, the way you've always known it. You will help your friends at all times. You will get on well with Rats, Oxen, Snakes, and Pigs, and may have difficulty with Dragons and Horse.

**Pig** - If you were born in a Year of the Pig, you probably think well of everyone. You don't worry about things, you let life take its course, and you're calm and laid back. Your philosophy is to enjoy life to the full, and you are sure that all will be well in this best of all worlds.

You'll give people the benefit of the doubt. Kind and generous, always pleased to help others, especially those in real need, but if someone pushes you beyond the limit, your temper is fearful. Pigs get on well with Tigers, Rabbits, Sheep, Monkeys, Roosters and Dogs, and may have difficulty with Dragons.

1. **a good clue to** a) explanation; b) key to a solution;
2. **steer clear** a) to avoid a person or thing because they may cause problems; b) to take control of a situation;
3. **push yourself to your limits** a) you limit what you can do; b) you do more than you can;
4. **get worked up** a) very excited or upset about smth; b) get more work than you can do;
5. **you're laid back** a) you are relaxed; b) you are defeated
6. **thrive on danger** a) to enjoy succeeding in dangerous situations; b) to be successful; grow rich; turn out well; prosper;
7. **to ward off** a) to attract; b) to protect or to defend;
8. **blunt way of speaking** a) saying exactly what you think without trying to be polite; b) saying what you think but very politely and gently;
9. **with poise and elegance** a) a calm and confident manner with control of your feelings and behaviour; b) and elegant posture;
10. **to get on with** a) to continue doing something; b) to start doing something

*new;*

- 11. to bear a grudge** a) to feel dislike to somebody who harmed you in the past; b) to envy somebody;
- 12. falling out with people** a) to get friendly with people; b) to quarrel with people;
- 13. you will dig in your heels** a) to get friendly with people; b) to quarrel with people;
- 14. you set your mind to** a) you decide to do; b) you decide not to do;
- 15. You stand up for your rights** a) you have difficulty in persuading other people that you are right; b) you fight for your rights;
- 16. you will go out of your way** a) you will do only what you can; b) you will do more than you can;
- 17. to live up to your responsibilities** a) to be as good as other people expect you to be; b) to deserve to be given those responsibilities;
- 18. conscientious to a fault** a) to have too much of a particular good quality; b) so painstaking that other people try to find fault with you;
- 19. to put on such a good front** a) to wear good clothes; b) to pretend;

### Vocabulary

**ingenuity** [indʒi'nju:iti] 1) винахідливість; 2) дотепність, оригінальність

**immortality** [imɔ:'tæliiti] безсмертя, вічність; безсмертя, нев'януuca слава

**endure** [in'dʒʊə] 1) винести, витримати, витерпіти (що-небудь); 2) терпіти, переносити (страждання); мовчки зносити; ставитися терпимо або терпляче (до чого-небудь); 3) виживати, не гинути, стійко триматися; тривати, продовжуватися

**hardship** ['hɑ:dʃɪp] 1) труднощі; неприємності; тяготи; прикрості; негоди; 2) злидні, нестатки

**fuss** [fʌs] 1) нервовий, збуджений стан; 2) суєта, метушня; хвилювання з-за дрібниць

**enraged** [in'reidʒd] розлючений, розгніваний

**fierce** [fiəs] 1) лютий, жорстокий; злий; 2) шалений, сильний

**honourable** ['ɒn(ə)rəb(ə)l] 1) чесний, благородний; 2) шляхетний, знатний; 3) почесний

**revere** [ri'viə] глибоко поважати; шанувати

**savage** ['sævɪdʒ] 1) дикун; варвар; 2) жорстока, люта людина; 3) грубіян, хам; 4) невихований

**treachery** ['tretə(ə)ri] віроломство; зрада, зрада

**falsehood** ['fɔ:lshud] 1) неправда, брехня, обман; 2) брехливість, віроломство

**defuse** [di:'fju:z] 1) знімати зривник (бомби); розрядити (вибухонебезпечну обстановку); зняти гостроту (положення); згладжувати, приглушати, зменшувати; 2) затьмарювати

**menacing** ['menisiŋ] грізний, загрозливий

**ferocious** [fə'rəʊʃəs] 1) жорстокий, лютий; дикий; 2) жахливий, страшений

**inaccessible** [inæk'sesəb(ə)l] недоступний; недосяжний



**cranky** ['kræŋki] 1) розхитаний, несправний (про механізм); 2) роздратований; 3) капризний; з примхами; ексцентричний; 4) слабкий (про здоров'я); 5) звивистий

**genuinely** ['dʒenjuɪnli] щиро, неідробно

**temptation** [temp'teɪʃ(ə)n] спокуса, зваба

**Garden of Eden** райський сад

**eternity** [i'tɜ:nɪti] 1) вічність; 2) вічне життя, безсмертя; загробне життя

**depict** [di'pɪkt] малювати; зображати; описувати, зображувати; утілювати

**poise** [pɔɪz] 1) рівновага, стійкість; 2) урівноваженість; витримка, самовладання; 3) манера триматися; постава; 4) стан нерішучості, вагання; нерозв'язаність, невирішеність

**unstoppable** [ʌnstɒpəb(ə)l] 1) непереборний; непохитний (про прагнення); 2) що не може бути забитим, засміченим, перекритим

**centaur** ['sentɔː] кентавр

**grudge** [ɡredʒ] невдоволення; недобррозичливість; заздрість; причина невдоволення, недобррозичливості; образи

**ingenious** [in'dʒɪ:niəs] 1) винахідливий; майстерний; 2) дотепний, оригінальний

**prankster** ['præŋkstə] жартівник, пустун; бешкетник

**versatile** ['vɜ:sətəɪl] 1) різнобічний; який легко від одного до іншого; 2) непостійний, мінливий; хибкий, хитливий

**waywardness** ['weɪwədnis] норовливість

**intrude** [ɪn'tru:d] вторгатися; безцеремонно втручатися

**forthright** ['fɔ:θ,raɪt] відвертий, прямолінійний; чесний

**conscientious** [kɒnʃi'entʃəs] сумлінний, чесний, свідомий; добросовісний

**abandon** [ə'bændən] відмовлятися; залишати

**envy** ['envi] 1) заздрість; 2) предмет заздрості; 3) заздрити

**deserve** [di'zɜ:v] заслуговувати, бути гідним

**painstaking** ['peɪnz,teɪkɪŋ] 1) старанний; 2) ретельний, копіткий; 3) старання, старанність

**pretend** [pri'tend] 1) прикидатися, робити вигляд; симулювати; грати, прикидатися; удавати з себе; 2) претендувати; 4) зважитися, насмілитися

### 5.13.12. Hermitage Palace is Cat's Whiskers

Generations of Hermitage cats have survived dramatic events. The Hermitage Museum in St Petersburg, Russia, is famous as the palace of Empress Catherine the Great. The greatness of its cats is the less well-known side of its astonishing story. They have been here since the 18<sup>th</sup> Century. Fed up with rodents running through the palace, Empress Elizabeth sent out a decree that the best ratters in Russia should be sent to St Petersburg.

The first to respond are thought to have come from the city of Kazan - then apparently famous for the rat-catching skills of its cats. The cats survived the Napoleonic wars. They lived through the revolution of 1917. Their royal masters, Tsar Nicholas II and his family, died in a hail of Bolshevik bullets the following year.



As Russia turned communist, the cats kept their regal home. They only disappeared during World War II. Hitler's armies laid siege to St Petersburg, then known by its Soviet name, Leningrad. Hundreds of thousands of people perished as for 900 days, the Nazis tried to strangle the life out of the city. The most important items in the Hermitage collection were removed to storage in the Ural mountains, far from the front line. The museum's cellars became bomb shelters. In peacetime, a new generation of cats was welcomed to the palatial surroundings their predecessors had made home. Now, two full-time employees take care of them. Cosy corners of the Hermitage's cellars are their shelter in the depths of the icy Russian winter. They are no longer chosen for their ability to catch rats. Poison has taken that job away from them. They have come here from the streets, and the Hermitage is happy for them to move on to good homes, where they can be found. Officially, there are 50 of them. Museum staff make voluntary contributions to pay for their upkeep. They are considered so important that they even have their own press secretary. Maria Khaltunen combines that role with her job as assistant to the museum's director. While we spoke, one of her charges did its best to leap from her arms. "We like them", she explained. "And all our staff decided to keep up this tradition: to have the cats, and to like them." They may have retired from rat-catching, but a trip to the Hermitage's accounts department shows the cats are still there when a mouse is around. But these days, that's a computer mouse. To be honest, the cats are more likely to be getting in the way than helping. Some have made their home with the book-keepers. They lounge across desks or curl up to snooze in open boxes of printer paper. They are not allowed in the galleries. But that does not mean they are cut off from the artistic atmosphere. Some of them appear perfectly at home among the statues in the Hermitage's gardens and courtyards - even occasionally seeming to strike poses copied from the classical- era art which surrounds them.

### **Vocabulary**

**rodent** ['rəʊd(ə)nt] *гризун*

**ratter** ['rætə] *щуролов*

**respond** [ri'spɒnd] *відповідати*

**hail** [heɪl] *град; потік, град, велика кількість*

**bullet** ['bulɪt] *куля*

**regal** *королівський*

**siege** [si:dʒ] *облога*

**perish** ['perɪʃt] *виснажений, замерзлий, холодний*

**strangle** ['stræŋg(ə)l] *задушити, давити*

**palatial** [pə'leɪʃ(ə)l] *палацовий; розкішний, чудовий*

**predecessor** ['pri:disəsə] *попередник; предок*

**upkeep** [ʌrki:p] *утримання; догляд, обслуговування*

**lounge** [laʊndʒ] *байдикувати, валандатися без діла, тинятися*

### **5.13.13. The Penguin Post Office**

Antarctica is a very cold place for a holiday. It's 700 miles south of Argentina and Chile, but thousands of people come here every day. One of the most popular places to visit is Port Lockroy. They come here to see the Gentoo penguins and visit a

very unusual British post office – the Penguin Post Office. There is a population of 3,000 penguins! The visitors take photos of some of them. They are very cute. Then they go inside. There is a gift shop and everything has got penguins on it. You can buy T-shirts, caps, toys and lots of other things. There are 18,000 visitors every summer. All the visitors want to tell their friends about the Penguin Post Office, so they write postcards. They write about the cold and the snow, and of course, they write about the penguins. Then they can post them in a real British post box. The postcards go all around the world. You have to put a stamp on a postcard. And what have the stamps got on them? Penguins, of course! The penguins are real stars!

**Vocabulary**

*Gentoo penguins* патуанський пінгвін

## 5.14. Different Texts for Reading

### 5.14.1. The Woodcutter

A woodcutter was grinding his axe when a neighbour came along and said: “Why do you grind your axe now? You cannot do to the wood and cut trees in this storm?”

“When the weather is fine I shall not be grinding my axe, I shall be using it”, - answered the woodcutter.

**Vocabulary**

*woodcutter* ['wʊd,kʌtə] дроворуб; лісоруб

*grind* [graɪnd] точити, гострити

*axe* [æks] сокира

### 5.14.2. A Greedy Dog

A dog stole a large piece of meat and run away. He had to cross a little river over which there was a little bridge. Crossing the river he looked down and saw in the water another dog with a large piece of meat. The dog did not know that it was the reflection of him. He dropped his own meat and greedily jumped to have the other, but he did not get any.

### 5.14.3. A Conceited Boy

Edward came home for the holidays; he thought that he was very clever, because he had been at school for a year. At dinner he said to his father: “Daddy, you think that you see two cakes on the plate. I am going to show you that there are three”. Pointing to the first cake Edward said: “This is one, and that is two. If I add the one to the two, I’ll give three”.

“Very well”, said his father, “if what you say is true, I’ll take the first cake, your mother will take the second cake and you may take the third one”.

### 5.14.4. Why was she Angry?

A young man was in love with a beautiful girl.

One day when they were walking in the park near the girl’s house she said to him: “Tomorrow is my birthday; will you come to have dinner with me?”

“Of course, I shall”, said the young man, “and I’ll send you red roses, one rose for each year of your life”.

The same evening the young man went to a florist’s. As the girl was twenty years old, he paid for twenty roses and asked the florist to send them to the girl’s house the next day.

He left her address and a letter full of love.

The florist knew the young man very well because he often bought flowers in his shop.

The florist thought: “The young man is a good customer, my price to roses was too high, and I’ll send thirty roses instead of twenty”. And he did so.

The next morning he sent thirty red roses to the girl. In the afternoon when the young man came to see her, she did not want to speak to him. He was very unhappy and went back home. But he never knew why she was so angry with him?

What do you think about it?

#### 5.14.5. A Dumb Wife

Once there was a man whose wife was dumb and this made him very sad because he loved her very dearly. After some time he went to see a doctor and said “Can you make my wife speak?” “Perhaps, I can” said the doctor, “the operation is difficult, but if I try, I’ll do my best.” “Of course, you may try”, said the husband, “I’ll bring her tomorrow”.

The next day the doctor made the operation and the dumb wife began to speak. She spoke so much and so loudly that in a few hours her husband ran back to the doctor and said “Can you make my wife dumb again?” “No”, said the doctor. “There are many ways to make a dumb woman speak, but no ways to make a woman stop talking”.

“What must I do?” said the man; “I shall soon die if I have to listen to her all day long”. “Well”, said the doctor, “I can’t make her dumb, but I can make you deaf and you will not have to listen to her”. “Very well”, said the man, “you may do so, It will be better than the other way”.

#### Vocabulary

*dumb* [dʌm] німий

*deaf* [def] глухий

#### 5.14.6. The Old Indian is Quite Modern

One day, a small group of tourists came to a part of America where they could see neither villages nor people for many days. At last they met an old Indian. He knew everything about the forest, the animals living in it, the weather and many other things. He could speak English.

“Can you tell us what the weather will be like during the next few days?” one of the tourists asked him.

“Oh, yes”, he said. “Rain is coming. Then will be snow for a day or two, but then the sun will come again and the weather will be fine. It will be very warm.”

“These old Indians didn’t go to school but they know more than we do,” said the man to his friends, Then he turned the old Indian:

“Tell me,” he said, “How do you know all that?” The Indian answered: “I heard it on the radio.”

#### **5.14.7. An American in London**

An American tourist got on a bus in a London street and began to talk loudly to the bus conductor.

“What is the name of that nice little place there?” – “The Law Courts”, answered the conductor. “And how long did it take to build it?” asked the American. “Can’t say it, but I think it took ten years.” “Oh, in America we build very quickly. We could do it in a month.”

Then they came to St. Paul’s Cathedral. “Is that famous old St. Paul’s?” came the American’s questions. “And how long did it take to build it?” - “I have heard it took the builders six or seven years,” said the bus conductor.

“Seven years! – Six months’ work in America. We build very quickly.”

Soon they came to another famous building. “And what fine house is that, my boy?” – “It wasn’t there when I passed three hours ago.”

The American did not know what to say. He stopped asking questions. The conductor was glad.

#### **Vocabulary**

*Law Courts* судові органи; судоустрій

#### **5.14.8. Mark Twain Goes to the Opera**

Mark Twain, the famous American writer, was once invited by his friend to go to the opera. He agreed to go.

The friend was very rich. He and his wife had their own box at the opera.

During the opera the friend’s wife talked all the time. She also talked very loudly. She talked so much that it was often difficult for Mark Twain to listen to the opera.

When the opera was coming to an end, the friend’s wife turned to Mark Twain and said:

“Oh, my dear Mark Twain! I want you so much to be with us again next Friday at the opera. I am sure you will like it – the opera will be Carmen”.

“Thank you very much,” said Mark Twain. “That will be fine. I’ve heard you in today’s opera, but I have never heard you in Carmen.”

#### **5.14.9. Mistake**

Once Mark Twain was travelling in France by train. He was going to a small town near Paris. It was very late at night; he was very tired and wanted to sleep. He asked the conductor to wake him up when they got to that town and went to sleep. It was early morning when he woke up, the train was already in Paris.

Mark Twain was very angry. He run up to the conductor and cried:

“I asked you to wake me up. Why didn’t you do it? I am very angry with you.”

The conductor looked at him for a moment and said:

“You may be very angry, but not as angry as the American whom I put off the train instead of you.”

#### 5.14.10. Golden Dreams

I often go to Mr Sellyer's bookshop to look through new books. One day while I was looking through the books, I watched Mr Sellyer at work. A lady came into the shop and asked for a book.

"Any book or something special?" said Mr Sellyer showing her *Golden Dreams*. "Mr Slush is a famous author and this is his latest book. It is rather interesting to read."

A lady in black entered the shop. Mr Sellyer also gave her *Golden Dreams* saying "A love story, very simple, but sad, of course. When my wife read it she cried all the time".

"Have you any good light reading for vacation?" asked the next customer. Mr Sellyer recommended *Golden Dreams* once more. "The most humorous book of the season," he said. "My wife began laughing the minute she sat at it."

Every customer who entered the shop went away with *Golden Dreams*. To one lady he described it as the reading for a holiday, to another as a book to read on a rainy day and to a fourth as the right book for a fine day.

It was four o'clock and time to go home. But before I left the shop I came up to Mr Sellyer to discuss *Golden Dreams* with him.

"Do you like the book yourself?" I asked.

"I have no time to read every book in my shop."

"But did your wife like the book?"

"I'm not married, sir," answered Mr Sellyer smiling.

#### 5.14.11. An Honest Man (*an English Tale*)

One day a poor woodcutter is cutting a big tree near wide river. Suddenly his old axe slips from his hand and fall into the deep water. He sits on the bank. He is very unhappy. He lost his axe.

Suddenly a nice fairy appears and asks the woodcutter, "What is the matter with you?" "I have lost my only axe."

The fairy shows him a gold axe and says, "Is this yours?" "No", answers the woodcutter

Then the fairy shows him a silver axe and asks in a clear voice, "Is this yours?" "No", answered he again.

Then she shows him an old iron axe with an old wooden handle. "Yes, that's mine", says the happy man. "I know it", says the fairy.

"I only wanted to see if you told me truth. And now I give the axe, the gold axe, the silver axe. You are nice, honest man".

#### 5.14.12. A Forgetful Tourist

An English tourist came to Paris. It was his first visit there. On the same day he sent a telegram to his wife he was in London. In the telegram he told her address of the hotel here he was going to stay. He also told her that he was quite well.

As he was in Paris for the first time, he was very eager to see the places of interest. After dinner he went for a walk and then decided to go to the theatre to see a new play. It was very late when the play was over. It was time to go home.



But at that moment he realized that he couldn't get to the hotel: he didn't remember either the name of the hotel or the address.

The Englishman was at a loss because he did not know what to do. Suddenly he remembered sending that morning a telegram to his wife. So, late at night his wife got a very strange telegram: "Please, send me my address of the hotel at once".

#### **5.14.13. Economy Wasted Trip**

An Englishman (who was in France) wanted to go back to England by sea. But he had very little money. He had so little money that he could pay only for the ticket. As he knew that the trip would last only two days, he decided not to eat during these days.

As he took a ticket and got on the ship the next morning, he tried not to hear the bell for breakfast. When dinnertime came, he was very hungry, but he did not go to the dining room. In the evening he was still hungrier, but when the waiter came to invite him to have supper, the Englishman said that he was ill.

The next day the Englishman was half-dead and could not stand the hunger any longer. "I shall go and even if they kick me out into the sea", said he to himself.

So he went to the ship dining room and had his dinner. In the evening he had supper but was very much afraid of his future because he did not pay for the meals. At last he addressed the waiter and said: "Where is my bill?" "What bill?" asked the waiter. "For the supper and dinner I had in your dining-room." "Don't trouble, sir. You paid for your meals when you bought the ticket."

#### **Vocabulary**

*economy wasted* марна економія

#### **5.14.14. The Philosopher & the Boatman**

The philosopher wished to cross the river which was broad and deep. So he asked the boatman to ferry him across. The boatman agreed and they both got into the boat.

- Tell me, boatman, - the philosopher asked, - have you studied the stars?
- No, never, - the boatman replied.
- Then you wasted a third of your life. Have you studied history?
- I'm afraid, not. I haven't studied mathematics either.
- Then you've lost three quarters of your life.

They rode on till they reached the middle of the river. Just then a big wave hit the side of the boat and overturned it.

- Tell me, philosopher, - the boatman said, - have you learned to swim?
- No, - replied the philosopher.
- Well then, you could lose your whole life. Hold onto my shoulders.

#### **2.15.18. A Chinese Dinner**

Mr Wilson was a London businessman. He had to travel all over the world.

Once he went to China on business. It was his first time there and he did not speak Chinese. In the evening he felt hungry and decided to go to a restaurant. Soon he found a small restaurant which he liked very much, because it was nice, with very clean table cloths and white napkins on the tables.

The waiter did not understand English and so Mr Wilson tried to show with his hands that he was hungry and wanted something to eat. The waiter smiled, he understood.

After some time he brought him some soup. It was excellent. Fifteen minutes later he brought him a plate full of small pieces of meat. Mr Wilson found it very good but he did not know what he was eating. He wanted to find out what kind of meat it was. "Perhaps, it's goose or duck", he thought. Suddenly he had an idea: he took a piece of meat, showed it to the waiter and asked, "Quack, quack?" The waiter smiled and answered, "Bow-wow".

### **2.15.19. Who Killed the Minotaur?**

Between 1600 and 1400 BC, Crete was a great sea power and the Bronze Age civilisation centred there is called Minoan, after Minos, one of the greatest legendary Cretan kings. His capital was Knossos and the nations round about, including Athens, were subject to him. According to the legend, Minos had a Labyrinth made by Daedalus, in which to hide the Minotaur, a monster, half-bull, half-man, which fed on human flesh. Athens was forced to send annually a tribute of seven youths and seven maidens to feed to the Minotaur.

Theseus, son of the King of Athens and one of the greatest of legendary Greek heroes went to Crete with a sacrificial group, determined to slay the Minotaur. There he met Ariadne, the daughter of Minos who fell in love with him. To help him, she gave him a sword and some thread. With the sword Theseus killed the Minotaur, and then followed the thread to escape from the Labyrinth.

#### **Vocabulary**

*subject* ['sebdʒɪkt] підлеглий, залежний, підвладний

*flesh* [fleʃ] тіло; м'ясо

*annually* ['ænjʊəli] щорічно, за рік

*tribute* [tribju:t] дань

*sacrificial* [sækri'fiʃ(ə)l] жертвовний

*slay* [slei] вбивати, умертвляти

### **2.15.20. Mystery of the Girl Who Just Faded Away**

The night was dark and moonless, and Walter Davidson stared in disbelief through his windscreen at the scene illuminated by his car headlights. The trees overhanging the remote country road made things even blacker, but there was no mistaking what Walter Davidson had seen. A girl, naked and bleeding, lay face down by the grass verge. Davidson, an agricultural engineer in his fifties, jammed on his brakes and brought his car to a shuddering stop. It was just before 7 p.m. on a windy November night, and he was returning to his home near Brighton through the Sussex countryside.

Now he had come across something horrifying and violent. Was it an accident? Or particularly brutal murder? He was trembling as he opened his car door and started to run along the deserted road to where the girl lay. He reached the spot and stopped, bewildered. There was nothing there. He returned to the car and manoeuvred the vehicle so that its headlights illuminated the spot where the girl had lain. There

was nothing to be seen, not even a mark of blood although Davidson could swear that he had seen blood dripping down the girl's arms on to the road.

With a torch, he thoroughly searched the nearby hedge and verges without success. Finally, shaken and puzzled, he returned to his car and drove thoughtfully home. Was that incident, in November 1950, purely a figment of his imagination?

“The more I thought about it, the more I was convinced it wasn't”, said Walter Davidson, when I discussed the matter with him some years later. As a result, he eventually contacted a local minister, the Rev.

Ashley Wright, who had conducted numerous exorcisms, and was the local authority on the supernatural. To his surprise, Mr. Wright did not appear astonished when told about the bleeding girl. He knew all about the phenomenon already. For in the previous two years, at least four mysteries had reported seeing a naked girl lying by the roadside at the exact spot where Walter Davidson had seen the spectre.

On one occasion, the matter had been reported to the police who had searched in vain for a body. But in all four instances the drivers involved had no doubts about what they had seen.

One, Ian Nicholson, a farmworker driving home in the twilight on a September evening in 1949, told Mr. Wright:

“When I saw the girl I thought I'd stumbled across a murder. She was quite naked and lying in the grass by the road. There was blood on her back and her arms. I stopped the car and jumped out, but as I approached the body it just seemed to fade away. I stood there just looking down at the empty road. It was the most incredible thing that has ever happened to me, I searched the area thoroughly and found nothing. I wondered whether I should report it to the police, but after all there was really nothing to report. They would think I was mad or drunk, or just having them on.”

Ashley Wright heard a similar story from a salesman who also saw the phantom body in the headlights of his car. Instead of stopping, he drove frantically to the nearest house and phoned the police and the ambulance. “When the emergency services arrived, they found nothing ... and the motorist received a severe ticking off.” Mr. Wright, checking the stories of all the drivers, discovered that they were virtually identical.

None of the motorists knew each other and their reports covered a period of over two years. Their descriptions of the girl, the way she was lying and her position in the road, were always the same. “It seemed to me that it could not be mere coincidence. I decided to make further inquiries. And when I did, the phenomenon became even more remarkable.” He consulted a local historian, Dr. Arthur Beddowes, and found to his astonishment that the road in question had had a notorious reputation in past years.

Mr. Wright explained: “He told me that exactly 300 years earlier, a girl had been robbed, raped and left to die by footpads on the road at that precise spot. Later two men were hanged for the crime, but obviously that wasn't the end of the matter. Early in 1951, after obtaining permission from the Bishop of the diocese, I carried out an exorcism at the roadside. Happily, the spectre of the bleeding girl has not been seen again.

(by John Macklin)

## Vocabulary

**stare** [steə] *нильно дивитися*

**naked** ['neikid] *голий; оголений*

**bleeding** ['bli:diŋ] *який обливається, стікає кров'ю*

**jam** [dʒæm] *затискати; здавлювати*

**accident** ['æksɪd(ə)nt] *нещасний випадок; аварія; катастрофа*

**tremble** ['tremb(ə)l] *тремтіти, трястися*

**bewildered** [bi'wɪldəd] *збентежений, здивований; спантеличений*

**nearby** ['niəbaɪ] *близький, сусідній*

**figment** ['fɪgmənt] *вимисел, вигадка; фікція*

**minister** *священнослужитель*

**the Rev** *католицький священик*

**exorcism** ['eksɔ:sɪz(ə)m] *вигнання нечистої сили, екзорцизм*

**mystery** ['mɪst(ə)rɪ] *таємниця; таємничість*

**spectre** ['spektə] *примара, привид, фантом*

**twilight** ['twaɪlaɪt] *сутінки*

**stumble** ['stemb(ə)l] *спотикатися, оступатися; іти спотикаючись*

**murder** ['mɜ:də] *ббивство*

**fade away** *поступово зникати, згасати*

**frantically** ['fræntɪk(ə)lɪ] *несамовито, шалено*

**mere coincidence** *звичайне співпадіння*

**notorious** [nə(u)'tɔ:riəs] *сумно відомий; горезвісний*

**raped** *звалтована*

**footpad** ['fʊtpæd] *розбійник (піший)*

**permission** [pə'mɪʃ(ə)n] *дозвіл*

**Bishop** ['bɪʃəp] *Єпископ*

**diocese** ['daɪəsɪs] *єпархія*

## 2.16. Meals

### 2.16.1. English Food

English cooking is heavy, substantial and plain. The ideal English breakfast consists of cereals, either porridge, or cornflakes, with milk and sugar, followed by bacon and eggs, or sausages and tomatoes, toasts and marmalade, and finally of course a cup of tea or coffee. For a change they can have a boiled egg, cold ham or fish.

Tea is part of the prose of British life, as necessary as potatoes or bread. It must be made “just like mother makes it”, one teaspoonful of tea for each person and one “for the pot”. Boiling water is added and the tea is allowed to stand, brew or draw. It is drunk with or without sugar but almost always with milk.

The midday meal is called lunch. This meal consists on weekdays, for example, of stew, fried fish, chops, liver or sausages, and some kind of vegetables, usually carrots, cabbage, peas, and potatoes.

Meat is rather expensive in Britain and the working class tends to buy the cheaper cuts and imported rather than home-produced meat. Rice and macaroni are seldom served.

Vegetables such as carrots, peas, and then cabbage are cooked for long periods in lots of water, then strained and served. The sweet, sometimes called dessert may consist of fruit and the famous steamed or boiled pudding. Another favourite sweet is rice pudding.

There are many varieties of pie. Fruit baked in a covering of pastry with a "lid" is called a pie, without a lid it is called a tart. These pies or tarts are eaten hot or cold, often with custard.

Sunday dinner is a special occasion, a weekend joint of beef or lamb being bought and eaten hot with vegetables. After this there will probably follow a large, heavy pudding with custard, a cup of tea or coffee completes the meal.

Five o'clock tea is a peculiar meal. In upper class circles it is a snack of thin bread and butter and cups of tea with small cakes. Dinner for them follows at seven o'clock and supper some time after nine. For the working class household, however, tea is a fairly substantial meal, often consisting of boiled ham and salad or a boiled egg, bread and butter and jam, and tea. On weekdays some families eat a hot meal in the evening that is at teatime. Supper is usually a snack of bread and cheese and cocoa.

### Vocabulary

**teaspoonful** [ti:spu:nfʊl] чайна ложка (чогось)

**pot** [pɒt] горщик; казанок; (висока) каструля; банка; кухоль

**brew** [bru:] варити (пиво); готувати (пунш); заварювати (чай)

**stew** [stju:] тушковане м'ясо, тушонка; мішанина, каша, усяка суміш

**chop** [tʃɒp] відбивна котлета

**steamed** приготований на парі

**pastry** ['peɪstri] борошняні кондитерські вироби; здобне тісто

**lid** [lɪd] кришка

**custard** ['kʌstəd] рідкий заварний крем

### Let's Have a Cup of Tea

At eight o'clock in the morning  
For our breakfast we'll see  
Cornflakes and buttered toast –  
And let's have a cup of tea!

At one o'clock it's lunchtime,  
And for lunch there'll be  
Sausage and mashed potatoes –  
And let's have a cup of tea!

At five o'clock in the afternoon  
There'll be food for you and me:  
Cream cakes and sandwiches –  
And let's have a cup of tea!

At seven o'clock in the evening  
A lovely supper we'll see:  
Chips, peas and fish fingers –  
And let's have a cup of tea!

At ten o'clock at night  
We'll have a piece of bread,  
And I'll make a cup of tea,  
And then we'll go to bed!



### **2.16.2. Tea**

**Tea for health: the facts** - Most people enjoy tea on a daily basis. But did you know that you also get great health benefits from drinking just 4 cups of tea a day?

A number of research studies conducted over the past few years have shown a range of health benefits from drinking everyday tea.

As well as contributing towards your daily fluid requirement, drinking tea can offer some protection against heart disease and some cancers.

Recent research has shown that tea is a good source of antioxidants. Antioxidants may help to protect against Alzheimer's and other age-related, memory impairments.

And there's no need to worry about caffeine: the amount contained in the typical daily intake of tea for an adult does not present a problem - in fact it can have benefits.

Antioxidants advice:

- Like fruit and vegetables, tea is a natural source of flavanoids that generate antioxidant activity. In fact, there is more than twice "antioxidant" power in a cup of tea, than there is in one apple.

- A large body of research indicates that antioxidants can have a protective effect against some cancers and can help prevent heart disease and strokes.

- Both green and black teas offer similar amounts of antioxidant capacity, substantially greater than that of fruit and herbal teas.

**Fluid Facts** - Drinking 4 cups of tea a day is rehydrating, not dehydrating. The water in tea can easily be included in your daily fluid requirements. Normal strength tea does not have a diuretic effect unless the amount of tea consumed at one sitting contains more than 250-300 mg caffeine, which is equivalent to between 5 and 6 cups of tea. In fact, due to the volume of fluid that is drunk whilst enjoying "cuppa", the British Dietetic Association advises that tea can contribute towards the daily-recommended intake of 1.5 to 2 litres.

**Counting Caffeine** - 4 cups of tea per day offer good health benefits without the contraindications of other caffeine-containing drinks. 4 cups of tea contain only moderate amounts of caffeine. Moderate amounts of caffeine throughout the day can increase concentration, thereby improving performance. You will take in significantly less caffeine by drinking your normal cup of tea than if you were drinking a typical instant coffee and much less than if you were drinking a "coffee-shop-coffee".

**Treat for Teeth** - Tea is a natural source of fluoride and delivers 45% of your daily requirement if you drink 3 to 4 cups a day. Regular intake of fluoride protects against tooth decay and gum disease in both adults and children. A dry mouth can lead to tooth decay. A regular fluid intake, like tea, helps to prevent the mouth from becoming too dry.

The typical cup of tea contains less than half the level of caffeine of a typical coffee. One cup contains only around 50 mg.

Tea without milk has no calories. Using semi-skimmed milk adds 13 calories a cup, but you also benefit from valuable minerals like calcium.

4 cups of tea with milk provide you with 16% of your daily calcium requirement.

In hot weather tea refreshes you by raising the body temperature momentarily causing perspiration, which cools the skin.

*Enjoy your tea!*

### **Vocabulary**

**memory impairments** [im'preəmənt] порушення пам'яті

**intake** ['inteik] споживання

**heart stroke** приступ стенокардії

**dehydrate** [di:'haɪdreɪt] зневоднювати, дегідратувати; втрачати воду

**diuretic** [daɪju'retɪk] сечогінний

**whilst** [waɪlst] = **while**

**contraindication** [kɒntrəɪndi'keɪʃ(ə)n] протипоказання

**coffee-shop-coffee** магазин "кава-чай"

**fluoride** ['flu(ə)raɪd] фториста сполука, фторид

**tooth decay** карієс зубів

**gum disease** пародонтит

### **More facts**

- A cup of tea settles your stomach.
- Eating cheese at night makes you dream.
- Meat helps you have a strong and healthy body by providing protein.
- Drinking coffee keeps you from sleeping.
- Eating carrots is good for the eyes.
- Bread gives you energy protein, iron, and several B vitamins.
- Fish is good for the brain.
- Fats and sugars - fast sources of energy.

### **2.16.3. A Nice Cup of Tea**

It does not matter what the problem is, for the British the answer is often the same: "Let's have a nice hot cup of tea". Coffee has become very popular in Britain in recent years, but tea is still the national drink. Over 25 million cups of tea are sold every day, and many millions more are made at home.

In 1610, tea was brought from China to Europe. At first it was very expensive so not many people could buy it, but by 1750 it was widely drunk in Britain. By the late eighteenth century, Britain was at the centre of the world tea business and soon afterwards the tradition of taking afternoon tea, either at home or in a tea shop, began. Afternoon tea is a pot of tea, and a light snack (perhaps some small thin sandwiches and a piece of cake) served around four o'clock in the afternoon. A "cream tea" is tea served with scones and cream.

Tea shops became popular with women because they could go there alone, to meet friends.

Since the mid-nineteenth century, tea has been brought to Britain from India, Africa and Sri Lanka as well as China. Today there are over 1,500 different kinds, for example, Assam, Darjeeling, Oolong, Earl Grey and English breakfast. Each one has a different smell and taste.

In the past, the usual way to serve tea was to put a little cold milk in a cup, pour the tea (using a tea-strainer - like a spoon with holes in it - to keep the tea-leaves out)

and then add some sugar. Tea-making has changed a lot in the last few years however. Most people now use tea-bags instead of tea-leaves because it's easier, and many use a mug instead of a cup and saucer. Tea is often made in the mug, without a pot (to save time) and many people no longer add milk and sugar.

Because tea-bags are so popular, the companies who sell them are always trying to make them better. At first tea-bags were square, then round ones were made, and now you can buy three-sided ones! Maybe the way people make tea has changed over the years but in this country of tea-drinkers, many people still use the old Chinese word for tea and like nothing better than to have a *cup of cha* or even just a good old *cuppa*.

### Vocabulary

*Assam* [a'sam] *штат в Індії*

*Darjeeling* [da:'dzi:liŋ] *чай високої якості*

*Oolong* ['u:lɔŋ] *улунг (сорт чорного китайського чаю)*

*tea-strainer* ['ti:streɪnə] *чайне ситечко*

## 2.16.4. Food in the USA

**1. Meal Time** - In the USA meals are usually served at the following times: breakfast: 6.30 - 10.00 a.m., lunch: 11.30- 2.00 p.m., dinner: 5.00 p.m. - 8.00. Breakfast meals can vary from cereal and milk to eggs and pancakes or French toast (slices of bread dipped in an egg and milk batter and fried). Lunch tends to be a lighter meal - a sandwich, yogurt or a lighter entree. Dinner includes a main course of meat, poultry or fish, accompanied by soup, salad, vegetables. Brunch, a common Sunday meal served between 10.00 a.m. and 2.00 p.m., is really a combination of breakfast and lunch.

**2. Common Dishes** - There are a wide variety of food, depending upon which type of restaurant you go to. Some American-style restaurants have a typical menu: appetizers, soups (French onion, chicken, vegetable soup), salads, main courses (steak, fried chicken, fish, hamburger, pasta & pizza); hot & cold sandwiches (combinations of ham, turkey, roast beef, chicken, egg salads, served between two slices of bread), beverage: coffee, tea, soft drinks, mineral water and iced tea), desserts (cakes, ice cream, frozen yogurt, fruit). Breakfast dishes are cold cereal and milk, warm cereal, toast, yogurt, egg, pancakes, French toast.

**3. Pot Luck Supper** - Sometimes when some families get together they have pot luck supper. This is an informal occasion. Invitations can be written or made by phone, and each person is asked to bring a dish of food: starter, main course, salad or vegetable or dessert. The hostess knows how many of each kind of dishes but not exactly what the guests will bring. That's why it is called "pot luck". Guests put their "pot" on the table & served buffet-style.

### 4. Restaurants

Americans eat out often. Fast food restaurants have wide popularity. There are two types of restaurants in the USA: fast food & full service restaurants. The style of fast food restaurants is much like that of cafeteria. People go up to the counter to order their meal: hamburgers, hot chicken, sandwiches, pizza. A typical dinner costs from \$3.00 to \$6.00. People eat 30 - 45 minutes. In full-service restaurants a waiter

comes to take people's order. Dinner can cost from \$10.00 to 50.00. It's expected that people will finish eating and leave restaurant within an hour.

### Vocabulary

**French toast** *грінка, підсмажена в молоці з яйцем*

**brunch** [brʌntʃ] *сніданок-обід, пізній сніданок*

**appetizers** *закуска*

**beverage** *напої*

**pot luck** *все, що є (на обід / вечерю)*

**buffet-style** *шведський стіл*

**full-service restaurants** *повносервісний ресторан*

### 2.16.5. Spanish Menu

It's traditional in Spain to have a siesta or nap after lunch. Particularly in rural areas, you'll find villages apparently deserted from 1 pm until about 3.30 pm while everyone has a little snooze!

When the Spanish feel pucky, they order tapas. This is a selection of light snacks served informally - and quite often eaten with your fingers. See what you think of this traditional tapas snack. Ingredients: a clove of garlic, peeled; two slices of toast; a tin of tuna; red and green pepper cut into slices; olive oil.

Pour two tablespoons of olive oil over the pepper slices and place under a grill until they are well cooked. Don't worry if they burn at the edges - this adds to the flavour! While the peppers cook, rub each slice of toast with garlic. Now mix the tuna and peppers together and pile this mixture on top of the toast. Cut each slice into quarters, drizzle with olive oil and serve.

### Vocabulary

**siesta** [si'estə] *сієста, полуденний відпочинок (у південних країнах)*

**nap** [næp] *короткий сон удень*

**snooze** [snu:z] *короткий сон (удень)*

**pucky** [pʌki] *пустотливий; злий*

**clove** [kləʊv] *зубок (часника)*

**flavour** ['fleivə] *аромат; приємний запах або смак; присмак*

### 2.16.6. Garlic: Nature's Oldest Remedy

Eat garlic and stay healthy. Garlic kills many bugs - sometimes more efficiently than commonly used drugs. It may help protect us against heart disease and may even be of use in mild forms of diabetes. There is also some evidence, they report, and that eating garlic may possibly guard against cancer.

The scientists don't say that garlic is a cure-all, far from it. They admit that it doesn't always work and that much more research is needed. They point out, too, that it may cause a burning feeling in the mouth and stomach and, in especially sensitive people, rashes, flushes, asthma, headaches and depression.

They include remedies and recipes for garlic-based dishes in the book, but warn that if your problem is serious or continues, you should see a professional herbalist.

If you're worried about the smell, herbs such as parsley can help to hide it.

**Vocabulary**

*diabetes* [daɪə'brɪ:tɪz] цукрова хвороба, діабет

*cure-all* панацея

*rashe* [ræʃ] висип, висипання

*parsley* ['pɑ:slɪ] петрушка

**2.16.7. Barbecue**

Throughout the American South and Southwest the word barbecue means “meat that’s been slow-cooked in pits over a cool (not flaming) fire”. In Texas beef is the meat of choice. In Kentucky it’s mutton. But in the Carolinas barbecue almost always means pork. And there are arguments about which cuts to use and whether the meat should be minced, chopped, sliced, or pulled off the bone. Many also have fervent beliefs about the correct barbecue sauce or marinade. Some use vinegar, mixing it with tomatoes or peppers; others swear by mustard-based sauces.

As Southerners and Southwesterners moved to the North and the West, they started barbecuing in their own backyards, using charcoal grills instead of hickory-filled pits and bottled sauces instead of homemade marinades. These days barbecue experts populate the entire country.

**Vocabulary**

*fervent* ['fɜ:v(ə)nt] гарячий, палкий, полум'яний

*charcoal* деревне вугілля

**2.16.8. Eating Habits in UK**

Food traditions and rituals play a central role in all our lives. Some of these are the particular, repeated patterns that we build into our days - hot milk before bedtime, for instance, or biting the chocolate from the edge of a Kitkat. Others are the more mundane, automatic parts of our everyday lives - mealtimes, manners, table-laying, grocery shopping - all of these are ordinary rituals that mark out our waking hours. But food traditions and rituals go beyond the everyday and the personal.

Food takes us back in time, connecting us to the recipes and customs that our families or communities have practiced for generations. Many of us will enjoy family cookery tips that have been handed down through our families by our grandparents and great-grandparents - unique recipes for jams, breads or pickles for instance. Food customs can also play an essential role in binding us together as communities.

It is impossible to imagine an Indian wedding, a Jewish Friday night, a Chinese New Year, an English birthday tea or Christmas day without the inclusion of particular foods. In all these traditions, foods plays a central role in bringing people together to commemorate a special part of the year. However, it is important to remember that traditions do not stay the same forever, but change and adapt over time. For example, many people in England now consider going out for a curry on Friday night a “tradition” and see Indian food as part of the British way of life - but this is a new part of British culture that has only come about in the last few decades.

In Britain, a traditional “turkey” is eaten at Christmas, but this tradition has only existed since Victorian times. Food can also be a powerful way to break with tradition - to eat food that is taboo for your elders, or reject the food your family



cooks in favour of a takeaway for instance, to put our elbows on the table while eating or to lick our knives clean.

Rebellions against tradition continue to force our cultures to evolve and adapt, helping us to try new things and to forge new habits. Over the last century, eating habits in Britain have changed dramatically. Our diets have been influenced by all kinds of factors: by the technologies in our kitchens, by the modes of transport supplying our shops, by the media and the government and by trade and migration.

The eating habits of our parents, grandparents and great-grandparents would be completely unrecognisable to many of us today. Our experiences of shopping and cooking have been transformed as have our attitudes towards health, table manners, “foreign” foods, waste and choice. The British have long been famous for having “boring” food and conservative tastes.

For many British families up until the last few decades, household eating patterns varied little from week to week. A Sunday roast would be followed by a few days of recycled leftovers - cold meat would be crafted into shepherd's pie or rissoles. Fish was traditionally served on Friday, at the point that the leftover meat had run out. Today, many of us enjoy a greater range of foods than ever before. For many of our grandparents, the idea that by 2007, raw Japanese fish would be sold in British supermarkets and widely enjoyed by people around the country would have been laughable.

Nowadays in the UK we are used to eating food from around the world. A lunchtime snack might include sandwiches, spring rolls or pizza. Supermarkets stock food from around the globe - think of tropical fruit like mangoes or passion fruit, sold side-by-side with British apples. Many of the foods we take for granted, such as curries or kebabs, have only been widely available for the last thirty years or so.

Migrants to Britain have helped introduce new flavours and recipes and the rise of affordable air travel and people travelling further for holidays has helped create an appetite for foods from other countries. Today fast food chains are a global phenomenon - fried chicken, burgers and submarine sandwiches are available on the streets of New York, Edinburgh, Paris and Shanghai.

While food shortages are still widespread in many parts of the world, for a lot of people in the West, the idea of eating only three meals a day is a thing of the past. We graze our way through the day, nibbling on crisps or chocolate to keep us going between meals. Obesity is on the rise in many developed and developing countries, including Britain. At the same time, the number of people who are vegetarians and the health and organic food markets are growing.

Where once these eating trends were regarded as alternative, now they are mainstream. From cookery programmes on television to recipes in magazines and on websites, we're bombarded with advice on what and how to cook. But who are these programmes and publications aimed at? Do you think these are an indication that people spend more or less time cooking than in the past?

### **Vocabulary**

***mundane*** [men'dein] *земний; мирський; світський*

***takeaway*** ['teikə(,)wei] *що відпускається додому (про готові блюда); що відпускає (обіди) додому (про ресторан)*

**rebellion** [ri'beljən] *опір, протидія (чому-небудь); протест (проти чого-небудь)*

**evolve** [i'vɒlv] *розвивати, розгортати; виділяти; випускати, видавати*

**leftovers** ['left,əʊvə] *залишок; залишки їжі; недоїдки*

**rissole** ['risəʊl] *січена котлета; фрикаделька; пиріжок з м'ясною або рибною начинкою, обсмажений у маслі*

**flavour** ['fleivə] *аромат; приємний запах або смак; букет (вина, чаю); присмак; відтінок; особливість; пікантність, ізіюминка*

**affordable** [ə'fɔ:dəb(ə)l] *можливий; припустимий; відповідно до своїх статків*

**obesity** [əʊ'bi:siti] *огрядність, ожиріння; надмірна повнота*

**indication** [indi'keɪʃ(ə)n] *ознака, симптом, знак, вказівка; показання*

## 2.17. Cook Yourself

### 2.17.1. Slices of Toast

**Ingredients:** 4 slices of white bread; 50 gr of butter; 50 gr of jam.

**Directions:** Cut 4 slices of white bread. Put them in the toaster. Wait a minute. Put the toasts on your plate. Put some butter on them and some jam on top.

### 2.17.2. Scrambled Eggs

**Ingredients:** 3 eggs; 50 gr. of milk; 50 gr of grated cheese; pepper; salt; oil; parsley.

**Directions:** Break three eggs and drop them in the bowl. Add some salt and some milk. Beat the eggs. Oil the pan. Heat the pan on the cooker. Pour the egg mixture into the pan and cook it. Sprinkle salt and pepper. Top with grated cheese. Serve hot, garnish with parsley.

#### Vocabulary

**garnish** *гарнірувати*

### 2.17.3. Potatoes

**Ingredients:** 400 g of cooked, drained, halved potatoes, ½ cup of salad dressing, ¼ cup of chopped dill pickles, 1 tbsp of chopped fresh dill

**Directions:** Fold together four ingredients. Add pepper. Serve at room temperature.

#### Vocabulary

**dill** [dɪl] *крин*

### 2.17.4. Recipe of an Apple Pie

**Ingredients:** 3 apples, 200 gr of butter; 100 gr of sugar; 500 gr of flour; 1 glass of milk; 3 eggs; salt; vanilla.

**Directions:** Mix flour, salt, vanilla, butter, sugar, milk and eggs. Peel and cut apples. Add apples to mixture. Pour it into the oiled pan and bake 45-55 min in a hot oven.

### 2.17.5. Apricot Baked Ham

**Ingredients:** 1 (5 pound) fully-cooked ham, ½ cup apricot preserves, 3 tablespoons dry mustard, ½ cup packed light brown sugar.

**Directions:** Score the surface of the ham with shallow diamond-shaped cuts. Combine preserves and mustard; spread over ham. Pat brown sugar over apricot mixture. Place ham on a rack in a roasting pan. Bake at 200 degrees for 20 minutes per pound.

#### Vocabulary

*apricot preserves* абрикосове варення

*pat* поплескувати; шльопати; погладити

*rack* підставка

*score* робити зарубки, проводити лінію

*shallow* неглибокий

### 2.17.6. Easter Eggs

**Ingredients:** 1 processed cheese; 6 crab sticks; 2 hard-boiling eggs; garlic; mayonnaise; 10 olives; 10 kernels of nuts; pepper; multicoloured coco shavings; leaves of salad.

**Directions:** Grate the smelting cheese, eggs and crab sticks. Add trampled garlic and mayonnaise. Mix all together. Roll up egg-shaped balls. Lay the olive/kernel of nut in the middle of each ball. Roll in the multicoloured coco shavings.

Serve on the salad leaves, garnish with parsley.

### 2.17.7. Hot Marinated Mushrooms

**Ingredients:** 25 g of butter, 375 g of mushrooms. 2 tbsp of lemon juice, 1 tsp of lemon (grated), 1 tsp of honey, 1 tsp of mustard, salt and pepper.

**Directions:** Put the butter in a saucepan and melt it. Add the mushrooms and cook for five minutes. Mix the dressing ingredients together. Remove the pan from the heat and pour the dressing. Serve hot.

### 2.17.8. Holiday Jelly

**Ingredients:** 1 large box of Raspberry gelatin (may use sugar free); 1 can cranberry sauce; cup sour cream; cups boiling water

**Directions:** Mix the jelly with 2 cups boiling water until dissolved. Do not add cold water. Chill until just set. Mix jelly with cranberry sauce with electric mixer. Add sour cream. Pour into a greased mould and chill until completely set. Don't mould before serving.

#### Vocabulary

*jelly* ['dʒɛlɪ] желе; холодець; конфітюр

*mould* ['məʊld] формочка для пудингу

### 2.17.9. Scones

**Ingredients:** 100 gr of flour; 50 gr of baking powder; 50 gr of butter; 100 gr of sugar; 100 gr of raisins; 3 eggs; 50 gr of milk.

**Directions:** Mix 100 gr of flour and 50 gr of baking powder. Add 50 gr of butter,

100 gr of sugar, 100 gr of raisins, 3 eggs and 50 gr of milk. Roll out the pastry to about 1 sm. thick. Cut into rounds.

Bake 15-20 min. in a hot oven.

### 2.17.10. Cranberry Sauce with Walnuts

**Ingredients:** 2 cups cranberries; 1/2 cup apple juice; 1/4 cup orange juice; 1/2 cup sugar; 1 teaspoon grated orange rind; 1/2 cup walnuts, chopped; a few large pieces of walnut for garnish (if desired)

**Directions:** Combine apple juice, orange juice, and sugar. Stir until sugar begins to dissolve. Add cranberries. Simmer until cranberries pop (about 5 minutes). Remove from heat and stir in rind and chopped walnuts. Cool to room temperature and then chill. Garnish with walnut pieces if desired.

#### Vocabulary

*chill* охолоджувати

*simmer* кип'ятити

### 2.17.11. Cream Cheese Turnovers

**Ingredients:** 2 cups flour; 1/4 tablespoon salt; 1 cup soft butter, 230g soft cream cheese, icing sugar, red jam or jelly.

**Directions:** Sift together flour and salt. Mix butter and cream cheese until light and fluffy. Blend in the flour mixture. Roll to 0,3 centimetre thickness on board sprinkled with icing sugar. Cut into circles. Drop 1/2-1 teaspoon red jam or jelly in the centre of each circle.

Fold over once so that the edges meet and press lightly in the middle.

Place on ungreased baking tray. Bake at 190° for 8-10 minutes. When cool, sprinkle top with icing sugar. Keep in airtight container and refrigerate.

#### Vocabulary

*airtight* ['eə, taɪt] герметичний

*fluffy* м'який; пухнастий

*grease* змазувати, замаслювати

*icing sugar* цукрова глазур

*sprinkle* бризкати

*turnover* напівкруглий або трикутний пиріг з начинкою

### 2.17.12. Vanilla Cookies

**Ingredients:** 1 cup flour; 3/4 cup butter; 1/4 cup sugar; 1/3 cup ground almonds; 1 teaspoon vanilla extract; icing sugar.

**Directions:** Work all ingredients together on a board to form dough. Leave for 20 minutes in a refrigerator. Grease a baking tray. Roll out thinly and cut into crescent shapes. Bake for 10 minutes in moderate oven. While still warm, dust with icing sugar.

#### Vocabulary

*crescent* ['kres(ə)nt] що-небудь, що має форму півмісяця

*dough* [dəʊ] тісто

### 2.17.13. Lemon Fruit Cake

**Ingredients:** 450g butter; 1 cup sugar; 5 large eggs; 1 3/4 cups flour; 60g pure lemon extract; 450g glazed pineapple; 300g glazed cherries; 4 cups shelled peanuts; 1/2 teaspoon baking powder.

**Directions:** Cream butter, adding sugar slowly, and beat until fluffy. Beat eggs; blend into butter mixture. Measure flour. Chop fruit and nuts and mix with part of flour. Sift together remaining flour and baking powder; add flavouring and fold into the egg-butter mixture. Mix well. Pour into greased, paper lined pan. Place in cold oven, set oven controls at 120 degrees, and bake for 3 hours.

#### Vocabulary

**glazed** [gleizd] глазуrowаний

**shelled** [ʃeld] чищений, без шкарлупи; очищений

**baking powder** розпушувач

**sift** [sift] просіювати

**paper lined pan** форма для випікання, вистелена папером

### 2.17.14. Iced Watermelon with Berries & Mint

**Ingredients:** 2 cups of watermelon pieces, rinds removed, 1/2 cup of blackberries, 1/2 cup of red currants, 1 tbsp of lime juice, 1/2 tsp of granulated fructose, 5 mint leaves.

**Directions:** Combine watermelon, blackberries and currants in a bowl. Sprinkle on the lime juice, fructose and mint leaves and toss very gently. Allow to sit while the fruit release their juice about 30 minutes. Add ice cubes. Serve cold.

#### Vocabulary

**iced** [aist] охолоджений льодом

**rinds** [raind] знімати шкірку

**blackberry** ['blækb(ə)rɪ] 1) ожина 2) чорна смородина

**red currant** червона смородина

**tbsp = tablespoonful**

**tsp = teaspoonful**

**fructose** ['frʌktəʊs] фруктоза

**sprinkle** ['sprɪnk(ə)l] бризкати, кронити, посипати

**toss** [tɒs] кидати



## CHAPTER VI

### JOKES

#### 6.1. English Humour

##### Lost Cake

**Mummy:** Where is the cake that I put on the table?

**John:** I gave it to a hungry little boy, mummy.

**Mummy:** That was very nice of you. Who was that little boy?

**John:** I was.

##### Nick is Surprised

**Hick:** Look at that man, mummy. He has no hair on the head.

**Mother:** Hush, dear! He may hear you.

**Nick:** And does not he know it?

##### What is Older?

**Boy (to an old man):** Why is your beard black and your hair white?

**An old man:** It is because my head is twenty years older than my beard.

##### A Chatterbox

**Ann (looking in the looking-glass):** What a small mouth I have! No wonder all people say I cannot hold my tongue.

##### A Meal for Breakfast

**Teacher:** Tommy, why don't you wash your face? I can see what you had for breakfast this morning.

**Tommy:** What was it?

**Teacher:** Eggs.

**Tommy:** Wrong, teacher, that was yesterday.

##### Pleasure or Mustard

**Waiter:** What would you like for dinner, sir?

**Bob:** A hamburger.

**Waiter:** With pleasure.

**Bob:** No, with mustard.

##### How Bobby Helped his Mother

**Bobby:** Mother made a short for me and I helped her.

**Granny:** How did you help?

**Bobby:** I sat still.

##### Who Broke the Window?

**Man:** Danny, did you see, who broke my window?

**Danny:** No, but have you seen my soccer ball?

### Who Wrote "Hamlet"?

One day an inspector came to visit a small country school. Not only the children but also the teachers were very much afraid of him.

At the lesson in a loud and terrible voice the inspector asked a little boy the question: "Who wrote "Hamlet"?" "Not I, sir", said the boy.

The inspector was not angry, he laughed at this joke.

After the lessons the inspector spoke with the schoolmaster, to whom he told the joke. The schoolmaster smiled, scratched his head and said: "I know that little rascal, may be he wrote it after all".

### The Best Time for Apples

One day in a country school the schoolmaster said to the boys:

"In a year there are four seasons: spring, summer, autumn, and winter. In spring there are many flowers, in summer it is very hot, in autumn there are all kinds of fruits, in winter it is very cold and there is much snow. Now, James, you do not listen, stand up, and tell me, please, what is the best time for apples?"

"It is when the farmer is not at home and there is no dog in the garden!"

### Food Fun

<i>chicken</i>	<i>not my cup of tea</i>
<i>ham (позануй (актор))</i>	<i>milk</i>

### Fill in the gaps with a phrase from the list

1. He invited me to a *Metallica* concert, but I refused. Heavy metal is \_\_\_\_\_ .
2. Robin Williams' performance was awful. He's such a \_\_\_\_\_ actor.
3. I crashed my parents' car because I wasn't paying attention to the road. Well, it's too late to do anything now, it's no use crying over spilt \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Jim is such a \_\_\_\_\_, he's 17 and he's still afraid of the dark.

### Bobby is Busy with his Brother

**Mother:** Bobby, what are you doing?

**Bobby:** Nothing, Mummy.

**Mother:** And is your little brother with you?

**Bobby:** Yes, Mummy.

**Mother:** What is he doing?

**Bobby:** He is helping me.

### Why does Bobby's Brother Cry?

**Woman:** How old is your brother?

**Bobby:** He is two months old.

**Woman:** How does he behave?

**Bobby:** He cries all night.

**Woman:** Why is that, do you think?

**Bobby:** Perhaps he thinks he has missed something on TV.

### **Bobby Plays the Zoo**

**Bobby:** Granny, please come and play with me.

**Granny:** And what am I doing to do?

**Bobby:** I'll be a bear in the Zoo, and you'll be an old lady who gives sweets to the bears.

### **At the Table**

**Mother:** Bobby, darling, please do not scratch your nose with your spoon when you are eating.

**Bobby:** Well, Mummy, I won't. May I do that with my fork then?

### **Bobby's Father is a Teacher**

**Bobby:** What's your father, Bobby?

**Friend:** My father's a school-teacher.

**Bobby:** That's a good profession. Does he like it?

**Friend:** He has only one thing to complain about.

**Bobby:** What's that?

**Friend:** The children.

### **Some Teachers are Strange**

**Helen:** Our teacher of history is a very strange person.

**Friend:** Why do you think so?

**Friend:** She asked me to tell about the things that happened 400 years before I was born. How can I know about them?

### **Alphabet**

**Teacher:** What comes after the letter A?

**Pupil:** The rest of the alphabet.

### **The Perfect Son**

**Helen:** I have the perfect son.

**John:** Does he smoke?

**Helen:** No, he doesn't.

**John:** Does he drink whiskey?

**Helen:** No, he doesn't.

**John:** Does he ever come home late?

**Helen:** No, he doesn't.

**John:** I guess you really do have the perfect son. How old is he?

**Helen:** He will be six months old next Wednesday.

### **Bobby Comes Home after his First Day at School**

**Bobby:** I can write! I can write!

**Father:** What did you write?

**Bobby:** How can I know? I can't read.

### **Different Age**

A young boy refused to do his homework, and his father was trying to convince him to do it. He said to his son: “When Abe Lincoln was your age, he was studying books by the light of the fireplace.”

The son replied: “When Lincoln was your age, he was President!”

### **Wrong Number**

A teenage girl had been talking on the phone for about half an hour, and then she hung up. “Wow!”, said her father, “That was short. You usually talk for two hours. What happened?” “Wrong number”, replied the girl.

### **A Working Day of Principal**

Early one morning, a mother went in to wake up his son.

**Mother:** Wake up, son. It’s time to go to school!

**Son:** But why, Mom? I don’t want to go.

**Mother:** Give me two reasons why you don’t want to go.

**Son:** Well, the kids hate me for one, and the teachers hate me, too!

**Mother:** Oh, that’s no reason not to go to school. Come on now and get ready.

**Son:** Give me two reasons why I should go to school.

**Mother:** Well, for one, you’re 52 years old. And for another, you’re the Principal!

### **Odd Medicine**

**Doctor:** Have you been taking the medicine I gave you for your memory loss?

**Old Man:** No, I forgot.

**Doctor:** If you don’t take the medicine, you won’t fix your problem.

**Old Man:** What problem?

### **Physics Law**

At a physics lesson the teacher asks the children about the effects of heat and cold on the body.

“Heat makes things bigger and cold makes things smaller”, answers a bright boy.

“Quite right”, says the teacher, “can you give an example?”

“In summer when it is hot the days are longer, but in winter when it is cold, the days are shorter”, answers the boy.

### **The Shorter the Better**

A famous English doctor hated to hear his patients speak about their illnesses. He always asked them to be brief and to the point. Once a woman who had burnt her hand came to him and said “A burn”.

“A compress”, was the doctor’s reply. The next day the woman came again and said “Better”. “The same”, replied the doctor. A week later, the woman came and asked “Your fee?” – “None”, said the doctor. “I’d like all my patients to be as sensible as you are, madam”

### Bad & Worse News

**Doctor:** I have some bad news and some even worse news.

**Patient:** What's the bad news?

**Doctor:** You have 24 hours to live.

**Patient:** What could be worse than that?

**Doctor:** I was supposed to tell you yesterday.

### Importance of the Foreign Language Learning

A family of mice were surprised by a big cat. Father Mouse jumped and and said, "Bow-wow!" The cat ran away. "What was that, Father?" asked Baby Mouse. "Well, son, that's why it's important to learn a second language."

## 6.2. Time for Fun

### Next Higher Number

*(a funny trick)*

You can try this funny trick on your friend.

Tell your friend a number and ask him to give you at once the correct next higher number. Then tell him that he may not always be able to do it.

Begin with an easy number, like 49, to which he will answer "Fifty". Then say "99". He will say "A hundred". Then give him "Nine thousand and ninety-nine (9 099)". It is almost certain that he will answer "Ten thousand".

In a moment he will understand that the correct answer is "Nine thousand one hundred (9 100)", of course.

### Number 9

*(a funny trick)*

You are an artist.

You are asked to write the numbers from 1 to 100 on the doors of a hotel. How many times you will write the number 9?

Answer: **20 times (9, 19, 29, 39, 49, 59, 69, 79, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99)**

### Move the Coin

*(a puzzle)*

Put two ten-kopeck coins and one-kopeck coin on the table (one-kopeck coin must be between the ten-kopeck coins).



Tell your friend that he will not be able to put one of the ten-kopeck coins in the middle instead of the one-kopeck coin. Then tell your friend that:

a) he may move the left ten-kopeck coin, but he must not touch it;



- b) that he may move and touch the right ten-kopeck coin;
- c) that he may touch the one-kopeck coin, but he must not move it;

When your friend tells you that he is not able to solve this problem, do the following.

Put your left middle finger on the one-kopeck coin. Then put your right forefinger and middle finger on the right ten-kopeck coin and move it to the right. Then move this coin quickly to the left against the one-kopeck coin. This will make the left ten-kopeck coin move to the left, and there will be place in which you can put the right ten-kopeck coin.

### **Riddles**

1. If yesterday two weeks ago was Saturday, what day will be tomorrow?
2. Why do white sheep eat more grass than black sheep?
3. Which burns longer – a candle in a draughty room or a candle in a non-draughty room?
4. What does a cat have that no other animals have?
5. What question can you never answer “Yes”?
6. In what month do children talk the least?
7. How many eggs can the giant eat on an empty stomach?
8. What never asks a question, but you must always answer it?

### **Key**

1. *Monday.*
2. *Because there are more white sheep in the world.*
3. *Both burns shorter.*
4. *Kittens.*
5. *“Are you sleeping?”*
6. *In February. Because it is the shortest month of the year.*
7. *One, after which his stomach is not empty.*
8. *A telephone.*

### **Riddles**

There was a little green house,  
And in the little green house  
There was a little brown house,  
And in the little brown house  
There was a little yellow house,  
And in the little yellow house  
There was a little white house,  
And in the little white house  
There was a little heart.

### **Key**

*A walnut.*

## **ENGLISH ALPHABET**

Aa [ei]

Nn [en]

Bb [bi:]

Oo [ou]

Cc [si:]

Pp [pi:]

Dd [di:]

Qq [kju:]

Ee [i:]

Rr [ɑ:]

Ff [ef]

Ss [es]

Gg [dʒi:]

Tt [ti:]

Hh [eitʃ]

Uu [ju:]

Ii [ai]

Vv [vi:]

Jj [dʒei]

Ww [ˈdʌblju]

Kk [kei]

Xx [eks]

Ll [el]

Yy [wai]

Mm [em]

Zz [zed]

## UKRAINIAN-ENGLISH transliteration

Правила українсько-англійської транслітерації прийняті 19 квітня 1996 р. українським правовим термінологічним комітетом (Рішення № 9).

	Ukrainian letter	English letter	Note	Example
1	А	A		Алушта - Alushta
2	Б	B		Борщагівка - Borschahivka
3	В	V		Вишгород - Vyshhorod
4	Г	H gh	H - in most cases, gh - when recreating the combination "зг"	Гадяч - Hadiach; Згорани - Zghorany
5		G		Галаган - Galagan
6	Д	D		Дон - Don
7	Е	E		Рівне - Rivne
8	Є	Ye ie	Ye - at the beginning of the words, ie - in other positions	Єнакієво - Yenakiievo; Наєнко - Naienko
9	Ж	Zh		Житомир - Zhytomyr
10	З	Z		Закарпаття - Zakarpattia
11	И	Y		Медвин - Medvyn
12	І	I		Іршава - Irshava
13	Ї	Ii i	Ii - at the beginning of the words, i - in other positions	Їжакевич - Yizhakevych; Кадіївка - Kadiivka
14	Й	Y i	Y - at the beginning of the words, i - in other positions	Стрий - Stryi; Йосипівка - Yosypivka
15	К	K		Київ - Kyiv
16	Л	L		Лебедин - Lebedyn
17	М	M		Миколаїв - Mykolaiv
18	Н	N		Ніжин - Nizhyn
19	О	O		Одеса - Odesa
20	П	P		Полтава - Poltava
21	Р	R		Ромни - Romny
23	С	S		Суми - Sumy
24	Т	T		Тетерів - Teteriv
25	У	U		Ужгород - Uzhhrod
26	Ф	F		Фастів - Fastiv
27	Х	Kh		Харків - Kharkiv
28	Ц	Ts		Біла Церква - Bila Tserkva
30	Ч	Ch		Чернівці - Chernivtsi
31	Ш	Sh		Шостка - Shostka
32	Щ	Sch		Гоща - Noscha
33	Ь	‘		Русь - Rus`; Львів - L`viv
34	Ю	Yu iu	Yu - at the beginning of the words, iu - in other positions	Юрій - Yurii; Крюківка - Kriukivka
35	Я	Ya ia	Ya - at the beginning of the words, ia - in other positions	Яготин - Yahotyń; Ічня - Ichnia
36	‘	ia		Знам`янка - Znamianka

	Спрощення	Точно
ьй - і ьо - о	Львів - Lviv	L`viv
	Ананьїв - Ananiv	Anan`iv
	Стеф`юк - Stefiuk	Stef`iuk
	Короп`є - Koropie	Korop`ie

## SPELLING

### Утворення дієслів у формі теперішнього неозначеного часу

1) дієслова, які закінчуються на приголосний: **m, n, p, s, v** + **-y** мають закінчення **-ies** у формі III-ї особи однини:

<u>carry</u>	it <u>carries</u>
<u>try</u>	he <u>tries</u>
<u>deny</u>	she <u>denies</u>

2) якщо **-y** стоїть після голосного **a, e, i, o, u**:

<u>buy</u>	it <u>buys</u>
<u>say</u>	he <u>says</u>
<u>employ</u>	she <u>employs</u>

3) винятки:

<u>go</u>	<u>goes</u>
<u>do</u>	<u>does</u>
<u>have</u>	<u>has</u>
<u>be</u>	<u>am, is, are</u>

### Утворення **-ing** - форми

1) „німа” **-e** на кінці слова:

<u>ride</u>	<u>riding</u>
<u>come</u>	<u>coming</u>
<u>take</u>	<u>taking</u>

2) приголосний **d, m, r, t**, після голосного під наголосом подвоюється:

<u>run</u>	<u>running</u>
<u>grab</u>	<u>grabbing</u>
<u>permit</u>	<u>permitting</u>
<u>prefer</u>	<u>preferring</u>

3) якщо кінцевий приголосний не під наголосом, подвоєння немає:

<u>enter</u>	<u>entering</u>
<u>profit</u>	<u>profiting</u>

4) якщо дієслово закінчується на **-ie**:

<u>lie</u>	<u>lying</u>
<u>tie</u>	<u>tying</u>

5) **-l** в кінці слова після голосного подвоюється:

<u>travel</u>	<u>travelling</u>
<u>cancel</u>	<u>cancelling</u>

6) до **-c** в кінці слова після голосного додається приголосний **k - ck**:

<u>picnic</u>	<u>picnicking</u>
---------------	-------------------

Німі букви

1.	- в кінці слів: <b>e - bake</b> [beik]; <b>make</b> [meik]
2.	- перед <b>n</b> : <b>k - know</b> [nou]; <b>knee</b> [ni:]
3.	- перед <b>n</b> : <b>g - gnaw</b> [no:]
4.	- після <b>m</b> : <b>b - bomb</b> [bom]
5.	- перед <b>r</b> в середині та часто в кінці слів: <b>w - write</b> [rait]; <b>gh - high</b> [hai] <b>straight</b> [streit]
6.	- “німа” <b>w</b> , якщо після сполучення іде буква <b>o</b> , в інших випадках “німа” <b>h</b> : <b>wh + o - whole</b> [houl] <b>wh + y - why</b> [wai]
7.	- перед <b>t</b> : <b>b - debt</b> [det] <b>p - receipt</b> [ri'si:t]



## HUNDRED PHRASES TO SPEAK ENGLISH ABROAD

1. <i>Hello / Good bye</i>	<i>Привіт / До побачення</i>
2. <i>Good morning! / Good afternoon! / Good evening!</i>	<i>Добрий ранок! / Добрий день! / Добрий вечір!</i>
3. <i>Please та thank you</i>	<i>Будь ласка та дякую</i>
4. <i>Sorry</i>	<i>Вибачте</i>
5. <i>I don't understand.</i>	<i>Я не розумію.</i>
6. <i>Please speak more slowly.</i>	<i>Будь ласка, говоріть трохи повільніше.</i>
7. <i>Could you repeat that?</i>	<i>Чи не могли б ви повторити?</i>
8. <i>What is your name?</i>	<i>Я вас звати?</i>
9. <i>My name is ....</i>	<i>Мене звати ...</i>
10. <i>Nice to meet you!</i>	<i>Приємно познайомитися!</i>
11. <i>How are you doing?</i>	<i>Як справи?</i>
12. <i>Can you help me?</i>	<i>Чи не могли би ви допомогти мені?</i>
13. <i>Let's go to...</i>	<i>Давайте підемо у ...</i>
14. <i>I'm looking for...</i>	<i>Я шукаю...</i>
15. <i>Where is the bathroom, restaurant, museum, hotel, beach, embassy?</i>	<i>Де знаходиться туалет, ресторан, музей, готель, пляж, посольство?</i>
16. <i>How do I get to ...?</i>	<i>Як мені дістатися до...?</i>
17. <i>How do you say this?</i>	<i>Як називається цей предмет?</i>
18. <i>How much is this?</i>	<i>Скільки це коштує?</i>
19. <i>Can I ask you a question?</i>	<i>Чи можна мені запитати?</i>
20. <i>I am from ...</i>	<i>Я з ...</i>
21. <i>Can you help me practice English?</i>	<i>Чи не могли б ви допомогти мені у практиці з англійської мови?</i>
22. <i>Could you write it down on paper?</i>	<i>Чи не могли б ви написати це?</i>
23. <i>What does this word mean?</i>	<i>Що означає це слово?</i>
24. <i>I am hungry.</i>	<i>Я голодний.</i>
25. <i>I am thirsty.</i>	<i>Я хочу пити.</i>
26. <i>I am cold.</i>	<i>Мені холодно.</i>
27. <i>I am feeling sick.</i>	<i>Я погано почуваюся.</i>
28. <i>How do you use this word?</i>	<i>Як використовувати це слово?</i>
29. <i>Did I say it correctly?</i>	<i>Чи правильно я це сказав?</i>
30. <i>What time is it?</i>	<i>Котра година?</i>
31. <i>This food is amazing!</i>	<i>Ця їжа - дивовижна!</i>
32. <i>I need to go now.</i>	<i>Мені час.</i>
33. <i>Today, yesterday and tomorrow</i>	<i>Сьогодні, вчора і завтра</i>
34. <i>Can you give me an example?</i>	<i>Чи не могли б ви навести приклад?</i>
35. <i>Please wait a moment.</i>	<i>Будь ласка, зачекайте хвилинку.</i>
36. <i>Excuse me.</i>	<i>Перепрошую.</i>
37. <i>I'm sorry to bother you.</i>	<i>Пробачте, що я вас турбую.</i>
38. <i>Does anybody here speak Ukrainian / Russian?</i>	<i>Чи розмовляє тут хто-небудь українською / російською мовою?</i>
39. <i>I don't speak English very well.</i>	<i>Я не дуже добре розмовляю англійською.</i>
40. <i>I speak English a little bit.</i>	<i>Я трохи розмовляю англійською.</i>
41. <i>I need an interpreter.</i>	<i>Мені потрібен перекладач.</i>
42. <i>Where can I buy ...?</i>	<i>Де я можу купити ...?</i>
43. <i>That's (too) expensive.</i>	<i>Це дуже (занадто) дорого.</i>
44. <i>I'll take one / it / this.</i>	<i>Я візьму ось це.</i>
45. <i>I like this.</i>	<i>Мені подобається це.</i>
46. <i>I don't like that.</i>	<i>Мені це не подобається.</i>
47. <i>Can I pay by credit-card?</i>	<i>Чи можу я оплатити пластиковою карткою?</i>
48. <i>Can I exchange ...?</i>	<i>Чи можу я обміняти ... ?</i>
49. <i>That's all, thanks.</i>	<i>Це все, дякую.</i>

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

50. <i>Excuse me, where can I get a taxi?</i>	<i>Пробачте, де тут є таксі?</i>
51. <i>This address, please.</i>	<i>За цією адресою, будь ласка.</i>
52. <i>Drive me to the airport / hotel / city center.</i>	<i>Відвезіть мене в аеропорт / готель / центр міста.</i>
53. <i>When does the bus to Boston leave?</i>	<i>Коли останній автобус до Бостону?</i>
54. <i>Stop here, please.</i>	<i>Зупинить тут, будь ласка.</i>
55. <i>I'd like a ticket to...</i>	<i>Я би хотів білет до...</i>
56. <i>When does the check-in begin?</i>	<i>Коли починається реєстрація?</i>
57. <i>Where can i return my ticket?</i>	<i>Де я можу повернути свій білет?</i>
58. <i>Here are my passport and custom declaration.</i>	<i>Ось мій паспорт та митна декларація.</i>
59. <i>Here is my luggage.</i>	<i>Ось мій багаж.</i>
60. <i>It is a business trip.</i>	<i>Це – відрядження.</i>
61. <i>It is a turistic visit.</i>	<i>Це – туристична поїздка.</i>
62. <i>I travel with a group.</i>	<i>Я їду разом з туристичної групи (у складі туристичної групи).</i>
63. <i>I want to book a room.</i>	<i>Я хочу забронювати номер.</i>
64. <i>I want a room with bed and breakfast.</i>	<i>Мені потрібний номер із сніданком.?</i>
65. <i>Non-smoking, please.</i>	<i>Будь ласка, для тих, хто не палить.</i>
66. <i>Here you are.</i>	<i>Ось, візьміть.</i>
67. <i>Keep the change.</i>	<i>Решити не треба..</i>
68. <i>Could I have the bill?</i>	<i>Можна попросити рахунок?</i>
69. <i>The change is not correct.</i>	<i>Ви невірно порахували решту.</i>
70. <i>Could you break this 100 (hundred) dollar bill?</i>	<i>Чи не могли б ви розміняти 100-доларову купюру?</i>
71. <i>What size is this sweater?</i>	<i>Якого розміру цей светр?</i>
72. <i>I want to try it on.</i>	<i>Я хочу це поміряти.</i>
73. <i>I need...</i>	<i>Мені потрібно ...</i>
74. <i>I want to book a table.</i>	<i>Я хочу замовити столик.</i>
75. <i>I'd like ...</i>	<i>Я б хотів ...</i>
76. <i>I do not eat meat.</i>	<i>Я не їм м'яса.</i>
77. <i>I agree.</i>	<i>Я згідний (згідна).</i>
78. <i>With pleasure.</i>	<i>Із задоволенням.</i>
79. <i>I see.</i>	<i>Зрозуміло.</i>
80. <i>I am busy.</i>	<i>Я зайнятий.</i>
81. <i>No, thank you.</i>	<i>Ні, дякую.</i>
82. <i>I am sorry, but I can't.</i>	<i>Вибачте, я не можу.</i>
83. <i>Thank you so much!</i>	<i>Дуже дякую!</i>
84. <i>You are welcome!</i>	<i>Будь ласка!</i>
85. <i>Best wishes!</i>	<i>Всього хорошого!</i>
86. <i>Congratulations!</i>	<i>Вітаємо!</i>
87. <i>Happy birthday!</i>	<i>З днем народження!</i>
88. <i>I wish you all the best!</i>	<i>З днем народження! - Я бажаю тобі всього найкращого!</i>
89. <i>Have a good time!</i>	<i>Бажаю гарно провести час! / Гарного дня вам!</i>
90. <i>Have a good holiday!</i>	<i>Гарного відпочинку!</i>
91. <i>Have a good trip!</i>	<i>Щасливої дороги!</i>
92. <i>Take care!</i>	<i>Бережи себе!</i>
93. <i>Good luck!</i>	<i>Всього найкращого!</i>
94. <i>See you (later)!</i>	<i>Побачимося пізніше!</i>
95. <i>See you soon!</i>	<i>Побачимося!</i>
96. <i>I need help.</i>	<i>Мені потрібна допомога.</i>
97. <i>I'm lost.</i>	<i>Я загубився.</i>
98. <i>I have an emergency. Please call for help.</i>	<i>Це терміновий виклик. Покличте на допомогу.</i>
99. <i>Call the police!</i>	<i>Викличте поліцію!</i>
100. <i>Call for a doctor.</i>	<i>Викличте лікаря.</i>

## Communication at the English Lessons

<i>Чи можна увійти?</i>	<i>May I come in?</i>
<i>Вибачте за запізнення.</i>	<i>Sorry for being late.</i>
<i>Чи можна мені приєднатися до групи?</i>	<i>May I join the group?</i>
<i>Чи можна мені відчинити / зачинити вікно?</i>	<i>May I open / close the window?</i>
<i>Чи можна вийти?</i>	<i>May I go out, please?</i>
<i>Що ми зараз повинні робити?</i>	<i>What do we have to do now?</i>
<i>Чи потрібно нам здавати цю вправу?</i>	<i>Do we have to hand in this exercise?</i>
<i>Чи потрібно це записати?</i>	<i>Do we have to write this down?</i>
<i>Я не розумію. Повторіть, будь ласка.</i>	<i>I don't understand. Could you repeat that, please?</i>
<i>Поясніть це раз, будь ласка.</i>	<i>Can you explain it once more, please?</i>
<i>Я готовий. Чи можна починати?</i>	<i>I'm ready. Shall I begin?</i>
<i>Що означає це слово "... " українською?</i>	<i>What does "... " mean in Ukrainian?</i>
<i>Як сказати "... " англійською?</i>	<i>How do you say "... " in English?</i>
<i>Як пишеться це слово?</i>	<i>How do you spell that word?</i>
<i>Як це слово вимовляється?</i>	<i>How is this word pronounced?</i>
<i>Чи не могли би ви допомогти мені, будь ласка.</i>	<i>Could you help me, please?</i>
<i>В мене немає ... . Чи можна мені позичити ... ?</i>	<i>I don't have a ... Can I borrow one?</i>
<i>На якій сторінці ми зараз?</i>	<i>What page are we on?</i>
<i>Я був відсутній на останньому занятті.</i>	<i>I was absent on the last lesson.</i>
<i>Я не зміг зробити домашнє завдання, тому що...</i>	<i>I could not do my homework because ...</i>

## Order in Cafés and Restaurants

<i>Я хотів би зробити замовлення.</i>	<i>I'd like to place an order.</i>
<i>Я хотіл би повечеряти.</i>	<i>I would like supper.</i>
<i>Я б хотів легкий сніданок.</i>	<i>I would like a continental breakfast.</i>
<i>Яким напоям ви надаєте перевагу перед обідом?</i>	<i>What drink would you like before dinner?</i>
<i>Я візьму те, що Ви порекомендуєте.</i>	<i>I'll have whatever you recommend.</i>
<i>Що б ви порекомендували?</i>	<i>What do you recommend?</i>
<i>Яка фірмова страва у цьому ресторані?</i>	<i>What is the specialty of the house.</i>
<i>Меню, будь ласка.</i>	<i>Menu, please.</i>
<i>Чи можна попросити меню і карту вин, будь ласка?</i>	<i>May I have the menu and the wine list, please?</i>
<i>Чи є у вашому меню вегетаріанські страви?</i>	<i>Do you serve vegetarian food?</i>
<i>У вас є меню англійською?</i>	<i>Is there an English menu?</i>
<i>Який у вас сьогодні суп?</i>	<i>What kind of soup are you serving today?</i>
<i>Який сьогодні фірмовий коктейль?</i>	<i>What's the cocktail of the day?</i>
<i>Що будете замовляти?</i>	<i>May I take your order?</i>
<i>Я візьму те ж саме.</i>	<i>I'll have the same thing.</i>
<i>Я візьму це.</i>	<i>I'll have this.</i>
<i>Скільки часу це займе?</i>	<i>How long will it take?</i>
<i>Ячня (омлет).</i>	<i>Scrambled eggs.</i>
<i>Я візьму тільки бутерброд із шинкою.</i>	<i>I'll just have a ham sandwich.</i>
<i>Біфштекс із смаженою картоплею.</i>	<i>I'll have a T-bone steak with fried potatoes.</i>
<i>Вам картоплю смажену, запечену чи пюре?</i>	<i>Would you like fried, baked or mashed potatoes?</i>

## АНГЛО-УКРАЇНСЬКИЙ СЛОВНИК – ENGLISH–UKRAINIAN VOCABULARY

<b>A</b>	<b>abate</b>	1) послаблювати 2) зменшувати 3) скасовувати
	absorb	1) убирати 2) поглинати 3) захоплювати
	accept	приймати
	accompany	супроводити
	accomplish	1) виконувати 2) доводити до кінця
	account	1) рахунок 2) звіт 3) підстава, 4) значення
	addition	1) додавання 2) доповнення
	add up to	давати результат
	advantage	1) перевага 2) користь
	adventure	1) пригода 2) авантюра
	affection	1) прихильність 2) любов 3) хвороба
	age-old	віковий
	aim	1) мета 2) мішень
	alert	пильний
	all-round	всебічний
	allure	спокушати, зваблювати
	allusion	1) згадка 2) натяк
	annoy	1) надокучати 2) дратувати
	answer	відповідь
	ant	мурашка
	appeal	1) звернення 2) прохання
	apply	1) просити 2) прикладати
	appoint	призначати
	apprentice	учень
	argue	сперечатися
	argument	1) доказ 2) суперечка
	arrive	приїздити
	arrogance	1) зарозумілість 2) самовпевненість
	artifice	хитрість
	artificial	штучний
	ask	1) питати 2) просити
	aspire	1) прагнути 2) домагатися
	assertive	1) позитивний 2) настирливий 3) майно
	assignment	1) завдання 2) призначення
	assume	1) брати на себе 2) привласнювати 3) припускати
	assure	1) запевняти 2) переконувати
	attendances	1) присутність 2) відвідування 3) аудиторія 4) догляд
	attorney	адвокат
	attract	приваблювати
	audience	1) глядачі 2) аудиторія
	authority	1) повноваження, 2) влада
	auxiliary	допоміжний
	average	1) середній 2) звичайний
	avoid	уникати
	awful	жахливий
	ax, axe	сокира
	axis	вісь
	azure	1) блакитний 2) лазуровий
<b>B</b>	<b>backward</b>	1) назад 2) зворотний 3) відсталий
	ban	забороняти
	banner	прапор
	barber	перукар
	barefoot	босий, босоніж
	bashful	соромливий
	behave	поводитися

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

	being	1) буття 2) існування 3) <b>human being</b> - людина
	benefit	1) користь 2) вигода 3) грошова допомога
	bequest	спадщина
	Bible	біблія
	bigot	фанатик
	billet	1) поліно 2) колода
	binary	подвійний
	bishop	єпископ
	bitter	гіркий
	blind	сліпий
	blood	кров
	boast	хвастати
	bore	1) нудний 2) нудьга
	boundary	1) межа 2) кордон
	brain	1) мозок 2) розум
	break-neck	1) небезпечний 2) карколомний
	breath	дихання
	bridal	весільний
	bride	наречена
	bridegroom	наречений
	brisk	1) жвавий 2) моторний
	brooch	брошка
	broom	1) мітла 2) віник
	bustle	метушня
	button	гудзик
<b>C</b>	<b>calm</b>	спокійний
	canteen	1) їдальня 2) буфет
	capable	1) здатний 2) здібний
	care	турбота
	cash	1) гроші 2) готівка
	casual	1) випадковий 2) недбалий
	captiple	1) стократний 2) сторазовий
	certify	засвідчувати
	chandelier	1) канделябр 2) люстра
	chapel	каплиця
	charge	1) навантаження 2) доручення 3) відповідальність
	charm	1) чари 2) талісман
	chat	1) базікання 2) невимушена розмова
	circumstance	обставини
	cite	1) цитувати 2) посилатися
	clemency	милосердя
	clergy	духівництво
	cling	чіплятися
	coeval	1) одноліток 2) ровесник
	combination	1) поєднання 2) сполучення 3) комбінація
	commit	1) вчиняти 2) довіряти
	common	1) загальний 2) спільний 3) громадський 4) звичайний
	complicate	ускладнювати
	compliance	згода
	composure	1) спокій 2) самовладання
	condense	1) згущати 2) конденсувати 3) стисло викладати
	conscience	1) сумління 2) совість
	consciously	свідомо
	consecution	1) послідовність 2) хід подій
	consequence	1) наслідок 2) результат 3) висновок
	contemporary	сучасний
	continue	1) продовжувати 2) тривати
	contest	1) оспорювати 2) змагатися 3) суперечка 4) конкурс



## Practical Grammar of the English Language

	corn-flakes	кукурудзяні пластівці
	convey	передавати
	cook	1) готувати 2) варити
	count	1) підраховувати 2) брати до уваги 3) припускати
	crib	1) стійло, дитяче ліжко 3) шк. шпаргалка 4) розм. плагіат
	cross	1) хрест 2) гібрид
	crop	1) врожай 2) сільськогосподарська культура
	cure	1) ліки 2) лікування
	currency	1) уживаність, поширення 2) грошовий обіг 3) валюта
	curriculum	1) курс навчання 2) програма 3) розклад
	curve	1) крива 2) гнутися
	custom	звичка
	custom-house	митниця
<b>D</b>	<b>debt</b>	борг
	deceit	1) обман 2) брехня
	decimal	1) десятковий дріб 2) десятковий
	decision	1) рішення 2) рішучість
	decline	1) занепад 2) погіршення 3) кінець 4) захід сонця
	decorate	прикрашати
	delay	1) затримка 2) відкладення
	delicious	1) чудовий 2) дуже смачний
	delinquency	1) злочинність 2) проступок
	demand	1) попит 2) вимога 3) потреба
	dental	зубний
	department	1) відділ 2) управління 3) факультет
	desire	прохання
	despair	відчай
	destroy	руйнувати
	detective	детективний
	determinant	1) вирішальний 2) визначальний
	detrimental	1) шкідливий 2) збитковий
	develop	1) розвиватися 2) розробляти
	diary	щоденник
	dilly-dolly	1) розм. вагатися 2) гаяти час
	dimension	1) розмір 2) важливість 3) вимір
	dingy	1) невиразний 2) брудний
	direct	1) прямий 2) направляти 3) керувати 4) адресувати
	discriminate	1) розрізняти 2) дискримінувати
	disease	хвороба
	disgrace	1) ганьба 2) немилість
	disgust	огида
	distinct	1) чіткий 2) певний 3) виразний 4) ясний
	distinguish	1) відрізняти 2) розпізнавати 3) відділяти
	divide	1) ділити 2) відділяти 3) розподіляти
	dole	грошова допомога
	dominant	1) панівний 2) основний
	double	1) подвійний 2) дублікат 3) дублер 4) двійник
	doubly	1) удвічі 2) удвоє
	drain	1) відводити 2) висушувати 3) виснажувати
	dreadful	жахливий
	drop	1) крапля 2) зниження 3) розм. промовити (слово)
	dumb	1) німий 2) мовчазний
	dust	1) пил 2) порох
	dutiful	1) старанний 2) слухняний
	duty	1) обов'язок 2) чергування 3) податок
<b>E</b>	<b>ear-mark</b>	1) тавро 2) відмітна ознака
	elaborate	детально розроблений

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

	eliminate	1) усувати 2) знищувати
	embarrass	1) бентежити 2) заважати
	emergency	1) крайність 2) критичне становище
	empty	порожній
	enlarge	1) збільшувати 2) розширювати
	enrich	1) збагачувати 2) удобрювати
	envious	зздрісний
	envy	1) заздрість 2) об'єкт заздрощів
	equate	1) рівняти 2) вирівнювання
	essential	1) істотний 2) суттєвий
	exceed	1) перевищувати 2) перевершувати
	except	1) виключати 2) заперечувати
	excess	1) надлишок 2) крайність 3) нестриманість
	experience	1) досвід 2) досвідченість 3) враженість 4) випадок
	external	зовнішній
<b>F</b>	<b>fabric</b>	тканина
	fairy	1) фея 2) чарівний 3) казковий
	faith	1) віра 2) вірність 3) переконання
	favour	1) прихильність 2) користь
	feasible	1) можливий 2) здійснений
	fiction	1) белетристика 2) худ. література 3) вигадка 4) фікція
	fidget	1) метушливість 2) неспокійна людина
	finesse	1) тонкість 2) хитрощі
	flatter	1) лестити 2) манити надією
	flow	1) текти 2) походити (з) 3) течія 4) потік
	forbid	забороняти
	force	1) сила 2) примушувати
	forecast	1) передбачати 2) віщувати
	fulfil	виконувати
	furniture	меблі
	future	майбутній
	flower	1) квітка 2) цвітіння
<b>G</b>	<b>garlic</b>	часник
	genial	1) добродушний 2) м'який
	gesture	жест
	ghost	1) привід 2) тінь
	gift	подарунок
	glamour	1) чарівність 2) чари
	glass	1) скло 2) склянка
	glove	1) рукавичка
	goods	1) речі 2) майно 3) багаж
	gossip	1) плітки 2) базікання
	graphic	1) графічний 2) наочний
<b>H</b>	<b>haberdashery</b>	галантерея
	handle	1) ручка 2) поводитися 3) керувати
	hang	вішати
	harbour	1) гавань 2) порт 3) притулок
	harmless	нешкідливий
	hemisphere	півкуля
	hint	натяк
	hint	1) натяк 2) натякати
	hire	1) наймання 2) плата за прокат
	holy	святий
	however	1) як би не 2) однак
	humming	1) що, гуде 2) <i>розм.</i> діяльний, енергійний

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

<b>I</b>	<b>idiom</b>	1) ідіома 2) діалект
	illness	хвороба
	imply	1) означати 2) мати на увазі
	improve	1) поліпшувати 2) скористатися
	incline	нахиляти
	indicator	показник
	infect	заражати
	inherent	властивий, притаманний
	inherit	успадковувати
	ink	чорнило
	insect	комаха
	insist	1) наполягати 2) твердити
	insolvent	1) неспроможний (боржник) 2) банкрут
	intense	1) великий 2) напружений 3) сліпучий
	interact	взаємодіяти
	interior	1) внутрішній 2) внутрішня сторона
	interrupt	1) перебивати 2) заважати 3) втручатися
	introduction	1) вступ, передмова 2) офіційне представлення 3) впровадження
	invalid	каліка
	invent	1) винаходити 2) вигадувати
	invest	1) вкладати 2) одягати 3) надавати
	investigate	1) розслідувати 2) досліджувати
	irregular	1) неправильний 2) нерегулярний 3) безладний
	irreversible	1) що не підлягає скасуванню 2) необоротний
	irritate	дратувати
<b>J</b>	<b>jail</b>	в'язниця
	jealous	1) ревнивий 2) заздрісний 3) турботливий
	job	1) робота 2) місце служби
	join	1) з'єднувати 2) вступати в армію 3) межувати
	joke	жарт
	journey	1) поїздка 2) рейс
	judge	1) суддя 2) експерт 3) судити
	juice	1) сік 2) суть (чого)
	jump	стрибати
	justice	1) справедливість 2) законність
<b>K</b>	<b>kiss</b>	поцілунок
	kitchen	кухня
	kitten	кошеня
	knee	коліно
	knick-knack	1) прикраса 2) ласощі
	knife	1) ніж 2) різати
	knight	1) лицар 2) шахм. кінь
	knock	1) стукати 2) бити 3) врожай
	know	1) знати 2) уміти 3) пізнавати
	knowledge	1) знання 2) відомості
<b>L</b>	<b>labour</b>	праця, робота
	lace	1) мереживо 2) шнурок
	lamb	ягня
	lamp	лампа
	land	1) земля (країна) 2) земля (грунт)
	large	1) великий 2) численний 3) широкий
	lateral	бічний
	launder	прати (білизну)
	law	1) закон 2) суд
	lazy	ледачий
	learn	1) вчити 2) дізнаватися
	left-handed	1) лівша 2) незграбний

Practical Grammar of the English Language

	leisure	дозвілля
	lens	лінза
	lexicon	1) словник 2) лексикон
	license	1) ліцензія 2) вільність
	lighthouse	маяк
	liquid	рідкий
	list	1) список 2) перелік
	little	1) маленький 2) незначний
	live	1) жити 2) існувати
	looking-glass	дзеркало
	loss	1) втрата 2) програш 3) збиток
	love	любов, кохання
	lyric	1) ліричний 2) ліричний вірш
<b>M</b>	<b>magic</b>	1) магія 2) чарівний
	magnificent	1) пишний 2) чудовий
	mail	пошта
	maintain	1) підтримувати 2) утримувати 3) відстоювати
	make	1) робити 2) становити 3) примушувати
	manage	1) управляти 2) керувати 3) справлятися (з)
	mankind	людство
	manner	1) спосіб 2) манера 3) справа
	masterpiece	шедевр
	matter	1) питання 2) справа
	meal	їжа
	measure	1) міра 2) захід 3) музичний такт
	meddle	втручатися
	medicine	1) медицина 2) ліки
	merchant	1) купець 2) торговець
	mess	безладдя
	milk	молоко
	mind	1) розум 2) пам'ять 3) думка 4) погляд
	miracle	чудо
	mistress	1) учителька 2) господиня
	modern	1) сучасний 2) новий
	monitor	1) наставник 2) староста 3) дисплей
	monkey	мавпа
	mood	настрій
	moon	місяць
	motherland	1) батьківщина 2) вітчизна
	mouse	миша
	mustard	гірчиця
	mystery	1) таємниця 2) містерія
<b>N</b>	<b>need</b>	потреба
	new	новий
	news	новина, новини, звістка
	nice	1) гарний 2) люб'язний
	nightmare	1) кошмар 2) страшний сон
	noise	1) шум 2) галас
	notion	1) поняття 2) уявлення 3) галас
	nuisance	1) досада, прикрість 2) надокучлива людина
	nurse	1) нянька 2) санітарка 3) медсестра
	nut	горіх
<b>O</b>	<b>observe</b>	1) виконувати 2) спостерігати
	obstacle	1) перешкода 2) завада
	occasion	1) випадок 2) подія 3) підстава
	occupy	1) займати посаду

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

	offence	1) порушення 2) образа 3) напад
	offer	1) пропонувати 2) чинити (опір) 3) траплятися
	oil	1) олія 2) нафта 3) мастило
	onion	цибуля
	opportunity	сприятлива можливість
	opposite	протилежний
	optional	1) необов'язковий 2) факультативний
	orchard	фруктовий сад
	outlet	вихід
	outlook	1) краєвид 2) перспектива 3) точка зору
	out-of-date	1) застарілий 2) старомодний
	outstanding	1) видатний 2) несплачений (у строк)
	overcrowd	переповнювати
<b>P</b>	<b>pain</b>	1) біль 2) зусилля
	paint	2) фарба 2) фарбувати
	paper	1) папір 2) газета 3) стаття 4) документ
	parlour	1) вітальня 2) приймальня
	passport	паспорт
	password	пароль
	path	1) доріжка 2) шлях
	pattern	1) зразок 2) модель
	pay	1) плата 2) заробітна плата 3) платити
	peace	1) мир 2) спокій
	perfect	1) досконалий 2) бездоганний 3) <i>грам.</i> перфектний
	persist	1) наполягати 2) бути впертим
	person	1) особа 2) людина 3) зовнішність
	persuade	1) переконувати 2) умовляти
	picture	1) картина 2) портрет
	pill	таблетка
	pleasure	задоволення
	plenty	1) достаток 2) цілком 3) досить
	point	1) крапка; знак; 2) особливість; 3) момент ( <i>часу</i> ); 4) <i>мат.</i> точка; 5) місце; пункт; 6) питання; справа;
	house point	оцінка, яка виставляється учням за гарну поведінку або успіхи у навчанні, спорті та ін.
	poison	отрута
	polite	ввічливий
	pollution	забруднення
	ponder	1) обдумувати 2) зважувати
	poor	1) бідний 2) поганий
	power	1) сила 2) влада 3) можливість 4) держава 5) <i>мат.</i> ступінь
	precede	передувати
	prescribe	1) прописувати (ліки) 2) приписувати
	preserve	1) зберігати 2) консервувати
	pretty	1) гарненький 2) милий
	prevent	1) запобігати 2) перешкоджувати
	previous	1) попередній 2) передчасний
	pride	гордість
	priest	священик
	prohibit	1) заперечувати 2) забороняти
	project	1) проектувати 2) обмірковувати
	promise	1) обіцяти 2) обіцянка
	proper	1) власний 2) властивий 3) належний
	protect	захищати
	purpose	1) намір 2) мета
	puzzle	1) важке запитання 2) загадка
<b>Q</b>	<b>question</b>	питання



## Practical Grammar of the English Language

	queue	1) коса 2) черга
	quick	1) швидкий 2) жвавий 3) кмітливий
	quiet	1) спокій 2) тиша
	quiz	1) насмішка 2) контрольне опитування 3) вікторина
<b>R</b>	<b>rate</b>	1) норма 2) ставка 3) темп 4) розряд 5) податок
	rather	1) краще 2) досить 3) ще б пак!
	rear	I. 1) тил 2) тильна сторона
	rear	II. 1) піднімати 2) споруджувати 3) виховувати
	rear	1) причина 2) розум
	receive	1) одержувати 2) сприймати 3) приймати (гостей)
	record	записувати
	recreation	1) відпочинок 2) розвага
	red-hot	1) розжарений до червоного 2) полум'яний
	refer	1) посилатися (на) 2) згадувати 3) стосуватися
	reflection	1) відображення 2) розмірковування
	refusal	відмова
	rely	покладатися (на)
	remake	переробляти
	remark	1) помічати 2) робити зауваження
	remember	пам'ятати
	remind	пригадати
	repair	ремонтувати
	replace	1) ставити на місце 2) замінити
	report	1) доповідь 2) чутка 3) репутація
	repose	1) відпочинок 2) спокій
	request	1) прохання 2) запит
	resist	1) чинити опір 2) протистояти
	resource	1) запаси 2) винахідливість
	respect	1) повага 2) відношення
	rest	1) відпочинок 2) решта, залишок
	restful	заспокійливий
	review	1) рецензія 2) розгляд 3) перегляд
	revolt	1) почувати 2) повстання
	revolve	1) обертатися 2) періодично повертатися
	rice	рис
	road	дорога, шлях
	rob	грабувати
	rootten	1) гнилий 2) зіпсований
	round	1) круглий 2) повний 3) приблизний
	rubber	1) гума 2) каучук 3) гумка
	rubbish	1) сміття 2) мотлох 3) дурниці
<b>S</b>	<b>sad</b>	сумний
	saint	святий
	salary	заробітна плата
	sale	продаж
	sand	пісок
	satisfy	задовольняти
	search	1) пошук 2) обшук 3) шукати
	see	1) бачити 2) розуміти 3) оглядати 4) обдумувати
	seek	1) шукати 2) домагатися 3) просити
	security	1) безпека 2) впевненість 3) гарантія 4) цінні папери
	seldom	рідко
	select	1) вибирати 2) добірний
	self-confident	само впевнений
	self-government	самоуправління
	semi-	1) напів- 2) наполовину
	sequence	послідовність

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

	servant	слуга
	shade	1) тінь 2) відтінок 3) абажур
	shame	1) сором 2) ганьба
	signature	підпис
	significant	важливий, значний
	similar	1) схожий 2) подібний
	size	1) розмір 2) величина
	small-minded	1) обмежений 2) дріб'язковий
	smart	1) гострий 2) пекучий 3) швидкий 4) розумний 5) модний
	smear	1) пляма 2) бруднити
	smooth	1) гладенький 2) спокійний
	snack	легка закуска
	snake	1) змія 2) гадюка
	soil	1) земля 2) ґрунт
	spacious	1) просторий 2) місткий
	special	1) особливий 2) надзвичайний
	sphere	1) куля 2) сфера
	spirit	1) душа 2) моральна сила 3) настрої
	spoil	1) псувати 2) грабувати
	spoon	ложка
	spread	1) поширювати 2) розгортати 3) простягатися
	stage	1) сцена 2) стадія 3) етап
	stipulate	1) зумовляти 2) ставити умовою
	storage	1) зберігання 2) склад
	store	1) запас 2) універмаг 3) склад
	storm	1) буря 2) шторм
	story	1) оповідання 2) історія
	strawberry	1) суниця 2) полуниця
	street	вулиця
	stress	1) тиск 2) напруження 3) наголос
	strict	1) точний 2) суворий 3) вимогливий
	strong	1) міцний 2) сильний 3) різкий
	stubborn	1) упертий 2) завзятий
	submarine	1) підводний човен 2) підводний
	suffer	1) страждати 2) терпіти
	suggest	1) пропонувати 2) натякати
	support	1) підтримка 2) опора
	surgeon	хірург
	surround	оточувати
	swim	плавати
	sympathetic	співчутливий
	synonym	синонім
	syringe	1) шприц 2) пожежний насос
<b>T</b>	<b>table</b>	1) стіл 2) дошка 3) таблиця
	tactless	нетактовний
	tamper	1) втручатися 2) підробляти 3) підкупляти
	teen-ager	підліток
	temple	1) храм 2) скроня
	tenable	міцний
	tense	1) напружений 2) натягнутий 3) грам. час
	terrible	жахливий
	tidy	охайний
	tip	1) кінчик 2) наконечник 3) нахил 4) смітник
	title	1) заголовок 2) титул, звання
	tittle	1) найдрібніша частка 2) крихітка
	toil	1) важка праця 2) тягтися 3) трудитися
	tomb	1) могила 2) надгробний пам'ятник
	tongue	1) язик 2) мова

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

	tool	1) робочий інструмент 2) знаряддя
	total	1) цілий; сума; підсумок; 2) весь; загальний; 3) повний; цілковитий;
	touch	1) торкатися 2) стикатися 3) стосуватися
	tower	башта
	trade	1) професія 2) торгівля
	traffic	1) вуличний рух 2) транспорт
	transform	1) змінювати 2) робити невідомим
	translate	перекладати
	transmit	передавати
	treasure	1) скарб 2) зберігати 3) високо цінувати
	trick	1) хитрість 2) фокус
	true	1) вірний 2) відданий 3) правдивий
	trumpet	1) трубити 2) рупор 3) муз. труба
	trunk	1) стовбур 2) тулуб 3) хобот
	truth	1) правда 2) істина
	tuition	1) навчання 2) плата за навчання
	tyran	1) тиран 2) деспот
<b>U</b>	<b>umbrella</b>	парасолька
	uncalled-for	недоречний
	understand	1) розуміти 2) мати на увазі
	undertake	1) починати 2) зобов'язуватися
	undue	1) надмірний 2) несвоєчасний
	unquotable	1) нецензурний 2) непристойний
	unwell	нездоровий
	up-to-day	1) сучасний 2) найновіший
	urbane	1) ввічливий 2) вишуканий
	urge	1) примушувати 2) переконувати
	used	уживаний
	useful	1) корисний 2) здібний 3) звиклий
	utter	1) повний 2) цілковитий 3) абсолютний
<b>V</b>	<b>vague</b>	1) невиразний 2) неясний
	valid	1) дійсний 2) діючий 3) обґрунтований
	value	1) цінність 2) значення 3) мат. величина 4) ек. ціна
	various	1) різний 2) різноманітний
	vegetable	1) овочі 2) рослина 3) рослинний
	venal	1) продажний 2) куплений
	versatile	1) різнобічний 2) мінливий 3) універсальний
	vice versa	навпаки
	victim	жертва
	view	1) пейзаж 2) вигляд 3) кругозір 4) погляд 5) мета
	village	село
	violence	1) сила 2) насильство 3) образа
	violet	1) фіалка 2) фіолетовий
	violin	скрипка
	vision	1) зір 2) проникливість 3) мрія 4) видіння
	vital	1) життєвий 2) істотний 3) енергійний
	vivid	1) яскравий 2) жвавий 3) палкий
	vogue	1) мода 2) популярність
	voice	1) голос 2) грам. стан
	volume	1) том 2) обсяг 3) сила
	voluntary nature	1) добровільний
<b>W</b>	<b>wage</b>	заробітна плата
	wait	чекати
	waiter	офіціант
	wall	стіна
	wallet	1) гаманець 2) футляр

Practical Grammar of the English Language

	ware	1) вироби 2) товари
	wasp	оса
	wave	хвиля
	weak	слабкий
	wealth	1) багатство 2) достаток
	weapon	зброя
	welfare	добробут
	whiskers	1) бакенбарди 2) вуса ( <i>кішки, тигра і т. ін.</i> )
	whistle	1) свист 2) свисток
	wild	1) дикий 2) буйний 3) несамовитий
	wisdom	мудрість
	wish	1) бажання 2) бажати, хотіти 3) зичити
	witness	1) свідок 2) доказ, свідчення
	wizard-	чарівник, маг
	wonder	1) чудо 2) здивування
	worth	1) цінність 2) вартість
	wrap	1) шаль 2) верхній одяг 3) секретність 4) загортати
	wrought-up	нервовий, напружений, збуджений
<b>Y</b>	<b>yard</b>	1) двір 2) кладовище 3) загін ( <i>для худоби</i> )
	year	рік
	yellow	1) жовтий 2) жовток
	yesterday	учора
	young	1) молодий 2) новий, недавній
	youth	1) юність 2) юнак 3) молодь
<b>Z</b>	<b>zebra</b>	зебра
	zero	нуль
	zinc	цинк
	zone	1) зона 2) оточувати
	zoo	зоопарк

УКРАЇНСЬКО-АНГЛІЙСЬКИЙ СЛОВНИК – UKRAINIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

<b>А</b>	<b>абзац</b>	paragraph
	абонемент	subscription (to, for); ( <i>у театр та ін.</i> ) season-ticket
	абрикос	apricot
	абсурд	absurdity; nonsense
	аванс	advance (payment); prepayment
	аварійний	emergency
	аварія	wreck; ( <i>автомобіля</i> ) crash; ( <i>нещасний випадок</i> ) accident; ( <i>поломка машини</i> ) break-down
	авжеж	certainly; of course
	автопортрет	self-portrait
	автор	author; ( <i>літературного твору</i> ) writer; ( <i>музичного твору</i> ) composer
	авторитет	authority
	авторучка	fountain-pen
	агрус	gooseberry
	адвокат	lawyer, attorney
	адреса	address
	азот	nitrogen
	айстра	aster
	акваріум	aquarium
	акула	shark
	акуратний	( <i>охайний</i> ) tidy, neat; ( <i>точний</i> ) punctual;
	алея	avenue; alley; ( <i>паркова</i> ) path, walk
	алмаз	diamond
	аматор	amateur
	аналіз	analysis
	ананас	pine-apple
	антена	aerial; antenna
	антивоєнний	anti-war
	античний	antique; ancient
	антракт	interval; ( <i>амер.</i> ) intermission
	апельсин	orange
	аптека	chemist's (shop), ( <i>амер.</i> ) drug-store
	аркуш	sheet; leaf
	аспірант	post-graduate (student)
	атестат	certificate; <i>спро середню освіту</i> ) school-leaving certificate
	афіша	bill; poster; ( <i>театральна</i> ) playbill
<b>Б</b>	<b>багатий</b>	rich; ( <i>заможний</i> ) wealthy
	бажання	wish, desire
	базікання	chatter, jabber, twaddle
	барабан	drum
	батьківщина	motherland, fatherland, native land, homeland
	бачити	see
	башта	tower
	безладдя	disorder; ( <i>плутанина</i> ) confusion
	безпека	safety; ( <i>громадська</i> ) security
	белетристика	fiction
	бентежити	worry, trouble, be uneasy, be worried
	біблія	the Bible
	бідний	poor
	біль	pain, ache [eik]; ( <i>гострий</i> ) pang
	бічний	lateral
	борг	debt
	босий, босоніж	barefooted, barefoot
	братися, взятися	take up, set to



Practical Grammar of the English Language

	брехня	lie, falsehood
	брошка	brooch
	буря	storm, tempest
	буття	existence, being
<b>В</b>	<b>важливий</b>	important, significant
	валюта	currency
	ввічливий	polite, civil
	вдячний	grateful, thankful
	великий	big, large; ( <i>значний, визначний</i> ) great, prominent
	величезний	huge, enormous; ( <i>про простір</i> ) vast
	весільний	wedding
	взаємодія	interaction, co-operation
	вибирати	choose, pick out, select; ( <i>голосуванням</i> ) elect
	видатний	outstanding, remarkable, eminent, prominent, distinguished
	визначний	notable, important, prominent
	виключати	exclude, except; ( <i>з навчального плану</i> ) expel
	виконувати	fulfil, carry out, execute
	винаходити	invent
	випадковий	accidental, casual, chance
	випадок	event, incident; ( <i>нещасний</i> ) accident; ( <i>можливість</i> ) occasion
	виріб	article; <i>мн.</i> wares, goods
	вихід	( <i>дія</i> ) going out; ( <i>місце виходу</i> ) outlet, exit
	виховувати	bring up, rear; ( <i>давати освіту</i> ) educate
	відводити	lead, take
	відділ	( <i>частина цілого</i> ) part; ( <i>установи</i> ) department; ( <i>журналу, газети</i> ) section
	відмова	refusal, rejection
	відображення	reflection
	відповідь	answer
	відпочинок	rest, holiday, recreation
	відрізнати	distinguish, discern
	відчай	despair
	віковий	age; ( <i>давній, старий</i> ) ancient; ( <i>про дерево</i> ) secular
	віра	faith, belief; ( <i>довіра</i> ) trust
	вірний	faithful, loyal
	вісь	axis
	вітальня	drawing-room
	вітання	greeting, salute; ( <i>поздоровлення</i> ) congratulation
	вкладати	put in; ( <i>в конверт</i> ) enclose; ( <i>гроші</i> ) deposit, invest
	власний	own
	властивий	peculiar, inherent
	внутрішній	inside, inner; ( <i>перен.</i> ) inward ( <i>про політику, торгівлю</i> ) home, internal
	врожай	harvest, crop
	всебічний	thorough, detailed, all-round
	вступ	( <i>дія</i> ) entry; ( <i>початкова частина</i> ) introduction
	втрата	loss; ( <i>часу</i> ) waste
	втручатися	interfere, intervene; ( <i>в чужі справи</i> ) meddle
	вулиця	street
	вуличний рух	street traffic
	вчиняти	act, do; ( <i>злочин</i> ) commit
	вчити	( <i>когось</i> ) teach; ( <i>вивчати щось</i> ) learn, study
	в'язниця	prison
<b>Г</b>	<b>гавань</b>	harbour
	галантерея	haberdashery
	гаманець	purse
	ганьба	shame, infamy, disgrace

Practical Grammar of the English Language

	гарбуз	pumpkin
	гарний	good; ( <i>про погоду</i> ) fine; ( <i>про зовнішність</i> ) beautiful, lovely, pretty
	гіркий	bitter
	гірчиця	mustard
	глядач	onlooker, spectator; ( <i>глядачі</i> ) audience
	гнилий	rooten, decayed
	голос	voice
	гордість	pride; ( <i>пихатість</i> ) haughtiness
	горіх	nut
	господар	master, boss; ( <i>власник</i> ) owner, proprietor; ( <i>стосовно гостей</i> ) host
	готувати	prepare, make ready; ( <i>іжу</i> ) cook
	грабувати	rob, plunder
	графічний	graphic
	гроші	money
	гума	rubber
	гудзик	button
	гуртожиток	hostel, dormitory
<b>Д</b>	<b>двір</b>	yard
	десятковий	decimal
	детальний	elaborate, detailed
	дешевий	cheap
	дзеркало	looking-glass, mirror
	дикий	wild; ( <i>дикунський</i> ) savage; ( <i>відлюдковатий</i> ) shy, unsociable
	диспут	disputatiom, debate
	дихання	breathing, respiration
	діалект	dialect
	дійсний	( <i>реальний</i> ) real, actual; ( <i>який має повноваження</i> ) valid
	ділити	divide
	добробут	well-being, prosperity
	добровільний	voluntary
	доброзичливий	well-meaning, benevolent; ( <i>приятний</i> ) friendly, well-disposed
	додавання	addition
	дозвілля	leisure
	доказ	proof, evidence
	доповідь	( <i>усна</i> ) lecture; ( <i>письмова</i> ) paper; ( <i>звітна</i> ) report
	допоміжний	auxiliary
	доріжка	path, walk; ( <i>спорт.</i> ) track; ( <i>килимок</i> ) strip of carpet
	дорога, шлях	road, way
	досада	vexation, annoyance
	досвід	experience; ( <i>життєвий</i> ) knowledge of the world
	досить	rather, fairly
	досконалий	perfect
	досліджувати	reseach, investigate; ( <i>вивчати</i> ) study; ( <i>країну та ін.</i> ) explore
	достаток	plenty
	дратувати	irritate
	духівництво	clergy
	душа	spirit
<b>Є</b>	<b>єдиний</b>	only, sole
	єднальний	connecting, uniting; ( <i>про сполучник</i> ) copulative
	єдність	unity
	єпископ	bishop
<b>Ж</b>	<b>жарт</b>	joke
	жахливий	terrible, horrible, awful
	жвавий	animated, lively, active, brisk
	жертва	sacrifice; ( <i>потерпілий</i> ) victim
	жест	gesture

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

	жити	live; ( <i>мешкати</i> ) dwell
	життєвий	vital
	жовтий	yellow
<b>З</b>	<b>заборона</b>	prohibition, ban
	забувати	forget
	забруднювати	soil, make dirty; ( <i>середовище</i> ) pollute
	завдання	task, assignment; ( <i>планове</i> ) target; ( <i>дом. завд.</i> ) homework
	загадка	riddle; ( <i>перен.</i> ) enigma, mystery
	загальний	universal, general, common
	заголовок	title, heading; ( <i>газетний</i> ) head-line
	загортати	( <i>дія</i> ) wrap up
	задоволення	satisfaction, contentment; ( <i>почуття</i> ) pleasure
	задрімати	dose off
	зздрісний	envious
	зздрість	envy
	займати	occupy, engage; ( <i>посаду</i> ) hold; ( <i>зачіпати</i> ) touch
	закон	law
	заміна	( <i>дія</i> ) substitution, replacement
	занепад	decline, decay
	запас	stock, supply, reserve
	запевняти	assure (of); ( <i>переконувати</i> ) convince, persuade
	заперечувати	( <i>не погоджуватися</i> ) object, raise an objection; ( <i>не визнавати</i> ) deny
	записувати	write down, take down; ( <i>на стрічку</i> ) record
	запобігати	avert, prevent, ward off
	заражати	infect (with)
	заробітна плата	wages; ( <i>службовців</i> ) salary
	засвідчувати	witness, testify, certify
	заспокійливий	soothing, calming
	застарілий	obsolete
	затримка	delay; ( <i>перешкода</i> ) setback
	захист	defence, protection
	збагачувати	enrich
	зберігати	preserve, keep; ( <i>від небезпеки та ін.</i> ) save; ( <i>зоцаджувати</i> ) save up
	збільшувати	increase, augment; ( <i>розширювати</i> ) extend; ( <i>фот.</i> ) enlarge
	зброя	weapon
	звернення, заклик	appeal (to), address (to)
	звичка	habit
	згадка	memory, recollection
	згода	consent, assent; ( <i>спільність думок</i> ) agreement
	згущати	condense
	здатний	suitable (for), fit (for), capable (of)
	здивування	astonishment, surprise
	земля	( <i>у рiзн. зн.</i> ) earth; ( <i>суша, країна</i> ) land; ( <i>грунт</i> ) soil; ( <i>поверхня землі</i> ) ground
	зір	sight, eyesight; ( <i>поле зору</i> ) field of vision; ( <i>точка зору</i> ) point of view
	злочин	crime; ( <i>юр.</i> ) felony
	змінювати	change
	змія	snake, serpent
	знання	knowledge
	знаряддя	tool, instrument
	знати	know, be aware (of); be acquainted (with)
	зобов'язувати	oblige, bind
	зовнішній	outward, exterior, external, outside
	зона	zone
	зразок	specimen, sample; ( <i>приклад</i> ) model, example; ( <i>тех.</i> ) pattern

Practical Grammar of the English Language

	зубний	tooth
	зумовити	stipulate (for), cause, call forth, determine
<b>I</b>	<b>іграшка</b>	toy, plaything
	ідіома	idiom
	ізюм	raising
	імовірний	probable, likely
	ім'я	name
	інженер	engineer
	інколи	sometimes, at times
	іноземний	foreign
	інтерв'ю	interview
	інтерес	interest
	інтернат	(школа) boarding-school
	інший	different; other, another
	існування	existence
	іспит	examination
	істина	truth
	істота	being; creature
	істотний	essential; (важливий) substantial
	ішак	(розм.) donkey, ass
<b>ї</b>	<b>їдальня</b>	dining-room; (в установі, на підприємстві) restaurant, canteen
	їжа	meal, nourishment
	їжак	hedgehog; (морський) sea-urchin
<b>К</b>	<b>казковий</b>	fairy
	каліка	cripple
	камін	fire-place
	картина	(худ.) picture, painting; (театр.) scene
	квітка	flower
	керувати	lead; (країною) govern, rule; (справами) manage
	кінець	end
	коліно	knee
	комар	gnat, mosquito
	контрольне опитування	quiz
	корисний	useful, helpful; (для здоров'я) healthy
	користь	use, profit
	кошеня	kitten
	кошмар	nightmare
	краєвид	landscape, scenery
	крапка	(цятка) point, dot; (грам.) full spot, period
	крапля	drop
	крижаний	ice
	криниця	spring, well
	кров	blood
	круглий	round
	кумедний	funny, amusing
	кухня	kitchen; (кухарство) cookery
<b>Л</b>	<b>лампа</b>	lamp
	ланцюжок	chain
	ледачий	lazy, idle
	лестити	flatter
	лицар	knight
	лівша	left-hander
	ліки	medicine
	лінза	lens
	ліричний	(про поезію) lyric; (про почуття) lyrical

Practical Grammar of the English Language

	ліцензія	license
	ложка	spoon; (як міра чогось) spoonful
	любов	love
	людство	humanity, mankind
<b>М</b>	<b>мавпа</b>	monkey (людиноподібна) ape
	магія	magic
	майбутній	future
	малий	small, little; (незначний) slight
	маяк	lighthouse
	меблі	furniture
	межа	boundary (-line); (межі – перен.) limits, bounds
	мереживо	lace
	мета	aim, purpose, object, goal, end
	метушливість	fidget
	метушня	fuss, bustle
	милосердя	mercy
	мир	peace
	митниця	custom-house
	миша	mouse; (польова) field-mouse
	місяць	(частина року) month; (небесне тіло) moon
	мітла	broom
	міцний	strong; (стійкий) firm; (надійний) reliable
	множина	(грам.) the plural
	могила	grave
	мода	1) fashion; 2) vogue
	можливий	possible, feasible
	мозок	brain
	молодий	young, youthful; (про неістоти) new
	молодь	(збірн.) youth, young people
	молоко	milk
	мудрість	wisdom
	мурашка	ant
<b>Н</b>	<b>навантаження</b>	(дія) loading; (вага) load
	навчання	training, studies
	надлишок	excess
	надокучати	bother, pester, bore
	назад	backward(s); back
	наймати	hire; (на роботу) engage, employ; (приміщення) rent
	намір	intention
	наполовину	half
	наполягати	insist (on/upon); persist (in)
	напружений	intense
	наречена	fiancee, bride
	наречений	fiance, bridegroom
	насильство	violence
	наслідок	consequence, result
	наставник	teacher, instructor, preceptor
	настрій	mood, frame of mind, spirits
	натяк	hint
	нахиляти	bend, incline, lean
	небезпечний	dangerous
	невиразний	inexpressive
	невихований	ill-bred
	недолік	1) defect, deficiency; 2) lack
	нездоровий	unhealthy
	необачний	imprudent
	неправильний	1) abnormal; 2) irregular



Practical Grammar of the English Language

	нервовий	nervous
	несерйозний	light-minded, shallow
	неспроможний (боржник)	incapable (of)
	нетактовний	tactless
	нехтувати	neglect, disregard
	нижчезазначений	under-mentioned
	ніж	knife
	німий	dumb; ( <i>перен.</i> ) mute
	новий	new
	новина, новини, звістка	news
	норма	standard, norm, rate
	нудний	dull, boring, tedious
	нянька	nurse (maid)
<b>О</b>	<b>обдумувати</b>	think over, consider
	обертати	turn, turn round
	обіцяти	promise
	обмежений	limited; ( <i>про людину</i> ) narrow-minded
	обов'язок	duty, obligation
	обставини	circumstance
	овочі	vegetables
	огида	disgust, repugnance, loathing, aversion
	одержувати	receive, get, obtain
	однак	however, but
	однаковий	the same, identical, equal
	означати	mean, signify
	оля	oil
	оповідання	story, tale
	оса	wasp
	особа	person
	особливий	particular, (e)special
	острів	island
	оточувати	surround, encircle, gather round
	отрута	poison
	офіціант, офіціантка	waiter, waitress
	охайний	tidy, neat, clean
<b>П</b>	<b>пам'ятати</b>	remember, bear/keep in mind
	панівний	1) ruling, prevailing; 2) (pre)dominant
	папір	paper
	парасолька	umbrella
	пароль	password, parole
	паспорт	passport
	пейзаж	landscape, scenery
	переривати	interrupt
	перевага	advantage, preference
	перевищувати	exceed
	передавати	pass, give
	передбачати	forecast
	передувати	precede
	перекладати	translate; ( <i>усно</i> ) interpret
	переконання	( <i>дія</i> ) persuasion; ( <i>думка</i> ) conviction
	перепустка	pass, permit
	переробляти	alter, remake
	перешкода	barrier; ( <i>перен.</i> ) hindrance, impediment
	перукар	( <i>жіночий</i> ) hairdresser; ( <i>чоловічий</i> ) barber
	пил	dust
	пильний	attentive, vigilant, alert
	питання	1) question; 2) ( <i>проблема</i> ) perblem, issue; 3) ( <i>справа</i> ) point, matter

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

питати	ask, inquire (after)
півкуля	hemisphere
підводний	submarine
підліток	teen-ager, adolescent, juvenile
підпис	signature
підраховувати	count up, calculate, compute
підтримка	support, backing
пісок	sand
плавати	swim
плата	pay, fee; (за квартиру) rent; (за проїзд) fare
плітка	piece of gossip
пляма	spot, stain, (чорнильна) blot
повага	respect
повний	full, complete
повноваження	authority
поводитися	behave
подарунок	gift, present
подвійний	binary
подвійний	double
пожартувати	joke
позитивний	positive, affirmative
поїздка	journey, trip, outing
показник	indicator, proof
покладатися (на)	rely (upon), depend (upon)
полегшення	relief
поліпшувати	improve
полум'яний	flaming, fiery; (перен.) ardent
помічати	notice
поняття	concept; (уявлення) notion, idea
попередній	preceding, previous
попит	demand
порожній	empty
порушення	breach, violation; (закону) infringement; (спокою) disturbance
посилатися (на)	refer (to)
послаблювати	weaken; make smb weak (er)
послідовність	succession, sequence; (логічність) consistency
потреба	want, necessity, need, requirement
походити	come (of), descend (of)
поцілунок	kiss
почувати	feel; (відчувати) have a sensation
поширювати	widen, broasen, enlarge, extend, expand
пошта	post, mail; (поштове відділення) post-office
пошук	search
правда	truth
прагнути	aspire (to), strive (for)
прапор	banner, flag, colours
прати	wash, launder
праця	work, labour
приваблювати	attract
привид	ghost, spectre, apparation
пригадати	remember, recall, recollect
пригода	adventure; (подія) incident
призначати	fix, set; (на посаду) appoint
приїзд	arrival
приймати	accept, take
прикраса	adornment, decoration, ornament
прикрашати	adorn, decorate, ornament
примушувати	compel, force
присутність	presence

Practical Grammar of the English Language

	прихильний	well-disposed, sympathetic
	програш	loss; ( <i>спорт.</i> ) defeat
	продаж	sale
	продажний	sale, selling; ( <i>підкупний</i> ) mercenary, venal
	продовжувати	continue, go on, carry on (with); ( <i>строк</i> ) prolong
	проектувати	project, design, plan
	прописувати (ліки)	prescribe
	пропонувати	offer, suggest, propose
	просити	ask (for), beg (for)
	просторий	spacious, roomy
	протилежний	opposite
	протиставити	oppose (to), contrast (with)
	прохання	desire, request
	псувати	spoil, corrupt
<b>Р</b>	<b>рахунок</b>	calculation; ( <i>бухг.</i> ) account; ( <i>документ</i> ) bill; ( <i>спорт.</i> ) score
	ревнивий	jealous
	ремонтувати	repair
	рецензія	review; ( <i>на рукопис</i> ) opinion
	речення	sentence; ( <i>частина складного</i> ) clause
	рис	rice
	рівень	level
	рідина	liquid, fluid
	рідко	Seldom, rarely
	різнобічний	many-sided; ( <i>перен.</i> ) versatile
	різноманітний	various, diverse, varied
	рік	year
	рішення	decision; ( <i>постанова</i> ) resolution; ( <i>судова</i> ) verdict
	робити	do, make
	робота	work, job, functioning
	розвивати	develop
	розмір	( <i>величина</i> ) size, dimensions; ( <i>грош. суми</i> ) amount
	розрізняти	make out, discern, distinguish
	розум	mind, brains, intellect, reason
	розуміти	understand, comprehend
	розумний	clever, intelligent; ( <i>тямущий</i> ) sensible; ( <i>доцільний</i> ) reasonable, rational
	руйнувати	destroy, demolish
	рукавичка	glove
рушник	towel; ( <i>для посуду</i> ) dish-cloth	
<b>С</b>	<b>самовпевнений</b>	self-confident, self-assured
	самовпевненість	selfassurance, over-confidence
	самоврядування	self-government
	свист	whistle
	свідок	witness
	свідомий	conscious
	святий	holy; ( <i>перед ім'ям</i> ) Saint
	святковий	festive, holiday
	священик	priest
	село	village
	середній	( <i>за місцем, часом</i> ) middle; ( <i>проміжний, за ознаками</i> ) average, medium
	сила	strength, force, power
	синонім	synonym
	сік	juice
	скарб	treasure
	скло	glass
	скрипка	violin; ( <i>розм.</i> ) fiddle

## Practical Grammar of the English Language

	слабкий	weak, feeble; ( <i>про здоров'я</i> ) delicate
	сліпий	blind
	словник	dictionary; ( <i>до підручника</i> ) vocabulary; ( <i>спис. слів</i> ) glossary
	слухняний	obediant
	сміття	rubbish, dust, litter
	сокира	axe
	сором	shame
	соромливий	bashful, modest
	спадщина	inheritance; ( <i>за заповітом</i> ) legacy
	сперечатися	argue ( <i>with smb about</i> ), dispute ( <i>with smb about</i> )
	список	list
	співчутливий	sympathetic
	спокій	( <i>миша</i> ) quiet, calm(ness), tranquillity
	спокійний	quiet, calm, tranquil
	спокушати	tempt (with, into)
	спосіб	( <i>хар-р дії</i> ) way, method, mode; ( <i>засіб</i> ) means
	спостерігати	observe, study
	справедливість	justice
	сприймати	perceive, apprehend
	старанний	painstaking; ( <i>про учня</i> ) diligent
	стіл	table
	стіна	wall
	стомлений	tired, weary
	страждати	suffer (from)
	стрибок	jump, leap, spring
	стукати	knock (at); ( <i>стуха</i> ) tap; ( <i>ударяти</i> ) hit, strike
	суддя	judge; ( <i>спорт.</i> ) referee, umpire
	сумління	conscience
	сумний	sad, sorrowful
	суниці	( <i>садові</i> ) strawberries; ( <i>лісові</i> ) wild-strawberries
	супроводити	accompany
	суттєвий	essential, vital
	сучасний	contemporary (with); ( <i>теперішній</i> ) modern, present-day; ( <i>який відповідає вимогам часу</i> ) up-to-date
	схожий	resembling, similar (to), like, alike
	сцена	stage
<b>Т</b>	<b>таблетка</b>	tablet, pill
	тавро	mark, brand
	таємниця	secret, mystery
	тиран	tyrant
	тиск	pressure
	тінь	shade
	тканина	( <i>матерія</i> ) fabric, material, cloth; ( <i>біол.</i> ) tissue
	торгівля	trade, commerce
	торговець	tradesman, merchant
	торкати	touch
	точний	exact, precise; ( <i>правильний</i> ) accurate; ( <i>про людину</i> ) punctual
	труба	pipe, tube; ( <i>муз.</i> ) trumpet
	трудність	difficulty
	турбота	trouble, disturbance, care (for); ( <i>хвилювання</i> ) worry, anxiety
<b>У</b>	<b>убавляти</b>	reduce
	удача	luck, piece of luck
	узагальнений	generalized
	уникати	avoid, elude
	універмаг	department store
	управляти	manage, direct; ( <i>керувати</i> ) operate
	ускладнювати	complicate

Practical Grammar of the English Language

	успадковувати	inherit
	усувати	eliminate, eradicate; ( <i>недоліки</i> ) remove
	учасник	participant; ( <i>член</i> ) member; ( <i>змагань</i> ) competitor
	ушкодження	damage, injury
<b>Ф</b>	<b>фарба</b>	paint; ( <i>колір</i> ) colour
	фарфор	china, porcelain
	фіалка	violet
	фрукт	fruit
<b>Х</b>	<b>хвастати</b>	boast (of), brag (of)
	хвиля	wave
	хвороба	disease, sickness, illness
	хитрість	cunning, slyness; ( <i>втіівка</i> ) trick, ruse
	хірург	surgeon
	храм	temple, church
	хрест	cross
<b>Ц</b>	<b>цибуля</b>	onion
	цитувати	quote
	цифра	figure; ( <i>арабська</i> ) cipher
	цікавий	interesting; ( <i>дотитливий</i> ) curious/gacy
	цілеспрямований	goal-directed; goal-oriented
	ціна	price; ( <i>вартість</i> ) cost; ( <i>перен.</i> ) value, worth
	цукерка	sweet; ( <i>америк.</i> ) candy
	цукор	sugar
<b>Ч</b>	<b>чари</b>	spell(s), magic; ( <i>чарівність</i> ) charms
	часник	garlic
	чекати	wait (for), await ( <i>розраховувати на щось</i> ) expect
	черга	( <i>порядок</i> ) turn; ( <i>люди, що чекають</i> ) queue, line ( <i>амер.</i> )
	чіпляти	get hold (of), catch (on); ( <i>вішати</i> ) hang (up), cling (to)
	чіткий	clear
	чорнило	ink
	чудо	miracle; ( <i>дотитливий</i> ) wonder
	чудовий	wonderful, marvellous
	чудовий	magnificent
<b>Ш</b>	<b>швидкий</b>	quick, rapid, swift, fast
	шедевр	masterpiece
	шкідливий	harmful, injurious, bad
	штучний	artificial
	шукати	look (for), search (for); ( <i>домагатися, прагнути</i> ) seek
	шум	noise
<b>Щ</b>	<b>щасливий</b>	happy; ( <i>якому щастить</i> ) fortunate, lucky
	щастя	happiness
	щедрий	generous, lavish
	щєня	puppy
	щирий	sincere; ( <i>відвертий</i> ) frank, candid
	щоденний	daily
	щоденник	diary
<b>Я</b>	<b>яблуко</b>	apple
	явище	phenomenon
	ягня	lamb
	ядерний	nuclear



## Chat and SMS Vocabulary

<b>AFAIK</b>	as far as I know	наскільки я знаю
<b>AKA</b>	also known as	відомий як
<b>AMA</b>	ask me anything	рубрика «питання - відповідь»; рубрика «запитай»
<b>ATM</b>	at the moment	зараз
<b>ASAP</b>	as soon as possible	максимально швидко; якомога скоріше
<b>AFAIK</b>	as far as I know	наскільки мені відомо
<b>AFK</b>	away from keyboard	відійшов від комп'ютера
<b>BFF</b>	best friend forever	найкращі друзі назавжди
<b>BRB</b>	be right back	зараз повернуся
<b>B4N</b>	bye for now	бувай! до зустрічі
<b>BRB</b>	be right back	зараз повернусь
<b>BTW</b>	by the way	між іншим
<b>BF</b>	boyfriend	бойфренд
<b>B4</b>	before	перш ніж, раніше
<b>CY</b>	see you	до зустрічі; побачимось
<b>FYI</b>	for your information	до вашого відома
<b>GTG</b>	got to go	змусити іти; мені час
<b>GF</b>	girlfriend	гелфренд
<b>GR8</b>	great	чудово
<b>HBD</b>	Happy Birthday	з Днем Народження
<b>HMB</b>	hit me back	зателефонуйте мені
<b>HMU</b>	hit me up	зателефонуй / напиши мені
<b>HRU</b>	How are you?	Як ваші справи? Добрий день!
<b>IKR</b>	I know right	ще б пак!
<b>IMO</b>	In my opinion	на мою думку
<b>IOU</b>	I owe you	я твій боржник
<b>IDK</b>	I don't know	я не знаю
<b>IDC</b>	I don't care	мені все одно
<b>ICYMI</b>	in case you missed it	на той випадок, якщо ви щось пропустили
<b>JK</b>	just kidding	просто жарт
<b>KK</b>	cool, okay (Kewl)	
<b>L8R</b>	later	пізніше
<b>LOL</b>	laugh out loud	сміятися вголос
<b>MYOB</b>	mind your own business	не втручайтесь у чужі справи
<b>NM</b>	not much	в жодному випадку
<b>NTN</b>	no thanks needed	дякую, не потрібно; дякую, ні
<b>LMK</b>	let me know	тримайте мене в курсі справи
<b>NVM</b>	never mind	не турбуйтеся; не звертай уваги
<b>NP</b>	no problem	немає проблем
<b>OOO</b>	out of office	відсутній в офісі
<b>OMG</b>	oh my God	Боже мій!
<b>OMW</b>	on my way	зараз; вже іду; вже їду
<b>PLS</b>	please	будь ласка
<b>pita</b>	pain in the ass	розм. головний біль
<b>PPL</b>	people	люди
<b>TBA</b>	to be announced	підлягає уточненню; буде оголошено додатково
<b>TYT</b>	take your time	не квапся
<b>TBD</b>	to be determined	буде повідомлено додатково; уточнюється; потребує уточнення
<b>TBH</b>	to be honest	чесно кажучи
<b>THX</b>	thanks	дякую
<b>TMI</b>	too much information	забагато інформації
<b>TTYL</b>	talk to you later	до зв'язку
<b>w8</b>	wait	почекайте
<b>WAU</b>	What about you?	ну, а ви?
<b>XOXO</b>	Hugs and kisses	Цілую і обнімаю
<b>YOLO</b>	you only live once	життя одне
<b>2mor</b>	tomorrow	завтра
<b>2nite</b>	tonight	сьогодні увечері

## USED LITERATURE

1. Английский для девочек и мальчиков. Серия книг для школьников. Под редакцией В. М. Спиваковского. – Киев: «Гранд», 1996. – 176 с.
2. Англо-український, україно-англійський словник (Укл.: Биховець Н. М., Борисенко І. І., Герасименко Г. О. та ін. За ред. доктора філол. наук, проф. Ю. О. Жлуктенка). – Київ: ВЦ «Академія», 1997, 696 с.
3. Аракин В. Д., Селянина Л. И. та ін. Практический курс английского языка, 2 курс. - Москва, 1998, 515 с.
4. Берман И. М. Краткая практическая грамматика английского языка / Под редакцией проф. В. Д. Аракина. Для чтения текстов. – Москва: «Международные отношения», 1965. – 296 с.
5. Богацкий И. С., Дюканова Н. М. Бизнес-курс английского языка. Словарь-справочник. – Киев: «Логос», 1997. – 352 с.: ил. (серия «Вас ждет успех!»).
6. Бонди Е. А. Английский язык: Повторительный курс: Учебное пособие. - Москва: Высшая школа, 1988. – 272 с.
7. Браф С. Краткая грамматика английского языка: Учебное пособие / Соня Браф; Перевод с нем. И. С. Ивянской. – Москва: ООО «Издательство Астрель»: ООО «Издательство АСТ», 2004. – 94 с.
8. Великий англо-український словник (120 000 слів) / Авт. – уклад. М.В.Адамчик. – Донецьк: „Видавництво Стакер”, 2002. – 1152 с.
9. Верба Л. Г., Верба Г. В. Граматика сучасної англійської мови. Довідник. - Київ, «Логос», 1997 р. – 352 с.
10. Верба Л. Г., Верба Г. Г., Верба Г. В. Довідник з граматики англійської мови (з вправами): Навч. посібник. – 5-те вид., доопрац. – Київ: Освіта, 2001. – 414 с.
11. Виборова Ф., Махмурян К., Мельчина О. Easy English (базовый курс), - Москва, 1998., 377 с.
12. Гордеева Е. America the Beautiful: грамматический справочник – Москва: Научно-образовательный центр „Школа Китайгородской”, 1999. – 108 с.
13. Давиденко Л.М. English Grammar. - Тернопіль, 1996. – 192 с.
14. Дубовик Е. И. Английский язык для студентов-заочников 1-го года обучения. – Минск: Бриллиант, 1997. – 112 с.
15. Дюканова Н. М. Практическая грамматика английского языка. – Москва: Иностраный язык, 2001. – 224 с.
16. Забута І., Чабаненко О. Англійська мова для дітей у віршах та піснях. Навчальний посібник. – Рівне: «Теніс», 1996.
17. Зубков М., Мюллер В. Сучасний англо-український та україно-англійський словник. – Харків: Видавництво „Школа”, 2005. – 768 с.
18. Качалова К. Н., Израилевич Е. Е. Практическая грамматика английского языка с упражнениями и ключами. – Учебник нормативной грамматики для студентов языковых вузов. – Москва: Юнвес. - 2002. – 717 с.
19. Каушанская В. Л., Ковнер Р. Л., Кожевникова О. Н., Прокофьева Е. В., Райнерс З. М., Сквирская С. Е., Цырлина Ф. Я. Грамматика английского языка. Пособие для студентов педагогических институтов и университетов. - 7-е издание. - Москва, 2000. – 319 с.
20. Медведєва Л. М., Медведєва Н. Ю. Англо-українсько-російський словник усталених виразів. English – Ukrainian – Russian Dictionary of Pragmatic Idioms. - Київ: Укр. енциклопедія, 1992. – 493 с.
21. Пазюк Л. К. Граматика англійської мови для школярів, абітурієнтів, студентів: навчальний посібник. - Київ: Кобза, 2002. – 416 с.
22. Пароятникова А. Д., Полевая М. Ю. Английский язык для гуманитарных вузов: Учебник. – 2-е издание, испр. и доп. - Москва: Высшая школа, 1998. – 367 с.

23. Пурвер Г. Л. Учебник английского языка для взрослых. – Издательство литературы на иностранных языках. – Москва, 1948. – 432 с.
24. Скробкова-Пабат М. А. Ділова англійська мова: навчальний посібник – Львів: «Новий Світ - 2000», 2012. – 392 с.
25. Скробкова-Пабат М. А. Практикум з теорії та практики перекладу: навчальний посібник – Львів: «Новий Світ - 2000», 2016. – 482 с.
26. Скробкова-Пабат М. А. Світ цікавої англійської мови – The World of Interesting English: Навчальний посібник – Львів: Новий Світ - 2000, 2010. – 372 с.
27. Тучина Н. В., Меркулова Т. К., Кузьміна В. С. Speak English with Pleasure/За ред. Луїзи Грін (Велика Британія), Кіри Янсон (США) – Харків: Торсінг, 2001. – 288 с.
28. Труевцева Т. И., Кац Р. И. Пособие по английскому разговорному языку. Пособие для студентов 1-2 курсов неязыковых вузов. – Москва, 1971. – 328 с.
29. Almazova L. A. A Bridge to Spoken English. - Moskow, 1988. – 390 p.
30. Dixon Robert J. Modern American English. - Oxford, 1990. – 250 p.
31. Dubrovin M. I. English for Everybody. - Kiev, «Dnipro», 1991. – 220 p.
32. Eckersly C. E. Essential English. - Oxford, 1990. – 250 p.
33. English Learner's Digest Дайджест для тих, хто вивчає англійську. №№ 1-16. 1999, 2001, 2004.
34. Flamm J., Northam W. L., Yorkey R. C. The English Advantage. - New York, 1991. - 390 p.
35. Hornby A. S., Gaterby E. V., Wakfied H. The Advanced Learner's Dictionary of Current English. - Kiev, 1981. – 490 p.
36. Galperin I.R. Second & Third Year English. - Moscow: "Mezhdunarodnaya kniga". - 1947. – 473 p.
37. New Webster's Dictionary and Thesaurus of the English Language. Lexicon publications, Inc., USA, 1993, 1216 p.
38. Raymond Murphy English Grammar in Use. A self-study reference and practice book for intermediate students. - Cambridge University Press. Book 1. - 1990, 259 p.
39. Raymond Murphy English Grammar in Use. A self-study reference and practice book for intermediate students. - Cambridge University Press. Book 2. - 1992, 270 p.
40. Robert J. Dixon Modern American English. - Oxford, 1990. – 250 p.
41. The Everyday English Almanac for Boys and Girls. Сост. М. И. Дубровин. Книга для ежедневного чтения на английском языке. – Москва: АСТ Астраль, 2002. – 426 с.
42. Thomson A. J., Martinet A. V. A Practical English Grammar. - Oxford University Press.- 1993. – 210 p.
43. Verkhovtsova J. M. Making a New Start. Методично-навчальний посібник з курсу ділової англійської мови. – Вінниця, 2001. – 256 с.

## CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION .....	3
CHAPTER I	
PRACTICALS.....	4
Practice 1. Grammar: The Noun. Number of Nouns. Possessive Case of Nouns... 4	
1. Morphological Characteristic of Nouns .....	4
2. Countable and Uncountable Nouns .....	4
3. Number of the Noun.....	7
4. Cases of Nouns .....	10
5. Grammar Exercises .....	11
Practice 2. Text: “Makaton” .....	12
Practice 3. Grammar: The Article .....	15
1. Usage of Articles .....	16
2. Usage of the Indefinite Article .....	18
3. Pronunciation.....	19
4. Usage of the Definite Article .....	20
5. Grammar Exercises .....	24
Practice 4. Revision. Test 1 .....	26
Practice 5. Text: “British National Flowers” .....	28
Practice 6. Grammar: The Numeral .....	31
1. Cardinal Numerals.....	31
2. Ordinal Numerals .....	32
3. Fractional Numerals .....	34
4. Time Expressions .....	35
5. What Time is it? .....	35
6. Dates in English.....	37
7. Grammar Exercises .....	38
Practice 7. Text: “Chinese Horoscope” .....	39
Practice 8. Revision. Test 2 .....	42
Practice 9. Grammar: The Adjective. Degrees of Comparison.....	44
1. Morphological Characteristic of Adjectives .....	44
2. Degrees of Comparison .....	45
3. Substantivized Adjectives .....	48
4. Grammar Exercises .....	49
Practice 10. Text: “Canada” .....	50
Practice 11. Grammar: The Verb .....	53
1. Regular Verbs .....	53
2. Irregular Verbs .....	53
3. Auxiliary Verbs .....	55
4. Usage of the Verbs DO, MAKE.....	58
5. Grammar Exercises .....	60
Practice 12. Revision. Test 3 .....	62
Practice 13. Text: “A Funny Story” .....	63

Practice 14. Grammar: Word Order .....	66
1. The Principal Parts of the Sentence .....	66
2. Types of Interrogative Sentences .....	67
3. The Secondary Parts of the Sentence .....	68
4. The Attribute .....	69
5. Слова, що вказують на часову форму .....	70
6. Grammar Exercises .....	70
Practice 15. Final Test .....	72
Practice 16. Text: “Animals” .....	74
Practice 17. Grammar: The Present Indefinite Tense .....	78
1. Word Order of Simple Tenses.....	79
2. Auxiliary Verb of Simple Tenses.....	80
3. Grammar Exercises .....	81
Practice 18. Text: “The Broken Vase” .....	82
Practice 19. Revision. Test 4.....	85
Practice 20. Grammar: The Past Indefinite Tense .....	88
1. Word Order of Past Simple .....	88
2. Auxiliary Verb of Past Simple .....	88
3. Regular & Irregular Verbs.....	89
4. Grammar Exercises .....	91
Practice 21. Text: “Jim and Della” .....	93
Practice 22. Grammar: The Future Indefinite Tense.....	96
1. Word Order of Future Simple .....	96
2. Майбутній час з конструкцією be going to .....	98
3. Grammar Exercises .....	99
Practice 23. Revision. Test 5 .....	100
Practice 24. Text: “City in the Sky” .....	102
Practice 25. Grammar: The Present Continuous Tense .....	105
1. Word Order of Continuous Tenses.....	105
2. Grammar Exercises .....	107
Practice 26. Text: “American Government” .....	108
Practice 27. Revision. Test 6.....	112
Practice 28. Grammar: The Past Continuous Tense.....	115
1. Word Order of Past Continuous .....	115
2. Usage of Past Continuous.....	116
3. Дієслова, що не вживаються в формі Continuous.....	117
4. Grammar Exercises .....	118
Practice 29. Text: “English Food” .....	119
Practice 30. Grammar: The Future Continuous Tense.....	123
1. Usage of Future Continuous.....	123
2. Word Order of Future Continuous .....	123
3. Grammar Exercises .....	124
Practice 31. Revision. Test 7.....	126
Practice 32. Defence of Projects 1, 2, 3 .....	128
Practice 33. Revision. Word Quiz.....	128



*Practical Grammar of the English Language*

Practice 34. Final Test .....	132
Practice 35. Text: “About My Family and Myself. Hobbies in Our Family” .....	132
Practice 36. Grammar: The Pronoun .....	137
1. Personal Pronouns .....	138
2. Possessive Pronouns .....	138
3. Reflexive Pronouns .....	139
4. Reciprocal Pronouns .....	140
5. Demonstrative Pronouns .....	140
6. Interrogative Pronouns .....	140
7. Indefinite Pronouns .....	141
8. The Indefinite Pronoun ONE .....	141
9. Negative Pronouns .....	142
10. Quantative Pronouns .....	142
11. Grammar Exercises .....	143
Practice 37. Text: “Jobs and Professions” .....	145
Practice 38. Revision. Test 8 .....	150
Practice 39. Grammar: The Preposition .....	151
1. Usage of Prepositions .....	151
2. Usage of Prepositions of Time .....	152
2. Usage of Other Prepositions .....	154
4. Grammar Exercise .....	156
Practice 40. Text: “My Working Day and My Day Off” .....	157
Practice 41. Grammar: The Postposition .....	159
1. Usage of Postpositions .....	160
2. Stable Word-Combinations .....	166
3. Grammar Exercises .....	167
Practice 42. Revision. Test 9 .....	168
Practice 43. Text “City and Country Life” .....	170
Practice 44. Grammar: Modal Verbs .....	176
1. Modal Verb CAN .....	176
2. Modal Verb COULD .....	177
3. Modal Verb BE ABLE TO .....	177
4. Modal Verb MAY .....	177
5. Modal Verb MIGHT .....	177
6. Modal Verb MUST .....	178
7. Modal Verb HAD TO .....	178
8. Modal Verb HAVE TO .....	178
9. Modal Verbs SHOULD and OUGHT TO .....	178
10. Modal Verb BE TO + Infinitive .....	178
11. Modal Verb DARE .....	179
12. Constructions with Modal Verbs .....	180
13. Grammar Exercises .....	180
Practice 45. Text: “The Place I Live in” .....	181
Practice 46. Revision. Test 10 .....	184
Practice 47. Grammar: The Adverb .....	185

*Practical Grammar of the English Language*

1. Morphological Characteristic of Adverbs .....	185
2. Groups of Adverbs .....	187
3. Degrees of Comparison of Adverbs .....	188
4. Grammar Exercises .....	189
Practice 48. Text: “Niagara Falls” .....	190
Practice 49. Final Test. Word Quiz .....	193
Practice 50. Grammar: The Present Perfect Tense.....	197
1. Часи групи Perfect .....	197
2. Word Order of Perfect Tenses.....	197
3. Usage of Present Perfect Tense .....	199
4. Grammar Exercises .....	200
Practice 51. Text: “Big Ben” .....	201
Practice 52. Grammar: The Past Perfect Tense.....	205
1. Word Order of Past Perfect Tense.....	205
2. Grammar Exercises .....	206
Practice 53. Revision. Test 11 .....	208
Practice 54. Text: “Statue of Liberty” .....	209
Practice 55. Grammar: The Future Perfect Tense .....	212
1. Word Order of Future Perfect Tense.....	212
2. Grammar Exercises .....	214
Practice 56. Text “The London Eye” .....	215
Practice 57. Revision. Test 12.....	218
Practice 58. Culture of Professional Communication.....	220
Practice 59. Grammar: Passive Voice.....	227
1. Word Order of Active Voice.....	227
2. Word Order of Passive Voice.....	227
3. Grammar Exercises .....	230
Practice 60. Job Hunting .....	232
Practice 61. Revision. Test 13.....	240
Practice 62. On a Business Trip .....	243
Practice 63. Text: “Hotels”.....	246
Practice 64. Advertising and Advertisement.....	251
Practice 65. Revision. Word Quiz.....	255
Practice 66. Defence of Projects.....	260
Practice 67. Final Test .....	260
Answer Key .....	262
CHAPTER II	
THE TASKS FOR ENGLISH LESSONS .....	328
Answer Key .....	362
CHAPTER III	
PSYCHOLOGICAL TESTS “LET’S GET ACQUAINTED!” .....	376
Test 3.1. A Map of Interest.....	376
Test 3.2. A Good Language Learner Test .....	377
Test 3.3. What Are Your Chances This Term?.....	378
Test 3.4. Have You Time To Study?.....	379

*Practical Grammar of the English Language*

Test 3.5. Are You a Good Communicator?.....	380
Test 3.6. What About Your Health?.....	381
Test 3.7. Going to Live to 100?.....	382
Test 3.8. Are You a “Foodie”? .....	383
Test 3.9. What is Your Relationship with Food Like?.....	385
Test 3.10. What Type of Boyfriend / Girlfriend are You?.....	385
Test 3.11. How Romantic are You? .....	387
Test 3.12. Are You Green?.....	388
Test 3.13. Are You an Artistic Person?.....	388
Test 3.14. You See Yourself as Others See You? .....	389
Test 3.15. School’s out for Summer.....	391
Test 3.16. New Year Test.....	392
Test 3.17. Do You Have a Good Body Image?.....	393
Test 3.18. Are You a Fashion Victim?.....	394
Test 3.19. Which Pet is the Best for You? .....	395
Test 3.20. What Suits You more: City or Country Life? .....	396
Test 3.21. What Kind of School is Best for You?.....	397
Test 3.22. What has Life Taught You? .....	398
Test 3.23. Teachers’ Quiz .....	398
Test 3.24. Talking Scribbles.....	400
CHAPTER IV	
ANIMAL IDIOMS.....	402
4.1. Check Yourself.....	409
4.2. Answer Key .....	411
CHAPTER V	
ADDITIONAL READING.....	412
5.1. A Bit About Foreign Languages .....	412
5.1.1. American English.....	412
5.1.2. How Americans Speak .....	414
5.1.3. What Do You Know About Esperanto?.....	417
5.1.4. The Most Inspiring and Famous Polyglots in the World.....	418
5.1.5. The List of Famous Hyperpolyglots .....	424
5.2. From the History of the United Kingdom and the USA .....	427
5.2.1. History of Britain.....	427
5.2.2. The Glimpse of Great Britain and Its Parliament Life.....	431
5.2.3. An Englishman’s Day .....	433
5.3. Sightseeing .....	434
5.3.1. Taj Mahal.....	434
5.3.2. Eiffel Tower .....	435
5.3.3. London’s Buses .....	437
5.3.4. Seven Wonders of the World .....	437
5.3.5. Four Wonders of Nature.....	442
5.3.6. London Underground .....	446
5.3.7. The 10 Most Beautiful Lakes in Ukraine.....	447
5.4. Education Abroad.....	449

5.4.1. Great Britain. System of Secondary Education.....	449
5.4.2. Great Britain. Higher Education.....	450
5.4.3. College Life in Great Britain.....	451
5.4.4. Schools in the USA .....	452
5.4.5. USA Higher Education.....	453
5.4.6. Floating Schools .....	454
5.4.7. Green School .....	454
5.4.8. Unusual Schools .....	455
5.5. Rules of Etiquette .....	456
5.5.1. Table Manners in Great Britain.....	456
5.5.2. Attributes of Formal Parties .....	456
5.5.3. Handshakes.....	458
5.5.4. Culture Shock .....	458
5.5.5. Rules of Etiquette in the United Kingdom.....	458
5.5.6. Rules of Etiquettes in Germany .....	460
5.5.7. Chinese Etiquette - Do's and Don'ts in China .....	461
5.5.8. Rules of Etiquette Important in Arab Culture .....	465
5.6. Advertising and Advertisement.....	466
5.6.1. Advertising Strategies .....	466
5.6.2. Advertisers Perform a Useful Service to the Community.....	467
5.7. Let's Speak a Little About Some Holidays Abroad.....	468
5.7.1. Christmas Customs.....	468
5.7.2. Trees around the World.....	469
5.7.3. Valentine's Day .....	472
5.7.4. The Valentine's Card.....	473
5.7.5. Hallowe'en .....	474
5.7.6. April Fool's Day – April 1 .....	475
5.7.7. The Story of Easter.....	476
5.7.8. Traditional British Wedding.....	477
5.7.9. Wedding Cakes.....	478
5.7.10. The Weird Food Festivals That Sound Fake (but aren't).....	479
5.8. Do You Know English Words?.....	483
5.8.1. Euro-English.....	483
5.8.2. Origin of Some Words .....	484
5.8.3. Hooligan .....	485
5.8.4. Mackintosh .....	485
5.8.5. What is It “Boycott”? .....	485
5.8.6. Was the First Computer “BUG” a Real Insect? .....	486
5.8.7. What is the Origin of the Following Phrases? .....	487
5.8.8. What is the Origin of the Terms? .....	488
5.8.9. The Fascinating Origins of 15 Common English Words? .....	490
5.8.10. Foreign Placenames .....	496
5.8.11. How London's Streets were Named? .....	497
5.8.12. Longest Words .....	497
5.8.13. Does Anyone Here Speak English? .....	498

5.8.14. The Days of the Week .....	498
5.8.15. Happy Birthday .....	499
5.8.16. What was in Pandora's box? .....	489
5.8.17. Who were the Argonauts? .....	500
5.8.18. What does the Name Christopher Mean? .....	500
5.8.19. Do you know that ... ..	500
5.8.20. English Terms.....	502
5.9. Have You Ever Heard About ? .....	505
5.9.1. What can the Sea Levels Tell about the Past Climates? .....	505
5.9.2. The Weather .....	505
5.9.3. Moon.....	506
5.9.4. Where is the Longest River in the World? .....	507
5.9.5. Why is it Cold in Winter and Hot in Summer? .....	507
5.9.6. Fruits & Vegetables.....	507
5.9.7. Melons without Seeds .....	508
5.9.8. The Unhappy Potato .....	509
5.9.9. Big Tree, Little Tree .....	509
5.9.10. Why is it that Women Don't Go Bald & Men Do? .....	509
5.9.11. Amazing Water Facts .....	510
5.9.12. Why is it that Some People are Left-Handed? .....	512
5.9.13. Cultural Differences in Body Language .....	513
5.9.14. The Magic of Dreams.....	513
5.9.15. Bullfighting .....	516
5.9.16. The Candymaker's Witness .....	516
5.9.17. Facts and Myths about your Health .....	517
5.9.18. Headaches .....	518
5.9.19. Ithaa Undersea Restaurant (Rangali Island, Maldives).....	519
5.9.20. Eat Out for Less.....	519
5.9.21. Are Museums Boring? We Don't Think So! .....	520
5.9.22. Secrets of Memory .....	521
5.10. Corner of Science & Techniques .....	524
5.10.1. Some Scientific Discoveries & Names .....	524
5.10.2. Great American Inventions .....	525
5.10.3. Isaac Newton .....	526
5.10.4. Edison's First Invention .....	527
5.10.5. Micheal Faraday .....	527
5.10.6. George Stephenson .....	527
5.10.7. Charles Darwin .....	528
5.10.8. Volodymyr Zvorykin & Isaac Schoenberg .....	529
5.10.9. Christopher Columbus .....	530
5.10.10. Explorers and Discoverers .....	530
5.10.11. "Audible Alibis" for Phone Cheats .....	531
5.10.12. What Do People Use Computers for? .....	531
5.10.13. The Ball-Point Pen .....	532
5.10.14. Inventions That Changed the World .....	533



5.11. Prove It Yourself .....	542
5.11.1. Watermarks .....	542
5.11.2. “Subjective Colour” .....	543
5.11.3. The Turnaround Card .....	543
5.11.4. A Strange Fact about Paper .....	544
5.11.5. The Disappearing Rabbit.....	544
5.11.6. Do your fingers always obey you?.....	545
5.11.7. The Amazing Educated Arm.....	545
5.12. From the History of Some Toys .....	546
5.12.1. LEGO Toys .....	546
5.12.2. Barbie History .....	547
5.12.3. The History of Making Tilda Dolls.....	548
5.12.4. Toy Soldier .....	551
5.13. Some Facts of Animals’ Life .....	553
5.13.1. Do Sleeping Horses Lie?.....	553
5.13.2. Guess Australian Animals .....	553
5.13.3. Why Do Elephants Have Trunks?.....	554
5.13.4. Wild Animals .....	554
5.13.5. The Big Cats .....	556
5.13.6. Jumping Spider.....	557
5.13.7. Dolphins Dispel Depression.....	558
5.13.8. The Loch Ness Monster .....	558
5.13.9. Real Fact.....	559
5.13.10. Animals in the Calendar .....	559
5.13.11. Chinese Zodiac Signs .....	563
5.13.12. Hermitage Palace is Cat’s Whiskers.....	568
5.13.13. The Penguin Post Office .....	569
5.14. Different Texts for Reading .....	570
5.14.1. The Woodcutter.....	570
5.14.2. A Greedy Dog .....	570
5.14.3. A Conceited Boy .....	570
5.14.4. Why was she Angry?.....	570
5.14.5. A Dumb Wife .....	571
5.14.6. The Old Indian is Quite Modern .....	571
5.14.7. An American in London.....	572
5.14.8. Mark Twain Goes to the Opera.....	572
5.14.9. Mistake .....	572
5.14.10. Golden Dreams.....	573
5.14.11. An Honest Man .....	573
5.14.12. A Forgetful Tourist.....	574
5.14.13. Economy Wasted Trip.....	574
5.14.14. The Philosopher & the Boatman .....	574
5.14.15. A Chinese Dinner .....	574
5.14.16. Who Killed the Minotaur?.....	575
5.14.17. Mystery of the Girl Who Just Faded Away .....	575

5.15. Meals .....	577
5.15.1. English Food.....	577
5.15.2. Tea .....	579
5.15.3. A Nice Cup of Tea.....	580
5.15.4. Food in the USA.....	581
5.15.5. Spanish Menu .....	582
5.15.6. Garlic: Nature’s Oldest Remedy .....	582
5.15.7. Barbecue .....	583
5.15.8. Eating Habits in UK .....	583
5.16. Cook Yourself .....	585
5.16.1. Slices of Toast .....	585
5.16.2. Scrambled Eggs.....	585
5.16.3. Potatoes.....	585
5.16.4. Recipe of an Apple Pie.....	585
5.16.5. Apricot Baked Ham.....	586
5.16.6. Easter Eggs .....	586
5.16.7. Hot Marinated Mushrooms .....	586
5.16.8. Holiday Jelly.....	586
5.16.9. Scones.....	586
5.16.10. Cranberry Sauce with Walnuts.....	586
5.16.11. Cream Cheese Turnovers .....	587
5.16.12. Vanilla Cookies .....	587
5.16.13. Lemon Fruit Cake.....	588
5.16.14. Iced Watermelon with Berries & Mint.....	588
CHAPTER VI	
JOKES .....	589
6.1. English Humour .....	589
6.2. Time for Fun.....	593
ENGLISH ALPHABET .....	595
Ukrainian-English Transliteration .....	596
SPELLING .....	597
One Hundred Phrases to Speak English Abroad.....	599
Communication at the English Lessons .....	601
Order in Cafés and Restaurants.....	601
ENGLISH-UKRAINIAN VOCABULARY .....	602
Ukrainian–English Vocabulary .....	613
Chat and SMS Vocabulary .....	624
LITERATURE .....	625
CONTENTS .....	627

*Скребкова-Пабат Марина Анатоліївна –доцент кафедри іноземних мов*

*Фінчук Галина Віталівна – кандидат педагогічних наук, доцент*

*Кочмар Діана Анатоліївна –кандидат педагогічних наук, доцент*

# Practical Grammar of the English Language

**Практична грамати́ка англійської мови**

**Навчальний посібник**

**для студентів немовних спеціальностей, вчителів англійської мови**

*Відповідальний за випуск С.В. Піча*

*Дизайн та верстка К.А. Краснощоків*

Підписано до друку 25.08.2020 р.

Формат 60×84/16. Папір офсетний.

Цифровий друк. Ум. друк. арк. 26,5.

Зам. № 25-08-2020/139.

Видавець ФОП Піча С.В.

а/с 5026, м. Львів-53, 79053, Україна

e-mail: [novsv2016@ukr.net](mailto:novsv2016@ukr.net)

068-978-94-42 / 050-337-58-46

Свідоцтво про внесення суб'єкта видавничої справи до Державного реєстру видавців, виготівників і розповсюджувачів видавничої продукції: серія ДК № 5069 від 22.03.2016 року, видане Державним комітетом інформаційної політики, телебачення та радіомовлення України